2017

District of Columbia
Building Code
Background

The 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes, effective May 29, 2020, consist of the following 12 codes:


1. The District of Columbia Municipal Regulations (DCMR) is the official compilation of rules and regulations issued by government agencies and the Council and is available online at: http://dcregs.dc.gov/.
The ICC, ASHRAE and NFPA Codes have been extensively amended by the District of Columbia to address specific District of Columbia policies and statutes, and unique characteristics of the District of Columbia.

The ICC and NFPA Codes provide a comprehensive, coordinated set of building safety and fire codes that have been adopted by 50 states and the District of Columbia at the jurisdictional or state level. The ICC’s consensus-based code development process involves a broad range of stakeholders, including construction industry representatives and code regulators, to ensure that the model codes incorporate the latest technical advancements, while addressing industry and regulatory concerns. The ICC Codes also provide helpful resources, such as interpretive commentary and history of amendments, which provide a basis for interpreting the District of Columbia Construction Codes.

In 1791, President George Washington issued the first building guidelines in Washington, DC. These guidelines largely emphasized aesthetics in order to ensure that new buildings complemented Pierre L’Enfant’s plan for the city. By 1872, during a period of rapid change and expansion after the Civil War, the District of Columbia adopted the first comprehensive set of building regulations focusing on health and safety concerns. The 1872 regulations, introduced by the Congressionally established Board of Public Works, required building permits for the first time. Nineteenth century building regulation also included The Height of Buildings Act, enacted by Congress in 1899 to address safety concerns about the use of steel framing. The greater building heights achieved by steel-framed structures raised concerns about the city’s ability to extinguish fires, and the possibility of structural collapse.


Following the 2008 update of the District of Columbia Construction Codes, and in recognition of the need for a more robust, responsive and ongoing code development process in the District of Columbia, a new Construction Codes Coordinating Board (CCCB) was created by Mayoral Order in March 2009 to replace the Building Code Advisory Committee. The members of the CCCB are appointed by the Mayor (except for one member appointed by the DC Council) and represent various stakeholders in the code development process, including architects, engineers, government regulators, representatives of the construction and housing industries and city residents. The CCCB is supported administratively by the District of Columbia Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs (DCRA) and has been delegated authority by the Mayor to issue rules to amend the Construction Codes and to adopt the model codes pursuant to procedures set forth in the DC Official Code, §6-1409.

In considering adoption of the ICC, ASHRAE and NFPA codes and reviewing local code change proposals, the CCCB considers relevant criteria and policies including:

- Minimum performance standards and requirements for construction and construction materials, consistent with nationally accepted standards of engineering, fire, and life safety.
- Unique District of Columbia characteristics, policies or statutes.
- The use of modern technical methods, devices and improvements.
- Elimination of restrictive, obsolete, conflicting, duplicative, and unnecessary regulations and requirements.
- Standards to make buildings and facilities accessible to and usable by physically disabled persons.

---

Consideration of the 2012 I-Codes and the 2011 National Electrical Code began in October 2011 at the direction of Mayor Vincent C. Gray who tasked the CCCB with meeting Mayor Gray’s stated goal of making the District of Columbia the healthiest, greenest and most livable city in the United States. By adopting the 2012 International Green Construction Code and the 2012 International Energy Conservation Code as mandatory codes applicable to public and private sector buildings, the District of Columbia has taken a national leadership role in establishing a regulatory framework for fostering green building practices.

Development of the next update to the DC Construction Codes began in 2015 with a review of the 2015 I-Codes, 2013 ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1-2013 and 2014 National Electrical Code. Initiated by Mayor Muriel Bowser, the CCCB was tasked with simplifying the codes for both project teams and enforcement staff, while continuing to advance the District’s energy efficiency goals embodied in the Sustainable DC plan.

The Code Development Process

Although administered by DCRA, the code development process reached well beyond the agency’s corridors. In addition to the Board members who met frequently, often weekly, over a four year period, more than 100 individuals, including architects, engineers, contractors, property managers, real estate developers and government regulators, contributed countless hours attending technical advisory group meetings, as they pored over the model codes and developed code change amendments to reflect and incorporate local District of Columbia policies and concerns.

This process resulted in more than 500 code change proposals, incorporated into the 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes Supplement. Two rounds of public comment were sought through a rulemaking process, consisting of a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (65 DCR 40-Part 2, September 28, 2018) and a Second Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (66 DCR 31-Part 2, July 26, 2019).

Final recommendations were sent by DCRA to the Mayor and subsequently introduced to the District of Columbia Council on January 30, 2020. The Codes were passively approved by the Council on April 9, 2020 and became effective on May 29, 2020 when a Notice of Final Rulemaking was published in the DC Register (67 DCR 23-Part 2, May 29, 2020).

Structure of the 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes


The District of Columbia Construction Codes Supplement contains the local District of Columbia amendments and modifications and is codified in Title 12 of the DCMR. Title 12 can be viewed online on the website hosted by the Office of Documents and Administrative Issuances (ODAI): http://www.dcregs.dc.gov

To assist the public, three of the District of Columbia Construction Codes may also be viewed in an integrated version, published by the ICC, which consolidates the respective ICC codes, ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1-2013 and the District of Columbia amendments. The three integrated codes are available to the public through a link on the DCRA website, which enables online reading and limited downloading. These codes are as follows:

- 2017 District of Columbia Building Code
- 2017 District of Columbia Green Construction Code

3. Title 12 of the DCMR is also available on the DCRA website.
A solid vertical line in the margin within the body of the integrated Building Code published by the ICC indicates a District of Columbia change in the text of the respective model code.

Consistent with prior practice in the District of Columbia, Chapter 1 of the District of Columbia Building Code contains administrative and enforcement provisions that apply to all the individual codes that comprise the District of Columbia Construction Codes, with the exception of the Property Maintenance Code and the Fire Code. Administrative and enforcement provisions for the Property Maintenance Code and the Fire Code are set forth in 12-G DCMR, Chapter 1, and 12-H DCMR, Chapter 1, respectively.

Effective Date

The 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes became effective May 29, 2020, and apply to all new and existing construction and buildings in the District of Columbia, unless otherwise excepted or excluded, subject to the transition provisions set forth in Section 123 of the Building Code, which allows continued use of the 2013 Construction Codes under specified circumstances.

Citation

The District of Columbia Construction Codes should be cited by referencing the ICC, ASHRAE or NEC provision if applicable, or the local District of Columbia amendment set forth in 12 DCMR. Alternatively, a specific provision can be cited by referencing the applicable District of Columbia Construction Code, e.g., 2017 District of Columbia Property Maintenance Code, Section 404.1.

Codes Maintenance

At the national level, the model codes are kept current through the review of proposed changes submitted to the organizing body by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate. New model codes are issued on a three-year cycle.
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The efforts of the following individuals and entities who contributed to the development of the 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes are gratefully acknowledged.

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE MAYOR
Muriel Bowser, Mayor

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA COUNCIL
Phil Mendelson, Chairman

Councilmembers
Yvette Alexander
Charles Allen
Anita Bonds
Mary Cheh
Jack Evans
Vincent Gray
David Grosso
LaRuby May
Kenyan R. McDuffie
Brianne K. Nadeau
Vincent Orange
Elissa Silverman
Brandon Todd
Robert C. White, Jr.
Trayon White, Sr.

Committee of the Whole
Phil Mendelson, Chair

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS
Melinda Bolling
Ernest Chrappah

CONSTRUCTION CODE COORDINATING BOARD
Chair
Jill Stern

Vice Chair
Marc Fetterman

Members
Christopher Bailey, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Matthew Borger, Council Delegate
Michael Brown, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Susan Burnett, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Joel Causey, Private Citizen
Gary W. Englebert, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
David Epley, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Tony Falwell, Office of the Fire Marshal
Kellie Farster, Structural Engineering Profession
Marc Fetterman, Architectural Design Profession
Jatinder Khokhar, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Ethan Landis, Building Industry—Residential & Multifamily
Robert Looper, Mayoral Delegate
Armando Lourenco, Council Delegate, Mechanical Engineering Profession
Rabbiah Sabbakhan, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Casey Studhalter, Department of Energy & Environment
Lynn Underwood, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
William Updike, District Department of the Environment
Clarence G. Whitescarver, Office of the Construction Code Official (DCRA)
Jay Wilson, District Department of the Environment
Jason Wright, Building Industry—Commercial & Industrial

CCCB Staff and Support
Jill Stern
*Code Board and Green Initiatives Coordinating Specialist (DCRA)*

Leslie Camacho
*Program Analyst (DCRA)*

Michael DeSonier
*Legislative and Regulatory Counsel Fellow (DCRA)*

LaShawn Dickey
*Program Support Specialist (DCRA)*

Robert E. Finn
*Supervisory Legislative & Public Affairs Officer (DCRA)*

Helen Hooks-Scott
*Program Analyst (DCRA)*

Danielle Gurkin
*Legislative Affairs Specialist (DCRA)*

Jonathan Kuhl
*Chief of External Affairs (DCRA)*

Matt Orlins
*Legislative and Public Affairs Officer (DCRA)*

Maximilian Tondro
*Office of the General Counsel (DCRA)*

**TECHNICAL ADVISORY GROUPS**

**Accessibility**
Jason Wright, Chair
*Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Onyel G. Bhola, Gary W. Englebert, Jessica Hunt, Rabbiah Sabbakhan, Marshella M. Wallace*

**Administration & Enforcement**
Marc Fetterman, Chair
Jatinder Khokhar, Chair
*Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Alexander Berley, Lyle Blanchard, David Briggs, Gary W. Englebert, Marc Fetterman, Armando Lourenco, Eric Mayl, Lynn Underwood, Lucinda L. VerBeek, Clarence G. Whitescarver, Kirsten Williams*

**Building (including Swimming Pool)**
Christopher Bailey, Chair
Gary W. Englebert, Chair
Rabbiah Sabbakhan, Chair
*Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Joel Causey, Laura DeBonis, Marc Fetterman, Jyh Mei Lee, Robert Looper, Eric Mayl, Lucinda L. VerBeek, Ryan Waltke, David P. Wilmot, Joe F. Winters*

**Electrical**
Jatinder Khokhar, Chair
Clarence G. Whitescarver, Chair
*Voting Members: Mohamed Abdelmoneim, Mouhamadou M. Diack, Derek Gallardo, Jerome Pyzza, Shahadat Suhrawardy*

**Elevator**
Marc Fetterman, Chair
*Voting Members: Roger W. Jessee, Matthew P. Pike, Graydon Ripley, Richard Shaffer, Matthew P. Warring, Steve Weaver, Sonia A. Zamora, Paul R. Zweig*
Existing Buildings
Marc Fetterman, Chair
Ethan Landis, Chair
Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Gary W. Englebert, Marc Fetterman, Eric Mayl, Donald P. Silverstein, Dennis A. Sullivan, Nicola Y. White, Clarence G. Whitescarver

Fire & Life Safety
Tony Falwell, Chair
Voting Members: Silroy Brown, Raymond A. Grill, Joseph Hauf, Robert Looper, Eric Mayl, Justin Norton, Scott V. Vandame, Nicola Y. White, Jason Wright

Green Construction & Energy—Commercial
Casey Studhalter, Chair
William Updike, Chair
Jay Wilson, Chair

Mechanical
Marc Fetterman, Chair
Armando Lourenco, Chair

Property Maintenance
Jatinder Khokhar, Chair
Lynn Underwood, Chair
Clarence G. Whitescarver, Chair
Voting Members: Matthew Borger, Joel Causey, Joel Cohn, Beth Harrison, Joseph Luers, John Ritz, Robert Simpkins, Kirsten Williams

Residential & Energy-Residential
David Epley, Chair
Voting Members: Asa Foss, Douglas D. Horgan, Ethan Landis, Elliott Seibert, Tanya Topolewski, Chris A. Toussaint, Lynn Underwood, Lucinda VerBeek, Keith Winston

Structural & Special Inspections
Kellie Farster, Chair
Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Kelly Clawson, Matthew J. Daw, David Griggs, John Landry, Dara Naderi, Howard J. Rosenberg, Rabbiah Sabbakhan, Amrik Virk, Lauren Wingo

Flood Hazard Special Committee
Nicholas Bonard, Chair
Phetmano Phannavong, Chair
Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Trevor Cone, Gary W. Englebert, Marc Fetterman, Aaron Henderson, Ben Johnson, Michael Marsala, Joe Snider, Clarence G. Whitescarver

Building Code Chapter 32 Projections into Public Space Working Groups
Marc Fetterman, Chair
Voting Members: Christopher Bailey, Kathleen Beeton, Anna Chamberlin, Laura DeBonis, Dan Emerine, Elliott Garrett, Kendra Harvey, Evelyn Israel, Matthew Marcou, Christopher Shaheen

OFFICE OF THE ATTORNEY GENERAL
Brian Flowers
David Hyden
Art Parker
Janet Robbins

OTHER DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA GOVERNMENT AGENCIES
Department of Energy and the Environment; Department of Public Health; Department of Transportation; Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department; Green Building Advisory Council; Office of Disability Rights; Office of Documents and Administrative Issuances; Office of Historic Preservation; Office of Planning; Office of State Superintendent of Education; Office of the Tenant Advocate; Office of Unified Communications; DC Water
ORGANIZATIONS
Apartment and Office Building Association (AOBA); Associated Builders and Contractors, District of Columbia Building Industry Association (DCBIA)

The code development process involved the work of hundreds of people. Every effort was made to include all who participated.

Any errors or omissions in the Acknowledgments are entirely unintended.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 1  ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT  ................. 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>General .................. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Applicability ............ 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs .................. 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Duties and Powers of Code Official .................. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Permits .................. 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Submittal Documents ........ 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Temporary Structures and Uses .................. 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Fees .................. 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Inspections .................. 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Letters of Core And Shell Completion and Certificates Authorizing Occupancy and Use of Premises .................. 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Revocation of Permits and Certificates .................. 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Internal Agency Review and Appeals of Final Decisions of Code Official and Zoning Administrator .................. 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Violations, Remedies, Penalties, and Other Enforcement Actions .................. 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Stop Work Order .................. 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Unsafe Conditions .................. 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>Emergency Conditions .................. 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>Posting of Occupant Load and Live Load Signs .................. 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>Addresses of Premises .................. 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>Service Utilities .................. 61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Covenants and Agreements .................. 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>[Reserved] .................. 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Amendments and Copies .................. 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Transitory Provisions .................. 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 2  DEFINITIONS ................................ 67

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>General .................. 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>General Definitions .................. 67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 3  USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION .................. 101

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>General .................. 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Classification .................. 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Assembly Group A .................. 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Business Group B .................. 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>Educational Group E .................. 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>Factory Group F .................. 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>High-hazard Group H .................. 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>Institutional Group I .................. 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309</td>
<td>Mercantile Group M .................. 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Residential Group R .................. 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>Storage Group S .................. 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312</td>
<td>Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .................. 111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 4  SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY ........ 113

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Scope .................. 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Covered Mall and Open Mall Buildings .................. 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>High-rise Buildings .................. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Atriums .................. 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Underground Buildings .................. 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Motor-vehicle-related Occupancies .................. 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>407</td>
<td>Group I-2 .................. 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408</td>
<td>Group I-3 .................. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409</td>
<td>Motion Picture Projection Rooms .................. 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Stages, Platforms and Technical Production Areas .................. 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Special Amusement Buildings .................. 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>Aircraft-related Occupancies .................. 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Combustible Storage .................. 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>414</td>
<td>Hazardous Materials .................. 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415</td>
<td>Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 .................. 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>416</td>
<td>Application of Flammable Finishes .................. 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>417</td>
<td>Drying Rooms .................. 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>418</td>
<td>Organic Coatings .................. 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>419</td>
<td>Live/work Units .................. 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1002</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1003</td>
<td>General Means of Egress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1004</td>
<td>Occupant Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1005</td>
<td>Means of Egress Sizing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1006</td>
<td>Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007</td>
<td>Exit and Exit Access Doorway Configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1008</td>
<td>Means of Egress Illumination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1009</td>
<td>Accessible Means of Egress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1010</td>
<td>Doors, Gates and Turnstiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1011</td>
<td>Stairways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1012</td>
<td>Ramps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1013</td>
<td>Exit Signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1014</td>
<td>Handrails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1015</td>
<td>Guards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1016</td>
<td>Exit Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1017</td>
<td>Exit Access Travel Distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1018</td>
<td>Aisles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1019</td>
<td>Exit Access Stairways and Ramps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1020</td>
<td>Corridors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1021</td>
<td>Egress Balconies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1022</td>
<td>Exits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1023</td>
<td>Interior Exit Stairways and Ramps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1024</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1025</td>
<td>[Reserved]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1026</td>
<td>Horizontal Exits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1027</td>
<td>Exterior Exit Stairways and Ramps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1028</td>
<td>Exit Discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1029</td>
<td>Assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1030</td>
<td>Emergency Escape and Rescue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1102</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1103</td>
<td>Scoping Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1104</td>
<td>Accessible Route</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1105</td>
<td>Accessible Entrances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1106</td>
<td>Parking and Passenger Loading Facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1107</td>
<td>Dwelling Units and Sleeping Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1108</td>
<td>Special Occupancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1109</td>
<td>Other Features and Facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1110</td>
<td>Recreational Facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1111</td>
<td>Signage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1201</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1202</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1203</td>
<td>Ventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1204</td>
<td>Temperature Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1205</td>
<td>Lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1206</td>
<td>Yards or Courts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1207</td>
<td>Sound Transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1208</td>
<td>Interior Space Dimensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1209</td>
<td>Access to Unoccupied Spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1210</td>
<td>Toilet and Bathroom Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1301</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1401</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1402</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1403</td>
<td>Performance Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1404</td>
<td>Materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1405</td>
<td>Installation of Wall Coverings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1406</td>
<td>Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior Walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1407</td>
<td>Metal Composite Materials (MCM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1408</td>
<td>Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1409</td>
<td>High-pressure Decorative Exterior-grade Compact Laminates (HPL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1410</td>
<td>Plastic Composite Decking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1501</td>
<td>General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1502</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1503</td>
<td>Weather Protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1504</td>
<td>Performance Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1505</td>
<td>Fire Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1506</td>
<td>Materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 16 Structural Design .......... 421
Section
1601 General .................................. 421
1602 Definitions and Notations ............ 421
1603 Construction Documents .............. 421
1604 General Design Requirements ........ 423
1605 Load Combinations ...................... 426
1606 Dead Loads ................................ 427
1607 Live Loads ................................ 427
1608 Snow Loads ................................ 434
1609 Wind Loads ................................ 435
1610 Soil Lateral Loads ......................... 448
1611 Rain Loads ................................ 448
1612 Flood Loads ................................ 449
1613 Earthquake Loads ......................... 455
1614 Atmospheric Ice Loads .................. 457
1615 Structural Integrity ...................... 457

Chapter 17 Special Inspections and Tests .... 471
Section
1701 General .................................. 471
1702 Definitions ................................ 471
1703 Approvals ................................ 471
1704 Special Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation . 472
1705 Required Special Inspections and Tests . 474
1706 Design Strengths of Materials ......... 482
1707 Alternative Test Procedure ............. 482
1708 In-situ Load Tests ......................... 482
1709 Preconstruction Load Tests ............. 483

Chapter 18 Soils and Foundations .......... 485
Section
1801 General .................................. 485
1802 Definitions ................................ 485
1803 Geotechnical Investigations ............ 485
1804 Excavation, Grading and Fill .......... 487
1805 Dampproofing and Waterproofing ....... 488
1806 Presumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils ....... 489
1807 Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles ............ 490
1808 Foundations .............................. 496
1809 Shallow Foundations ..................... 498
1810 Deep Foundations ......................... 501

Chapter 19 Concrete ......................... 515
Section
1901 General .................................. 515
1902 Definitions ................................ 515
1903 Specifications for Tests and Materials . 515
1904 Durability Requirements ................ 515
1905 Modifications to ACI 318 ............... 516
1906 Structural Plain Concrete ............... 518
1907 Minimum Plain Concrete ................ 518
1908 Shotcrete ................................ 518

Chapter 20 Aluminum ....................... 521
Section
2001 General .................................. 521
2002 Materials ................................ 521

Chapter 21 Masonry ......................... 523
Section
2101 General .................................. 523
2102 Definitions and Notations .............. 523
2103 Masonry Construction Materials ........ 524
2104 Construction ................................ 525
2105 Quality Assurance ....................... 525
2106 Seismic Design ............................ 525
2107 Allowable Stress Design ................. 525
2108 Strength Design of Masonry .............. 525
2109 Empirical Design of Masonry .......... 526
2110 Glass Unit Masonry ....................... 528
2111 Masonry Fireplaces ....................... 528
2112 Masonry Heaters .......................... 530
2113 Masonry Chimneys ....................... 531

Chapter 22 Steel ............................. 537
Section
2201 General .................................. 537
2202 Definitions ................................ 537
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2203</td>
<td>Identification and Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes</td>
<td>537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2204</td>
<td>Connections</td>
<td>537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2205</td>
<td>Structural Steel</td>
<td>537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2206</td>
<td>Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2207</td>
<td>Steel Joists</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2208</td>
<td>Steel Cable Structures</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2209</td>
<td>Steel Storage Racks</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2210</td>
<td>Cold-formed Steel</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2211</td>
<td>Cold-formed Steel Light-frame Construction</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 23 WOOD</strong></td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2301</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2302</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2303</td>
<td>Minimum Standards and Quality</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2304</td>
<td>General Construction Requirements</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2305</td>
<td>General Design Requirements for Lateral Force-resisting Systems</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2306</td>
<td>Allowable Stress Design</td>
<td>559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2307</td>
<td>Load and Resistance Factor Design</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2308</td>
<td>Conventional Light-frame Construction</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2309</td>
<td>Wood Frame Construction Manual</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 24 GLASS AND GLAZING</strong></td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2401</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2402</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2403</td>
<td>General Requirements for Glass</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2404</td>
<td>Wind, Snow, Seismic and Dead Loads on Glass</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2405</td>
<td>Sloped Glazing and Skylights</td>
<td>615</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2406</td>
<td>Safety Glazing</td>
<td>616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2407</td>
<td>Glass in Handrails and Guards</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2408</td>
<td>Glazing in Athletic Facilities</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2409</td>
<td>Glass in Walkways, Elevator Hoistways and Elevator Cars</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 25 GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER</strong></td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2501</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2502</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2503</td>
<td>Inspection</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2504</td>
<td>Vertical and Horizontal Assemblies</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2505</td>
<td>Shear Wall Construction</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2506</td>
<td>Gypsum Board and Gypsum Panel Product Materials</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2507</td>
<td>Lathing and Plastering</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2508</td>
<td>Gypsum Construction</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2509</td>
<td>Showers and Water Closets</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2510</td>
<td>Lathing and Furring for Cement Plaster (Stucco)</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2511</td>
<td>Interior Plaster</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2512</td>
<td>Exterior Plaster</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2513</td>
<td>Exposed Aggregate Plaster</td>
<td>626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2514</td>
<td>Reinforced Gypsum Concrete</td>
<td>626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 26 PLASTIC</strong></td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2601</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2602</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2603</td>
<td>Foam Plastic Insulation</td>
<td>627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2604</td>
<td>Interior Finish and Trim</td>
<td>632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2605</td>
<td>Plastic Veneer</td>
<td>633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2606</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastics</td>
<td>633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2607</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastic Wall Panels</td>
<td>634</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2608</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastic Glazing</td>
<td>635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2609</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastic Roof Panels</td>
<td>635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2610</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastic Skylight Glazing</td>
<td>636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2611</td>
<td>Light-transmitting Plastic Interior Signs</td>
<td>636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2612</td>
<td>Plastic Composites</td>
<td>637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2613</td>
<td>Fiber-reinforced Polymer</td>
<td>637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2614</td>
<td>Reflective Plastic Core Insulation</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 27 ELECTRICAL</strong></td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2701</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2702</td>
<td>Emergency and Standby Power Systems</td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 28 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS</strong></td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2801</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHAPTER 29 PLUMBING SYSTEMS</strong></td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2901</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2902</td>
<td>Minimum Plumbing Facilities</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 30  ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS  . . . . . . . . . . 649

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3001</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3002</td>
<td>Hoistway Enclosures</td>
<td>649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3003</td>
<td>Emergency Operations</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3004</td>
<td>Conveying Systems</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3005</td>
<td>Machine Rooms</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3006</td>
<td>Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3007</td>
<td>Fire Service Access Elevator</td>
<td>652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3008</td>
<td>Occupant Evacuation Elevators</td>
<td>653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3009</td>
<td>Certificate of Inspection</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3010</td>
<td>Required Elevator Signage</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3011</td>
<td>Amendments To Standard ASME A17.1</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 31  SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION  . . . . . . 659

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3101</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3102</td>
<td>Membrane Structures</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3103</td>
<td>Temporary Structures</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3104</td>
<td>Pedestrian Walkways and Tunnels</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3105</td>
<td>Awnings and Canopies</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3106</td>
<td>Marquees</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3107</td>
<td>Signs</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3108</td>
<td>Telecommunication and Broadcast Towers</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3109</td>
<td>Swimming Pool Enclosures and Safety Devices</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3110</td>
<td>Automatic Vehicular Gates</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3111</td>
<td>Photovoltaic Panels and Modules</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3112</td>
<td>Fences</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 32  ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY  . . . . . . 665

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3201</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3202</td>
<td>Projections</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 33  SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION  . . . . . . 675

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3301</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3302</td>
<td>Construction Safeguards</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3303</td>
<td>Demolition</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3304</td>
<td>Site Work</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3305</td>
<td>Sanitary</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3306</td>
<td>Protection of Pedestrians</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3307</td>
<td>Protection of Adjoining Property</td>
<td>677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3308</td>
<td>Temporary Use of Streets, Alleys and Public Property</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3309</td>
<td>Fire Extinguishers</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3310</td>
<td>Means of Egress</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3311</td>
<td>Standpipes</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3312</td>
<td>Automatic Sprinkler System</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3313</td>
<td>Water Supply for Fire Protection</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 34  EXISTING BUILDINGS  . . . . . . 681

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3401</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 35  REFERENCED STANDARDS  . . . . . . 683

## APPENDIX A  EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS  . . . . . . 709

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A101</td>
<td>Building Official Qualifications</td>
<td>709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A102</td>
<td>Referenced Standards</td>
<td>709</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## APPENDIX B  BOARD OF APPEALS  . . . . . . 711

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B101</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>711</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## APPENDIX C  GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS  . . . . . . 713

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C101</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C102</td>
<td>Allowable Height and Area</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C103</td>
<td>Mixed Occupancies</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C104</td>
<td>Exits</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## APPENDIX D  FIRE DISTRICTS  . . . . . . 715

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D101</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D102</td>
<td>Building Restrictions</td>
<td>715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D103</td>
<td>Changes to Buildings</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D104</td>
<td>Buildings Located Partially in the Fire District</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D105</td>
<td>Exceptions to Restrictions in Fire District</td>
<td>716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D106</td>
<td>Referenced Standards</td>
<td>717</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS

K106  Required Inspections .......................... 746
K107  Prefabricated Construction ................. 746
K108  Testing ........................................ 747
K109  Reconnection .................................. 747
K110  Condemning Electrical Systems ............ 747
K111  Electrical Provisions .......................... 747

APPENDIX L  EARTHQUAKE RECORDING
            INSTRUMENTATION ................. 749
L101  General ................................. 749

APPENDIX M  TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD
            HAZARD ................................. 751
M101  Tsunami-generated Flood Hazard ............. 751
M102  Referenced Standards ........................ 751

APPENDIX N  SIGNS ................................. 753
N101  General ................................. 753

INDEX ............................................. 781
CHAPTER 1
ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION 101
GENERAL

101.1 The Construction Codes. The 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes, hereinafter referred to as the “Construction Codes,” shall consist of:

1. The following Model Codes:
   1.2. The International Residential Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.4. The International Fuel Gas Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.5. The International Mechanical Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.6. The International Plumbing Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.7. The International Property Maintenance Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.8. The International Fire Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.10. The International Existing Building Code (2015) published by the ICC.
   1.11. The International Green Construction Code (2012) published by the ICC.

2. All additions, insertions, and deletions to the Model Codes, as identified in the District of Columbia Construction Codes Supplement of 2017 (the Construction Codes Supplement), codified in Title 12 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations (DCMR).

3. Appendices in the Model Codes shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.1.1 Authority to adopt Construction Codes. The Construction Codes are adopted in the District of Columbia pursuant to the provisions of the Construction Codes Act (as defined in Section 202.2).


101.1.3 Definitions. Italicized words and terms shall have the meanings set forth in the Construction Codes.


101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Building Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.2.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Building Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR A, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Building Code and are incorporated herein by this reference.

101.2.3 Scope. The provisions of the Building Code shall apply to the construction, alteration, addition, relocation, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal, demolition and raze of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures that comply with the Residential Code and Chapters 17, 18, 32 and 33 of the Building Code.

2. Existing buildings undergoing repair, alteration, addition or change of occupancy that comply with the Existing Building Code.

3. Home day care in dwelling units in Group R-3 dwellings that comply with Appendix M of the Residential Code.
101.2.4 Intent. The purpose of the Building Code is to establish the minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, public health and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy conservation, accessibility, sustainability, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment, and to provide a reasonable level of safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.


101.3.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Residential Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.3.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Residential Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Residential Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.3.3 Scope. The provisions of the Residential Code shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, demolition, and raze of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures.

Exceptions:
1. Live/work units complying with the requirements of Section 419 of the Building Code shall be allowed to be built as one- and two-family dwellings or townhouses. Fire suppression required by Section 419.5 of the Building Code, when a unit is constructed under the Residential Code, shall conform to Section 2904 of the Residential Code.
2. Owner-occupied lodging houses with five or fewer guestrooms shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the Residential Code when equipped with a fire sprinkler system that is in accordance with Section 2904 of the Residential Code.
3. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures, shall be permitted to comply with the Building Code as defined in Section 101.2.
4. Existing buildings undergoing repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition to or relocation shall comply with the Existing Building Code defined in Section 101.4.8 or the current Construction Codes.

101.3.4 Intent. The purpose of the Residential Code is to establish the minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, public health and general welfare through affordability, structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, sanitation, adequate light and ventilation, energy and resource conservation, and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment, and to provide a reasonable level of safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.


101.4.1. Annexes. Provisions in the annexes to the National Electrical Code are provided for informational purposes only, in accordance with Article 90, Section 90.5 of the National Electrical Code, unless otherwise specified in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.4.2 Administration and enforcement. The provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Electrical Code and are incorporated by this reference, without deletion of Article 90 of the National Electrical Code except as specified.

Exceptions: Sections 90.1(A), 90.1(C), 90.2, 90.4 and 90.6 of Article 90 of the National Electrical Code are deleted in their entirety.

101.4.3 Scope. The provisions of the Electrical Code shall apply to the design, installation, maintenance, alteration, conversion, changing, repairing, removal and inspection of electrical conductors, equipment and raceways; signaling and communications conductors, equipment and raceways; and optical fiber cables and raceways for the following:
1. Public and private premises, including, but not limited to, buildings, other structures, mobile homes, recreational vehicles, and floating buildings.
2. Yards, lots, parking lots, carnivals, circuses, fairs and similar events, and industrial substations.
3. Installation of conductors and equipment that connect to the supply of electricity.
4. Installations used by the electric utility, such as office buildings, warehouses, garages, machine
shops, and recreational buildings, that are not an integral part of a generating plant, substation, or control center.

Exceptions:

1. Installations in ships, watercraft other than floating buildings, railway rolling stock, aircraft, or automotive vehicles other than mobile homes and recreational vehicles.
2. Installations underground in mines and self-propelled mobile surface mining machinery and its attendant electrical trailing cable.
3. Installation of railways for generation, transformation, transmission, or distribution of power used exclusively for operation of rolling stock or installations used exclusively for signaling and communications purposes.
4. Installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.
5. Installations under the exclusive control of an electrical utility where such installations:
   5.1. Consist of service drops or service laterals, and associated metering.
   5.2. Are on property owned or leased by the electric utility for the purpose of communications, metering, generation, control, transformation, transmission or distribution of electric energy.
   5.3. Are located in legally established easements or rights-of-way.
   5.4. Are located by other written agreements designated by or recognized by public service commissions, utility commissions or other regulatory agencies having jurisdiction for such installations. These written agreements shall be limited to installations for the purpose of communications, metering, generation, control, transformation, transmission, or distribution of electrical energy where legally established easements or rights-of-way cannot be obtained. These installations shall be limited to federal lands, Native American reservations through the US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Indian Affairs, military bases, lands controlled by port authorities and state agencies and departments, and lands owned by railroads.
6. Installations that are part of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with separate means of egress and their accessory structures that comply with the Residential Code.

101.4.4 Intent. The purpose of the Electrical Code is to establish minimum requirements to safeguard persons and property from hazards arising from the use of electricity, and is not intended as a design specification or as an instruction manual for untrained persons.


101.5.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Fuel Gas Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.5.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Fuel Gas Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Fuel Gas Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.5.3 Scope. The provisions of the Fuel Gas Code shall apply to the installation of fuel gas piping systems, fuel gas utilization equipment, gaseous hydrogen systems and related accessories, as follows:

1. Gaseous hydrogen systems shall be regulated by Chapter 7.
2. The regulations shall cover piping systems for natural gas with an operating pressure of 125 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (862 kPa gauge) or less, and for LP-gas with an operating pressure of 20 psig (140 kPa gauge) or less, except as provided in Section 402.6.1. Coverage shall extend from the point of delivery to the outlet of the equipment shutoff valves. Piping system requirements shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation and maintenance.
3. Requirements for gas utilization equipment and related accessories shall include installation, combustion and dilution air, and venting and connection to piping systems.
4. The requirements for the design, installation, maintenance, alteration and inspection of mechanical appliances operating with fuels other than fuel gas shall be regulated by the Mechanical Code.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with separate means of egress and their accessory structures that comply with the Residential Code.

101.5.3.1 Exempted installations and equipment. The Fuel Gas Code shall not apply to the following:

1. Portable LP-gas equipment of all types that is not connected to a fixed fuel system.
2. Installation of farm equipment such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers and irrigation equipment.
3. Raw material (feedstock) applications, except for piping to special atmosphere generators.
4. Oxygen-fuel gas cutting and welding systems.
5. Industrial gas applications using gases such as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen and nitrogen.
6. Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms and natural gas processing plants.
7. Integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions.
8. LP-gas installations at utility gas plants.
10. Fuel gas piping in power and atomic energy plants.
11. Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas generating sets, compressors and calorimeters.
12. LP-gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing and gas manufacturing.
13. Temporary LP-gas piping for buildings under construction or renovation that is not to become part of the permanent piping system.
15. Installation of LP-gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles.
16. Except as provided in Section 401.1.1 of the Fuel Gas Code, gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in the distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-gas.
17. Building design and construction, except as specified herein.
18. Piping systems for mixtures of gas and air within the flammable range with an operating pressure greater than 10 psig (69 kPa gauge).
19. Portable fuel cell appliances that are neither connected to a fixed piping system nor interconnected to a power grid.

101.5.4 Intent. The purpose of the Fuel Gas Code is to establish minimum standards to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of fuel gas systems.


101.6.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Mechanical Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.6.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Mechanical Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Mechanical Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.6.3 Scope. The provisions of the Mechanical Code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, alteration and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within buildings. The Mechanical Code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, components, equipment and appliances specifically addressed therein. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and equipment, fuel gas-fired appliances and fuel gas-fired appliance venting systems shall be regulated by the Fuel Gas Code.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with separate means of egress and their accessory structures that comply with the Residential Code.

101.6.4 Intent. The purpose of the Mechanical Code is to establish minimum standards to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of mechanical systems.


101.7.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Plumbing Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.7.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Plumbing Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Plumbing Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.7.3 Scope. The provisions of the Plumbing Code shall apply to the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relo-

101.8.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the *International Property Maintenance Code* shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the *Construction Codes Supplement*.

101.8.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the *International Property Maintenance Code* is deleted in its entirety. Administration and enforcement provisions for the *Property Maintenance Code* are set forth in 12-G DCMR, Chapter 1.

101.8.3 Scope. The provisions of the *Property Maintenance Code* shall apply to all existing residential and nonresidential *premises* and shall constitute minimum requirements and standards for: *premises*, equipment, and facilities for light, ventilation, space, heating, sanitation, protection from the elements, a reasonable level of safety from fire and other hazards, and for a reasonable level of sanitary maintenance; the responsibility of *owners*, *operators* and *occupants*; the *occupancy* of existing *premises*; and for administration, enforcement and penalties.

101.8.4 Intent. The purpose of the *Property Maintenance Code* is to ensure public health, safety and welfare insofar as they are affected by the continued *occupancy* and maintenance of *premises*. Existing *premises* that do not comply with these provisions shall be altered or repaired to provide a minimum level of health and safety as required therein.


101.9.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the *International Fire Code* shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the *Construction Codes Supplement*.

101.9.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the *International Fire Code* is deleted in its entirety. Administration and enforcement provisions for the *Fire Code* are set forth in 12-H DCMR, Chapter 1.

101.9.3 Scope. The provisions of the *Fire Code* shall establish regulations affecting or relating to *premises*, processes and safeguards regarding: the hazard of fire and explosion arising from the storage, handling or use of *structures*, materials or devices; conditions hazardous to life, property or public welfare in the *occupancy* of *premises*; fire hazards on the *premises* from *occupancy* or *operation*; and conditions affecting the safety of fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

101.9.4 Intent. The purpose of the *Fire Code* is to establish the minimum requirements consistent with nationally recognized good practice for providing a reasonable level of life safety and property protection from the hazards of fire, explosion or dangerous conditions in all *premises*, and to provide a reasonable level of safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.


101.10.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices to the *Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions* shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the *Construction Codes Supplement*.

101.10.1 Normative and Informative Appendices. Normative Appendices A, B, C, D and G of ASHRAE 90.1, as amended by the Energy Conservation Code Supplement, are adopted in the District of Columbia as an integral part of the mandatory requirements of the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions, which, for reasons of convenience are placed apart from all other normative elements. Informative Appendices E and F of ASHRAE 90.1 and informative notes located within the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions contain additional information and are not mandatory requirements.

101.10.2 Administration and enforcement. Sections 1, 2 and 4 of ASHRAE 90.1 and Chapter 1 [RE] of the International Energy Conservation Code are deleted in their entirety. In their place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Energy Conservation Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.10.3 Scope and general requirements.

101.10.3.1 Scope. The Energy Conservation Code shall apply to commercial buildings, residential buildings and the buildings’ sites and associated systems and equipment.

Exceptions:

1. Existing buildings. Except as specified in 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, the Energy Conservation Code shall not be used to require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of the Energy Conservation Code.

2. Historic buildings. Provisions of the Energy Conservation Code relating to the construction, repair, alteration, restoration and movement of structures, and change of occupancy shall not be mandatory for historic buildings provided that a report has been submitted to the code official and signed by the owner, or a registered design professional, or a certification has been submitted to the code official and signed by the State Historic Preservation Office, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the building.

3. Low energy buildings. The following buildings, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by building thermal envelope assemblies complying with the Energy Conservation Code shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of the Energy Conservation Code:

   a. Buildings, or portions thereof, with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h • ft² (10.7 W/m²) or 1.0 watt/ft² (10.7 W/m²) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.

   b. Buildings, or portions thereof, that do not contain conditioned space.

4. Where the commercial building project complies with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Section 101.10.6.

5. Where the residential building project complies with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Section 101.10.7.

101.10.4 Intent. The Energy Conservation Code shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. The Energy Conservation Code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. The Energy Conservation Code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.


101.10.5.1 Mixed occupancy. Where a building includes both residential and commercial occupancies, each occupancy shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions or the Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions.

101.10.5.2 Compliance materials. The code official is authorized to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of the Energy Conservation Code.

101.10.6 Alternative compliance paths for commercial building projects. In lieu of the requirements of the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions, commercial building projects that comply with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Sections 101.10.6.1 through 101.10.6.7 shall be deemed to comply with the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions.

101.10.6.1 Appendix Z. Demonstrate compliance with all sections of Appendix Z, with the exception of Section 25.2 of the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions.
101.10.6.2 Compliance utilizing ILFI Living Building Challenge. Design, construct and certify to the International Living Future Institute’s (ILFI) Living Building Challenge program for either full Living Building Challenge or Energy Petal certification. The owner shall provide documentation to the code official confirming registration with the Living Building Challenge program prior to permit issuance. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the first certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.10.6.3 Compliance utilizing ILFI Zero Energy Building. Design, construct and certify to the International Living Future Institute’s (ILFI) Net Zero Energy Building Certification. The owner shall provide documentation to the code official confirming registration with the Net Zero Energy program prior to permit issuance. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.10.6.4 Compliance utilizing PHIUS+ and on-site solar. Design, construct and certify to the Passive House Institute United States’ (PHIUS)+ program. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the certificate of occupancy for the project, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification by the PHIUS+ program to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification. Additionally, the owner must install a solar PV system on the building’s roof that offsets the annual net energy use.

101.10.6.5 Compliance utilizing PHI and on-site solar. Design, construct and certify to the Passive House Institute (PHI) program. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification by the PHI program to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification. Additionally, the owner must install a solar PV system on the building’s roof that offsets the annual net energy use.

101.10.6.6 Compliance utilizing LEED and LEED Zero Carbon. Design, construct, and certify to the LEED Rating System and LEED Zero Carbon Rating System. The owner shall provide approved documentation to the code official, prior to permit issuance, (1) confirming registration with the LEED Rating System programs, and (2) an approved pre-construction energy model that is consistent with achieving LEED Zero Carbon certification. Additionally, the owner must complete “Enhanced Commissioning” requirements during construction. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, whichever is later, to submit official evidence of certification to both LEED and LEED Zero Carbon to the code official.

101.10.6.7 Compliance utilizing LEED and LEED Zero Energy. Design, construct and certify to the LEED Rating System and LEED Zero Energy Rating System. The owner shall provide approved documentation to the code official, prior to permit issuance, (1) confirming registration with the LEED Rating System programs, and (2) an approved pre-construction energy model that is consistent with achieving LEED Zero Energy certification. Additionally, the owner must complete “Enhanced Commissioning” requirements during construction. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, whichever is later, to submit official evidence of certification to both LEED and LEED Zero Energy to the code official.

101.10.7 Alternative compliance paths for residential buildings. In lieu of the requirements of the Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions, residential building projects that comply with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Sections 101.10.7.1 through 101.10.7.9 shall be deemed to comply with the Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions.

101.10.7.1 Compliance utilizing ERI. Design and construct to an Energy Rating Index (ERI) of “0” in accordance with Section R406 of the Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions. Verify compliance at the conclusion of construction in accordance with guidance given by the code official.


101.10.7.3 Compliance utilizing ILFI Living Building Challenge. Design, construct and certify to the International Living Future Institute’s Living Building Challenge program for either full Living Building Challenge or Energy Petal certification. The owner shall provide documentation to the code official confirming registration with the Living Building Challenge program prior to permit issuance. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the first certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good
cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.10.7.4 Compliance utilizing ILFI Zero Energy Building Certification. Design, construct and certify to the International Living Future Institute’s Zero Energy Building Certification. The owner shall provide documentation to the code official confirming registration with the Zero Energy Building program prior to permit issuance. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.10.7.5 Compliance utilizing the DOE Zero Energy Ready Home and on-site solar. Design, construct and certify to the standards of the Zero Energy Ready Home program of the United States Department of Energy (DOE). The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the certificate of occupancy, or from approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification. Additionally, the owner must install a solar PV system on the roof that offsets the annual net energy use of the home.

101.10.7.6 Compliance utilizing PHIUS+ and on-site solar. Design, construct and certify to the Passive House Institute United States’ PHIUS+ program. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of the certificate of occupancy, or approval of the final inspection, to submit official evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification. Additionally, the owner must install a solar PV system on the roof that offsets the annual net energy use of the home.

101.10.7.7 Compliance utilizing PHI and on-site solar. Design, construct and certify to the Passive House Institute program. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of a certificate of occupancy or from approval of the final inspection, whichever is later, to submit official evidence of certification by the PHI program to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification. Additionally, the owner must install a solar PV system on the roof that offsets the annual net energy use of the home.

101.10.7.8 Compliance utilizing LEED and LEED Zero Carbon. Design, construct and certify to the LEED for Homes or LEED for Homes Midrise Rating Systems, and LEED Zero Carbon Rating System. The owner shall provide approved documentation to the code official, prior to permit issuance, (1) confirming registration with the LEED rating system programs, and (2) an approved pre-construction energy model that is consistent with achieving LEED Zero Carbon certification. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of a certificate of occupancy for the project or from the date of final inspection approval, whichever is later, to submit official evidence of certification by both LEED and LEED Zero Carbon to the code official.

101.10.7.9 Compliance utilizing LEED and LEED Zero Energy. Design, construct and certify to the LEED for Homes or LEED for Homes Midrise Rating Systems, and LEED Zero Energy Rating System. The owner shall provide approved documentation to the code official, prior to permit issuance, (1) confirming registration with the LEED rating system programs, and (2) an approved pre-construction energy model that is consistent with achieving LEED Zero Energy certification. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance of a certificate of occupancy for the project or from approval of the final inspection, whichever is later, to submit official evidence of certification by both LEED and LEED Zero Energy to the code official.


101.11.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices of the International Existing Building Code shall not apply unless specifically adopted in the Construction Codes Supplement.

101.11.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Existing Building Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Existing Building Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.11.3 Scope. The provisions of the Existing Building Code shall apply to the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, or relocation of, or addition to, existing buildings, including existing buildings under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code.

101.11.3.1 Residential Code references. In the Existing Building Code, all references to Group R occupancies in general, or Group R-3 in particular, shall also refer to any existing building or existing structure under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code.

101.11.3.2 Residential Code applicability. In the Existing Building Code, for buildings regulated by the Residential Code, references to the Building Code shall refer to the Residential Code.

101.11.4 Intent. The purpose of the Existing Building Code is to provide the code official with flexibility to permit the use of alternative approaches to achieve compliance with minimum requirements to safeguard the public
health, safety and welfare, insofar as they are affected by the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition or relocation of existing buildings.


101.12.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Green Construction Code is deleted in its entirety. In its place, the provisions of 12-A DCMR, Chapter 1, shall apply to the Green Construction Code and are incorporated by this reference.

101.12.3 Scope. The provisions of the Green Construction Code shall apply to the construction, addition, alteration, relocation, demolition, and razing of every building or structure and appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures and to the site on which the building or structure is located except as otherwise provided in this section or in the Green Construction Code.

Exceptions:

1. The Green Construction Code shall not apply to the following:
   a. Demolition or razing of a building or structure of less than 10,000 square feet (929 m²), unless associated with a new construction, an addition, and/or site work of 10,000 square feet or more (929 m²).
   b. New construction and associated building site development, including construction of an addition to an existing building, of less than 10,000 square feet (929 m²).
   c. Alteration of an existing building where the aggregate area of construction or renovation is less than 10,000 square feet.
   d. Relocation of structures of less than 10,000 square feet (929 m²).

2. The Green Construction Code shall not apply to the following residential construction:
   a. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories in height above grade plane with a separate means of egress, their accessory structures and the site or lot upon which these buildings are located.
   b. Group R-3 residential buildings, their accessory structures and the site or lot upon which these buildings are located.

3. The Green Construction Code shall not be deemed to require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building, building system or building component lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of the Green Construction Code, unless within the work area of an alteration as defined in Section 101.12.3.1.
   a. The Green Construction Code shall not apply to equipment or systems that are used primarily for industrial or manufacturing.
   b. The Green Construction Code shall not apply to temporary structures approved under Sections 107 and 3103 of the Building Code.
   c. Appendix A to the Green Construction Code shall not apply to alterations except for Level 3 alterations, or Level 2 alterations 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) and larger where 10,000 square feet (929 m²) of the space is being reconfigured.
   d. Appendix A to the Green Construction Code shall not apply to first time tenant fit-outs except for first time tenant fit-outs 10,000 square feet (929 m²) and larger.


5. The Green Construction Code shall not apply where a project complies with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Section 101.12.5.

101.12.3.1 Applicability to alteration. Determination of whether the area threshold would be triggered by an alteration of an existing building shall be based upon the aggregate area affected by the alteration; the work area where the alteration is to take place shall be identified in the permit application. An alteration includes, but is not limited to, fit out of space in an existing building not previously built out and fit out of space following demolition of previously built out space in an existing building. Areas of an existing building beyond the work area of an alteration shall not be included to determine if the Green Construction Code would be applicable to the alteration. Notwithstanding a determination that the size of the work area of an alteration would subject the alteration to the provisions of the Green Construction Code, compliance with the Green Construction Code shall not be required for building areas, components and systems that are located outside of the affected work area of the alteration.
101.12.5. Alternative compliance paths. In lieu of the applicable codes or ordinances, safety, health or environmental requirements under other construction Code is not intended to abridge or supersede the General Environment and public health through the establishment of safety and general welfare through the establishment of the provisions of the Green Construction Code are deemed to comply with the provisions of the Green Construction Code. 

101.12.4 Intent. The Green Construction Code is intended to safeguard the environment, public health, safety and general welfare through the establishment of requirements to reduce the negative impacts and increase the positive impacts of the built environment on the natural environment and building occupants. The Green Construction Code is not intended to abridge or supersede other applicable codes or ordinances.

101.12.5. Alternative compliance paths. In lieu of the requirements of the Green Construction Code, projects that comply with one of the alternative compliance paths set forth in Sections 101.12.5.1 through 101.12.5.4. shall be deemed to comply with the Green Construction Code.

101.12.5.1 Compliance utilizing Living Building Challenge. Projects designed, constructed and certified to be in compliance with the International Living Future Institute’s Living Building Challenge standard listed in Chapter 35 shall be deemed to comply with the Green Construction Code. The owner shall have an 18-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or the first certificate of occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane where a project has multiple certificates of occupancy, to submit evidence of Living Building Challenge certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.12.5.2 Compliance utilizing LEED. Projects designed, constructed and certified to be in compliance with one or more of the US Green Building Council (USGBC) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) standards listed in Chapter 35 at the Certified Level or higher shall be deemed to comply with the Green Construction Code. The owner shall have a 12-month period from the date of issuance for the project of the certificate of occupancy, or the first certificate of occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane where a project has multiple certificates of occupancy, to submit evidence of LEED certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.12.5.3 Compliance utilizing Green Communities. Affordable housing in Group R-2 occupancies designed, constructed and certified to be in compliance with the Enterprise Community Partners standard listed in Chapter 35 shall be deemed to comply with the Green Construction Code. The owner shall have a 12-month period from the date of issuance for the Group R-2 occupancy of the certificate of occupancy, or the first certificate of occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane where a project has multiple certificates of occupancy, to submit evidence of certification with the applicable Enterprise Community Partners standard to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.

101.12.5.4 Compliance utilizing National Green Building Standard (ICC 700). Group R-2 occupancies designed, constructed and certified to be in compliance with: (a) the National Green Building Standard, ICC 700, listed in Chapter 35, at the bronze level or higher; and (b) the EPA’s Energy Star New Homes Program or Multifamily High Rise Program, as applicable, listed in Chapter 35, shall be deemed to comply with the Green Construction Code. The owner shall have a 12-month period from the date of issuance for the Group R-2 occupancy of the certificate of occupancy, or the first certificate of occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane where a project has multiple certificates of occupancy, to submit evidence of certification to the code official. The code official, for good cause and upon written request, is authorized to extend the period to submit evidence of certification.


101.13.2 Administration and enforcement. Chapter 1 of the International Swimming Pool and Spa Code is deleted.
**101.13.3 Scope.** The provisions of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, renovation, replacement, repair and maintenance of aquatic recreation facilities, pools and spas. The pools and spas covered by the Swimming Pool and Spa Code are either permanent or temporary, and shall be only those that are designed and manufactured to be connected to a circulation system and that are intended for swimming, bathing or wading.

**101.13.4 Intent.** The purpose of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code is to establish minimum standards to provide a reasonable level of safety and protection of health, property and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location and maintenance or use of pools and spas.

**101.13.5 Applicability.** Any pool or spa and related mechanical, electrical and plumbing systems lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code shall be permitted to have their use and maintenance continued if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and no hazard to life, health or property is created. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to any pool, spa or related system shall conform to the requirements for a new system without requiring the existing systems to comply with the requirements of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code provided that such systems were lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code.

**101.13.5.1 Moved pools and spas.** Unless covered by Section 101.13.5, systems that are a part of a pool, spa or system moved indoor within the District of Columbia shall comply with the provisions of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code for new installations.

**101.13.6 Other requirements.** Owners and operators of swimming pools and spas shall also comply with the requirements of other District government agencies, including the Department of Health (DOH) regulations set forth in 25-C DCMR, Chapter 64, and the Department of the Environment (DDOE) regulations set forth in 21 DCMR, Chapter 5.

**101.14 Jurisdiction.** The Construction Codes shall apply to premises within the limits of the District of Columbia, including premises owned, occupied or controlled by the Government of the District of Columbia or any of its independent agencies.

**101.14.1 Federal premises.** Except as set forth in Section 101.14.1.1, the Construction Codes shall not apply to premises owned by the United States of America. Premises under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States government in his or her official capacity shall be deemed to be owned by the United States of America for purposes of this section, provided that the premises shall not be deemed to be under the exclusive control of an officer of the United States government where: (a) the premises (or any portions thereof) are leased to the United States of America, but the lessor is responsible for maintenance and repairs to the leased premises; or (b) the premises are owned by the United States of America, but leased to a person or persons other than the United States of America for development pursuant to a long-term ground lease or comparable property interest.

**101.14.1.1 Applicability of environmental laws and regulations.** Notwithstanding Section 101.14.1, and even where the Construction Codes may not otherwise apply to a particular project, a permit in accordance with Section 105.1 is required for (1) major substantial improvement activities (as defined in 21 DCMR, Chapter 5) or (2) land-disturbing activities involving the implementation of stormwater management, erosion and sediment control, or floodplain management measures, and to the extent required by, 21 DCMR, Chapter 5; 20 DCMR, Chapter 31; or the Soil Erosion and Sedimentation Control Amendment Act of 1994, effective August 26, 1994 [DC Law 10-166; DC Official Code § 6-1403 (2018 Repl.)].

**101.14.2 Foreign missions.** The Construction Codes shall apply to those buildings occupied by or for any foreign government as an embassy or chancery to the extent provided for in Section 206 of the Foreign Missions Act, approved August 24, 1982 [96 Stat. 286; DC Official Code § 6-1306(g) (2018 Repl.)], that is, foreign missions shall substantially comply with the Construction Codes as required by the US Secretary of State in a manner determined by the Secretary not to be inconsistent with the international obligations of the United States. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a permit shall be required for all land-disturbing activities or major substantial improvement activities as defined by 21 DCMR, Chapter 5.

**101.14.3 President or Vice President’s residence.** No permit required under the Construction Codes shall be issued if it is determined by the code official, defined in Section 103.1 of the Building Code, that:

1. The permit affects an area in close proximity to the official residence of the President or Vice President of the United States as close proximity is determined by the United States; and

2. The United States Secret Service has established that the issuance of the permit would adversely impact the safety and security of the President or the Vice President of the United States.

**101.14.4 Structures located in or adjacent to rivers or bodies of water.** The Construction Codes shall apply to structures, including, but not limited to, piers, wharves, jetties, slips, boat storage facilities, marinas and pilings located in or adjacent to any river or body of water within the limits of the District of Columbia, pursuant to An Act Relative to the control of wharf property and certain public spaces in the District of Columbia, approved March 3, 1899 [30 Stat. 1377; DC Official Code § 10-501.01 (2013 Repl.)]. Notwithstanding the foregoing, work affecting navigable waters may also require a permit from the US Army Corps of Engineers pursuant to the Rivers and Har-
102.2 Performance of work in public space. Work performed in public space, not specifically addressed in the Construction Codes, shall conform to the pertinent standards and permitting requirements of the District of Columbia Department of Transportation (DDOT) and of the District of Columbia Water and Sewer Authority (DC Water). See, for example, 24 DCMR; DC Official Code, Title 10, Chapter 11; 21 DCMR; DC Official Code § 8-205.

102.3 Application of references. Unless otherwise specifically provided in the Construction Codes, all references to article or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such article, section or provision of the Construction Codes.

102.4 Referenced Standards. The standards referenced in the Construction Codes and listed in Chapter 35 of the Building Code; Chapter 44 of the Residential Code; Annex A of the Electrical Code; Chapter 8 of the Fuel Gas Code; Chapter 15 of the Mechanical Code; Chapter 13 of the Plumbing Code; Chapter 8 of the Property Maintenance Code; Chapter 80 of the Fire Code; Section 12 of the Energy Conservation Code—Commercial Provisions; Chapter 6 [RE] of the Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions; Chapter 16 of the Existing Building Code; Chapter 12 of the Green Construction Code; and Chapter 11 of the Swimming Pool and Spa Code, shall be considered a part of the requirements of the Construction Codes to the prescribed extent of each such reference.

102.4.1 Conflicts. If conflict arises between the provisions of the Construction Codes Act, and the Construction Codes, the provisions of the Construction Codes shall take precedence. If conflict arises between the Construction Codes Supplement, the Model Codes (as defined in Section 101.1), and their referenced standards:

1. The provisions of the Construction Codes Supplement shall take precedence over the Model Codes and their referenced standards.

2. The provisions of the Model Codes, other than their referenced standards, shall take precedence over their referenced standards.

102.5 Severability. In the event that any part or provision of the Construction Codes is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions of the Construction Codes.

102.5.1 Severance of invalid provisions. Any illegal or void part of the Construction Codes shall be severed from the remainder of the Construction Codes by a court holding such part illegal or void, and the remainder of the Construction Codes shall remain effective.

102.5.2 Decisions involving existing structures. The invalidity of any provision in any section of the Construction Codes as applied to buildings and other structures constructed prior to the effective date of the Construction Codes shall not be held to affect the validity of such section in its application to buildings and other structures erected after the effective date of the Construction Codes.

102.6 Applicable Codes. Except as otherwise expressly provided, and without limiting the generality of Section 102.1, the Construction Codes, upon adoption pursuant to Section 122, shall apply to all of the following:

1. All applications filed with the Department on or after the date of adoption.

2. All pending applications filed with the Department prior to the date of adoption (except to the extent that a pending application has vested under a prior edition of the Construction Codes pursuant to Section 123).

3. All permits or certificates issued by the code official on or after the date of adoption (except to the extent that
the associated application vested under a prior edition of the Construction Codes pursuant to Section 123).

4. All violations or infractions committed on or after the date of adoption.

The legal use and occupancy of any structure existing on the effective date of the Construction Codes, or for which a permit has already been approved, shall be permitted to continue without change.

Exceptions:

1. Provisions of the Building Code, the Residential Code, the Property Maintenance Code or the Fire Code that are specifically required to be applied retroactively.

2. Provisions of the Construction Codes deemed necessary by the code official, as defined in Section 103.1, for the general safety, health and welfare of the occupants and the public.

102.7 Violations or infractions. The laws and regulations in force on the date that a new edition of the Construction Codes is adopted pursuant to Section 122 shall apply with respect to violations or infractions committed prior to said date, whether the prosecutions or adjudications of those violations or infractions are begun before or after said date.

SECTION 103
DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS

103.1 Code official. The Director shall be, and shall hereinafter be referred to as, the code official for the enforcement of the provisions of the Construction Codes. Where in the Construction Codes the term “building official” is used, it shall mean the “code official.”

Exception: Subject to the provisions of Section 103.2 as to Fire Code enforcement.

103.1.1 Delegation of authority. The Director and the Fire Chief shall have the authority to delegate his or her duties and powers under the Construction Codes, but he or she shall remain responsible for the proper performance of those duties and powers.

103.1.2 Department. Where used herein the word “Department” shall refer to the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, except that references to “Department” in the Fire Code shall refer to the DC Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department (Fire Department).

103.2 Code official for the Fire Code. The Fire Chief shall be the code official for the enforcement of the Fire Code, except that the Director shall be the code official for enforcement of all provisions of the Fire Code pertaining to approval, installation, design, testing and inspection of (a) new fire protection systems and (b) modifications of existing fire protection systems. The Fire Chief shall be the code official for maintenance, testing and inspection of all existing fire protection systems.

103.3 Organization. The Director or the Fire Chief shall appoint such number of officers, technical assistants, inspectors and other employees as shall be necessary for the administration of the Construction Codes.

103.3.1 Deputy. The code official is authorized to designate an employee or employees as deputy who shall exercise the powers of the code official as delegated during the temporary absence or disability of the code official.

103.4 Conflicts of interest. No official or employee of the Department shall directly or indirectly engage in any private business transaction or activity, which tends in any way to interfere with the performance of his or her duties, including:

1. Furnishing of services. Being engaged in, or directly or indirectly connected with, the furnishing of labor, materials or appliances for the construction, alteration or maintenance of a building under the jurisdiction of the Construction Codes, or the preparation of plans or specifications of a building under the jurisdiction of the Construction Codes, unless the official or employee is the principal owner of the building.

2. Conflict with official duties. Engaging in any work which conflicts with official duties or with the interests of the Department.

3. Private work. Directly or indirectly engaging with or accepting remuneration from any private person, firm, or corporation for the performance of any work as a designer, architect, engineer, consultant or inspector, which work is to be submitted to, passed upon, reviewed or inspected by any officer of the District of Columbia charged with the administration of any portion of the Construction Codes.


103.5.1 Publicly available information. The Department shall make the following information available for inspection without a written request:

1. Permit documents. Copies of issued permits, permit applications and all documents submitted in support of permit applications (including plans).

2. Certificates of occupancy. Copies of issued Certificates of Occupancy.

3. Other information. Other information and documents that the Department makes publically available on its website.
103.5.2 Fees for related services. Fees for services rendered in response to information requests, including researching and copying any requested documents, are set forth in § 408.

**Exception:** Advisory Neighborhood Commissioners shall not be required to pay a fee for researching and copying requested documents intended for official ANC purposes.

**SECTION 104**

**DUTIES AND POWERS OF CODE OFFICIAL**

104.1 General. The code official shall have the authority to render interpretations of the Construction Codes and to adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of its provisions. Such interpretations, policies, and procedures shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of the Construction Codes. Such policies and procedures shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in the Construction Codes.

104.1.1 Administrative Bulletins. The code official shall have the authority to promulgate from time to time administrative bulletins that shall be effective upon publication in the DC Register. Administrative bulletins shall be titled, numbered, and dated. Administrative bulletins shall be publicly available at the Department’s permit center and shall be posted on the Department’s website.

104.2 Applications and permits. The code official shall receive applications, review submittal documents, and issue permits and certificates authorized by the Construction Codes, and shall enforce compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes.

104.3 Notices and orders. The code official shall have authority to issue all necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with the Construction Codes, and shall have authority to institute administrative and legal actions to correct violations or infractions, including actions pursuant to An Act To provide for the abatement of nuisances in the District of Columbia by the Commissioners of said District, and for other purposes, approved April 14, 1906 [34 Stat. 114; DC Official Code §§ 42-3131.01 et seq. (2012 Repl.)] (the Nuisance Abatement Act), and the Due Process Demolition Act of 2002, effective April 19, 2002 [DC Law 14-114; DC Official Code §§ 42-3171.01 et seq. (2012 Repl.)].

104.4 Inspections. The code official is authorized: (i) to make all inspections necessary to ensure compliance with the Construction Codes in accordance with Section 104.6, and (ii) to accept reports of inspection by approved agencies. The code official is authorized to engage such expert opinion as is deemed necessary to report upon unusual technical issues that arise.

104.4.1 Post disaster event inspections. The code official is authorized to conduct inspections to determine emergency and disaster related damage to premises in the District of Columbia in accordance with the District of Columbia Damage Assessment Emergency Operations Plan (September 2015) and any subsequent amendments thereto.

104.5 Identification. The code official, and authorized representatives of the code official, shall carry proper credentials when inspecting premises in the performance of duties under the Construction Codes.

104.6 Right of entry. Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of the Construction Codes, the code official is authorized to enter the premises, or any part thereof, at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by the Construction Codes subject to applicable law. This authority includes, but is not limited to, situations where the code official has reasonable cause to believe that a condition exists in or upon a premises that is contrary to or in violation of the Construction Codes. Where attempting to gain entrance for inspection, the code official and authorized representatives thereof shall present official credentials.

104.6.1 Occupied residential premises. With respect to the inspection of an occupied residential portion of any premises under the exclusive control of a tenant, the code official shall not enter that portion of the premises without first having obtained permission from the tenant or other person of suitable age and discretion who resides there, unless the code official has one of the following:

1. A valid administrative search warrant which permits the inspection, pursuant to DC Official Code §§ 11-941 and 42-3509.08 (2012 Repl.), and/or DC Superior Court Civil Rule 204.

2. A reasonable basis to believe that an imminent danger to the public health, safety or welfare exists requiring immediate entry into that portion of the premises.

104.6.1.1 Contractors and other persons with common authority over the premises. Where a residential tenant has given access or control to a contractor or other person to undertake work on the tenant’s portion of the premises pursuant to a permit, the code official is authorized to enter the premises for the limited purpose of inspecting the work authorized by such permit.

104.6.2 Interference with inspection. Any person who interferes with the code official in the performance of authorized duties, or prevents or refuses to allow the code official to enter a premises or any portion thereof for inspection in the performance of authorized duties, is in violation of the Construction Codes.

104.6.3 Refusal of entry. If entry is refused, the code official shall have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry, including, but not limited to, application to the Superior Court for an administrative search warrant pursuant to DC Official Code §§ 42-3131.02 and 42-3509.08 (2012 Repl.), and Sup. Ct. Civ. R. 204.

104.7 Retention of public records. The code official shall comply with the requirements of the District of Columbia Public Records Management Act of 1985, as amended, effec-
104.7.1 Flood hazard areas. Retention of records for premises located in flood hazard areas shall comply with Appendix G.

104.8 Liability. The code official or Department employee charged with the enforcement of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations or other pertinent laws or regulations, while acting for the District of Columbia in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations or other pertinent laws or regulations, shall not thereby be civilly or criminally rendered liable personally and are hereby relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties.

104.8.1 Legal defense. Any suit or criminal complaint instituted against an officer or employee of the Department because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the provisions of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations or other pertinent laws or regulations shall be defended by legal representatives of the District of Columbia until the final termination of the proceedings. The code official or any subordinate shall not be liable for cost in any action, suit or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations or other pertinent laws or regulations enforced by the Department.

104.9 Approved materials, equipment and devices. All materials, equipment and devices approved for use by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

104.9.1 Used materials, equipment and devices. The use of used materials which meet the requirements of the Construction Codes for new materials is permitted. Used equipment and devices shall not be reused unless approved by the code official.

104.9.2 Unlabeled products. Where materials, assemblies or products are required by the Construction Codes to be labeled, those materials, assemblies or products which are not labeled, listed or classified by an approved testing agency and which are proposed to be installed in the District of Columbia, shall be tested and labeled by an approved testing laboratory or shall be approved in accordance with Sections 1701 and 1703 at the expense of the applicant, before a permit can be granted for this installation.

104.9.3 Assembled components. Any mechanical or electrical appliance which is not labeled, listed or classified by an approved testing agency, which is an assembly of individually labeled or listed subassemblies or components and which is proposed to be installed in the District of Columbia, shall be tested and approved in accordance with Section 104.9.2 before a permit can be granted for its installation.

104.9.4 Modular structures. Before erecting or installing in the District of Columbia any factory assembled structure, manufactured at a remote site and transported in one or more sections, a complete set of drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the issuance of a building permit. These drawings shall include a certificate of approval by a factory inspection agency that has been approved by the code official. The drawings shall be submitted to the code official for plan review and permitting and shall include a set of the manufacturer’s installation specifications and designate the applicable portions of construction that are required to have field inspection by the code official, including all utility connections, the marriage line connections and the foundation plate nailing patterns. These drawings shall be stamped by a structural engineer or architect licensed in the District of Columbia, and include the site constructed or assembled foundation system details and specifications. Separate permits issued by the Department for plumbing, mechanical, and electrical connections shall be required. Inspections of all work conducted on-site shall be in accordance with Section 109. Prior to placement of the factory assembled structure on a footing and foundation, all required footing and foundation inspections shall require approval by the code official.

104.10 Modifications. Wherever there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of the Construction Codes, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases upon application of the owner or owner’s representative; provided that the code official shall first find:

1. That special individual reasons make the strict letter of the Construction Codes impractical.

2. That the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of the Construction Codes.

3. That such modification does not lessen health, accessibility, life and fire safety, or structural requirements.

The details of the action granting modification shall be recorded and entered in the appropriate files of the Department.

104.10.1 Procedure for modifications. The application for modification shall be submitted on a form provided by the Department and sealed by the registered design professional if applicable. The final decision of the code official shall be in writing and shall be officially recorded with the application for permit in the permanent records of the Department.

104.10.2 Flood hazard areas. Modifications to any provision required in flood hazard areas are also subject to Section G105 of Appendix G.
104.10.3 Projections. Modifications to projection requirements set forth in Chapter 32 shall also comply with Section 3202.4.

104.11 Alternative materials, equipment, methods of construction and design. The provisions of the Construction Codes are not intended to prevent the use of any material, equipment or method of construction not specifically prescribed by the Construction Codes, provided any such alternative has been approved by the Department. Alternative materials, equipment or methods of construction shall be approved when the code official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of the Construction Codes, and that the material, equipment or method offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in the Construction Codes in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire-resistance, durability and safety. Approvals shall conform to Sections 1701 and 1703. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not approved, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not approved.

104.11.1 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials, equipment or methods of construction not specifically provided for in the Construction Codes shall consist of valid research reports from sources approved by the code official.

104.11.2 Tests. Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes, or evidence that a material, equipment or method of construction does not conform to the requirements of the Construction Codes, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the government of the District of Columbia. Test methods shall be specified in the Construction Codes or by other recognized and accepted test standards in the industry. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official is authorized to approve appropriate testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an agency approved by the code official. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

104.12 Reasonable accommodation under the Fair Housing Act. Requests for reasonable accommodation under the Fair Housing Act, 42 USC § 3604(f)(3)(B), as amended, shall be made according to the procedures set forth in 14 DCMR § 111.

104.13 Required procedure. Except where provisions of the Construction Codes are modified pursuant to Sections 104.10, 104.11 or 104.12, no deviation from the provisions of the Construction Codes is permissible. A verbal waiver or verbal grant of permission by the code official or any representative thereof shall not give authority to violate or cancel any provisions of the Construction Codes, and shall not be relied upon as a basis for deviation from the provisions of the Construction Codes.

SECTION 105
PERMITS

105.1 Required permits. Unless specifically exempted under Section 105.2, an owner or authorized agent who intends to undertake any of the activities set forth in Items 1 through 5, or to cause any such work to be done shall first make application to the code official and obtain the required permit(s) relevant to the intended work:

1. Construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, demolish, raze, or change the occupancy of a building or other structure.
2. Erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical, or plumbing system, the installation of which is regulated by the Construction Codes, or to cause any such work to be done.
3. Install tower cranes or other hoisting devices.
4. Movement, addition, deletion, relocation or redesignation of any lot line.
5. Undertake any other activity regulated by the Construction Codes.

105.1.1 Classification of permits. The code official is authorized to classify a permit application based on the applicant’s stated scope of work. Permit classifications may include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Building permits.
2. Raze permits.
3. Demolition permits.
4. Trade permits:
   4.1. Electrical.
   4.2. Gasfitting.
   4.3. Mechanical, including refrigeration and HVAC equipment.
   4.4. Plumbing.
   4.5. Elevators, escalators and other conveying systems.
   4.6. Fire alarm system and fire suppression system permits.
   4.7. Boilers and pressure vessels.
5. Sign permits (subject to Sections 105.4.5 and 3107).
6. Site development permits (including but not limited to foundation, sheeting and shoring, earthwork, retaining walls and civil sitework (BCTV) permits).
7. Miscellaneous permits.
   7.1. Projection permits.
   7.2. Crane and derrick permits.
   7.3. After-hours permits.
   7.4. Fences.
8. Permits for other work as may be determined by the code official, and set forth by the Department in administrative bulletins.
105.1.2 Compliance with code. The permit shall be an authorization to proceed with the work for which the permit was issued during authorized construction hours and shall not be construed as authority to violate, cancel or set aside any of the provisions of the Construction Codes, except as specifically stipulated by modification granted in accordance with Section 104.10.

105.1.3 Authorized hours for work pursuant to a permit. Authorized hours in the District of Columbia, for work conducted under a permit, are from 7 a.m. to 7 p.m. Mondays through Saturdays, excluding legal public holidays. No work conducted under a permit is authorized on Sundays or legal public holidays without an after-hours permit. Legal public holidays are defined in DC Official Code §§ 1-612.02(a) (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

Exceptions:

1. Interior work exempt from permit requirements, such as interior painting, wallpapering, carpet installation, cleaning or similar activities performed on the interior of a structure shall be allowed outside of authorized construction hours, subject to noise regulations in 20 DCMR.

2. Finishing and weather protection activities of concrete where the code official determines that such activities are critical to achieving the concrete strength specified by the designer of record shall be allowed outside of authorized construction hours, subject to noise regulations in 20 DCMR.

105.1.3.1 Work outside of authorized hours. No person shall engage in any work pursuant to a permit outside of the authorized construction hours specified in Section 105.1.3 including noted exceptions, unless the permit holder has obtained an after-hours permit in compliance with Section 105.4.1.

105.2 Work exempted from permit. This section sets forth exemptions from permit requirements, subject to historic and flood hazard area restrictions set forth in Sections 105.2.5 and 105.2.6 respectively. Exemptions from permit requirements of the Construction Codes shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes or of any other laws, regulations or ordinances of the District of Columbia.

Building:

1. Brick pointing.
2. Caulking, patching and plaster repair of nonrated assemblies.
3. Installation of window screens and storm windows.
4. Repair in kind of existing fences.
5. Application of a paint, sealant, stain or other coating to a surface that, when dried, leaves a decorative or protective coating over that surface, provided that:
   5.1. The application of fire-retardant paint shall require the issuance of a permit.
   5.2. A permit may be required for such application under certain circumstances specified in Section 105.2.5.

6. Papier, tiling, carpeting, floor covering, cabinets, countertops and similar finish work.
7. Replacement in kind of one of the items listed hereafter. For the purpose of this section, “replacement in kind” means replacement with a feature of like material that replicates the existing feature in proportion, appearance, texture, design, detail and dimensions.
   7.1. Roof covering or coping.
   7.2. Siding.
   7.3. Gutters and downspouts and fascia.
   7.4. Private sidewalks and driveways where the area of land disturbance does not exceed 50 square feet (4.65 m2).
   7.5. Patios where the area of land disturbance does not exceed 50 square feet (4.65 m2).
   7.6. Nonrated suspended ceiling tile.
   7.7. Not more than 160 square feet (14.9 m2) of gypsum board excluding installation of fire-rated gypsum wall board or shaft liner.

8. A single garden storage shed that does not exceed 50 square feet (4.65 m2) in area, is less than ten feet (3048 mm) in overall height, is an accessory structure to a building of use Group R-3 or to a building under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code, and is erected on a lot with no other exempted storage shed.

9. Prefabricated pools, spas or water features, accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy, or accessory to buildings under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code, which are less than 24 inches (610 mm) deep, do not exceed 1000 gallons (3785.41 L), are installed entirely above ground and are not designed or manufactured to be connected to a circulation system.

10. Retaining walls that are not over four feet (1219 mm) in height, measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, only where the area of land disturbance does not exceed 50 square feet (4.65 m2).

11. Shade cloth structures constructed for horticultural nursery or agricultural purposes, not including service systems.

12. Swings and other playground equipment accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.
13. A tree house or playhouse, no more than 36 square feet (3.35 m²) in area and accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.

14. Movable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions not over five feet nine inches (1753 mm) in height.

15. A one-story mausoleum not exceeding 250 square feet (23 m²) in footprint area provided the mausoleum:
   15.1. Is of Type I or II construction.
   15.2. Does not contain any habitable space.
   15.3. Does not require any utility connections.
   Notwithstanding the applicability of this permit exemption, the person undertaking the proposed work shall comply with soil erosion and sediment control requirements enforced by Department of Energy and the Environment (21 DCMR, Chapter 5).

16. The following signs are exempt from permit requirements:
   16.1. Signs with an area no greater than 1 square foot (0.09 m²).
   16.2. Interior signs that are not substantially visible from the outside of the building.
   16.3. Temporary signs (for less than 180 days) that are not more than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area and which do not use electricity.
   16.4. Noncommercial signs displayed on private property by the owner or occupant of the property, provided, that the sign.
      16.4.1. Is not more than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area.
      16.4.2. Does not use electricity.
      16.4.3. Does not require approval by the Commission of Fine Arts, Historic Preservation Review Board or Historic Preservation Office, Office of Planning, or the Chinatown Steering Committee.
   16.5. Other signs exempted from permitting requirements by any regulations adopted pursuant to the Sign Legislation.

17. Structures erected for a period of less than 180 days in a 12-month period that cover an area of 150 square feet (13.9 m²) or less and are exempted from permit requirements by Section 3103.

18. Tents and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 180 days that cover an area of 150 square feet (13.9 m²) or less and are exempted from permit requirements by Section 3103.2 of the Fire Code.

19. Erection or replacement of fixed or retractable awnings projecting 40 inches (1016 mm) or less that are located outside the jurisdiction of the US Commission of Fine Arts or the Historic Preservation Review Board, and are not subject to Section 3202.12, where the awnings meet one or more of the following criteria:
   19.1. Awnings installed on detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade in height with a separate means of egress.
   19.2. Retractable awnings installed above the first story.

**Electrical:**
1. Repair portable electrical equipment.
2. Repair lighting fixtures.
3. Repair or replace ballasts, sockets, receptacles, or snap switches.
4. Minor repair work, including the replacement of lamps or the connection of approved portable electrical equipment to approved permanently installed receptacles, and other minor repairs at existing outlets.
5. Electrical equipment used for radio and television transmissions; however, a permit is required for equipment and wiring for a power supply and the installations of towers and antennas.
7. Reinstallation of plug receptacles but not the outlets thereof.
8. Replacement of branch circuit overcurrent devices of the required capacity in the same location.
9. Installation of any temporary system required for the testing or servicing of electrical equipment or apparatus.

**Gas:**
1. Portable heating appliances.
2. Connection of cooking or clothes drying appliances.
3. Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.
4. Portable-fuel-cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

**Mechanical:**
1. Portable heating appliances.
2. Portable ventilation appliances.
3. Portable cooling units.
4. Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment or appliances regulated by the Construction Codes.
5. Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative coolers.
7. Self contained refrigerating systems containing 10 pounds (5 kg) or less of refrigerant or that are actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (746 W) or less.
8. Portable-fuel-cell appliances that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

**Plumbing:**

1. The stopping of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe, provided, however, that if any concealed trap, drainage, water, soil, waste or vent pipe becomes defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, such work shall be considered as new work and a permit shall be obtained and inspection made as provided in the Construction Codes.
2. The clearing of stoppages or the repairing of leaks in pipes, valves or fixtures, and the removal and reinstallation of water closets, provided such repairs do not involve or require the replacement or rearrangement of valves, pipes, or fixtures.
3. Repair or replacement of water meters performed by DC Water.
4. Replacement of kitchen and bathroom sink or faucet, supply lines and exposed P trap connections within detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.
5. Replacement of a water closet or water closet seal within detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.

**105.2.1 [Reserved]**

**105.2.2 Ordinary repairs.** Permits are not required for ordinary repairs to buildings, other structures or equipment. Ordinary repairs shall not include any of the following:

1. The cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof, the removal or cutting of any structural beam or load bearing support, or the removal or change of any required means of egress, or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements.
2. Addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, electric wiring or mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

**105.2.3 Public service agencies.** A permit shall not be required under the Construction Codes for the installation, alteration or repair of equipment and facilities used for generation, transmission, distribution, metering or treatment that is under the ownership or control of public service agencies subject to the jurisdiction of the District of Columbia Public Services Commission or DC Water.

**Exception:** For projects of public service agencies involving land-disturbing activities or major substantial improvement activities as defined in 21 DCMR, Chapter 5, and for all work described in Sections 105.2.5 and 105.2.6, a public service agency shall be required to submit a permit application and, as applicable, thereafter obtain a permit for such project.

**105.2.4 Permit exemptions subject to public space requirements.** When the proposed scope of work would qualify to be exempted from permit pursuant to Section 105.2 of this chapter, and the work is to occur wholly or partially on public space, the applicant shall be responsible for obtaining all public space permit(s) that are required by DDOT.

**105.2.5 Permit exemptions not applicable in historic districts or to historically designated structures.** When the proposed scope of work would qualify to be exempted from permit pursuant to Section 105.2 and the work is to occur on the land of or the exterior of buildings or other structures located in historic districts, or of historically designated buildings or other structures, an application for a building permit subject only to historic preservation review pursuant to Section 105.1 shall be required for the following work described in Section 105.2 Building: 1. Brick pointing; 4. Repair or replacement of fences, except as deemed an ordinary repair; 5. Painting of unpainted exterior masonry at a landmark property; 7. Replacement in kind of one of the listed items (except for interior ceiling tile and gypsum board); 8. Garden storage shed; 9. Prefabricated pools; and 10. Retaining walls. The code official shall not issue a permit based on an application subject solely to historic preservation review under this section without the prior review and approval of the Historic Preservation Office.

**105.2.6 Permit exemptions not applicable in flood hazard areas.** When the proposed scope of work would qualify to be exempted from permit requirements pursuant to Section 105.2, and the work is to occur on premises wholly or partially within a Flood Hazard Area, an application for a permit subject only to review by the Floodplain Administrator shall be required. The code official shall not issue a permit based on an application subject solely to review by the Floodplain Administrator without the prior review and approval of the Floodplain Administrator regarding the disposition of the permit application by the code official.

**105.3 Application for permit.** To obtain a permit, the applicant (as defined in Section 105.3.1) shall submit an application for a permit in the form prescribed and provided by the code official. Where a permit is required, it shall be obtained by the applicant prior to the commencement of corresponding work, except as provided in Section 105.4.6.

**105.3.1 Authorized applicant.** Permit applications shall be submitted by the owner or lessee of the premises, or an authorized agent of either. (The persons referred to in this...
105.3.1 Trade permit applicant. A trade permit application shall be submitted only by, or on behalf of, the DC-licensed master tradesperson who is to be responsible for supervising the work to be done under a trade permit when issued.

105.3.1.1 Trade permit applicant. Where a change in the applicant is proposed or occurs during the pendency of an unexpired permit application, whether as the result of a transfer of the premises or other circumstances, the permit application shall be deemed abandoned pursuant to Section 105.10 unless both of the following occur:

1. The applicant of record notifies the code official of a change in applicant.

2. The new applicant submits information required by the code official on an approved form.

If these actions are not completed by (a) the date that is 30 days after the date on which the change of applicant occurs, or (b) the date on which the permit application is approved, whichever is earlier, the permit application shall be deemed abandoned as of such date.

Exception: Trade permit applications are not transferable.

105.3.2 Form and content of application. Unless otherwise specified by the code official, the application shall:

1. Be accompanied by any filing fee deposit required pursuant to Section 108.2.1.1 and any other fees required by the code official to be paid at the time of filing. All other fees shall be paid prior to issuance of the permit pursuant to Section 108.

2. Clearly identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made.

3. Describe the premises on which the proposed work is to be done by address and lot and square.

4. Provide sufficient information clearly distinguishing the existing use of the premises, or relevant portion thereof, from the proposed use.

5. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.

6. Be accompanied by a fully completed intake form and supporting submittal documents as required by Section 106.

Exception: Submittal documents are not required for permit applications proposing only a change of use or occupant load where no proposed alterations are to be made. If a code compliance issue needs to be addressed following inspection of the premises, submittal documents shall be submitted as directed by the code official.

7. Include an accurate breakdown of construction valuation in accordance with Section 108.3.

8. Include name and contact information, including a valid e-mail address, for all of the following:

8.1. The applicant.

8.2. The permit expeditor (if applicable).

8.3. The DC licensed general contractor or construction manager (if known when the application is filed; if not known at the time of filing, this information shall be provided to the code official by the applicant as soon as the general contractor or construction manager is selected, but no later than the scheduling of the first inspection).

9. Include the name and contact information, including a valid e-mail address, for the person designated to receive Department communications relating to the application and for electronic service of notices and orders related to the permit based on the application.

10. Include the applicant’s certification that the information provided in the application is true and correct to the best of the applicant’s knowledge, and acknowledging that a false statement in an application may subject the applicant to penalties as listed in Section 105.3.3. Submission of an online application shall be deemed to constitute the certification required under this section.

11. Include the additional information required by Appendix G, Section G104, if the development site is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, including, but not limited to an elevation certificate or floodproofing certificate where required.

12. Include the “Standards of External Effects” application required by the District of Columbia Zoning Regulations (11-U DCMR, Section 805) if the property is located in a productions, distribution and repair (PDR) District.

13. Include a list of names and addresses of owners of adjoining premises as identified in the Real Property Tax Database maintained by the Office of Tax and Revenue of the Office of the Chief Financial Officer for work subject to notification requirements in Section 105.7 and/or Section 106.2.18.3.

14. Include the name, signature, and license number of the licensed master tradesperson, or licensed elevator contractor or elevator mechanic, responsible for supervising the work as required by Sections 105.4.3 and 105.8, for trade permit applications to authorize work in electrical, mechanical, plumbing, fuel gas systems, or elevators and other conveying systems.
15. Be signed by the applicant (as defined in Section 105.3.1.). Submission of an online application shall satisfy this requirement.

16. Provide such other data and information as required by the code official.

105.3.3 Penalties for false statements. False statements in an application shall constitute grounds for permit revocation pursuant to Section 111. Applicants are also subject to criminal penalties pursuant to Section 404 of the District of Columbia Theft and White Collar Crimes Act of 1982, effective December 1, 1982 [DC Law 4-164; DC Official Code § 22-2405 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)] for false statements.

105.3.4 Responsibility to maintain current e-mail address. While applications are pending for processing and after issuance of a permit, applicants and permit holders are required to inform the Department within 5 days of any changes to the e-mailing addresses provided in the underlying permit application as specified in Section 105.3.2, Items 8 and 9. The Department will provide any required notices or orders to the e-mail address submitted with the permit application as updated in compliance with this section.

105.3.5 Time limitation of application. An application for a permit for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned:

1. One hundred eighty days after the date of filing, unless such application has been in good faith, an extension has been granted pursuant to Section 105.3.5.1, or a permit has been issued.

2. Where a change in the applicant occurs and the applicant of record and/or the new applicant fail to comply with the requirements of Section 105.3.1.2.

105.3.5.1 Extension of application time limitation. The code official is authorized to grant a maximum of two extensions of time, not exceeding 180 days each, for agency consideration of a permit application, provided that the extension is requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated. Refunds of the unused portion of the application file deposit shall be made pursuant to Section 108.6.

105.4 Additional provisions applicable to certain permits.

105.4.1 After-hours permit. No person shall engage in any work pursuant to a permit outside of the authorized construction hours specified in Section 105.1.2 including noted exceptions, unless the permit holder has obtained an after-hours permit pursuant to the procedures established by the code official. Any work authorized by an after-hours permit shall comply with noise regulations set forth in 20 DCMR and to the conditions set forth in Section 105.4.1.1.

105.4.1.1 After-hours permit impacting residential premises. No permit application for after-hours work in or within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of a Residence District or a Special Purpose District, or within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of a premises with an R occupancy as defined in Chapter 3, shall be approved by the code official without written comments or recommendations of either of the following:

1. Any Advisory Neighborhood Commission(s) (ANC) whose boundaries encompass the premises where the after-hours work will take place or are within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of the premises where the after-hours work will take place (collectively the “affected premises”).

2. The ANC Commissioner for the single-member ANC District(s) in which the affected premises are located (or, where such a seat is vacant, the ANC Chair or the ANC Chair’s designee).

Exceptions: The code official is authorized to issue an after-hours permit without the ANC or ANC Commissioner comments or recommendations required by this section:

1. Where the code official determines that emergency conditions exist requiring the after-hours work.

2. Where the code official determines that the public interest necessitates the after-hours work.

105.4.2 Annual permit. In lieu of an individual permit for each alteration to an existing approved electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system, the code official is authorized, upon application therefor, to issue an annual permit allowing alterations to such installations to any person, firm or corporation regularly employing one or more qualified tradespersons in the building, other structure or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the permit.

105.4.2.1 Annual permit records. The person or entity to whom an annual permit is issued shall keep a detailed record of alterations made under such annual permit. The code official shall have access to such records at all times or such records shall be filed with the code official as designated.

105.4.3 Trade permits. A trade permit is required for any work involving electrical, gasfitting, mechanical, plumbing, elevators and other conveying systems, and boilers, unless the work is exempted from permit requirements by Section 105.2. Trade permits shall be issued only where the following criteria are met:

1. Where required by Section 105.8., the person applying for the trade permit must be a master tradesperson licensed in the District of Columbia who will be responsible for performing or supervising the work to be done under such permit in compliance with the licensing requirements for specific trades as set forth in Section 105.8.

2. Trade permits must be associated with a building permit, except in either of the following circumstances:

   a. Where the code official determines that the scope of work is such that review of submittal documents is not required pursuant to Section 106.1.
105.4.4 Raze permits. Before a raze permit is issued, the owner of the building or other structure to be razed, or the owner’s agent, shall post and maintain a notice furnished by the code official on the premises where the building or other structure is located. The notice shall front on the street of address of the building or other structure, or as designated by the code official, so as to be readable from the public way. The raze permit shall not be issued by the code official until the applicant provides an affidavit to the Department affirming that the notice has been posted and maintained as required by this section for at least 30 days. This notification requirement shall not apply to any emergency raze ordered by the code official.

105.4.4.1 Other requirements. Prior to issuing a raze permit, the code official is authorized to require the applicant to submit other clearances and/or information that the code official deems necessary, including, but not limited to, asbestos removal, utility disconnects, grading plans, and historic preservation.

105.4.4.2 Fee. The applicant for a raze permit shall pay a fee for the furnishing of the notice required under Section 105.1.3.4 in accordance with the applicable fee schedule published in the DC Register, as amended from time to time.

105.4.4.3 Fines. Violations of this section shall be deemed a Class 3 infraction pursuant to 16 DCMR § 3200.

105.4.4.4 Additional notifications required. Applicants for raze permits are also required to comply with Section 106.2.18 where the raze work involves any structural work within 3 feet (762 mm) of an adjoining lot line or excavation work more than 3 feet (762 mm) below existing grade.

105.4.5 Sign permits. To the extent that the code official is designated as the permitting and enforcement official for signs, pursuant to the Sign Legislation (as defined in Section 202.2), the duties and powers of the code official shall be governed by:

1. Chapter 1, 12-A DCMR.

2. Chapter 1, 12-G DCMR, including, but not limited to, the code official’s authority to receive applications, to review submittal documents and issue permits, to institute administrative and legal actions to correct violations or infractions, and to inspect premises.

105.4.5.1 Adoption of superseding sign regulations applicability of Construction Codes to signs. Signs shall be designed, constructed installed, displayed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of the Construction Codes including, but not limited to, Building Code Appendix N, which is hereby expressly adopted and incorporated by reference, and Chapters 7, 15, 16 and 26, except to the extent that such requirements are superseded by regulations adopted by the District of Columbia pursuant to the Sign Legislation.

105.4.6 Permits for emergency work. When necessary to make emergency repairs or replacements to buildings, other structures or systems, an application for a permit to cover all emergency work shall be submitted no later than the first business day following the performance of such emergency work.

105.4.7 Site development permits. The code official is authorized to issue a site development permit for earth retention or the construction of foundations before the entire plans and specifications for the whole building or other structure have been submitted, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of the Construction Codes. Issuance of a site development permit by the code official does not constitute assurance that a permit for the entire building or structure will be granted. The holder of a site development permit proceeds with the construction at the holder’s own risk and without assurance that a permit for the entire building or other structure will be granted.

105.5 Action on application. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined all applications for permit and amendments to applications within a reasonable time after filing. The code official may reject an application at the time of filing if the application and required supporting documents are not substantially complete. If the application or the plans do not conform to the requirements of all pertinent laws, the code official is authorized to reject such application. The code official shall state the reasons for the rejection in writing, citing specific sections of the Construction Codes, and stating the applicant’s right of appeal under Section 112. If the code official is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of the Construction Codes and all applicable laws, rules, and regulations, the code official shall issue a permit as soon as practicable.

105.5.1 Plan review by third-party agency. An applicant shall have the option of using an approved third-party agency to perform a code compliance review of a project, at the applicant’s expense, pursuant and subject to the provisions of this section; DC Official Code § 6-1405.02 (2018 Repl.); and the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual.

105.5.1.1 Notification of intent to use third-party agency for plan review. Where a permit applicant wants to use a third-party agency for plan review, the applicant shall notify the Department of its intent in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual.

105.5.1.2 Acceptance of certification by third-party agency. The code official is authorized to accept a certification, signed and sealed by the professional-in-charge of the approved third-party agency, in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual. The Department shall complete its review within 15 business days after the date of submission of a
complete application package to the Department, including the required third-party certification. The code official’s issuance of related permits will be subject to receipt of any required approvals from other reviewing agencies, and compliance with applicable adjoining premises notification requirements.

105.5.2 Stormwater management and erosion and sediment control. A permit shall not be issued for a “major substantial improvement activity” (as defined by 21 DCMR, Chapter 5) or a land-disturbing activity regulated by 21 DCMR, Chapter 5, until the submitted plans reflect the pertinent features approved by the official charged with the administration and enforcement of 21 DCMR, Chapter 5, and the requirements of the Water Pollution Control Act of 1984, effective March 16, 1985 [DC Law 5-188; DC Official Code §§ 8-103.01 et seq. (2013 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)] as amended.

105.5.3 Flood hazard areas. A permit shall not be issued for work within the scope of Appendix G without review and receipt of comments and recommendations from the Floodplain Administrator concerning the code official’s disposition of the application, as required therein.

105.5.4 Additional grounds for permit denial. The code official is authorized to deny issuance of a permit to an applicant because of either of the following:

1. Pursuant to DC Official Code § 6-1407.01.

2. Where the owner, applicant, general contractor, construction manager, home improvement contractor, registered design professional, registered design professional in responsible charge, or responsible officer has outstanding fines, penalties, notices or orders imposed under the Construction Codes, or if the code official determines that the owner, applicant, general contractor, construction manager, home improvement contractor, registered design professional, registered design professional in responsible charge, or responsible officer is in violation of any provision of the Construction Codes.

105.5.4.1 Code official authority. For purposes of Section 105.5.4 and 105.5.5, the code official is authorized to request additional information from an applicant to determine whether the applicant has filed under a new organizational form or name, in order to avoid either permit denial under the provisions of Section 105.5.4 or posting of fine amounts under Section 105.5.5.

105.5.5 Outstanding fines for illegal construction. Where civil infraction citations for illegal construction under Section 113.1 have been issued to an applicant, all applicable fine amounts must be posted with the Treasurer of the District of Columbia by the applicant, prior to the issuance of any permit to the applicant. Upon adjudication of said civil infraction citations, any fines or penalties not assessed to the applicant will be refunded. The code official, in his or her discretion, may reduce the amount of the fines required to be posted.

105.5.6 Approval of construction documents. When the code official issues a permit, the construction documents shall be approved, in writing or by stamp, as “Approved.”

105.5.7 Signature on permit. The code official’s signature shall be attached to every permit, or the code official may authorize a subordinate to affix a facsimile of the code official’s signature to permits. The code official’s signature shall not be construed as indicating that the construction complies with any other requirement of District law or regulation other than the Construction Codes and the Zoning Regulations.

105.6 Posting of permit. The permit, or a copy thereof, shall be kept on the work site and conspicuously displayed at a location visible from the street until the completion of work for which the permit is issued. Public information deemed relevant by the code official for all permits issued by the Department shall be published on the Department’s website.

105.6.1 On-site retention of construction documents. A legible, printed copy of approved construction documents for each permit, of a size sufficient to see all details, shall be kept on-site at all times until a certificate of occupancy for the premises subject to the permit is issued or until completion of the work and approval of the final inspection for the work performed at the premises under the permit if no certificate of occupancy or new certificate of occupancy is required.

105.7 Notification of owners of adjoining premises in certain districts. Upon issuance of a permit authorizing work on a premises in a Residential, Special Purpose or Mixed Use District, and prior to commencing that work, the permit holder shall provide written notice on an approved form to each owner of a one-family or two-family dwelling on a lot adjoining the premises on which the work is authorized pursuant to the permit. Delivery of the notification required by this section will be satisfied by mailing the required form to the owner of record of the adjoining premises by first-class mail at the address listed in the Real Property Assessment Database maintained by the District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue.

105.8 Duties of persons performing work pursuant to a permit. No person shall undertake work pursuant to a permit required by Section 105 without possessing a valid and appropriate business license, professional license and/or trade license in the District of Columbia, pursuant to DC Official Code §§ 47-2853.01 et seq., and Titles 16 and 17 DCMR, as applicable.

105.8.1 General contractors, construction managers and home improvement contractors. General contractors, construction managers and home improvement contractors are responsible for hiring and/or subcontracting with persons who possess the appropriate license(s) to perform the work, and shall, at all times, be responsible for the proper supervision and inspection of the work and to perform the work in compliance with the Construction Codes and the approved construction documents. The general contractor, construction manager or home improvement contractor is responsible to employ or subcontract with at
105.8.2 Performance of work pursuant to trade permit. The person to whom a trade permit is issued shall be responsible for performing or supervising the work to be performed under such permit. Work in electrical systems, refrigeration or air conditioning systems, plumbing systems, fuel gas systems, and elevator and conveying systems that requires a permit shall be performed and supervised in accordance with Sections 105.8.2.1 through 105.8.2.5. Registration and licensure requirements of the applicable tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.91 through 47-2853.93 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.) and Titles 16 and 17 DCMR. The code official is authorized to request current proof of compliance with this section in the course of inspections of such work.

105.8.2.1 Electrical trades. Electrical work requiring a permit shall be performed by a licensed master electrician, a licensed master electrician limited (low voltage), a licensed journeyman electrician, or a registered apprentice electrician under the supervision of a licensed master electrician. A licensed master electrician limited (low voltage) shall be authorized to supervise electrical work in low voltage systems. Licensure and registration requirements for these tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.91 through 47-2853.93 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.) and Title 17 DCMR, Chapter 2.

105.8.2.2 Mechanical trades. Refrigeration and air-conditioning work requiring a permit shall be performed by a licensed master mechanic, a licensed master mechanic limited, a licensed journeyman refrigeration and air-conditioning mechanic, or a registered apprentice refrigeration and air-conditioning mechanic under the supervision of a licensed master mechanic. A licensed master mechanic limited shall be authorized to supervise refrigeration and air-conditioning work in systems less than 25 compressor horsepower. Licensure and registration requirements for these tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.201 through 47-2853.203 (2015 Repl.) and Title 17 DCMR, Chapters 3 and 15.

105.8.2.3 Plumbing trades. Plumbing work requiring a permit shall be performed by a licensed master plumber/gasfitter, a licensed master gasfitter, a licensed journeyman plumber, a licensed journeyman gasfitter, or a registered apprentice plumber under the supervision of a licensed master plumber/gasfitter. Licensure and registration requirements for these tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.121 through 47-2853.123 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

105.8.2.4 Gasfitting trades. Gasfitting work requiring a permit shall be performed by a licensed master plumber/gasfitter, a licensed master gasfitter, a licensed journeyman plumber, a licensed journeyman gasfitter, a registered apprentice plumber, or a registered apprentice gasfitter under the supervision of a licensed master plumber/gasfitter or of a licensed master gasfitter. Licensure and registration requirements for these tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.121 through 47-2853.123 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

105.8.2.5 Elevator and conveying systems trades. Work in elevators and conveying systems requiring a permit shall be performed by a licensed elevator contractor, an employee of a licensed elevator contractor, a licensed elevator mechanic, or a registered apprentice elevator mechanic under the supervision of a licensed elevator contractor or a licensed elevator mechanic. Licensure and registration requirements for these tradespersons shall be pursuant to D.C. Official Code §§ 47-2853.95 through 47-2853.99 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

105.9 Permit revisions. The holder of a valid active permit shall be authorized to amend it or to amend the plans, application or other records pertaining to the permit by filing, at any time before completion of the work for which the original permit was issued, by submitting an application for permit revision, accompanied by a copy of the originally approved submittal documents and, unless submitted electronically, by two sets of the revised plans. If the code official approves a permit revision, and a revised permit is issued, it shall be deemed part of the original permit and shall be kept therewith in the official records of the Department. A revision permit shall become invalid upon expiration of the original permit it amends. The extension provisions of Section 105.5.1 shall apply to the original permit and shall only affect the respective revision permits to the extent that the original permit is extended.

105.9.1 Code official authority. Nothing herein shall preclude the code official from requiring submission of a new permit application, in lieu of permit revisions.

105.10 Expiration of permit. Any permit issued shall become null and void, upon occurrence of any one of the following circumstances, unless a permit extension has been obtained under Section 105.11:

1. The authorized work is not begun within 12 months after the permit is issued, or within 180 days after the permit is issued where the permit is issued for work (a) regulated by the Residential Code or (b) to occur on premises located wholly or partially within a Flood Hazard Area; or

2. The authorized work is suspended or abandoned for a period of 12 months, or for 180 days for permits issued for work (a) regulated by the Residential Code or (b) to occur on premises located wholly or partially within a Flood Hazard Area; or

3. The authorized work has not received inspection approval or partial inspection approval for at least one
inspection required by Section 109 within a period of 12 months, or within a period of 180 days for permits issued for work regulated by the Residential Code or to occur on premises located wholly or partially within a Flood Hazard Area, which period shall commence on the later of (a) the date authorized work is begun or (b) the date of the last approved inspection or partial inspection.

4. The authorized work has not obtained final inspection approval within 48 months after the permit is issued unless the code official grants an extension under Section 105.11.

105.10.1. Expiration of permits for unsafe, abandoned or deteriorated premises. Any permit issued for work on premises that have been deemed to be unsafe or unfit for human occupancy (in accordance with Section 115 or 116 of this code or Section 108 or 109 of the Property Maintenance Code), or abandoned or deteriorated property (in accordance with DC Official Code §§ 42-3171.01 et seq. (2012 Repl.)), shall become null and void if the authorized work is not begun within 30 days after the permit is issued and completed within six months after the date work is begun, unless the permit is extended in accordance with Section 105.11. If the work has not been completed within the 180 day period or any extension period granted by the code official, the Department is authorized to complete the work in accordance with DC Official Code §§ 42-3131.01 et seq. (2012 Repl.) and to seek any other remedies or penalties authorized by law, including monetary fines, criminal prosecution, or court orders directing correction or abatement of the violation.

105.10.2 Suspended or abandoned work. In determining whether work has been suspended or abandoned under Section 105.10, the code official shall have the right to request documentation from the permit holder and to inspect the premises for which the permit has been granted.

105.10.3 Reinstatement of expired permit. The code official has the authority to reinstate, in writing, an expired permit upon a showing of applicable extinguating circumstances.

105.11 Extension of permit. A permit may be extended upon written request, prior to expiration and upon a showing of good cause subject to the conditions set forth in this section. The code official is authorized to grant no more than four extensions of time, not to exceed 180 days per extension. In no event shall the aggregate extensions of time exceed two years. The code official shall have the discretion to inspect the premises for which a permit extension has been requested prior to granting an extension.

105.11.1 Permits for single-family dwellings. Notwithstanding the provisions of Sections 105.10 and 105.11, the code official is authorized to impose a three year time limit to complete construction of new detached single-family dwellings, additions to detached single-family dwellings and new residential accessory structures. The time limit shall begin from the issuance date of the permit. The code official is authorized to grant extensions of time if the applicant can demonstrate substantive progress, characterized by approved inspections as specified in this code of at least one inspection within a period of six months or other evidence that would indicate substantial work has been performed.

105.12 Change in permit holder. Where a change in the permit holder of a valid, unexpired permit is proposed or occurs, whether as the result of a transfer of the premises or other circumstances, the permit shall be deemed null and void unless, within 30 days after the date on which the change of permit holder occurs:

1. The permit holder of record notifies the code official of a change in permit holder.
2. The new permit holder submits information required by the code official on an approved form.

Exception: Trade permits are not transferable.

105.13 Surrender and cancellation of permits. If a permit holder desires to terminate a valid permit, the permit holder shall surrender the permit to the Department with a notarized affidavit stating the permit holder’s irrevocable renunciation of all rights under the permit. Upon receipt of the surrendered permit and affidavit terminating the permit holder’s rights under the permit, the Department shall declare the surrendered permit invalid and cancel the permit. The code official is authorized to conduct an inspection of the premises under Section 104.4 in connection with the surrender or cancellation.

105.14 Revocation of permits. Procedures for revocation of permits are set forth in Section 111. Appeals of permit revocations shall be governed by Section 112.

SECTION 106
SUBMITTAL DOCUMENTS

106.1 General. Submittal documents shall consist of construction documents (as specified in Section 106 or as may be required by the code official), a statement of special inspections, reports, and other data. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the Construction Codes. Where special conditions exist, the code official is authorized to require additional construction documents, including those submittal documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

Exception: Where the code official deems that the nature of the work applied for is such that review of submittal documents is not necessary to confirm compliance with the Construction Codes, the code official is authorized to accept and process a permit application without some or all of the otherwise required submittal documents, or to modify the form and content of any otherwise required submittal document, provided, that this exception does not apply where the Construction Codes require submittal documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.
106.1.1 **Electronic submission.** Required submittal documents shall be submitted electronically with each permit application.

**Exception:** Applicants are authorized to submit four sets of construction documents and one set of all other submittal documents, in lieu of an electronic submission where specified by the code official.

Where submittal documents are not required to be submitted electronically, the code official is authorized to establish requirements, including but not limited to maximum overall size, for submittal documents acceptable for review.

106.1.2 **Scale of construction documents.** All construction documents shall be drawn to the scale of not less than \( \frac{1}{8} \) inch to the foot (10 mm/m).

**Exceptions:**
1. Site plan.
2. Building plat.

106.2 **Construction documents.** Construction documents shall be in accordance with Sections 106.2.1 through 106.2.20.

106.2.1 **Architectural and engineering details.** The code official shall require adequate details of architectural, structural, accessibility, fire protection, electrical, fuel gas, mechanical, plumbing, energy conservation, and green building provisions to be submitted, including computations, stress diagrams, sound transmission details and other technical data essential to assess compliance with the Construction Codes, as further specified in Section 106. In addition, these construction documents shall include the following:
1. Concrete and masonry strengths, floor and wall design and reinforcement details.
2. Wood framing design and details.
3. Footing, foundation wall design and details.
4. Roof framing design and details.
5. Interior supporting elements and details.
7. Underpinning, sheeting and shoring and associated schedules.
8. Fire-rated walls, floors, roofs and other assemblies with details of installation.
9. For exterior alteration of and/or addition to an existing structure, include photograph(s) that clearly depict the condition of the structure’s front, rear, sides, roof, and adjoining roofs, as applicable, at the time the permit application is submitted.

106.2.2 **Means of egress.** The construction documents shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the means of egress, including the path of the exit discharge to the public way, in compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes. In occupancies other than Group R-2, R-3 and I-1 occupancies, the construction documents shall designate the number of occupants to be accommodated on every floor and in all rooms and occupiable spaces.

106.2.3 **Exterior Envelope.** The construction documents for all buildings shall describe the exterior wall envelope, roof envelope and building thermal envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with the Construction Codes. The construction documents shall provide details of the exterior wall and roof envelope as required, including materials, flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive membrane, details around openings, fire-resistive construction and fire-resistive protection of wall openings, wall cavities and intersections with floor assemblies, as applicable.

106.2.3.1 **Exterior opening near a lot line.** Where exterior wall openings are provided in accordance with Section 705.8.7, the construction documents shall include separate drawings illustrating compliance with all criteria of Section 705.8.7 in its entirety. Drawings shall indicate distances to interior record lot lines, adjacent buildings, percentages of exterior openings, protection of openings, and vertical distances above adjacent buildings on the same or adjacent lots as needed to demonstrate compliance with Section 705.8.7.

106.2.4 **Structural documents.** Before a permit is issued and before work can begin, structural documents shall be submitted in accordance with Section 1603, showing the complete design, with sizes, sections, and relative locations of various structural members, floor elevations, column, or bearing wall centers, and beam or joint sizes and spacings. A geotechnical report shall be provided where required by Sections 1705.6 and 1803. The code official shall have the right to require that the structural computations for the structure be submitted for review.

106.2.5 **Fire protection documents.** The applicant shall provide plans and schedules of sufficient detail showing the applicable features and characteristics of all fire protection systems components for any system required by the Construction Codes or otherwise proposed to be installed. The construction documents shall show the location and type of all fire alarm devices, fire alarm control equipment and panels, fire alarm primary and backup power sources. The construction documents shall include sufficient information and detail to adequately describe the elements of any smoke control systems including stair pressurization calculations, equipment location and engineering needs as required by the Construction Codes. The construction documents shall show the standpipes and automatic sprinkler system infrastructure including the location, size and type of risers, valves, flow and pressure sensors, Siamese connections, fire pump, jockey pump, pump controllers, pump test pipes and other appurtenances of the system, as applicable. The type of sprinkler system and areas and openings requiring special coverage shall be
so noted on the construction documents. The construction documents shall show details of other fire suppression systems, including gaseous and kitchen hood systems. The construction documents shall show capacities and loads of the means of egress, maximum travel distances at every floor, remoteness between exits, fire-resistance rating of structural members, floors and walls enclosing means of egress, rating of fire doors and fire dampers, fire stop penetration details at rated wall and floor assemblies, location and type of exit signs and emergency lighting. Construction documents for work in part of an existing building shall include a scoping document listing all floors of the building and the extent to which each floor is protected with an automatic fire suppression system.

106.2.6 Elevator and other conveying systems documents. The applicant shall provide plans and schedules of sufficient detail showing the applicable features and characteristics of all conveying systems components for any system required by the Construction Codes or otherwise proposed to be installed. The construction documents shall clearly show:

1. The location, overall dimensions and type of all vertical transportation systems.
2. The primary and secondary levels of elevator recall, the location and type of elevator lobby smoke detectors, other smoke detectors for elevator recall, as well as other fire alarm and fire suppression devices proposed to be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator pits and top of elevator hoistways and shall include a sequence of elevator operation in emergency mode when such fire detection equipment is activated.
3. The primary and backup power sources for the elevator equipment.
4. Clearances at top and bottom of hoistway and at elevator equipment spaces, minimum interior dimensions of cabs, provisions for access to elevator pits, provisions for drainage of elevator pits, provisions for illumination and electric power in elevator machine rooms, elevator hoistways, elevator pits and elevator equipment spaces shall be shown on the construction documents, as applicable.
5. The location of provisions for emergency disconnect of elevator power in elevator pits, elevator machine rooms and elevator equipment spaces, and shall show the location of sprinkler valves and sprinkler flow sensors for systems serving elevator machine rooms and hoistways, as required.

106.2.7 Electrical documents. The applicant shall provide plans and schedules of sufficient detail and clarity showing the location and capacity of all lighting facilities, electrically operated equipment and electrical circuits required for all service equipment of the building or other structure. All electrically controlled devices, including signal, communicating and lighting systems and associated wiring, wherever required under the provisions of the Construction Codes, shall be shown on the electrical plans for the following purposes:

1. Control of emergency lighting systems in places of public assembly and education and, in accordance with Section 1008, and life safety systems for hazardous uses in Sections 414 and 415.
2. Stairway and exit illumination in accordance with Sections 1006 and 1205, “Exit” sign lighting circuits in accordance with Section 1011, and elevator car illumination in accordance with Chapter 30.
3. Electrical equipment and control of heating, refrigerating and ventilating machinery and devices in accordance with the Mechanical Code.
4. Fire protective signaling systems, automatic fire detection systems, fire department communications and supervisory services in accordance with Sections 901.6 through 901.6.3 and Section 907.
5. Wiring of signs in accordance with Section 3107, and telecommunication and broadcast towers in accordance with Section 3108.
6. Power control electric operation and circuit wiring of elevators, escalators and other conveying systems in accordance with Chapter 30.
7. Illumination of spaces intended for human occupancy in accordance with Section 1205.
8. Backup emergency and standby power systems.
9. Lighting intensity levels along all required paths of egress.
10. All fire stop penetration details at rated wall and floor assemblies.
11. Fault current calculations.
12. Service size and load calculations.
13. Riser diagram with details.
14. Panel schedule with details and references.

106.2.7.1 Exemptions. Electrical plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from the building permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of electrical equipment.
3. Work involving only structures without equipment regulated by the Electrical Code, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached private garages and other similar spaces not required by the Construction Codes to be provided with electric current.
4. Temporary sanitary installations required for construction operations.

106.2.8 Fuel gas documents. The applicant shall provide construction documents, engineering calculations, diagrams and other data, which shall be of sufficient clarity to
indicate the location, nature and extent of the fuel gas work proposed and show in detail that the work conforms to the provisions of the Construction Codes. Construction documents shall indicate where penetrations will be made for installations and shall indicate fire stop penetration details at rated wall and floor assemblies. Plans must include a piping plan with gas riser diagram.

106.2.9 Mechanical documents. The applicant shall provide diagrammatic mechanical equipment or system and mechanical plans, which shall show the location and arrangement of the mechanical equipment, fuel systems, ductwork and appurtenances, including safety and pressure-controlling devices. The plans shall show in sufficient detail the relevant features and clearances of the appliances and systems, including: fire stop penetration details at rated wall and floor assemblies, and size and type of apparatus; construction of flue, stack or chimney; stack connections; type of fuel; method of operation; and the method of compliance with all the applicable regulations for the class and type of equipment installed.

106.2.9.1 Exemptions. Mechanical plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from building permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of mechanical equipment.
3. Work involving only structures without equipment regulated by the Mechanical Code, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached private garages and other similar spaces not required by the Construction Codes to be heated.

106.2.10 Plumbing documents. The applicant shall provide plans of each floor and of a typical floor showing the complete plumbing system layout, all plumbing fixtures, total drainage fixture unit (DFU) values, the water supply piping layout, together with building sections showing vertical and diagrammatic elevations of the soil, waste, vent and water supply lines with traps and valves, and the location and size of the public sewer or other disposal system. The plumbing plans shall show in sufficient detail: the layout and spacing of fixtures; the size, material and location of the building and storm sewers and drains; the soil, waste, vent and water supply piping; the method or equipment proposed to prevent cross-contamination and backflow; and fire-stop penetration details at rated wall and floor assemblies.

106.2.10.1 Public sewer. Plans for new plumbing or alterations to existing plumbing systems shall be accompanied by a diagram showing the relative elevation of the lowest fixture and the top of the public sewer referred to in the established datum of DC Water. The plans shall show the size, number and location of all new sewer connections. When relevant to the scope of work, the permit applicant shall secure from DC Water the location and other necessary details regarding water and sewer mains to serve the premises to be permitted and shall submit this information with the permit application to the code official.

106.2.10.2 Public water main. Where the installation of a water distribution system or the replacement or alteration of an existing water supply system is contemplated, the plumbing plans shall show the location and size of all water lines and branches involved, all fixtures or other devices to be supplied and the minimum water pressure in the main in front of the building or other structure.

106.2.10.3 DC water Certificate of Approval. A water and sewer Certificate of Approval, issued by DC Water, shall be provided with the plumbing plans for every project where DC Water is requested to furnish new water or sewer service connections.

106.2.10.4 Exemptions. Plumbing plans shall not be required for the following:

1. Any work exempted from building permit requirement in accordance with Section 105.2.
2. Repair or replacement in kind of plumbing fixtures.
3. Work involving only structures without plumbing fixtures, such as open sheds for storage purposes, detached private garages and temporary installations for exhibition purposes where not designed for sanitary use and not directly connected to a sewage system.
4. Temporary sanitary installations required for construction operations that are not designed to be directly connected to the public sewer system.

106.2.11 Energy conservation documents. The applicant shall provide plans and schedules of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building and the equipment and systems as herein governed, including, but not limited to:

1. Design criteria, exterior envelope component materials, insulation materials and their R-values.
2. Fenestration U-factors and SHGCs.
3. Area-weighted U-factor and SHGC calculations, and mechanical system design criteria.
4. Mechanical and service water heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
5. Economizer description, equipment and system controls.
6. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
7. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
8. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
10. Other pertinent data to indicate compliance with the requirements of the Energy Conservation Code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the code official.
106.2.12 Green Building documents. The applicant shall provide plans and supporting documents in sufficient detail and clarity to show compliance with the relevant green building construction practices as required by the Green Construction Code or an alternative compliance path selected pursuant to Section 101.12, and with any green building submittal requirements specified by the code official as set forth in the Department’s Administrative Bulletins.

106.2.13 Zoning compliance review data. The applicant shall provide to the Zoning Division of the Department plans showing orientation of the lot as to North, drawn to a scale indicated numerically as well as depicted graphically, and including the following information:

1. The shape, dimensions and topography of the lot to be built upon, in sufficient detail to allow determination of heights above both the existing grade and the proposed finished grade of all proposed structures, so as to allow determination of compliance with pertinent height limitations of the Zoning Regulations.

2. The width of all public streets and public rights-of-way contiguous to the lot, with elevations at measuring points along them sufficient to determine compliance with the An Act To regulate the height of buildings in the District of Columbia, approved June 1, 1910 [36 Stat. 452; DC Official Code § 6-601.05 (2018 Repl.)] as amended.

3. The shape and location in plan of all existing and proposed structures, fully dimensioned and labeled, including orientation, elevation in relationship to existing and proposed grades, and distances to lot lines so as to define without ambiguity the dimensions and location of said structures.

4. Longitudinal elevations of all existing and proposed structures fully dimensioned and shown in relation to the entire lot and the existing and proposed grades, so as to define without ambiguity the dimensions of said structures.

5. The parking and loading plans, with labels distinguishing existing facilities from proposed facilities, and the basis for computation of the facilities shown on those plans.

6. The location and elevation of any proposed retaining walls higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above existing grade.

7. A Zoning Data Summary of the project including, as applicable to the particular requirements of the zone in which the premises that are subject to the permit application, at least the following data: lot width; area of the lot; percentage of lot occupancy; height of the structure and the location and elevation of the height measurement reference points; gross floor area for each floor level; area of basement; area of cellar; proposed floor area ratio; areas dedicated to each use; width of any proposed side yard, rear yard or court; number of standard and compact parking spaces; and dimensions of loading berths and delivery loading spaces.

8. Other information necessary to determine compliance with the Zoning Regulations.

106.2.14 Shop drawings. Before construction or installation of the elements and systems listed below, the code official is authorized to require submission of shop drawings bearing the review stamp of the engineer of record, and bearing the seal and signature of the registered design professional who designed the system. Where the project is subject to the mandatory electronic submission requirements in Section 106.1, shop drawings shall be submitted electronically unless otherwise allowed by the code official. Where electronic submission is not required, four sets of shop drawings shall be submitted.

1. Structural steel and steel trusses, with connection details.
2. Open web steel joists.
3. Precast and prestressed concrete.
4. Post tensioning.
5. Space frames.
7. Curtain wall.
8. Structural wood trusses, beams, girders, and posts with connection details
9. Concrete mixes.
10. Structural, electrical, and mechanical loads related to new construction installations of elevators, escalators and other conveying systems, including, but not limited to, accessibility lifts.
11. Pre-engineered elements.
12. Suspended plaster ceiling systems.
15. Formwork.
16. Automatic fire suppression systems.
17. Fire alarm systems.
18. Smoke control systems.
19. Commercial kitchen hood suppression systems.

Exception for Items 16, 17 and 19: The code official is authorized to accept the following shop drawings without the seal and signature of the registered design professional who designed the system:

1. Where the automatic fire suppression systems shop drawing bears the stamp and signature of a National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technology (NICET) Level III Technician certified in Automatic Sprinkler System Layout or Special Hazards Suppression Systems.
The applicant shall provide an official building plat of a lot that is the subject of an application, issued by the DC Office of the Surveyor, in duplicate or by electronic submission, as part of applications for permit involving any of the following:

1. Erection of a new building or other structure.
2. Addition to an existing building.
3. Permanent construction higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above grade, outside the footprint of existing buildings.
4. Construction or alteration of projections into public space.
5. Erection of retaining walls higher than 48 inches (1219 mm).
6. Establishment of new parking spaces or loading berths external to a building or other structure, regardless of the amount of work involved.

106.2.15 Official building plat. The applicant shall provide an official building plat of a lot that is the subject of an application, issued by the DC Office of the Surveyor, in duplicate or by electronic submission, as part of applications for permit involving any of the following:

1. Erection of a new building or other structure.
2. Addition to an existing building.
3. Permanent construction higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above grade, outside the footprint of existing buildings.
4. Construction or alteration of projections into public space.
5. Erection of retaining walls.
6. A major substantial improvement activity (as defined by 21 DCMR, Chapter 5) or a land-disturbing activity regulated by 21 DCMR, Chapter 5.
7. Demolition or razing of existing structures or buildings.
8. Installation or replacement of underground utility service connections.
9. Installation or replacement of site drainage systems.
10. Alteration to the path of the exit discharge to the public way.
11. Construction in whole or in part on a development site in whole or in part within a flood hazard area as established in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

106.2.16 Site plan. The applicant shall provide a site plan, which shall not substitute for the official building plat required by Section 106.2.15, whenever the application for permit involves any of the following:

1. Erection of a new building or other structure.
2. Addition to an existing building.
3. Permanent construction outside the footprint of existing buildings.
4. Construction or alteration of projections into public space.
5. Erection of retaining walls.
6. Any features required to comply with 21 DCMR, Chapter 5.
9. Location of the path of the exit discharge to the public way.

10. Location of utility service lines and connections thereto (with dimensions and all appurtenant features of such connections).

11. Where a development site is wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, then the flood hazard area(s) floodways and identification of design flood elevations, as applicable, shall be provided in compliance with Appendix G.

106.2.17 Flood Hazard Areas—Additional Submission Requirements. For development in a development site that is within the scope of Appendix G, the applicant shall provide the additional information and data required by Appendix G as part of the permit application.

106.2.18 Protection of Adjoining Premises—Additional Submission Requirements.

106.2.18.1 Underpinning. Where underpinning is chosen to provide the protection or support of adjoining premises, the applicant shall provide such information as the code official deems necessary to determine the applicant’s compliance with the applicable provisions of the Construction Codes.

106.2.18.2 Excavations. Where an application for permit proposes excavation work, the code official is authorized to require the applicant to submit additional data the code official deems necessary to determine the appropriateness of the proposed structural measures to protect the integrity of the soil and structures located on the adjoining premises.

106.2.18.3 Notification of owners of adjoining premises. Notification of owners of adjoining premises (and owners of adjacent premises for snow drift loads) shall be provided by the applicant pursuant to the procedures set forth in Section 106.2.18.3.1, where the proposed work involves all or any of the following:

1. Where excavation requiring a permit will occur on the construction site.

   Exception: Where the code official determines that the excavation work will not have any adverse impact on structural or lateral support of the adjoining premises.

2. Where there is a need to install permanent or temporary structural support for an adjoining premises or portion thereof, including but not limited to underpinning, as a result of the proposed work.

3. Where the proposed work will alter imposed loads on a party wall or any load-bearing member of an adjoining premises.

4. Where access to an adjoining premises is required to install protective measures or undertake other work required by Section 3307.

5. Where the proposed work will render or potentially render adjoining or adjacent premises non-compliant with the Chimney Provisions (as defined in Section 3307.1.1) or with the snow load requirements in Section 1603.1.3 or Section R301.2.3 of the Residential Code, as applicable.

Exception: Notification is not required for applications submitted pursuant to Section 3307.1.4, by the owner of an adjoining or adjacent premises that has assumed responsibility for any required protective work.

For purposes of this section, a “party wall” shall be defined as “a wall that straddles, or is in close proximity to, a lot line, and which is used for structural support by two or more adjoining buildings or structures.”

106.2.18.3.1 Evidence of notification. As required by this section, and prior to permit issuance, the applicant shall provide evidence of notification, consisting of:

1. Evidence of the posting required by Section 106.2.18.3.1.1.

2. Evidence of the delivery of written notice required by Section 106.2.18.3.1.2.

3. The affidavit of maintenance required by Section 106.2.18.3.1.3.

No permit application within the scope of Section 106.2.18.3 will be granted without the specified evidence of notification, except as provided in Section 106.2.18.3.1.3.

106.2.18.3.1.1 Required posting. A notice of the filing of a permit application within the scope of Section 106.2.18.3 shall be posted by the applicant on the premises upon which the permit application seeks authorization to perform the work, and shall comply with the following conditions:

1. The notice shall be posted for a continuous period of at least 30 days, including the 30-day period immediately prior to issuance of the permit.

2. The notice shall be given on a form approved by the code official and shall be legible from the public way that provides the main entrance to the premises, as determined by the code official.

3. If the notice is destroyed, damaged, or removed during the posting period, the applicant shall promptly replace the notice.

4. Photographic evidence of the required posting shall be submitted to the code official by the applicant, and the associated permit(s) shall not be issued without this photographic evidence.

106.2.18.3.1.2 Required written notice. Prior to submission of a permit application within the scope of Section 106.2.18.3, the applicant shall provide written notice in an approved form to the
owner or owners of the adjoining premises in accordance with one of the methods below:

1. By US postal service registered or certified mail to the address of the owner as maintained in the Real Property Tax Database maintained by the Office of Tax and Revenue of the Office of the Chief Financial Officer.

2. By proper use of an approved private delivery service (such as Federal Express, UPS, or DHL) to the address of the owner as maintained in the Real Property Tax Database maintained by the Office of Tax and Revenue of the Office of the Chief Financial Officer.

3. By US postal service registered or certified mail to the address of the owner or authorized agent to the owner as recorded in the Land Records, shall be submitted by the owner or authorized agent to the code official as and when required by Section 120. The required covenant shall comply with DC Official Code § 6-1405.01(b) (2018 Repl.) and with the provisions of Section 120, as applicable.

## 106.2.19 Covenants and agreements.

Where a covenant or agreement is required by the Construction Codes or drafted in connection therewith (a required covenant), a copy of the required covenant, certified by the Recorder of Deeds as having been recorded in the Land Records, shall be submitted by the owner or authorized agent to the code official as and when required by Section 120. The required covenant shall comply with DC Official Code § 6-1405.01(b) (2018 Repl.) and with the provisions of Section 120, as applicable.

## 106.2.19.1 Other agency covenants.

Where an agency other than the Department requires a covenant or agreement relating to proposed construction, including, but not limited to, the covenants specified in Section 120.4, the applicant shall comply with such other agency’s requirements.

## 106.2.20 Construction noise—additional submission requirements.

No permit for construction, demolition or raze shall be issued until the permit applicant has provided as part of the permit application written acknowledgment that the noise emanating from the planned activity will comply with the limitations established by the noise regulations set forth in Title 20 DCMR.

## 106.3 Statement of special inspections.

A statement of special inspections shall accompany each application where special inspections and tests are required by Sections 109.3.13 and 1705. Submission of a statement of special inspections complying with Section 1704.3 shall be a condition for permit issuance as specified in Section 1704.2.3.

## 106.4 Registered design professional.

The design of work for new construction, repair, expansion, addition or alteration projects submitted for permit shall comply with Sections 106.4.1 through 106.4.6, as applicable.

## 106.4.1 Architectural services.

Where the project involves the practice of architecture, as defined by D.C. Official Code § 47-2853.61 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.), the corresponding permit documents shall be prepared by an architect licensed to practice architecture in the District of Columbia. All plans, computations, and specifications required to be submitted in connection with a permit application for such architectural work shall be prepared by or under the direct supervision of an architect with a valid and unexpired District of Columbia architecture license and shall bear the architect’s signature and seal in accordance with the laws of the District of Columbia.
106.4.2 Engineering services. Where the project involves the practice of engineering, as defined by D.C Official Code § 47-2853.131 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.), the corresponding permit documents shall be prepared by a professional engineer licensed to practice engineering in the District of Columbia. All plans, computations, and specifications required to be submitted in connection with a permit application for such engineering work shall be prepared by or under the direct supervision of a professional engineer with a valid and unexpired District of Columbia engineer license and shall bear the engineer’s signature and seal in accordance with the laws of the District of Columbia.

Exception: An architect licensed in the District of Columbia is authorized to perform engineering work that is incidental to the practice of architecture, as permitted by D.C Official Code § 47-2853.61 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

106.4.3 Interior design services. Plans for nonstructural alterations and repairs of a building, including the layout of interior spaces, which do not adversely affect any structural member, any part of the structure having a required fire-resistance rating, or the public safety, health or welfare, and which do not involve the practice of architecture and engineering as defined by D.C Official Code §§ 47-2853.61 and 47-2853.131 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.), shall be deemed to comply with this section when such plans are prepared, signed and sealed by an interior designer licensed and registered in the District of Columbia in accordance with D.C Official Code § 47-2853.101 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

106.4.4 Exemptions. The professional services of a licensed architect, professional engineer or interior designer are not required for the following:

1. Work done under any of the exemptions from registration provided for in the laws of the District of Columbia governing the licensure of architects, professional engineers and interior designers.

2. Nonstructural alteration of any building of Group R-3 occupancies or of any building under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code.

3. Preparation of drawings or details for cabinetry, architectural millwork, furniture, or similar interior furnishings, for any work to provide for their installation or for any work exempt from permit by Section 105.2.

4. Drawings or details for the installation of water and sewer building connections to a single family residential structure prepared by a master plumber licensed pursuant to D.C Official Code §§ 47-2853.121 et seq. (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

106.4.5. Registered design professional in responsible charge. The code official is authorized to require the owner to engage and designate on the permit application a registered design professional who shall act as the registered design professional in responsible charge. If the circumstances require, the owner shall designate a substitute registered design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original registered design professional in responsible charge. Where a registered design professional in responsible charge is required, the code official shall be notified in writing by the owner if the registered design professional in responsible charge is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building.

106.4.6 Attestations required.

106.4.6.1 Registered design professional. The signature and seal of the registered design professional, where required by and in accordance with Section 106.4, shall serve as attestation of the following:

1. For architects: “I am responsible for determining that the architectural designs included in this application are in compliance with all relevant laws and regulations of the District of Columbia. I have personally prepared, or directly supervised the preparation of, the architectural designs included in this application.”

2. For engineers: “I am responsible for determining that the engineering designs included in this application are in compliance with all relevant laws and regulations of the District of Columbia. I have personally prepared, or directly supervised the preparation of, the engineering designs included in this application.”

106.4.6.2 Registered design professional in responsible charge. Where the code official determines that a registered design professional in responsible charge is required for any project, an attestation sealed and signed by the registered design professional in responsible charge engaged by the owner shall be submitted prior to the issuance of any and all certificate(s) of occupancy for the project. The attestation shall identify the registered design professional in charge by name and registration number, shall identify the project or portion thereof being attested to, and shall state, to the code official’s satisfaction, that the project or portion thereof has been completed in a manner that is substantially compatible with the design of the building that was the basis of the corresponding permit. Furthermore, the attestation shall state that changes from such permit documents, including but not limited to submittal documents prepared by others during the course of construction, and phased and deferred submittal items, have been reviewed and coordinated by the attesting registered design professional in responsible charge.

106.5. Examination of documents. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined the submittal documents accompanying permit applications, pursuant to Section 105.3.

106.5.1 Review by other agencies. Permit applicants shall be responsible for obtaining any required approvals from other reviewing agencies and entities, including, but
not limited to, the Historic Preservation Office, the Historic Preservation Review Board, the District Department of Energy & Environment, the Public Space Committee, the District Department of Transportation, the Commission on Fine Arts, the Chinatown Steering Committee, and DC Water. If deficiencies in the plans or other supporting documents are discovered during reviews by other agencies, the other reviewing agencies shall respond according to the procedures set forth in its rules and/or procedures. Any restrictions or conditions imposed by other reviewing agencies may be annotated on the plans and shall be incorporated into and deemed a condition of the permit.

106.6 Conformance to approved construction documents. All work shall conform to the approved construction documents and any approved amendments to them. Any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be submitted to the Department for approval as an application for permit revision in accordance with Sections 105.9 and 105.9.1.

SECTION 107
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES

107.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit to construct temporary structures, tents and other membrane structures in accordance with Section 3103 and Section 3103 of the Fire Code. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, not to exceed 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

107.2 Temporary uses. A temporary certificate of occupancy shall be obtained, in accordance with Section 110.4.4, for temporary use and occupancy of: (1) temporary structures, tents and other membrane structures; and (2) existing buildings, existing structures or lots.

107.3 Temporary utility services. Utility connections for temporary structures shall be in accordance with Section 119.2.

107.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to order a temporary structure to be razed, or removed or a temporary use to be discontinued, as applicable, where the associated permit and/or certificate has expired. Revocation of permits for temporary structures, tents and other membrane structures, and revocation of temporary certificates of occupancy shall be governed by Section 111.

SECTION 108
FEES

108.1 Payment of fees. A permit shall not be issued until all required fees have been paid to the Department or other authorized agency, nor shall an amendment to a permit requiring an additional fee be issued until the additional fee has been paid.

108.1.1 Application filing deposit for new construction and alterations. All permit applications filed for new construction or alterations must be accompanied by a deposit of 50 percent of the permit valuation determined in accordance with Sections 108.2 and 108.3; provided, that the required deposit shall not exceed twenty thousand dollars ($20,000).

108.1.2 Accounting. The code official shall keep an accurate account of all fees collected, and such collected fees shall be deposited with the DC Treasurer, or otherwise deposited as required by law.

108.2 Code official authority. The code official is authorized to establish by approved rules a fee for each permit, certificate or authorization issued by the Department, as prescribed in a fee schedule adopted in accordance with Section 108.2.1, for buildings and other structures and for their appurtenant systems, fixtures, appliances and equipment. The code official is authorized to establish fees based on cost of the proposed work or to use alternate methodologies including, but not limited to, the square footage of the project.

108.2.1 Fee schedule. Fees for permit processing, inspections and related services, including, but not limited to, fees for processing and issuance of certificates of occupancy, shall be established by the code official in a fee schedule published in the DC Register, as amended from time to time.

108.3 Building permit valuations based on cost of work. Where a permit fee is based on cost of work, the applicant for a building permit shall provide an estimated cost of the proposed work at time of application, or such other information as the code official specifies, for purposes of establishing a permit valuation. Cost of the proposed work shall be based upon (a) total value of materials and labor for which the permit is being issued, including electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing equipment and permanent systems; or, (b) at the Department’s discretion, the most current edition of the National Building Cost Manual or comparable standard. The total cost shall not include architectural, engineering, and other associated professional costs. If, in the opinion of the code official, the cost of proposed work is underestimated on the application, the permit shall be withheld, unless the applicant can show detailed estimates to meet the approval of the code official. Final building permit valuation shall be determined by the code official. Acceptable evidence of the estimated cost of the proposed work shall include any of the following:

1. A fully executed construction contract.
2. A formal contractor’s estimate.
3. When a deferred method of determining construction cost is submitted, the code official is authorized to request from the applicant a certified contractor’s certificate of payment showing the actual cost of construction and the code official is authorized to adjust the building permit fee to reflect the actual cost of construction prior to issuing a certificate of occupancy.
5. The cost based on national standards for construction costs, as modified for the District of Columbia region, as set forth in the most current edition of the National Building Cost Manual or comparable standard.
108.4 Fees associated with work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work on a building, other structure, gas, electrical, mechanical or plumbing system before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established in the official fee schedule that shall be in addition to the required permit fees and any fines that may have been levied.

108.5 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal, raze or demolition for work done in connection to or concurrently with the work authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law; or any other privileges, services or requirements, allowed or prescribed by law.

108.6 Refunds. The code official is authorized to establish a refund policy.

108.7 Waiver of fees. No person or entity shall be entitled to a waiver of fees, except as set forth in the License Fees and Charges Act of 1976, effective September 14, 1976 [DC Law 1-82; DC Official Code § 47-2712 (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

SECTION 109
INSPECTIONS

109.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official pursuant to the provisions of this section and Section 104.6. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to cause the construction or work to remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved. The permit holder shall be liable for any expenses entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes or of other laws or regulations of the District of Columbia. Regardless of whether the code official inspects the construction or work, it is the responsibility of the permit holder and the individual or entity doing the work to comply with all applicable provisions of the Construction Codes.

109.1.1 Preliminary inspection. Before issuing a permit, the code official is authorized to examine or cause to be examined all premises for which a permit application has been filed.

109.1.2 Termination of an inspection. The code official is authorized to terminate an inspection where interference with an inspection occurs or where the code official determines that the work is not sufficiently accessible and exposed for inspection.

109.1.3 Identification of general contractor or construction manager. No inspection by the code official will be scheduled unless and until the applicant has complied with the requirements of Section 105.3.2(8).

109.1.4 Master tradesperson to be on-site during inspections. The master tradesperson to whom a trade permit is issued, or the District of Columbia licensed representative of the master tradesperson, shall be present during the rough-in inspection for the specific scope of work performed under the trade permit. The code official shall have the authority to require the master tradesperson to be present during any subsequent inspections of the same work where there is repeated noncompliance with Construction Code provisions.

109.2 Required inspections and testing. The permit holder shall be responsible for notifying the code official when the stages of construction are reached that require any inspection under Section 109 and for other critical items as directed by the code official. Upon notification, the code official shall make the inspections specified in Section 109 and such other inspections as necessary, and shall either approve that portion of the construction or shall notify the permit holder of any violations that shall be corrected. The code official shall not be responsible for conducting inspections unless appropriately notified. The code official shall respond to inspection requests without unreasonable delay. It shall be the duty of the person requesting any inspections required by the Construction Codes to provide access to and means for inspection of such work.

109.2.1 Inspection record. Work requiring a permit shall not be commenced until the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder maintains on the job site an inspection record card or other approved documentation issued by the code official. Such inspection record document shall be made available by the permit holder on the job site until final inspection approval has been granted by the code official. Only an inspector authorized by the Department shall document inspections conducted. Any entry on the inspection record document made by a person other than an authorized inspector shall be grounds for revocation of the permit in accordance with Section 111.

109.2.2 Approval Required. Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the code official. The code official shall approve the work or portion thereof that is satisfactory as completed, and, where applicable, shall notify the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder that the work or any portion thereof fails to comply with the Construction Codes. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portions shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the code official.

109.3 Types of inspections. After issuing a permit, the code official shall conduct the types of inspections specified in Section 109 as deemed necessary by the code official and shall confirm submission of documents required by this section and Section 109.4, during and upon completion of the work. A record of all such inspections and of all noted violations of the Construction Codes shall be maintained by the code official.

109.3.1 Building inspections.

109.3.1.1 Footing and foundation inspections. Footing and foundation inspections are required in accordance with Sections 109.3.1.1.1 and 109.3.1.1.2.

109.3.1.1.1 Footing inspections. Footing inspection is required after excavation for footings is complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete footings, any required forms shall be in
place prior to inspection. Materials for the footing shall be on the jobsite at the time of inspection, except where concrete is ready mixed in accordance with ASTM C94, the concrete need not be on the jobsite.

109.3.1.2 Foundation inspections. Foundation inspection is required after approval of footings, for location of walls and columns with respect to footings, piles and piers. For concrete foundations, any required forms, spacers and reinforcement shall be in place prior to inspection. Inspections will include materials, concrete cover, anchoring and dimensions, as appropriate.

109.3.1.3 Energy footing and foundation insulation inspection. Inspection of installation is required for insulation R-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection at footing, foundation, and under floor prior to covering of the materials.

109.3.1.2 As-built foundation survey (wall check). A wall check survey is required before a wall reaches a height of 1 foot (305 mm) above grade, or, in the case of other vertical construction, when a template or form is located and noted. The code official is authorized to require up to three wall checks depending on the design of the structure: below grade at footer, near grade, and final grade. Surveys, wall examinations and reports, and field notes shall comply with 10-B DCMR §§ 2802, 2810-2812. Wall check surveys shall be performed by a DC-Registered Land Surveyor. Wall check reports, including drawings and field notes, shall be filed with the DC Office of the Surveyor. Surveying practices should comply with standards set forth in the Manual Of Practices For Real Property Surveying In The District Of Columbia published by The District of Columbia Association of Land Surveyors (January 2017). Authorization to continue construction of any building or other structure beyond construction of the foundation shall not be issued until a wall report has been prepared and submitted to the Department. The wall report shall confirm that the location and elevation of the building or other structure conform to the approved plans and the provisions of the Construction Codes and other applicable District of Columbia regulations.

109.3.1.3 Backfill inspection. Backfill inspection is required prior to placement of backfill materials, for inspection of placement and cover of required footing drain tile, wall waterproofing, drainage and insulation. Backfill materials shall be on the jobsite at the time of inspection.

109.3.1.4 Concrete slab or under-floor inspection. Concrete slab inspections are required after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel is in place to verify reinforcement size, spacing, concrete cover, splicing, vapor barrier, and mesh. For slab-on-grade foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Energy footing and foundation insulation inspection, in accordance with Section 109.3.1.1.3, is required prior to concrete slab or under-floor inspection.

109.3.1.5 Floodplain elevation certificate. For any work subject to Appendix G, upon placement of the lowest floor, and prior to proceeding with construction above that floor level, the elevation certificate required by Section 1612.5, shall be submitted to the code official. This certificate shall be reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator before construction above the lowest floor proceeds, and any such construction before such review and approval is had shall be at the permit holder’s risk. Approval by the Floodplain Administrator of the elevation certificate must be received by DCRA prior to the scheduling and performance of any subsequent inspections required by Section 109.

109.3.1.6 Precladding inspections. Inspections in accordance with Sections 109.3.1.6.1 and 109.3.1.6.2 are required, as applicable, prior to placement of exterior cladding.

109.3.1.6.1 Exterior wall sheathing inspection. Inspection is required, for sheathing materials and nailing patterns, prior to covering the sheathing with any material, such as exterior insulation, water-resistant barrier, or air barrier.

109.3.1.6.2 Water-resistive barrier inspection. Inspection is required for water-resistive barrier material and installation, prior to application of exterior insulation, roofing materials or exterior wall cladding, veneer or finishes.

109.3.1.7 Framing inspection. Framing inspections are required for interior and exterior walls, floor-ceiling and roof-ceiling assemblies. Inspections shall be performed after the framing and bracing of the respective assemblies has been completed, including but not limited to framing of walls, shaft walls, exit enclosures, elevator hoistways, floor-ceiling assemblies, roof assemblies and roof sheathing. Framing inspections shall be performed before thermal envelope interior insulation is applied. Framing inspections shall not be approved before the rough-in inspections of electrical, plumbing, gasfitting and mechanical work have been approved.

109.3.1.8 Energy Inspections

109.3.1.8.1 Energy primary air barrier inspection. Inspection of installation is required for the primary air barrier prior to covering of the materials in accordance with the provisions of the Energy Conservation Code.

109.3.1.8.2 Energy insulation inspection. Inspection of installation is required for the insulation R-value at the building thermal envelope prior to covering of the material. This includes exterior wall, interior wall, roof and attic insulation. Fenestration installed in the building thermal envelope shall be inspected for U-factor and SHGC value. Envelope commissioning documentation shall be provided in
accordance with established guidance upon request of the code official. Compliance with relevant building envelope provisions of the Energy Conservation Code shall be verified.

109.3.1.9 Inspection of fire-resistance-rated assembly. An inspection is required of fire-resistance-rated assemblies, including, but not limited to, those constructed of gypsum board or shaftliner board. This inspection includes assemblies that are part of a fire or smoke-rated wall, a shear wall, a shaft wall or a sound attenuation assembly, and shall be performed after the gypsum board is in place, but before the outer layer of gypsum board joints and fasteners are taped and covered with joint compound. Shaft walls constructed with shaftliner shall be inspected on the shaftliner face from three sides of the shaft, and from the exterior of the shaft on all sides of the shaft.

109.3.1.10 Accessibility inspections. Inspections of features affecting accessibility are required at various stages of construction. Building elements such as, but not limited to, required floor clearances, maneuvering clearances, ramp slopes, grab bar wall reinforcements, shall be inspected when construction is ready for framing or rough-in inspections. Features such as, but not limited to, required signage, reach ranges, floor surfaces, thresholds and mounting heights shall be inspected when construction is ready for final inspections. All accessibility inspections shall be performed prior to the final building inspection.

109.3.1.11 Final building inspection. A final building inspection is required after all other required building inspections are approved, and after any associated final inspections, acceptance testing, submissions or reports specified in Sections 109.3.2 through 109.3.13, as applicable, are approved and recorded, and the work for which a permit was issued has been completed in compliance with the Construction Codes. This inspection will confirm that each relevant system and component has successfully undergone a final acceptance testing or inspection, and that the life safety related items, as installed, perform or operate as intended and the premises are deemed safe to occupy. This inspection will also confirm, among other things, that:

1. The required means of egress are compliant and unobstructed through the exit discharge.
2. The required signage is appropriately posted.
3. Opening protective ratings are correct.
4. Installed handrails and hardware are compliant.
5. The permit holder has complied with Sections 109.3.1.11.1 and 109.3.1.11.2, as applicable.

109.3.1.11.1 Flood hazard documentation. For work subject to Appendix G, a final building inspection shall not be approved unless the permit holder has complied with the requirements of either of the following, as applicable:

1. An elevation certificate shall be submitted to the code official and reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator documenting the as-built elevation of the lowest floor as required by Section 1612.5.
2. A floodproofing certificate shall be submitted to the code official and reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator prior to either (a) the final inspection, or (b) the issuance of a certificate of completion or the first certificate of occupancy for a occupied space at grade or above, whichever is earlier, to certify a floodproofing design for a nonresidential building that is permitted as an alternative to elevating to or above the base flood elevation.

109.3.1.11.2 Addressing. A final building inspection shall not be approved unless the premises complies with the applicable addressing requirements in Section 118.

109.3.2 Electrical inspections.

109.3.2.1 Underground and slab inspection. Inspection is required after trenches or ditches are excavated, forms are erected, conduit or cable are installed, and before any backfill or concrete is placed.

109.3.2.2 Service inspection. Inspection of each new or upgraded electrical service is required before the service entrance equipment is authorized to be energized.

109.3.2.3 Rough-in inspection. Inspection is required after the framing, fire blocking, and fire stopping are in place, after all circuit wiring, outlet boxes and luminaires are roughed-in, and prior to the installation of insulation and wall and ceiling membranes.

109.3.2.4 Energy rough-in inspection. Inspection is required after all circuit wiring, outlet boxes and luminaires are roughed-in, and prior to the installation of insulation and wall and ceiling membranes. Inspection of installation is required for the wiring of controls and other electrical provisions of the Energy Conservation Code.

109.3.2.5 Energy final inspection. Inspection is required after completion of all the electrical work planned or required on the premises for which a permit was issued. Inspection of installation is required for lighting efficacy, lighting controls, and other electrical provisions of the Energy Conservation Code.

109.3.2.6 Final electrical inspection. A final electrical inspection is required after completion of all the electrical work planned or required on the premises for which a permit was issued, to confirm that all required electrical outlets, switches, luminaires and equipment are in place and properly connected and protected.

109.3.3 Plumbing inspections.

109.3.3.1 Underground and slab inspection. Inspection is required after trenches or ditches are excavated, forms are erected, and piping is installed, and before any backfill or concrete is placed. Drainage piping shall be inspected for appropriate size and slope, and all piping to be buried or embedded shall be tested for leaks.
under appropriate hydrostatic pressure in accordance with Sections 312.2 and 312.5 of the *Plumbing Code* and corresponding provisions of the *Residential Code* if applicable. Inspection of water and sewer laterals to the point of connection to the public mains is also required.

109.3.3.2 Rough-in inspection. Inspection is required prior to the installation of insulation and wall and ceiling membranes, after the framing, fire blocking and fire stopping are in place, and after water, soil, waste and vent piping is complete. All piping systems, whether to be concealed or not, shall be tested for leaks under appropriate hydrostatic pressure, in accordance with Sections 312.2 and 312.5 of the *Plumbing Code* and corresponding provisions of the *Residential Code* if applicable, before installation of any concealing materials.

109.3.3.3 Energy rough-in inspection. Inspection is required after the installation of pipe insulation. Inspection of installation is required for plumbing pipe insulation and other plumbing provisions of the *Energy Conservation Code* prior to covering of the material or equipment.

109.3.3.4 Water service pipe inspection. Domestic water service pipe installation inspection is required for pipe size, materials, trenching and bedding, from the public water main tap to the water distribution system of the premises, prior to backfilling the trench.

109.3.3.5 Building sewer pipe inspection. Inspection of installation of sanitary, storm and combined building sewer, as applicable, is required for pipe size, materials, slope, trenching and bedding, from the building drain to the public sewer serving the premises, prior to backfilling the trench.

109.3.3.6 Water Service flush inspection. Domestic water service pipe flush inspection is required prior to connection of the service to the water distribution system of the premises, to witness the removal of debris in the water service line.

109.3.3.7 Energy final inspection. Inspection is required after the work for which a permit was issued has been completed, all plumbing fixtures and equipment are in place and properly connected, and all the plumbing work to be done in the structure, building, or portion thereof is completed. Inspection of installation is required for plumbing controls and other plumbing provisions of the *Energy Conservation Code*.

109.3.3.8 Final plumbing inspection. Final plumbing inspection is required after the work for which a permit was issued has been completed, all plumbing fixtures and equipment are in place and properly connected, and all the plumbing work to be done in the structure, building or portion thereof is completed.

109.3.4 Mechanical inspections.

109.3.4.1 Underground and slab inspection. Inspection is required after trenches or ditches are excavated, forms are erected, underground duct or fuel piping is installed, and before any backfill and/or concrete is placed.

109.3.4.2 Rough-in inspection. Inspection is required prior to the installation of wall and ceiling membranes, and after the roof, framing, fire blocking and bracing are in place and all duct and fuel piping to be concealed are complete.

109.3.4.3 Energy rough-in inspection. Inspection is required prior to the installation of wall and ceiling membranes, and after all duct to be concealed are complete. Inspection of installation is required for duct insulation, ventilation strategy, and other mechanical provisions of the *Energy Conservation Code*. The rough-in duct leakage test results shall be provided. Systems commissioning documents shall be provided in accordance with established guidance upon request of the code official.

109.3.4.4 Commercial kitchen hood and duct inspections. Inspection is required after a commercial kitchen hood and associated exhaust duct have been installed.

109.3.4.4.1 Grease duct inspection. This inspection shall be performed before concealing any portion of the grease duct, and shall include, but not be limited to, inspection of duct joints and witnessing of a grease duct leakage test in accordance with Section 506.3.2.5 of the *Mechanical Code*.

109.3.4.4.2 Kitchen exhaust hood inspection. This inspection shall be performed after connecting the hood to the grease duct, and shall include, but not be limited to, inspection of the connection between hood and duct, and of any required grease duct enclosure installation, in accordance with Section 506.3.11 of the *Mechanical Code*. This inspection is in addition to the commercial kitchen exhaust hood testing required by Section 109.3.7.6.

109.3.4.5 Energy final inspection. Inspection is required after the work for which a permit was issued has been completed, the mechanical systems and appliances are in place and properly connected. Inspection of installation is required for HVAC system sizing, ventilation strategy controls, and other mechanical provisions of the *Energy Conservation Code*. If not provided for in Section 109.3.4.3, Energy Rough-in Inspection, the post construction duct leakage test report shall be provided. Systems commissioning documents shall be provided in accordance with established guidance upon request of the code official.

109.3.4.6 Final mechanical inspection. A final mechanical inspection is required after the work for which a permit was issued has been completed, the mechanical systems and appliances are in place and properly connected and all work regulated by the *Mechanical Code* (or corresponding provisions of the *Residential Code*, if applicable) to be done on the premises is completed.

109.3.5 Fuel gas inspections.

109.3.5.1 Rough-in inspection. Inspection is required after all piping authorized by the permit has been installed and before any such piping has been covered.
and concealed or any fixtures or appliances have been connected. This inspection shall include witnessing a test and performing an inspection of the gas piping systems, in accordance with Section 406 of the Fuel Gas Code and corresponding provisions of the Residential Code, if applicable.

109.3.5.2 Final fuel gas inspection. A final inspection is required after all fuel gas work for which a permit was issued has been completed.

109.3.6 Elevators, escalators and other conveying systems inspections. Prior to operation of an elevator, escalator or other conveying system that has been installed or altered pursuant to a permit, a final inspection and issuance of a certificate of inspection shall be required in accordance with Section 3009.3.

109.3.7 Fire Protection systems inspections.

109.3.7.1 Fire alarm systems rough-in. Inspection of fixed portions of fire detection and alarm systems, whether to be concealed or not, is required before installation of any concealing materials for inspection of wiring methods and supports.

109.3.7.2 Fire suppression systems pressure testing and inspection. Before installation of any concealing materials, or painting of any piping or fittings, an inspection is required of all portions of fire suppression systems piping, whether to be concealed or not. This inspection shall include, but not be limited to, the materials installed, the method of installation, clearances and supports, the location of sprinklers or nozzles, and the witnessing of pressure tests with appropriate testing media, to detect leaks. Where water-based suppression systems have to be tested with gas or air, an additional hydrostatic test shall be performed and witnessed in accordance with Section 903.5 of this code and Section 901.5 of the Fire Code, as soon as temperature conditions allow it.

109.3.7.3 Fire service flush inspection. Fire service flush inspection is required prior to connection of the service, to any portion of the fire pump or sprinkler system piping, to witness the removal of debris in the fire service line.

109.3.7.4 Fire pump inspection. Before final inspection of a water-based fire suppression system, where a new or replacement fire pump assembly is installed, a fire pump inspection is required for proper installation, initiation and operation, under normal and backup power, to verify that appropriate pressure and flow are achieved. This inspection shall include witnessing an acceptance test of the pump in accordance with the relevant standard.

109.3.7.5 Fire suppression systems final inspection. Final inspection is required to verify the installation and coverage, and, where appropriate, proper operation of each fire suppression system. Where appropriate, this inspection shall include witnessing the testing of system discharge control devices under the relevant standard.

109.3.7.6 Kitchen hood and duct fire suppression systems final acceptance testing. Final acceptance testing is required of work for which a permit has been issued to confirm proper installation, coverage and operation of fire suppression systems. This acceptance testing shall include witnessing the testing of system discharge control devices, as appropriate, under the relevant standards.

109.3.7.7 Fire alarm systems final acceptance testing. Final acceptance testing is required of any work on a fire detection and alarm system for which a permit has been issued to confirm proper initiation, notification, annunciation and operation of the system. This acceptance testing shall include witnessing an acceptance test of the system in accordance with the relevant standard.

109.3.8 Energy final inspection. A final energy inspection is required after the work for which a building permit was issued has been completed and all the mechanical, plumbing, electrical and building envelope systems have been installed and programmed, to ascertain compliance of the project with the relevant provisions of the Energy Conservation Code. The building air leakage test results shall be provided to the code official.

109.3.9 Green Building inspections. Where the Green Construction Code applies, the following green building inspections are required.

109.3.9.1 Green demolition inspection. Inspection is required for material resource conservation, efficiency, and indoor environmental air quality at the time of starting construction activities likely to produce dust or odors. The green demolition inspection is applicable to all projects subject to the Green Construction Code performing demolition.

109.3.9.2 Green rough-in inspection. Inspection is required for site development, material resource conservation, energy conservation, water resource conservation, and indoor environmental quality at the time of first insulation inspection in accordance with Section 109.3.1.9 and after mechanical, electrical, and plumbing rough-in inspections. Inspection is required prior to the covering of the materials or equipment. A green rough-in inspection is not required if the project is only performing demolition.

109.3.9.3 Green final inspection. Inspection is required for site development, material resource conservation, energy conservation, water resource conservation and indoor environmental quality prior to the final building inspection in accordance with Section 109.3.1.11. A green final inspection is not required if the project is only performing demolition.

109.3.10 Boiler and pressure vessel inspections. A boiler or pressure vessel inspection is required prior to operating a new or altered boiler or pressure vessel. This final inspection shall be performed to confirm that the boiler or pressure vessel has been installed or altered in compliance with the Mechanical Code and the conditions.
of its installation permit. This final inspection and issuance of a certificate of inspection are required pursuant to Section 1003.2 of the Mechanical Code.

109.3.11 Other inspections. In addition to the inspections specified above, the code official is authorized to make, or to require the owner of a building or other structure to have an independent inspection agency perform, other inspections of any construction work. These inspections shall ascertain compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations and other laws or regulations that are enforced by the Department.

109.3.12 [Reserved]

109.3.13 Special inspections. Special inspections shall be made in accordance with Chapter 17 of this code, the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual published by the Department, and the Special Inspections Procedural Manual published by the Department.

109.3.13.1 Authority to require special inspections. The code official is authorized to require the owner to employ special inspectors having adequate qualifications for inspection or supervision of the types of construction in accordance with Chapter 17 of this code, the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual and the Special Inspections Procedural Manual.

109.3.13.2 Final Report of special inspections. In order to obtain a final building inspection and/or Certificate of Occupancy, a final report of Special Inspections must be submitted to the code official after review and approval by the Special Engineer of Record in accordance with the requirements of the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual and the Special Inspections Procedural Manual.

109.3.13.3 Inspection at point of manufacture or fabrication. When required by the provisions of the Building Code, materials or assemblies shall be inspected at the point of manufacture or fabrication in accordance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1704.2.5.1, and the Special Inspections Procedural Manual.

109.3.14 Certificates authorizing use and occupancy of premises or portion thereof. The code official is authorized to conduct an inspection upon submission of an application for a Certificate required by Section 110, to confirm that work authorized by a permit has been completed in compliance with the Construction Codes, and the proposed use and occupancy or both complies with all applicable provisions of the Construction Codes and Zoning Regulations.

109.4 Inspections of permitted work by third-party agencies.

109.4.1 Authorization to use a third-party agency. When approved by the Department, a permit holder, at the permit holder’s expense, shall have the option of having a third-party agency conduct the inspections required by Section 109.3 for work subject to a permit issued by the Department. The third-party agency must be pursuant and subject to the provisions of DC Official Code § 6-1405 (2018 Repl.), Section 109.4, and the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual (the provisions of which are incorporated herein by reference). Where the Department approves the use of a third-party agency the third-party agency shall provide and perform inspection services of the work for which a permit has been issued by the Department in accordance with DC Official Code § 6-1405, this section, and the provisions of the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual.

109.4.1.1 Special inspections. Special inspections shall be governed by Section 109.3.13 and Chapter 17 of the Building Code, the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual and the Special Inspections Policy Manual.

109.4.2 Procedures for inspections by third-party agencies. Where inspections are to be conducted by one or more approved third-party agencies of work subject to any permit issued by the Department, the third-party agency shall comply with the provisions of the Third-Party Program Procedure Manual.

109.5 Right of entry. The code official’s right of entry shall be governed by Section 104.6.

109.6 Coordination of inspections. Whenever, in the enforcement of the Construction Codes or another law or regulation, the responsibility of more than one official of the District of Columbia is involved, it shall be the duty of the officials involved to coordinate their inspections and administrative orders as fully as practicable so that the owner and occupants of the premises are not subjected to multiple visits by numerous inspectors or multiple or conflicting orders.

SECTION 110
LETTERS OF CORE AND SHELL COMPLETION AND CERTIFICATES AUTHORIZING OCCUPANCY AND USE OF PREMISES

110.1 General. Section 110 provides procedures and requirements for the following:

1. Letters of Core and Shell Completion;
2. Certificates of Occupancy;
3. Single-family Certificates of Completion;
4. Conditional Certificates of Occupancy; and
5. Temporary Certificates of Occupancy.

For purposes of Section 110, the term “Certificate” shall collectively refer to all of the certificates identified in Items 2 through 5 above.

110.2 Letter of Core and Shell Completion. The code official is authorized to issue a Letter of Core and Shell Completion in accordance with the provisions of Section 110.2 for construction, whether involving newly constructed or existing buildings, where the code official determines that the building’s core and shell are substantially complete in accordance with the Construction Codes. The issuance of a Letter of Core and Shell Completion under this section shall not authorize or be deemed to authorize the use or occupancy of any portion of a premises or portion thereof for which a Certificate is required. The core and shell shall include any ele-
ments, systems and components that the code official shall designate.

110.2.1 Applications for a Letter of Core and Shell Completion. All applications for a Letter of Core and Shell Completion shall be filed with the Department on the prescribed forms provided by the code official, shall be accompanied by the prescribed filing fee paid at the time of the application, and shall include the following:

1. A list of permit numbers for all valid, associated permit(s) that authorized the construction for which the Letter of Core and Shell Completion is sought.
2. Where the premises is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, the as-built elevation certificate or flood-proofing certificate required by Appendix G, as applicable.
3. Other information as the code official shall require.

110.2.2 Additional requirements for action on applications for Letters of Core and Shell Completion. Prior to issuance of a Letter of Core and Shell Completion, the code official shall conduct inspections pursuant to Section 109.3.8 to confirm compliance with the applicable Construction Codes, and shall obtain review and approval by the Floodplain Administrator if the premises are located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area.

110.2.3 Issuance of Letter of Core and Shell Completion. The code official shall review applications for Letters of Core and Shell Completion which are complete, and shall approve such applications and issue a Letter of Core and Shell Completion upon a finding that the application satisfies the requirements of Sections 110.2, 110.2.1 and 110.2.2., and other applicable provisions of the Construction Codes. The Letter of Core and Shell Completion issued by the Department shall contain all of the following information:

1. The address of the premises, along with the lot and square number.
2. The name and address of the owner.
3. A description of the premises or portion of the premises for which the Letter of Core and Shell Completion is issued.
4. The permit number(s) associated with the Letter of Core and Shell Completion (if applicable).
5. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6 of this code.
6. The edition of the Construction Codes under which the permit(s) were issued.
7. List of all building elements, systems and components encompassed by the Letter of Core and Shell Completion and any special stipulations and conditions.
8. The name of the code official.
9. The date of issuance.

110.3 Required Certificates authorizing use and occupancy of a premises or portion thereof. Until a Certificate authorizing the use and occupancy of the premises or portion thereof in accordance with Sections 110.3 and 113.4 has been issued by the code official, no person shall use or occupy any premises or any portion thereof for any purpose, and no change in the existing use, occupancy classification, occupancy load, tenant floor layout or ownership of a premises or portion thereof shall be made for any purpose. The issuance of a Certificate shall not be construed as an approval of a violation of the provisions of the applicable Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations or of the provisions of other laws or regulations of the District.

Exceptions:

1. One-family dwellings (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents) in existence on the effective date of the Construction Codes.
2. Repairs or alterations (Level 1 or Level 2) to one-family dwellings (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents).
3. Transfer of ownership of a one-family dwelling (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents) in itself does not require a new certificate.

110.4 Code official authority to issue certificates. The code official is authorized to issue the following Certificates authorizing use and occupancy of a premises, or portion thereof, in accordance with the requirements of Sections 110.4 through 110.6:


110.4.1 Certificate of Occupancy. The code official is authorized to issue a Certificate of Occupancy where the code official determines that all of the following have been met:

1. Work pursuant to a permit has been completed.
2. A satisfactory final inspection has been approved in accordance with Section 109.3.111.
3. The construction conforms substantially to the permit including approved construction documents and to the provisions of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations and other applicable laws and regulations.
4. The owner has complied with the requirements of Section 110.5.

110.4.2 Single-family certificate of completion. Where the code official determines that the conditions of Section 110.4.1 are satisfied, the code official has authority to issue a Single-family Certificate of Completion in the following circumstances:

1. One-family dwellings (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents) constructed after the effective date of the Construction Codes.
2. Additions or Level 3 alterations to existing one-family dwellings (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents) completed after the effective date of the Construction Codes.
110.4.3 Conditional Certificate of Occupancy. The code official is authorized to issue a Conditional Certificate of Occupancy to authorize the conditional use and conditional occupancy of a premises, or a portion thereof, for which construction has begun but not been completed pursuant to a valid permit where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The code official has determined that the portion of the premises for which the Conditional Certificate of Occupancy is requested may be safely occupied notwithstanding that the work authorized by the permit has not been completed. A building will not be deemed safe for occupancy unless, at a minimum, the following are in place for the areas being occupied: adequate light, ventilation and sanitation; means of egress, fire protection systems, primary structural frame and secondary members.

2. A valid Letter of Core and Shell Completion has been issued for the entire building or structure in which the premises or portion thereof for which the Conditional Certificate of Occupancy is requested is located unless the code official makes a determination in writing that a Letter of Core and Shell Completion is not required.

3. The proposed occupancy (both as to initial occupancy and subsequent identical occupancies thereafter) complies with all use and occupancy requirements of Chapters 3 and 4 of this code and the applicable Zoning Regulations.

4. The owner has complied with the requirements of Section 110.5.

The issuance of a Conditional Certificate of Occupancy under this section shall only authorize the use or occupancy of the part of the premises specified therein, and shall not authorize or be deemed to authorize the use or occupancy of any other part of the premises. A substantial separation will be established and maintained between the area occupied and the areas remaining under construction to prevent noise, pollutants and other unsafe conditions from adversely affecting occupied areas.

110.4.3.1 Authority to impose conditions. The code official is authorized to impose conditions on the Conditional Certificate of Occupancy as the code official deems necessary to protect the public health, safety, and welfare, including, but not limited to, an expiration date for the Conditional Certificate of Occupancy and a requirement that a single Certificate of Occupancy be obtained for the entire building or structure upon completion of all phases of the work permitted.

110.4.3.2 Expiration of Conditional Certificate of Occupancy. A Conditional Certificate of Occupancy shall become null and void upon the expiration date specified in the Conditional Certificate of Occupancy without any additional notice or order required by the code official. The code official is authorized to identify expired certificates in the Department's database, or to take any other actions necessary to administer this provision.

110.4.4 Temporary Certificate of Occupancy. The code official is authorized to issue a Temporary Certificate of Occupancy, subject to the requirements of Section 110.5, in either of the following circumstances:

1. To authorize the temporary use and temporary occupancy of a temporary structure, tent or membrane structure for which a permit has been issued pursuant to Sections 107.1 and 3103 and/or Sections 3103 and 3104 of the Fire Code for a defined period of time not to exceed six months.

Exception: The code official has authority to issue a Temporary Certificate of Occupancy for up to 12 months for temporary use and temporary occupancy of a permitted temporary structure, tent or membrane structure, where the use and occupancy occurs intermittently, and for no more than two days per week, and no permanent structure is built.

2. To authorize the temporary use (including a temporary change of use) and temporary occupancy of (a) an existing building or existing structure, or portion thereof, or (b) a lot (but not any temporary structures, tents or membrane structures located thereon) for a defined period of time not to exceed 12 months, where the code official determines that the premises, or designated part thereof, is safe to use and occupy.

The issuance of a Temporary Certificate of Occupancy under this section shall only authorize the use or occupancy of the part of the premises specified therein, and shall not authorize or be deemed to authorize the use or occupancy of any other part of the premises.

110.4.4.1 Authority to impose conditions. The code official is authorized to impose conditions on the Temporary Certificate of Occupancy as the code official deems necessary to protect the public health, safety, and welfare.

110.4.4.2. Expiration of temporary Certificate of Occupancy. The code official shall specify the expiration date for the Temporary Certificate of Occupancy in the Certificate issued under this section. A Temporary Certificate of Occupancy shall become null and void upon the expiration date specified in the Temporary Certificate of Occupancy without any additional notice or order required by the code official. The code official is authorized to identify expired certificates in the Department’s database, or to take any other actions necessary to administer this provision.

110.5 Application for and processing of Certificates. All applications for a Certificate authorizing the use and occupancy of a premises or a portion thereof shall be filed with the Department on the prescribed forms provided by the code official, shall be accompanied by the prescribed filing fee paid at the time of the application, and shall include all of the following:

1. A list of permit number(s) for the valid, associated permit(s) that authorized the construction of the premises or portion thereof for which the Certificate is sought.
2. A copy of the final inspection approval in accordance with Section 109.3.8, unless the code official determines that no inspection is required pursuant to Section 110.5.1;

3. For premises located in a PDR zone, the “Standards of External Effects” application required by Section U-805 of the Zoning Regulations;

4. If an application pertains to a structure or use authorized by an order of the Zoning Commission or Board of Zoning Adjustment and the permission granted in that order was made subject to conditions, a copy of the Order and a statement demonstrating compliance with the Order, including all conditions that were to be satisfied prior to the issuance of a Certificate;

5. Where the premises is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, the required elevation certificate or flood-proofing certificate, as applicable, with evidence of review and approval of such certificate by the Floodplain Administrator.

6. Any other information required by the code official.

**110.5.1 Inspections.** Following the filing of an application for a Certificate, and as required by the code official, inspections shall be conducted pursuant to Section 109.3.14 to confirm compliance with the applicable Construction Codes and the Zoning Regulations.

**Exceptions:**

1. Application for issuance of a new Certificate for a premises or portion thereof due to a change in ownership or change in tenancy, where the premises or portion thereof has an existing valid Certificate, the code official is authorized to issue a new Certificate without an inspection. The code official is authorized to conduct inspections to confirm that no other changes have been made from the prior Certificate.

2. Application for issuance of a new Certificate for a premises or portion thereof that have an existing valid Certificate from which the only change proposed is a change in use, the code official is authorized to issue a Certificate without requiring an inspection upon a determination by the code official that the change of use or occupant load is not accompanied by any physical changes to the premises or portion thereof for which the Certificate is requested. The code official is authorized to conduct inspections to confirm that no other changes have been made from the prior Certificate.

3. Application for issuance of a new Certificate for a premises or portion thereof that have an existing valid Certificate from which the only change proposed is a change in occupant load, the code official is authorized to issue a Certificate without requiring an inspection upon a determination by the code official that the change in occupant load does not require changes to means of egress, plumbing or ventilation requirements. The code official is authorized to conduct inspections to confirm that no other changes have been made from the prior Certificate.

4. Changes in occupancy classification as defined in Chapter 3 require a separate permit, and approved inspections must be completed prior to issuance of a Certificate for the new occupancy classification.

**110.5.2 Zoning review and approval.** Prior to issuance of a Certificate, the code official shall obtain review and approval by the Zoning Administrator to confirm that the proposed use of the premises, including accessory uses, complies with the Zoning Regulations.

**Exception:** Approval of the Zoning Administrator shall not be required for a Certificate for any use for which the Zoning Regulations do not require a Certificate of Occupancy.

**110.5.3 Special restrictions for projects subject to Green Building Act and Green Construction Code alternative compliance path.**

**110.5.3.1 Projects subject to the Green Building Act.** No Certificate of Occupancy shall be issued for a project subject to Section 4 of the Green Building Act (DC Official Code § 6-1451.03) and Section 302 of the Green Construction Code, until the owner complies with the financial security requirement of Section 6 of the Green Building Act (DC Official Code § 6-1451.05) or Section 302 of the Green Construction Code, as applicable.

**110.5.3.2 Projects not subject to the Green Building Act.** For projects electing an alternative compliance pathway pursuant to Section 101.4.9.4.2.2, 101.4.9.4.2.3 or 101.4.9.4.2.4, prior to issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy, or prior to issuance of the first Certificate of Occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane where a project has multiple Certificates of Occupancy, the code official is authorized to request additional documentation as deemed necessary to confirm that the project is on track to be certified as compliant with the elected pathway.

**110.6 Issuance of Certificate authorizing use or occupancy.** The code official shall review applications for Certificates which are complete, and shall approve such applications and issue the applicable Certificate upon a finding that the application satisfies the requirements of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations, and other laws or regulations that are enforced by the Department. The Certificate issued by the Department shall contain all of the following information:

1. The address of the premises, along with the lot and square number and the applicable zone district.

2. The name and address of the owner or tenant, as applicable.

3. A description of the premises, or portion thereof, for which the Certificate is issued.
4. The permit number(s) associated with the Certificate, if applicable.
5. The use and occupancy authorized in accordance with the provisions of Chapters 3 and 4 of this code.
6. The use and occupancy authorized in accordance with the Zoning Regulations.
7. The design occupant load.
8. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6 of this code.
9. If an automatic sprinkler system is provided, whether the sprinkler system is required.
10. The edition of the Construction Codes under which the permit was issued.
11. Any special stipulations and conditions of the Certificate or the associated permit(s).
12. The name of the code official.
13. The date of issuance.
14. The date of expiration, if a Conditional or Temporary Certificate of Occupancy.

**Exception:** The code official is authorized to omit any of the above information upon determination that such information is not necessary or applicable to the specific Certificate.

**110.7 Posting of certificate.** All Certificates shall be conspicuously posted in or upon the premises to which they apply so that they are readily visible to anyone entering the premises.

**Exceptions:**
1. Certificates for places of religious worship are not required to be posted.
2. Certificates are not required to be posted for one-family dwellings (including congregate living facilities with six or fewer residents).

**110.8 Revocation of a certificate.** Revocations of any Letter of Core and Shell Completion or Certificate issued pursuant to this section are governed by Section 111.1.

**110.9 Fees for Letters of Core and Shell Completion and Certificates.** A fee for the processing and issuance of a Letter of Core and Shell Completion and Certificates shall be paid to the DC Treasurer in accordance with the applicable fee schedule.

**110.9.1 Fee schedule.** The Director is authorized to establish, from time to time, by approved rules, a schedule of unit rates and other fees for Letters of Core and Shell Completion, Certificates and other related miscellaneous services.

**SECTION 111**

**REVOCATION OF PERMITS AND CERTIFICATES**

**111.1 Revocation of a permit.** The code official is authorized to revoke in whole or in part any permit issued under the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations upon service of notice as specified by Section 111.3, for any of the following reasons:

1. Where the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) or Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) has issued an order revoking a permit or finding that a permit was issued in error.
2. When the permit holder, contractor, or Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge has been cited, under Section 115 or 116 of this code for one or more violations of the Construction Codes which, by the determination of the code official, threaten the health and safety of the public in the District of Columbia, and when the permit holder fails to restore safety or otherwise remedy the situation under the terms and conditions of the code official’s order and within the time period specified.
3. When the code official determines that the permit has been erroneously issued as the result of administrative or clerical error and notifies the permit holder of the error within five business days after permit issuance.
4. When the code official determines that the permit has been erroneously issued as the result of administrative or clerical error and notifies the permit holder of the error more than five business days after permit issuance.
5. When permits are issued to a contractor, construction manager or tradesperson without the requisite District of Columbia license(s) or whose District of Columbia license(s) have expired, are suspended or revoked by the Board or DCRA Division having jurisdiction.
6. Where the application or construction documents on which the issuance of a permit or approval was based contain a significant inaccuracy, a false statement or a material misrepresentation of fact that substantively affected the approval and issuance of the permit, including, but not limited to, inaccuracies with respect to pre-existing conditions.
7. When work at a construction site covered by the permit has been posted with two or more stop work orders, under Section 114, and, where the stop work order is not otherwise withdrawn by the code official, the permit holder fails to comply with the terms of the stop work orders in two or more instances, so as to establish a pattern indicative of the permit holder’s unwillingness to fully comply with the Construction Codes.
8. When the work at a construction site covered by the permit; (a) does not comply with (i) the Construction Codes (or any modification duly granted thereunder by the code official), (ii) the Zoning Regulations (or any relief granted therefrom by the Board of Zoning Adjustment or the Zoning Commission), (iii) the permit, (iv) the revised permit, (v) one or more conditions of any Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission Order that authorized the construction,
or (vi) the approved construction documents; and (b) the permit holder fails to correct the nonconforming condition within the time period specified in a notice or order issued under Section 113, if such is issued.

9. Where the application or construction documents on which the issuance of a permit or approval was based was signed by an architect or engineer without the requisite District of Columbia license(s) or whose District of Columbia license(s) have expired, or are suspended or revoked by the Board or DCRA Division having jurisdiction.

10. Where the registered design professional of record or the registered design professional in responsible charge has been disciplined by the Board for Professional Engineers or the Board for Architects or any other regulatory authority.

111.1 Effective date of permit revocation. Revocation of a permit shall become final upon occurrence of one of the following conditions:

1. Revocations based on Item 1 of Section 111.1 shall be summary revocations that take effect on the effective date of the order of the OAH or BZA.

2. Revocations based on Item 2 of Section 111.1 shall be summary revocations that take effect on the date ordered by the code official.

3. Revocations based on Item 3 of Section 111.1 shall be summary revocations that take effect upon timely issuance by the code official of a notice to the permit holder declaring the permit null and void and canceling the permit.

4. All revocations based on Section 111.1 other than those subject to Items 1, 2 or 3 of Section 111.1.1, shall be proposed actions that will take effect upon one of the following conditions:

a. If based on violations of the Construction Codes, ten business days after service of notice of revocation pursuant to Section 111.3 unless the permit holder requests a hearing to appeal the proposed revocation from the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) within that 10 business day period.

b. If based on violations of the Zoning Regulations, at the end of the 60-day period established in Section 11-Y 302 of the Zoning Regulations for appeals to the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA), after service of the notice of revocation pursuant to Section 111.3 unless the permit holder requests a hearing to appeal the proposed revocation from the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) within that 60-day period.

111.2 Revocation of a Certificate. The code official is authorized to revoke a Certificate or Letter of Core and Shell Completion issued under Section 110 as to the whole or a portion of a premises, as reasonably deemed appropriate by the code official, upon service of notice as specified by Section 111.3, for any of the following conditions:

1. Where the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) or Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) has issued an order revoking a Certificate or finding that a Certificate was issued in error.

2. Where the owner or permit holder or the Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge has been cited, under Section 115 or 116 of this code, for one or more violations of the Construction Codes which, by the determination of the code official, threaten the health and safety of the public in the District of Columbia, and when the Certificate holder fails to restore safety or otherwise remedy the situation under the terms and conditions of the code official’s order and within the time period specified.

3. Where the application or information on which the issuance of the Certificate was based contained a significant inaccuracy, a false statement or a material misrepresentation of fact that substantively affected the approval and issuance of the Certificate.

4. When the code official determines that the Certificate has been erroneously issued as the result of administrative or clerical error and notifies the Certificate holder of the error within five business days after Certificate issuance.

5. When the code official determines that the Certificate has been erroneously issued as the result of administrative or clerical error and notifies the Certificate holder of the error more than five business days after Certificate issuance.

6. Where the actual occupancy does not conform with that which was permitted under the Certificate, including any conditions, or permitted under the applicable laws and regulations of the District, including, but not limited to situations where the use is being operated in violation of one or more conditions of any Zoning Commission or Board of Zoning Adjustment Order that authorized the establishment of the use or the construction, renovation, or alteration of the building in which the use is located. Such violations include, but are not limited to, (i) the failure to establish or maintain any public benefit in accordance with a condition set forth in any Zoning Commission order granting a planned unit development on the premises in which the use is located, or (ii) the failure to comply with a condition imposed by the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) in any special exception or variance order of that Board related to the premises in which the use is located.

7. When all of the following conditions are verified:

a. The premises or portion thereof, for which a certificate had been previously issued, is undergoing alteration or repair, or an addition thereto is being constructed, under a duly issued permit, and the original use is being continued during the construction period.
b. The code official deems that construction is not progressing at a reasonable pace and the unfinished portion of the project, as shown on the approved construction documents, or the missing systems or portions thereof, are such that the code official deems that the safety, health or welfare of the public or of the occupants is seriously threatened thereby.

8. Where the owner or occupant fails to timely apply for a new Certificate in accordance with Section 110, where such certificate is required, the Certificate previously issued for the premises or portion thereof shall be revoked in whole or in part, as applicable.

111.2.1 Effective date of revocation. Revocations of a Certificate shall become final upon occurrence of one of the following conditions:

1. Revocations based on Item 1 of Section 111.2 shall be summary revocations and shall take effect on the effective order of the OAH or BZA.

2. Revocations based on Item 2 of Section 111.2 shall be summary revocations and shall take effect on the date ordered by the code official.

3. Revocations based on Item 3 of Section 111.2 shall be summary revocations that take effect upon timely issuance of a notice by the code official to the Certificate holder declaring the Certificate null and void.

4. All revocations based on Section 111.2 other than those subject to Items 1, 2 or 3 of Section 111.1.2, shall be proposed actions that will take effect upon one of the following conditions:

a. Based on violations of the Construction Codes, ten business days after service of the notice of revocation pursuant to Section 111.3 unless the permit holder requests a hearing to appeal the proposed revocation from the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) within that ten business day period.

b. Based on violations of the Zoning Regulations, within the 60-day period established in Section 11-Y 302 of the Zoning Regulations for appeals to the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA), after service of the notice of revocation pursuant to Section 111.3 unless the permit holder requests a hearing to appeal the proposed revocation from the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) within that 60-day period.

3. A statement advising the permit holder or Certificate holder of the right to appeal the revocation in accordance with Section 112.2.

Exception: For revocations based on Item 1 of Section 111.1 and Item 1 of Section 111.2, the Order of the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) or of the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA), as applicable, ordering the revocation of a permit or Certificate or finding that a permit or Certificate has been issued in error, shall constitute the Notice of Revocation required under this section and no additional notice is required.

111.3.1 Service of notice to revoke a permit or Certificate. The code official shall provide service of a notice to revoke a permit to the permit holder or the permit holder’s agent in accordance with Section 113.5. The code official shall provide service of a notice to revoke a Certificate to the Certificate holder or the Certificate holder’s agent in accordance with Section 113.5.

111.4 Appeals of revocations. Appeals of revocations of permits and of Certificates shall be governed by Section 112.

Exception: Revocations based on Item 1 of Section 111.1 and Item 1 of Section 111.2 shall not be appealed to the Office of Administrative Hearings (OAH) or the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA), as applicable, but instead shall be appealed only to the District of Columbia Court of Appeals pursuant to Section 11 of An Act To prescribe administrative procedures for the District of Columbia Government, approved October 21, 1968 [82 Stat. 1209; DC Official Code § 2-510 (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

SECTION 112
INTERNAL AGENCY REVIEW AND APPEALS OF FINAL DECISIONS OF CODE OFFICIAL AND ZONING ADMINISTRATOR

112.1 Internal agency review process. The purpose of this section is to facilitate internal agency review of a Staff Action (as defined in Section 112.1.2) by the code official or Zoning Administrator in certain limited situations authorized by Sections 112.1.1 through 112.1.4.

112.1.1 Persons authorized to seek internal agency review. The right to seek internal agency review is available only to an applicant for a permit or Certificate, or the holder of a permit or Certificate, that is adversely affected or aggrieved by a Staff Action as defined in Section 112.1.2, or by persons specified in Section 112.1.1.1.

112.1.1.1 Stop Work Orders for illegal construction. Where a person is served with a Stop Work Order for violation of the Construction Codes in accordance with Section 114, and such person is neither a permit applicant nor a permit holder, such person is authorized and required to seek internal agency review of the Stop Work Order by the code official in accordance with the provisions of Section 112.1 before initiating an appeal to OAH or the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) pursuant to Sections 112.2 and 112.3, as applicable.
112.1.2 Staff Action subject to internal agency review. A Staff Action for purposes of Section 112.1 shall consist of an interpretation of the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations, or an action or decision based on such interpretation, that is made or taken by Department staff other than the code official or the Zoning Administrator, and which relates only to any of the following:

1. Application processing.
2. Interpretation or application of pertinent provisions of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations.
3. Inspections.
4. A Stop Work Order issued pursuant to Section 114.

112.1.3 Requirements to obtain code official review of a Staff Action. To seek code official review of a Staff Action pursuant to Section 112.1, the following conditions apply:

1. Code official review pursuant to Section 112.1 shall only be available to the persons authorized to seek internal agency review as specified in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1 (the “aggrieved person”).
2. The request for internal agency review by the code official shall be submitted by the aggrieved person on a review form provided by the Department and shall state in writing the grounds for the requested review of a Staff Action, with: (i) references to the specific provisions of the Construction Codes that are alleged to have been incorrectly interpreted or applied, and (ii) evidence of alternate methods or means of compliance with the Construction Codes is proposed by the aggrieved person, evidence to support the assertion that an equally good or better form of construction can be used in compliance with the Construction Codes.
3. Internal agency review authorized by Section 112.1 must be initiated by the aggrieved person no later than ten business days after the aggrieved person, that continued processing of an application for issuance of a permit or Certificate is suspended pending compliance with one or more specified sections of the Construction Codes.

112.1.4 Requirements to obtain Zoning Administrator review of a Staff Action. To seek Zoning Administrator review of a Staff Action pursuant to Section 112.1, the following conditions apply:

1. Zoning Administrator review pursuant to Section 112.1 shall only be available to the persons authorized to seek internal agency review as specified in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1 (the “aggrieved person”).
2. The request for internal agency review by the Zoning Administrator shall be submitted by the aggrieved person on a review form provided by the Department and shall state in writing the grounds for the requested review of a Staff Action with references to the specific provisions of the Zoning Regulations, that are alleged to have been incorrectly interpreted or applied.
3. Internal agency review authorized by Section 112.1 must be initiated by the aggrieved person no later than ten business days after the aggrieved person (as defined in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1) is notified of or learns of the Staff Action.

112.1.4.1 Time of notification for Section 112.1.4. For purposes of Section 112.1.4, the aggrieved person shall be deemed to have been notified of the Staff Action on the earliest occurrence of any of the following:

1. Posting of a Stop Work Order in accordance with Section 114.
2. Entry of a hold for corrections by the Department in the Department’s database.
3. Entry of a failure to pass a requested inspection in the Department’s database.
4. Refusal by staff of the Office of the Zoning Administrator to process an application for issuance of a permit or a Certificate.
5. Notification by staff of the Office of the Zoning Administrator, issued in writing or by electronic communication to the aggrieved person, that all submittal documents required by Section 106 pertinent to the permit applied for, or documentation specified in Section 110 to support an application for a Certificate, is absent or deemed insufficient.
6. Notice by staff of the Office of the Zoning Administrator, issued in writing or by electronic communication to the aggrieved person, that continued processing of an application for issuance of a permit or Certificate is suspended pending compliance with one or more specific sections of the Zoning Regulations.

112.1.5 Code official action on request for agency internal review. Upon receipt of a request for review that complies with Section 112.1.2, the code official shall affirm, modify, or reverse the Staff Action within 15 business days of receipt of such request. If the code official affirms the Staff Action, or does not act upon the review request within the 15 business day period, the Staff Action shall be deemed affirmed. The decision of the code official on requests for an internal agency review of a Staff Action authorized by Section 121.1, shall be a final decision of the Department on the specific issue raised in the review request which the aggrieved person (as defined in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1) may appeal to OAH in accordance with Section 112.2.

112.1.6 Zoning Administrator action on request for agency internal review. The Zoning Administrator shall affirm, modify, or reverse the Staff Action within 15 business days of receipt of a review form that complies with Section 112.1.3. If the Zoning Administrator affirms the Staff Action or does not act upon the review request within the 15 business day period, the Staff Action shall be deemed affirmed. The decision of the Zoning Administrator on requests for an internal agency review of a Staff Action allegedly in violation of the Zoning Regulations, including the passive affirmation of a challenged Staff Action, shall be the final decision of the Zoning Administrator, which the aggrieved person (as defined in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1) may appeal to the Board of Zoning Adjustment in accordance with Section 112.2.2.

112.1.7 Effect of filing of request review of Staff Action. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the submission of a request for internal agency review of a Staff Action by an aggrieved person (as defined in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1) shall not stay the time period established in the Zoning Regulations within which to appeal the Staff Action decision to the Board of Zoning Adjustment.

112.2 Appeal of a final decision of the code official based on alleged violations of the Construction Codes. The applicant for, or holder of, a permit or Certificate, or any person directly affected or aggrieved in a materially adverse manner by a final decision or order of the code official, including but not limited to issuance or revocation of a permit or Certificate, is authorized to appeal the final decision or order, or portion thereof, that is based upon the Construction Codes by filing an appeal with the Office of the Administrative Hearings (OAH).

The appeal shall be filed within 10 business days after the date the appellant had notice or knowledge of the decision, or should have had notice or knowledge of the decision, whichever is earlier, subject to the reconsideration procedure for permits involving adjoining property issues set forth in Section 112.7.

This 10-business day appeal period shall not be extended, tolled, or restarted by a request for an internal agency review under Section 112.1, but the appeal period shall be extended where reconsideration is timely sought in accordance with Section 112.7 as to the limited issue of whether the proposed work plan will provide adequate technical protection to the adjoining premises. The appeal shall specify the specific provisions of the Construction Codes, or the rules legally adopted thereunder, that the appeal alleges the code official incorrectly interpreted or applied and shall provide evidence to support an allegation, if part of the appeal, that an equally good or better form of construction can be used.

In reviewing an appeal based in whole or in part on a technical determination or interpretation by the code official, OAH shall have no authority to waive requirements of the Construction Codes and shall not overrule the code official’s technical determination or interpretation unless determined by OAH to be arbitrary or capricious.

Exceptions:

1. OAH review of a notice or order to close or vacate residential premises issued pursuant to Section 115 shall be based solely on the issue of whether the code official’s determination that the premises are unsafe or unfit for occupancy requiring a building closure under the provisions of Section 115 was arbitrary and capricious.

2. OAH review of a notice or order to close or vacate residential premises issued pursuant to Section 116 shall be based solely on the issue of whether the code official’s building closure decision was arbitrary and capricious.

3. Only the person that is a party identified in either Section 112.1.1 or Section 112.1.1.1 is authorized to appeal a final decision of the code official as a result of the internal agency review process authorized by Section 112.1.

112.2.1. Appeal by permit holder of summary revocation under Section 111.1 (Item 2). When a summary revocation of a permit is ordered under Item 2 of Section 111.1, the permit holder is authorized to request an expedited hearing from OAH within 72 hours (excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal holidays) after service of notice of the revocation pursuant to Section 111.3.1, to review the reasonableness of the revocation order. At this hearing, the code official shall have the burden of establishing a prima facie case of immediate or serious and continuing endangerment. The OAH shall not stay the code official’s decision to revoke a permit under Item 2 of Section 111.1 pending the final resolution of the hearing.

112.2.2 Appeal by Certificate holder of summary revocation under Section 111.2 (Item 2). When a summary revocation of a permit is ordered under Item 2 of Section 111.2, the permit holder is authorized to request an expedited hearing from OAH within 72 hours (excluding Saturdays, Sundays and legal holidays) after service of notice of the revocation pursuant to Section 111.3.1, to review the reasonableness of the revocation order. At this hearing, the code official shall have the burden of establishing a prima
facie case of immediate or serious and continuing endangerment. The OAH shall not stay the code official’s decision to revoke a permit under Item 2 of Section 111.1 pending the final resolution of the hearing.

112.2.3 Request for expedited hearing of building closure pursuant to Section 115 by tenant or occupant of rental unit. Where a notice or order to close or vacate a building with rental units is issued pursuant to Section 115, a tenant or occupant of a rental unit affected by such notice or order has a right to request an expedited hearing by OAH prior to the closure subject to the following requirements:

1. The tenant or occupant shall file the request for an expedited hearing with OAH no later than the date specified in the notice or order for tenants or occupants to vacate the premises.

2. OAH review shall be based solely on the issue of whether the premises are unsafe or unfit for occupancy requiring a building closure under the provisions of Section 115.

3. Enforcement of the closure notice or order shall be stayed until OAH issues a written decision.

4. OAH shall hold a hearing within 72 hours of receipt of a timely request, and shall issue a decision within 72 hours after the hearing. For purposes of computing these 72-hour periods, Saturdays, Sundays and legal holidays shall be excluded.

112.2.3.1 Additional provisions applicable to buildings with residential units. Nothing herein shall be construed to authorize an expedited hearing for any orders or notices issued, or actions taken, pursuant to Section 116. Appeal of a notice or order under Section 115 to close or vacate a building with rental units, or a request for an expedited hearing pursuant to Section 112.2.1.3, shall not preclude the code official from issuing a notice or order pursuant to Section 116 for the same premises, or any portion thereof, while such appeal or hearing is pending.

112.3 Appeal of a final decision of the Zoning Administrator based on alleged violations of the Zoning Regulations. The applicant for, or holder of, a permit or Certificate, or any person directly affected or aggrieved in a materially adverse manner by a final decision or order of the Zoning Administrator, including a revocation of a permit or Certificate, may appeal those aspects of the final decision or order that are based upon the Zoning Regulations to the Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) of the District of Columbia, pursuant to DC Official Code § 6-641.07 (2018 Repl.). The appeal shall be filed within a 60-day period after the date the appellant had notice or knowledge of the decision, or should have had notice or knowledge of the decision, whichever is earlier, as established by the Zoning Regulations. The appeal shall specify the specific provisions of the Zoning Regulations, or the rules legally adopted thereunder, that the appeal alleges the Zoning Administrator incorrectly interpreted or applied.

Exception: Only the aggrieved person (as defined in Sections 112.1.1 and 112.1.1.1) is authorized to appeal a final decision of the Zoning Administrator as a result of the internal agency review process authorized by Section 112.1.

112.4 Appeal of orders of OAH or BZA. No appeal may be taken to OAH or to the BZA when a ground for revocation of a permit or Certificate is an order of OAH or the BZA finding that the permit or Certificate was issued in error. The revocation in such cases may be appealed to the District of Columbia Court of Appeals pursuant to DC Official Code § 2-510.

112.5 Enforcement of OAH or BZA orders. The code official or the Zoning Administrator, as applicable, shall take immediate action in accordance with the Order of the OAH or the BZA, as applicable, in any appeal.

112.6 Stay of enforcement. Appeals of notices or orders issued by the code official or Zoning Administrator shall stay the enforcement of the notice or order until the appeal is heard by OAH or BZA.

Exceptions:

1. Closure or imminent danger notices or orders issued pursuant to Section 116, and related orders to vacate premises.

2. Closure notices or orders issued pursuant to Section 115, and related orders to vacate premises, except where the tenant or occupant has requested an expedited OAH hearing in accordance with Section 112.2.3.

3. Stop Work Orders.

4. Revocation of one or more Certificates based upon one or more violations of the Zoning Regulations.

5. Summary revocation of permits and/or Certificates in accordance with Items 1, 2 and 3 of Sections 111.1.1 and 111.2.1.

112.7 Limited right of reconsideration of Code Official action by owner of adjoining premises. Where notification of the owner of adjoining premises is required by Section 106.2.18.3, the owner entitled to such notification by a permit applicant shall have 10 business days from the date that the permit is issued to seek reconsideration by the code official, based solely on the grounds that: (1) the permit authorizes one or more construction activities identified in Section 106.2.18.3; and (2) the work authorized by the permit will not protect the adjoining premises of the objecting owner from structural damage. The objection shall include (1) technical support for the objecting owner's conclusions that the work authorized by the permit will not protect the adjoining premises of the objecting owner from structural damage; and (2) any proposed changes to the work plan that the claimant asserts are necessary to protect the claimant's premises from structural damage. A copy of the request for reconsideration shall be served on the permit holder in accordance with any of the methods specified in Section 113.5.5. The sufficiency of notification under Section 106.2.18.3.1, or the code official’s determination of substantial compliance pursuant to Section 106.2.18.3.1.4, shall not be subject to challenge upon reconsideration.
112.7.1 Review by the Code Official. Within 15 business days of receipt of a written reconsideration request that complies with Section 112.7, the code official shall determine whether the specific measures requested by the owner of the adjoining premises are supported by technical documentation. If the code official denies reconsideration, or does not act upon the reconsideration within the 15 business day period, the permit issuance shall be deemed affirmed and the claimant is authorized to appeal the matter directly to OAH in accordance with Sections 112.2 and 112.3. If the code official finds the technical documentation submitted by the claimant to be persuasive, the code official is authorized to require the permit holder to revise the proposed work plan, to amend the permit, to revoke the permit, or to take such other actions as the code official deems necessary to protect the adjoining premises.

SECTION 113
VIOLATIONS, REMEDIES, PENALTIES AND OTHER ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS

113.1 Unlawful acts. It shall be unlawful for any person to erect, construct, alter, extend, repair, raze, demolish, use, or occupy any premises, or portion thereof, including any equipment thereon, regulated by the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the following:

1. Any of the provisions of the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulation.

2. A notice or order of the code official issued under the authority of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations.

3. A permit or certificate, including the approved construction documents and approved amendments thereto, issued under the provisions of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations.

Any person engaging in or causing unlawful acts as defined in Sections 113.1 and 113.1.1 shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law, including but not limited to those set forth in Section 113.2.

113.1.1 Work without a permit. Work started or occurring without a permit where a permit is determined to be required under Section 105 shall be a violation of the Construction Codes.

113.1.2 Continuation of unlawful use. The continuation of occupancy or use of a premises, or portion thereof, contrary to the provisions of the Construction Codes or to the provisions of the Zoning Regulations, shall be a violation or infraction under the Construction Codes. The code official, as defined in Section 103.1, is authorized to issue a notice of violation and order requiring discontinuance of the use or occupancy, and the owner or other violator shall be subject to the penalties or fines prescribed in Section 113.

113.2 Enforcement methods. The code official is authorized to use any of the methods set forth in the Construction Codes or in other District of Columbia laws and regulations, singly or in combination, to enforce compliance with the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations, other laws or regulations enforced by the Department, and notices or orders of the code official issued pursuant thereto, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Stop Work Orders (Section 114).

2. Revocations of Permits and Certificates of Occupancy (Section 111).

3. Notices of Unsafe or Emergency Conditions and Building Closure Orders (Sections 115 and 116).

4. Notices of Violations or Orders directing the discontinuance of an unlawful action or condition and/or the abatement of the violation.


7. Criminal prosecution pursuant to DC Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.).

8. Civil fines, penalties, and fees in addition to any other available remedies, for any infraction of the provisions of the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations, or any orders, rules, or regulations issued under the authority of the Construction Codes, pursuant to the Civil Infractions Act, (DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.) as amended; DC Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.) as amended; and Title 16 DCMR, Chapters 31–34).


10. Suspension, restriction or revocation of licenses issued by the Department to the general contractor, contractor, construction manager, or referral to the Board having jurisdiction over a tradesperson, architect or engineer for suspension, restriction or revocation of a license or other appropriate disciplinary action.

11. Disconnection of service utilities (Section 119.3).

113.3 Code Official authority. The code official is authorized to issue all necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with: (1) the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations and other laws or rules enforced by the Department; (2) notices or orders of the code official issued pursuant to the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations and other laws or rules enforced by the Department; and (3) permits or certificates issued under the provisions of the Construction Codes or Zoning Regulations, including the approved construction documents and any approved amendments thereto.

113.3.1 Prosecution or adjudication of violation. The code official is authorized to institute, or to request the
Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia to institute, as the case may be, the appropriate proceedings at law or in equity to prosecute, restrain, correct, or abate a violation, or to require the removal of a building or other structure, or the termination of the unlawful use or occupancy of a premises in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations or of an order or direction made under the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations. The imposition of any remedies, penalties or enforcement actions authorized in the Construction Codes shall not preclude the Office of the Attorney General for the District of Columbia from instituting appropriate action to prevent unlawful construction or to restrain, correct, or abate a violation, or to prevent illegal occupancy of a premises, or to stop an illegal act, conduct, business, or use of a premises.

113.3.2 Continuing violations. Each day a violation continues shall, for purposes of criminal proceedings [Section 113.2(7)] and civil fines [Section 113.2(8)], be considered a separate offense.

113.3.3 Abatement of violation by department. The imposition of any remedies, penalties or enforcement actions authorized by Section 113, other provisions of the Construction Codes, or other laws and regulations of the District of Columbia, shall not preclude or prevent the Department from undertaking abatement or corrective actions as authorized by the Construction Codes or by other statutes and regulations, including, but not limited to, the Nuisance Abatement Act, DC Official Code §§ 2-1802.01 et seq. (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.). The code official is authorized to assess the costs of any abatement or corrective actions undertaken by the Department, and all expenses thereto as a tax against the property on which the violating condition existed, or from which such condition arose as the case may be, and such tax shall be carried on the regular tax rolls of the District, and collected in the same manner as general taxes in the District are collected.

113.3.4 Collection of Unpaid Civil Fines. See DC Official Code § 2-1802.03.

113.3.5 Notice of Violation Not a Prerequisite. Issuance of a notice of violation or order directing the discontinuance of an unlawful action or condition and/or the abatement or correction of a violation, prior to taking other enforcement action, is at the discretion of the code official. Failure to issue such notice of violation or order shall not be a bar or a prerequisite to any criminal prosecution, administrative proceeding, civil action, corrective action or civil infraction proceeding based upon a violation of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations.

113.4 Requirements for form and content of notices or orders.

113.4.1 Stop Work Orders. See Section 114.2.

113.4.2 Revocations of permits and Certificates. See Section 111.3.

113.4.3. Notice of unsafe condition. See Section 115.3 with the exception of remedial orders pursuant to Section 115.4.

113.4.4 Notice of emergency condition; order to vacate premises. See Section 116.1.1 and 116.1.2.

113.4.5 Notices of Infraction. See DC Official Code § 2-1802.01(b).

113.4.6 Other notices and orders. Notices or orders issued by the code official, except for those covered by 113.4.1 through 113.4.5, shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. Be in writing.
2. Include a description of the premises subject to the notice or order sufficient for identification.
3. State the reason for the notice or order.
4. Identify the code section(s) violated, and why the notice or order is being issued.
5. Include, if the notice or order affords an opportunity to abate a violation, a reasonable period of time to make the repairs and improvements required to bring the premises or equipment thereon into compliance with the provisions of the Construction Codes.
6. Include, if applicable, a specific time by which premises shall be closed, barricaded and/or vacated, or equipment placed out of service.
7. Inform the owner of the right to appeal to OAH or BZA, as applicable, pursuant to Section 112.
8. Include a statement of the District of Columbia's right: to abate a specified violation without the owner's consent if the owner fails to comply with a notice or order directing the abatement of the violation or to file a timely appeal; to assess the costs of such abatement against the owner; and to place a tax lien on the property in accordance with Section 113.3.4 for the costs of such abatement.

113.5. Service of notices and orders.

113.5.1 Stop Work Orders. See Sections 114.3 and 114.4.

113.5.2. Notice of unsafe condition. See Section 115.3 with the exception of remedial orders pursuant to Section 115.4.

113.5.3 Notice of emergency condition; order to vacate premises. See Sections 116.1.1 and 116.1.2.

113.5.4. Notices of infraction. See DC Official Code § 2-1802.05.

113.5.5 Other notices and orders. A notice of violation or any other authorized notice or order not covered by Sections 113.5.1 through 113.5.4, shall be served on the respondent or respondent's agent.

1. Personal service on the respondent or respondent’s agent.
2. Delivery of the notice or order by e-mail, with confirmation of delivery, to the e-mail address provided to the Department by the respondent or respondent’s agent.
agent, as required by Section 105.3.2, Items 8 and 9. If the respondent has failed to comply with Section 105.3.4, service is deemed effective if made to the last known e-mail address filed by the respondent or respondent’s agent with the Department.

3. Delivery of the notice or order by hand to the last known home or business address of the respondent or respondent’s agent as identified by the permit or certificate application, tax records, corporate registration records, or business license records, and leaving it with a person over the age of 16 years old present at the time at the home or business address.

4. Mailing the notice or order, via USPS first class mail postage prepaid or express mail, or by private delivery services (i.e., DHL Express, FedEx, UPS), at least five days prior to the date of the proposed action, to the last known home or business address of the respondent or respondent’s agent as identified by the permit or certificate application, tax records, corporate registration records, or business license records; or

5. If the notice or order is returned as undeliverable by the Post Office authorities, or if no address is known or can be ascertained by reasonable diligence, by posting a copy of the notice or order in a conspicuous place in or about the premises affected by such notice or order.

6. Posting of a notice on property or on a building or portion of a building at, near or adjacent to the area identified as the subject of the violation. Pictures of the posting shall be maintained by the department and associated with the notice of violation.

113.5.5.1 Respondent’s agent. For the purposes of this section, respondent’s agent shall include a general agent, employee, registered agent, or attorney of the respondent.

113.6 Additional procedural requirements applicable to premises with rental units. Where a notice or order is issued to the owner of premises with respect to a rental unit occupied by a tenant, the code official shall provide such tenant with a copy of the notice or order. This requirement will be satisfied by mailing a copy to the tenant by first-class mail, leaving a copy at the tenant’s residence with a responsible individual at least 16 years of age present there, or any other reasonable method in the code official’s discretion.

113.6.1. Premises with multiple rental units. In premises with more than one rental unit, any instance where a notice or order affects the rental unit and/or common space of more than one tenant, the code official shall post a copy of any notice or order issued to the owner pursuant to Section 115 for a reasonable time in one or more locations on the premises where the violation exists. The locations for posting the notification shall be reasonably selected to give notice to all tenants affected. Any tenant directly affected by the violation(s) shall, upon request to the code official, be sent a copy of the posted notification.

113.6.2. Exclusivity of tenant notice provisions. The code official shall not be subject to any other tenant notification provisions, except as expressly set forth in Section 113.6.

113.6.3 Notices or orders requiring closure of premises with rental units. Where the code official (a) posts a notice of unsafe condition on a building with rental units that prohibits access to or occupancy of the premises or issues an order to close and barricade a building with rental units pursuant to Section 115, or (b) posts a notice of emergency condition pursuant to Section 116 on a building with rental units requiring tenants and occupants to vacate the premises, the following additional requirements shall apply:

1. The notice or order shall specify a date and time by which tenants or occupants of the rental units are required to vacate the premises.

2. The notice or order shall include a statement informing tenants or occupants of the rental units of the right to appeal pursuant to Section 112.2, including, where applicable, the right to an expedited hearing pursuant to Section 112.2.3.

3. The code official shall provide a copy of the notice or order to each tenant of the rental units affected by the notice or order by leaving a copy at each dwelling unit or any other reasonable method in the code official’s discretion.

4. The notice or order shall provide contact information for the Office of the Tenant Advocate.

113.7 Transfer of ownership. It shall be unlawful for the owner of any premises or portion thereof, upon whom a notice of violation or order directing the discontinuance of an unlawful act or condition and/or the abatement or correction of a violation has been served, to sell, transfer, or otherwise dispose of such premises, or of a controlling interest in the owner, to another person until the conditions of the notice or order have been abated, or such owner furnishes the buyer or transferee with a true copy of any notice or order issued by the code official and furnishes the code official with a signed and notarized statement from the buyer or transferee, acknowledging the receipt of such notice or order and fully accepting responsibility, without condition, for making the corrections or repairs required by such notice or order. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a sale, transfer or other disposition shall not relieve the owner upon whom the notice or order is served from liability for the unlawful act.

SECTION 114
STOP WORK ORDERS

114.1 Authority. Whenever the code official finds that any work on any premises is being performed in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes or the Zoning Regulations, or in an unsafe or dangerous manner, the code official is authorized to issue a Stop Work Order.

114.1.1 Partial Stop Work Order. The code official is authorized to issue a partial Stop Work Order prohibiting certain types of work on the premises or all work in a par-
114.2 Form and content of Stop Work Order. The Stop Work Order shall be in writing, in a form prescribed by the code official. The Stop Work Order shall contain the following information:

1. The reason for the order, and the conditions under which the cited work will be permitted to resume.
2. The address of the premises.
3. The specific activities and areas of the premises covered by the order if a partial Stop Work Order is issued pursuant to Section 114.1.1.
4. The specific section or sections of the Construction Codes and/or the Zoning Regulations violated.
5. Whether access to the premises or a portion thereof is prohibited during the pendency of the Stop Work Order.
6. A description of the right to appeal the Stop Work Order, and information on how and where to file an appeal, and the deadline to file such appeal.

No Stop Work Order shall be issued nor considered valid unless it contains all of the information specified in this section, and the signature of the issuing official.

114.3 Service of a Stop Work Order. The code official shall effect service of a Stop Work Order by one of the following methods:

1. Personal service on the owner of the premises involved or on the owner’s agent, or to the person doing the work at the premises.
2. Posting the Stop Work Order on the premises in accordance with Section 114.4.

114.4 Posting of Stop Work Order. Regardless of the manner of service of the Stop Work Order, the code official shall post the Stop Work Order in a conspicuous location, in or about the premises subject to the Stop Work Order.

114.5 Effect of Stop Work Order. Upon service of a Stop Work Order pursuant to Section 114.3, all construction activity on the premises, or the work specified in a partial Stop Work Order issued pursuant to Section 114.1.1, shall immediately cease until the Department issues an official written authorization lifting the Stop Work Order, or as otherwise provided for by the code official.

114.5.1 Access to premises covered by a Stop Work Order. Access to premises or portion thereof covered by a Stop Work Order shall be at the discretion of the code official.

114.6 Removal or obstruction of a posted Stop Work Order. Unauthorized removal or obstruction of a posted Stop Work Order is a violation of the Construction Codes, and is subject to the penalties provided in Section 113 and DC Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.), and the injunctive relief set out in DC Official Code § 6-1407 (2018 Repl.). The owner of the premises posted with a Stop Work Order, or the owner’s agent, shall promptly notify the Department if the posted Stop Work Order has been removed, damaged or obstructed so that the Stop Work Order can be reposted.

114.6.1 Prior written authorization required to remove a posted Stop Work Order. A posted Stop Work Order shall only be removed pursuant to an official written authorization from the Department. If a posted Stop Work Order is removed without the Department’s official written authorization, the owner or the owner’s agent shall notify the Department in accordance with Section 114.6, and no work shall be resumed until the Department reposts the Stop Work Order at the premises or issues an official written authorization lifting the Stop Work Order, or as otherwise provided by the code official.

114.7 Public notice of Stop Work Order. The code official is authorized to make public, by publishing in a newspaper of general distribution, in the District of Columbia Register, or at the DCRA website, a list of the addresses where Stop Work Orders have been posted.

114.8 Failure to comply with Stop Work Orders. Any person who fails to comply with the terms and conditions of a Stop Work Order, or with the applicable requirements of Section 114, including, but not limited to, the unauthorized removal of a Stop Work Order, shall be in violation of the provisions of the Construction Codes, and shall be subject to civil and criminal penalties as set forth in Section 113.

114.8.1 Additional sanctions affecting licensees. Failure to comply with a Stop Work Order shall constitute grounds for suspension, restriction or revocation of any license issued by the Department to the noncompliant registered design professional in responsible charge, Special Inspector, general contractor, construction manager, or home improvement contractor. Failure to comply with a Stop Work Order by a DC-licensed tradesperson, including but not limited to the following, shall be grounds for referral of the licensee to the Board of Industrial Trades for disciplinary action, including license suspension or revocation:

1. A licensed master electrician.
2. A licensed master electrician limited (low voltage).
3. A licensed journeyman electrician.
4. A registered apprentice electrician.
5. A licensed master mechanic.
6. A licensed master mechanic limited.
7. A licensed journeyman refrigeration and air-conditioning mechanic.
8. A registered apprentice refrigeration and air-conditioning mechanic.
10. A licensed master gasfitter.
11. A licensed journeyman plumber.
12. A licensed journeyman gasfitter.
13. A registered apprentice plumber.
15. A licensed elevator contractor, or an employee of a licensed elevator contractor.
16. A licensed elevator mechanic.
17. A registered apprentice elevator mechanic.
18. A licensed steam engineer, or another licensed operating engineer.
19. Any registered design professional in responsible charge for any portion of the construction work being performed.

114.9 Appeal of Stop Work Order. Appeals of Stop Work Orders shall be in accordance with Section 112.

114.10 Lifting of Stop Work Order. The code official shall lift the Stop Work Order when he or she deems that the violations leading to imposition of the Stop Work Order have been corrected or abated to the satisfaction of the code official.

SECTION 115
UNSAFE CONDITIONS

115.1 Unsafe conditions. All premises or equipment thereon that are or hereafter become abandoned, deteriorated, unsafe, unsanitary, or deficient because of inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation; or which constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare; or that involve illegal or improper use or occupancy or inadequate maintenance, shall be deemed an unsafe condition. Unsafe conditions shall be removed or made safe and secure, as the code official deems necessary, pursuant to this section or pursuant to other laws, including, but not limited to, abatement of the unsafe condition by the code official.

115.2 Examination and record of unsafe premises. The code official shall examine every premises reported as dangerous, unsafe structurally, or constituting a fire hazard, and shall maintain a record of those premises where the code official finds an unsafe condition.

115.3 Posting of notice of unsafe condition. Where the code official finds an unsafe condition, as defined in Section 115.1, the code official shall post a notice of unsafe condition on the premises where the unsafe condition exists. The code official shall have discretion to post the notice of unsafe condition in the location or locations that the code official deems necessary to warn persons that access to, or use or occupancy of, the premises is restricted.

115.3.1 Access to posted premises. The notice of unsafe condition posted in accordance with Section 115.3 shall specify whether entry, use and/or occupancy of the posted premises, or a portion thereof, is prohibited by the code official. Entry, use and/or occupancy of the posted premises shall be at the discretion of the code official, subject as applicable to the requirements for closure of buildings with rental units set forth in Sections 113.2.5 and 115.8.

115.3.2 Compliance with posted notice. Entry, use and/or occupancy of a premises or portion thereof in violation of the terms of a posted notice of unsafe condition shall be unlawful.

115.3.3 Unauthorized removal or obstruction of posted notice. Unauthorized removal or obstruction of a posted notice of unsafe condition is a violation of the Construction Codes, and is subject to the penalties provided in Section 113 and DC Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.) and the injunctive relief set out in DC Official Code § 6-1407 (2018 Repl.). The owner of the premises posted with a notice of unsafe condition, or the owner’s agent, shall promptly notify the Department if the posted notice has been removed, damaged or obstructed so the notice can be reposted.

115.4 Remedial notices or orders relating to unsafe condition. In addition to posting of a notice in accordance with Section 115.3, where the code official finds an unsafe condition, the code official is authorized to issue a notice or order to require the owner of the premises to make the premises safe and secure or to remove the unsafe condition as the code official deems necessary. The notified person shall employ sufficient means to comply with the notice as expeditiously as can be done.

115.4.1 Content and service of remedial notices or orders. The remedial notices or orders specified in Section 115.4 shall comply with the procedures set forth in Sections 113.4.6, 113.5.5 and 113.6.

115.5 Disregard of remedial notice or order. Upon the refusal or neglect of the person served with a remedial notice or order pursuant to Section 115.4 to comply with the requirements of the notice or order to abate or remove the unsafe condition, the code official is authorized to pursue any penalties or remedies authorized by law or regulation, including, but not limited to, abatement of the unsafe condition by the code official or referral to the Office of the Attorney General for appropriate legal action to compel compliance.

115.5.1 Abatement by code official. Where the person notified of an unsafe condition pursuant to Section 115.4 fails to abate or remove such unsafe condition, the code official is authorized to cause such condition to be corrected and assess the costs of any corrective action, and all expenses incident thereto, as a tax against the property on which the violating condition existed, and such tax shall be carried on the regular tax rolls of the District, and collected in the same manner as general taxes in the District.
are collected. Costs shall include, but not be limited to, all expenses incurred for or necessitated by any corrective action; costs of inspectors, testing agencies or experts retained; costs of testing or surveying; costs of mailings, postings and recordings; and costs of attorney’s fees expended for recovering the costs of the corrective action or to obtain or enforce a related order.

115.6 Remedies not exclusive. Nothing herein shall be deemed to preclude or negate any other penalties or remedies set forth in Section 113, or to preclude conversion of a special assessment lien to an administrative judgment, enforceable in the same manner as any other civil judgment under District of Columbia law, as authorized by DC Official Code § 42-3131.01.

115.7 Other laws. The provisions of this Section 115 shall not be deemed to nullify any other provisions of local law governing razing, demolition or repair of unsafe structures, including, but not limited to, the provisions of DC Official Code §§ 6-801 et seq. (2018 Repl.) as amended, DC Official Code §§ 42-3131.01 et seq. (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.) as amended, or DC Official Code §§ 42-3171.01 et seq. (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.) as amended.

115.8 Special provisions applicable to rental units.

115.8.1 Copies of notices and orders. The code official shall provide tenants of rental units with copies of remedial notices and orders issued to the owner of the rental unit pursuant to Section 115.4 in accordance with Section 113.2.1.3. The code official shall not be required to provide tenants of rental units with copies of any other notices, orders or communications except as expressly required by set forth in Section 113.2.1.3.

115.8.2 Closures of buildings with rental units. The code official is authorized to order tenants or occupants of rental units to vacate the premises within a time sufficient to allow the owner to comply with an order to close and barricade the premises. The notice or order shall include the time by which the premises must be vacated, provided that tenants and occupants shall be given at least five calendar days to vacate, unless the code official determines that the tenants and occupants must leave the premises immediately for their personal safety.

If any tenant or occupant fails to vacate the premises within the time period set forth in the notice or order, subject to the appeal provisions of Section 112.2.3, the code official is authorized to order the removal of the tenants or occupants.

115.8.3 Other rental housing provisions. The removal of tenants from rental units, or the service of an order to vacate pursuant to Section 115, shall not be considered an eviction or notice to vacate under DC Official Code § 42-3505.01 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.). Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall be construed to nullify or abrogate any other rights to which a tenant is entitled under District laws or regulations, including relocation assistance, the right to reoccupy the rental unit following rehabilitation, or the right to pursue rights and remedies under DC Official Code, Title 42, Chapter 34.

SECTION 116
EMERGENCY CONDITIONS

116.1 Emergency condition. When an emergency condition exists, the code official is hereby authorized to take such actions as the code official deems necessary to meet such emergency in accordance with this section. An emergency condition shall exist when, in the opinion of the code official, there is imminent danger, including, but not limited to any of the following:

1. An unsafe condition, including, but not limited to collapse or potential imminent collapse of a building, other structure, site, or street.
2. An unsanitary condition or the operation of defective or dangerous equipment which immediately endangers the health or safety of occupants of a premises or those in the proximity of a premises.
3. The presence of flammable materials or explosives, flammable fumes or vapors, toxic fumes, gases, or substances or other hazardous or toxic conditions.

116.1.1 Order to vacate premises. When in the opinion of the code official an emergency condition as defined in Section 116.1 exists, the code official is authorized to require occupants of any premises that the code official identifies as potentially affected by the emergency condition, to vacate the premises forthwith or within a time period specified by the code official. This order can be communicated verbally, provided that a notice of emergency condition pursuant to Section 116.1.2 is posted as expeditiously as possible.

116.1.2 Posting of notice of emergency condition. Where the code official deems an emergency condition to exist, the code official shall cause to be posted on all premises where such emergency condition exists, a notice that states: (1) an emergency condition exists at or near the posted premises; and (2) access, use and/or occupancy of the posted premises or a portion thereof is prohibited by the code official. The notice shall be posted in the location or locations that the code official deems necessary, in the code official’s sole discretion. Access to the posted premises shall be at the discretion of the code official, subject as applicable to the requirements for closure of buildings with rental units as set forth in Section 116.7. Failure to comply with the terms of a posted notice of emergency condition shall be unlawful.

116.1.3 Unauthorized removal or obstruction of posted notice. Unauthorized removal or obstruction of a posted notice of emergency condition is a violation of the Construction Codes, and is subject to the penalties provided in Section 113 and DC Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.) and the injunctive relief set out in DC Official Code § 6-1407 (2018 Repl.). The owner of the premises posted with a notice of emergency condition, or the owner’s agent, shall promptly notify the Department if the posted notice has been removed, damaged or obstructed so the notice can be reposted.

116.2 Emergency work. Whenever, in the opinion of the code official, an emergency condition exists, the code official is authorized to require or to undertake the necessary work to
be done at the premises where the emergency condition exists to render such premises safe in light of the existing emergency condition, including, but not limited to requiring implementation of temporary safeguards, repairs, demolition, or razing (any of such work at a premises required or undertaken by the code official to address an emergency condition being referred to as emergency work). The code official also is authorized to take such other action(s) as the code official deems necessary to address such emergency condition, including, but not limited to employing the necessary labor and materials to perform the necessary emergency work at a premises as expeditiously as possible.

116.2.1 Compliance with order. Any person ordered by the code official to undertake emergency work at a premises pursuant to Section 116.2 shall comply with such order forthwith and complete the emergency work within the time period specified by the code official. The code official is not required to provide the owner of the premises where an emergency condition is deemed to exist with an opportunity to correct the emergency condition before the code official undertakes emergency work, or to await the expiration of a time period specified in an order under this section.

116.2.2 Historic buildings. Prior to requiring or undertaking emergency work to be undertaken at a premises that is a building or other structure that is listed in the DC or National Register of Historic Places, or a portion thereof, either as an individual listing or as a contributing resource to a listed historic district, the code official shall consult with the State Historic Preservation Officer as required by DC Official Code § 6-801 (2018 Repl.).

116.3 Safety perimeter. When necessary for public safety, the code official is authorized to temporarily close sidewalks, streets, alleys, premises and areas adjacent to a premises on which the emergency condition exists, and to temporarily prohibit access thereto.

116.4 Costs of emergency work. Where the code official causes emergency work to be done at a premises pursuant to Section 116.2, any costs incurred by the District of Columbia in the performance of such emergency work, and expenses incident thereto, shall be paid from appropriations of the District of Columbia, on certification of the code official, and shall be assessed as a tax against the lot on which the emergency condition existed or from which such condition arose as the case may be, carried as a tax on the regular tax rolls, and collected in the same manner as real estate taxes are collected.

116.4.1 Additional costs of emergency work. Costs of emergency work shall also be deemed to include, but are not limited to, all expenses incurred for or necessitated by any emergency work; costs associated with cleaning the premises to comply with the Construction Codes, utility removal or disconnection costs; court costs, fines, and penalties; costs of inspectors, testing agencies or experts retained; costs of testing or surveying; costs of mailings, postings and recordings; and costs of attorney’s fees expended for recovering the costs of the corrective action or to obtain or enforce a related order. If the code official determines that no other shelter is available to tenants or occupants required to vacate rental units as a result of a building closure pursuant to Section 116, the code official has discretion to assess all expenses incident to tenant or occupant relocation as a cost of emergency repairs, including, but not limited to, temporary housing, security deposits and the first month’s rent if required.

116.5 Remedies not exclusive. Nothing herein shall be deemed to preclude or negate any other penalties or remedies set forth in Section 113, or to preclude conversion of a special assessment lien to an administrative judgment, enforceable in the same manner as any other civil judgment under District of Columbia law, as authorized by DC Official Code § 42-3131.01 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).


116.7 Buildings with rental units. Where the code official posts a notice of emergency condition pursuant to Section 116 at a building with rental units, the code official is authorized to order all tenants or occupants to vacate the premises where an emergency condition exists. The posted notice shall comply with the requirements of Sections 113.5 and 113.6. If any tenant or occupant fails to vacate the premises within the time specified in the notice, the code official is authorized to order removal of the tenant or occupant from the premises.

116.7.1 Other rental housing provisions. Where an emergency condition exists, the removal of tenants or occupants from the premises, or the service of an order to vacate, pursuant to Section 116 shall not be considered an eviction or notice to vacate under DC Official Code § 42-3505.01 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.). Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall be construed to nullify or abrogate any other rights to which a tenant is entitled under District laws or regulations, including relocation assistance, the right to reoccupy the rental unit following rehabilitation, or the right to pursue rights and remedies under DC Official Code, Title 42, Chapter 34 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.).

116.8 Removal of notice of emergency condition. A notice of emergency condition posted pursuant to Section 116.1.2 shall be removed only by the code official. The code official shall remove the posted notice when, in the code official’s opinion, the emergency condition no longer exists. Any remaining unsafe conditions that do not constitute an emer-
gency condition (as defined in Section 116.1) shall be governed by the provisions of Section 115.

116.9 Appeals. Appeals of code official actions pursuant to Section 116 are governed by Section 112.2.1. As provided in Section 112, any such appeal shall not have the effect of staying any notice or order issued pursuant to Section 116.

SEC 117
POSTING OF OCCUPANT LOAD AND LIVE LOAD SIGNS

117.1 Occupant load. Occupant load signs shall be posted in accordance with Section 1004.3. Rooms or spaces which have multiple use capability shall be posted for the occupant loads of all such uses.

117.1.1 Occupant load calculations. The occupant load calculations shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004.

117.2 Installation of live load signs. Where reduced live loads are applied in accordance with the exception to Section 1607.3 in buildings erected before July 1, 1925, all such design live loads shall be conspicuously posted by the owner in that part of each story in which they apply, using durable signs of an approved, legible, permanent design, before issuance of a certificate of occupancy or before approval of a final inspection pursuant to Section 109.3.14. It shall be unlawful to remove or deface such notices.

117.3 Restrictions on Loading. It shall be unlawful to place, or cause or permit to be placed, on any floor or roof of a building, structure or portion thereof, loads greater than permitted by the Construction Codes.

SEC 118
ADDRESSES OF PREMISES

118.1 Purpose. The purpose of the provisions of Section 118 shall be:

1. To establish a formal, legally-based District of Columbia-wide system of assigning addresses to premises in order to facilitate their identification.
2. To facilitate protection of the public health and safety by enabling a quicker response time by police, fire, ambulance, and other emergency services.
3. To provide for the efficient delivery of public services, including building inspections, health inspections, property mapping, and property tax administration.
4. To establish the minimum requirements for providing address numbers on lot.

118.2 Administration. The code official is authorized to and shall administer the provisions of Section 118, including, but not limited to: assigning addresses to all lots, new and existing; and administering the naming of new private thoroughfares within the District of Columbia. Address numbers are required on all lots, new and existing, and the code official shall have authority to approve all address number assignments on any lot. The code official is also authorized to order changes in the numbering of any lot previously numbered if it is determined that the address number being used may endanger the public health and safety.

118.3 Responsibility. When an address number is assigned to a lot, the owner of a lot shall provide and maintain the address number in compliance with these requirements. A lot, which is required to have an address number pursuant to the provisions of Section 118, but for which no number has been applied for or issued, or where issued the use or posting thereof does not comply with the requirements of this section, shall not be occupied.

118.4 Definitions. The following words and terms are defined in Chapter 2.

ADDRESS NUMBER (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER RANGE (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER SUFFIX (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER RANGE (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER SUFFIX (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER RANGE (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER SUFFIX (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER RANGE (for Section 118)
ADDRESS NUMBER SUFFIX (for Section 118)

118.5 Addressing rules—general. The following general addressing rules shall apply to thoroughfares in the District of Columbia.

1. The District of Columbia has an existing scheme for addressing and naming of thoroughfares that is historic in nature. To the greatest extent possible, Section 118 seeks to maintain that scheme while eliminating conditions created over time that are detrimental to the public safety and welfare of the citizens of the District of Columbia.
2. The existing pattern of alphabetically named and numbered thoroughfares found in the District of Columbia shall be maintained.
3. When facing a thoroughfare quadrant dividing line (North Capitol Street, East Capitol Street, South Capitol Street or the Mall), the even number addresses are on the right side of the thoroughfare and the odd numbers are on the left side of the thoroughfare. Diagonal
thoroughfares have even and odd sides that match the parity of the grid direction they most closely resemble; those at 30-degree angles are generally numbered as east-west thoroughfares, those at 60-degree angles to the Mall are numbered as north-south thoroughfares. The 45-degree angle thoroughfares are variable, and should be maintained in their current form.

4. Address number ranges are determined based on a numeric progression from the point of origin, which is the United States Capitol, and the four thoroughfare quadrant dividing lines listed in Section 118.5.3. Each standard block was initially given an address number range of one hundred (100), progressing outward from the Capitol. Streets that commence away from the street quadrant dividing lines are examined and the address number ranges determined based upon the surrounding thoroughfares.

5. Address number ranges shall not overlap or create any opportunities for the assignment of duplicate addresses on a given thoroughfare within a single thoroughfare quadrant. There should be no gaps in the address number ranges if the thoroughfare to which the address number ranges are applied is continuous.

6. Breaks in address number ranges may occur where a thoroughfare with a given name is broken into distinct thoroughfare segments by a park, water body or other physical barrier. In these cases, the integrity of the address grid shall be maintained, and a gap in the address number range created, to signify the break in the thoroughfare’s continuity.

118.6 Administration of addresses.

118.6.1 Master address file. The code official shall maintain a master file of assigned addresses and maintain a master address mapping database, with the assistance of the Office of the Chief Technology Officer.

118.6.2 Code official responsibility. The code official shall be responsible for determining whether an address is required for any lot and also the conditions under which an address or addresses are to be assigned to any lot, including how that address is to be posted and displayed.

118.6.3 Assignment of new addresses. The code official shall be responsible for assigning a new address in the following instances:

1. A new record lot is created through the subdivision process of the Subdivision Regulations of the District of Columbia, a new condominium lot is established or a new tax lot is created through the process of the Office of Tax and Revenue and no address number was previously assigned to the prior land parcel or is no longer appropriate for the addressing of the new lot.

2. Where a new building or other structure is constructed on a lot, and a new address is requested for the lot to reflect the main entrance of the building or other structure located on the lot.

3. The owner of a building or other structure on a lot with multiple entrances to the exterior submits an application that meets the requirements of Section 118 regarding the assignment of one or more secondary addresses.

4. A new building or other structure is constructed on a lot already assigned an address and the lot already that contains one or more buildings or other structures.

5. An existing building or other structure is renovated to relocate the main entrance to a different thoroughfare frontage of the lot or to a different location on the current thoroughfare frontage of the lot on which that building or other structure has frontage.

7. A condominium lot where the unit has direct access to a public thoroughfare separate and apart for any main entrance to the building on the lot.

8. Where there is a separate occupiable space on the ground floor of a building on a lot and that space has direct access to the adjacent public thoroughfare, that space may be assigned an address separate from the address of the lot and displayed on the main entrance of the building within which the space is located.

9. Such other instances where it is deemed appropriate by the code official that an address be assigned and then displayed.

118.6.4 Authority to waive addressing provisions. The code official is authorized to grant a waiver of the provisions of Section 118, based upon the evidence presented, if the code official finds that the waiver fulfills all of the following:

1. Benefits the public health, safety and welfare.

2. Does not create conflicts or duplicate addresses.


118.7 Thoroughfare naming.

118.7.1 General. The following general rules shall apply to naming of thoroughfares in the District of Columbia.

1. No thoroughfare shall be given a name that duplicates or nearly duplicates the name of a then-existing or previously existing thoroughfare within the same thoroughfare quadrant of the District of Columbia.

2. No thoroughfare shall be given a name that duplicates or nearly duplicates the name of an existing or previously existing thoroughfare within the jurisdiction of the District of Columbia.

3. A thoroughfare name may be changed according to the separate procedures for naming public thoroughfares and private thoroughfares. Historical and commonly used names for thoroughfares shall be maintained where possible, and linked to newer names where necessary.

118.7.2 Naming of public thoroughfares. The code official shall forward a recommendation on the name of any proposed new public thoroughfare to the Council of the District of Columbia for its action. A proposed public
thoroughfare shall be assigned a name by the Council of the District of Columbia pursuant to Sections 401 through 410 of the Street and Alley Closing and Acquisition Procedures Act of 1982, effective March 10, 1983 [DC Law 4-201; DC Official Code §§ 9-204.01 et seq. (2013 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

118.7.3 Naming of private thoroughfares. The following rules shall apply to the naming of private thoroughfares.

1. A property owner, developer, surveyor, or plat proprietor shall make application to the code official for approval of a proposed thoroughfare name of a new private thoroughfare consistent with the existing historic thoroughfare addressing and thoroughfare naming scheme as required by Section 118.5.

2. Upon receipt of the thoroughfare name application for a new private thoroughfare, the code official shall review the proposed name with the District Department of Transportation, the District Office of Planning, and the District E-911 Coordinator to ensure that no duplication occurs and that no private thoroughfares are created with names that sound alike, or could create confusion for the delivery of emergency and non-emergency services.

3. The code official is authorized to recommend to the applicant a list of the existing approved thoroughfare names within the District of Columbia for the convenience of the applicant.

4. The code official shall approve the naming of newly established private thoroughfares within the District of Columbia, including private thoroughfares in proposed plats of condominium developments.

5. The code official shall notify the applicant within 30 days of the acceptance or rejection of the proposed thoroughfare name along with the reasons for the decision, if applicable.

6. The decision of the code official regarding the thoroughfare name for each private thoroughfare shall be final.

7. An unnamed private thoroughfare shall be named when two or more addresses exist or are established on such private thoroughfare. If the existing addresses are numbered off of the adjoining public thoroughfare, then the addresses shall be changed to appropriate addresses using the thoroughfare name of the private thoroughfare.

8. An owner shall consult with the code official before a name for the private thoroughfare is selected and shall thereafter obtain the code official’s approval before the name is displayed in accordance with Section 118.10.

9. The code official shall recommend changes in a thoroughfare name where, in the code official’s opinion, a valid reason exists for the change of thoroughfare name. Such reasons include, but are not limited to:
   a. Duplicate thoroughfare names.
   b. Confusion of thoroughfare names that sound alike.
   c. Thoroughfare names that are extremely difficult to spell or pronounce.
   d. Thoroughfares that have more than one commonly used name.
   e. Thoroughfare names shall not be changed to reflect changes in property ownership or for personal reasons of the adjoining owners.

10. When a thoroughfare name change or designation is proposed, the code official shall provide notice to the property owners abutting the thoroughfare segment(s) to be named or changed. If the change is designed to remedy existing duplicate names or confusing names, the property owners may be consulted on suggested names for the thoroughfare.

11. Before changing a thoroughfare name, the code official shall consider the official thoroughfare name as recorded on plats and deeds of adjacent property, and the most accurate historical name of the thoroughfare in question.

12. The existing legal documents shall be of primary consideration in determining the single thoroughfare name when two or more names are commonly used.

118.8 Address number assignment. The following rules shall apply to address number assignments.

1. Every lot that is legally capable of supporting a building or other structure shall have an address regardless of whether that lot is occupied by a building or other structure or vacant.

2. Every condominium lot, building or other structure with an entrance fronting on and directly accessible from a public thoroughfare or a private thoroughfare shall have a thoroughfare address.

3. No address shall be assigned to a driveway. Where a lot is improved by a building or other structure and has a driveway associated with that building or other structure, whether on the same lot or different lot, then the driveway shall have the same name and the numbering sequence of the thoroughfare assigned to the lot on which the building or other structure is located.

4. No address number shall be assigned to a lot, and no building or other structure on that lot shall display an address where the lot has as its only access an unnamed thoroughfare. If an address is required for a lot that fronts on an unnamed thoroughfare, that thoroughfare shall first be named according to the process described in Sections 118.7.2 or 118.7.3, as applicable.
5. An address number for a lot, or for premises on a lot where there are multiple premises on lot that could be assigned an address number, shall be determined based upon the address range of the block face, the location of the main entrance of the building or other structure, or, as applicable, the frontage of the lot on a thoroughfare and the existing address numbers that are assigned within that block face of the thoroughfare.

6. Address numbers shall be logically and spatially consistent, increasing in numeric order from the low number end of the block face to the high number end of that block face.

7. Address numbers shall be assigned in accordance with the parity (odd/even) designation for the block face of the thoroughfare. Even numbers shall not be used on the odd side of a thoroughfare, nor shall odd numbers be used on the even side of a thoroughfare.

8. If a thoroughfare segment or an alley segment exists where both odd and even numbers exist on both sides of the segment, or where only one side contains addresses, and both odd and even numbers have been used, the code official shall issue an address number that is logically consistent with the numbers on the adjoining lots.

9. No address number shall be assigned that duplicates the number for any existing lot on the same thoroughfare.

10. Except as provided for in Section 118.8.11, Item 11, an address number may include an address number suffix designated as a letter. Where a new address number suffix is designated, it shall be a letter; the first letter assigned to an address as an address number suffix shall be the letter “B” to distinguish the address assigned to the principal building or other structure on the lot that has been assigned that address.

11. The code official is authorized to maintain an existing address number suffix that is a fraction if there is no available address number in the address sequence for the block in which the address is located. The fraction shall be stored in the address number suffix field.

12. The letter designation of a thoroughfare address shall be maintained in the address number suffix field.

13. No new address number shall be assigned to the site of a proposed building that is to be situated on multiple lots, although the address number assigned to one of the lots may be used as the address number displayed on the main entrance. No new address number shall be assigned to the site of a proposed building where there is a pending subdivision of the site pursuant to the Subdivision Regulations of the District of Columbia (10-B DCMR §§ 2700 et seq.), until the plat of subdivision has been accepted into the records of the Office of the Surveyor of the District of Columbia. No new address number shall be assigned to the site of a proposed building where there is a pending division of lots application being process administered by the Office of Tax and Revenue of the District of Columbia, and an address number may only be assigned in connection with that division of lots process when that Office has issued to the applicant its notice of theoretical creation of one or more tax lots and associated assignment of assessment and taxation lot number(s) to that tax lot or tax lots.

14. The code official shall hear and consider requests for changes in address numbers for existing addresses.

- The code official is authorized to change address numbers where there are duplicates, or where the address number is out of sequence, or is on the opposite side of the thoroughfare in terms of parity (odd number found on the even numbered side, or vice-versa).

- The code official is authorized to change address numbers where existing numbers contain an address number suffix, and there is sufficient space in the existing address number range for the block face to support renumbering to remove the address number suffix.

15. The code official shall not change an existing address to one that is not consistent with the addressing of lots and buildings, parity, and sequences that already exist on the applicable public thoroughfare.

16. Where a lot is occupied by a building or other structure that fronts on more than one public thoroughfare, the lot shall be assigned an address number based on the location of the face of the building or other structure containing the main entrance.

118.9 Display specifications.

118.9.1 Address number display. Each lot to which an address number has been assigned and has a building or other structure located on that lot shall have the number displayed on the building or other structure in conformance with the requirements provided in Section 118.9.

118.9.1.1 Main entrance location. The following requirements shall apply to the main entrance location.

- The assigned address number of the lot shall be located directly over or near the main entrance in a position easily observed and readable from the opposite side of a public thoroughfare.

- A multi-tenanted building or other structure having separate exterior entrances with separate address numbers shall post the assigned address numbers near each entrance to the building or other structure in accordance with this section.

- Where the main entrance of the building or other structure on a lot is not located at and frontal on a public thoroughfare, the owner of a lot shall post the address number on the face of the building or other structure located at or frontal on the public thoroughfare as well as directly above or near the main entrance.
118.10 Compliance and enforcement.

118.10.1 Final building inspection. Before approval of a final building inspection pursuant to Section 109.3.1.11, all addressing requirements, including obtaining a thoroughfare name, and obtaining and posting of an address number, shall be satisfied in accordance with the requirements of Section 118.

118.10.2 Enforcement. The provisions of Section 118 shall be enforced by the code official pursuant to the enforcement mechanisms set forth in Section 113.

SECTION 119
SERVICE UTILITIES

119.1 Connection of service utilities. No person shall make connections from a utility source of energy, fuel, power, water or sewerage to any building, other structure or system that is regulated by the Construction Codes until a permit for the work is issued and the work has been inspected and approved by the code official.

119.2 Temporary connection. The code official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of a building, other structure, system, or use to the utility source of energy, fuel or power.

119.3 Authority to disconnect service utilities. The code official shall have the authority to order the disconnection of utility service to any building, other structure or system regulated by the Construction Codes, in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property or where such utility connection has been made without the approval required by Section 119.1 or 119.2. The code official shall notify the serving utility, and where possible the owner and occupant of the building, other structure or service system, of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner or occupant of the building, other structure or service system shall be notified in writing, as soon as practical thereafter.

119.3.1 Nonemergency disconnection. The code official shall have the authority to disconnect any utility service or energy supplied to a premises or portion thereof, or to equipment located thereon, where notification has been provided in accordance with Section 119.3.1.1, in any of the following circumstances:

1. The owner of the premises, or person working on the premises, have failed to comply with one or more stop work orders.

2. Where an electric or natural gas service has been connected to a building or structure which has not been approved for occupancy or operation at that site.

3. Where a permit for temporary power has expired and the electrical connection is still in use.

119.3.1.1 Notification. The code official shall issue a notice and order directed to the owner of the premises or portion thereof that is subject to the disconnection order in accordance with Sections 113.4.6 and 113.5.5, and by posting the notice at the entrance of such building or structure.

119.3.1.2 Authority to order disconnection. If the specified action to be taken by the owner is not accomplished within 30 days from the date of service, the code official is authorized to order the utility to disconnect service, with the costs for such action to be borne by the owner. Responsibility for damages, losses, and
liabilities consequent with the loss of power shall be
borne by the owner and not the District of Columbia or
its employees.

**Exception:** Where the owner or occupant can conclusively
demonstrate the likelihood of loss of human life or
serious health endangerment consequent to a loss of
power to the site and, further, can conclusively demon-
strate inability to provide alternative living arrange-
ments for the endangered person.

**119.3.1.2.1 Notice to the Serving Utility.** When
utility service or energy to a premises or portion thereof is to be disconnected, a written notice of
such disconnection and causes therefore shall be
provided at least twenty-four (24) hours prior to
such disconnection to the serving utility, the owner
and the occupants of the premises or portion thereof.

**119.3.1.2.2 Posting of Notice of Disconnection.**
After any notice and/or order of the code official
made pursuant to this section shall become final, the
code official shall post a notice of disconnection in a
conspicuous location, in or about the premises sub-
ject to the disconnection stating that the utility/energy connection, as applicable, will be discon-
ected on a specified date. Unauthorized removal or
obstruction of a posted notice of disconnection is a
violation of the Construction Codes, and is subject
to the penalties provided in Section 113 and DC
Official Code § 6-1406 (2018 Repl.), and the injunc-
tive relief set out in DC Official Code § 6-1407
(2018 Repl.). The owner of the premises posted with
a notice of disconnection, or the owner’s agent, shall
promptly notify the Department if the posted notice
has been removed, damaged or obstructed so the
notice can be reposted.

**SECTION 120 COVENANTS AND AGREEMENTS**

**120.1 General.** The provisions of this section, and DC Offi-
cial Code § 6-1405.01(b) (2018 Repl.), shall apply to any
covenants or agreements required by the Construction Codes
or accepted by the code official as an alternative means of
compliance with requirements of the Construction Codes (a
required covenant). There may also be other covenants or
agreements relating to the construction process that are
required by other agencies as set forth in Section 120.4, that
are subject to review and approval by these agencies (other
agency covenant).

**120.1.1 Required covenants.** required covenants include
the following:

1. Covenant for openings (Section 705.8.7 of this code
or Section 302.1 of the Residential Code).
2. Covenant for Green Building Act binding pledge
(Section 302.6.2.4 of the Green Construction Code).
3. Covenant for modification of projection require-
ments (Section 3202.4.2).
4. Covenant for master service or master metering
(Articles 230.2 and 230.3 of the Electrical Code).
5. Covenants required by the Zoning Administrator.
6. Covenants and agreements required or accepted by
the code official as an alternative means of compli-
ance with requirements of the Construction Codes,
in conjunction with an approved code modification.

**120.2 Form and recordation.** Any required covenant shall:
(a) run with the land for as long as it is required; (b) be in the
form approved by the Office of the Attorney General for the
District of Columbia (OAG); (c) require approval for technical
sufficiency by the Department or other responsible
agency indicated below, as shown by the signature of the
authorized representative of the Department or other agency;
and (d) require approval for legal sufficiency by OAG or
OAG’s designee, before issuance of any related permits, cer-
tificates of occupancy for Green Building Pledge Covenants,
or Change in Openings as specified in Section 120.3.1.1. as
shown by the signature of the authorized representative of
OAG on the required covenant. Any modification or termina-
tion of a Covenant shall require: prior written approval of the
District of Columbia in a form approved by OAG; approval
for technical sufficiency by the Department (or other agency
indicated below); and approval for legal sufficiency by OAG
or OAG’s designee. For each required covenant, the owner(s)
shall:

1. File and record the required covenant, signed by the
owner(s) as approved by the Department (or other
agency as required below) and by OAG or OAG’s des-
ignee, among the land records of the Recorder of Deeds of the District of Columbia (Land Records) against the title to the lot on which the building or structure is located or to be located, by and at the
expense of the owner.

2. Provide the code official with one copy of the required
covenant that is certified by the Recorder of Deeds as
having been recorded among the land records against
the lot.

3. Cause any lien or interest creating a security interest for
the payment of a debt in the premises, as applicable,
recorded in the land records prior to the required cove-
nant, to be subordinated to the required covenant.

**120.3 Specific categories of required covenants.**

**120.3.1 Required covenant for openings.** No permit
shall be approved or issued where one or more openings in
an exterior wall, subject to the provisions of Section
705.8.7 of this code or Section 302.1 of the Residential
Code, until the owner of the lot presents the code official
with a copy of a covenant that complies with Section
120.2. The purpose of the covenant is to ensure compli-
ance with maintenance of the minimum requirements of
Section 705.8.7 of this code and Section 302.1 of the Res-
dential Code for as long as the building exists, and to
ensure that responsibility for the maintenance of those
conditions shall be conveyed to any future owner of the
building.
120.3.1.1 Change in openings. If the code official determines that a change in conditions subject to Section 705.8.7 of this code or Section 302.1 of the Residential Code occurred prior to final inspection, but after recordation of a covenant required by Section 120.3.1, and the change affects the terms of the covenant, the owner shall amend the covenant as the code official directs and record the amended covenant in accordance with Section 120.1 prior to issuance of the first certificate of occupancy for occupiable space in a story above grade plane, or prior to final inspection if no certificate of occupancy is required.

120.3.2 Required covenants for modifications of projection requirements for foregone construction. No permit or related plan shall be approved or issued for a modification of projection requirements pursuant to Section 3202.4.2 until the owner of the premises presents the code official with a copy of a covenant that complies with Section 120.2, and which meets the requirements of Sections 3202.4.2.4 and 3202.4.2.5.

120.3.3 Required covenants for Green Building Act Binding Pledge. No certificate of occupancy in a story above grade plane for a project for which the owner or authorized agent has elected to submit a binding pledge as provided in Section 302.6.2.4 of the Green Construction Code as security for compliance with the provisions of Section 302.3.2 or Section 302.3.3 of the Green Construction Code or as provided in Section 6 of the Green Building Act (DC Official Code Section § 6-1451.05) until the owner or authorized agent presents the code official with a copy of a covenant that complies with Section 120.2.

120.3.4 Required covenants for master service or master metering. No permit shall be approved or issued to provide master service to more than one building on a single lot, or to buildings on different lots in the same square, as approved pursuant to Articles 230.2 and 230.3 of the Electrical Code, until the owner of the premises presents the code official with a copy of a covenant, complying with Section 120.2, that establishes access rights to each end user.

120.3.5 Covenants required by the Zoning Administrator. No building permit shall be approved or issued for a single family dwelling project where the application shows components of an additional dwelling unit(s), unless the owner commits to maintain the unit as a single family dwelling for purposes of compliance with the Zoning Regulations or seeks, as appropriate, regulatory approval as either an accessory apartment, flat, or multiple dwelling use as permitted under the Zoning Regulations. If maintained as a single family dwelling, a commitment to maintain the premises as a single family dwelling must be documented by the owner of the premises by presenting the code official with a copy of a covenant, complying with Section 120.2.

120.4 Other agency covenants and agreements. Where an agency other than the Department requires a covenant or agreement to be approved by such agency prior to permit issuance by the Department, then it shall be the responsibility of the requiring agency to ensure that the applicant has met the conditions imposed by such agency, and to provide evidence to the Department of the requiring agency’s approval of such covenant or agreement. Agreements and covenants required by other agencies include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Covenants for stormwater management (DOEE, pursuant to 21 DCMR, Chapter 5).
2. Covenants for private fire hydrants (Fire and Emergency Medical Services, pursuant to DC Official Code § 34-2410.02 and Section 507.5.2.1 of the Fire Code).
3. Public space vault agreements (DDOT, pursuant to DC Official Code § 10-1103.01 and Section 3202.9.2.1).
4. Covenants or agreements for installation and maintenance of water service or sewer pipes that traverse an adjacent premises. (DC Water, pursuant to DC Code § 8-205(b) and 21 DCMR §§ 110 and 202).
5. Covenants and nonconversion agreements required under flood hazard rules (DOEE, pursuant to 21 DCMR, Chapter 31).

SECTION 121 [RESERVED]

SECTION 122 AMENDMENTS AND COPIES

122.1 Amendments; supplements; editions. All future amendments, supplements, and editions of the Construction Codes shall be adopted only upon authority of the government of the District of Columbia. The Mayor is authorized to issue proposed rules to amend the Construction Codes and to adopt new editions of and supplements to the International Codes in whole or in part, pursuant to Title I of the District of Columbia Administrative Procedure Act, approved October 21, 1968 [82 Stat. 1204; DC Official Code §§ 2-501 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)] and the Construction Codes Approval and Amendments Act, effective March 21, 1987 (DC Law 6-216; DC Official Code §§ 6-1401 et seq. (2018 Repl.), as amended. The Mayor’s authority thereunder has been delegated to the Construction Codes Coordinating Board (CCCB) pursuant to Mayor’s Order 2009–22, dated February 25, 2009, as amended. The proposed rules shall be submitted to the Council for a 45-day period of review, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, legal holidays and days of Council recess, pursuant to DC Official Code § 6-1409(a). If the Council does not approve or disapprove the proposed rules, in whole or in part, by resolution within this 45-day review period, the proposed rules shall be deemed approved. The rules shall not take effect until approved or deemed approved by the Council.

Exception: Amendments to the Construction Codes by emergency rulemaking are governed by DC Official Code § 2-505(c).
122.2 Amendment procedure. Within a reasonable period of time after publication of any subsequent edition of the International Codes, the CCCB shall:

1. Review, revise and maintain the Construction Codes to reflect the current state of the art in the construction industry.

2. Review and evaluate all proposed changes and amendments to the Construction Codes.

3. Submit for adoption, as proposed rulemaking through the Director, all revisions to the Construction Codes that are approved by the CCCB.

4. Publish, as final rulemaking through the Director, all revisions to the Construction Codes once they are approved or deemed approved by the Council as provided in the Construction Codes Act and Section 122.1.

122.2.1 Initiation and review of changes. Changes to the Construction Codes shall be proposed and initiated by and through the CCCB. The notice, review, evaluation and rulemaking procedures of Section 122.2 shall be applied to any proposed changes in the Construction Codes.

122.3 Official copy. The official copy of the Construction Codes is posted electronically on the website of the Secretary of the District of Columbia, Office of Documents and Administrative Issuances.

SECTION 123
TRANSATORY PROVISIONS

123.1 Applicability of prior editions of the Construction Codes. The prior edition of the Construction Codes, in force on the date that a new edition of the Construction Codes is adopted pursuant to Section 122, shall remain in full force and effect for the purposes specified in Sections 123.1.1 through 123.1.5.

123.1.1 Permits issued prior to adoption of Construction Codes. Work authorized by a permit issued before the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes, which permit has not expired pursuant to Section 105.10 or been revoked pursuant to Section 111, shall be allowed to be carried to completion under the edition of the Construction Codes under which the permit was issued, subject to the exceptions stated in Section 102.6.

123.1.2 Applications filed after adoption of Construction Codes. An application for permit for which the application filing deposit has been paid before the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes, pursuant to Section 108.2.1.1, shall be allowed to be processed to issuance of the permit, and any work authorized thereby shall be allowed to be carried to completion under the edition of the Construction Codes in effect on the date said application was filed, subject to the exceptions stated in Section 102.6 and the following conditions:

1. Each such application shall have been filed prior to the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes accompanied by submittal documents and other information sufficiently complete to allow processing of the permit application without substantial change or deviation.

2. Each such permit shall be paid in full and obtained by the applicant within 12 months after the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes.

3. All work authorized by such permit shall be carried to completion under the terms of the permit.

4. Any permits granted under Section 123.1.2, if permitted to expire under Section 105.10 or if revoked pursuant to Section 111, shall not be extended under Section 105.11.

123.1.3 Applications filed after adoption of Construction Codes. Where a contract for design has been executed prior to the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes, but no permit applications for work covered by the design contract have been filed, permit applications for work covered by the design contract shall be allowed to be filed, processed to issuance of permit, and any work authorized thereby shall be allowed to be carried to completion, under the previous edition of the Construction Codes, subject to the exceptions stated in Section 102.6 and the following conditions:

1. The applicant shall file the permit application, accompanied by submittal documents and other information conforming to Sections 106.1 and 106.1.1 of the new edition of the Construction Codes, sufficiently complete to allow processing of the permit without substantial change or deviation, within 12 months after the effective date of the new edition of the Construction Codes.

2. The applicant shall submit a copy of the design contract for the work covered by the permit application, with a notarized affidavit stating that the submitted copy is a true and accurate copy of the contract, that the contract was in effect on or before the effective date of the Construction Codes, and that the design submitted with the permit application was made under such contract.

3. The permit shall be obtained and the permit fee paid in full by the applicant within 12 months after the filing date.

4. All work authorized by such permit shall be carried to completion under the terms of the permit.

5. Any permit granted under Section 123.1.3, if permitted to expire under Section 105.10 or if revoked pursuant to Section 111, shall not be extended under Section 105.11.

123.1.4 Tenant layout permits in a new building. The work necessary to finish the interior layout of every tenant space in a new building authorized by a permit issued under a previous edition of the Construction Codes, for first occupancy of each such tenant space, shall be considered part of the completion of said building, and the permits for such tenant work shall be allowed to be processed under the same edition of the Construction Codes as the permit for the new building, regardless of when the tenant layout project begins.
123.1.4.1 Extensive Alteration Level 3 projects. The work necessary to finish the interior layout of every tenant space in Alteration Level 3 projects that entails all of the following: a) stripping the building to its structure, b) removal of all other systems, and c) the complete refitting of the building, shall be considered part of the completion of said building, and the permits for such tenant work shall be allowed to be processed under the same edition of the Construction Codes as the permit for the Alteration Level 3 work, regardless of when the tenant layout project began.

123.1.5 Revision of a permit issued under a prior edition of the Construction Codes. Revisions pursuant to Section 105.9 of an active valid permit issued under a previous edition of the Construction Codes shall be allowed to be processed, at the option of the owner, under the same edition of the Construction Codes as the permit being revised.

Exceptions: Where the code official determines either of the following:

1. Using certain provisions of the previous edition would pose an undue health or safety risk to the public or the occupants of the premises.

2. The scope of work is such that submission of a new permit application is required in lieu of a permit revision as authorized by Sections 105.9 and 109.1.
CHAPTER 2
DEFINITIONS

SECTION 201
GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the Energy Conservation Code, Fuel Gas Code, Fire Code, Mechanical Code or Plumbing Code, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

201.5 Defined terms with specific limitations. Where the definition of a term is shown as being specifically limited to a specific chapter or section of the Construction Codes, that definition shall not be used outside the chapter or section specifically stated.

SECTION 202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

202.1 Revised definitions. The definitions of the following terms in Section 202 of the International Building Code are deleted and new definitions are inserted in their place in Section 202 of the Building Code.

24-HOUR BASIS. The actual time that a person is an occupant within a facility for the purpose of receiving care. It shall not include a facility that is open for 24 hours and is capable of providing care to someone visiting the facility during any segment of the 24 hours.

AAC MASONRY. Masonry made of autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) units, manufactured without internal reinforcement and bonded together using thin- or thick-bed mortar.

ACCESSIBLE. A site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with Chapter 11.

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any accessible point in a building or facility to a public way.

ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. A continuous, unobstructed path that complies with Chapter 11.

ACCESSIBLE UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit that complies with this code and the provisions for Accessible units in ICC A117.1.

ACCREDITATION BODY. An approved, third-party organization that is independent of the grading and inspection agencies, and the lumber mills, and that initially accredits and subsequently monitors, on a continuing basis, the competency and performance of a grading or inspection agency related to carrying out specific tasks.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the building area, aggregate floor area, number of stories, or height of a building or structure.

ADHERED MASONRY VENEER. Veneer secured and supported through the adhesion of an approved bonding material applied to an approved backing.

ADOBE CONSTRUCTION. Construction in which the exterior load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and partitions are of unfired clay masonry units, and floors, roofs and interior framing are wholly or partly of wood or other approved materials.

Adobe, stabilized. Unfired clay masonry units to which admixtures, such as emulsified asphalt, are added during the manufacturing process to limit the units’ water absorption so as to increase their durability.

Adobe, unstabilized. Unfired clay masonry units that do not meet the definition of “Adobe, stabilized.”

AEROSOL. A product that is dispensed from an aerosol container by a propellant. Aerosol products shall be classified by means of the calculation of their chemical heats of combustion and shall be designated Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3.

Level 1 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is less than or equal to 8,600 British thermal units per pound (Btu/lb) (20 kJ/g).

Level 2 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 8,600 Btu/lb (20 kJ/g), but less than or equal to 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

Level 3 aerosol products. Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

AEROSOL CONTAINER. A metal can or a glass or plastic bottle designed to dispense an aerosol.

AGGREGATE. In roofing, crushed stone, crushed slag or water-worn gravel used for surfacing for roof coverings.

AGRICULTURAL BUILDING. A structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. This structure shall not be a place of human habitation or a place of employment where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged, nor shall it be a place used by the public.

AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION. An insulation having an air permeance equal to or less than 0.02 l/s × m² at 75 pa pressure differential tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 or ASTM E283.
AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE. A structure that uses air-pressurized membrane beams, arches or other elements to enclose space. Occupants of such a structure do not occupy the pressurized area used to support the structure.

AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE. A structure wherein the shape of the structure is attained by air pressure and occupants of the structure are within the elevated pressure area. Air-supported structures are of two basic types:

- **Double skin.** Similar to a single skin, but with an attached liner that is separated from the outer skin and provides an airspace which serves for insulation, acoustic, aesthetic or similar purposes.

- **Single skin.** Where there is only the single outer skin and the air pressure is directly against that skin.

AISLE. An unenclosed exit access component that defines and provides a path of egress travel.

AISLE ACCESSWAY. That portion of an exit access that leads to an aisle.

ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A fire alarm system component such as a bell, horn, speaker, light or text display that provides audible, tactile or visible outputs, or any combination thereof.

ALARM SIGNAL. A signal indicating an emergency requiring immediate action, such as a signal indicative of fire.

ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE. A feature of automatic fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein smoke detectors report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period, after being automatically reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm-initiation signal.

ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN. A method of proportioning structural members, such that elastically computed stresses produced in the members by nominal loads do not exceed specified allowable stresses (also called “working stress design”).

ALTERATION. Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition.

ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE. A device that has a series of steps between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad) from horizontal, usually attached to a center support rail in an alternating manner so that the user does not have both feet on the same level at the same time.

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are incapable of self-preservation by the services provided.

ANCHOR BUILDING. An exterior perimeter building of a group other than H having direct access to a covered or open mall building but having required means of egress independent of the mall.

ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER. Veneer secured with approved mechanical fasteners to an approved backing.

ANNULAR SPACE. The opening around the penetrating item.

ANNUNCIATOR. A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition or location.

APPROVED. Acceptable to the building official.

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, where such agency has been approved by the building official.

APPROVED FABRICATOR. An established and qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official pursuant to Chapter 17 of this code.

APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the building official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

AREA (for masonry).

- **Gross cross-sectional.** The area delineated by the out-to-out specified dimensions of masonry in the plane under consideration.

- **Net cross-sectional.** The area of masonry units, grout and mortar crossed by the plane under consideration based on out-to-out specified dimensions.

AREA, BUILDING. The area included within surrounding exterior walls (or exterior walls and fire walls) exclusive of vent shafts and courts. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the building area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above.

AREA OF REFUGE. An area where persons unable to use stairways can remain temporarily to await instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.

AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY. That portion of an indoor or outdoor space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

AREAWAY. A subsurface space adjacent to a building open at the top or protected at the top by a grating or guard.

ASSEMBLY SEATING, MULTILEVEL. See “Multilevel assembly seating.”

ATRIUM. An opening connecting two or more stories other than enclosed stairways, elevators, hoistways, escalators, plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment, which is closed at the top and not defined as a mall. Stories, as used in this definition, do not include balconies within assembly groups or mezzanines that comply with Section 505.

ATTIC. The space between the ceiling beams of the top story and the roof rafters.

AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing.

AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC). Low density cementitious product of calcium silicate hydrates, whose material specifications are defined in ASTM C1386.

AUTOMATIC. As applied to fire protection devices, a device or system providing an emergency function without
the necessity for human intervention and activated as a result of a predetermined temperature rise, rate of temperature rise or combustion products.

**AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** An approved system of devices and equipment which automatically detects a fire and discharges an approved fire-extinguishing agent onto or in the area of a fire.

**AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM.** A fire alarm system that has initiation devices that utilize smoke detectors for protection of an area such as a room or space with detectors to provide early warning of fire.

**AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM.** An automatic sprinkler system, for fire protection purposes, is an integrated system of underground and overhead piping designed in accordance with fire protection engineering standards. The system includes a suitable water supply. The portion of the system above the ground is a network of specially sized or hydraulically designed piping installed in a structure or area, generally overhead, and to which automatic sprinklers are connected in a systematic pattern. The system is usually activated by heat from a fire and discharges water over the fire area.

**AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM.** A system consisting of a water supply, a pressure source, and a distribution piping system with attached nozzles, which, at or above a minimum operating pressure, defined by its listing, discharges water in fine droplets meeting the requirements of NFPA 750 for the purpose of the control, suppression or extinguishment of a fire. Such systems include wet-pipe, dry-pipe and preaction types. The systems are designed as engineered, preengineered, local-application or total-flooding systems.

**AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL.** The root mean square, A-weighted sound pressure level measured over a 24-hour period, or the time any person is present, whichever time period is less.

**AWNING.** An architectural projection that provides weather protection, identity or decoration and is partially or wholly supported by the building to which it is attached. An awning is comprised of a lightweight frame structure over which a covering is attached.

**BACKING.** The wall or surface to which the veneer is secured.

**BALANCED DOOR.** A door equipped with double-pivoted hardware so designed as to cause a semicounterbalanced swing action when opening.

**BALED COTTON.** A natural seed fiber wrapped in and secured with industry accepted materials, usually consisting of burlap, woven polypropylene, polyethylene or cotton or sheet polyethylene, and secured with steel, synthetic or wire bands or wire; also includes linters (lint removed from the cottonseed) and motes (residual materials from the ginning process).

**BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED.** Cotton made into banded bales with a packing density of not less than 22 pounds per cubic foot (360 kg/m³), and dimensions complying with the following: a length of 55 inches (1397 mm), a width of 21 inches (533.4 mm) and a height of 27.6 to 35.4 inches (701 to 899 mm).

**BALLAST.** In roofing, ballast comes in the form of large stones or paver systems or light-weight interlocking paver systems and is used to provide uplift resistance for roofing systems that are not adhered or mechanically attached to the roof deck.

**BARRICADE.** A structure that consists of a combination of walls, floor and roof, which is designed to withstand the rapid release of energy in an explosion and which is fully confined, partially vented or fully vented; or other effective method of shielding from explosive materials by a natural or artificial barrier.

- **Artificial barricade.** An artificial mound or revetment a minimum thickness of 3 feet (914 mm).
- **Natural barricade.** Natural features of the ground, such as hills, or timber of sufficient density that the surrounding exposures that require protection cannot be seen from the magazine or building containing explosives when the trees are bare of leaves.

**BASE FLOOD.** A flood having a 1-percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. The base flood is commonly referred to as the “100 year flood” or the “1-percent-annual chance flood.”

**BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the base flood, including wave height, relative to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD), North American Vertical Datum (NAVD) or other datum specified on the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM).

**BASEMENT.** A story that is not a story above grade plane (see “Story above grade plane”). This definition of “Basement” does not apply to the provisions of Section 1612 or Appendix G for flood loads.

**BASEMENT (for flood loads) (for purposes of Section 1612 and Appendix G).** The portion of a building having its floor subgrade (below ground level) on all sides. This definition of “Basement” is limited in application to the provisions of Section 1612 and Appendix G.

**BEARING WALL STRUCTURE.** A building or other structure in which vertical loads from floors and roofs are primarily supported by walls.

**BED JOINT.** The horizontal layer of mortar on which a masonry unit is laid.

**BLEACHERS.** Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see “Grandstand”).

**BOARDING HOUSE.** A building arranged or used for lodging for compensation, with or without meals, and not occupied as a single-family unit.

**BOILING POINT.** The temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid equals the atmospheric pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa) or 760 mm of mercury. Where an accurate boiling point is unavailable for the material in question, or for mixtures which do not have a constant boiling point, for the purposes of this classification, the 20-percent evaporated point of a distillation performed in...
DEFINITIONS

accordance with ASTM D86 shall be used as the boiling point of the liquid.

BRACED WALL LINE. A straight line through the building plan that represents the location of the lateral resistance provided by the wall bracing.

BRACED WALL PANEL. A full-height section of wall constructed to resist in-plane shear loads through interaction of framing members, sheathing material and anchors. The panel’s length meets the requirements of its particular bracing method and contributes toward the total amount of bracing required along its braced wall line.

BREAKOUT. For revolving doors, a process whereby wings or door panels can be pushed open manually for means of egress travel.

BRICK.

- Calcium silicate (sand lime brick). A pressed and subsequently autoclaved unit that consists of sand and lime, with or without the inclusion of other materials.
- Clay or shale. A solid or hollow masonry unit of clay or shale, usually formed into a rectangular prism, then burned or fired in a kiln; brick is a ceramic product.
- Concrete. A concrete masonry unit made from Portland cement, water, and suitable aggregates, with or without the inclusion of other materials.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy.

BUILDING AREA. See “Area, building.”

BUILDING ELEMENT. A fundamental component of building construction, listed in Table 601, which may or may not be of fire-resistance-rated construction and is constructed of materials based on the building type of construction.

BUILDING HEIGHT. See “Height, building.”

BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT. A building product that incorporates photovoltaic modules and functions as a component of the building envelope.

BUILDING LINE. The line established by law, beyond which a building shall not extend, except as specifically provided by law.

BUILDING OFFICIAL. The code official.

BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING. Two or more layers of felt cemented together and surfaced with a cap sheet, mineral aggregate, smooth coating or similar surfacing material.

CABLE-RESTRAINED, AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE. A structure in which the uplift is resisted by cables or webbings which are anchored to either foundations or dead men. Reinforcing cable or webbing is attached by various methods to the membrane or is an integral part of the membrane. This is not a cable-supported structure.

CANOPY. A permanent structure or architectural projection of rigid construction over which a covering is attached that provides weather protection, identity or decoration. A canopy is permitted to be structurally independent or supported by attachment to a building on one or more sides.

CARBON DIOXIDE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS. A system supplying carbon dioxide (CO₂) from a pressurized vessel through fixed pipes and nozzles. The system includes a manual- or automatic-actuating mechanism.

CARE SUITE. In Group I-2 occupancies, a group of treatment rooms, care recipient sleeping rooms and the support rooms or spaces and circulation space within the suite where staff are in attendance for supervision of all care recipients within the suite, and the suite is in compliance with the requirements of Section 407.4.4.

CAST STONE. A building stone manufactured from Portland cement concrete precast and used as a trim, veneer or facing on or in buildings or structures.

CEILING LIMIT. The maximum concentration of an airborne contaminant to which one may be exposed. The ceiling limits utilized are those published in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000. The ceiling Recommended Exposure Limit (REL-C) concentrations published by the U.S. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Threshold Limit Value—Ceiling (TLV-C) concentrations published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH), Ceiling Workplace Environmental Exposure Level (WEEL-Ceiling) Guides published by the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA), and other approved, consistent measures are allowed as surrogates for hazardous substances not listed in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000.

CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A listed device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. Ceiling radiation dampers include air terminal units, ceiling dampers and ceiling air diffusers.

CELL (Group I-3 occupancy). A room within a housing unit in a detention or correctional facility used to confine inmates or prisoners.

CELL (masonry). A void space having a gross cross-sectional area greater than 1 1/2 square inches (967 mm²).

CELL TIER. Levels of cells vertically stacked above one another within a housing unit.

CEMENT PLASTER. A mixture of Portland or blended cement, Portland cement or blended cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or plastic cement and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET. A high-temperature mineral wool insulation material made of alumina-silica ceramic or calcium magnesium silicate soluble fibers and weighing 4 to 10 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (64 to 160 kg/m³).

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE. A certificate stating that materials and products meet specified standards or that work was done in compliance with approved construction documents.

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the purpose or level of activity within a building that involves a change in application of the requirements of this code.
CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from a fuel-burning appliance to the outdoor atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. A listed and labeled chimney composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed chimney of metal.

CHIMNEY TYPES.

High-heat appliance type. An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, high-heat appliances producing combustion gases in excess of 2000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.3).

Low-heat appliance type. An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, low-heat appliances producing combustion gases not in excess of 1000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, but capable of producing combustion gases of 1400°F (760°C) during intermittent forces firing for periods up to 1 hour. Temperatures shall be measured at the appliance flue outlet.

Masonry type. A field-constructed chimney of solid masonry units or stones.

Medium-heat appliance type. An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, medium-heat appliances producing combustion gases not exceeding 2000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.2).

CIRCULATION PATH. An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians.

CLEAN AGENT. Electrically nonconducting, volatile or gaseous fire extinguishant that does not leave a residue upon vaporization.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region that has been assigned climatic criteria as specified in Chapters 3CE and 3RE of the Energy Conservation Code.

CLINIC, OUTPATIENT. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical care on less than a 24-hour basis to persons who are not rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided.

CLOSED SYSTEM. The use of a solid or liquid hazardous material involving a closed vessel or system that remains closed during normal operations where vapors emitted by the product are not liberated outside of the vessel or system and the product is not exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations; and all uses of compressed gases. Examples of closed systems for solids and liquids include product conveyed through a piping system into a closed vessel, system or piece of equipment.

COASTAL A ZONE. Area within a special flood hazard area, landward of a V zone or landward of an open coast without mapped coastal high hazard areas. In a coastal A zone, the principal source of flooding must be astronomical tides, storm surges, seiches or tsunamis, not riverine flooding. During the base flood conditions, the potential for breaking wave height shall be greater than or equal to 1 1/2 feet (457 mm). The inland limit of the coastal A zone is (a) the Limit of Moderate Wave Action if delineated on a FIRM, or (b) designated by the authority having jurisdiction.

COASTAL HIGH HAZARD AREA. Area within the special flood hazard area extending from offshore to the inland limit of a primary dune along an open coast and any other area that is subject to high-velocity wave action from storms or seismic sources, and shown on a Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) or other flood hazard map as velocity Zone V, VO, VE or V1-30.

COLLAR JOINT. Vertical longitudinal space between wythes of masonry or between masonry wythe and backup construction that is permitted to be filled with mortar or grout.

COLLECTOR. A horizontal diaphragm element parallel and in line with the applied force that collects and transfers diaphragm shear forces to the vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system or distributes forces within the diaphragm, or both.

COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER. A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

COMBUSTIBLE DUST. Finely divided solid material that is 420 microns or less in diameter and which, when dispersed in air in the proper proportions, could be ignited by a flame, spark or other source of ignition. Combustible dust will pass through a U.S. No. 40 standard sieve.

COMBUSTIBLE FIBERS. Readily ignitable and free-burning materials in a fibrous or shredded form, such as cocoa fiber, cloth, cotton, excelsior, hay, hemp, henequen, istle, jute, kapok, oakum, rags, sisal, Spanish moss, straw, tow, wastepaper, certain synthetic fibers or other like materials. This definition does not include densely packed baled cotton.

COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

Class II. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).

Class IIIA. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).

Class IIIB. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).

The category of combustible liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.
COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE. A motor vehicle used to transport passengers or property where the motor vehicle:

1. Has a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 pounds (4540 kg) or more; or
2. Is designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL. That portion of the exit access travel distance measured from the most remote point within a story to that point where the occupants have separate and distinct access to two exits or exit access doorways.

COMMON USE. Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

COMPRESSED GAS. A material, or mixture of materials, that:

1. Is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure; and
2. Has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) which is either liquefied, nonliquefied or in solution, except those gases which have no other health- or physical-hazard properties are not considered to be compressed until the pressure in the packaging exceeds 41 psia (282 kPa) at 68°F (20°C).

The states of a compressed gas are categorized as follows:

1. Nonliquefied compressed gases are gases, other than those in solution, which are in a packaging under the charged pressure and are entirely gaseous at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
2. Liquefied compressed gases are gases that, in a packaging under the charged pressure, are partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
3. Compressed gases in solution are nonliquefied gases that are dissolved in a solvent.
4. Compressed gas mixtures consist of a mixture of two or more compressed gases contained in a packaging, the hazard properties of which are represented by the properties of the mixture as a whole.

CONCRETE.

Carbonate aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates consisting mainly of calcium or magnesium carbonate, such as limestone or dolomite, and containing 40 percent or less quartz, chert or flint.

Cellular. A lightweight insulating concrete made by mixing a preformed foam with Portland cement slurry and having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m³).

Lightweight aggregate. Concrete made with aggregates of expanded clay, shale, slag or slate or sintered flyer ash or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and weighing 85 to 115 pcf (1360 to 1840 kg/m³).

Perlite. A lightweight insulating concrete having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m³) made with perlite concrete aggregate. Perlite aggregate is produced from a volcanic rock which, when heated, expands to form a glass-like material of cellular structure.

Sand-lightweight. Concrete made with a combination of expanded clay, shale, slag, slate, sintered flyer ash, or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and natural sand. Its unit weight is generally between 105 and 120 pcf (1680 and 1920 kg/m³).

Siliceous aggregate. Concrete made with normal-weight aggregates consisting mainly of silica or compounds other than calcium or magnesium carbonate, which contains more than 40-percent quartz, chert or flint.

Vermiculite. A lightweight insulating concrete made with vermiculite concrete aggregate which is laminated micaceous material produced by expanding the ore at high temperatures. When added to a Portland cement slurry the resulting concrete has a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m³).

CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES. A building or part thereof that contains sleeping units where residents share bathroom or kitchen facilities, or both.

CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION. A designated location at a facility staffed by trained personnel on a continuous basis where alarm or supervisory signals are monitored and facilities are provided for notification of the fire department or other emergency services.

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

CONSTRUCTION TYPES. See Section 602.

Type I. See Section 602.2.
Type II. See Section 602.2.
Type III. See Section 602.3.
Type IV. See Section 602.4.
Type V. See Section 602.5.

CONTINUOUS GAS DETECTION SYSTEM. A gas detection system where the analytical instrument is maintained in continuous operation and sampling is performed without interruption. Analysis is allowed to be performed on a cyclical basis at intervals not to exceed 30 minutes.

CONTROL AREA. Spaces within a building where quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area are stored, dispensed, used or handled. See the definition of “Outdoor control area” in the Fire Code.

CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL. A self-compacted, cementitious material used primarily as a backfill in place of compacted fill.

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. A type of construction whose primary structural elements are formed by a system of repetitive wood-framing
members. See Section 2308 for conventional light-frame construction provisions.

**CORNICE.** A projecting horizontal molded element located at or near the top of an architectural feature.

**CORRIDOR.** An enclosed exit access component that defines and provides a path of egress travel.

**CORRIDOR, OPEN-ENDED.** See “Open-ended corridor.”

**CORRIDOR DAMPER.** A listed device intended for use where air ducts penetrate or terminate at horizontal openings in the ceilings of fire-resistance-rated corridors, where the corridor ceiling is permitted to be constructed as required for the corridor walls.

**CORROSION RESISTANCE.** The ability of a material to withstand deterioration of its surface or its properties when exposed to its environment.

**CORROSIVE.** A chemical that causes visible destruction of, or irreversible alterations in, living tissue by chemical action at the point of contact. A chemical shall be considered corrosive if, when tested on the intact skin of albino rabbits by the method described in DOTn 49 CFR, Part 173.137, such chemical destroys or changes irreversibly the structure of the tissue at the point of contact following an exposure period of 4 hours. This term does not refer to action on inanimate surfaces.

**COURT.** An open, uncovered space, unobstructed to the sky, bounded on three or more sides by exterior building walls or other enclosing devices.

**COVERED MALL BUILDING.** A single building enclosing a number of tenants and occupants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, passenger transportation terminals, offices and other similar uses wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more malls. Anchor buildings shall not be considered as a part of the covered mall building. The term “covered mall building” shall include open mall buildings as defined below.

**Mall.** A roofed or covered common pedestrian area within a covered mall building that serves as access for two or more tenants and not to exceed three levels that are open to each other. The term “mall” shall include open malls as defined below.

**Open mall.** An unroofed common pedestrian way serving a number of tenants not exceeding three levels. Circulation at levels above grade shall be permitted to include open exterior balconies leading to exits discharging at grade.

**Open mall building.** Several structures housing a number of tenants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, offices, and other similar uses, wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more open malls. Anchor buildings are not considered as a part of the open mall building.

**CRIPPLE WALL.** A framed stud wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of floor framing for the lowest occupied floor level.

**CRITICAL CIRCUIT.** A circuit that requires continuous operation to ensure safety of the structure and occupants.

**CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER.** A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

**CRYOGENIC FLUID.** A liquid having a boiling point lower than -150°F (-101°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (an absolute pressure of 101 kPa).

**CUSTODIAL CARE.** Assistance with day-to-day living tasks; such as assistance with cooking, taking medication, bathing, using toilet facilities and other tasks of daily living. Custodial care includes persons receiving care who have the ability to respond to emergency situations and evacuate at a slower rate and/or who have mental and psychiatric complications.

**DALLE GLASS.** A decorative composite glazing material made of individual pieces of glass that are embedded in a cast matrix of concrete or epoxy.

**DAMPER.** See “Ceiling radiation damper,” “Combination fire/smoke damper,” “Corridor damper,” “Fire damper” and “Smoke damper.”

**DANGEROUS.** Any building, structure or portion thereof that meets any of the conditions described below shall be deemed dangerous:

1. The building or structure has collapsed, has partially collapsed, has moved off its foundation or lacks the necessary support of the ground.

2. There exists a significant risk of collapse, detachment or dislodgment of any portion, member, appurtenance or ornamentation of the building or structure under service loads.

**DAY BOX.** A portable magazine designed to hold explosive materials constructed in accordance with the requirements for a Type 3 magazine as defined and classified in Chapter 56 of the Fire Code.

**DEAD LOAD.** The weight of materials of construction incorporated into the building, including but not limited to walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, stairways, built-in partitions, finishes, cladding and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and the weight of fixed service equipment, such as cranes, plumbing stacks and risers, electrical feeders, heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems and automatic sprinkler systems.

**DECORATIVE GLASS.** A carved, leaded or Dalle glass or glazing material whose purpose is decorative or artistic, not functional; whose coloring, texture or other design qualities or components cannot be removed without destroying the glazing material and whose surface, or assembly into which it is incorporated, is divided into segments.

**DECORATIVE MATERIALS.** All materials applied over the building interior finish for decorative, acoustical or other effect including, but not limited to, curtains, draperies, fabrics and streamers; and all other materials utilized for decorative effect including, but not limited to, bulletin boards, artwork, posters, photographs, batting, cloth, cotton, hay, stalks, straw, vines, leaves, trees, moss and similar items, foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics. Decorative materials do
not include wall coverings, ceiling coverings, floor coverings, ordinary window shades, interior finish and materials 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) or less in thickness applied directly to and adhering tightly to a substrate.

**DEEP FOUNDATION.** A deep foundation is a foundation element that does not satisfy the definition of a shallow foundation.

**DEFEND-IN-PLACE.** A method of emergency response that engages building components and trained staff to provide occupant safety during an emergency. Emergency response involves remaining in place, relocating within the building, or both, without evacuating the building.

**DEFERRED SUBMITTAL.** Those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the building official within a specified period.

**DEFLAGRATION.** An exothermic reaction, such as the extremely rapid oxidation of a flammable dust or vapor in air, in which the reaction progresses through the unburned material at a rate less than the velocity of sound. A deflagration can have an explosive effect.

**DELUGE SYSTEM.** A sprinkler system employing open sprinklers attached to a piping system connected to a water supply through a valve that is opened by the operation of a detection system installed in the same areas as the sprinklers. When this valve opens, water flows into the piping system and discharges from all sprinklers attached thereto.

**DESIGN DISPLACEMENT.** See Section 1905.1.1.

**DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION.** The earthquake ground motion that buildings and structures are specifically proportioned to resist in Section 1613.

**DESIGN FLOOD.** The flood associated with the greater of the following two areas:

1. Area with a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
2. Area designated as a flood hazard area on a community’s flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

**DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the “design flood,” including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the District of Columbia’s legally designated flood hazard map.

**DESIGN PROFESSIONAL, REGISTERED.** See “Registered design professional.”

**DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE, REGISTERED.** See “Registered design professional in responsible charge.”

**DESIGN STRENGTH.** The product of the nominal strength and a resistance factor (or strength reduction factor).

**DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM.** Those nonstructural components that require design in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE 7 and for which the component importance factor, \( I_p \), is greater than 1 in accordance with Section 13.1.3 of ASCE 7.

**DETACHED BUILDING.** A separate single-story building, without a basement or crawl space, used for the storage or use of hazardous materials and located an approved distance from all structures.

**DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** See Section 1905.1.1

**DETECTABLE WARNING.** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn visually impaired persons of hazards on a circulation path.

**DETECTOR, HEAT.** A fire detector that senses heat—either abnormally high temperature or rate of rise, or both.

**DETONATION.** An exothermic reaction characterized by the presence of a shock wave in the material which establishes and maintains the reaction. The reaction zone progresses through the material at a rate greater than the velocity of sound. The principal heating mechanism is one of shock compression. Detonations have an explosive effect.

**DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES.** Facilities that provide treatment for substance abuse, serving care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation or who are harmful to themselves or others.

**DIAPHRAGM.** A horizontal or sloped system acting to transmit lateral forces to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system. When the term “diaphragm” is used, it shall include horizontal bracing systems.

**Diaphragm, blocked.** In light-frame construction, a diaphragm in which all sheathing edges not occurring on a framing member are supported on and fastened to blocking.

**Diaphragm boundary.** In light-frame construction, a location where shear is transferred into or out of the diaphragm sheathing. Transfer is either to a boundary element or to another force-resisting element.

**Diaphragm chord.** A diaphragm boundary element perpendicular to the applied load that is assumed to take axial stresses due to the diaphragm moment.

**Diaphragm, unblocked.** A diaphragm that has edge nailing at supporting members only. Blocking between supporting structural members at panel edges is not included. Diaphragm panels are field nailed to supporting members.
DIMENSIONS (for Chapter 21).

Nominal. The specified dimension plus an allowance for the joints with which the units are to be laid. Nominal dimensions are usually stated in whole numbers. Thickness is given first, followed by height and then length.

Specified. Dimensions specified for the manufacture or construction of a unit, joint or element.

DIRECT ACCESS. A path of travel from a space to an immediately adjacent space through an opening in the common wall between the two spaces.

DISPENSING. The pouring or transferring of any material from a container, tank or similar vessel, whereby vapors, dusts, fumes, mists or gases are liberated to the atmosphere.

DOOR, BALANCED. See “Balanced door.”

DOOR, LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED. See “Low-energy power-operated door.”

DOOR, POWER-ASSISTED. See “Power-assisted door.”

DOOR, POWER-OPERATED. See “Power-operated door.”

DOORWAY, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access doorway.”

DORMITORY. A space in a building where group sleeping accommodations are provided in one room, or in a series of closely associated rooms, for persons not members of the same family group, under joint occupancy and single management, as in college dormitories or fraternity houses.

DRAFTSTOP. A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components such as crawl spaces, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies and attics.

DRAG STRUT. See “Collector.”

DRILLED SHAFT. A cast-in-place deep foundation element constructed by drilling a hole (with or without permanent casing) into soil or rock and filling it with fluid concrete.

Socketed drilled shaft. A drilled shaft with a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock.

DRY-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING AGENT. A powder composed of small particles, usually of sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, urea-potassium-based bicarbonate, potassium chloride or monoammonium phosphate, with added particulate material supplemented by special treatment to provide resistance to packing, resistance to moisture absorption (caking) and the proper flow capabilities.

DRY FLOODPROOFING. A combination of design modifications that results in a building or structure, including the attendant utilities and equipment and sanitary facilities, being water tight with walls substantially impermeable to the passage of water and with structural components having the capacity to resist loads as identified in ASCE 7.

DWELLING. A building that contains one or two dwelling units used, intended or designed to be used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied for living purposes.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTI-STORY. See “Multistory unit.”

EGRESS COURT. A court or yard which provides access to a public way for one or more exits.

ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM. A specific construction of devices, materials, or coatings installed as a fire-resistive barrier system applied to electrical system components, such as cable trays, conduits and other raceways, open run cables and conductors, cables, and conductors.

ELEVATOR GROUP. A grouping of elevators in a building located adjacent or directly across from one another that responds to common hall call buttons.

EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEM. A system to provide indication and warning of emergency situations involving hazardous materials.

EMERGENCY CONTROL STATION. An approved location on the premises where signals from emergency equipment are received and which is staffed by trained personnel.

EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING. An operable window, door or other similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency.

EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATIONS. Dedicated manual or automatic facilities for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building.

EMERGENCY POWER SYSTEM. A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required life safety, fire alarm, detection and ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Emergency power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could result in loss of human life or serious injuries.

EMPLOYEE WORK AREA. All or any portion of a space used only by employees and only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD. A full-depth structural composite lumber, wood structural panel, structural glued laminated timber or prefabricated wood I-joint member designed to transfer horizontal (shear) and vertical (compression) loads, provide attachment for diaphragm sheathing, siding and exterior deck ledgers, and provide lateral support at the ends of floor or roof joists or rafters.

ENTRANCE, PUBLIC. See “Public entrance.”

ENTRANCE, RESTRICTED. See “Restricted entrance.”

ENTRANCE, SERVICE. See “Service entrance.”

EQUIPMENT PLATFORM. An unoccupied, elevated platform used exclusively for mechanical systems or industrial process equipment, including the associated elevated walk-
ways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders necessary to access the platform (see Section 505.3).

**ESSENTIAL FACILITIES.** Buildings and other structures that are intended to remain operational in the event of extreme environmental loading from flood, wind, snow or earthquakes.

**EXHAUSTED ENCLOSURE.** An appliance or piece of equipment that consists of a top, a back and two sides providing a means of local exhaust for capturing gases, fumes, vapors and mists. Such enclosures include laboratory hoods, exhaust fume hoods and similar appliances and equipment used to locally retain and exhaust the gases, fumes, vapors and mists that could be released. Rooms or areas provided with general ventilation, in themselves, are not exhausted enclosures.

**EXISTING STRUCTURE.** Any structure that has been erected and legally occupied (excluding structures occupied pursuant to a temporary certificate of occupancy).

**EXIT.** That portion of a means of egress system between the exit access and the exit discharge or public way. Exit components include exterior exit doors at the level of exit discharge, interior exit stairways and ramps, exit passageways, exterior exit stairways and ramps and horizontal exits.

**EXIT ACCESS.** That portion of a means of egress system that leads from any occupied portion of a building or structure to an exit.

**EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY.** A door or access point along the path of egress travel from an occupied room, area or space where the path of egress enters an intervening room, corridor, exit access stairway or ramp.

**EXIT ACCESS RAMP.** A ramp within the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

**EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAY.** A stairway with the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

**EXIT DISCHARGE.** That portion of a means of egress system between the termination of an exit and a public way.

**EXIT DISCHARGE, LEVEL OF.** The story at the point at which an exit terminates and an exit discharge begins.

**EXIT, HORIZONTAL.** See “Horizontal exit.”

**EXIT PASSAGeway.** An exit component that is separated from other interior spaces of a building or structure by fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives, and provides for a protected path of egress travel in a horizontal direction to an exit or to the exit discharge.

**EXPANDED VINYL WALL COVERING.** Wall covering consisting of a woven textile backing, an expanded vinyl base coat layer and a nonexpanded vinyl skin coat. The expanded base coat layer is a homogeneous vinyl layer that contains a blowing agent. During processing, the blowing agent decomposes, causing this layer to expand by forming closed cells. The total thickness of the wall covering is approximately 0.055 inch to 0.070 inch (1.4 mm to 1.78 mm).

**EXPLOSION.** An effect produced by the sudden violent expansion of gases, which may be accompanied by a shock wave or disruption, or both, of enclosing materials or structures. An explosion could result from any of the following:

1. Chemical changes such as rapid oxidation, deflagration or detonation, decomposition of molecules and runaway polymerization (usually detonations).

2. Physical changes such as pressure tank ruptures.

3. Atomic changes (nuclear fission or fusion).

**EXPLOSIVE.** A chemical compound, mixture or device, the primary or common purpose of which is to function by explosion. The term includes, but is not limited to, dynamite, black powder, pellet powder, initiating explosives, detonators, safety fuses, squibs, detonating cord, igniter cord, igniters and display fireworks, 1.3G.

The term “explosive” includes any material determined to be within the scope of USC Title 18: Chapter 40 and also includes any material classified as an explosive other than consumer fireworks, 1.4G by the hazardous materials regulations of DOTn 49 CFR Parts 100-185.

**High Explosive.** Explosive material, such as dynamite, which can be caused to detonate by means of a No. 8 test blasting cap when unconfined.

**Low Explosive.** Explosive material that will burn or deflagrate when ignited. It is characterized by a rate of reaction that is less than the speed of sound. Examples of low explosives include, but are not limited to, black powder; safety fuse; igniters; igniter cord; fuse lighters; fireworks, 1.3G and propellants, 1.3C.

**Mass-Detonating Explosives.** Division 1.1, 1.2 and 1.5 explosives alone or in combination, or loaded into various types of ammunition or containers, most of which can be expected to explode virtually instantaneously when a small portion is subjected to fire, severe concussion, impact, the impulse of an initiating agent or the effect of a considerable discharge of energy from without. Materials that react in this manner represent a mass explosion hazard. Such an explosive will normally cause severe structural damage to adjacent objects. Explosive propagation could occur immediately to other items of ammunition and explosives stored sufficiently close to and not adequately protected from the initially exploding pile with a time interval short enough so that two or more quantities must be considered as one for quantity-distance purposes.

**UN/DOTn Class 1 Explosives.** The former classification system used by DOTn included the terms “high” and “low” explosives as defined herein. The following terms further define explosives under the current system applied by DOTn for all explosive materials defined as hazard Class 1 materials. Compatibility group letters are used in concert with the division to specify further limitations on each division noted (i.e., the letter G identifies the material as a pyrotechnic substance or article containing a pyrotechnic substance and similar materials).

**Division 1.1.** Explosives that have a mass explosion hazard. A mass explosion is one which affects almost the entire load instantaneously.
Division 1.2. Explosives that have a projection hazard but not a mass explosion hazard.

Division 1.3. Explosives that have a fire hazard and either a minor blast hazard or a minor projection hazard or both, but not a mass explosion hazard.

Division 1.4. Explosives that pose a minor explosion hazard. The explosive effects are largely confined to the package and no projection of fragments of appreciable size or range is to be expected. An external fire must not cause virtually instantaneous explosion of almost the entire contents of the package.

Division 1.5. Very insensitive explosives. This division is comprised of substances that have a mass explosion hazard, but that are so insensitive there is very little probability of initiation or of transition from burning to detonation under normal conditions of transport.

Division 1.6. Extremely insensitive articles which do not have a mass explosion hazard. This division is comprised of articles that contain only extremely insensitive detonating substances and which demonstrate a negligible probability of accidental initiation or propagation.

EXTERIOR EXIT RAMP. An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and is open to yards, courts or public ways.

EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY. An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and is open to yards, courts or public ways.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS). EIFS are nonstructural, nonload-bearing, exterior wall cladding systems that consist of an insulation board attached either adhesively or mechanically, or both, to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat and a textured protective finish coat.

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE. An EIFS that incorporates a means of drainage applied over a water-resistive barrier.

EXTERIOR SURFACES. Weather-exposed surfaces.

EXTERIOR WALL. A wall, bearing or nonbearing, that is used as an enclosing wall for a building, other than a fire wall, and that has a slope of 60 degrees (1.05 rad) or greater with the horizontal plane.

EXTERIOR WALL COVERING. A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of exterior walls for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, veneers, siding, exterior insulation and finish systems, architectural trim and embellishments such as cornices, soffits, facias, gutters and leaders.

EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE. A system or assembly of exterior wall components, including exterior wall finish materials, that provides protection of the building structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space, from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

F RATING. The time period that the through-penetration firestop system limits the spread of fire through the penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

FABRICATED ITEM. Structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members of assemblies consisting of materials assembled prior to installation in a building or structure, or subjected to operations such as heat treatment, thermal cutting, cold working or reforming after manufacture and prior to installation in a building or structure. Materials produced in accordance with standards referenced by this code, such as rolled structural steel shapes, masonry units and wood structural panels, or in accordance with a referenced standard that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, are not “fabricated items.”

FABRICATION AREA. An area within a semiconductor fabrication facility and related research and development areas in which there are processes using hazardous production materials. Such areas are allowed to include ancillary rooms or areas such as dressing rooms and offices that are directly related to the fabrication area processes.

FACILITY. All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements and pedestrian or vehicular routes located on a site.

FACTORED LOAD. The product of a nominal load and a load factor.

FENESTRATION. Skylights, roof windows, vertical windows (fixed or moveable), opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors. Fenestration includes products with glass and nonglass glazing materials.

FIBER-CEMENT (BACKER BOARD, SIDING, SOFFIT, TRIM AND UNDERLAYMENT) PRODUCTS. Manufactured thin section composites of hydraulic cementitious matrices and discrete nonasbestos fibers.

FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER. A polymeric composite material consisting of reinforcement fibers, such as glass, impregnated with a fiber-binding polymer which is then molded and hardened. Fiber-reinforced polymers are permitted to contain cores laminated between fiber-reinforced polymer facings.

FIBERBOARD. A fibrous, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers (usually wood or cane) and having a density of less than 31 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (497 kg/m³) but more than 10 pcf (160 kg/m³).

FIELD NAILING. See “Nailing, field.”

FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL. See “Manual fire alarm box.”
DEFSIIONS

FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT. A system component that receives inputs from automatic and manual fire alarm devices and may be capable of supplying power to detection devices and transponders or off-premises transmitters. The control unit may be capable of providing a transfer of power to the notification appliances and transfer of condition to relays or devices.

FIRE ALARM SIGNAL. A signal initiated by a fire alarm-initiating device such as a manual fire alarm box, automatic fire detector, flow switch or other device whose activation is indicative of the presence of a fire or fire signature.

FIRE ALARM SYSTEM. A system or portion of a combination system consisting of components and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of fire alarm or supervisory signal-initiating devices and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals.

FIRE AREA. The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies of a building. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the fire area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

FIRE BARRIER. A fire-resistance-rated wall assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

FIRE COMMAND CENTER. The principal attended or unattended location where the status of detection, alarm communications and control systems is displayed, and from which the systems can be manually controlled.

FIRE DAMPER. A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and resist the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

FIRE DETECTOR, AUTOMATIC. A device designed to detect the presence of a fire signature and to initiate action.

FIRE DOOR. The door component of a fire door assembly.

FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY. Any combination of a fire door, frame, hardware and other accessories that together provide a specific degree of fire protection to the opening.

FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY, FLOOR. See “Floor fire door assembly.”

FIRE EXIT HARDWARE. Panic hardware that is listed for use on fire door assemblies.

FIRE LANE. A road or other passageway developed to allow the passage of fire apparatus. A fire lane is not necessarily intended for vehicular traffic other than fire apparatus.

FIRE PARTITION. A vertical assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which openings are protected.

FIRE PROTECTION RATING. The period of time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests specified in Section 716. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM. Approved devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

FIRE-RATED GLAZING. Glazing with either a fire protection rating or a fire-resistance rating.

FIRE RESISTANCE. That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use.

FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING. The period of time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.

FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEM. An assemblage of specific materials or products that are designed, tested and fire-resistance rated in accordance with either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to resist for a prescribed period of time the passage of fire through joints made in or between fire-resistance-rated assemblies.

FIRE SAFETY FUNCTIONS. Building and fire control functions that are intended to increase the level of life safety for occupants or to control the spread of harmful effects of fire.

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE. The distance measured from the building face to one of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.
2. To the centerline of a street, an alley or public way.
3. To an imaginary line between two buildings on the lot.

The distance shall be measured at right angles from the face of the wall.

FIRE WALL. A fire-resistance-rated wall having protected openings, which restricts the spread of fire and extends continuously from the foundation to or through the roof, with sufficient structural stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collapse of the wall.

FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY. A window constructed and glazed to give protection against the passage of fire.

FIREBLOCKING. Building materials, or materials approved for use as fireblocking, installed to resist the free passage of flame to other areas of the building through concealed spaces.

FIREPLACE. A hearth and fire chamber or similar prepared place in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a chimney.

FIREPLACE THROAT. The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

FIRESTOP, MEMBRANE-PENETRATION. See “Membrane-penetration firestop.”

FIRESTOP, PENETRATION. See “Penetration firestop.”
FIRESTOP SYSTEM, THROUGH-PENETRATION. See “Through-penetration firestop system.”

FIREWORKS. Any composition or device for the purpose of producing a visible or audible effect for entertainment purposes by combustion, deflagration or detonation that meets the definition of 1.4G fireworks or 1.3G fireworks.

Fireworks, 1.3G. Large fireworks devices, which are explosive materials, intended for use in fireworks displays and designed to produce audible or visible effects by combustion, deflagration or detonation. Such 1.3G fireworks include, but are not limited to, firecrackers containing more than 130 milligrams (2 grains) of explosive composition, aerial shells containing more than 40 grams of pyrotechnic composition, and other display pieces which exceed the limits for classification as 1.4G fireworks. Such 1.3G fireworks are also described as fireworks, UN0335 by the DOTn.

Fireworks, 1.4G. Small fireworks devices containing restricted amounts of pyrotechnic composition designed primarily to produce visible or audible effects by combustion. Such 1.4G fireworks which comply with the construction, chemical composition and labeling regulations of the DOTn for fireworks, UN0336, and the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) as set forth in CPSC 16 CFR; Parts 1500 and 1507, are not explosive materials for the purpose of this code.

FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO). A commercial business granted the right by the airport sponsor to operate on an airport and provide aeronautical services, such as fueling, hangaring, tie-down and parking, aircraft rental, aircraft maintenance and flight instruction.

FIXED SEATING. Furniture or fixture designed and installed for the use of sitting and secured in place including bench-type seats and seats with or without backs or arm rests.

FLAME SPREAD. The propagation of flame over a surface.

FLAME SPREAD INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

FLAMMABLE GAS. A material that is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure [a material that has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa)] which:

1. Is ignitable at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) when in a mixture of 13 percent or less by volume with air; or
2. Has a flammable range at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) with air of at least 12 percent, regardless of the lower limit.

The limits specified shall be determined at 14.7 psi (101 kPa) of pressure and a temperature of 68°F (20°C) in accordance with ASTM E681.

FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS. A liquefied compressed gas which, under a charged pressure, is partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C) and which is flammable.

FLAMMABLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point below 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids are further categorized into a group known as Class I liquids. The Class I category is subdivided as follows:

Class IA. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (38°C).

Class IB. Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point at or above 100°F (38°C).

Class IC. Liquids having a flash point at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C). The category of flammable liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.

FLAMMABLE MATERIAL. A material capable of being readily ignited from common sources of heat or at a temperature of 600°F (316°C) or less.

FLAMMABLE SOLID. A solid, other than a blasting agent or explosive, that is capable of causing fire through friction, absorption or moisture, spontaneous chemical change, or retained heat from manufacturing or processing, or which has an ignition temperature below 212°F (100°C) or which burns so vigorously and persistently when ignited as to create a serious hazard. A chemical shall be considered a flammable solid as determined in accordance with the test method of CPSC 16 CFR; Part 1500.44, if it ignites and burns with a self-sustained flame at a rate greater than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) per second along its major axis.

FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES. The concentration of flammable constituents in air that exceeds 25 percent of their lower flammable limit (LFL).

FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature in degrees Fahrenheit at which a liquid will give off sufficient vapors to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface or in the container, but will not sustain combustion. The flash point of a liquid shall be determined by appropriate test procedure and apparatus as specified in ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLIGHT. A continuous run of rectangular treads, winders or combination thereof from one landing to another.

FLOOD or FLOODING. A general and temporary condition of partial or complete inundation of normally dry land from:

1. The overflow of inland or tidal waters.
2. The unusual and rapid accumulation or runoff of surface waters from any source.

FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Any construction material capable of withstanding direct and prolonged contact with floodwaters without sustaining any damage that requires more than cosmetic repair.

FLOOD, DESIGN. See “Design flood.”

FLOOD ELEVATION, DESIGN. See “Design flood elevation.”

FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
DEFINITIONS

2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community’s flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

FLOOD HAZARD AREAS, SPECIAL. See “Special flood hazard area.”

FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM). An official map of a community on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) has delineated both the special flood hazard areas and the risk premium zones applicable to the community.

FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY. The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency containing the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), the Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM), the water surface elevation of the base flood and supporting technical data.

FLOODWAY. The channel of the river, creek or other watercourse and the adjacent land areas that must be reserved in order to discharge the base flood without cumulatively increasing the water surface elevation more than a designated height.

FLOOR AREA, GROSS. The floor area within the inside perimeter of the exterior walls of the building under consideration, exclusive of vent shafts and courts, without deduction for corridors, stairways, ramps, closets, the thickness of interior walls, columns or other features. The floor area of a building, or portion thereof, not provided with surrounding exterior walls shall be the usable area under the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above. The gross floor area shall not include shafts with no openings or interior courts.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, ramps, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY. A combination of a fire door, a frame, hardware and other accessories installed in a horizontal plane, which together provide a specific degree of fire protection to a through-opening in a fire-resistance-rated floor (see Section 712.1.3.1).

FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A special system discharging a foam made from concentrates, either mechanically or chemically, over the area to be protected.

FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION. A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustical purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/m³).

FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING. Tiered seating having an overall shape and size that is capable of being reduced for purposes of moving or storing and is not a building element.

FOOD COURT. A public seating area located in the mall that serves adjacent food preparation tenant spaces.

FOSTER CARE FACILITIES. Facilities that provide care to more than five children, 2½ years of age or less.

FOUNDATION PIER (for Chapter 21). An isolated vertical foundation member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thickness does not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is equal to or less than four times its thickness.

FRAME STRUCTURE. A building or other structure in which vertical loads from floors and roofs are primarily supported by columns.

GABLE. The triangular portion of a wall beneath the end of a dual-slope, pitched, or mono-slope roof or portion thereof and above the top plates of the story or level of the ceiling below.

GAS CABINET. A fully enclosed, ventilated noncombustible enclosure used to provide an isolated environment for compressed gas cylinders in storage or use. Doors and access ports for exchanging cylinders and accessing pressure-regulating controls are allowed to be included.

GAS ROOM. A separately ventilated, fully enclosed room in which only compressed gases and associated equipment and supplies are stored or used.

GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM. An assembly of piping, devices and apparatus designed to generate, store, contain, distribute or transport a nontoxic, gaseous hydrogen-containing mixture having not less than 95-percent hydrogen gas by volume and not more than 1-percent oxygen by volume. Gaseous hydrogen systems consist of items such as compressed gas containers, reactors and appurtenances, including pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, manifolds, pumps, compressors and interconnecting piping and tubing and controls.

GLASS FIBERBOARD. Fibrous glass roof insulation consisting of inorganic glass fibers formed into rigid boards using a binder. The board has a top surface faced with asphalt and kraft reinforced with glass fiber.

GRADE (LUMBER). The classification of lumber in regard to strength and utility in accordance with American Softwood Lumber Standard DOC PS 20 and the grading rules of an approved lumber rules-writing agency.

GRADE PLANE. A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the building at exterior walls. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the exterior walls, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the lot line or, where the lot line is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building, between the building and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building.

GRADE PLANE, STORY ABOVE. See “Story above grade plane.”

GRANDSTAND. Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see “Bleachers”).

GROSS LEASABLE AREA. The total floor area designed for tenant occupancy and exclusive use. The area of tenant occupancy is measured from the centerlines of joint partitions to the outside of the tenant walls. All tenant areas, including areas used for storage, shall be included in calculating gross leasable area.
GROUP HOME. A facility for social rehabilitation, substance abuse or mental health problems that contains a group housing arrangement that provides custodial care but does not provide medical care.

GUARD. A building component or a system of building components located at or near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to a lower level.

GUEST ROOM. A room used or intended to be used by one or more guests for living or sleeping purposes.

GYPSUM BOARD. The generic name for a family of sheet products consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum sheathing, gypsum base for gypsum veneer plaster, exterior gypsum soffit board, predecorated gypsum board and water-resistant gypsum backing board complying with the standards listed in Tables 2506.2, 2507.2 and Chapter 35 are types of gypsum board.

GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT. The general name for a family of sheet products consisting essentially of gypsum.

GYPSUM PLASTER. A mixture of calcined gypsum or calcined gypsum and lime and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER. Gypsum plaster applied to an approved base in one or more coats normally not exceeding 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in total thickness.

HABITABLE SPACE. A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM. A fire-extinguishing system using one or more atoms of an element from the halogen chemical series: fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

HANDLING. The deliberate transport by any means to a point of storage or use.

HANDRAIL. A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

HARDBOARD. A fibrous-felted, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers consolidated under heat and pressure in a hot press to a density not less than 31 pcf (497 kg/m³).

HARDWARE. See “Fire exit hardware” and “Panic hardware.”

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. Those chemicals or substances that are physical hazards or health hazards as classified in Section 307 and the Fire Code, whether the materials are in usable or waste condition.

HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM). A solid, liquid or gas associated with semiconductor manufacturing that has a degree-of-hazard rating in health, flammability or instability of Class 3 or 4 as ranked by NFPA 704 and which is used directly in research, laboratory or production processes which have as their end product materials that are not hazardous.

HEAD JOINT. Vertical mortar joint placed between masonry units within the wythe at the time the masonry units are laid.

HEALTH HAZARD. A classification of a chemical for which there is statistically significant evidence that acute or chronic health effects are capable of occurring in exposed persons. The term “health hazard” includes chemicals that are toxic or highly toxic, and corrosive.

HEAT DETECTOR. See “Detector, heat.”

HEIGHT, BUILDING. The vertical distance from grade plane to the average height of the highest roof surface.

HELICAL PILE. Manufactured steel deep foundation element consisting of a central shaft and one or more helical bearing plates. A helical pile is installed by rotating it into the ground. Each helical bearing plate is formed into a screw thread with a uniform defined pitch.

HELIPAD. A structural surface that is used for the landing, taking off, taxiing and parking of helicopters.

HELIPORT. An area of land or water or a structural surface that is used, or intended for use, for the landing and taking off of helicopters, and any appurtenant areas that are used, or intended for use, for heliport buildings or other heliport facilities.

HELISTOP. The same as “heliport,” except that no fueling, defueling, maintenance, repairs or storage of helicopters is permitted.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM. Panels consisting of layers of cellulose fibrous material impregnated with thermosetting resins and bonded together by a high-pressure process to form a homogeneous nonporous core suitable for exterior use.

HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM. An exterior wall covering fabricated using HPL in a specific assembly including joints, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

HIGH-RISE BUILDING. A building with an occupied floor located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

HIGHLY TOXIC. A material which produces a lethal dose or lethal concentration that falls within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of 50 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of 200 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.

3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC₅₀) in air of 200 parts per million by volume or less
of gas or vapor, or 2 milligrams per liter or less of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

Mixtures of these materials with ordinary materials, such as water, might not warrant classification as highly toxic. While this system is basically simple in application, any hazard evaluation that is required for the precise categorization of this type of material shall be performed by experienced, technically competent persons.

**HISTORIC BUILDINGS.** Buildings that are listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate state or local law.

**HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY.** A fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

**HORIZONTAL EXIT.** An exit component consisting of fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives intended to compartmentalize portions of a building thereby creating refuge areas that afford safety from the fire and smoke from the area of fire origin.

**HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS.** Facilities that provide care or treatment for the medical, psychiatric, obstetrical, or surgical treatment of care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation.

**HOUSING UNIT.** A dormitory or a group of cells with a common dayroom in Group I-3.

**HPM ROOM.** A room used in conjunction with or serving a Group H-5 occupancy, where HPM is stored or used and which is classified as a Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancy.

**HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS.** Areas vulnerable to hurricanes defined as:

1. The U. S. Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the ultimate design wind speed, $V_{ad}$, for Risk Category II buildings is greater than 115 mph (51.4 m/s);
2. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands and American Samoa.

**HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM.** A room or space that is intended exclusively to house a gaseous hydrogen system.

**ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE.** A structure for which the effect of an atmospheric ice load governs the design of a structure or portion thereof. This includes, but is not limited to, lattice structures, guyed masts, overhead lines, light suspension and cable-stayed bridges, aerial cable systems (e.g., for ski lifts or logging operations), amusement rides, open catwalks and platforms, flagpoles and signs.

**IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH).** The concentration of air-borne contaminants which poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It generally is expressed in parts per million by volume (ppmv/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m³). If adequate data do not exist for precise establish-
acoustical correction, surface insulation, structural fire resistance or similar purposes, but not including trim.

INTERLAYMENT. A layer of felt or nonbituminous saturated felt not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide, shingled between each course of a wood-shake roof covering.

INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS. Thin film liquid mixture applied to substrates by brush, roller, spray or trowel which expands into a protective foamed layer to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates when exposed to flame or intense heat.

JOINT. The opening in or between adjacent assemblies that is created due to building tolerances, or is designed to allow independent movement of the building in any plane caused by thermal, seismic, wind or any other loading.

JURISDICTION. The governmental unit that has adopted this code under due legislative authority.

L RATING. The air leakage rating of a through penetration firestop system or a fire-resistant joint system when tested in accordance with UL 1479 or UL 2079, respectively.

LABEL. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer that contains the name of the manufacturer, the function and performance characteristics of the product or material and the name and identification of an approved agency, and that indicates that the representative sample of the product or material has been tested and evaluated by an approved agency (see Section 1703.5, “Manufacturer’s designation” and “Mark”).

LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which has been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE. See “Exit discharge, level of.”

LIGHT-DIFFUSING SYSTEM. Construction consisting in whole or in part of lenses, panels, grids or baffles made with light-transmitting plastics positioned below independently mounted electrical light sources, skylights or light-transmitting plastic roof panels. Lenses, panels, grids and baffles that are part of an electrical fixture shall not be considered a light-diffusing system.

LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION. A type of construction whose vertical and horizontal structural elements are primarily formed by a system of repetitive wood or cold-formed steel framing members.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS. Structural plastic panels other than skylights that are fastened to structural members, or panels or sheathing and that are used as light-transmitting media in the plane of the roof.

LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS. Plastic materials that are fastened to structural members, or to structural panels or sheathing, and that are used as light-transmitting media in exterior walls.

LIMIT OF MODERATE WAVE ACTION. Line shown on FIRMs to indicate the inland limit of the 1 1/2-foot (457 mm) breaking wave height during the base flood.

LIMIT STATE. A condition beyond which a structure or member becomes unfit for service and is judged to be no longer useful for its intended function (serviceability limit state) or to be unsafe (strength limit state).

LIQUID. A material that has a melting point that is equal to or less than 68°F (20°C) and a boiling point that is greater than 68°F (20°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute (psia) (101 kPa). When not otherwise identified, the term “liquid” includes both flammable and combustible liquids.

LIQUID STORAGE ROOM. A room classified as a Group H-3 occupancy used for the storage of flammable or combustible liquids in a closed condition.

LIQUID USE, DISPENSING AND MIXING ROOM. A room in which Class I, II and IIIA flammable or combustible liquids are used, dispensed or mixed in open containers.

LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the building official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LIVE/WORK UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit in which a significant portion of the space includes a nonresidential use that is operated by the tenant.

LIVE LOAD. A load produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure that does not include construction or environmental loads such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load or dead load.

LIVE LOAD, ROOF. A load on a roof produced:

1. During maintenance by workers, equipment and materials;
2. During the life of the structure by movable objects such as planters or other similar small decorative appurtenances that are not occupancy related; or
3. By the use and occupancy of the roof such as for roof gardens or assembly areas.

LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD). A method of proportioning structural members and their connections using load and resistance factors such that no applicable limit state is reached when the structure is subjected to appropriate load combinations. The term “LRFD” is used in the design of steel and wood structures.

LOAD EFFECTS. Forces and deformations produced in structural members by the applied loads.

LOAD FACTOR. A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual load from the nominal load, for uncertainties in the analysis that transforms the load into a load effect, and for the probability that more than one extreme load will occur simultaneously.
DEFINITIONS

LOADS. Forces or other actions that result from the weight of building materials, occupants and their possessions, environmental effects, differential movement and restrained dimensional changes. Permanent loads are those loads in which variations over time are rare or of small magnitude, such as dead loads. All other loads are variable loads (see “Nominal loads”).

LODGING HOUSE. A one-family dwelling where one or more occupants are primarily permanent in nature and rent is paid for guest rooms.

LOT. A portion or parcel of land considered as a unit.

LOT LINE. A line dividing one lot from another, or from a street or any public place.

LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED DOOR. Swinging door which opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian such as pressing a push plate or waving a hand in front of a sensor. The door closes automatically, and operates with decreased forces and decreased speeds (see “Power-assisted door” and “Power-operated door”).

LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL). The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which ignition source. The LFL is sometimes referred to as “LEL” or “lower explosive limit.”

LOWEST FLOOR. The floor of the lowest enclosed area, including basement, but excluding any unfinished or flood-resistant enclosure, usable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built to render the structure in violation of Section 1612 and Appendix G.

MAIN WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM. An assemblage of structural elements assigned to provide support and stability for the overall structure. The system generally receives wind loading from more than one surface.

MALL BUILDING, COVERED and MALL BUILDING, OPEN. See “Covered mall building.”

MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX. A manually operated device used to initiate an alarm signal.

MANUFACTURER’S DESIGNATION. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating that a product or material complies with a specified standard or set of rules (see “Label” and “Mark”).

MARK. An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating the name of the manufacturer and the function of a product or material (see “Label” and “Manufacturer’s designation”).

MARQUEE. A canopy that has a top surface which is sloped less than 25 degrees from the horizontal and is located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings above or adjacent to the level of the marquee.

MASONRY. A built-up construction or combination of building units or materials of clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, stone or other approved units bonded together with or without mortar or grout or other accepted methods of joining.

Glass unit masonry. Masonry composed of glass units bonded by mortar.

Plain masonry. Masonry in which the tensile resistance of the masonry is taken into consideration and the effects of stresses in reinforcement are neglected.

Reinforced masonry. Masonry construction in which reinforcement acting in conjunction with the masonry is used to resist forces.

Solid masonry. Masonry consisting of solid masonry units laid contiguously with the joints between the units filled with mortar.

Unreinforced (plain) masonry. Masonry in which the tensile resistance of masonry is taken into consideration and the resistance of the reinforcing steel, if present, is neglected.

MASONRY UNIT. Brick, tile, stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to the requirements specified in Section 2103.

Hollow. A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

Solid. A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in every plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is 75 percent or more of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

MASTIC FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS. Liquid mixture applied to a substrate by brush, roller, spray or trowel that provides fire-resistant protection of a substrate when exposed to flame or intense heat.

MEANS OF EGRESS. A continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from any occupied portion of a building or structure to a public way. A means of egress consists of three separate and distinct parts: the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge.

MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. Open parking garages employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN. A rooftop structure, not covered by a roof, used to aesthetically conceal plumbing, electrical or mechanical equipment from view.

MEDICAL CARE. Care involving medical or surgical procedures, nursing or for psychiatric purposes.

MEMBRANE-COVERED CABLE STRUCTURE. A nonpressurized structure in which a mast and cable system provides support and tension to the membrane weather barrier and the membrane imparts stability to the structure.

MEMBRANE-COVERED FRAME STRUCTURE. A nonpressurized building wherein the structure is composed of a rigid framework to support a tensioned membrane which provides the weather barrier.

MEMBRANE PENETRATION. A breach in one side of a floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item installed into or passing through the breach.
MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP. A material, device or construction installed to resist for a prescribed time period the passage of flame and heat through openings in a protective membrane in order to accommodate cables, cable trays, conduit, tubing, pipes or similar items.

MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM. An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items installed into or passing through the breach in one side of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire into the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

MERCHANDISE PAD. A merchandise pad is an area for display of merchandise surrounded by aisles, permanent fixtures or walls. Merchandise pads contain elements such as nonfixed and moveable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions as indicated in Section 105.2 from which customers browse or shop.

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM). A factory-manufactured panel consisting of metal skins bonded to both faces of a solid plastic core.

METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM. An exterior wall covering fabricated using MCM in a specific assembly including joints, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

METAL ROOF PANEL. An interlocking metal sheet having a minimum installed weather exposure of 3 square feet (0.279 m²) per sheet.

METAL ROOF SHINGLE. An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure less than 3 square feet (0.279 m²) per sheet.

MEZZANINE. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story and in accordance with Section 505.

MICROPILE. A micropile is a bored, grouted-in-place deep foundation element that develops its load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock.

MINERAL BOARD. A rigid felted thermal insulation board consisting of either felted mineral fiber or cellular beads of expanded aggregate formed into flat rectangular units.

MINERAL FIBER. Insulation composed principally of fibers manufactured from rock, slag or glass, with or without binders.

MINERAL WOOL. Synthetic vitreous fiber insulation made by melting predominately igneous rock or furnace slag, and other inorganic materials, and then physically forming the melt into fibers.

MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING. One or more layers of polymer-modified asphalt sheets. The sheet materials shall be fully adhered or mechanically attached to the substrate or held in place with an approved ballast layer.

MORTAR. A mixture consisting of cementitious materials, fine aggregates, water, with or without admixtures, that is used to construct unit masonry assemblies.

MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING. A mixture to bond concrete masonry units that contains hydraulic cement, glass fiber reinforcement with or without inorganic fillers or organic modifiers and water.

MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING. Seating that is arranged in distinct levels where each level is comprised of either multiple rows, or a single row of box seats accessed from a separate level.

MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE. Two or more single-station alarm devices that can be interconnected such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate. A multiple-station alarm device can consist of one single-station alarm device having connections to other detectors or to a manual fire alarm box.

MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. Two or more single-station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes the appropriate alarm signal to operate in all interconnected alarms.

MULTISTORY UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit with habitable space located on more than one story.

NAILING, BOUNDARY. A special nailing pattern required by design at the boundaries of diaphragms.

NAILING, EDGE. A special nailing pattern required by design at the edges of each panel within the assembly of a diaphragm or shear wall.

NAILING, FIELD. Nailing required between the sheathing panels and framing members at locations other than boundary nailing and edge nailing.

NATURALLY DURABLE WOOD. The heartwood of the following species except for the occasional piece with corner sapwood, provided 90 percent or more of the width of each side on which it occurs is heartwood.

- Decay resistant. Redwood, cedar, black locust and black walnut.
- Termite resistant. Redwood, Alaska yellow cedar, Eastern red cedar and Western red cedar.

NOMINAL LOADS. The magnitudes of the loads specified in Chapter 16 (dead, live, soil, wind, snow, rain, flood and earthquake).

NOMINAL SIZE (LUMBER). The commercial size designation of width and depth, in standard sawn lumber and glued-laminated lumber grades; somewhat larger than the standard net size of dressed lumber, in accordance with DOCP 20 for sawn lumber and with the ANSI/AWC NDS for glued-laminated lumber.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE. A membrane structure in which the membrane and all component parts of the structure are noncombustible.

NONSTRUCTURAL CONCRETE. Any element made of plain or reinforced concrete that is not part of a structural system required to transfer either gravity or lateral loads to the ground.

NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP). A temperature of 70°F (21°C) and a pressure of 1 atmosphere [14.7 psia (101 kPa)].
DEFINITIONS

NOSING. The leading edge of treads of stairs and of landings at the top of stairway flights.

NOTIFICATION ZONE. See “Zone, notification.”

NUISANCE ALARM. An alarm caused by mechanical failure, malfunction, improper installation or lack of proper maintenance, or an alarm activated by a cause that cannot be determined.

NURSING HOMES. Facilities that provide care, including both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities where any of the persons are incapable of self-preservation.

OCCUPANT LOAD. The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion thereof is designed.

OCCUPABLE SPACE. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress and light and ventilation facilities meeting the requirements of this code.

OPEN-ENDED CORRIDOR. An interior corridor that is open on each end and connects to an exterior stairway or ramp at each end with no intervening doors or separation from the corridor.

OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

OPEN SYSTEM. The use of a solid or liquid hazardous material involving a vessel or system that is continuously open to the atmosphere during normal operations and where vapors are liberated, or the product is exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations. Examples of open systems for solids and liquids include dispensing from or into open beakers or containers, dip tank and plating tank operations.

OPERATING BUILDING. A building occupied in conjunction with the manufacture, transportation or use of explosive materials. Operating buildings are separated from one another with the use of intraplant or intraline distances.

ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

ORGANIC PEROXIDE. An organic compound that contains the bivalent -O-O- structure and which may be considered to be a structural derivative of hydrogen peroxide where one or both of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by an organic radical. Organic peroxides can pose an explosion hazard (detonation or deflagration) or they can be shock sensitive. They can also decompose into various unstable compounds over an extended period of time.

Class I. Those formulations that are capable of deflagration but not detonation.

Class II. Those formulations that burn very rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

Class III. Those formulations that burn rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

Class IV. Those formulations that burn in the same manner as ordinary combustibles and that pose a minimal reactivity hazard.

Class V. Those formulations that burn with less intensity than ordinary combustibles or do not sustain combustion and that pose no reactivity hazard.

Unclassified detonable. Organic peroxides that are capable of detonation. These peroxides pose an extremely high explosion hazard through rapid explosive decomposition.

ORTHOGONAL. To be in two horizontal directions, at 90 degrees (1.57 rad) to each other.

OTHER STRUCTURES (for Chapters 16-23). Structures, other than buildings, for which loads are specified in Chapter 16.

OUTPATIENT CLINIC. See “Clinic, outpatient.”

OWNER. Any person, agent, operator, entity, firm or corporation having any legal or equitable interest in the property; or recorded in the official records of the state, county or municipality as holding an interest or title to the property; or otherwise having possession or control of the property, including the guardian of the estate of any such person, and the executor or administrator of the estate of such person if ordered to take possession of real property by a court.

OXIDIZER. A material that readily yields oxygen or other oxidizing gas, or that readily reacts to promote or initiate combustion of combustible materials and, if heated or contaminated, can result in vigorous self-sustained decomposition.

Class 4. An oxidizer that can undergo an explosive reaction due to contamination or exposure to thermal or physical shock and that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes into contact. Additionally, the oxidizer causes a severe increase in the burning rate and can cause spontaneous ignition of combustibles.

Class 3. An oxidizer that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

Class 2. An oxidizer that will cause a moderate increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

Class 1. An oxidizer that does not moderately increase the burning rate of combustible materials.

OXIDIZING GAS. A gas that can support and accelerate combustion of other materials more than air does.

PANEL (PART OF A STRUCTURE). The section of a floor, wall or roof comprised between the supporting frame of two adjacent rows of columns and girders or column bands of floor or roof construction.

PANIC HARDWARE. A door-latching assembly incorporating a device that releases the latch upon the application of a force in the direction of egress travel. See “Fire exit hardware.”
PARTICLEBOARD. A generic term for a panel primarily composed of cellulotic materials (usually wood), generally in the form of discrete pieces or particles, as distinguished from fibers. The cellulotic material is combined with synthetic resin or other suitable bonding system by a process in which the interparticle bond is created by the bonding system under heat and pressure.

PENETRATION FIRESTOP. A through-penetration firestop or a membrane-penetration firestop.

PENTHOUSE. An enclosed, unoccupied rooftop structure used for sheltering mechanical and electrical equipment, tanks, elevators and related machinery, and vertical shaft openings.

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY. A designation of wood structural panels as related to the panel performance used in Chapter 23.

PERMIT. An official document or certificate issued by the building official that authorizes performance of a specified activity.

PERSON. An individual, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a firm, partnership or corporation, its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

PERSONAL CARE SERVICE. The care of persons who do not require medical care. Personal care involves responsibility for the safety of the persons while inside the building.

PHOTOLUMINESCENT. Having the property of emitting light that continues for a length of time after excitation by visible or invisible light has been removed.

PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE. A complete, environmentally protected unit consisting of solar cells, optics and other components, exclusive of tracker, designed to generate DC power when exposed to sunlight.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL. A collection of modules mechanically fastened together, wired and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM. A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels, that converts solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES. A roof covering resembling shingles that incorporates photovoltaic modules.

PHYSICAL HAZARD. A chemical for which there is evidence that it is a combustible liquid, cryogenic fluid, explosive, flammable (solid, liquid or gas), organic peroxide (solid or liquid), oxidizer (solid or liquid), oxidizing gas, pyrophoric (solid, liquid or gas), unstable (reactive) material (solid, liquid or gas) or water-reactive material (solid or liquid).

PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL. A concentration of airborne contaminants, normally expressed in parts per million (ppm) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m³), that represents the concentration at which persons can sense the presence of the contaminant due to odor, irritation or other quick-acting physiological response. When used in conjunction with the permissible exposure limit (PEL) the physiological warning threshold levels are those consistent with the classification system used to establish the PEL. See the definition of “Permissible exposure limit (PEL)” in the Fire Code.

PLACE OF RELIGIOUS WORSHIP. See “Religious worship, place of.”

PLASTIC, APPROVED. Any thermoplastic, thermosetting or reinforced thermosetting plastic material that conforms to combustibility classifications specified in the section applicable to the application and plastic type.

PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A generic designation that refers to wood/plastic composites and plastic lumber.

PLASTIC GLAZING. Plastic materials that are glazed or set in frame or sash and not held by mechanical fasteners that pass through the glazing material.

PLASTIC LUMBER. A manufactured product made primarily of plastic materials (filled or unfilled) which is generally rectangular in cross section.

PLATFORM. A raised area within a building used for worship, the presentation of music, plays or other entertainment; the head table for special guests; the raised area for lecturers and speakers; boxing and wrestling rings; theater-in-the-round stages; and similar purposes wherein, other than horizontal sliding curtains, there are no overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound. A temporary platform is one installed for not more than 30 days.

POLYPROPYLENE SIDING. A shaped material, made principally from polypropylene homopolymer, or copolymer, which in some cases contains fillers or reinforcements, that is used to clad exterior walls of buildings.

PORCELAIN TILE. Tile that conforms to the requirements of ANSI A137.1.3, Section 3.0 for ceramic tile having an absorption of 0.5 percent or less in accordance with ANSI A137.1, Section 4.1 and Section 6.1 Table 10.

POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE. The drainage condition in which consideration has been made for all loading deflections of the roof deck, and additional slope has been provided to ensure drainage of the roof within 48 hours of precipitation.

POWER-ASSISTED DOOR. Swinging door which opens by reduced pushing or pulling force on the door-operating hardware. The door closes automatically after the pushing or pulling force is released and functions with decreased forces. See “Low-energy power-operated door” and “Power-assisted door.”

POWER-OPERATED DOOR. Swinging, sliding, or folding door which opens automatically when approached by a pedestrian or opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian. The door closes automatically and includes provisions such as presence sensors to prevent entrapment. See “Low energy power-operated door” and “Power-assisted door.”

PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST. Structural member manufactured using sawn or structural composite lumber flanges and wood structural panel webs bonded together with exterior exposure adhesives, which forms an “I” cross-sectional shape.
DEFINITIONS

PRESTRESSED MASONRY. Masonry in which internal stresses have been introduced to counteract potential tensile stresses in masonry resulting from applied loads.

PRIMARY STRUCTURAL FRAME. The primary structural frame shall include all of the following structural members:

1. The columns.
2. Structural members having direct connections to the columns, including girders, beams, trusses and spandrels.
3. Members of the floor construction and roof construction having direct connections to the columns.
4. Bracing members that are essential to the vertical stability of the primary structural frame under gravity loading shall be considered part of the primary structural frame whether or not the bracing member carries gravity loads.

PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

PROSCENIUM WALL. The wall that separates the stage from the auditorium or assembly seating area.

PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS. See “Hospitals.”

PUBLIC ENTRANCE. An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.

PUBLIC-USE AREAS. Interior or exterior rooms or spaces that are made available to the general public.

PUBLIC WAY. A street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

PYROPHORIC. A chemical with an auto-ignition temperature in air, at or below a temperature of 130°F (54.4°C).

PYROTECHNIC COMPOSITION. A chemical mixture that produces visible light displays or sounds through a self-propagating, heat-releasing chemical reaction which is ignited by ignition.

RADIANT BARRIER. A material having a low-emittance surface of 0.1 or less installed in building assemblies.

RAMP. A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. Open parking garages employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

RAMP, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access ramp.”

RAMP, EXTERIOR EXIT. See “Exterior exit ramp.”

RAMP, INTERIOR EXIT. See “Interior exit ramp.”

RECORD DRAWINGS. Drawings (“as built”) that document the location of all devices, appliances, wiring sequences, wiring methods and connections of the components of a fire alarm system as installed.

REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION. An insulation material packaged in rolls, that is less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick, with not less than one exterior low-emittance surface (0.1 or less) and a core material containing voids or cells.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE. A registered design professional engaged by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to review and coordinate certain aspects of the project, as determined by the building official, for compatibility with the design of the building or structure, including submittal documents prepared by others, deferred submittal documents and phased submittal documents.

RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACE OF. A building or portion thereof intended for the performance of religious services.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REEROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See “Roof recover” and “Roof replacement.”

RESIDENTIAL AIRCRAFT HANGAR. An accessory building less than 2,000 square feet (186 m²) and 20 feet (6096 mm) in height constructed on a one- or two-family property where aircraft are stored. Such use will be considered as a residential accessory use incidental to the dwelling.

RESISTANCE FACTOR. A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual strength from the nominal strength and the manner and consequences of failure (also called “strength reduction factor”).

RESTRICTED ENTRANCE. An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis, but not public use, and that is not a service entrance.

RETRACTABLE AWNING. A retractable awning is a cover with a frame that retracts against a building or other structure to which it is entirely supported.

RISK CATEGORY. A categorization of buildings and other structures for determination of flood, wind, snow, ice and earthquake loads based on the risk associated with unacceptable performance.

RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCEₚ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS. The most severe earthquake effects considered by this code, determined for the orientation that results in the largest maximum response to horizontal ground motions and with adjustment for targeted risk.
ROOF ASSEMBLY (For application to Chapter 15 only). A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof deck, vapor retarder, substrate or thermal barrier, insulation, vapor retarder and roof covering.

ROOF COVERING. The covering applied to the roof deck for weather resistance, fire classification or appearance.

ROOF COVERING SYSTEM. See “Roof assembly.”

ROOF DECK. The flat or sloped surface constructed on top of the exterior walls of a building or other supports for the purpose of enclosing the story below, or sheltering an area, to protect it from the elements, not including its supporting members or vertical supports.

ROOF DRAINAGE, POSITIVE. See “Positive roof drainage.”

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

ROOF VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, attics, cathedral ceilings or other enclosed spaces over which a roof assembly is installed.

ROOFTOP STRUCTURE. A structure erected on top of the roof deck or on top of any part of a building.

RUNNING BOND. The placement of masonry units such that head joints in successive courses are horizontally offset at least one-quarter the unit length.

SALLYPORT. A security vestibule with two or more doors or gates where the intended purpose is to prevent continuous and unobstructed passage by allowing the release of only one door or gate at a time.

SCISSOR STAIRWAY. Two interlocking stairways providing two separate paths of egress located within one exit enclosure.

SCUPPER. An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

SECONDARY MEMBERS. The following structural members shall be considered secondary members and not part of the primary structural frame:

1. Structural members not having direct connections to the columns.
2. Members of the floor construction and roof construction not having direct connections to the columns.
3. Bracing members other than those that are part of the primary structural frame.

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY. A classification assigned to a structure based on its risk category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion at the site.

SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM. That part of the structural system that has been considered in the design to provide the required resistance to the prescribed seismic forces.

SELF-CLOSING. As applied to a fire door or other opening protective, means equipped with a device that will ensure closing after having been opened.

SELF-LUMINOUS. Illuminated by a self-contained power source, other than batteries, and operated independently of external power sources.

SELF-PRESERVATION, INCAPABLE OF. See “Incapable of self-preservation.”

SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY. Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

SERVICE CORRIDOR. A fully enclosed passage used for transporting HPM and purposes other than required means of egress.

SERVICE ENTRANCE. An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and roof.

SHAFT ENCLOSURE. The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a shaft.

SHALLOW FOUNDATION. A shallow foundation is an individual or strip footing, a mat foundation, a slab-on-grade foundation or a similar foundation element.

SHEAR WALL (for Chapter 23). A wall designed to resist lateral forces parallel to the plane of a wall.

Shear wall, perforated. A wood structural panel sheathed wall with openings, that has not been specifically designed and detailed for force transfer around openings.

Shear wall segment, perforated. A section of shear wall with full-height sheathing that meets the height-to-width ratio limits of Section 4.3.4 of AWC SDPWS.

SHINGLE FASHION. A method of installing roof or wall coverings, water-resistive barriers, flashing or other building components such that upper layers of material are placed overlapping lower layers of material to provide for drainage via gravity and moisture control.

SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE. A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. An assembly incorporating the detector, the control equipment and the alarm-sounding device in one unit, operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.
DEFINITIONS

SITE. A parcel of land bounded by a *lot line* or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

SITE CLASS. A classification assigned to a site based on the types of soils present and their engineering properties as defined in Section 1613.3.2.

SITE COEFFICIENTS. The values of $F_a$ and $F_c$ indicated in Tables 1613.3.3(1) and 1613.3.3(2), respectively.

SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM. A system, fabricated on site and intended for acoustical, tackable or aesthetic purposes, that is composed of three elements:
1. A frame (constructed of plastic, wood, metal or other material) used to hold fabric in place;
2. A core material (infill, with the correct properties for the application); and
3. An outside layer, composed of a textile, fabric or vinyl, that is stretched taut and held in place by tension or mechanical fasteners via the frame.

SKYLIGHT, UNIT. A factory-assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material that allows for natural lighting through an opening in the roof assembly while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Glazing material in skylights, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices, solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls, are included in this definition.

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

SMOKE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. See “Multiple-station smoke alarm” and “Single-station smoke alarm.”

SMOKE BARRIER. A continuous membrane, either vertical or horizontal, such as a wall, floor or ceiling assembly, that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke.

SMOKE COMPARTMENT. A space within a building enclosed by smoke barriers on all sides, including the top and bottom.

SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate *automatically*, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

SMOKE DETECTOR. A *listed* device that senses visible or invisible particles of combustion.

SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING. Seating served by *means of egress* that is not subject to smoke accumulation within or under a structure.

SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE. An *exit stairway* or *ramp* designed and constructed so that the movement of the products of combustion produced by a fire occurring in any part of the building into the enclosure is limited.

SOLID. A material that has a melting point, decomposes or sublimes at a temperature greater than 68°F (20°C).

SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDING. A special amusement building is any temporary or permanent building or portion thereof that is occupied for amusement, entertainment or educational purposes and that contains a device or system that conveys passengers or provides a walkway along, around or over a course in any direction so arranged that the *means of egress* path is not readily apparent due to visual or audio distractions or is intentionally confounded or is not readily available because of the nature of the attraction or mode of conveyance through the building or structure.

SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The land area subject to flood hazards and shown on a *Flood Insurance Rate Map* or other flood hazard map as Zone A, AE, A1-30, A99, AR, AO, AH, V, VO, VE or V1-30.

SPECIAL INSPECTION. Inspection of construction requiring the expertise of an *approved special inspector* in order to ensure compliance with this code and the approved construction documents.

Continuous special inspection. Special inspection by the *special inspector* who is present continuously when and where the work to be inspected is being performed.

Periodic special inspection. Special inspection by the *special inspector* who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed.

SPECIAL INSPECTOR. A qualified person employed or retained by an *approved agency* and *approved* by the building official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring special inspection.

SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL. See Section 1905.1.1.

SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY, $f'_{m}$. Minimum compressive strength, expressed as force per unit of net cross-sectional area, required of the masonry used in construction by the approved construction documents, and upon which the project design is based. Whenever the quantity $f'_{m}$ is under the radical sign, the square root of numerical value only is intended and the result has units of pounds per square inch (psi) (MPa).

SPlice. The result of a factory and/or field method of joining or connecting two or more lengths of a fire-resistant joint system into a continuous entity.

SPORT ACTIVITY, AREA OF. See “Area of sport activity.”

SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS. Cementitious or fibrous materials that are sprayed to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates.
STAGE. A space within a building utilized for entertainment or presentations, which includes overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound.

STAIR. A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

STAIRWAY. One or more flights of stairs, either exterior or interior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them, to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another.

STAIRWAY, EXIT ACCESS. See “Exit access stairway.”

STAIRWAY, EXTERIOR EXIT. See “Exterior exit stairway.”

STAIRWAY, INTERIOR EXIT. See “Interior exit stairway.”

STAIRWAY, SCISSOR. See “Scissor stairway.”

STAIRWAY, SPIRAL. A stairway having a closed circular form in its plan view with uniform section-shaped treads attached to and radiating from a minimum-diameter supporting column.

STANDBY POWER SYSTEM. A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required building, hazardous materials or ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Standby power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could create hazards or hamper rescue or fire-fighting operations.

STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF. Standpipe classes are as follows:

Class I system. A system providing 2 1/2-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

Class II system. A system providing 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use primarily by the building occupants or by the fire department during initial response.

Class III system. A system providing 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use by building occupants and 2 1/2-inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply a larger volume of water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

STANDPIPE, TYPES OF. Standpipe types are as follows:

Automatic dry. A dry standpipe system, normally filled with pressurized air, that is arranged through the use of a device, such as dry pipe valve, to admit water into the system piping automatically upon the opening of a hose valve. The water supply for an automatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

Automatic wet. A wet standpipe system that has a water supply that is capable of supplying the system demand automatically.

Manual dry. A dry standpipe system that does not have a permanent water supply attached to the system. Manual dry standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper to be pumped into the system through the fire department connection in order to meet the system demand.

Manual wet. A wet standpipe system connected to a water supply for the purpose of maintaining water within the system but does not have a water supply capable of delivering the system demand attached to the system. Manual-wet standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper (or the like) to be pumped into the system in order to meet the system demand.

Semiautomatic dry. A dry standpipe system that is arranged through the use of a device, such as a deluge valve, to admit water into the system piping upon activation of a remote control device located at a hose connection. A remote control activation device shall be provided at each hose connection. The water supply for a semiautomatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

START OF CONSTRUCTION. The date of issuance for new construction and substantial improvements to existing structures, provided the actual start of construction, repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, addition, placement or other improvement is within 180 days after the date of issuance. The actual start of construction means the first placement of permanent construction of a building (including a manufactured home) on a site, such as the pouring of a slab or footings, installation of pilings or construction of columns.

Permanent construction does not include land preparation (such as clearing, excavation, grading or filling), the installation of streets or walkways, excavation for a basement, footings, piers or foundations, the erection of temporary forms or the installation of accessory buildings such as garages or sheds not occupied as dwelling units or not part of the main building. For a substantial improvement, the actual “start of construction” means the first alteration of any wall, ceiling, floor or other structural part of a building, whether or not that alteration affects the external dimensions of the building.

STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED. That type of construction made up entirely or in part of steel structural members cold formed to shape from sheet or strip steel such as roof deck, floor and wall panels, studs, floor joists, roof joists and other structural elements.

STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL. Any steel structural member of a building or structure consisting of rolled shapes, pipe, hollow structural sections, plates, bars, sheets, rods or steel castings other than cold-formed steel or steel joist members.

STEEL JOIST. Any steel structural member of a building or structure made of hot-rolled or cold-formed solid or open-web sections, or riveted or welded bars, strip or sheet steel members, or slotted and expanded, or otherwise deformed rolled sections.

STEEP SLOPE. A roof slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope).

STONE MASONRY. Masonry composed of field, quarried or cast stone units bonded by mortar.
DEFINITIONS

STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS. The keeping, retention or leaving of hazardous materials in closed contain- ers, tanks, cylinders, or similar vessels; or vessels supplying operations through closed connections to the vessel.

STORAGE RACKS. Cold-formed or hot-rolled steel struc- tural members which are formed into steel storage racks, including pallet storage racks, movable-shelf racks, rack-support- ed systems, automated storage and retrieval systems (stacker racks), push-back racks, pallet-flow racks, case-flow racks, pick modules and rack-supported platforms. Other types of racks, such as drive-in or drive-through racks, canti- lever racks, portable racks or racks made of materials other than steel, are not considered storage racks for the purpose of this code.

STORM SHELTER. A building, structure or portions thereof, constructed in accordance with ICC 500 and desig- nated for use during a severe wind storm event, such as a hurricane or tornado.

Community storm shelter. A storm shelter not defined as a “Residential storm shelter.”

Residential storm shelter. A storm shelter serving occu- pants of dwelling units and having an occupant load not exceeding 16 persons.

STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above (see “Basement,” “Building height,” “Grade plane” and “Mezzanine”). A story is measured as the vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE. Any story having its finished floor surface entirely above grade plane, or in which the finished surface of the floor next above is:

1. More than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade plane; or
2. More than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

STRENGTH (For Chapter 21).

Design strength. Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

Nominal strength. Strength of a member or cross section calculated in accordance with these provisions before application of any strength-reduction factors.

Required strength. Strength of a member or cross section required to resist factored loads.

STRENGTH (For Chapter 16).

Nominal strength. The capacity of a structure or member to resist the effects of loads, as determined by computa- tions using specified material strengths and dimensions and equations derived from accepted principles of struc- tural mechanics or by field tests or laboratory tests of scaled models, allowing for modeling effects and differences between laboratory and field conditions.

Required strength. Strength of a member, cross section or connection required to resist factored loads or related internal moments and forces in such combinations as stipu- lated by these provisions.

Strength design. A method of proportioning structural members such that the computed forces produced in the members by factored loads do not exceed the member design strength [also called “load and resistance factor design” (LRFD)]. The term “strength design” is used in the design of concrete and masonry structural elements.

STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER. Structural member manufactured using wood elements bonded together with exterior adhesives. Examples of structural composite lumber are:

Laminated strand lumber (LSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

Laminated veneer lumber (LVL). A composite of wood veneer sheet elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the veneer element thicknesses are 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less.

Oriented strand lumber (OSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inches (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 75 times and less than 150 times the least dimension of the strand elements.

Parallel strand lumber (PSL). A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 300 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER. An engineered, stress-rated product of a timber laminating plant, comprised of assemblies of specially selected and prepared wood laminations in which the grain of all laminations is approximately parallel longitudinally and the laminations are bonded with adhesives.

STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION. The visual observation of the structural system by a registered design professional for general conformance to the approved construction docu- ments.

STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed.

SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE. Damage of any origin sus- tained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the struc- ture to its before-damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. Any repair, recon- struction, rehabilitation, alteration, addition or other improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or exceeds 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement or repair is started. If the structure has sustained substantial damage, any repairs are
considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual repair work performed. The term does not, however, include either:

1. Any project for improvement of a building required to correct existing health, sanitary or safety code violations identified by the building official and that are the minimum necessary to assure safe living conditions.

2. Any alteration of a historic structure provided that the alteration will not preclude the structure’s continued designation as a historic structure.

SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL DAMAGE. A condition where one or both of the following apply:

1. The vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system have suffered damage such that the lateral load-carrying capacity of any story in any horizontal direction has been reduced by more than 33 percent from its predamage condition.

2. The capacity of any vertical component carrying gravity load, or any group of such components, that supports more than 30 percent of the total area of the structure’s floors and roofs has been reduced more than 20 percent from its predamage condition and the remaining capacity of such affected elements, with respect to all dead and live loads, is less than 75 percent of that required by this code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

SUNROOM. A one-story structure attached to a building with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure’s exterior walls and roof.

SUPERVISING STATION. A facility that receives signals and at which personnel are in attendance at all times to respond to these signals.

SUPERVISORY SERVICE. The service required to monitor performance of guard tours and the operative condition of fixed suppression systems or other systems for the protection of life and property.

SUPERVISORY SIGNAL. A signal indicating the need of action in connection with the supervision of guard tours, the fire suppression systems or equipment or the maintenance features of related systems.

SUPERVISORY SIGNAL-INITIATING DEVICE. An initiation device, such as a valve supervisory switch, water-level indicator or low-air pressure switch on a dry-pipe sprinkler system, whose change of state signals an off-normal condition and its restoration to normal of a fire protection or life safety system, or a need for action in connection with guard tours, fire suppression systems or equipment or maintenance features of related systems.

SUSCEPTIBLE BAY. A roof or portion thereof with:

1. A slope less than 1/4-inch per foot (0.0208 rad); or

2. On which water is impounded, in whole or in part, and the secondary drainage system is functional but the primary drainage system is blocked.

A roof surface with a slope of 1/4-inch per foot (0.0208 rad) or greater towards points of free drainage is not a susceptible bay.

SWIMMING POOL. Any structure intended for swimming, recreational bathing or wading that contains water over 24 inches (610 mm) deep. This includes in-ground, above-ground and on-ground pools; hot tubs; spas and fixed-in-place wading pools.

T RATING. The time period that the penetration firestop system, including the penetrating item, limits the maximum temperature rise to 325°F (163°C) above its initial temperature through the penetration on the nonfire side when tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREA. Open elevated areas or spaces intended for entertainment technicians to walk on and occupy for servicing and operating entertainment technology systems and equipment. Galleries, including fly and lighting galleries, gridirons, catwalks, and similar areas are designed for these purposes.

TENSILE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE. A membrane structure having a shape that is determined by tension in the membrane and the geometry of the support structure. Typically, the structure consists of both flexible elements (e.g., membrane and cables), nonflexible elements (e.g., struts, masts, beams and arches) and the anchorage (e.g., supports and foundations). This includes frame-supported tensile membrane structures.

TENT. A structure, enclosure or shelter, with or without sidewalls or drops, constructed of fabric or pliable material supported in any manner except by air or the contents it protects.

THERMAL ISOLATION. A separation of conditioned spaces, between a sunroom and a dwelling unit, consisting of existing or new walls, doors or windows.

THERMOPLASTIC MATERIAL. A plastic material that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

THERMOSETTING MATERIAL. A plastic material that is capable of being changed into a substantially nonreformable product when cured.

THROUGH PENETRATION. A breach in both sides of a floor, floor-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item passing through the breaches.

THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM. An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor, floor-ceiling, or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items passing through the breaches in both sides of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire through the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

TIE-DOWN (HOLD-DOWN). A device used to resist uplift of the chords of shear walls.

TIE, WALL. Metal connector that connects wythes of masonry walls together.

TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY. A hollow masonry unit composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixture thereof, and having parallel cells.
TIRES, BULK STORAGE OF. Storage of tires where the area available for storage exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m³).

TOWNHOUSE. A single-family dwelling unit constructed in a group of three or more attached units in which each unit extends from the foundation to roof and with open space on at least two sides.

TOXIC. A chemical falling within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of more than 50 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 500 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD₅₀) of more than 200 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 1,000 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.

3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC₅₀) in air of more than 200 parts per million, but not more than 2,000 parts per million by volume of gas or vapor, or more than 2 milligrams per liter but not more than 20 milligrams per liter of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

TRANSIENT. Occupancy of a dwelling unit or sleeping unit for not more than 30 days.

TRANSIENT AIRCRAFT. Aircraft based at another location and that is at the transient location for not more than 90 days.

TREATED WOOD. Wood products that are conditioned to enhance fire-retardant or preservative properties.

Fire-retardant-treated wood. Wood products that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, exhibit reduced surface-burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

Preservative-treated wood. Wood products that, conditioned with chemicals by a pressure process or other means, exhibit reduced susceptibility to damage by fungi, insects or marine borers.

TRIM. Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, handrails, door and window frames and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

TROUBLE SIGNAL. A signal initiated by the fire alarm system or device indicative of a fault in a monitored circuit or component.

TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD). A non-operable fenestration unit primarily designed to transmit daylight from a roof surface to an interior ceiling via a tubular conduit. The basic unit consists of an exterior glazed weathering surface, a light-transmitting tube with a reflective interior surface, and an interior-sealing device such as a translucent ceiling panel. The unit can be factory assembled, or field-assembled from a manufactured kit.

24-HOUR BASIS. See “24-hour basis” located preceding “AAC masonry.”

TYPE A UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for Type A units in ICC A117.1.

TYPE B UNIT. A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for Type B units in ICC A117.1, consistent with the design and construction requirements of the federal Fair Housing Act.

UNDERLAYMENT. One or more layers of felt, sheathing paper, nonbituminous saturated felt or other approved material over which a steep-slope roof covering is applied.

UNIT SKYLIGHT. See “Skylight, unit.”

UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL. A material, other than an explosive, which in the pure state or as commercially produced, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense or become self-reactive and undergo other violent chemical changes, including explosion, when exposed to heat, friction or shock, or in the absence of an inhibitor, or in the presence of contaminants, or in contact with incompatible materials. Unstable (reactive) materials are subdivided as follows:

Class 4. Materials that in themselves are readily capable of detonation or explosive decomposition or explosive reaction at normal temperatures and pressures. This class includes materials that are sensitive to mechanical or localized thermal shock at normal temperatures and pressures.

Class 3. Materials that in themselves are capable of detonation or of explosive decomposition or explosive reaction but which require a strong initiating source or which must be heated under confinement before initiation. This class includes materials that are sensitive to thermal or mechanical shock at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 2. Materials that in themselves are normally unstable and readily undergo violent chemical change but do not detonate. This class includes materials that can undergo chemical change with rapid release of energy at normal temperatures and pressures, and that can undergo violent chemical change at elevated temperatures and pressures.

Class 1. Materials that in themselves are normally stable but which can become unstable at elevated temperatures and pressure.

USE (MATERIAL). Placing a material into action, including solids, liquids and gases.

VAPOR PERMEABLE MEMBRANE. The property of having a moisture vapor permeance rating of 5 perms (2.9 × 10⁻¹⁰ kg/Pa × s × m²) or greater, when tested in accordance with the desiccant method using Procedure A of ASTM E96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS. A measure of a material or assembly’s ability to limit the amount of moisture that passes
through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method of ASTM E96 as follows:

- **Class I:** 0.1 perm or less.
- **Class II:** 0.1 < perm ≤ 1.0 perm.
- **Class III:** 1.0 < perm ≤ 10 perm.

**WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL.** A material that explodes; violently reacts; produces flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases; or evolves enough heat to cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture. Water-reactive materials are subdivided as follows:

- **Class 3.** Materials that react explosively with water without requiring heat or confinement.
- **Class 2.** Materials that react violently with water or have the ability to boil water. Materials that produce flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases or evolve enough heat to cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture.
- **Class 1.** Materials that react with water with some release of energy, but not violently.

**WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.** A material behind an exterior wall covering that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the exterior wall assembly.

**WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES.** Surfaces of walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, soffits and similar surfaces exposed to the weather except the following:

1. Ceilings and roof soffits enclosed by walls, fascia, bulkheads or beams that extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below such ceiling or roof soffits.
2. Walls or portions of walls beneath an unenclosed roof area, where located a horizontal distance from an open exterior opening equal to not less than twice the height of the opening.
3. Ceiling and roof soffits located a minimum horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the outer edges of the ceiling or roof soffits.

**WET-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** A solution of water and potassium-carbonate-based chemical, potassium-acetate-based chemical or a combination thereof, forming an extinguishing agent.

**WHEELCHAIR SPACE.** A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

**WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION.** Areas within hurricane-prone regions located:

1. Within 1 mile (1.61 km) of the coastal mean high water line where the ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{\text{air}} \) is 130 mph (58 m/s) or greater; or
2. In areas where the ultimate design wind speed is 140 mph (63.6 m/s) or greater.

For Risk Category II buildings and structures and Risk Category III buildings and structures, except health care facilities, the wind-borne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(1). For Risk Category IV buildings and structures and Risk Category III health care facilities, the wind-borne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(2).

**WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM, MAIN.** See “Main windforce-resisting system.”

**WIND SPEED, \( V_{\text{air}} \).** Ultimate design wind speeds.

**WIND SPEED, \( V_{\text{nom}} \).** Nominal design wind speeds.
DEFINITIONS

WINDER. A tread with nonparallel edges.

WIRE BACKING. Horizontal strands of tautened wire attached to surfaces of vertical supports which, when covered with the building paper, provide a backing for cement plaster.

WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM. A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of wire.

WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE. A composite material made primarily from wood or cellulose-based materials and plastic.

WOOD SHEAR PANEL. A wood floor, roof or wall component sheathed to act as a shear wall or diaphragm.

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. A panel manufactured from veneers, wood strands or wafers or a combination of veneer and wood strands or wafers bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are:

- **Composite panels.** A wood structural panel that is comprised of wood veneer and reconstituted wood-based material and bonded together with waterproof adhesive;
- **Oriented strand board (OSB).** A mat-formed wood structural panel comprised of thin rectangular wood strands arranged in cross-aligned layers with surface layers normally arranged in the long panel direction and bonded with waterproof adhesive; or
- **Plywood.** A wood structural panel comprised of plies of wood veneer arranged in cross-aligned layers. The plies are bonded with waterproof adhesive that cures on application of heat and pressure.

WORKSTATION. A defined space or an independent principal piece of equipment using HPM within a fabrication area where a specific function, laboratory procedure or research activity occurs. Approved or listed hazardous materials storage cabinets, flammable liquid storage cabinets or gas cabinets serving a workstation are included as part of the workstation. A workstation is allowed to contain ventilation equipment, fire protection devices, detection devices, electrical devices and other processing and scientific equipment.

WYTHE. Each continuous, vertical section of a wall, one masonry unit in thickness.

YARD. An open space, other than a court, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the lot on which a building is situated.

ZONE. A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent or an area in which a form of control can be executed.

ZONE, NOTIFICATION. An area within a building or facility covered by notification appliances which are activated simultaneously.

202.2 New definitions. The following new terms and definitions are added to Section 202 of the Building Code.

ACCESSORY STRUCTURE (for Appendix G). A structure that is:

1. Not used for human habitation.
2. Incidental to a main structure on the premises.
3. Used only for the parking of vehicles or limited storage.

ADDRESS NUMBER (for Section 118). A number used to provide specific identification for a lot on a public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare in the District of Columbia, which may be a primary address or a secondary address. It shall be stored as a numeric value and may include an address number suffix.

ADDRESS NUMBER RANGE (for Section 118). The high and low values for the street numbers found on a block face. The address range is expressed as a low number and a high number representing the lowest and highest street numbers found or possible on a given block face.

ADDRESS NUMBER SUFFIX (for Section 118). A fraction or a letter that is attached to an address number in an address.

ADMINISTRATIVE BULLETINS. Notices issued by the Department that represent official Department policies to assist applicants, staff and the public in following operational, technical and legal procedures.

ALLEY. Each public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare which is not a street.

ALLEY LINE EXTENDED (for Chapter 32). A line through the corner of a lot, at the intersection of an alley with the street, and perpendicular to the street.

ALTERATION OF A WATERCOURSE. A dam, impoundment, channel relocation, change in channel alignment, channelization, or change in cross-sectional area of the channel or the channel capacity, or any other form of modification which may alter, impede, retard or change the direction and/or velocity of the riverine flow of water during conditions of the base flood.

ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM. An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers, and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared or direct-wired equipment.

BAY WINDOW. A structure with windows that projects from the façade of a building, starts at or below grade, and is not intended for the display of merchandise or services.

BLOCK FACE (for Section 118). The right-of-way line along a public street or the property line at the edge of a private street segment. Each street segment shall have two block faces.

BOARD OF ZONING ADJUSTMENT (BZA). The Board of Zoning Adjustment (BZA) is an independent, quasi-judicial body that is empowered to grant relief from the strict application of the Zoning Regulations (variances), approve certain uses of land (special exceptions), and hear appeals of actions taken by the Zoning Administrator.
BUILDING RESTRICTION AREA. The portion of a lot between a building restriction line and a lot line adjoining a street.

BUILDING RESTRICTION LINE. A line that defines a required set-back on a lot, a certain distance from the public right-of-way, that is recorded on the records of the Surveyor of the District of Columbia. Any area between a lot line adjoining a street and the building restriction line is private property set aside and treated as public space.

BUSINESS DAY. A day other than Saturday, Sunday, or a legal public holiday in the District of Columbia. If business day is not specified, a day shall mean a calendar day.

CODE OFFICIAL. The Director of the District of Columbia Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, or a duly authorized representative, for administration and enforcement of the Construction Codes, including Fire Code provisions pertaining to approval, installation, design, testing, and inspection of new fire protection systems and the modification of existing fire protection systems. References in the Fire Code to the code official shall refer to the Fire Chief of the District of Columbia Department of Fire and Emergency Medical Services or a duly authorized representative, except where the Fire Code provision pertains to approval, installation, design, testing, and inspection of new fire protection systems and the modification of existing fire protection systems. The Fire Chief shall be the code official for maintenance, testing and inspection of all existing fire protection systems.

COLONNADE. A series of columns placed at regular intervals that supports a structure above.

CONDOMINIUM LOT (for Section 118). A condominium unit created through the establishment of a condominium regime pursuant to the District of Columbia Condominium Act of 1980, as amended (Title 42 DC Official Code, Chapter 34) where the condominium unit fronts on and can be accessed directly from an adjacent public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare.

CONSTRUCTION CODES. The 2017 District of Columbia Construction Codes as defined in Chapter 1 of the Building Code.


DEMOLITION.

Interior demolition. Work that involves the removal of interior nonbearing walls, elements or systems, or interior finishes.

Partial demolition. Work of a greater scope than demolition interior that includes the removal of structural elements (interior or exterior), exterior walls, roofs, or other exterior elements but is not a raze.

DEPARTMENT. The District of Columbia Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, except that references to Department in the Fire Code shall refer to the District of Columbia Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department.

DEVELOPMENT (for Section 1612 and Appendix G). Any man-made change to improved or unimproved premises, including but not limited to, buildings or other structures, temporary structures, temporary or permanent storage of materials, mining, dredging, filling, grading, paving, excavations, operations and other land-disturbing activities.

DEVELOPMENT SITE (for Section 1612 and Appendix G). A record lot wholly or partially within a flood hazard area on which any development is proposed to occur.

ELEVATION CERTIFICATE. The National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) Elevation Certificate (FEMA form 086-0-33), any successor to FEMA form 086-0-33, or other approved form, used to certify that new buildings and substantial improvements in Flood Hazard Areas are properly elevated in accordance with the Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia.

EMBELLISHMENT. An architectural element that ornaments and articulates the façade of a building.

ENCROACHMENT (for Appendix G). The placement of fill, excavation, buildings, permanent structures or other development into a flood hazard area which may impede or alter the flow capacity of riverine flood hazard areas.

EXISTING BUILDING. Any building that has been erected and legally occupied (excluding buildings occupied pursuant to a temporary certificate of occupancy).

FIRE CHIEF. The Chief of the DC Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department.

FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The area designated as a flood hazard area in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

FLOODPLAIN ADMINISTRATOR. The Director of the District of Columbia Department of Energy & Environment (DOEE).

FLOODPLAIN MANAGEMENT REGULATIONS OF THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA. The flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes in combination with the flood resilience rules promulgated by the Department of Energy and the Environment (DOEE), set forth in Title 20, Chapter 31 of the DCMR, and in Title 6, Chapter 5 of the DC Official Code (2018 Repl.).

FLOODPROOFING CERTIFICATE. The National Flood Insurance Program Floodproofing Certificate (FEMA form 086-0-34), any successor to FEMA form 086-0-34, or other approved form, used to certify a floodproofing design for nonresidential buildings that are permitted as an alternative to elevating to or above the Base Flood Elevation.

FUNCTIONALLY DEPENDENT FACILITY (for Appendix G). A facility that cannot be used for its intended purpose unless it is located or carried out in close proximity to water, such as a docking or port facility necessary for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers, shipbuilding or ship repair. The term does not include long-term storage, manufacture, sales or service facilities.

HISTORIC STRUCTURE (for Appendix G). Any structure that is: (a) individually listed in the National Register of Historic Places (a listing maintained by the U.S. Department of Interior) or preliminarily determined by the Secretary of
DEFINITIONS

the Interior as meeting the requirements for individual listing on the National Register; (b) certified or preliminarily determined by the Secretary of the Interior as contributing to the historical significance of a registered historic district or a district preliminarily determined by the Secretary to qualify as a registered historic district; (c) individually listed on a state inventory of historic places in states with historic preservation programs which have been approved by the Secretary of the Interior, such as the DC Register of Historic Places; or (d) individually listed on a local inventory of historic places in communities with historic preservation programs that have been certified either: (i) by an approved state program as determined by the Secretary of the Interior; or (ii) directly by the Secretary of the Interior in states without approved programs.

LETTER OF MAP CHANGE. An official determination issued by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) that amends or revises an effective Flood Insurance Rate Map or Flood Insurance Study. Letters of Map Change include:

1. Letter of Map Amendment (LOMA): An amendment based on technical data showing that a property was incorrectly included in a designated special flood hazard area. A LOMA amends the current effective Flood Insurance Rate Map and establishes that a specific property, portion of a property, or structure is not located in a special flood hazard area.

2. Letter of Map Revision (LOMR): A revision based on technical data that may show changes to flood zones, flood elevations, special flood hazard area boundaries and floodway delineations, and other planimetric features.

3. Letter of Map Revision Based on Fill (LOMR-F): A determination that a structure or parcel of land has been elevated by fill above the base flood elevation and is, therefore, no longer located within the special flood hazard area. In order to qualify for this determination, the fill must have been permitted and placed in accordance with the community’s floodplain management regulations.

4. Conditional Letter of Map Revision (CLOMR): A formal review and comment as to whether a proposed flood protection project or other project complies with the minimum NFIP requirements for such projects with respect to delineation of special flood hazard areas. A CLOMR does not revise the effective Flood Insurance Rate Map or Flood Insurance Study; upon submission and approval of certified as-built documentation, a Letter of Map Revision may be issued by FEMA to revise the effective FIRM.

LOT (for Section 118). A parcel of land, being either (a) a record lot, (b) a Condominium Lot, or (c) a Tax Lot.

LOT LINE EXTENDED (for Chapter 32). The extension of a lot line through a corner of the lot that adjoins the street, perpendicular to the street.

MAIN ENTRANCE (for Section 118). The principal point of entry into a building or other structure on a lot from a public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare; provided that where, due to the physical configuration of a building or other structure, it would be appropriate for reasons of public safety or public convenience for a building or other structure to have more than one point of entry from a thoroughfare to be recognized as a main entrance of that building or other structure, then the code official is authorized to recognize more than one entry point to that building or other structure as a main entrance and to assign a distinct address number for display by means of a suffix or other designation as the code official deems appropriate.

MANUFACTURED HOME (for Appendix G). A structure that is transportable in one or more sections, built on a permanent chassis, designed for use with or without a permanent foundation when attached to the required utilities, and constructed to the Federal Mobile Home Construction and Safety Standards and rules and regulations promulgated by the US Department of Housing and Urban Development. The term also includes mobile homes, park trailers, travel trailers and similar transportable structures that are placed on a site for 180 consecutive days or longer.

MANUFACTURED HOME PARK OR SUBDIVISION (for Appendix G). A record lot divided into two or more manufactured home lots for rent or sale.

MARKET VALUE (for Appendix G). The assessed value of the building or structure, as established by the District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue, Real Property Tax Administration (OTR). The assessed value of the land on which the building or structure is located shall not be included in the determination. The relevant assessment shall be the OTR assessment promulgated before the damage occurred or before the repair or improvement is started.

MAUSOLEUM. A permanent structure or building, located on burial grounds authorized pursuant to DC Official Code § 43-121, which is substantially exposed above the ground and used solely for the interment, entombment, or inurnment of human remains.

MASS TIMBER. Structural elements of Type IV construction primarily of solid, built-up, panelized or engineered wood products that meet minimum cross section dimensions of Type IV construction.

MAUSOLEUM. A permanent structure or building, located on burial grounds authorized pursuant to DC Official Code § 43-121, which is substantially exposed above the ground and used solely for the interment, entombment, or inurnment of human remains.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE PROTECTION (FOR MASS TIMBER). Noncombustible material, in accordance with Section 703.5, designed to increase the fire-resistance rating and delay the combustion of mass timber.

OFFICE OF ADMINISTRATIVE HEARINGS (OAH). An independent agency within the executive branch of the District of Columbia government, established by the Office of Administrative Hearings Establishment Act of 2001 effective March 6, 2002 [DC Law 14-76; DC Official Code §§ 2-1831.01 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)], as an administrative tribunal and agency to hear certain contested cases and other administrative adjudication cases arising under the laws of the District of Columbia.

ORIEL WINDOW. A structure with windows that project from the façade of a building, do not touch grade, and are not intended for the display of merchandise or services.
PARTY LINE. A lot line shared by adjoining lots.

PARTY LINE EXTENDED (for Chapter 32). The extension of a party line that adjoins the street, and perpendicular to the street.

PARTY WALL (for Chapters 1 and 33). A wall that straddles, or is in close proximity to, a lot line, which is used for structural support by two or more adjoining buildings or structures.

PORCH (for Chapter 32). An above-grade structure with or without a roof that is open on all sides of the projection that are over the lot line or building restriction line, has vertical elements connecting the floor with a roof, is attached to a building, and is accessible from the attached building.

PORTE-COCHERE. A covered entrance of sufficient size for a vehicle to pass underneath and provide shelter from the weather.

PREMISES. A lot, plot or parcel of land, including any buildings or structures thereon, or a part of a lot, plot, parcel of land or structure.

PRIMARY ADDRESS (for Section 118). The address of the main entrance of a premises.

PRIVATE THOROUGHFARE (for Section 118). Streets, alleys and other thoroughfares where the underlying land is owned by private citizens or entities, or is part of existing tax or record lots adjoining a public thoroughfare.

PROJECTION (for Chapter 32). An encroachment into the public right of way, public space or a building restriction area.

PUBLIC PARKING. The area of a street devoted to open space, greenery, or parks which lies between the lot line and the edge of the actual or planned sidewalk which is nearer to the lot line, as such lot line and sidewalk are shown on the records of the District of Columbia.

PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY. The surface, the air space above the surface, and the area below the surface of any public space.

PUBLIC SPACE. All the publicly owned property between lot lines, including streets, alleys, parks, and reservations. Any building restriction area, where the same exists on a lot, shall be treated as public space.

PUBLIC THOROUGHFARE (for Section 118). Streets, alleys and other thoroughfares that are under the jurisdiction of the District of Columbia, any other public government, including the Federal Government or its branches, or by any adjoining state government.

RAZE. The complete removal of any existing structure, with or without the removal of party walls and below grade portions of a structure.

RECORD LOT (for Section 118). A lot of record created pursuant to the Subdivision Regulations of the District of Columbia, 10-B DCMR §§ 2700 et seq.

RECREATIONAL VEHICLE (for Appendix G). A vehicle that is built on a single chassis, 400 square feet (37.16 m²) or less when measured at the largest horizontal projection, designed to be self-propelled or permanently towable by a light-duty truck, and designed primarily not for use as a permanent dwelling but as temporary living quarters for recreational, camping, travel or seasonal use. A recreational vehicle is ready for highway use if it is on its wheels or jacking system, is attached to the site only by quick disconnect-type utilities and security devices and has no permanently attached additions.

RENTAL UNIT. Any premises or part of a premises which is rented or offered for rent for residential (nontransient) occupancy, including, but not limited to, an apartment, dwelling unit, rooming unit, sleeping unit, housekeeping unit or dwelling.

SECONDARY ADDRESS (for Section 118). An address created when a building has an entrance from the exterior, other than the main entrance, that directly serves a tenant different than that served by the main entrance.

SHOW WINDOW (for Chapter 32). A structure with windows that projects from the façade of a building, starts at grade, and is intended for the display of merchandise or services.


SPECIAL INSPECTION POLICY MANUAL. The document setting forth policies and procedures associated with providing special inspection services pursuant to Chapter 17 of the District of Columbia Building Code (October 15, 2018 edition, as may be amended from time to time by the Department).

STATE HISTORIC PRESERVATION OFFICER. The person designated by the Mayor to administer the National Register Program within the District of Columbia established pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 USC §§ 470 et seq.).

STREET (for Chapter 32). A public thoroughfare, other than an alley, as shown on the records of the District of Columbia, including any associated roadway, curb, sidewalk, tree space and public parking.

TAX LOT (for Section 118). An assessment and taxation lot, and, established by the Office of Tax and Revenue of the District of Columbia as a “ground lot” (i.e. 800, 900 or 1000 series lots), which fronts on and can be accessed directly from an adjacent public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare.

TERRACE (for Chapter 32). Raised level ground that is located in the public parking and is surrounded by a retaining wall or is surrounded by sloped surfaces that transition to adjacent areas.

THIRD-PARTY AGENCY. A person retained by an applicant or permit holder to provide code compliance plan reviews or inspections of a project, at the expense of the applicant or the permit holder as applicable, in accordance.
with the procedures set forth in the Construction Codes and the Third Party Program Procedure Manual.

THIRD-PARTY PROGRAM. A program established by the Department to establish and review qualifications of persons for approval to provide code compliance plan reviews and inspections of projects, and to provide oversight of approved third-party agencies.

THIRD-PARTY PROGRAM PROCEDURE MANUAL. The document setting forth policies and procedures for the Department's Third-Party Program (adopted November 6, 2017, revised December 7, 2018, as may be amended from time to time by the Department), including information regarding the qualifications that must be demonstrated for a person to obtain approval by the Department to conduct code compliance plan reviews or inspections of a project, and the procedures that must be followed as a condition of such approval, pursuant to Sections 6-1405.02 and 6-1405.04 of Title 6 of the DC Official Code (2018 Repl.) and Chapter 17 of this code.

THOROUGHFARE (for Section 118). A public thoroughfare or a private thoroughfare, as applicable.

THOROUGHFARE NAME (for Section 118). The full proper name of a thoroughfare, stored as an alphanumeric character string, the thoroughfare type and the street quadrant.

THOROUGHFARE NUMBER (for Section 118). A number used to provide specific identification for a premises on a public or private thoroughfare in the District of Columbia, which may be a primary address or a secondary address. It shall be stored as a numeric value.

THOROUGHFARE QUADRANT (for Section 118). Two alphabetical characters that identify the geographic sector of the District of Columbia in which the address is located. All addresses in Washington, DC, with the exception of the United States Capitol which is the central point of the addressing grid, shall have a thoroughfare quadrant designation. The thoroughfare quadrants are NE (Northeast), NW (Northwest), SE (Southeast) and SW (Southwest), and each quadrant shall be so abbreviated and capitalized. No thoroughfare quadrant shall consist of a single cardinal direction (for example, North).

THOROUGHFARE SEGMENT (for Section 118). The portion of a public thoroughfare or private thoroughfare between its intersections with two other thoroughfares.

THOROUGHFARE TYPE (for Section 118). The name of the type of thoroughfare, such as avenue, street, road, circle, etc. It shall be stored in fully spelled out form as an alphabetical string. Thoroughfare types are listed in the US Postal Service Standards and in the National Emergency Number Association Standards (NENA). The code official is authorized to use thoroughfare types not listed in either standard.

TOWER (for Chapter 32). A structure that projects from the facade of the building and extends above the rooftop of the building to which it is attached.

UNDERGROUND GARAGE (for Section G105, Appendix G). An enclosed area below the design flood elevation or base flood elevation that will be used solely for parking, building access, or storage.

UNIT NUMBER (for Section 118). The designation of an individual unit, such as “A,” “Rear” or “102.” It shall be stored as an alphanumeric string.

UNIT TYPE (for Section 118). The type of occupancy, such as an apartment, suite, or office space. It shall be stored as an alphabetic string.

VAULT (for Chapter 32). A structure with a roof, completely below-grade, that encloses space.

ZONES, COMMERCIAL. ARTS-1 through ARTS-4, CG-2, CG-3, D-3 through D-8, MU-3 through MU-9, MU-17 through MU-21, MU-24 through MU-28, NC-1 through NC-17, RC-2, RC-3 and USN zoning districts (or the successor thereto) as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

ZONES, MIXED-USE. CG-4, HE-1 through HE-4, MU-10, MU-22, MU-29, SEFC-1, StE-1 through StE-19 and WR-2 through WR-5 zoning districts (or the successor thereto) as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

ZONES, PRODUCTION, DISTRIBUTION AND REPAIR (PDR). PDR-prefixed zoning districts (or the successors thereto) as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

ZONES, RESIDENTIAL. CG-1, D-1-R, RC-1, SEFC-2, SEFC-3, W-1, W-7, W-8 and R, RF or RA-prefixed zoning districts (or the successor thereto) as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

ZONE, SPECIAL PURPOSE. D-2, MU-1, MU-2, MU-15, MU-16 or MU-23 zoning districts (or the successor thereto) as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

ZONING ADMINISTRATOR. The Zoning Administrator of the District of Columbia reviews applications for conformance with the Zoning Regulations including applications for permits and certificates.

ZONING REGULATIONS. The regulations adopted through the publication of a notice of final rulemaking published in the DC Register on March 2, 2016 and which became effective at 12:01 a.m., September 6, 2016, as those regulations may thereafter be amended. See 11 DCMR.
CHAPTER 3
USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

SECTION 301
GENERAL

301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of all buildings and structures as to use and occupancy.

SECTION 302
CLASSIFICATION

302.1 General. Structures or portions of structures shall be classified with respect to occupancy in one or more of the groups listed in this section. A room or space that is intended to be occupied at different times for different purposes shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable to each of the purposes for which the room or space will be occupied. Structures with multiple occupancies or uses shall comply with Section 508. Where a structure is proposed for a purpose that is not specifically provided for in this code, such structure shall be classified in the group that the occupancy most nearly resembles, according to the fire safety and relative hazard involved.

2. Business (see Section 304): Group B.
3. Educational (see Section 305): Group E.
7. Mercantile (see Section 309): Group M.
8. Residential (see Section 310): Groups R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4.
10. Utility and Miscellaneous (see Section 312): Group U.

SECTION 303
ASSEMBLY GROUP A

303.1 Assembly Group A. Assembly Group A occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for the gathering of persons for purposes such as civic, social or religious functions; recreation, food or drink consumption or awaiting transportation.

303.1.1 Small buildings and tenant spaces. A building or tenant space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons shall be classified as a Group B occupancy.

303.1.2 Small assembly spaces. The following rooms and spaces shall not be classified as Assembly occupancies:

1. A room or space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.
2. A room or space used for assembly purposes that is less than 750 square feet (70 m²) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies. A room or space used for assembly purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy.

303.1.4 Accessory to places of religious worship. Accessory religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums with occupant loads of less than 100 per room or space are not considered separate occupancies.

303.2 Assembly Group A-1. Group A-1 occupancy includes assembly uses, usually with fixed seating, intended for the production and viewing of the performing arts or motion pictures including, but not limited to:

- Motion picture theaters
- Symphony and concert halls
- Television and radio studios admitting an audience
- Theaters

303.3 Assembly Group A-2. Group A-2 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for food and/or drink consumption including, but not limited to:

- Banquet halls
- Casinos (gaming areas)
- Nightclubs
- Restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities (including associated commercial kitchens)
- Taverns and bars

303.4 Assembly Group A-3. Group A-3 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for worship, recreation or amusement and other assembly uses not classified elsewhere in Group A including, but not limited to:

- Amusement arcades
- Art galleries
- Bowling alleys
- Community halls
- Courtrooms
- Dance halls (not including food or drink consumption)
- Exhibition halls
- Funeral parlors
- Gymnasiums (without spectator seating)
- Indoor swimming pools (without spectator seating)
- Indoor tennis courts (without spectator seating)
- Lecture halls
USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

Libraries
Museums
Places of religious worship
Pool and billiard parlors
Waiting areas in transportation terminals

303.5 Assembly Group A-4. Group A-4 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for viewing of indoor sporting events and activities with spectator seating including, but not limited to:

Arenas
Skating rinks
Swimming pools
Tennis courts

303.6 Assembly Group A-5. Group A-5 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for participation in or viewing outdoor activities including, but not limited to:

Amusement park structures
Bleachers
Grandstands
Stadiums

SECTION 304
BUSINESS GROUP B

304.1 Business Group B. Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions, including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Airport traffic control towers
Ambulatory care facilities
Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds
Banks
Barber and beauty shops
Car wash
Civic administration
Clinic, outpatient
Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations and self-service
Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade
Electronic data processing
Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities not more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area.
Laboratories: testing and research
Motor vehicle showrooms
Post offices
Print shops
Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)
Radio and television stations
Telephone exchanges
Training and skill development not in a school or academic program (this shall include, but not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics and similar uses regardless of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy).

304.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.

CLINIC, OUTPATIENT.

SECTION 305
EDUCATIONAL GROUP E

305.1 Educational Group E. Educational Group E occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, by six or more persons at any one time for educational purposes through the 12th grade.

305.1.1 Accessory to places of religious worship. Religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums, which are accessory to places of religious worship in accordance with Section 303.1.4 and have occupant loads of less than 100 per room or space, shall be classified as Group A-3 occupancies.

305.2 Group E, day care facilities. This group includes buildings and structures or portions thereof occupied by more than five children older than 2 1/2 years of age who receive educational, supervision or personal care services for fewer than 24 hours per day.

305.2.1 Within places of religious worship. Rooms and spaces within places of religious worship providing such day care during religious functions shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

305.2.2 Five or fewer children. A facility having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

305.2.3 Five or fewer children in a dwelling unit. A facility such as the above within a dwelling unit and having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as a Group R-3 occupancy or shall comply with the Residential Code.

SECTION 306
FACTORY GROUP F

306.1 Factory Industrial Group F. Factory Industrial Group F occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations that are not classified as a Group H hazardous or Group S storage occupancy.

306.2 Moderate-hazard factory industrial, Group F-1. Factory industrial uses that are not classified as Factory Industrial F-2 Low Hazard shall be classified as F-1 Moderate Hazard and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Aircraft (manufacturing, not to include repair)
Appliances
Athletic equipment
Automobiles and other motor vehicles  
Bakeries  
Beverages: over 16-percent alcohol content  
Bicycles  
Boats  
Brooms or brushes  
Business machines  
Cameras and photo equipment  
Canvas or similar fabric  
Carpets and rugs (includes cleaning)  
Clothing  
Construction and agricultural machinery  
Disinfectants  
Dry cleaning and dyeing  
Electric generation plants  
Electronics  
Engines (including rebuilding)  
Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area.  
Furniture  
Hemp products  
Jute products  
Laundries  
Leather products  
Machinery  
Metals  
Millwork (sash and door)  
Motion pictures and television filming (without spectators)  
Musical instruments  
Optical goods  
Paper mills or products  
Photographic film  
Plastic products  
Printing or publishing  
Recreational vehicles  
Refuse incineration  
Shoes  
Soaps and detergents  
Textiles  
Tobacco  
Trailers  
Upholstering  
Wood; distillation  
Woodworking (cabinet)

306.3 Low-hazard factory industrial, Group F-2. Factory industrial uses that involve the fabrication or manufacturing of noncombustible materials that during finishing, packing or processing do not involve a significant fire hazard shall be classified as F-2 occupancies and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Beverages: up to and including 16-percent alcohol content  
- Brick and masonry  
- Ceramic products  
- Foundries  
- Glass products  
- Gypsum  
- Ice  
- Metal products (fabrication and assembly)

SECTION 307
HIGH-HAZARD GROUP H

307.1 High-hazard Group H. High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing, generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess of those allowed in control areas complying with Section 414, based on the maximum allowable quantity limits for control areas set forth in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Hazardous occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with this section, the requirements of Section 415 and the Fire Code. Hazardous materials stored, or used on top of roofs or canopies, shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and shall comply with the Fire Code.

307.1.1 Uses other than Group H. An occupancy that stores, uses or handles hazardous materials as described in one or more of the following items shall not be classified as Group H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that it most nearly resembles.

1. Buildings and structures occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Section 416 and the Fire Code.
2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in mercantile occupancies conforming to the Fire Code.
3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for the operation of machinery or equipment.
4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvents having a flash point of 140°F (60°C) or higher in closed systems employing equipment listed by an approved testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the building by 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).
7. Refrigeration systems.
8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.
9. Stationary batteries utilized for facility emergency power, uninterruptable power supply or telecommunication facilities, provided that the batteries are provided with safety venting caps and ventilation is provided in accordance with the Mechanical Code.
10. Corrosive personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail display.
11. Commonly used corrosive building materials.
12. Buildings and structures occupied for aerosol storage shall be classified as Group S-1, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of the Fire Code.
13. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5.
14. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements prescribed in the Fire Code.

307.1.2 Hazardous materials. Hazardous materials in any quantity shall conform to the requirements of this code, including Section 414, and the Fire Code.

307.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AEROSOL
   Level 1 aerosol products.
   Level 2 aerosol products.
   Level 3 aerosol products.

AEROSOL CONTAINER.

BALED COTTON.

BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED.

BARRICADE.
   Artificial barricade.
   Natural barricade.

BOILING POINT.

CLOSED SYSTEM.

COMBUSTIBLE DUST.

COMBUSTIBLE FIBERS.

COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID.
   Class II.
   Class IIIA.
   Class IIIB.

COMPRESSED GAS.

CONTROL AREA.

CORROSIVE.

CRYOGENIC FLUID.

DAY BOX.

DEFLAGRATION.

DETONATION.

DISPENSING.

EXPLOSION.

EXPLOSIVE.
   High explosive.
   Low explosive.
   Mass-detonating explosives.
   UN/DOTn Class 1 explosives.
   Division 1.1.
   Division 1.2.
   Division 1.3.
   Division 1.4.
   Division 1.5.
   Division 1.6.

FIREWORKS.
   Fireworks, 1.3G.
   Fireworks, 1.4G.

FLAMMABLE GAS.

FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS.

FLAMMABLE LIQUID.
   Class IA.
   Class IB.
   Class IC.

FLAMMABLE MATERIAL.

FLAMMABLE SOLID.

FLASH POINT.

HANDLING.

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.

HEALTH HAZARD.

HIGHLY TOXIC.

INCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS.

INERT GAS.

OPEN SYSTEM.

OPERATING BUILDING.

ORGANIC PEROXIDE.
   Class I.
   Class II.
   Class III.
   Class IV.
## USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

### CLASS V.
Unclassified detonable.

### OXIDIZER.
- **Class 4.**
- **Class 3.**
- **Class 2.**
- **Class 1.**

### OXIDIZING GAS.

### PHYSICAL HAZARD.

### PYROPHORIC.

### PYROTECHNIC COMPOSITION.

### TOXIC.

### UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL.
- **Class 4.**
- **Class 3.**
- **Class 2.**
- **Class 1.**

### WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL.

- **Class 3.**
- **Class 2.**
- **Class 1.**

### 307.3 High-hazard Group H-1.
Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a detonation hazard shall be classified as Group H-1. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Detonable pyrophoric materials
- Explosives:
  - Division 1.1
  - Division 1.2
  - Division 1.3
  - Division 1.4
  - Division 1.5
  - Division 1.6

## TABLE 307.1(1)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARDA, I, M, N, P

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED</th>
<th>STORAGE*</th>
<th>USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS*</th>
<th>USE-OPEN SYSTEMS*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Solid pounds (cubic feet)</td>
<td>Liquid gallons (pounds)</td>
<td>Gas cubic feet at NTP</td>
<td>Solid pounds (cubic feet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible dust</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>See Note q</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible fiber(^d)</td>
<td>Loose Baled(^d)</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>(100)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible liquid(^c)(^i)</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>H-2 or H-3</td>
<td>120(^c)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>H-2 or H-3</td>
<td>330(^a)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>H-2 or H-3</td>
<td>13,200(^a)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer fireworks</td>
<td>1.4G</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>125(^c)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryogenic flammable</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>45(^d)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryogenic inert</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>120d</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryogenic oxidizing</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>45(^d)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives</td>
<td>Division 1.1</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1(^c)</td>
<td>(1)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.2</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1(^c)</td>
<td>(1)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.3</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>5(^c)</td>
<td>(5)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.4</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>50(^c)</td>
<td>(50)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.4G</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>125(^d)</td>
<td>1(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.5</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1(^e)</td>
<td>(1)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Division 1.6</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1(^e)</td>
<td>(1)(^e)</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammable gas</td>
<td>Gaseous Liquidified</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>1,000(^d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammable liquid(^d)</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>30(^d)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IB and IC</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>120(^d)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

**TABLE 307.1(1)—continued**

**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARD**<sup>1, 2, 3, 4</sup>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED</th>
<th>STORAGE&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>USE-OPEN SYSTEMS&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Solid pounds (cubic feet)</td>
<td>Liquid gallons (pounds)</td>
<td>Gas cubic feet at NTP</td>
<td>Solid pounds (cubic feet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammable solid</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>125&lt;sup&gt;e, f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inert gas</td>
<td>Gaseous Liquified</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic peroxide</td>
<td>UD</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(1)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>5&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(5)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>50&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(125)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>125&lt;sup&gt;d, e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidizer</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(1)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(10&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>H-2 or H-3</td>
<td>10&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(10)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(250)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>250&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(250)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(4,000)&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>4,000&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(4,000)&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>50&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidizing gas</td>
<td>Gaseous Liquified</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>(150)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1,500&lt;sup&gt;e, f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrophoric</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>4&lt;sup&gt;e, f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(4)&lt;sup&gt;e, f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>50&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable (reactive)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(1)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>H-1 or H-2</td>
<td>5&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(5)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>5&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(5)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>5&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(5)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>(50)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m³, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

NL = Not Limited; NA = Not Applicable; UD = Unclassified Detonable.

1. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
2. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity listed for storage.
3. The quantities of alcoholic beverages in retail and wholesale sales occupancies shall not be limited provided the liquids are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
4. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
5. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent when stored in approved storage cabinets, day boxes, gas cabinets, gas rooms or exhausted enclosures or in listed safety cans in accordance with Section 5003.9.10 of the Fire Code. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
6. Quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
7. Allowed only in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
8. Containing not more than the maximum allowable quantity per control area of Class IA, IB or IC flammable liquids.
9. The maximum allowable quantity shall not apply to fuel oil storage complying with Section 603.3.2 of the Fire Code.
10. Quantities in parenthesis indicate quantity units at the head of each column.
11. A maximum quantity of 200 pounds of solid or 20 gallons of liquid Class 3 oxidizers is allowed when such materials are necessary for maintenance purposes, operation or sanitation of equipment when the storage containers and the manner of storage are approved.
12. Net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks. Where the net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks is not known, 25 percent of the gross weight of the fireworks, including packaging, shall be used.
13. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the Fire Code.
14. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
15. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
16. The following shall not be included in determining the maximum allowable quantities:
   1. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on vehicles.
   2. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on motorized equipment operated in accordance with the Fire Code.
   4. Liquid fuels in piping systems and fixed appliances regulated by the Mechanical Code.
   5. Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids in dispensers that are installed in accordance with Sections 5705.5 and 5705.5.1 of the Fire Code. The location of the alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR) dispensers shall be provided in the construction documents.
17. Where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

106 2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE
**USE AND OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION**

### TABLE 307.1(2)

**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIAL POSING A HEALTH HAZARD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STORAGE&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>USE-OPEN SYSTEMS&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Solid pounds&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Liquid gallons (pounds)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds)&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrosives</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Gaseous 80&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; Liquefied (150)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highly Toxic</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>(10)</td>
<td>Gaseous 20&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; Liquefied (4)&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>(500)</td>
<td>Gaseous 80&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt; Liquefied (150)&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

- a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
- b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity listed for storage.
- c. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids and with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
- d. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent where stored in approved storage cabinets, gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the Fire Code. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- f. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
- g. Allowed only where stored in approved exhausted gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the Fire Code.
- h. Quantities in parenthesis indicate quantity units in parenthesis at the head of each column.
- i. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the Fire Code.

**Organic peroxides, unclassified detonable**

Oxidizers, Class 4

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3 detonable and Class 4

**307.3.1 Occupancies containing explosives not classified as H-1.** The following occupancies containing explosive materials shall be classified as follows:

1. Division 1.3 explosive materials that are used and maintained in a form where either confinement or configuration will not elevate the hazard from a mass fire to mass explosion hazard shall be allowed in H-2 occupancies.

2. Articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as a Division 1.4 explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives regulations, or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles shall be allowed in H-3 occupancies.

**307.4 High-hazard Group H-2.** Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a deflagration hazard or a hazard from accelerated burning shall be classified as Group H-2. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa).
- Combustible fibers, other than densely packed baled cotton, where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

**307.5 High-hazard Group H-3.** Buildings and structures containing materials that readily support combustion or that pose a physical hazard shall be classified as Group H-3. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa) or less.
- Pyrophoric liquids, solids and gases, nondetonable.
- Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3, nondetonable.
- Water-reactive materials, Class 3.
307.6 High-hazard Group H-4. Buildings and structures containing materials that are health hazards shall be classified as Group H-4. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Corrosives
- Highly toxic materials
- Toxic materials

307.7 High-hazard Group H-5. Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas in which hazardous production materials (HPM) are used and the aggregate quantity of materials is in excess of those listed in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) shall be classified as Group H-5. Such facilities and areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 415.11.

307.8 Multiple hazards. Buildings and structures containing a material or materials representing hazards that are classified in one or more of Groups H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 shall conform to the code requirements for each of the occupancies so classified.

SECTION 308
INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I

308.1 Institutional Group I. Institutional Group I occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, in which care or supervision is provided to persons who are or are not capable of self-preservation without physical assistance or in which persons are detained for penal or correctional purposes or in which the liberty of the occupants is restricted. Institutional occupancies shall be classified as Group I-1, I-2, I-3 or I-4.

308.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

- 24-HOUR BASIS
- CUSTODIAL CARE
- DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES
- FOSTER CARE FACILITIES
- HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS
- INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION
- MEDICAL CARE
- NURSING HOMES

308.3 Institutional Group I-1. Institutional Group I-1 occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised environment and receive custodial care. Buildings of Group I-1 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 308.3.1 or 308.3.2. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Alcohol and drug centers
- Assisted living facilities
- Congregate care facilities

308.3.1 Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which all persons receiving custodial care who, without any assistance, are capable of responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

308.3.2 Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which there are any persons receiving custodial care who require limited verbal or physical assistance while responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

308.3.3 Seven to 16 persons receiving custodial care. A facility housing not fewer than seven and not more than 16 persons receiving custodial care shall be classified as Group R-4.

308.3.4 Six or fewer persons receiving custodial care. A facility with six or fewer persons receiving custodial care shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the Residential Code, provided that an automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the Residential Code.

308.4 Institutional Group I-2. Institutional Group I-2 occupancy shall include buildings and structures used for medical care on a 24-hour basis for more than six persons who are incapable of self-preservation. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Foster care facilities.
2. Detoxification facilities.
3. Hospitals.
4. Nursing homes.
5. Psychiatric hospitals.

308.4.1 Occupancy conditions. Buildings of Group I-2 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 308.4.1.1 or 308.4.1.2.

308.4.1.1 Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include facilities that provide nursing and medical care but do not provide emergency care, surgery, obstetrics or in-patient stabilization units for psychiatric or detoxification, including but not limited to nursing homes and foster care facilities.

308.4.1.2 Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include facilities that provide nursing and medical care and could provide emergency care, surgery, obstetrics or in-patient stabilization units for psychiatric or detoxification, including but not limited to hospitals.

308.4.2 Six or fewer persons receiving medical care. A facility with six or fewer persons receiving medical care shall be classified as Group R-3 or shall comply with the
308.5 Institutional Group I-3. Institutional Group I-3 occupancy shall include buildings and structures that are inhabited by more than five persons who are under restraint or security. A Group I-3 facility is occupied by persons who are generally incapable of self-preservation due to security measures not under the occupants’ control. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Correctional centers
- Detention centers
- Jails
- Prerlease centers
- Prisons
- Reformatories

Buildings of Group I-3 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Sections 308.5.1 through 308.5.5 (see Section 408.1).

308.5.1 Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas, and other spaces where access or occupancy is permitted, to the exterior via means of egress without restraint. A Condition 1 facility is permitted to be constructed as Group R.

308.5.2 Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and any other occupied smoke compartment to one or more other smoke compartments. Egress to the exterior is impeded by locked exits.

308.5.3 Condition 3. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed within individual smoke compartments, such as within a residential unit comprised of individual sleeping units and group activity spaces, where egress is impeded by remote-controlled release of means of egress from such a smoke compartment to another smoke compartment.

308.5.4 Condition 4. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Remote-controlled release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

308.5.5 Condition 5. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Staff-controlled manual release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

308.6 Institutional Group I-4, day care facilities. Institutional Group I-4 occupancy shall include buildings and structures occupied by more than five persons of any age who receive custodial care for fewer than 24 hours per day by persons other than parents or guardians, relatives by blood, marriage or adoption, and in a place other than the home of the person cared for. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Adult day care
- Child day care

308.6.1 Classification as Group E. A child day care facility that provides care for more than five but not more than 100 children 2½ years or less of age, where the rooms in which the children are cared for are located on a level of exit discharge serving such rooms and each of these child care rooms has an exit door directly to the exterior, shall be classified as Group E.

308.6.2 Within a place of religious worship. Rooms and spaces within places of religious worship providing such care during religious functions shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

308.6.3 Five or fewer persons receiving care. A facility having five or fewer persons receiving custodial care in a facility other than a dwelling unit within the scope of Section 308.6.4, shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

308.6.4 Persons receiving custodial care in a dwelling unit. A facility providing custodial care in a dwelling unit within either (1) a detached one- or two-family dwelling or townhouse within the scope of the Residential Code, or (2) a Group R-3 dwelling, shall comply with Appendix M of the Residential Code.

SECTION 309
MERCANTILE GROUP M

309.1 Mercantile Group M. Mercantile Group M occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof for the display and sale of merchandise, and involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and accessible to the public. Mercantile occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Department stores
- Drug stores
- Markets
- Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
- Retail or wholesale stores
- Sales rooms

309.2 Quantity of hazardous materials. The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials stored or displayed in a single control area of a Group M occupancy shall not exceed the quantities in Table 414.2.5(1).

SECTION 310
RESIDENTIAL GROUP R

310.1 Residential Group R. Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I or when not regulated by the Residential Code.
310.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

**BOARDING HOUSE.**

**CONGREGATE LIVING FACILITIES.**

**DORMITORY.**

**GROUP HOME.**

**GUEST ROOM.**

**LODGING HOUSE.**

**PERSONAL CARE SERVICE.**

**TRANSIENT.**

310.3 Residential Group R-1. Residential Group R-1 occupancies containing sleeping units where the occupants are primarily transient in nature, including:

- Boarding houses (transient) with more than 10 occupants
- Congregate living facilities (transient) with more than 10 occupants
- Hotels (transient)
- Motels (transient)

310.4 Residential Group R-2. Residential Group R-2 occupancies containing sleeping units or more than two dwelling units where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature, including:

- Apartment houses
- Boarding houses (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
- Congregate living facilities (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
- Convents
- Dormitories
- Fraternities and sororities
- Hotels (nontransient)
- Live/work units
- Monasteries
- Motels (nontransient)
- Vacation timeshare properties

310.5 Residential Group R-3. Residential Group R-3 occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature and not classified as Group R-1, R-2, R-4 or I, including:

1. Buildings that do not contain more than two dwelling units.
2. Boarding houses (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants.
3. Boarding houses (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants.
4. Care facilities that provide accommodations for six or fewer persons receiving care.
5. Congregate living facilities (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants.
6. Congregate living facilities (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants.
7. Lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms.

310.5.1 Care facilities within a dwelling. Care facilities for six or fewer persons receiving care that are within detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses are permitted to comply with the Residential Code, provided that an automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the Residential Code.

310.5.2 Lodging houses. Owner-occupied lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the Residential Code.

310.6 Residential Group R-4. Residential Group R-4 occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than six but not more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised residential environment and receive custodial care. Buildings of Group R-4 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 310.6.1 or 310.6.2. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Alcohol and drug centers.
2. Assisted living facilities.
3. Congregate care facilities.
5. Group homes.
6. Halfway houses.
7. Residential board and custodial care facilities.
8. Social rehabilitation facilities.

Group R-4 occupancies shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in this code.

310.6.1 Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which all persons receiving custodial care, without any assistance, are capable of responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

310.6.2 Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which there are any persons receiving custodial care who require limited verbal or physical assistance while responding to an emergency situation to complete building evacuation.

SECTION 311

STORAGE GROUP S

311.1 Storage Group S. Storage Group S occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a hazardous occupancy.

311.1.1 Accessory storage spaces. A room or space used for storage purposes that is less than 100 square feet (9.3 m²) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as part of that occupancy. The aggregate area of such rooms or spaces shall not exceed the allowable area limits of Section 508.2.
311.2 Moderate-hazard storage, Group S-1. Storage Group S-1 occupancies are buildings occupied for storage uses that are not classified as Group S-2, including, but not limited to, storage of the following:

- Aerosols, Levels 2 and 3
- Aircraft hangar (storage and repair)
- Bags: cloth, burlap and paper
- Bamboos and rattan
- Baskets
- Belting: canvas and leather
- Books and paper in rolls or packs
- Boots and shoes
- Buttons, including cloth covered, pearl or bone
- Cardboard and cardboard boxes
- Clothing, woolen wearing apparel
- Cordage
- Dry boat storage (indoor)
- Furniture
- Furs
- Glues, mucilage, pastes and size
- Grains
- Horns and combs, other than celluloid
- Leather
- Linoleum
- Lumber
- Motor vehicle repair garages complying with the maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials listed in Table 307.1(1) (see Section 406.8)
- Photo engravings
- Resilient flooring
- Silks
- Soaps
- Sugar
- Tires, bulk storage of
- Tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and snuff
- Upholstery and mattresses
- Wax candles

311.3 Low-hazard storage, Group S-2. Storage Group S-2 occupancies include, among others, buildings used for the storage of noncombustible materials such as products on wood pallets or in paper cartons with or without single thickness divisions; or in paper wrappings. Such products are permitted to have a negligible amount of plastic trim, such as knobs, handles or film wrapping. Group S-2 storage uses shall include, but not be limited to, storage of the following:

- Asbestos
- Beverages up to and including 16-percent alcohol in metal, glass or ceramic containers
- Cement in bags
- Chalk and crayons
- Dairy products in nonwaxed coated paper containers
- Dry cell batteries
- Electrical coils
- Electrical motors
- Empty cans
- Food products
- Foods in noncombustible containers
- Fresh fruits and vegetables in nonplastic trays or containers
- Frozen foods
- Glass
- Glass bottles, empty or filled with noncombustible liquids
- Gypsum board
- Inert pigments
- Ivory
- Meats
- Metal cabinets
- Metal desks with plastic tops and trim
- Metal parts
- Metals
- Mirrors
- Oil-filled and other types of distribution transformers
- Parking garages, open or enclosed
- Porcelain and pottery
- Stoves
- Talc and soapstones
- Washers and dryers

SECTION 312
UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

312.1 General. Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy shall be constructed, equipped and maintained to conform to the requirements of this code commensurate with the fire and life hazard incidental to their occupancy. Group U shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Agricultural buildings
- Aircraft hangars, accessory to a one- or two-family residence (see Section 412.5)
- Barns
- Carports
- Fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height
- Grain silos, accessory to a residential occupancy
- Greenhouses
- Livestock shelters
- Private garages
- Retaining walls
- Sheds
- Stables
- Tanks
- Towers
CHAPTER 4
SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

SECTION 401
SCOPE
401.1 Detailed use and occupancy requirements. In addition to the occupancy and construction requirements in this code, the provisions of this chapter apply to the special uses and occupancies described herein.

SECTION 402
COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS
402.1 Applicability. The provisions of this section shall apply to buildings or structures defined herein as covered or open mall buildings not exceeding three floor levels at any point nor more than three stories above grade plane. Except as specifically required by this section, covered and open mall buildings shall meet applicable provisions of this code.

Exceptions:
1. Foyers and lobbies of Groups B, R-1 and R-2 are not required to comply with this section.
2. Buildings need not comply with the provisions of this section where they totally comply with other applicable provisions of this code.

402.1.1 Open space. A covered mall building and attached anchor buildings and parking garages shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space or not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm). An open mall building and anchor buildings and parking garages adjoining the perimeter line shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space of not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm).

Exception: The permanent open space of 60 feet (18 288 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm), provided the following requirements are met:
1. The reduced open space shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the covered or open mall building and anchor buildings;
2. The exterior wall facing the reduced open space shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours;
3. Openings in the exterior wall facing the reduced open space shall have opening protectives with a fire protection rating of not less than 3 hours; and
4. Group E, I, I or R occupancies are not located within the covered or open mall building or anchor buildings.

402.1.2 Open mall building perimeter line. For the purpose of this code, a perimeter line shall be established. The perimeter line shall encircle all buildings and structures that comprise the open mall building and shall encompass any open-air interior walkways, open-air courtyards or similar open-air spaces. The perimeter line shall define the extent of the open mall building. Anchor buildings and parking structures shall be outside of the perimeter line and are not considered as part of the open mall building.

402.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
ANCHOR BUILDING.
COVERED MALL BUILDING.
Mall.
Open mall.
Open mall building.
FOOD COURT.
GROSS LEASABLE AREA.

402.3 Lease plan. Each owner of a covered mall building or of an open mall building shall provide both the building and fire departments with a lease plan showing the location of each occupancy and its exits after the certificate of occupancy has been issued. No modifications or changes in occupancy or use shall be made from that shown on the lease plan without prior approval of the building official.

402.4 Construction. The construction of covered and open mall buildings, anchor buildings and parking garages associated with a mall building shall comply with Sections 402.4.1 through 402.4.3.

402.4.1 Area and types of construction. The building area and type of construction of covered mall or open mall buildings, anchor buildings and parking garages shall comply with this section.

402.4.1.1 Covered and open mall buildings. The building area of any covered mall or open mall building shall not be limited provided the covered mall or open mall building does not exceed three floor levels at any point nor three stories above grade plane, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

402.4.1.2 Anchor buildings. The building area and building height of any anchor building shall be based on the type of construction as required by Section 503 as modified by Sections 504 and 506.

Exception: The building area of any anchor building shall not be limited provided the anchor building is not more than three stories above grade plane, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

402.4.1.3 Parking garage. The building area and building height of any parking garage, open or enclosed, shall be based on the type of construction as required by Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.
402.4.2 Fire-resistance-rated separation. Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between tenant spaces and the mall. Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between a food court and adjacent tenant spaces or the mall.

402.4.2.1 Tenant separations. Each tenant space shall be separated from other tenant spaces by a fire partition complying with Section 708. A tenant separation wall is not required between any tenant space and the mall.

402.4.2.2 Anchor building separation. An anchor building shall be separated from the covered or open mall building by fire walls complying with Section 706.

Exceptions:

1. Anchor buildings of not more than three stories above grade plane that have an occupancy classification the same as that permitted for tenants of the mall building shall be separated by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire barriers complying with Section 707.

2. The exterior walls of anchor buildings separated from an open mall building by an open mall shall comply with Table 602.

402.4.2.2.1 Openings between anchor building and mall. Except for the separation between Group R-1 sleeping units and the mall, openings between anchor buildings of Type IA, IB, IIA or IIB construction and the mall need not be protected.

402.4.2.3 Parking garages. An attached garage for the storage of passenger vehicles having a capacity of not more than nine persons and open parking garages shall be considered as a separate building where it is separated from the covered or open mall building or anchor building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Parking garages, open or enclosed, which are separated from covered mall buildings, open mall buildings or anchor buildings, shall comply with the provisions of Table 602.

Pedestrian walkways and tunnels that connect garages to mall buildings or anchor buildings shall be constructed in accordance with Section 3104.

402.4.3 Open mall construction. Floor assemblies in, and roof assemblies over, the open mall of an open mall building shall be open to the atmosphere for not less than 20 feet (9096 mm), measured perpendicular from the face of the tenant spaces on the lowest level, from edge of balcony to edge of balcony on upper floors and from edge of roof line to edge of roof line. The openings within, or the unroofed area of, an open mall shall extend from the lowest/grade level of the open mall through the entire roof assembly. Balconies on upper levels of the mall shall not project into the required width of the opening.

402.4.3.1 Pedestrian walkways. Pedestrian walkways connecting balconies in an open mall shall be located not less than 20 feet (9096 mm) from any other pedestrian walkway.

402.5 Automatic sprinkler system. Covered and open mall buildings and buildings connected shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with all of the following:

1. The automatic sprinkler system shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space in the mall building prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with approved alternative protection.

2. Sprinkler protection for the mall of a covered mall building shall be independent from that provided for tenant spaces or anchor buildings.

3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an open mall building shall be independent from that provided for anchor buildings.

4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located adjacent to an open mall.

5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently controlled.

Exception: An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of open parking garages separated from the covered or open mall building in accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 and constructed in accordance with Section 406.5.

402.6 Interior finishes and features. Interior finishes within the mall and installations within the mall shall comply with Sections 402.6.1 through 402.6.4.

402.6.1 Interior finish. Interior wall and ceiling finishes within the mall of a covered mall building and within the exits of covered or open mall buildings shall have a minimum flame spread index and smoke-developed index of Class B in accordance with Chapter 8. Interior floor finishes shall meet the requirements of Section 804.

402.6.2 Kiosks. Kiosks and similar structures (temporary or permanent) located within the mall of a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building shall meet the following requirements:

1. Combustible kiosks or other structures shall not be located within a covered or open mall unless constructed of any of the following materials:

   1.1. Fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.

   1.2. Foam plastics having a maximum heat release rate not greater than 100 kW (105 Btu/h) when tested in accordance with the exhibit booth protocol in UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source.

   1.3. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A inte-
402.6.4 Plastic signs. Plastic signs affixed to the storefront of any tenant space facing a mall or open mall shall be limited as specified in Sections 402.6.4.1 through 402.6.4.5.

402.6.4.1 Area. Plastic signs shall be not more than 20 percent of the wall area facing the mall.

402.6.4.2 Height and width. Plastic signs shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) in height, except that where the sign is vertical, the height shall not be greater than 96 inches (2438 mm) and the width shall not be greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

402.6.4.3 Location. Plastic signs shall be located not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from adjacent tenants.

402.6.4.4 Plastics other than foam plastics. Plastics other than foam plastics used in signs shall be light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.4 or shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929, and a flame spread index not greater than 75 and smoke-developed index not greater than 450 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 or meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286.

402.6.4.4.1 Encasement. Edges and backs of plastic signs in the mall shall be fully encased in metal.

402.6.4.5 Foam plastics. Foam plastics used in signs shall have flame-retardant characteristics such that the sign has a maximum heat-release rate of 150 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source, and the foam plastics shall have the physical characteristics specified in this section. Foam plastics used in signs installed in accordance with Section 402.6.4 shall not be required to comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed indices specified in Section 2603.3.

402.6.4.5.1 Density. The density of foam plastics used in signs shall be not less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/m³).

402.6.4.5.2 Thickness. The thickness of foam plastic signs shall not be greater than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

402.7 Emergency systems. Covered and open mall buildings, anchor buildings and associated parking garages shall be provided with emergency systems complying with Sections 402.7.1 through 402.7.5.

402.7.1 Standpipe system. Covered and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.3.

402.7.2 Smoke control. Where a covered mall building contains an atrium, a smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Section 404.5.

Exception: A smoke control system is not required in covered mall buildings where an atrium connects only two stories.

402.7.3 Emergency power. Covered mall buildings greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) in area and open mall buildings greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) within the established perimeter line shall be provided with emergency power that is capable of operating the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 2702.

402.7.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. Where the total floor area is greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided.

Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

402.7.5 Fire department access to equipment. Rooms or areas containing controls for air-conditioning systems, automatic fire-extinguishing systems, automatic sprinkler systems or other detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for use by the fire department.

402.8 Means of egress. Covered mall buildings, open mall buildings and each tenant space within a mall building shall be provided with means of egress as required by this section and this code. Where there is a conflict between the requirements of this code and the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8, the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8 shall apply.

402.8.1 Mall width. For the purpose of providing required egress, malls are permitted to be considered as corridors but need not comply with the requirements of Section 1005.1 of this code where the width of the mall is as specified in this section.

402.8.1.1 Minimum width. The aggregate clear egress width of the mall in either a covered or open mall building shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm). The mall width shall be sufficient to accommodate the
occupant load served. No portion of the minimum required aggregate egress width shall be less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured to a height of 8 feet (2438 mm) between any projection of a tenant space bordering the mall and the nearest kiosk, vending machine, bench, display opening, food court or other obstruction to means of egress travel.

402.8.2 Determination of occupant load. The occupant load permitted in any individual tenant space in a covered or open mall building shall be determined as required by this code. Means of egress requirements for individual tenant spaces shall be based on the occupant load thus determined.

402.8.2.1 Occupant formula. In determining required means of egress of the mall, the number of occupants for whom means of egress are to be provided shall be based on gross leasable area of the covered or open mall building (excluding anchor buildings) and the occupant load factor as determined by Equation 4-1.

\[ OLF = (0.00007)(GLA) + 25 \quad \text{ (Equation 4-1)} \]

where:

\[ OLF = \text{The occupant load factor (square feet per person).} \]
\[ GLA = \text{The gross leasable area (square feet).} \]

**Exception:** Tenant spaces attached to a covered or open mall building but with a means of egress system that is totally independent of the open mall of an open mall building or of a covered mall building shall not be considered as gross leasable area for determining the required means of egress for the mall building.

402.8.2.2 OLF range. The occupant load factor (OLF) is not required to be less than 30 and shall not exceed 50.

402.8.2.3 Anchor buildings. The occupant load of anchor buildings opening into the mall shall not be included in computing the total number of occupants for the mall.

402.8.2.4 Food courts. The occupant load of a food court shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004. For the purposes of determining the means of egress requirements for the mall, the food court occupant load shall be added to the occupant load of the covered or open mall building as calculated above.

402.8.3 Number of means of egress. Wherever the distance of travel to the mall from any location within a tenant space used by persons other than employees is greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) or the tenant space has an occupant load of 50 or more, no fewer than two means of egress shall be provided.

402.8.4 Arrangements of means of egress. Assembly occupancies with an occupant load of 500 or more located within a covered mall building shall be so located such that their entrance will be immediately adjacent to a principal entrance to the mall and shall have not less than one-half of their required means of egress opening directly to the exterior of the covered mall building. Assembly occupancies located within the perimeter line of an open mall building shall be permitted to have their main exit open to the open mall.

402.8.4.1 Anchor building means of egress. Required means of egress for anchor buildings shall be provided independently from the mall means of egress system. The occupant load of anchor buildings opening into the mall shall not be included in determining means of egress requirements for the mall. The path of egress travel of malls shall not exit through anchor buildings. Malls terminating at an anchor building where no other means of egress has been provided shall be considered as a dead-end mall.

402.8.5 Distance to exits. Within each individual tenant space in a covered or open mall building, the distance of travel from any point to an exit or entrance to the mall shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

The distance of travel from any point within a mall of a covered mall building to an exit shall not be greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The maximum distance of travel from any point within an open mall to the perimeter line of the open mall building shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

402.8.6 Access to exits. Where more than one exit is required, they shall be so arranged that it is possible to travel in either direction from any point in a mall of a covered mall building to separate exits or from any point in an open mall of an open mall building to two separate locations on the perimeter line, provided neither location is an exterior wall of an anchor building or parking garage. The width of an exit passageway or corridor from a mall shall be not less than 66 inches (1676 mm).

**Exception:** Access to exits is permitted by way of a dead-end mall that does not exceed a length equal to twice the width of the mall measured at the narrowest location within the dead-end portion of the mall.

402.8.6.1 Exit passageways. Where exit passageways provide a secondary means of egress from a tenant space, doorways to the exit passageway shall be protected by 1-hour fire door assemblies that are self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

402.8.7 Service areas fronting on exit passageways. Mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, building service areas and service elevators are permitted to open directly into exit passageways, provided the exit passageway is separated from such rooms with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire protection rating of openings in the fire barriers shall be not less than 1 hour.
402.8.8 Security grilles and doors. Horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles or doors that are a part of a required means of egress shall conform to the following:

1. Doors and grilles shall remain in the full open position during the period of occupancy by the general public.
2. Doors or grilles shall not be brought to the closed position when there are 10 or more persons occupying spaces served by a single exit or 50 or more persons occupying spaces served by more than one exit.
3. The doors or grilles shall be openable from within without the use of any special knowledge or effort where the space is occupied.
4. Where two or more exits are required, not more than one-half of the exits shall be permitted to include either a horizontal sliding or vertical rolling grille or door.

SECTION 403
HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS

403.2 Construction. The construction of high-rise buildings shall comply with the provisions of Sections 403.2.1 through 403.2.4.

403.2.1 Reduction in fire-resistance rating. The fire-resistance rating reductions listed in Sections 403.2.1.1 and 403.2.1.2 shall be allowed in buildings that have sprinkler control valves equipped with supervisory initiating devices and water-flow initiating devices for each floor.

403.2.1.1 Type of construction. The following reductions in the minimum fire-resistance rating of the building elements in Table 601 shall be permitted as follows:

1. For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in building height, the fire-resistance rating of the building elements in Type IA construction shall be permitted to be reduced to the minimum fire-resistance ratings for the building elements in Type IB.

Exception: The required fire-resistance rating of columns supporting floors shall not be reduced.

2. In other than Group F-1, M and S-1 occupancies, the fire-resistance rating of the building elements in Type IB construction shall be permitted to be reduced to the fire-resistance ratings in Type IIA.

3. The building height and building area limitations of a building containing building elements with reduced fire-resistance ratings shall be permitted to be the same as the building without such reductions.

403.2.1.2 Shaft enclosures. For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in building height, the required fire-resistance rating of the fire barriers enclosing vertical shafts, other than interior exit stairway and elevator hoistway enclosures, is permitted to be reduced to 1 hour where automatic sprinklers are installed within the shafts at the top and at alternate floor levels.

403.2.2 Seismic considerations. For seismic considerations, see Chapter 16.

403.2.3 Structural integrity of interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures. For high-rise buildings of Risk Category III or IV in accordance with Section 1604.5, and for all buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in building height, enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

403.2.3.1 Wall assembly. The wall assemblies making up the enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures shall meet or exceed Soft Body Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

403.2.3.2 Wall assembly materials. The face of the wall assemblies making up the enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures that are not exposed to the interior of the enclosures for interior exit stairways or elevator hoistway enclosure shall be constructed in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. The wall assembly shall incorporate no fewer than two layers of impact-resistant construction board each of which meets or exceeds Hard Body...
Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

2. The wall assembly shall incorporate no fewer than one layer of impact-resistant construction material that meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

3. The wall assembly incorporates multiple layers of any material, tested in tandem, that meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

### 403.2.3.3 Concrete and masonry walls

Concrete or masonry walls shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of Sections 403.2.3.1 and 403.2.3.2.

### 403.2.3.4 Other wall assemblies

Any other wall assembly that provides impact resistance equivalent to that required by Sections 403.2.3.1 and 403.2.3.2 for Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3, as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M, shall be permitted.

### 403.2.4 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM)

The bond strength of the SFRM installed throughout the building shall be in accordance with Table 403.2.4.

#### TABLE 403.2.4 MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HEIGHT OF BUILDING*</th>
<th>SFRM MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 420 feet</td>
<td>430 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 420 feet</td>
<td>1,000 psf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kW/m².

### 403.3 Automatic sprinkler system

Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and a secondary water supply where required by Section 403.3.3.

**Exception:** An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of:

1. **Open parking garages** in accordance with Section 406.5.
2. Telecommunications equipment buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

### 403.3.1 Number of sprinkler risers and system design

Each sprinkler system zone in buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in building height shall be supplied by no fewer than two risers. Each riser shall supply sprinklers on alternate floors. If more than two risers are provided for a zone, sprinklers on adjacent floors shall not be supplied from the same riser.

#### 403.3.1.1 Riser location

Sprinkler risers shall be placed in interior exit stairways and ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

#### 403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps

In buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in building height, required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

**Exception:** Two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided the main is valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue without interruption through no fewer than one of the connections.

#### 403.3.3 Secondary water supply

An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a capacity not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream requirement, shall be provided for high-rise buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the suction side of the fire pump supplying the automatic sprinkler system. The secondary water supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes.

#### 403.3.4 Fire pump room

Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance with Section 913.2.1.

### 403.4 Emergency systems

The detection, alarm and emergency systems of high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.4.1 through 403.4.8.

#### 403.4.1 Smoke detection

Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1.

#### 403.4.2 Fire alarm system

A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.

#### 403.4.3 Standpipe system

A high-rise building shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

#### 403.4.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system

An emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

#### 403.4.5 Emergency responder radio coverage

Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in accordance with Section 510 of the Fire Code.

#### 403.4.6 Fire command

A fire command center complying with Section 911 shall be provided in a location approved by the fire department.

#### 403.4.7 Smoke removal

To facilitate smoke removal in post-fire salvage and overhaul operations, buildings and
structures shall be equipped with natural or mechanical *ventilation* for removal of products of combustion in accordance with one of the following:

1. Easily identifiable, manually operable windows or panels shall be distributed around the perimeter of each floor at not more than 50-foot (15 240 mm) intervals. The area of operable windows or panels shall be not less than 40 square feet (3.7 m²) per 50 linear feet (15 240 mm) of perimeter.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group R-1 occupancies, each *sleeping unit* or suite having an *exterior wall* shall be permitted to be provided with 2 square feet (0.19 m²) of venting area in lieu of the area specified in Item 1.
2. Windows shall be permitted to be fixed provided that glazing can be cleared by fire fighters.

2. Mechanical air-handling equipment providing one exhaust air change every 15 minutes for the area involved. Return and exhaust air shall be moved directly to the outside without recirculation to other portions of the building.

3. Any other approved design that will produce equivalent results.

### 403.4.8 Standby and emergency power

A standby power system complying with Section 2702 and Section 3003 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.3. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.4.

#### 403.4.8.1 Equipment room

If the standby or emergency power system includes a generator set inside a building, the system shall be located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. System supervision with manual start and transfer features shall be provided at the fire command center.

**Exception:** In Group I-2, Condition 2, manual start and transfer features for the critical branch of the emergency power are not required to be provided at the fire command center.

#### 403.4.8.2 Fuel line piping protection

Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a building shall be separated from the building other than the room the generator is located in by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

#### 403.4.8.3 Standby power loads

The following are classified as standby power loads:

1. Power and lighting for the *fire command center* required by Section 403.4.6.
2. *Ventilation* and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
3. Elevators.

4. Where elevators are provided in a high-rise building for accessible means of egress, fire service access or occupant self-evacuation, the standby power system shall also comply with Sections 1009.4, 3007 or 3008, as applicable.

#### 403.4.8.4 Emergency power loads

The following are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Exit signs and means of egress illumination required by Chapter 10.
2. Elevator car lighting.
3. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
4. Automatic fire detection systems.
5. *Fire alarm* systems.
6. Electrically powered fire pumps.

### 403.5 Means of egress and evacuation

The *means of egress* in high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.5.1 through 403.5.6.

#### 403.5.1 Remoteness of interior exit stairways

Required *interior exit stairways* shall be separated by a distance not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the nearest points of the enclosure surrounding the interior exit stairways. In buildings with three or more interior exit stairways, no fewer than two of the interior exit stairways shall comply with this section. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one interior exit stairway.

#### 403.5.2 Additional interior exit stairway

For buildings other than Group R-2 that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height*, one additional interior exit stairway meeting the requirements of Sections 1011 and 1023 shall be provided in addition to the minimum number of exits required by Section 1006.3. The total width of any combination of remaining interior exit stairways with one interior exit stairway removed shall not be less than the total width required by Section 1005.1. Scissor stairways shall not be considered the additional interior exit stairway required by this section.

**Exception:** An additional interior exit stairway shall not be required to be installed in buildings having elevators used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

#### 403.5.3 Stairway door operation

Stairway doors other than the *exit discharge* doors shall be permitted to be locked from the stairway side. Stairway doors that are locked from the stairway side shall be capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the fire command center.

#### 403.5.3.1 Stairway communication system

A telephone or other two-way communications system con-
nected to an approved constantly attended station shall be provided at not less than every fifth floor in each stairway where the doors to the stairway are locked.

403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures. Every required interior exit stairway serving floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a smokeproof enclosure in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11.

403.5.5 Luminous egress path markings. Luminous egress path markings shall be provided in accordance with Section 1025.

403.5.6 Emergency escape and rescue. Emergency escape and rescue openings specified in Section 1030 are not required.

403.6 Elevators. Elevator installation and operation in high-rise buildings shall comply with Chapter 30 and Sections 403.6.1 and 403.6.2.

403.6.2 Occupant evacuation elevators. Where installed in accordance with Section 3008, passenger elevators for general public use shall be permitted to be used for occupant self-evacuation.

SECTION 404
ATRIUMS

404.1 General. In other than Group H occupancies, and where permitted by Section 712.1.7, the provisions of Sections 404.1 through 404.10 shall apply to buildings or structures containing vertical openings defined as “Atriums.”

404.1.1 Definition. The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

ATRIUM.

404.2 Use. The floor of the atrium shall not be used for other than low fire hazard uses and only approved materials and decorations in accordance with the Fire Code shall be used in the atrium space.

Exception: The atrium floor area is permitted to be used for any approved use where the individual space is provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire building.

Exceptions:

1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered provided that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

2. Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor, sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.

404.4 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.14.

404.5 Smoke control. A smoke control system shall be installed in accordance with Section 909.

Exceptions:

1. Except for Group I-2 and Group I-1, Condition 2, smoke control is not required for atriums that connect only two stories.

2. Except for Group I-2 and Group I-1, Condition 2, smoke control is not required for atriums where all exit access above the lowest level of the atrium is separated from the atrium in accordance with Section 404.6. Exception 3 to Section 404.6 shall not apply.

404.6 Enclosure of atriums. Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. A fire barrier is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided. The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:

   1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the atrium side. The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without obstruction;

   1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates; and

   1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either self-closing or automatic-closing.

2. A fire barrier is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with Section 2110 and having a 1/8-hour fire protection rating is provided.

3. A fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces of any three floors of the atrium provided such spaces are accounted for in the design of the smoke control system.

404.7 Standby power. Equipment required to provide smoke control shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 909.11.
404.8 Interior finish. The interior finish of walls and ceilings of the **atrium** shall be not less than Class B with no reduction in class for sprinkler protection.

404.9 Exit access travel distance. Exit access travel distance for areas open to an **atrium** shall comply with the requirements of this section.

404.9.1 Egress not through the **atrium**. Where required access to the exits is not through the **atrium**, exit access travel distance shall comply with Section 1017.

404.9.2 Exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge. Where the path of egress travel is through an **atrium** space, exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge shall be determined in accordance with Section 1017.

404.9.3 Exit access travel distance at other than the level of exit discharge. Where the path of egress travel is not at the level of exit discharge from the **atrium**, that portion of the total permitted exit access travel distance that occurs within the **atrium** shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

404.10 Interior exit stairways. A maximum of 50 percent of interior exit stairways are permitted to egress through an **atrium** on the level of exit discharge in accordance with Section 1028.

SECTION 405
UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS

405.1 General. The provisions of Sections 405.2 through 405.9 apply to building spaces having a floor level used for human occupancy more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exceptions: The provisions of Section 405 are not applicable to the following buildings or portions of buildings:

1. One- and two-family dwellings, sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.
2. Parking garages provided with automatic sprinkler systems in compliance with Section 405.3.
3. Fixed guideway transit systems.
4. Grandstands, bleachers, stadiums, arenas and similar facilities.
5. Where the lowest story is the only story that would qualify the building as an underground building and has an area not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m²) and has an occupant load less than 10.
6. Pumping stations and other similar mechanical spaces intended only for limited periodic use by service or maintenance personnel.

405.2 Construction requirements. The underground portion of the building shall be of Type I construction.

405.3 Automatic sprinkler system. The highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1. Water-flow switches and control valves shall be supervised in accordance with Section 903.4.

405.4 Compartmentation. Compartmentation shall be in accordance with Sections 405.4.1 through 405.4.3.

405.4.1 Number of compartments. A building having a floor level more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge shall be divided into no fewer than two compartments of approximately equal size. Such compartmentation shall extend through the highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below.

Exception: The lowest story need not be compartmented where the area is not greater than 1,500 square feet (139 m²) and has an occupant load of less than 10.

405.4.2 Smoke barrier penetration. The compartments shall be separated from each other by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Penetrations between the two compartments shall be limited to plumbing and electrical piping and conduit that are firestopped in accordance with Section 714. Doorways shall be protected by fire door assemblies that are automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and are installed in accordance with NFPA 105 and Section 716.5.3. Where provided, each compartment shall have an air supply and an exhaust system independent of the other compartments.

405.4.3 Elevators. Where elevators are provided, each compartment shall have direct access to an elevator. Where an elevator serves more than one compartment, an elevator lobby shall be provided and shall be separated from each compartment by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Doors shall be gasketed, have a drop sill and be automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

405.5 Smoke control system. A smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 405.5.1 and 405.5.2.

405.5.1 Control system. A smoke control system is required to control the migration of products of combustion in accordance with Section 909 and the provisions of this section. Smoke control shall restrict movement of smoke to the general area of fire origin and maintain means of egress in a usable condition.

405.5.2 Compartment smoke control system. Where compartmentation is required, each compartment shall have an independent smoke control system. The system shall be automatically activated and capable of manual operation in accordance with Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

405.6 Fire alarm systems. A fire alarm system shall be provided where required by Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

405.7 Means of egress. Means of egress shall be in accordance with Sections 405.7.1 and 405.7.2.

405.7.1 Number of exits. Each floor level shall be provided with no fewer than two exits. Where compartmentation is required by Section 405.4, each compartment shall have no fewer than one exit and shall also have no fewer
than one exit access doorway into the adjoining compartment.

405.7.2 Smokeproof enclosure. Every required stairway serving floor levels more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of its level of exit discharge shall comply with the requirements for a smokeproof enclosure as provided in Section 1023.11.

405.8 Standby and emergency power. A standby power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 405.8.1. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 405.8.2.

405.8.1 Standby power loads. The following loads are classified as standby power loads:

1. Smoke control system.
2. Ventilation and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
3. Fire pumps.
4. Elevators, as required in Section 3003.

405.8.2 Emergency power loads. The following loads are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
2. Fire alarm systems.
3. Automatic fire detection systems.
4. Elevator car lighting.
5. Means of egress and exit sign illumination as required by Chapter 10.

405.9 Standpipe system. The underground building shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system in accordance with Section 905.

SECTION 406
MOTOR-VEHICLE-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

406.1 General. Motor-vehicle-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 406.1 through 406.8.

406.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.
OPEN PARKING GARAGE.
PRIVATE GARAGE.
RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.

406.3 Private garages and carports. Private garages and carports shall comply with Sections 406.3.1 through 406.3.6.

406.3.1 Classification. Private garages and carports shall be classified as Group U occupancies. Each private garage shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area. Multiple private garages are permitted in a building where each private garage is separated from the other private garages by 1-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707, or 1-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

406.3.2 Clear height. In private garages and carports, the clear height in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Vehicle and pedestrian areas accommodating van-accessible parking shall comply with Section 1106.5.

406.3.3 Garage floor surfaces. Garage floor surfaces shall be of approved noncombustible material. The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

406.3.4 Separation. For other than private garages adjacent to dwelling units, the separation of private garages from other occupancies shall comply with Section 508. Separation of private garages from dwelling units shall comply with Sections 406.3.4.1 through 406.3.4.3.

406.3.4.1 Dwelling unit separation. The private garage shall be separated from the dwelling unit and its attic area by means of gypsum board, not less than ⅝ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, applied to the garage side. Garages beneath habitable rooms shall be separated from all habitable rooms above by not less than a ½-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board or equivalent and ⅛-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board applied to structures supporting the separation from habitable rooms above the garage. Door openings between a private garage and the dwelling unit shall be equipped with either solid wood doors or solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than 1½ inches (34.9 mm) in thickness, or doors in compliance with Section 716.5.3 with a fire protection rating of not less than 20 minutes. Doors shall be self-closing and self-latching.

406.3.4.2 Openings prohibited. Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

406.3.4.3 Ducts. Ducts in a private garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating the dwelling unit from the garage, including its attic area, shall be constructed of sheet steel of not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and shall have no openings into the garage.

406.3.5 Carports. Carports shall be open on at least two sides. Carport floor surfaces shall be of an approved noncombustible material. Carports not open on at least two sides shall be considered a garage and shall comply with the requirements for private garages.

Exception: Asphalt surfaces shall be permitted at ground level in carports.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

406.3.5.1 Carport separation. A separation is not required between a Group R-3 and U carport, provided the carport is entirely open on two or more sides and there are not enclosed areas above.
406.3.6 Automatic garage door openers. Automatic garage door openers, where provided, shall be listed in accordance with UL 325.

406.4 Public parking garages. Parking garages, other than private garages, shall be classified as public parking garages and shall comply with the provisions of Sections 406.4.2 through 406.4.8 and shall be classified as either an open parking garage or an enclosed parking garage. Open parking garages shall also comply with Section 406.5. Enclosed parking garages shall also comply with Section 406.6. See Section 510 for special provisions for parking garages.

406.4.1 Clear height. The clear height of each floor level in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Vehicle and pedestrian areas accommodating van-accessible parking shall comply with Section 1106.5.

406.4.2 Guards. Guards shall be provided in accordance with Section 1015. Guards serving as vehicle barriers shall comply with Sections 406.4.3 and 1015.

406.4.3 Vehicle barriers. Vehicle barriers not less than 2 feet 9 inches (835 mm) in height shall be placed where the vertical distance from the floor of a drive lane or parking space to the ground or surface directly below is greater than 1 foot (305 mm). Vehicle barriers shall comply with the loading requirements of Section 1607.8.3.

Exception: Vehicle barriers are not required in vehicle storage compartments in a mechanical access parking garage.

406.4.4 Ramps. Vehicle ramps shall not be considered as required exits unless pedestrian facilities are provided. Vehicle ramps that are utilized for vertical circulation as well as for parking shall not exceed a slope of 1:15 (6.67 percent)

406.4.5 Floor surface. Parking surfaces shall be of concrete or similar noncombustible and nonabsorbent materials.

The area of floor used for parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway.

Exceptions:
1. Asphalt parking surfaces shall be permitted at ground level.
2. Floors of Group S-2 parking garages shall not be required to have a sloped surface.

406.4.6 Mixed occupancy separation. Parking garages shall be separated from other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.1.

406.4.7 Special hazards. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired appliance shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation.

Exception: A single door shall be allowed provided the sources of ignition in the appliance are not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

406.4.8 Attached to rooms. Openings from a parking garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

406.5 Open parking garages. Open parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.5.1 through 406.5.11.

406.5.1 Construction. Open parking garages shall be of Type I, II or IV construction. Open parking garages shall meet the design requirements of Chapter 16. For vehicle barriers, see Section 406.4.3.

406.5.2 Openings. For natural ventilation purposes, the exterior side of the structure shall have uniformly distributed openings on two or more sides. The area of such openings on exterior walls on a tier shall be not less than 20 percent of the total perimeter wall area of each tier. The aggregate length of the openings considered to be providing natural ventilation shall be not less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the tier. Interior walls shall be not less than 20 percent open with uniformly distributed openings.

Exception: Openings are not required to be distributed over 40 percent of the building perimeter where the required openings are uniformly distributed over two opposing sides of the building.

406.5.2.1 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required natural ventilation, the outside horizontal clear space shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The width of the horizontal clear space shall be maintained from grade down to the bottom of the lowest required opening.

406.5.3 Uses. Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as an open parking garage subject to the provisions of Sections 402.4.2.3, 406.5.11, 508.1, 510.3, 510.4 and 510.7.

406.5.4 Area and height. Area and height of open parking garages shall be limited as set forth in Chapter 5 for Group S-2 occupancies and as further provided for in Section 508.1.

406.5.4.1 Single use. Where the open parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, with no other uses in the building, the area and height shall be permitted to comply with Table 406.5.4, along with increases allowed by Section 406.5.5.

Exception: The grade-level tier is permitted to contain an office, waiting and toilet rooms having a total combined area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²). Such area need not be separated from the open parking garage.

In open parking garages having a spiral or sloping floor, the horizontal projection of the structure at any cross section shall not exceed the allowable area per parking tier. In the case of an open parking garage having a continuous spiral floor, each 9 feet 6 inches (2896 mm) of height, or portion thereof, shall be considered a tier.
SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

TABLE 406.5.4
OPEN PARKING GARAGES AREA AND HEIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>AREA PER TIER (square feet)</th>
<th>HEIGHT (in tiers)</th>
<th>Ramp access</th>
<th>Mechanical access</th>
<th>Automatic sprinkler system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ramp access</td>
<td>Automatic sprinkler system</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>12 tiers</td>
<td>12 tiers</td>
<td>18 tiers</td>
<td>12 tiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>10 tiers</td>
<td>10 tiers</td>
<td>15 tiers</td>
<td>12 tiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>8 tiers</td>
<td>8 tiers</td>
<td></td>
<td>12 tiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>4 tiers</td>
<td>4 tiers</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 tiers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

The clear height of a parking tier shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm), except that a lower clear height is permitted in mechanical-access open parking garages where approved by the building official.

406.5.5 Area and height increases. The allowable area and height of open parking garages shall be increased in accordance with the provisions of this section. Garages with sides open on three-fourths of the building’s perimeter are permitted to be increased by 25 percent in area and one tier in height. Garages with sides open around the entire building’s perimeter are permitted to be increased by 50 percent in area and one tier in height. For a side to be considered open under the above provisions, the total area of openings along the side shall not be less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm).

Allowable tier areas in Table 406.5.4 shall be increased for open parking garages constructed to heights less than the table maximum. The gross tier area of the garage shall not exceed that permitted for the higher structure. No fewer than three sides of each such larger tier shall have continuous horizontal openings not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in clear height extending for not less than 80 percent of the length of the sides and no part of such larger tier shall be more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such an opening. In addition, each such opening shall face a street or yard accessible to a street with a width of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) for the full length of the opening, and standpipes shall be provided in each such tier.

Open parking garages of Type II construction, with all sides open, shall be unlimited in allowable area where the building height does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). For a side to be considered open, the total area of openings along the side shall be not less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm). All portions of tiers shall be within 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such openings or other natural ventilation openings as defined in Section 406.5.2. These openings shall be permitted to be provided in courts with a minimum dimension of 20 feet (6096 mm) for the full width of the openings.

406.5.6 Fire separation distance. Exterior walls and openings in exterior walls shall comply with Tables 601 and 602. The distance to an adjacent lot line shall be determined in accordance with Table 602 and Section 705.

406.5.7 Means of egress. Where persons other than parking attendants are permitted, open parking garages shall meet the means of egress requirements of Chapter 10. Where no persons other than parking attendants are permitted, there shall be no fewer than two exit stairways. Each exit stairway shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. Lifts shall be permitted to be installed for use of employees only, provided they are completely enclosed by noncombustible materials.

406.5.8 Standpipe system. An open parking garage shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

406.5.9 Enclosure of vertical openings. Enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings except as specified in Section 406.5.7.

406.5.10 Ventilation. Ventilation, other than the percentage of openings specified in Section 406.5.2, shall not be required.

406.5.11 Prohibitions. The following uses and alterations are not permitted:
1. Vehicle repair work.
2. Parking of buses, trucks and similar vehicles.
3. Partial or complete closing of required openings in exterior walls by tarpaulins or any other means.
4. Dispensing of fuel.

406.6 Enclosed parking garages. Enclosed parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.6.1 through 406.6.3.

406.6.1 Heights and areas. Enclosed vehicle parking garages and portions thereof that do not meet the definition of open parking garages shall be limited to the allowable heights and areas specified in Sections 504 and 506 as modified by Section 507. Roof parking is permitted.

406.6.2 Ventilation. A mechanical ventilation system shall be provided in accordance with the Mechanical Code.
406.6.3 Automatic sprinkler system. An enclosed parking garage shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.10.

406.7 Motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with the Fire Code and Sections 406.7.1 and 406.7.2.

406.7.1 Vehicle fueling pad. The vehicle shall be fueled on noncoated concrete or other approved paving material having a resistance not exceeding 1 megohm as determined by the methodology in EN 1081.

406.7.2 Canopies. Canopies under which fuels are dispensed shall have a clear, unobstructed height of not less than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm) to the lowest projecting element in the vehicle drive-through area. Canopies and their supports over pumps shall be of noncombustible materials, fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Chapter 23, wood of Type IV sizes or of construction providing 1-hour fire resistance. Combustible materials used in or on a canopy shall comply with one of the following:

1. Shielded from the pumps by a noncombustible element of the canopy, or wood of Type IV sizes;
2. Plastics covered by aluminum facing having a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.30 mm) or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). The plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the form intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929; or
3. Panels constructed of light-transmitting plastic materials shall be permitted to be installed in canopies erected over motor vehicle fuel-dispensing station fuel dispensers, provided the panels are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any building on the same lot and face yards or streets not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width on the other sides. The aggregate areas of plastics shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m²). The maximum area of any individual panel shall be not greater than 100 square feet (9.3 m²).

406.7.2.1 Canopies used to support gaseous hydrogen systems. Canopies that are used to shelter dispensing operations where flammable compressed gases are located on the roof of the canopy shall be in accordance with the following:

1. The canopy shall meet or exceed Type I construction requirements.
2. Operations located under canopies shall be limited to refueling only.
3. The canopy shall be constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of hydrogen gas.

406.8 Repair garages. Repair garages shall be constructed in accordance with the Fire Code and Sections 406.8.1 through 406.8.6. This occupancy shall not include motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as regulated in Section 406.7.

406.8.1 Mixed uses. Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as a repair garage subject to the provisions of Section 508.1.

406.8.2 Ventilation. Repair garages shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the Mechanical Code. The ventilation system shall be controlled at the entrance to the garage.

406.8.3 Floor surface. Repair garage floors shall be of concrete or similar noncombustible and nonabsorbent materials.

Exception: Slip-resistant, nonabsorbent, interior floor finishes having a critical radiant flux not more than 0.45 W/cm², as determined by NFPA 253, shall be permitted.

406.8.4 Heating equipment. Heating equipment shall be installed in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

406.8.5 Gas detection system. Repair garages used for the repair of vehicles fueled by non odorized gases such as hydrogen and nonodorized LNG, shall be provided with a flammable gas detection system.

406.8.5.1 System design. The flammable gas detection system shall be listed or approved and shall be calibrated to the types of fuels or gases used by vehicles to be repaired. The gas detection system shall be designed to activate when the level of flammable gas exceeds 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL). Gas detection shall be provided in lubrication or chassis service pits of repair garages used for repairing nonodorized LNG-fueled vehicles.

406.8.5.1.1 Gas detection system components. Gas detection system control units shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 864 or UL 2017.

Gas detectors shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2075 for use with the gases and vapors being detected.

406.8.5.2 Operation. Activation of the gas detection system shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals in the repair garage.
2. Deactivation of all heating systems located in the repair garage.
3. Activation of the mechanical ventilation system, where the system is interlocked with gas detection.

406.8.5.3 Failure of the gas detection system. Failure of the gas detection system shall result in the deactivation of the heating system, activation of the mechanical ventilation system where the system is interlocked with the gas detection system and cause a trouble signal to sound in an approved location.

406.8.6 Automatic sprinkler system. A repair garage shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.9.1.
SECTION 407
GROUP I-2

407.1 General. Occupancies in Group I-2 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 407.1 through 407.10 and other applicable provisions of this code.

407.2 Corridors continuity and separation. Corridors in occupancies in Group I-2 shall be continuous to the exits and shall be separated from other areas in accordance with Section 407.3 except spaces conforming to Sections 407.2.1 through 407.2.6.

407.2.1 Waiting and similar areas. Waiting areas and similar spaces constructed as required for corridors shall be permitted to be open to a corridor, only where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The spaces are not occupied as care recipient’s sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.
2. The open space is protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.
3. The corridors onto which the spaces open, in the same smoke compartment, are protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, or the smoke compartment in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.
4. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exits.

407.2.2 Care providers’ stations. Spaces for care providers’, supervisory staff, doctors’ and nurses’ charting, communications and related clerical areas shall be permitted to be open to the corridor, where such spaces are constructed as required for corridors.

407.2.3 Psychiatric treatment areas. Areas wherein psychiatric care recipients who are not capable of self-preservation are housed, or group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces other than incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, under continuous supervision by facility staff, shall be permitted to be open to the corridor, where the following criteria are met:

1. Each area does not exceed 1,500 square feet (140 m²).
2. The area is located to permit supervision by the facility staff.
3. The area is arranged so as not to obstruct any access to the required exits.
4. The area is equipped with an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.
5. Not more than one such space is permitted in any one smoke compartment.
6. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for corridors.

407.2.4 Gift shops. Gift shops and associated storage that are less than 500 square feet (455 m²) in area shall be permitted to be open to the corridor where such spaces are constructed as required for corridors.

407.2.5 Nursing home housing units. In Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, in areas where nursing home residents are housed, shared living spaces, group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces shall be permitted to be open to the corridor, where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for corridors.
2. The spaces are not occupied as resident sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.
3. The open space is protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.
4. The corridors onto which the spaces open, in the same smoke compartment, are protected by an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, or the smoke compartment in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.
5. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exits.

407.2.6 Nursing home cooking facilities. In Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, rooms or spaces that contain a cooking facility with domestic cooking appliances shall be permitted to be open to the corridor where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The number of care recipients housed in the smoke compartment is not greater than 30.
2. The number of care recipients served by the cooking facility is not greater than 30.
3. Only one cooking facility area is permitted in a smoke compartment.
4. The types of domestic cooking appliances permitted are limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.
5. The corridor is a clearly identified space delineated by construction or floor pattern, material or color.
6. The space containing the domestic cooking facility shall be arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exit.
7. A domestic cooking hood installed and constructed in accordance with Section 505 of the Mechanical Code is provided over the cooktop or range.
8. The domestic cooking hood provided over the cooktop or range shall be equipped with an auto-
matic fire-extinguishing system of a type recog-
nized for protection of domestic cooking
equipment. Preengineered automatic extinguishing
systems shall be tested in accordance with UL
300A and listed and labeled for the intended appli-
cation. The system shall be installed in accordance
with this code, its listing and the manufacturer’s
instructions.

9. A manual actuation device for the hood suppres-
sion system shall be installed in accordance with
Sections 904.12.1 and 904.12.2.

10. An interlock device shall be provided such that
upon activation of the hood suppression system,
the power or fuel supply to the cooktop or range
will be turned off.

11. A shut-off for the fuel and electrical power supply
to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a
location that is accessible only to staff.

12. A timer shall be provided that automatically deac-
tivates the cooking appliances within a period of
not more than 120 minutes.

13. A portable fire extinguisher shall be installed in
accordance with Section 906 of the Fire Code.

407.3 Corridor wall construction. Corridor walls shall be
constructed as smoke partitions in accordance with Section
710.

407.3.1 Corridor doors. Corridor doors, other than those
in a wall required to be rated by Section 509.4 or for the
enclosure of a vertical opening or an exit, shall not have a
required fire protection rating and shall not be required to
be equipped with self-closing or automatic-closing
deVICES, but shall provide an effective barrier to limit the
transfer of smoke and shall be equipped with positive
latching. Roller latches are not permitted. Other doors
shall conform to Section 716.5.

407.4 Means of egress. Group I-2 occupancies shall be pro-
vided with means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and
Sections 407.4.1 through 407.4.4. The fire safety and evacua-
tion plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall
identify the building components necessary to support a
defend-in-place emergency response in accordance with Sec-
tions 404 and 408 of the Fire Code.

407.4.1 Direct access to a corridor. Habitable rooms in
Group I-2 occupancies shall have an exit access door lead-
ing directly to a corridor.

Exceptions:

1. Rooms with exit doors opening directly to the
outside at ground level.

2. Rooms arranged as care suites complying with
Section 407.4.4.

407.4.2 Distance of travel. The distance of travel between
any point in a Group I-2 occupancy sleeping room, not
located in a care suite, and an exit access door in that room
shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

407.4.3 Projections in nursing home corridors. In
Group I-2, Condition 1, occupancies, where the corridor
width is a minimum of 96 inches (2440 mm), projections
shall be permitted for furniture where all of the following
criteria are met:

1. The furniture is attached to the floor or to the wall.

2. The furniture does not reduce the clear width of the
corridor to less than 72 inches (1830 mm) except
where other encroachments are permitted in accor-
dance with Section 1005.7.

3. The furniture is positioned on only one side of the
corridor.

4. Each arrangement of furniture is 50 square feet (4.6
m²) maximum in area.

5. Furniture arrangements are separated by 10 feet
(3048 mm) minimum.

6. Placement of furniture is considered as part of the
fire and safety plans in accordance with Section
1001.4.

407.4.4 Group I-2 care suites. Care suites in Group I-2
shall comply with Sections 407.4.4.1 through 407.4.4.4
and either Section 407.4.4.5 or 407.4.4.6.

407.4.4.1 Exit access through care suites. Exit access
from all other portions of a building not classified as a
care suite shall not pass through a care suite. In a care
suite required to have more than one exit, one exit
access is permitted to pass through an adjacent care
suite provided all of the other requirements of Sections
407.4 and 1016.2 are satisfied.

407.4.4.2 Separation. Care suites shall be separated from
other portions of the building, including other
care suites, by a smoke partition complying with Sec-
tion 710.

407.4.4.3 Access to corridor. Movement from habit-
able rooms shall not require passage through more than
three doors and 100 feet (30 480 mm) distance of travel
within the suite.

Exception: The distance of travel shall be permitted
to be increased to 125 feet (38 100 mm) where an
automatic smoke detection system is provided
throughout the care suite and installed in accordance
with NFPA 72.
407.4.4.4 Doors within care suites. Doors in care suites serving habitable rooms shall be permitted to comply with one of the following:

1. Manually operated horizontal sliding doors permitted in accordance with Exception 9 to Section 1010.1.2.
2. Power-operated doors permitted in accordance with Exception 7 to Section 1010.1.2.
3. Means of egress doors complying with Section 1010.

407.4.4.5 Care suites containing sleeping room areas. Sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites where one of the following criteria is met:

1. The care suite is not used as an exit access for more than eight care recipient beds.
2. The arrangement of the care suite allows for direct and constant visual supervision into the sleeping rooms by care providers.
3. An automatic smoke detection system is provided in the sleeping rooms and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.

407.4.4.5.1 Area. Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be not greater than 7,500 square feet (696 m²) in area.

**Exception:** Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m²) in area where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the care suite and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.

407.4.4.5.2 Exit access. Any sleeping room, or any care suite that contains sleeping rooms, of more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the care suite located in accordance with Section 1007.

407.4.4.6 Care suites not containing sleeping rooms. Areas not containing sleeping rooms, but only treatment areas and the associated rooms, spaces or circulation space, shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites and shall conform to the limitations in Sections 407.4.4.6.1 and 407.4.4.6.2.

407.4.4.6.1 Area. Care suites of rooms, other than sleeping rooms, shall have an area not greater than 12,500 square feet (1161 m²).

**Exception:** Care suites not containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 15,000 square feet (1394 m²) in area where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the care suite in accordance with Section 907.

407.4.4.6.2 Exit access. Care suites, other than sleeping rooms, with an area of more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the care suite located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

407.5 Smoke barriers. Smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to divide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two smoke compartments. Such stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet (2092 m²) in Group I-2, Condition 1, and not more than 40,000 square feet (3716 m²) in Group I-2, Condition 2, and the distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Section 709.

407.5.1 Refuge area. Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for each care recipient confined to bed or stretcher.
2. Not less than 6 square feet (0.56 m²) for each ambulatory care recipient not confined to bed or stretcher and for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of refuge area are corridors, sleeping areas, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

407.5.2 Independent egress. A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.

407.5.3 Horizontal assemblies. Horizontal assemblies supporting smoke barriers required by this section shall be designed to resist the movement of smoke. Elevator lobbies shall be in accordance with Section 3006.2.

407.6 Automatic sprinkler system. Smoke compartments containing sleeping rooms shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Sections 903.3.1.1 and 903.3.2.

407.7 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.

407.8 Automatic fire detection. Corridors in Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies and spaces permitted to be open to the corridors by Section 407.2 shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system.

Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies shall be equipped with smoke detection as required in Section 407.2.

**Exceptions:**

1. Corridor smoke detection is not required where sleeping rooms are provided with smoke detectors that comply with UL 268. Such detectors shall provide a visual display on the corridor side of each
sitting room and an audible and visual alarm at the care provider’s station attending each unit.

2. Corridor smoke detection is not required where sleeping room doors are equipped with automatic door-closing devices with integral smoke detectors on the unit sides installed in accordance with their listing, provided that the integral detectors perform the required alerting function.

407.9 Secured yards. Grounds are permitted to be fenced and gates therein are permitted to be equipped with locks, provided that safe dispersal areas having 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for bed and stretcher care recipients and 6 net square feet (0.56 m²) for ambulatory care recipients and other occupants are located between the building and the fence. Such provided safe dispersal areas shall be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building they serve.

407.10 Electrical systems. In Group I-2 occupancies, the essential electrical system for electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and NFPA 99.

SECTION 408

GROUP I-3

408.1 General. Occupancies in Group I-3 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 408.1 through 408.11 and other applicable provisions of this code (see Section 308.5).

408.1.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CELL.

CELL TIER.

HOUSING UNIT.

SALLYPORT.

408.2 Other occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings in Group I-3 occupancies where security operations necessitate the locking of required means of egress shall be permitted to be classified as a different occupancy. Occupancies classified as other than Group I-3 shall meet the applicable requirements of this code for that occupancy where provisions are made for the release of occupants at all times.

Means of egress from detention and correctional occupancies that traverse other use areas shall, as a minimum, conform to requirements for detention and correctional occupancies.

Exception: It is permissible to exit through a horizontal exit into other contiguous occupancies that do not conform to detention and correctional occupancy egress provisions but that do comply with requirements set forth in the appropriate occupancy, as long as the occupancy is not a Group H use.

408.3 Means of egress. Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the means of egress provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

408.3.1 Door width. Doors to resident sleeping units shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).

408.3.2 Sliding doors. Where doors in a means of egress are of the horizontal-sliding type, the force to slide the door to its fully open position shall be not greater than 50 pounds (220 N) with a perpendicular force against the door of 50 pounds (220 N).

408.3.3 Guard tower doors. A hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet (610 m²) in area through the floor and having dimensions of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in any direction shall be permitted to be used as a portion of the means of egress from guard towers.

408.3.4 Spiral stairways. Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 are permitted for access to and between staff locations.

408.3.5 Ships ladders. Ships ladders shall be permitted for egress from control rooms or elevated facility observation rooms in accordance with Section 1011.15.

408.3.6 Exit discharge. Exits are permitted to discharge into a fenced or walled courtyard. Enclosed yards or courts shall be of a size to accommodate all occupants, be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building and have an area of not less than 15 square feet (1.4 m²) per person.

408.3.7 Sallyports. A sallyport shall be permitted in a means of egress where there are provisions for continuous and unobstructed passage through the sallyport during an emergency egress condition.

408.3.8 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction. One interior exit stairway or ramp in each building shall be permitted to have glazing installed in doors and interior walls at each landing level providing access to the interior exit stairway or ramp, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. The interior exit stairway or ramp shall not serve more than four floor levels.
2. Exit doors shall be not less than 1/2-hour fire door assemblies complying with Section 716.5.
3. The total area of glazing at each floor level shall not exceed 5,000 square inches (3.2 m²) and individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches (0.84 m²).
4. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system. The sprinkler system shall be designed to wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire when actuated.
5. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.
6. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

408.4 Locks. Egress doors are permitted to be locked in accordance with the applicable use condition. Doors from a refuge area to the outside are permitted to be locked with a key in lieu of locking methods described in Section 408.4.1.
The keys to unlock the exterior doors shall be available at all times and the locks shall be operable from both sides of the door.

408.4.1 Remote release. Remote release of locks on doors in a means of egress shall be provided with reliable means of operation, remote from the resident living areas, to release locks on all required doors. In Occupancy Condition 3 or 4, the arrangement, accessibility and security of the release mechanisms required for egress shall be such that with the minimum available staff at any time, the lock mechanisms are capable of being released within 2 minutes.

Exception: Provisions for remote locking and unlocking of occupied rooms in Occupancy Condition 4 are not required provided that not more than 10 locks are necessary to be unlocked in order to move occupants from one smoke compartment to a refuge area within 3 minutes. The opening of necessary locks shall be accomplished with not more than two separate keys.

408.4.2 Power-operated doors and locks. Power-operated sliding doors or power-operated locks for swinging doors shall be operable by a manual release mechanism at the door. Emergency power shall be provided for the doors and locks in accordance with Section 2702.

Exceptions:

1. Emergency power is not required in facilities with 10 or fewer locks complying with the exception to Section 408.4.1.

2. Emergency power is not required where remote mechanical operating releases are provided.

408.4.3 Redundant operation. Remote release, mechanically operated sliding doors or remote release, mechanically operated locks shall be provided with a mechanically operated release mechanism at each door, or shall be provided with a redundant remote release control.

408.4.4 Relock capability. Doors remotely unlocked under emergency conditions shall not automatically relock when closed unless specific action is taken at the remote location to enable doors to relock.

408.5 Protection of vertical openings. Any vertical opening shall be protected by a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713, or shall be in accordance with Section 408.5.1.

408.5.1 Floor openings. Openings in floors within a housing unit are permitted without a shaft enclosure, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The entire normally occupied areas so interconnected are open and unobstructed so as to enable observation of the areas by supervisory personnel;

2. Means of egress capacity is sufficient for all occupants from all interconnected cell tiers and areas;

3. The height difference between the floor levels of the highest and lowest cell tiers shall not exceed 23 feet (7010 mm); and

4. Egress from any portion of the cell tier to an exit or exit access door shall not require travel on more than one additional floor level within the housing unit.

408.5.2 Shaft openings in communicating floor levels. Where a floor opening is permitted between communicating floor levels of a housing unit in accordance with Section 408.5.1, plumbing chases serving vertically staked individual cells contained with the housing unit shall be permitted without a shaft enclosure.

408.6 Smoke barrier. Occupancies in Group I-3 shall have smoke barriers complying with Sections 408.7 and 709 to divide every story occupied by residents for sleeping, or any other story having an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two smoke compartments.

Exception: Spaces having a direct exit to one of the following, provided that the locking arrangement of the doors involved complies with the requirements for doors at the smoke barrier for the use condition involved:

1. A public way.

2. A building separated from the resident housing area by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated assembly or 50 feet (15 240 mm) of open space.

3. A secured yard or court having a holding space 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the housing area that provides 6 square feet (0.56 m²) or more of refuge area per occupant, including residents, staff and visitors.

408.6.1 Smoke compartments. The number of residents in any smoke compartment shall be not more than 200. The distance of travel to a door in a smoke barrier from any room door required as exit access shall be not greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm). The distance of travel to a door in a smoke barrier from any point in a room shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

408.6.2 Refuge area. Not less than 6 net square feet (0.56 m²) per occupant shall be provided on each side of each smoke barrier for the total number of occupants in adjoining smoke compartments. This space shall be readily available wherever the occupants are moved across the smoke barrier in a fire emergency.

408.6.3 Independent egress. A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originates.

408.7 Security glazing. In occupancies in Group I-3, windows and doors in 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707, fire partitions constructed in accordance with Section 708 and smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 709 shall be permitted to have security glazing installed provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches (0.84 m²).

2. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system. The sprinkler system shall be designed to, when actuated, wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire.
3. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.

4. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

408.8 Subdivision of resident housing areas. Sleeping areas and any contiguous day room, group activity space or other common spaces where residents are housed shall be separated from other spaces in accordance with Sections 408.8.1 through 408.8.4.

408.8.1 Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4. Each sleeping area in Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4 shall be separated from the adjacent common spaces by a smoke-tight partition where the distance of travel from the sleeping area through the common space to the corridor exceeds 50 feet (15 240 mm).

408.8.2 Occupancy Condition 5. Each sleeping area in Occupancy Condition 5 shall be separated from adjacent sleeping areas, corridors and common spaces by a smoke-tight partition. Additionally, common spaces shall be separated from the corridor by a smoke-tight partition.

408.8.3 Openings in room face. The aggregate area of openings in a solid sleeping room face in Occupancy Conditions 2, 3, 4 and 5 shall not exceed 120 square inches (0.77 m²). The aggregate area shall include all openings including door undercuts, food passes and grilles. Openings shall be not more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor. In Occupancy Condition 5, the openings shall be closeable from the room side.

408.8.4 Smoke-tight doors. Doors in openings in partitions required to be smoke tight by Section 408.8 shall be substantial doors, of construction that will resist the passage of smoke. Latches and door closures are not required on cell doors.

408.9 Windowless buildings. For the purposes of this section, a windowless building or portion of a building is one with nonopenable windows, windows not readily breakable or without windows. Windowless buildings shall be provided with an engineered smoke control system to provide a tenable environment for exiting from the smoke compartment in the area of fire origin in accordance with Section 909 for each windowless smoke compartment.

408.10 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.

408.11 Automatic sprinkler system. Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.

SECTION 409
MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS

409.1 General. The provisions of Sections 409.1 through 409.5 shall apply to rooms in which ribbon-type cellulose acetate or other safety film is utilized in conjunction with electric arc, xenon or other light-source projection equipment that develops hazardous gases, dust or radiation. Where cellulose nitrate film is utilized or stored, such rooms shall comply with NFPA 40.

409.1.1 Projection room required. Every motion picture machine projecting film as mentioned within the scope of this section shall be enclosed in a projection room. Appurtenant electrical equipment, such as rheostats, transformers and generators, shall be within the projection room or in an adjacent room of equivalent construction.

409.2 Construction of projection rooms. Every projection room shall be of permanent construction consistent with the construction requirements for the type of building in which the projection room is located. Openings are not required to be protected.

The room shall have a floor area of not less than 80 square feet (7.44 m²) for a single machine and not less than 40 square feet (3.7 m²) for each additional machine. Each motion picture projector, floodlight, spotlight or similar piece of equipment shall have a clear working space of not less than 30 inches by 30 inches (762 mm by 762 mm) on each side and at the rear thereof, but only one such space shall be required between two adjacent projectors. The projection room and the rooms appurtenant thereto shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm). The aggregate of openings for projection equipment shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of the wall between the projection room and the auditorium. Openings shall be provided with glass or other approved material, so as to close completely the opening.

409.3 Projection room and equipment ventilation. Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

409.3.1 Supply air. Each projection room shall be provided with adequate air supply inlets so arranged as to provide well-distributed air throughout the room. Air inlet ducts shall provide an amount of air equivalent to the amount of air being exhausted by projection equipment. Air is permitted to be taken from the outside; from adjacent spaces within the building, provided the volume and infiltration rate is sufficient; or from the building air-conditioning system, provided it is so arranged as to provide sufficient air when other systems are not in operation.

409.3.2 Exhaust air. Projection rooms are permitted to be exhausted through the lamp exhaust system. The lamp exhaust system shall be positively interconnected with the lamp so that the lamp will not operate unless there is the required airflow. Exhaust air ducts shall terminate at the exterior of the building in such a location that the exhaust air cannot be readily recirculated into any air supply system. The projection room ventilation system is permitted to also serve appurtenant rooms, such as the generator and rewind rooms.

409.3.3 Projection machines. Each projection machine shall be provided with an exhaust duct that will draw air from each lamp and exhaust it directly to the outside of the building. The lamp exhaust is permitted to serve to exhaust air from the projection room to provide room air.
circulation. Such ducts shall be of rigid materials, except for a flexible connector approved for the purpose. The projection lamp or projection room exhaust system, or both, is permitted to be combined but shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system, or both, within the building.

409.4 Lighting control. Provisions shall be made for control of the auditorium lighting and the means of egress lighting systems of theaters from inside the projection room and from not less than one other convenient point in the building.

409.5 Miscellaneous equipment. Each projection room shall be provided with rewind and film storage facilities.

SECTION 410
STAGES, PLATFORMS AND TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS

410.1 Applicability. The provisions of Sections 410.1 through 410.8 shall apply to all parts of buildings and structures that contain stages or platforms and similar appurtenances as herein defined.

410.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

PLATFORM.
PROSCENIUM WALL.
STAGE.

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREA.

410.3 Stages. Stage construction shall comply with Sections 410.3.1 through 410.3.7.

410.3.1 Stage construction. Stages shall be constructed of materials as required for floors for the type of construction of the building in which such stages are located.

Exception: Stages need not be constructed of the same materials as required for the type of construction provided the construction complies with one of the following:

1. Stages of Type IIB or IV construction with a nominal 2-inch (51 mm) wood deck, provided that the stage is separated from other areas in accordance with Section 410.3.4.

2. In buildings of Type IIA, IIIA and VA construction, a fire-resistance-rated floor is not required, provided the space below the stage is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system or fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 903 or 904.

3. In all types of construction, the finished floor shall be constructed of wood or approved non-combustible materials. Openings through stage floors shall be equipped with tight-fitting, solid wood trap doors with approved safety locks.

410.3.1.1 Stage height and area. Stage areas shall be measured to include the entire performance area and adjacent backstage and support areas not separated from the performance area by fire-resistance-rated construction. Stage height shall be measured from the lowest point on the stage floor to the highest point of the roof or floor deck above the stage.

410.3.2 Technical production areas: galleries, gridirons and catwalks. Beams designed only for the attachment of portable or fixed theater equipment, gridirons, galleries and catwalks shall be constructed of approved materials consistent with the requirements for the type of construction of the building; and a fire-resistance rating shall not be required. These areas shall not be considered to be floors, stories, mezzanines or levels in applying this code.

Exception: Floors of fly galleries and catwalks shall be constructed of any approved material.

410.3.3 Exterior stage doors. Where protection of openings is required, exterior exit doors shall be protected with fire door assemblies that comply with Section 716. Exterior openings that are located on the stage for means of egress or loading and unloading purposes, and that are likely to be open during occupancy of the theater, shall be constructed with vestibules to prevent air drafts into the auditorium.

410.3.4 Proscenium wall. Where the stage height is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm), all portions of the stage shall be completely separated from the seating area by a proscenium wall with not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating extending continuously from the foundation to the roof.

410.3.5 Proscenium curtain. Where a proscenium wall is required to have a fire-resistance rating, the stage opening shall be provided with a fire curtain complying with NFPA 80, horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 716.5.2 having a fire protection rating of at least 1 hour, or an approved water curtain complying with Section 903.3.1.1 or, in facilities not utilizing the provisions of smoke-protected assembly seating in accordance with Section 1029.6.2, a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the means of egress.

410.3.6 Scenery. Combustible materials used in sets and scenery shall meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701, in accordance with Section 806 and the Fire Code. Foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603 and the Fire Code.

410.3.7 Stage ventilation. Emergency ventilation shall be provided for stages larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in floor area, or with a stage height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm). Such ventilation shall comply with Section 410.3.7.1 or 410.3.7.2.

410.3.7.1 Roof vents. Two or more vents constructed to open automatically by approved heat-activated devices and with an aggregate clear opening area of not less than 5 percent of the area of the stage shall be located near the center and above the highest part of the stage area. Supplemental means shall be provided for manual operation of the ventilator. Curbs shall be pro-
vided as required for skylights in Section 2610.2. Vents shall be labeled.

410.3.7.2 Smoke control. Smoke control in accordance with Section 909 shall be provided to maintain the smoke layer interface not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the highest level of the assembly seating or above the top of the prosenium opening where a proscenium wall is provided in compliance with Section 410.3.4.

410.4 Platform construction. Permanent platforms shall be constructed of materials as required for the type of construction of the building in which the permanent platform is located. Permanent platforms are permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood for Types I, II and IV construction where the platforms are not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the main floor, and not more than one-third of the room floor area and not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m²) in area. Where the space beneath the permanent platform is used for storage or any purpose other than equipment, wiring or plumbing, the floor assembly shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Where the space beneath the permanent platform is used for storage or any purpose other than equipment, wiring or plumbing, the undersides of the permanent platform need not be protected.

410.4.1 Temporary platforms. Platforms installed for a period of not more than 30 days are permitted to be constructed of any materials permitted by this code. The space between the floor and the platform above shall only be used for plumbing and electrical wiring to platform equipment.

410.5 Dressing and appurtenant rooms. Dressing and appurtenant rooms shall comply with Sections 410.5.1 and 410.5.2.

410.5.1 Separation from stage. The stage shall be separated from dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the stage and other parts of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 2 hours for stage heights greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) and not less than 1 hour for stage heights of 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less.

410.5.2 Separation from each other. Dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the stage shall be separated from each other by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

410.6 Means of egress. Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

410.6.1 Arrangement. Where two or more exits or exit access doorways from the stage are required in accordance with Section 1006.2, no fewer than one exit or exit access doorway shall be provided on each side of a stage.

410.6.2 Stairway and ramp enclosure. Exit access stairways and ramps serving a stage or platform are not required to be enclosed. Exit access stairways and ramps serving technical production areas are not required to be enclosed.

410.6.3 Technical production areas. Technical production areas shall be provided with means of egress and means of escape in accordance with Sections 410.6.3.1 through 410.6.3.5.

410.6.3.1 Number of means of egress. No fewer than one means of egress shall be provided from technical production areas.

410.6.3.2 Exit access travel distance. The exit access travel distance shall be not greater than 300 feet (91 440 mm) for buildings without a sprinkler system and 400 feet (121 900 mm) for buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

410.6.3.3 Two means of egress. Where two means of egress are required, the common path of travel shall be not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

Exception: A means of escape to a roof is permitted in place of a second means of egress.

410.6.3.4 Path of egress travel. The following exit access components are permitted where serving technical production areas:

1. Stairways.
2. Ramps.
3. Spiral stairways.
5. Alternating tread devices.
6. Permanent ladders.

410.6.3.5 Width. The path of egress travel within and from technical support areas shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm).

410.7 Automatic sprinkler system. Stages shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Sprinklers shall be installed under the roof and gridiron and under all catwalks and galleries over the stage. Sprinklers shall be installed in dressing rooms, performer lounges, shops and storerooms accessory to such stages.

Exceptions:

1. Sprinklers are not required under stage areas less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in clear height that are utilized exclusively for storage of tables and chairs, provided the concealed space is separated from the adjacent spaces by Type X gypsum board not less than 5/8-inch (15.9 mm) in thickness.

2. Sprinklers are not required for stages 1,000 square feet (93 m²) or less in area and 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less in height where curtains, scenery or other combustible hangings are not retractable vertically. Combustible hangings shall be limited to a single main curtain, borders, legs and a single backdrop.
3. Sprinklers are not required within portable orchestra enclosures on stages.

**410.8 Standpipes.** Standpipe systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 905.

### SECTION 411

**SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDINGS**

**411.1 General.** Special amusement buildings having an occupant load of 50 or more shall comply with the requirements for the appropriate Group A occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.8. Special amusement buildings having an occupant load of less than 50 shall comply with the requirements for a Group B occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.8.

**Exception:** Special amusement buildings or portions thereof that are without walls or a roof and constructed to prevent the accumulation of smoke need not comply with this section.

For flammable decorative materials, see the Fire Code.

**411.2 Definition.** The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

**SPECIAL AMUSEMENT BUILDING.**

**411.3 Automatic fire detection.** Special amusement buildings shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.

**411.4 Automatic sprinkler system.** Special amusement buildings shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the special amusement building is temporary, the sprinkler water supply shall be of an approved temporary means.

**Exception:** Automatic sprinklers are not required where the total floor area of a temporary special amusement building is less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) and the exit access travel distance from any point to an exit is less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**411.5 Alarm.** Actuation of a single smoke detector, the automatic sprinkler system or other automatic fire detection device shall immediately sound an alarm at the building at a constantly attended location from which emergency action can be initiated including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

**411.6 Emergency voice/alarm communications system.** An emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.12 and 907.5.2.2, which is also permitted to serve as a public address system and shall be audible throughout the entire special amusement building.

**411.7 Exit marking.** Exit signs shall be installed at the required exit or exit access doorways of amusement buildings in accordance with this section and Section 1013. Approved directional exit markings shall also be provided. Where mirrors, mazes or other designs are utilized that disguise the path of egress travel such that they are not apparent, approved and listed low-level exit signs that comply with Section 1013.5, and directional path markings listed in accordance with UL 1994, shall be provided and located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above the walking surface and on or near the path of egress travel. Such markings shall become visible in an emergency. The directional exit marking shall be activated by the automatic fire detection system and the automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 907.2.12.2.

**411.7.1 Photoluminescent exit signs.** Where photoluminescent exit signs are installed, activating light source and viewing distance shall be in accordance with the listing and markings of the signs.

**411.8 Interior finish.** The interior finish shall be Class A in accordance with Section 803.1.

### SECTION 412

**AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES**

**412.1 General.** Aircraft-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 412.1 through 412.8 and the Fire Code.

**412.2 Definitions.** The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

**FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO).**

**HELISTOP.**

**RESIDENTIAL AIRCRAFT HANGAR.**

**TRANSIENT AIRCRAFT.**

**412.3 Airport traffic control towers.** The provisions of Sections 412.3.1 through 412.3.8 shall apply to airport traffic control towers occupied only for the following uses:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.

**412.3.1 Type of construction.** Airport traffic control towers shall be constructed to comply with the height limitations of Table 412.3.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>HEIGHT* (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

*a.* Height to be measured from grade plane to cab floor.
412.3.2 Stairways. Stairways in airport traffic control towers shall be in accordance with Section 1011. Stairways shall be smokeproof enclosures complying with one of the alternatives provided in Section 909.20.

Exception: Stairways in airport traffic control towers are not required to comply with Section 1011.12.

412.3.3 Exit access. From observation levels, airport traffic control towers shall be permitted to have a single means of exit access for a distance of travel not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm). Exit access stairways from the observation level need not be enclosed.

412.3.4 Number of exits. Not less than one exit stairway shall be permitted for airport traffic control towers of any height provided that the occupant load per floor is not greater than 15 and the area per floor does not exceed 1,500 square feet (140 m²).

412.3.4.1 Interior finish. Where an airport traffic control tower is provided with only one exit stairway, interior wall and ceiling finishes shall be either Class A or Class B.

412.3.5 Automatic fire detection systems. Airport traffic control towers shall be provided with an automatic fire detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.

412.3.6 Automatic sprinkler system. Where an occupied floor is located more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, airport traffic control towers shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

412.3.7 Elevator protection. Wires or cables that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, ventilation and fire detecting systems to elevators shall be protected by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, or shall be circuit integrity cable having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

412.3.7.1 Elevators for occupant evacuation. Where provided in addition to an exit stairway, occupant evacuation elevators shall be in accordance with Section 3008.

412.3.8 Accessibility. Airport traffic control towers need not be accessible as specified in the provisions of Chapter 11.

412.4 Aircraft hangars. Aircraft hangars shall be in accordance with Sections 412.4.1 through 412.4.6.

412.4.1 Exterior walls. Exterior walls located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from lot lines or a public way shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than 2 hours.

412.4.2 Basements. Where hangars have basements, floors over basements shall be of Type IA construction and shall be made tight against seepage of water, oil or vapors. There shall be no opening or communication between basements and the hangar. Access to basements shall be from outside only.

412.4.3 Floor surface. Floors shall be graded and drained to prevent water or fuel from remaining on the floor. Floor drains shall discharge through an oil separator to the sewer or to an outside vented sump.

Exception: Aircraft hangars with individual lease spaces not exceeding 2,000 square feet (186 m²) each in which servicing, repairing or washing is not conducted and fuel is not dispensed shall have floors that are graded toward the door, but shall not require a separator.

412.4.4 Heating equipment. Heating equipment shall be placed in another room separated by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Entrance shall be from the outside or by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation.

Exceptions:

1. Unit heaters and vented infrared radiant heating equipment suspended not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the upper surface of wings or engine enclosures of the highest aircraft that are permitted to be housed in the hangar need not be located in a separate room provided they are mounted not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor in shops, offices and other sections of the hangar communicating with storage or service areas.

2. Entrance to the separated room shall be permitted by a single interior door provided the sources of ignition in the appliances are not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

412.4.5 Finishing. The process of “doping,” involving use of a volatile flammable solvent, or of painting, shall be carried on in a separate detached building equipped with automatic fire-extinguishing equipment in accordance with Section 903.

412.4.6 Fire suppression. Aircraft hangars shall be provided with a fire suppression system designed in accordance with NFPA 409, based upon the classification for the hangar given in Table 412.4.6.

Exception: Where a fixed base operator has separate repair facilities on site, Group II hangars operated by a fixed base operator used for storage of transient aircraft only shall have a fire suppression system, but the system is exempt from foam requirements.

412.4.6.1 Hazardous operations. Any Group III aircraft hangar according to Table 412.4.6 that contains hazardous operations including, but not limited to, the following shall be provided with a Group I or II fire suppression system in accordance with NFPA 409 as applicable:

1. Doping.
2. Hot work including, but not limited to, welding, torch cutting and torch soldering.
3. Fuel transfer.
4. Fuel tank repair or maintenance not including defueled tanks in accordance with NFPA 409, inerted tanks or tanks that have never been fueled.
5. Spray finishing operations.

6. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the unsprinklered single fire area in excess of 1,600 gallons (6057 L).

7. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the maximum single fire area in excess of 7,500 gallons (28 390 L) for a hangar with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

### 412.4.6.2 Separation of maximum single fire areas.

Maximum single fire areas established in accordance with hangar classification and construction type in Table 412.4.6 shall be separated by 2-hour fire walls constructed in accordance with Section 706. In determining the maximum single fire area as set forth in Table 412.4.6, ancillary uses that are separated from aircraft servicing areas by a fire barrier of not less than 1 hour, constructed in accordance with Section 707, shall not be included in the area.

### 412.5 Residential aircraft hangars.

Residential aircraft hangars shall comply with Sections 412.5.1 through 412.5.5.

#### 412.5.1 Fire separation.

A hangar shall not be attached to a dwelling unless separated by a fire barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Such separation shall be continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof and unpierced except for doors leading to the dwelling unit. Doors into the dwelling unit shall be equipped with self-closing devices and conform to the requirements of Section 716 with a noncombustible raised sill not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Openings from a hangar directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

#### 412.5.2 Egress.

A hangar shall provide two means of egress. One of the doors into the dwelling shall be considered as meeting only one of the two means of egress.

#### 412.5.3 Smoke alarms.

Smoke alarms shall be provided within the hangar in accordance with Section 907.2.21.

#### 412.5.4 Independent systems.

Electrical, mechanical and plumbing drain, waste and vent (DWV) systems installed within the hangar shall be independent of the systems installed within the dwelling. Building sewer lines shall be permitted to be connected outside the structures.

**Exception:** Smoke detector wiring and feed for electrical subpanels in the hangar.

### 412.5.5 Height and area limits.

Residential aircraft hangars shall be not greater than 2,000 square feet (186 m²) in area and 20 feet (6096 mm) in building height.

### 412.6 Aircraft paint hangars.

Aircraft painting operations where flammable liquids are used in excess of the maximum allowable quantities per control area listed in Table 307.1(1) shall be conducted in an aircraft paint hangar that complies with the provisions of Sections 412.6.1 through 412.6.6.

#### 412.6.1 Occupancy group.

Aircraft paint hangars shall be classified as Group H-2. Aircraft paint hangars shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the Fire Code for such occupancy.

#### 412.6.2 Construction.

The aircraft paint hangar shall be of Type I or II construction.

#### 412.6.3 Operations.

Only those flammable liquids necessary for painting operations shall be permitted in quantities less than the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(1). Spray equipment cleaning operations shall be conducted in a liquid use, dispensing and mixing room.

#### 412.6.4 Storage.

Storage of flammable liquids shall be in a liquid storage room.

#### 412.6.5 Fire suppression.

Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with fire suppression as required by NFPA 409.
412.6.6 Ventilation. Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with ventilation as required in the Mechanical Code.

412.7 Aircraft manufacturing facilities. In buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft, exit access travel distances indicated in Section 1017.1 shall be increased in accordance with the following:

1. The building shall be of Type I or II construction.
2. Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the distances given in Table 412.7.

412.7.1 Ancillary areas. Rooms, areas and spaces ancillary to the primary manufacturing area shall be permitted to egress through such area having a minimum height as indicated in Table 412.7. Exit access travel distance within the ancillary room, area or space shall not exceed that indicated in Table 1017.2 based on the occupancy classification of that ancillary area. Total exit access travel distance shall not exceed that indicated in Table 412.7.

412.8 Heliports and helistops. Heliports and helistops shall be permitted to be erected on buildings or other locations where they are constructed in accordance with Sections 412.8.1 through 412.8.5.

412.8.1 Size. The landing area for helicopters less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length and width. The landing area shall be surrounded on all sides by a clear area having a minimum average width at roof level of 15 feet (4572 mm) but with no width less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

412.8.2 Design. Helicopter landing areas and the supports thereof on the roof of a building shall be noncombustible construction. Landing areas shall be designed to confine any flammable liquid spillage to the landing area itself and provisions shall be made to drain such spillage away from any exit or stairway serving the helicopter landing area or from a structure housing such exit or stairway. For structural design requirements, see Section 1607.6.

412.8.3 Means of egress. The means of egress from heliports and helistops shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 10. Landing areas located on buildings or structures shall have two or more means of egress. For landing areas less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length or less than 2,000 square feet (186 m²) in area, the second means of egress is permitted to be a fire escape, alternating tread device or ladder leading to the floor below.

412.8.4 Rooftop heliports and helistops. Rooftop heliports and helistops shall comply with NFPA 418.

412.8.5 Standpipe system. In buildings equipped with a standpipe system, the standpipe shall extend to the roof level in accordance with Section 905.3.6.

SECTION 413 COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE

413.1 General. High-piled stock or rack storage in any occupancy group shall comply with the Fire Code.

413.2 Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces. Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces used for storage of combustible materials shall be protected on the storage side as required for 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Openings shall be protected by assemblies that are self-closing and are of noncombustible construction or solid wood core not less than 1 1/2 inch (45 mm) in thickness.

Exception: Neither fire-resistance-rated construction nor opening protective are required in any of the following locations:

1. Areas protected by approved automatic sprinkler systems,
2. Group R-3 and U occupancies.

SECTION 414 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

414.1 General. The provisions of Sections 414.1 through 414.6 shall apply to buildings and structures occupied for the manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials.

414.1.1 Other provisions. Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall comply with this section and the applicable provisions of Section 415 and the Fire Code.

414.1.2 Materials. The safe design of hazardous material occupancies is material dependent. Individual material requirements are also found in Sections 307 and 415, and in the Mechanical Code and the Fire Code.

414.1.2.1 Aerosols. Level 2 and 3 aerosol products shall be stored and displayed in accordance with the

### TABLE 412.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 412.7</th>
<th>AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MANUFACTURING AREA (sq. ft.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 150,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 25</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 50</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 75</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 100</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Contiguous floor area of the aircraft manufacturing facility having the indicated height.

b. Minimum height from finished floor to bottom of ceiling or roof slab or deck.
**Fire Code.** See Section 311.2 and the Fire Code for occupancy group requirements.

### 414.1.3 Information required.
A report shall be submitted to the building official identifying the maximum expected quantities of hazardous materials to be stored, used in a closed system and in an open system, and subdivided to separately address hazardous material classification categories based on Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). The methods of protection from such hazards, including but not limited to control areas, fire protection systems and Group H occupancies shall be indicated in the report and on the construction documents. The opinion and report shall be prepared by a qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official and provided without charge to the enforcing agency.

For buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H, separate floor plans shall be submitted identifying the locations of anticipated contents and processes so as to reflect the nature of each occupied portion of every building and structure.

### 414.2 Control areas.
Control areas shall comply with Sections 414.2.1 through 414.2.5 and the Fire Code.

#### 414.2.1 Construction requirements.
Control areas shall be separated from each other by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

#### 414.2.2 Percentage of maximum allowable quantities.
The percentage of maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials per control area permitted at each floor level within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2.

#### 414.2.3 Number.
The maximum number of control areas within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2.

#### 414.2.4 Fire-resistance-rating requirements.
The required fire-resistance rating for fire barriers shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2. The floor assembly of the control area and the construction supporting the floor of the control area shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**Exception:** The floor assembly of the control area and the construction supporting the floor of the control area are allowed to be 1-hour fire-resistance rated in buildings of Types IIA, IIIA and VA construction, provided that both of the following conditions exist:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; and
2. The building is three or fewer stories above grade plane.

### 414.2.5 Hazardous material in Group M display and storage areas and in Group S storage areas.
The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials permitted within a single control area of a Group M display and storage area, a Group S storage area or an outdoor control area is permitted to exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area specified in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) without classifying the building or use as a Group H occupancy, provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the Fire Code and quantities do not exceed the maximum allowable specified in Table 414.2.5(1).

In Group M occupancy wholesale and retail sales uses, indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area as indicated in Table 414.2.5(2), provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the Fire Code.

The maximum quantity of aerosol products in Group M occupancy retail display areas, storage areas adjacent to retail display areas and retail storage areas shall be in accordance with the Fire Code.

### 414.3 Ventilation.
Rooms, areas or spaces in which explosive, corrosive, combustible, flammable or highly toxic dusts, mists, fumes, vapors or gases are or may be emitted due to the processing, use, handling or storage of materials shall be

---

**TABLE 414.2.2**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR LEVEL</th>
<th>PERCENTAGE OF THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>NUMBER OF CONTROL AREAS PER FLOOR</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING FOR FIRE BARRIERS IN HOURS&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Above grade plane</td>
<td>Higher than 9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below grade plane</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lower than 2</td>
<td>Not Allowed</td>
<td>Not Allowed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Percentages shall be of the maximum allowable quantity per control area shown in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2), with all increases allowed in the notes to those tables.

<sup>b</sup> Separation shall include fire barriers and horizontal assemblies as necessary to provide separation from other portions of the building.
mechanically ventilated where required by this code, the Fire Code or the Mechanical Code.

Emissions generated at workstations shall be confined to the area in which they are generated as specified in the Fire Code and the Mechanical Code.

414.4 Hazardous material systems. Systems involving hazardous materials shall be suitable for the intended application. Controls shall be designed to prevent materials from entering or leaving process or reaction systems at other than the intended time, rate or path. Automatic controls, where provided, shall be designed to be fail safe.

414.5 Inside storage, dispensing and use. The inside storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 414.5.1 through 414.5.3 of this code and the Fire Code.

414.5.1 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the Fire Code as required by Table 414.5.1 where quantities of hazardous materials specified in that table exceed the maximum allowable quantities in Table 307.1(1) or where a structure, room or space is occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards as required by Section 415 or the Fire Code.

414.5.2 Emergency or standby power. Where required by the Fire Code or this code, mechanical ventilation, treatment systems, temperature control, alarm, detection or other electrically operated systems shall be provided with emergency or standby power in accordance with Section 2702. For storage and use areas for highly toxic or toxic materials, see Sections 6004.2.2.8 and 6004.3.4.2 of the Fire Code.

### TABLE 414.2.5(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITION</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER INDOOR AND OUTDOOR CONTROL AREA IN GROUP M AND S OCCUPANCIES NONFLAMMABLE SOLIDS AND NONFLAMMABLE AND NONCOMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS&lt;sup&gt;a,e&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Material&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Health-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Corrosives&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Highly toxics</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Toxics&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Physical-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Oxidizers&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Unstable (reactives)&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Water reactives</td>
<td>3&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2&lt;sup&gt;b,e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. Hazard categories are as specified in the Fire Code.

b. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings that are sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. When Note c also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.

c. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent when stored in approved storage cabinets, in accordance with the Fire Code. When Note b also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.

d. See Table 414.2.2 for design and number of control areas.

e. Allowable quantities for other hazardous material categories shall be in accordance with Section 307.

f. Maximum quantities shall be increased 100 percent in outdoor control areas.

g. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 2,250 pounds when individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.

h. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 4,500 pounds when individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.

i. The permitted quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

j. Quantities are unlimited in an outdoor control area.
SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

TABLE 414.2.5(2)
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY OF FLAMMABLE AND
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS IN WHOLESALE AND RETAIL SALES OCCUPANCIES PER CONTROL AREA*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF LIQUID</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA (gallons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sprinklered in accordance with note b densities and arrangements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IA</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IB, IC, II and IIIA</td>
<td>7,500$^\circ$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IIIIB</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute per square foot = 40.75 L/min/m².

a. Control areas shall be separated from each other by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier wall.

b. To be considered as sprinklered, a building shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system with a design providing minimum densities as follows:
1. For uncartoned commodities on shelves 6 feet or less in height where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of Ordinary Hazard Group 2.
2. For cartoned, palletized or racked commodities where storage is 4 feet 6 inches or less in height and where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of 0.21 gallon per minute per square foot over the most remote 1,500-square-foot area.

For uncartoned commodities where storage is 5,000 square feet or less in area, and the ceiling height is 20 feet or less, the maximum allowable quantities are increased by 2 percent for each 1,000 square feet of area in excess of 50,000 square feet, up to a maximum of 100 percent of the table amounts. A control area separation is not required. The cumulative amounts, including amounts attained by having an additional control area, shall not exceed 30,000 gallons.

c. Where wholesale and retail sales or storage areas exceed 50,000 square feet in area, the maximum allowable quantities are allowed to be increased by 2 percent for each 1,000 square feet of area in excess of 50,000 square feet, up to a maximum of 100 percent of the table amounts. A control area separation is not required. The cumulative amounts, including amounts attained by having an additional control area, shall not exceed 30,000 gallons.

414.5.2.1 Exempt applications. Emergency or standby power is not required for the mechanical ventilation systems provided for any of the following:
1. Storage of Class IB and IC flammable and combustible liquids in closed containers not exceeding 6.5 gallons (25 L) capacity.
2. Storage of Class I and 2 oxidizers.
4. Storage of asphyxiant, irritant and radioactive gases.

414.5.2.2 Fail-safe engineered systems. Standby power for mechanical ventilation, treatment systems and temperature control systems shall not be required where an approved fail-safe engineered system is installed.

414.5.3 Spill control, drainage and containment. Rooms, buildings or areas occupied for the storage of solid and liquid hazardous materials shall be provided with a means to control spillage and to contain or drain off spillage and fire protection water discharged in the storage area where required in the Fire Code. The methods of spill control shall be in accordance with the Fire Code.

414.6 Outdoor storage, dispensing and use. The outdoor storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with the Fire Code.

414.6.1 Weather protection. Where weather protection is provided for sheltering outdoor hazardous material storage or use areas, such areas shall be considered outdoor storage or use when the weather protection structure complies with Sections 414.6.1.1 through 414.6.1.3.

414.6.1.1 Walls. Walls shall not obstruct more than one side of the structure.

Exception: Walls shall be permitted to obstruct portions of multiple sides of the structure, provided that the obstructed area is not greater than 25 percent of the structure’s perimeter.

414.6.1.2 Separation distance. The distance from the structure to buildings, lot lines, public ways or means of egress to a public way shall be not less than the distance required for an outside hazardous material storage or use area without weather protection.

414.6.1.3 Noncombustible construction. The overhead structure shall be of approved noncombustible construction with a maximum area of 1,500 square feet (140 m²).

Exception: The maximum area is permitted to be increased as provided by Section 506.

SECTION 415
GROUPS H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 AND H-5

415.1 Scope. The provisions of Sections 415.1 through 415.11 shall apply to the storage and use of hazardous materials in excess of the maximum allowable quantities per control area listed in Section 307.1. Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall also comply with the applicable provisions of Section 414 and the Fire Code.

415.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CONTINUOUS GAS DETECTION SYSTEM.
DETACHED BUILDING.
EMERGENCY CONTROL STATION.
EXHAUSTED ENCLOSURE.
FABRICATION AREA.
FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES.
GAS CABINET.
GASROOM.
HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM).
HPM FLAMMABLE LIQUID.
HPM ROOM.
IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH).
LIQUID.
LIQUID STORAGE ROOM.
LIQUID USE, DISPENSING AND MIXING ROOM.
LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL).
NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP).
PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL.

SERVICE CORRIDOR.
SOLID.
STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.
USE (MATERIAL).
WORKSTATION.

415.3 Automatic fire detection systems. Group H occupancies shall be provided with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.

415.4 Automatic sprinkler system. Group H occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>CLASS</th>
<th>EXPLOSION CONTROL METHODS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Barricade construction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **EXPLOSION CONTROL REQUIREMENTS**

**HAZARD CATEGORY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Type</th>
<th>Explosion Control Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Combustible dusts²</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryogenic flammables</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.1</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.2</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.3</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.4</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.5</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.6</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaseous Flammable gas</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquefied</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA⁴</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB⁵</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic peroxides</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidizer liquids and solids</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrophoric gas</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable (reactive)</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Detonable</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Nondetonable</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water-reactive liquids and solids</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2f</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPECIAL USES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material Type</th>
<th>Explosion Control Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acetylene generator rooms</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grain processing</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquefied petroleum gas-distribution facilities</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where explosion hazards existf</td>
<td>Detonation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflagration</td>
<td>Not Required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

a. See Section 414.1.3.
b. See the Fire Code.
c. As generated during manufacturing or processing.
d. Storage or use.
e. In open use or dispensing.
f. Rooms containing dispensing and use of hazardous materials when an explosive environment can occur because of the characteristics or nature of the hazardous materials or as a result of the dispensing or use process.
g. A method of explosion control shall be provided when Class 2 water-reactive materials can form potentially explosive mixtures.
h. Explosion venting is not required for Group H-5 fabrication areas complying with Section 415.11.1 and the Fire Code.
415.5 Emergency alarms. Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided as set forth herein.

415.5.1 Storage. An approved manual emergency alarm system shall be provided in buildings, rooms or areas used for storage of hazardous materials. Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior exit or exit access door of storage buildings, rooms or areas. Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm to alert occupants of an emergency situation involving hazardous materials.

415.5.2 Dispensing, use and handling. Where hazardous materials having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are transported through corridors, interior exit stairways or ramps, or exit passageways, there shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or an approved alarm-initiating device at not more than 150-foot (45 720 mm) intervals and at each exit and exit access doorway throughout the transport route. The signal shall be relayed to an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

415.5.3 Supervision. Emergency alarm systems shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

415.5.4 Emergency alarm systems. Emergency alarm systems shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702.

415.6 Fire separation distance. Group H occupancies shall be located on property in accordance with the other provisions of this chapter. In Groups H-2 and H-3, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter wall of the occupancy shall be an exterior wall.

Exceptions:

1. Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the Fire Code and NFPA 30.

2. Liquid storage rooms having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the Fire Code and NFPA 30.

3. Spray paint booths that comply with the Fire Code need not be located on the outer perimeter.

415.6.1 Group H occupancy minimum fire separation distance. Regardless of any other provisions, buildings containing Group H occupancies shall be set back to the minimum fire separation distance as set forth in Sections 415.6.1.1 through 415.6.1.4. Distances shall be measured from the walls enclosing the occupancy to lot lines, including those on a public way. Distances to assumed lot lines established for the purpose of determining exterior wall and opening protection are not to be used to establish the minimum fire separation distance for buildings on sites where explosives are manufactured or used when separation is provided in accordance with the quantity distance tables specified for explosive materials in the Fire Code.

415.6.1.1 Group H-1. Group H-1 occupancies shall be set back not less than 75 feet (22 860 mm) and not less than required by the Fire Code.

Exception: Fireworks manufacturing buildings separated in accordance with NFPA 1124.

415.6.1.2 Group H-2. Group H-2 occupancies shall be set back not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) where the area of the occupancy is greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) and it is not required to be located in a detached building.

415.6.1.3 Groups H-2 and H-3. Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be set back not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) where a detached building is required (see Table 415.6.2).

415.6.1.4 Explosive materials. Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing materials with explosive characteristics shall be separated as required by the Fire Code. Where separations are not specified, the distances required shall be determined by a technical report issued in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

415.6.2 Detached buildings for Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 occupancy. The storage or use of hazardous materials in excess of those amounts listed in Table 415.6.2 shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

415.6.2.1 Wall and opening protection. Where a detached building is required by Table 415.6.2, there are no requirements for wall and opening protection based on fire separation distance.

415.7 Special provisions for Group H-1 occupancies. Group H-1 occupancies shall be in detached buildings used for no other purpose. Roofs shall be of lightweight construction with suitable thermal insulation to prevent sensitive material from reaching its decomposition temperature. Group H-1 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for both Group H-1 and H-4 occupancies.

415.7.1 Floors in storage rooms. Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, pyrophoric materials and unstable (reactive) materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

415.8 Special provisions for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies. Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing quantities of hazardous materials in excess of those set forth in Table 415.6.2 shall be in detached buildings used for manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials. Materials listed for Group H-1 occupancies in Section 307.3 are permitted to be located within Group H-2 or H-3 detached buildings provided the amount of materials per control area do not exceed the maximum allowed quantity specified in Table 307.1(1).
415.8.1 Multiple hazards. Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancies as applicable.

415.8.2 Separation of incompatible materials. Hazardous materials other than those listed in Table 415.6.2 shall be allowed in manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage areas when separated from incompatible materials in accordance with the provisions of the Fire Code.

415.8.3 Water reactives. Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing water-reactive materials shall be resistant to water penetration. Piping for conveying liquids shall not be over or through areas containing water reactives, unless isolated by approved liquid-tight construction.

   **Exception:** Fire protection piping shall be permitted over or through areas containing water reactives without isolating it with liquid-tight construction.

415.8.4 Floors in storage rooms. Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, oxidizers, pyrophoric materials, unstable (reactive) materials and water-reactive solids and liquids shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

415.8.5 Waterproof room. Rooms or areas used for the storage of water-reactive solids and liquids shall be constructed in a manner that resists the penetration of water through the use of waterproof materials. Piping carrying water for other than approved automatic sprinkler systems shall not be within such rooms or areas.

415.9 Group H-2. Occupancies in Group H-2 shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.9.1 through 415.9.3 and the Fire Code.

415.9.1 Flammable and combustible liquids. The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 415.9.1.1 through 415.9.1.9, the Mechanical Code and the Fire Code.

415.9.1.1 Mixed occupancies. Where the storage tank area is located in a building of two or more occupancies and the quantity of liquid exceeds the maximum allowable quantity for one control area, the use shall be completely separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with the requirements of Section 508.4.

415.9.1.1 Height exception. Where storage tanks are located within a building no more than one story above grade plane, the height limitation of Section 504 shall not apply for Group H.

### TABLE 415.6.2

A DETACHED BUILDING IS REQUIRED WHEN THE QUANTITY OF MATERIAL EXCEEDS THAT LISTED HEREIN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Solids and Liquids (tons)⁴ ¹</th>
<th>Gases (cubic feet)⁴ ¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explosives</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.4c</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division 1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oxidizers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unstable (reactives) detonable</strong></td>
<td>Class 3 or 4</td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oxidizer, liquids and solids</strong></td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Organic peroxides</strong></td>
<td>Detonable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class I</td>
<td>Maximum Allowable Quantity</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unstable (reactives) nondetonable</strong></td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water reactives</strong></td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pyrophoric gases</strong></td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 ton = 906 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m³, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For materials that are detonable, the distance to other buildings or lot lines shall be in accordance with Chapter 56 of the Fire Code based on trinitrotoluene (TNT) equivalence of the material. For materials classified as explosives, see Chapter 56 of the Fire Code.

b. “Maximum Allowable Quantity” means the maximum allowable quantity per control area set forth in Table 307.1(1).

c. Limited to Division 1.4 materials and articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as an explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF) regulations or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles, provided the net explosive weight of individual articles does not exceed 1 pound.
415.9.1.2 **Tank protection.** Storage tanks shall be non-combustible and protected from physical damage. *Fire barriers or horizontal assemblies* or both around the storage tanks shall be permitted as the method of protection from physical damage.

415.9.1.3 **Tanks.** Storage tanks shall be approved tanks conforming to the requirements of the *Fire Code.*

415.9.1.4 **Leakage containment.** A liquid-tight containment area compatible with the stored liquid shall be provided. The method of spill control, drainage control and secondary containment shall be in accordance with the *Fire Code.*

**Exception:** Rooms where only double-wall storage tanks conforming to Section 415.9.1.3 are used to store Class I, II and IIIA flammable and combustible liquids shall not be required to have a leakage containment area.

415.9.1.5 **Leakage alarm.** An approved automatic alarm shall be provided to indicate a leak in a storage tank and room. The alarm shall sound an audible signal, 15 dBA above the ambient sound level, at every point of entry into the room in which the leaking storage tank is located. An approved sign shall be posted on every entry door to the tank storage room indicating the potential hazard of the interior room environment, or the sign shall state: WARNING, WHEN ALARM SOUNDS, THE ENVIRONMENT WITHIN THE ROOM MAY BE HAZARDOUS. The leakage alarm shall also be supervised in accordance with Chapter 9 to transmit a trouble signal.

415.9.1.6 **Tank vent.** Storage tank vents for Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall terminate to the outdoor air in accordance with the *Fire Code.*

415.9.1.7 **Room ventilation.** Storage tank areas storing Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall be provided with mechanical ventilation. The mechanical ventilation system shall be in accordance with the *Mechanical Code* and the *Fire Code.*

415.9.1.8 **Explosion venting.** Where Class I liquids are being stored, explosion venting shall be provided in accordance with the *Fire Code.*

415.9.1.9 **Tank openings other than vents.** Tank openings other than vents from tanks inside buildings shall be designed to ensure that liquids or vapor concentrations are not released inside the building.

415.9.2 **Liquefied petroleum gas facilities.** The construction and installation of liquefied petroleum gas facilities shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *Fire Code,* the *Mechanical Code,* the *Fuel Gas Code* and NFPA 58.

415.9.3 **Dry cleaning plants.** The construction and installation of dry cleaning plants shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *Mechanical Code,* the *Plumbing Code* and NFPA 32. Dry cleaning solvents and systems shall be classified in accordance with the *Fire Code.*

415.10 **Groups H-3 and H-4.** Groups H-3 and H-4 shall be constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this code and the *Fire Code.*

415.10.1 **Flammable and combustible liquids.** The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 415.9.1.

415.10.2 **Gas rooms.** Where gas rooms are provided, such rooms shall be separated from other areas by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

415.10.3 **Floors in storage rooms.** Floors in storage areas for corrosive liquids and highly toxic or toxic materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

415.10.4 **Separation-highly toxic solids and liquids.** Highly toxic solids and liquids not stored in approved hazardous materials storage cabinets shall be isolated from other hazardous materials storage by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

415.11 **Group H-5.** In addition to the requirements set forth elsewhere in this code, Group H-5 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 415.11.1 through 415.11.11 and the *Fire Code.*

415.11.1 **Fabrication areas.** Fabrication areas shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1 through 415.11.1.8.

415.11.1.1 **Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials and hazardous production materials (HPM) shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1.1 and 415.11.1.1.2.

415.11.1.1.1 **Aggregate quantities.** The aggregate quantities of hazardous materials stored and used in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the quantities set forth in Table 415.11.1.1.1.

**Exception:** The quantity limitations for any hazard category in Table 415.11.1.1.1 shall not apply where the fabrication area contains quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area established by Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).

415.11.1.1.2 **Hazardous production materials.** The maximum quantities of hazardous production materials (HPM) stored in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area established by Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).

415.11.1.2 **Separation.** Fabrication areas, whose sizes are limited by the quantity of hazardous materials allowed by Table 415.11.1.1.1, shall be separated from each other, from corridors and from other parts of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers con-
415.11.1.3 Location of occupied levels. Occupied levels of fabrication areas shall be located at or above the first story above grade plane.

415.11.1.4 Floors. Except for surfacing, floors within fabrication areas shall be of noncombustible construction.

Openings through floors of fabrication areas are permitted to be unprotected where the interconnected levels are used solely for mechanical equipment directly related to such fabrication areas (see also Section 415.11.1.5).

Floors forming a part of an occupancy separation shall be liquid tight.

415.11.1.5 Shafts and openings through floors. Elevator hoistways, vent shafts and other openings through floors shall be enclosed where required by Sections 712 and 713. Mechanical, duct and piping penetrations within a fabrication area shall not extend more than two floors. The annular space around penetrations for cables, cable trays, tubing, piping, conduit or ducts shall be sealed at the floor level to restrict the movement of air. The fabrication area, including the areas through which the ductwork and piping extend, shall be considered a single conditioned environment.

415.11.1.6 Ventilation. Mechanical exhaust ventilation at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot [0.0051 m³/(s · m²)] of floor area shall be provided throughout the portions of the fabrication area where HPM are used or stored. The exhaust air duct system of one fabrication area shall not connect to another duct system outside that fabrication area within the building.

A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.

Two or more operations at a workstation shall not be connected to the same exhaust system where either one or the combination of the substances removed could constitute a fire, explosion or hazardous chemical reaction within the exhaust duct system.

Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 or both.

Exceptions:

1. Doors within such fire barrier walls, including doors to corridors, shall be only self-closing fire door assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/2 hour.

2. Windows between fabrication areas and corridors are permitted to be fixed glazing listed and labeled for a fire protection rating of not less than 1/4 hour in accordance with Section 716.

415.11.1.7 Transporting hazardous production materials to fabrication areas. HPM shall be transported to fabrication areas through enclosed piping or tubing systems that comply with Section 415.11.6, through service corridors complying with Section 415.11.3, or in corridors as permitted in the exception to Section 415.11.2. The handling or transporting of HPM within service corridors shall comply with the Fire Code.

415.11.1.8 Electrical. Electrical equipment and devices within fabrication areas shall comply with NFPA 70. The requirements for hazardous locations need not be applied where the average air change is at least four times that set forth in Section 415.11.1.6 and where the number of air changes at any location is not less than three times that required by Section 415.11.1.6. The use of recirculated air shall be permitted.

415.11.1.8.1 Workstations. Workstations shall not be energized without adequate exhaust ventilation. See Section 415.11.1.6 for workstation exhaust ventilation requirements.

415.11.2 Corridors. Corridors shall comply with Chapter 10 and shall be separated from fabrication areas as specified in Section 415.11.1.2. Corridors shall contain HPM and shall not be used for transporting such materials except through closed piping systems as provided in Section 415.11.6.4

Exception: Where existing fabrication areas are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing corridors, subject to the following conditions:

1. Nonproduction HPM is allowed to be transported in corridors if utilized for maintenance, lab work and testing.

2. Where existing fabrication areas are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing corridors, subject to the following conditions:

   2.1. Corridors. Corridors adjacent to the fabrication area where the alteration work is to be done shall comply with Section 1020 for a length determined as follows:

   2.1.1. The length of the common wall of the corridor and the fabrication area; and

   2.1.2. For the distance along the corridor to the point of entry of HPM into the corridor serving that fabrication area.
TABLE 415.11.1.1
QUANTITY LIMITS FOR HAZARDOUS MATERIALS IN A SINGLE FABRICATION AREA IN GROUP H-5*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HAZARD CATEGORY</th>
<th>SOLIDS (pounds per square foot)</th>
<th>LIQUIDS (gallons per square foot)</th>
<th>GAS (cubic feet @ NTP/square foot)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYSICAL-HAZARD MATERIALS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible dust</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible fiber</td>
<td>Loose</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baled</td>
<td>Notes b, c</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible liquid</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination Class</td>
<td>I, II and IIIA</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryogenic gas</td>
<td>Flammable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oxidizing</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammable gas</td>
<td>Gaseous</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liquefied</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combustible liquid</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination Class</td>
<td>I, IB and IC</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination Class</td>
<td>I, II and IIIA</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flammable solid</td>
<td>Unclassified</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>detonable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class I</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class II</td>
<td>0.025</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class III</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class IV</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class V</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidizing gas</td>
<td>Gaseous</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liquefied</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination of gaseous</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and liquefied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidizer</td>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination Class</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrophoric materials</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.00125</td>
<td>Notes d and e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable (reactive)</td>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>0.0025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water reactive</td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>Note b</td>
<td>0.00125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrosives</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highly toxic</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxics</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m², 1 gallon per square foot = 40.7 L/m², 1 cubic foot @ NTP/square foot = 0.305 m³ @ NTP/m².
1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m³.

a. Hazardous materials within piping shall not be included in the calculated quantities.
b. Quantity of hazardous materials in a single fabrication shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).
c. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
d. The aggregate quantity of flammable, pyrophoric, toxic and highly toxic gases shall not exceed 9,000 cubic feet at NTP.
e. The aggregate quantity of pyrophoric gases in the building shall not exceed the amounts set forth in Table 415.6.2.
2.2. Emergency alarm system. There shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or other approved alarm-initiating device within corridors at not more than 150-foot (45,720 mm) intervals and at each exit and doorway. The signal shall be relayed to an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or the emergency control station and shall also initiate a local audible alarm.

2.3. Pass-throughs. Self-closing doors having a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour shall separate pass-throughs from existing corridors. Pass-throughs shall be constructed as required for the corridors and protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

415.11.3 Service corridors. Service corridors within a Group H-5 occupancy shall comply with Sections 415.11.3.1 through 415.11.3.4.

415.11.3.1 Use conditions. Service corridors shall be separated from corridors as required by Section 415.11.1.2. Service corridors shall not be used as a required corridor.

415.11.3.2 Mechanical ventilation. Service corridors shall be mechanically ventilated as required by Section 415.11.1.6 or at not less than six air changes per hour.

415.11.3.3 Means of egress. The distance of travel from any point in a service corridor to an exit, exit access corridor or door into a fabrication area shall be not greater than 75 feet (22,860 mm). Dead ends shall be not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length. There shall be not less than two exits, and not more than one-half of the required means of egress shall require travel into a fabrication area. Doors from service corridors shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be self-closing.

415.11.3.4 Minimum width. The clear width of a service corridor shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm), or 33 inches (838 mm) wider than the widest cart or truck used in the service corridor, whichever is greater.

415.11.3.5 Emergency alarm system. Emergency alarm systems shall be provided in accordance with this section and Sections 415.5.1 and 415.5.2. The maximum allowable quantity per control area provisions shall not apply to emergency alarm systems required for HPM.

415.11.3.5.1 Service corridors. An emergency alarm system shall be provided in service corridors, with no fewer than one alarm device in each service corridor.

415.11.3.5.2 Corridors and interior exit stairways and ramps. Emergency alarms for corridors, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall comply with Section 415.5.2.

415.11.3.5.3 Liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms. Emergency alarms for liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms shall comply with Section 415.5.1.

415.11.3.5.4 Alarm-initiating devices. An approved emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations, or other approved alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

415.11.3.5.5 Alarm signals. Activation of the emergency alarm system shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

415.11.4 Storage of hazardous production materials. Storage of hazardous production materials (HPM) in fabrication areas shall be within approved or listed storage cabinets or gas cabinets or within a workstation. The storage of HPM in quantities greater than those listed in Section 5004.2 of the Fire Code shall be in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms or gas rooms as appropriate for the materials stored. The storage of other hazardous materials shall be in accordance with other applicable provisions of this code and the Fire Code.

415.11.5 HPM rooms, gas rooms, liquid storage room construction. HPM rooms, gas rooms and liquid shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.11.5.1 through 415.11.5.9.

415.11.5.1 HPM rooms and gas rooms. HPM rooms and gas rooms shall be separated from other areas by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is 300 square feet (27.9 m²) or more and not less than 1 hour where the area is less than 300 square feet (27.9 m²).

415.11.5.2 Liquid storage rooms. Liquid storage rooms shall be constructed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Rooms greater than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) in area, shall have no fewer than one exterior door approved for fire department access.

2. Rooms shall be separated from other areas by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 1 hour for rooms up to 150 square feet (13.9 m²) in area and not less than 2 hours where the room is more than 150 square feet (13.9 m²) in area.

3. Shelving, racks and wainscoting in such areas shall be of noncombustible construction or wood of not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.

4. Rooms used for the storage of Class I flammable liquids shall not be located in a basement.

415.11.5.3 Floors. Except for surfacing, floors of HPM rooms and liquid storage rooms shall be of noncombustible construction or wood of not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or fire-retardant-treated and shall be separated from other areas by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 1 hour for rooms up to 150 square feet (13.9 m²) in area and not less than 2 hours where the room is more than 150 square feet (13.9 m²) in area.
415.11.5.4 Location. Where HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms are provided, they shall have no fewer than one exterior wall and such wall shall be not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from lot lines, including lot lines adjacent to public ways.

415.11.5.5 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

415.11.5.6 Exits. Where two exits are required from HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms, one shall be directly to the outside of the building.

415.11.5.7 Doors. Doors in a fire barrier wall, including doors to corridors, shall be self-closing fire door assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/2 hour.

415.11.5.8 Ventilation. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (0.044 L/s/m²) of floor area or six air changes per hour.

Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding areas and direct the exhaust ventilation to an exhaust system.

415.11.5.9 Emergency alarm system. An approved emergency alarm system shall be provided for HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms.

Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior exit door of such rooms.

Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

An approved emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations or other approved alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

415.11.6 Piping and tubing. Hazardous production materials piping and tubing shall comply with this section and ASME B31.3.

415.11.6.1 HPM having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4. Systems supplying HPM liquids or gases having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4 shall be welded throughout, except for connections, to the systems that are within a ventilated enclosure if the material is a gas, or an approved method of drainage or containment is provided for the connections if the material is a liquid.

415.11.6.2 Location in service corridors. Hazardous production materials supply piping or tubing in service corridors shall be exposed to view.

415.11.6.3 Excess flow control. Where HPM gases or liquids are carried in pressurized piping above 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103.4 kPa), excess flow control shall be provided. Where the piping originates from within a liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room, the excess flow control shall be located within the liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room. Where the piping originates from a bulk source, the excess flow control shall be located as close to the bulk source as practical.

415.11.6.4 Installations in corridors and above other occupancies. The installation of HPM piping and tubing within the space defined by the walls of corridors and the floor or roof above, or in concealed spaces above other occupancies, shall be in accordance with Sections 415.11.6.1 through 415.11.6.3 and the following conditions:

1. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed within the space unless the space is less than 6 inches (152 mm) in the least dimension.

2. Ventilation not less than six air changes per hour shall be provided. The space shall not be used to convey air from any other area.

3. Where the piping or tubing is used to transport HPM liquids, a receptor shall be installed below such piping or tubing. The receptor shall be designed to collect any discharge or leakage and drain it to an approved location. The 1-hour enclosure shall not be used as part of the receptor.

4. HPM supply piping and tubing and nonmetallic waste lines shall be separated from the corridor and from occupancies other than Group H-5 by fire barriers or by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Access openings into the enclosure shall be protected by approved fire-protection-rated assemblies.

5. Readily accessible manual or automatic remotely activated fail-safe emergency shutoff valves shall be installed on piping and tubing other than waste lines at the following locations:

   5.1. At branch connections into the fabrication area.

   5.2. At entries into corridors.

Exception: Transverse crossings of the corridors by supply piping that is enclosed within a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the corridor need not comply with Items 1 through 5.

415.11.6.5 Identification. Piping, tubing and HPM waste lines shall be identified in accordance with ANSI A13.1 to indicate the material being transported.

415.11.7 Continuous gas detection systems. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided for HPM gases where the physiological warning threshold level of the gas is at a higher level than the accepted permissible exposure limit (PEL) for the gas and for flammable gases in accordance with Sections 415.11.7.1 and 415.11.7.2.
415.11.7.1 Where required. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in the areas identified in Sections 415.11.7.1.1 through 415.11.7.1.4.

415.11.7.1.1 Fabrication areas. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in fabrication areas where gas is used in the fabrication area.

415.11.7.1.2 HPM rooms. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in HPM rooms where gas is used in the room.

415.11.7.1.3 Gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures. A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in gas rooms where gases are not located in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures.

415.11.7.1.4 Corridors. Where gases are transported in piping placed within the space defined by the walls of a corridor and the floor or roof above the corridor, a continuous gas detection system shall be provided where piping is located and in the corridor.

Exception: A continuous gas detection system is not required for occasional transverse crossings of the corridors by supply piping that is enclosed in a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the corridor.

415.11.7.2 Gas detection system operation. The continuous gas detection system shall be capable of monitoring the room, area or equipment in which the gas is located at or below all the following gas concentrations:

1. Immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) values where the monitoring point is within an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
2. Permissible exposure limit (PEL) levels where the monitoring point is in an area outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
3. For flammable gases, the monitoring detection threshold level shall be vapor concentrations in excess of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL) where the monitoring is within or outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
4. Except as noted in this section, monitoring for highly toxic and toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60 of the Fire Code.

415.11.7.2.1 Alarms. The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be both visual and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where the gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

415.11.7.2.2 Shutoff of gas supply. The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for which gas is detected when a short-term hazard condition is detected. Automatic closure of shutoff valves shall comply with the following:

1. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.
2. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or an exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.
3. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve supplying the manifold for the compressed gas container of the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

Exception: Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at the use location or within a gas valve enclosure of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

415.11.8 Manual fire alarm system. An approved manual fire alarm system shall be provided throughout buildings containing Group H-5. Activation of the alarm system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station. The fire alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 907.

415.11.9 Emergency control station. An emergency control station shall be provided in accordance with Sections 415.11.9.1 through 415.11.9.3.

415.11.9.1 Location. The emergency control station shall be located on the premises at an approved location outside the fabrication area.

415.11.9.2 Staffing. Trained personnel shall continuously staff the emergency control station.

415.11.9.3 Signals. The emergency control station shall receive signals from emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems. Such emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems shall include, but not be limited to, the following where such equipment or systems are required to be provided either in this chapter or elsewhere in this code:

1. Automatic sprinkler system alarm and monitoring systems.
3. Emergency alarm systems.
4. Continuous gas detection systems.
5. Smoke detection systems.
6. Emergency power system.
7. Automatic detection and alarm systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the Fire Code.
8. Exhaust ventilation flow alarm devices for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust ventilation systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the Fire Code.

415.11.10 Emergency power system. An emergency power system shall be provided in Group H-5 occupancies in accordance with Sections 415.11.11.1 through 415.11.11.3 and the Fire Code in accordance with Section 2705.2.3.4 of the Fire Code.

415.11.11.1 Metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where all of the following conditions apply:
1. Where the largest cross-sectional diameter is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).
2. The ducts are within the building.
3. The ducts are conveying flammable gases, vapors or fumes.

415.11.11.2 Combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts. Automatic sprinkler system protection shall be provided in combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

Exception: Ducts need not be provided with automatic sprinkler protection as follows:
1. Ducts listed or approved for applications without automatic sprinkler system protection.
2. Ducts not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) in length installed below ceiling level.

415.11.11.3 Automatic sprinkler locations. Sprinkler systems shall be installed at 12-foot (3658 mm) intervals in horizontal ducts and at changes in direction. In vertical ducts, sprinklers shall be installed at the top and at alternate floor levels.

SECTION 416
APPLICATION OF FLAMMABLE FINISHES

416.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction, installation and use of buildings and structures, or parts thereof, for the application of flammable finishes. Such construction and equipment shall comply with the Fire Code.

416.2 Spray rooms. Spray rooms shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Floors shall be waterproofed and drained in an approved manner.

416.2.1 Surfaces. The interior surfaces of spray rooms shall be smooth and shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and cleaning, and shall be so designed to confine residues within the room. Aluminum shall not be used.

416.2.2 Ventilation. Mechanical ventilation and interlocks with the spraying operation shall be in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

416.3 Spraying spaces. Spraying spaces shall be ventilated with an exhaust system to prevent the accumulation of flammable mist or vapors in accordance with the Mechanical Code. Where such spaces are not separately enclosed, noncombustible spray curtains shall be provided to restrict the spread of flammable vapors.
416.3.1 Surfaces. The interior surfaces of spraying spaces shall be smooth and continuous without edges; shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and cleaning; and shall be so designed to confine residues within the spraying space. Aluminum shall not be used.

416.4 Spray booths. Spray booths shall be designed, constructed and operated in accordance with the Fire Code.

416.5 Fire protection. An automatic sprinkler system or fire-extinguishing system shall be provided in all spray, dip and immersing spaces and storage rooms and shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9.

SECTION 417 DRYING ROOMS

417.1 General. A drying room or dry kiln installed within a building shall be constructed entirely of approved noncombustible materials or assemblies of such materials regulated by the approved rules or as required in the general and specific sections of this chapter for special occupancies and where applicable to the general requirements of the Mechanical Code.

417.2 Piping clearance. Overhead heating pipes shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from combustible contents in the dryer.

417.3 Insulation. Where the operating temperature of the dryer is 175°F (79°C) or more, metal enclosures shall be insulated from adjacent combustible materials by not less than 12 inches (305 mm) of airspace, or the metal walls shall be lined with 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) insulating mill board or other approved equivalent insulation.

417.4 Fire protection. Drying rooms designed for high-hazard materials and processes, including special occupancies as provided for in Chapter 4, shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with the provisions of Chapter 9.

SECTION 418 ORGANIC COATINGS

418.1 Building features. Manufacturing of organic coatings shall be done only in buildings that do not have pits or basements.

418.2 Location. Organic coating manufacturing operations and operations incidental to or connected therewith shall not be located in buildings having other occupancies.

418.3 Process mills. Mills operating with close clearances and that process flammable and heat-sensitive materials, such as nitrocellulose, shall be located in a detached building or noncombustible structure.

418.4 Tank storage. Storage areas for flammable and combustible liquid tanks inside of structures shall be located at or above grade and shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

418.5 Nitrocellulose storage. Nitrocellulose storage shall be located on a detached pad or in a separate structure or a room enclosed with not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

418.6 Finished products. Storage rooms for finished products that are flammable or combustible liquids shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

SECTION 419 LIVE/WORK UNITS

419.1 General. A live/work unit shall comply with Sections 419.1 through 419.9.

Exception: Dwelling or sleeping units that include an office that is less than 10 percent of the area of the dwelling unit are permitted to be classified as dwelling units with accessory occupancies in accordance with Section 508.2.

419.1.1 Limitations. The following shall apply to all live/work areas:

1. The live/work unit is permitted to be not greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m²) in area;
2. The nonresidential area is permitted to be not more than 50 percent of the area of each live/work unit;
3. The nonresidential area function shall be limited to the first or main floor only of the live/work unit; and
4. Not more than five nonresidential workers or employees are allowed to occupy the nonresidential area at any one time.

419.2 Occupancies. Live/work units shall be classified as a Group R-2 occupancy. Separation requirements found in Sections 420 and 508 shall not apply within the live/work unit where the live/work unit is in compliance with Section 419. Nonresidential uses that would otherwise be classified as either a Group H or S occupancy shall not be permitted in a live/work unit.

Exception: Storage shall be permitted in the live/work unit provided the aggregate area of storage in the nonresidential portion of the live/work unit shall be limited to 10 percent of the space dedicated to nonresidential activities.

419.3 Means of egress. Except as modified by this section, the means of egress components for a live/work unit shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 10 for the function served.

419.3.1 Egress capacity. The egress capacity for each element of the live/work unit shall be based on the occupant load for the function served in accordance with Table 1004.1.2.

419.3.2 Spiral stairways. Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 shall be permitted.
419.4 Vertical openings. Floor openings between floor levels of a live/work unit are permitted without enclosure.

419.5 Fire protection. The live/work unit shall be provided with a monitored fire alarm system where required by Section 907.2.9 and an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

419.6 Structural. Floors within a live/work unit shall be designed for the live loads in Table 1607.1, based on the function within the space.

419.7 Accessibility. Accessibility shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 11 for the function served.

419.8 Ventilation. The applicable ventilation requirements of the Mechanical Code shall apply to each area within the live/work unit for the function within that space.

419.9 Plumbing facilities. The nonresidential area of the live/work unit shall be provided with minimum plumbing facilities as specified by Chapter 29, based on the function of the nonresidential area. Where the nonresidential area of the live/work unit is required to be accessible by Section 1107.6.2.1, the plumbing fixtures specified by Chapter 29 shall be accessible.

SECTION 420
GROUPS I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 AND R-4

420.1 General. Occupancies in Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 420.1 through 420.6 and other applicable provisions of this code.

420.2 Separation walls. Walls separating dwelling units in the same building, walls separating sleeping units in the same building and walls separating dwelling or sleeping units from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as fire partitions in accordance with Section 708.

420.3 Horizontal separation. Floor assemblies separating dwelling units in the same buildings, floor assemblies separating sleeping units in the same building and floor assemblies separating dwelling or sleeping units from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711.

420.4 Smoke barriers in Group I-1, Condition 2. Smoke barriers shall be provided in Group I-1, Condition 2, to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to provide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into no fewer than two smoke compartments. Such stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet (2092 m²) and the distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Section 709.

420.4.1 Refuge area. Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 15 net square feet (1.4 m²) for each care recipient.
2. Not less than 6 net square feet (0.56 m²) for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of the refuge area are corridors, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

420.5 Automatic sprinkler system. Group R occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8. Group I-1 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. Quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

420.6 Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be provided in Group I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-4 occupancies in accordance with Sections 907.2.6, 907.2.8, 907.2.9 and 907.2.10, respectively. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be provided in Groups I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

SECTION 421
HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS

421.1 General. Where required by the Fire Code, hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 421.1 through 421.7.

421.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM.

HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM.

421.3 Location. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall not be located below grade.

421.4 Design and construction. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms not classified as Group H shall be separated from other areas of the building in accordance with Section 509.1.

421.4.1 Pressure control. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with a ventilation system designed to maintain the room at a negative pressure in relation to surrounding rooms and spaces.

421.4.2 Windows. Operable windows in interior walls shall not be permitted. Fixed windows shall be permitted where in accordance with Section 716.

421.5 Exhaust ventilation. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 502.16.1 of the Mechanical Code.

421.6 Gas detection system. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with an approved flammable gas detection system in accordance with Sections 421.6.1 through 421.6.4.
421.6.2 Gas detection system components. Gas detection system control units shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 864 or UL 2017. Gas detectors shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2075 for use with the gases and vapors being detected.

421.6.3 Operation. Activation of the gas detection system shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals both inside and outside of the hydrogen fuel gas room.
2. Activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system.

421.6.4 Failure of the gas detection system. Failure of the gas detection system shall result in activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system, cessation of hydrogen generation and the sounding of a trouble signal in an approved location.

421.7 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

421.8 Standby power. Mechanical ventilation and gas detection systems shall be provided with a standby power system in accordance with Section 2702.

SECTION 422
AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES

422.1 General. Occupancies classified as ambulatory care facilities shall comply with the provisions of Sections 422.1 through 422.5 and other applicable provisions of this code.

422.2 Separation. Ambulatory care facilities where the potential for four or more care recipients are to be incapable of self-preservation at any time, whether rendered incapable by staff or staff accepted responsibility for a care recipient already incapable, shall be separated from adjacent spaces, corridors or tenants with a fire partition installed in accordance with Section 708.

422.3 Smoke compartments. Where the aggregate area of one or more ambulatory care facilities is greater than 10,000 square feet (929 m²) on one story, the story shall be provided with a smoke barrier to subdivide the story into no fewer than two smoke compartments. The area of any one such smoke compartment shall be not greater than 22,500 square feet (2092 m²). The distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be installed in accordance with Section 709 with the exception that smoke barriers shall be continuous from outside wall to an outside wall, a floor to a floor, or from a smoke barrier to a smoke barrier or a combination thereof.

422.3.1 Means of egress. Where ambulatory care facilities require smoke compartmentation in accordance with Section 422.3, the fire safety evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1001.4 shall identify the building components necessary to support a defend-in-place emergency response in accordance with Sections 404 and 408 of the Fire Code.

422.3.2 Refuge area. Not less than 30 net square feet (2.8 m²) for each nonambulatory care recipient shall be provided within the aggregate area of corridors, care recipient rooms, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas within each smoke compartment. Each occupant of an ambulatory care facility shall be provided with access to a refuge area without passing through or utilizing adjacent tenant spaces.

422.3.3 Independent egress. A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.

422.4 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 903.2.2.

422.5 Fire alarm systems. A fire alarm system shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 907.2.2.

SECTION 423
STORM SHELTERS

423.1 General. In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

423.1.1 Scope. This section applies to the construction of storm shelters constructed as separate detached buildings or constructed as safe rooms within buildings for the purpose of providing safe refuge from storms that produce high winds, such as tornados and hurricanes. Such structures shall be designated to be hurricane shelters, tornado shelters, or combined hurricane and tornado shelters.

423.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

STORM SHELTER.

Community storm shelter.
Residential storm shelter.

423.3 Critical emergency operations. In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados is 250 MPH in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500, all Group E occupancies with an aggregate occupant load of 50 or more shall have a
storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500. The shelter shall be capable of housing the total occupant load of the Group E occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Group E day care facilities.
2. Group E occupancies accessory to places of religious worship.
3. Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

SECTION 424

CHILDREN’S PLAY STRUCTURES

424.1 Children’s play structures. Children’s play structures installed inside all occupancies covered by this code that exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in height and 150 square feet (14 m²) in area shall comply with Sections 424.2 through 424.5.

424.2 Materials. Children’s play structures shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of combustible materials that comply with the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
2. Light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.
3. Foam plastics (including the pipe foam used in soft-contained play equipment structures) having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source.
4. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use.
5. Textiles and films complying with the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
6. Plastic materials used to construct rigid components of soft-contained play equipment structures (such as tubes, windows, panels, junction boxes, pipes, slides and decks) exhibiting a peak rate of heat release not exceeding 400 kW/m² when tested in accordance with ASTM E1354 at an incident heat flux of 50 kW/m² in the horizontal orientation at a thickness of 6 mm.
7. Ball pool balls, used in soft-contained play equipment structures, having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. The minimum specimen test size shall be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) by an average of 21 inches (533 mm) deep, and the balls shall be held in a box constructed of galvanized steel poultry netting wire mesh.
8. Foam plastics shall be covered by a fabric, coating or film meeting the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
9. The floor covering placed under the children’s play structure shall exhibit a Class I interior floor finish classification, as described in Section 804, when tested in accordance with NFPA 253.

424.3 Fire protection. Children’s play structures shall be provided with the same level of approved fire suppression and detection devices required for other structures in the same occupancy.

424.4 Separation. Children’s play structures shall have a horizontal separation from building walls, partitions and from elements of the means of egress of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm). Children’s playground structures shall have a horizontal separation from other children’s play structures of not less than 20 feet (6090 mm).

424.5 Area limits. Children’s play structures shall be not greater than 300 square feet (28 m²) in area, unless a special investigation, acceptable to the building official, has demonstrated adequate fire safety.

SECTION 425

HYPERBARIC FACILITIES

425.1 Hyperbaric facilities. Hyperbaric facilities shall meet the requirements contained in Chapter 14 of NFPA 99.

SECTION 426

COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS, GRAIN PROCESSING AND STORAGE

426.1 Combustible dusts, grain processing and storage. The provisions of Sections 426.1.1 through 426.1.7 shall apply to buildings in which materials that produce combustible dusts are stored or handled. Buildings that store or handle combustible dusts shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 61, NFPA 85, NFPA 120, NFPA 484, NFPA 654, NFPA 655 and NFPA 664 and the Fire Code.

426.1.1 Type of construction and height exceptions. Buildings shall be constructed in compliance with the height, number of stories and area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506; except that where erected of Type I or II construction, the heights and areas of grain elevators and similar structures shall be unlimited, and where of Type IV construction, the maximum building height shall be 65 feet (19812 mm) and except further that, in isolated areas, the maximum building height of Type IV structures shall be increased to 85 feet (25908 mm).

426.1.2 Grinding rooms. Every room or space occupied for grinding or other operations that produce combustible dusts in such a manner that the room or space is classified as a Group H-2 occupancy shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating of the enclosure shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m²), and not less than 4 hours where the area is greater than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).
426.1.3 Conveyors. Conveyors, chutes, piping and similar equipment passing through the enclosures of rooms or spaces shall be constructed dirt tight and vapor tight, and be of approved noncombustible materials complying with Chapter 30.

426.1.4 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided as specified in the Fire Code, or spaces shall be equipped with the equivalent mechanical ventilation complying with the Mechanical Code.

426.1.5 Grain elevators. Grain elevators, malt houses and buildings for similar occupancies shall not be located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of interior lot lines or structures on the same lot, except where erected along a railroad right-of-way.

426.1.6 Coal pockets. Coal pockets located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior lot lines or from structures on the same lot shall be constructed of not less than Type IB construction. Where more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior lot lines, or where erected along a railroad right-of-way, the minimum type of construction of such structures not more than 65 feet (19812 mm) in building height shall be Type IV.

426.1.7 Tire rebuilding. Buffing operations shall be located in a room separated from the remainder of the building housing the tire rebuilding or tire recapping operation by a 1-hour fire barrier.

Exception: Buffing operations are not required to be separated where all of the following conditions are met:

1. Buffing operations are equipped with an approved continuous automatic water-spray system directed at the point of cutting action;

2. Buffing machines are connected to particle-collecting systems providing a minimum air movement of 1,500 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.71 m³/s) in volume and 4,500 feet per minute (fpm) (23 m/s) in-line velocity; and

3. The collecting system shall discharge the rubber particles to an approved outdoor noncombustible or fire-resistant container, which is emptied at frequent intervals to prevent overflow.
CHAPTER 5
GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

SECTION 501
GENERAL

501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter control the height and area of structures hereafter erected and additions to existing structures.

SECTION 502
DEFINITIONS

502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
AREA, BUILDING.
BASEMENT.
EQUIPMENT PLATFORM.
GRADE PLANE.
HEIGHT, BUILDING.
MEZZANINE.

SECTION 503
GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS

503.1 General. Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, building height, number of stories and building area shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. Building height, number of stories and building area provisions shall be applied independently. Each portion of a building separated by one or more fire walls complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.

503.1.1 Special industrial occupancies. Buildings and structures designed to house special low-hazard industrial processes that require large areas and unusual building heights to accommodate craneways or special machinery and equipment, including, among others, rolling mills; structural metal fabrication shops and foundries; or collection and treatment of sewage and stormwater, or the production and distribution of electric, gas or steam power, shall be exempt from the building height, number of stories and building area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506. Ordinary repairs of such buildings or structures shall include specifically engineered structural and mechanical components designed for removal and replacement in kind.

503.1.2 Buildings on same lot. Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building where the building height, number of stories of each building and the aggregate building area of the buildings are within the limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506. The provisions of this code applicable to the aggregate building shall be applicable to each building.

503.1.3 Type I construction. Buildings of Type I construction permitted to be of unlimited tabular building heights and areas are not subject to the special requirements that allow unlimited area buildings in Section 507 or unlimited building height in Sections 503.1.1 and 504.3 or increased building heights and areas for other types of construction.

SECTION 504
BUILDING HEIGHT AND NUMBER OF STORIES

504.1 General. The height, in feet, and the number of stories of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification and whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building.

Exception: The building height of one-story aircraft hangars, aircraft paint hangars and buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Chapter 9 and is entirely surrounded by public ways or yards not less in width than one and one-half times the building height.

504.1.1 Unlimited area buildings. The height of unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

504.1.2 Special provisions. The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable heights of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

504.2 Mixed occupancy. In a building containing mixed occupancies in accordance with Section 508, no individual occupancy shall exceed the height and number of story limits specified in this section for the applicable occupancies.
504.3 Height in feet. The maximum height, in feet, of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.3.

**Exception:** Towers, spires, steeples and other roof structures shall be constructed of materials consistent with the required type of construction of the building except where other construction is permitted by Section 1510.2.5. Such structures shall not be used for habitation or storage. The structures shall be unlimited in height where of noncombustible materials and shall not extend more than 20 feet (6096 mm) above the allowable building height where of combustible materials (see Chapter 15 for additional requirements).

504.4 Number of stories. The maximum number of stories of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.4.

### Table 504.3a

#### ALLOWABLE BUILDING HEIGHT IN FEET ABOVE GRADE PLANE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>SEE FOOTNOTES</th>
<th>TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A B A B A B A B HT A B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, B, E, F, M, S, U</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1, H-2, H-3, H-5</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-4</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1 Condition 1, I-3</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1 Condition 2, I-2</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-4</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 55 65 50 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>NSd</td>
<td>UL 160 65 65 55 65 55 65 60 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S13R</td>
<td>60 60 60 60 60 60 60 60 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL 180 85 75 85 75 85 70 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**Note:** UL = Unlimited; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the Existing Building Code.
e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the Fire Code.
g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.
### GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

#### TABLE 504.4a-b

**ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>SEE FOOTNOTES</th>
<th>TYPE I</th>
<th>TYPE II</th>
<th>TYPE III</th>
<th>TYPE IV</th>
<th>TYPE V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-1</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-2</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-3</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-4</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-5</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-1</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-2</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-4</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-5</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1 Condition 1</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1 Condition 2</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-2</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-4</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
be included in a determination of the floor area of the room in which the mezzanine is located. In determining the allowable mezzanine area, the area of the mezzanine shall not be included in the floor area of the room.

Where a room contains both a mezzanine and an equipment platform, the aggregate area of the two raised floor levels shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of that room or space in which they are located.

Exceptions:

1. The aggregate area of mezzanines in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1 shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of the room.

2. The aggregate area of mezzanines in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction shall be not greater than one-half of the floor area of the room in buildings and structures equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

505.2.2 Means of egress. The means of egress for mezzanines shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 10.

505.2.3 Openness. A mezzanine shall be open and unobstructed to the room in which such mezzanine is located except for walls not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height, columns and posts.

Exceptions:

1. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are
located, provided that the occupant load of the aggregate area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10.

2. A mezzanine having two or more exits or access to exits is not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.

3. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are located, provided that the aggregate floor area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10 percent of the mezzanine area.

4. In industrial facilities, mezzanines used for control equipment are permitted to be glazed on all sides.

5. In occupancies other than Groups H and I, that are no more than two stories above grade plane and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a mezzanine having two or more means of egress shall not be required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.

505.3 Equipment platforms. Equipment platforms in buildings shall not be considered as a portion of the floor below. Such equipment platforms shall not contribute to either the building area or the number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the equipment platform shall not be included in determining the fire area in accordance with Section 903. Equipment platforms shall not be a part of any mezzanine and such platforms and the walkways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders providing access to an equipment platform shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from the building.

505.3.1 Area limitation. The aggregate area of all equipment platforms within a room shall be not greater than two-thirds of the area of the room in which they are located. Where an equipment platform is located in the same room as a mezzanine, the area of the mezzanine shall be determined by Section 505.2.1 and the combined aggregate area of the equipment platforms and mezzanines shall be not greater than two-thirds of the room in which they are located.

505.3.2 Automatic sprinkler system. Where located in a building that is required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system, equipment platforms shall be fully protected by sprinklers above and below the platform, where required by the standards referenced in Section 903.3.

505.3.3 Guards. Equipment platforms shall have guards where required by Section 1015.2.

SECTION 506 BUILDING AREA

506.1 General. The floor area of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification, whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building and the amount of building frontage on public way or open space.

506.1.1 Unlimited area buildings. Unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

506.1.2 Special provisions. The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

506.1.3 Basements. Basements need not be included in the total allowable floor area of a building provided the total area of such basements does not exceed the area permitted for a one-story above grade plane building.

506.2 Allowable area determination. The allowable area of a building shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 506.2.1 through 506.2.4 and Section 506.3.

506.2.1 Single-occupancy, one-story buildings. The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-1:

\[ A_a = A_i + (NS \times I_f) \]  

(Equation 5-1)

where:

- \( A_a \) = Allowable area (square feet).
- \( A_i \) = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S1, or S13R value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.
- \( NS \) = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).
- \( I_f \) = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

506.2.2 Mixed-occupancy, one-story buildings. The allowable area of a mixed-occupancy building with no more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 508.1 based on Equation 5-1 for each applicable occupancy.

506.2.2.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies. For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.
### GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

#### TABLE 506.2a, b
ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR \((A_i = NS, S1, S13R, \text{ or } SM, \text{ as applicable})\) IN SQUARE FEET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>SEE FOOTNOTES</th>
<th>TYPE I (A)</th>
<th>TYPE I (B)</th>
<th>TYPE II (A)</th>
<th>TYPE II (B)</th>
<th>TYPE III (A)</th>
<th>TYPE III (B)</th>
<th>TYPE IV HT</th>
<th>TYPE V (A)</th>
<th>TYPE V (B)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A-1</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>15,500</td>
<td>8,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>8,500</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>5,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>22,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>46,500</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>42,000</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>34,500</td>
<td>16,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A-2</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>15,500</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>46,500</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>42,000</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>34,500</td>
<td>18,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A-3</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>15,500</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>46,500</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>42,000</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>34,500</td>
<td>18,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A-4</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>15,500</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>46,500</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>42,000</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>45,000</td>
<td>34,500</td>
<td>18,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A-5</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
<td>Ul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>37,500</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>19,000</td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>9,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>150,000</td>
<td>92,000</td>
<td>114,000</td>
<td>76,000</td>
<td>144,000</td>
<td>72,000</td>
<td>36,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>112,500</td>
<td>69,000</td>
<td>85,500</td>
<td>57,000</td>
<td>108,000</td>
<td>54,000</td>
<td>27,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>26,500</td>
<td>14,500</td>
<td>23,500</td>
<td>14,500</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>18,500</td>
<td>9,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>106,000</td>
<td>58,000</td>
<td>94,000</td>
<td>58,000</td>
<td>102,000</td>
<td>74,000</td>
<td>38,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>79,500</td>
<td>43,500</td>
<td>70,500</td>
<td>43,500</td>
<td>76,500</td>
<td>55,500</td>
<td>28,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F-1</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>15,500</td>
<td>19,000</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>33,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>8,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>62,000</td>
<td>76,000</td>
<td>48,000</td>
<td>134,000</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>75,000</td>
<td>46,500</td>
<td>57,000</td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td>100,500</td>
<td>42,000</td>
<td>25,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F-2</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>37,500</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>18,000</td>
<td>50,500</td>
<td>21,000</td>
<td>13,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>150,000</td>
<td>92,000</td>
<td>114,000</td>
<td>72,000</td>
<td>202,000</td>
<td>84,000</td>
<td>52,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>112,500</td>
<td>69,000</td>
<td>85,500</td>
<td>54,000</td>
<td>151,500</td>
<td>63,000</td>
<td>39,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-1</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-2</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-3</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>26,500</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>17,500</td>
<td>13,000</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-4</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-5</strong></td>
<td>NS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 506.2a, b—continued

**ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR \((A_i = \text{NS, S1, S13R, or SM, as applicable})\) IN SQUARE FEET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>SEE FOOTNOTES</th>
<th>TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TYPE I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-2</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-4</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-1</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S13R</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S13R</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-3</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S13R</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-4</td>
<td>NS&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S13R</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-1</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-2</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>UL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS**

**TABLE 506.2**—continued

**ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR \( (A_a) \) IN SQUARE FEET**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Allowable Area Factor</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For SI:</td>
<td>1 square foot = 0.0929 m²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS =</td>
<td>Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S1 = Buildings a maximum of one story above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; SM = Buildings two or more stories above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d.</td>
<td>The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building area in accordance with the <em>Existing Building Code</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.</td>
<td>New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies, Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the <em>Fire Code</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g.</td>
<td>New Group I-4 occupancies see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h.</td>
<td>New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**506.2.3 Single-occupancy, multistory buildings.** The allowable area of a single-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-2:

\[
A_a = [A_i + (NS \times I_f)] \times S_a \tag{Equation 5-2}
\]

where:

- \( A_a \) = Allowable area (square feet).
- \( A_i \) = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.
- \( NS \) = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).
- \( I_f \) = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.
- \( S_a \) = Actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed three. For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, use the actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed four.

No individual story shall exceed the allowable area \( A_a \) as determined by Equation 5-2 using the value of \( S_a = 1 \).

**506.2.4 Mixed-occupancy, multistory buildings.** Each story of a mixed-occupancy building with more than one story above grade plane shall individually comply with the applicable requirements of Section 508.1. For buildings with more than three stories above grade plane, the total building area shall be such that the aggregate sum of the ratios of the actual area of each story divided by the allowable area of such stories, determined in accordance with Equation 5-3 based on the applicable provisions of Section 508.1, shall not exceed three.

\[
A_a = [A_i+(NS \times I_f)] \tag{Equation 5-3}
\]

where:

- \( A_a \) = Allowable area (square feet).
- \( A_i \) = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.
- \( NS \) = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).
- \( I_f \) = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

**506.3 Frontage increase.** Every building shall adjoin or have access to a public way to receive an area factor increase based on frontage. Area factor increase shall be determined in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.3.

**506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a public way or open space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be accessed from a street or approved fire lane.

**506.3.2 Minimum frontage distance.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, the public way or open space adjacent to the building perimeter shall have a minimum distance \( W \) of 20 feet (6096 mm) measured at right angles from the building face to any of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.
2. The entire width of a street, alley or public way.
3. The exterior face of an adjacent building on the same property.

Where the value of $W$ is greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), a value of 30 feet (9144 mm) shall be used in calculating the building area increase based on frontage, regardless of the actual width of the public way or open space. Where the value of $W$ varies along the perimeter of the building, the calculation performed in accordance with Equation 5-5 shall be based on the weighted average calculated in accordance with Equation 5-4.

$$W = \frac{(L_1 \times w_1 + L_2 \times w_2 + \ldots + L_n \times w_n)}{F}$$  (Equation 5-4)

where:

$W$ = Calculated width of public way or open space (feet).

$L_n$ = Length of a portion of the exterior perimeter wall.

$w_n$ = Width (≥ 20 feet) of a public way or open space associated with that portion of the exterior perimeter wall.

$F$ = Building perimeter that fronts on a public way or open space having a width of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more.

Exception: Where a building meets the requirements of Section 507, as applicable, except for compliance with the minimum 60-foot (18 288 mm) public way or yard requirement, and the value of $W$ is greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), the value of $W$ shall not exceed 60 feet (18 288 mm).

507.3 Nonsprinklered, one-story buildings. The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building no more than one story in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings. The area of a Group A-4 building no more than one story above grade plane of any construction type, shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for rack storage facilities that do not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the Fire Code.

2. The automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in areas occupied for indoor participant sports, such as tennis, skating, swimming and equestrian activities in occupancies in Group A-4, provided that both of the following criteria are met:

   2.1. Exit doors directly to the outside are provided for occupants of the participant sports areas.

   2.2. The building is equipped with a fire alarm system with manual fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Section 907.
507.4.1 Mixed occupancy buildings with Groups A-1 and A-2. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies of other than Type V construction shall be permitted within mixed occupancy buildings of unlimited area complying with Section 507.4, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies are separated from other occupancies as required for separated occupancies in Section 508.4.4 with no reduction allowed in the fire-resistance rating of the separation based upon the installation of an automatic sprinkler system.

2. Each area of the portions of the building used for Group A-1 or A-2 occupancies shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1.

3. Exit doors from Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

507.5 Two-story buildings. The area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.6 Group A-3 buildings of Type II construction. The area of a Group A-3 building no more than one story above grade plane, used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court of Type II construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.

2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.7 Group A-3 buildings of Type III and IV construction. The area of a Group A-3 building of Type III or IV construction, with no more than one story above grade plane and used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.

2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. The assembly floor shall be located at or within 21 inches (533 mm) of street or grade level and all exits are provided with ramps complying with Section 1012 to the street or grade level.

4. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.8 Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies. Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings containing Group F or S occupancies in accordance with Sections 507.4 and 507.5 and the provisions of Sections 507.8.1 through 507.8.4.

507.8.1 Allowable area. The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies located in an unlimited area building shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the building or the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506 based on the perimeter of each Group H floor area that fronts on a public way or open space.

507.8.1.1 Located within the building. The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies not located at the perimeter of the building shall not exceed 25 percent of the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506.

507.8.1.1.1 Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms. Liquid use, dispensing and mixing rooms having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet (46.5 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the Fire Code and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.2 Liquid storage rooms. Liquid storage rooms having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the Fire Code and NFPA 30.

507.8.1.1.3 Spray paint booths. Spray paint booths that comply with the Fire Code need not be located on the outer perimeter.

507.8.2 Located on building perimeter. Except as provided for in Section 507.8.1.1, Group H occupancies shall be located on the perimeter of the building. In Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter of such occupancies shall be an exterior wall.

507.8.3 Occupancy separations. Group H occupancies shall be separated from the remainder of the unlimited area building and from each other in accordance with Table 508.4.

507.8.4 Height limitations. For two-story, unlimited area buildings, Group H occupancies shall not be located more than one story above grade plane unless permitted based on the allowable height and number of stories and feet as specified in Section 504 based on the type of construction of the unlimited area building.

507.9 Unlimited mixed occupancy buildings with Group H-5. The area of a Group B, F, H-5, M or S building no more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and is sur-
rounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width, provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Buildings containing Group H-5 occupancy shall be of Type I or II construction.
2. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall be separated from other occupancies as required in Sections 415.11 and 508.4.
3. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1 including modifications of Section 506.

Exception: Where the Group H-5 occupancy exceeds the maximum allowable area, the Group H-5 shall be subdivided into areas that are separated by 2-hour fire barriers.

507.10 Aircraft paint hangar. The area of a Group H-2 aircraft paint hangar no more than one story above grade plane shall not be limited where such aircraft paint hangar complies with the provisions of Section 412.6 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less in width than one and one-half times the building height.

507.11 Group E buildings. The area of a Group E building no more than one story above grade plane, of Type II, IIIA or IV construction, shall not be limited provided all of the following criteria are met:

1. Each classroom shall have not less than two means of egress, with one of the means of egress being a direct exit to the outside of the building complying with Section 1022.
2. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.12 Motion picture theaters. In buildings of Type II construction, the area of a motion picture theater located on the first story above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

507.13 Covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings. The area of covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings not exceeding three stories in height that comply with Section 402 shall not be limited.

SECTION 508
MIXED USE AND OCCUPANCY

508.1 General. Each portion of a building shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Where a building contains more than one occupancy group, the building or portion thereof shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 508.2, 508.3 or 508.4, or a combination of these sections.

Exceptions:
1. Occupancies separated in accordance with Section 510.
2. Where required by Table 415.6.2, areas of Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be located in a detached building or structure.
3. Uses within live/work units, complying with Section 419, are not considered separate occupancies.

508.2 Accessory occupancies. Accessory occupancies are those occupancies that are ancillary to the main occupancy of the building or portion thereof. Accessory occupancies shall comply with the provisions of Sections 508.2.1 through 508.2.4.

508.2.1 Occupancy classification. Accessory occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space.

508.2.2 Allowable building height. The allowable height and number of stories of the building containing accessory occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 504 for the main occupancy of the building.

508.2.3 Allowable building area. The allowable area of the building shall be based on the applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for nonsprinklered buildings in Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.

508.2.4 Separation of occupancies. No separation is required between accessory occupancies and the main occupancy.

Exceptions:
1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.
2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from accessory occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

508.3 Nonseparated occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as nonseparated occupancies.

508.3.1 Occupancy classification. Nonseparated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space. In addition, the most restrictive provisions of Chapter 9 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply to the total nonseparated occu-
pancy area. Where nonseparated occupancies occur in a high-rise building, the most restrictive requirements of Section 403 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply throughout the high-rise building.

508.3.2 Allowable building area and height. The allowable building area and height of the building or portion thereof shall be based on the most restrictive allowances for the occupancy groups under consideration for the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

508.3.3 Separation. No separation is required between nonseparated occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.
2. Group I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from other occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

508.4 Separated occupancies. Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as separated occupancies.

508.4.1 Occupancy classification. Separated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Each separated space shall comply with this code based on the occupancy classification of that portion of the building.

508.4.2 Allowable building area. In each story, the building area shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual building area of each separated occupancy divided by the allowable building area of each separated occupancy shall not exceed 1.

508.4.3 Allowable height. Each separated occupancy shall comply with the building height limitations based on the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

Exception: Special provisions of Section 510 shall permit occupancies at building heights other than provided in Section 503.1.

508.4.4 Separation. Individual occupancies shall be separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with Table 508.4.

508.4.4.1 Construction. Required separations shall be fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, so as to completely separate adjacent occupancies.

SECTION 509
INCIDENTAL USES

509.1 General. Incidental uses located within single occupancy or mixed occupancy buildings shall comply with the provisions of this section. Incidental uses are ancillary func-

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 508.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>REQUIRED SEPARATION OF OCCUPANCIES (HOURS)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1*, I-3, I-4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R*</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1*</td>
<td>2*</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-2, S-2b, U</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B*, F-1, M, S-1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-3, H-4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
N = No separation required.
NP = Not permitted.
a. See Section 420.
b. The required separation from areas used only for private or pleasure vehicles shall be reduced by 1 hour but not to less than 1 hour.
c. See Section 406.3.4.
d. Separation is not required between occupancies of the same classification.
e. See Section 422.2 for ambulatory care facilities.
tions associated with a given occupancy that generally pose a greater level of risk to that occupancy and are limited to those uses listed in Table 509.

**Exception:** Incidental uses within and serving a dwelling unit are not required to comply with this section.

### 509.2 Occupancy classification

Incidental uses shall not be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Incidental uses shall be included in the building occupancies within which they are located.

### 509.3 Area limitations

Incidental uses shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the building area of the story in which they are located.

### 509.4 Separation and protection

The incidental uses listed in Table 509 shall be separated from the remainder of the building or equipped with an automatic sprinkler system, or both, in accordance with the provisions of that table.

**509.4.1 Separation**

Where Table 509 specifies a fire-resistance-rated separation, the incidental uses shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Construction supporting 1-hour fire barriers or horizontal assemblies used for incidental use separations in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction is not required to be fire-resistance rated unless required by other sections of this code.

**509.4.2 Protection**

Where Table 509 permits an automatic sprinkler system without a fire barrier, the incidental uses shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke. The walls shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor assembly below to the underside of the ceiling that is a component of a fire-resistance-rated floor assembly or roof assembly above or to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Doors shall not have air transfer openings and shall not be undercut in excess of

### TABLE 509

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOM OR AREA</th>
<th>SEPARATION AND/OR PROTECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Furnace room where any piece of equipment is over 400,000 Btu per hour input</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooms with boilers where the largest piece of equipment is over 15 psi and 10 horsepower</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerant machinery room</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen fuel gas rooms, not classified as Group H</td>
<td>1 hour in Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies; 2 hours in Group A, E, I and R occupancies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incinerator rooms</td>
<td>2 hours and provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint shops, not classified as Group H, located in occupancies other than Group F</td>
<td>2 hours; or 1 hour and provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Group E occupancies, laboratories and vocational shops not classified as Group H</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Group I-2 occupancies, laboratories not classified as Group H</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In ambulatory care facilities, laboratories not classified as Group H</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry rooms over 100 square feet</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Group I-2, laundry rooms over 100 square feet</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I-3 cells and Group I-2 patient rooms equipped with padded surfaces</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Group I-2, physical plant maintenance shops</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms with containers that have an aggregate volume of 10 cubic feet or greater</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In other than ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms over 100 square feet</td>
<td>1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 occupancies, storage rooms greater than 100 square feet</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stationary storage battery systems having a liquid electrolyte capacity of more than 50 gallons for flooded lead-acid, nickel cadmium or VRLA, or more than 1,000 pounds for lithium-ion and lithium metal polymer used for facility standby power, emergency power or uninterruptable power supplies</td>
<td>1 hour in Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies; 2 hours in Group A, E, I and R occupancies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 pound per square inch (psi) = 6.9 kPa, 1 British thermal unit (Btu) per hour = 0.293 watts, 1 horsepower = 746 watts, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m³.
the clearance permitted in accordance with NFPA 80. Walls surrounding the incidental use shall not have air transfer openings unless provided with smoke dampers in accordance with Section 710.8.

509.4.2.1 Protection limitation. Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided in accordance with Table 509, only the space occupied by the incidental use need be equipped with such a system.

SECTION 510
SPECIAL PROVISIONS

510.1 General. The provisions in Sections 510.2 through 510.9 shall permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable building heights and areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in this section for such condition and other applicable requirements of this code. The provisions of Sections 510.2 through 510.8 are to be considered independent and separate from each other.

510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance. A building shall be considered as separate and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of fire walls, limitation of number of stories and type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
2. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.
3. Shaft, stairway, ramp and escalator enclosures through the horizontal assembly shall have not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protective in accordance with Section 716.5.

Exception: Where the enclosure walls below the horizontal assembly have not less than a 3-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protective in accordance with Section 716.5, the enclosure walls extending above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, provided:

1. The building above the horizontal assembly is not required to be of Type I construction;
2. The enclosure connects fewer than four stories; and
3. The enclosure opening protective above the horizontal assembly have a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour.
4. The building or buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have multiple Group A occupancy uses, each with an occupant load of less 300, or Group B, M, R or S occupancies.
5. The building below the horizontal assembly shall be protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.

6. The maximum building height in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the grade plane.

510.3 Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with Group S-2 open parking garage above. A Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with not more than one story above grade plane and located below a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The allowable area of the building shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual area divided by the allowable area for each separate occupancy shall not exceed 1.
2. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is of Type I or II construction and is at least equal to the fire-resistance requirements of the Group S-2 open parking garage.
3. The height and the number of tiers of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be limited as specified in Table 406.5.4.
4. The floor assembly separating the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage shall be protected as required for the floor assembly of the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage. Openings between the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage, except exit openings, shall not be required to be protected.
5. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, but shall be permitted to contain an office, waiting room and toilet room having a total area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) and mechanical equipment rooms incidental to the operation of the building.

510.4 Parking beneath Group R. Where a maximum one story above grade plane Group S-2 parking garage, enclosed or open, or combination thereof, of Type I construction or open of Type IV construction, with grade entrance, is provided under a building of Group R, the number of stories to be used in determining the minimum type of construction shall be measured from the floor above such a parking area. The floor assembly between the parking garage and the Group R above shall comply with the type of construction required for the parking garage and shall also provide a fire-resistance rating not less than the mixed occupancy separation required in Section 508.4.

510.5 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIIA construction. The height limitation for buildings of Type IIIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to six stories and 75 feet (22 860 mm) where the first floor assembly above the basement has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours and the floor area is subdivided by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire walls into areas of not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m²).
510.6 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIA construction. The height limitation for buildings of Type IIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to nine stories and 100 feet (30 480 mm) where the building is separated by not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from any other building on the lot and from lot lines, the exits are segregated in an area enclosed by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire wall and the first floor assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 1/2 hours.

510.7 Open parking garage beneath Groups A, I, B, M and R. Open parking garages constructed under Groups A, I, B, M and R shall not exceed the height and area limitations permitted under Section 406.5. The height and area of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall not exceed the limitations in Section 503 for the upper occupancy. The height, in both feet and stories, of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall be measured from grade plane and shall include both the open parking garage and the portion of the building above the parking garage.

510.7.1 Fire separation. Fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 between the parking occupancy and the upper occupancy shall correspond to the required fire-resistance rating prescribed in Table 508.4 for the uses involved. The type of construction shall apply to each occupancy individually, except that structural members, including main bracing within the open parking structure, which is necessary to support the upper occupancy, shall be protected with the more restrictive fire-resistance-rated assemblies of the groups involved as shown in Table 601. Means of egress for the upper occupancy shall conform to Chapter 10 and shall be separated from the parking occupancy by fire barriers having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 707 with self-closing doors complying with Section 716 or horizontal assemblies having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 711, with self-closing doors complying with Section 716. Means of egress from the open parking garage shall comply with Section 406.5.

510.8 Group B or M buildings with Group S-2 open parking garage above. Group B or M occupancies located below a Group S-2 open parking garage of a lesser type of construction shall be considered as a separate and distinct building from the Group S-2 open parking garage for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
2. The occupancies in the building below the horizontal assembly are limited to Groups B and M.
3. The occupancy above the horizontal assembly is limited to a Group S-2 open parking garage.

4. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.

Exception: The building below the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to be of Type IB or II construction, but not less than the type of construction required for the Group S-2 open parking garage above, where the building below is not greater than one story in height above grade plane.

5. The height and area of the building below the horizontal assembly does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 503.

6. The height and area of the Group S-2 open parking garage does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 406.5. The height, in both feet and stories, of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be measured from grade plane and shall include the building below the horizontal assembly.

7. Exits serving the Group S-2 open parking garage discharge directly to a street or public way and are separated from the building below the horizontal assembly by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

510.9 Multiple buildings above a horizontal assembly. Where two or more buildings are provided above the horizontal assembly separating a Group S-2 parking garage or building below from the buildings above in accordance with the special provisions in Section 510.2, 510.3 or 510.8, the buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be regarded as separate and distinct buildings from each other and shall comply with all other provisions of this code as applicable to each separate and distinct building.
CHAPTER 6
TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 601
GENERAL

601.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of buildings as to type of construction.

SECTION 602
CONSTRUCTION CLASSIFICATION

602.1 General. Buildings and structures erected or to be erected, altered or extended in height or area shall be classified in one of the five construction types defined in Sections 602.2 through 602.5. The building elements shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than that specified in Table 601 and exterior walls shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than that specified in Table 602. Where required to have a fire-resistance rating by Table 601, building elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 703.2. The protection of openings, ducts and air transfer openings in building elements shall not be required unless required by other provisions of this code.

602.1.1 Minimum requirements. A building or portion thereof shall not be required to conform to the details of a type of construction higher than that type which meets the minimum requirements based on occupancy even though certain features of such a building actually conform to a higher type of construction.

602.2 Types I and II. Types I and II construction are those types of construction in which the building elements listed in Table 601 are of noncombustible materials, except as permitted in Section 603 and elsewhere in this code.

602.3 Type III. Type III construction is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of any material permitted by this code.

602.4 Type IV. Type IV construction is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of solid wood, laminated wood, heavy timber (HT) or structural composite lumber (SCL) without concealed spaces. The minimum dimensions for permitted materials including solid timber, glued-laminated timber, structural composite lumber (SCL), and cross-laminated timber and details of Type IV construction shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.11. Exterior walls complying with Section 602.4.1 or 602.4.2 shall be permitted. Interior walls and partitions not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rating or heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11.2.2 shall be permitted.

TABLE 601
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (HOURS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING ELEMENT</th>
<th>TYPE I</th>
<th>TYPE II</th>
<th>TYPE III</th>
<th>TYPE IV</th>
<th>TYPE V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>HT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary structural frame (see Section 202)</td>
<td>3&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearing walls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior</td>
<td>3&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonbearing walls and partitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonbearing walls and partitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Roof supports: Fire-resistance ratings of primary structural frame and bearing walls are permitted to be reduced by 1 hour where supporting a roof only.
b. Except in Group F-1, H, M and S-1 occupancies, fire protection of structural members shall not be required, including protection of roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such unprotected members.
c. In all occupancies, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11 shall be allowed where a 1-hour or less fire-resistance rating is required.
d. Not less than the fire-resistance rating required by other sections of this code.
e. Not less than the fire-resistance rating based on fire separation distance (see Table 602).
f. Not less than the fire-resistance rating as referenced in Section 704.10.
602.4.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in exterior walls. Fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less.

602.4.2 Cross-laminated timber in exterior walls. Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 2303.1.4 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness with a 2-hour rating or less, provided the exterior surface of the cross-laminated timber is protected by one of the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 and not less than 15/32 inch (12 mm) thick.
2. Gypsum board not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick.
3. A noncombustible material.

602.4.3 through 602.4.8 [Reserved]

602.4.9 Exterior structural members. Where a horizontal separation of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more is provided, wood columns and arches conforming to heavy timber sizes complying with Section 2304.11 shall be permitted to be used externally.

602.5 Type V. Type V construction is that type of construction in which the structural elements, exterior walls and interior walls are of any materials permitted by this code.

---

**SECTION 603**

**COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION**

603.1 Allowable materials. Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or II construction in the following applications and in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted in:
   1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required fire-resistance rating is 2 hours or less.
   1.2. Nonbearing exterior walls where fire-resistance-rated construction is not required.
   1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.

   **Exception:** In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two stories above grade plane, fire-retardant-treated wood is not permitted in roof construction where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

2. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a flame spread index of not more than 25.

   **Exceptions:**
   1. Insulation placed between two layers of noncombustible materials without an intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 100.
2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 200.

3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.

4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.

5. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section 804.

6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.

7. Interior wall and ceiling finishes installed in accordance with Sections 801 and 803.

8. Trim installed in accordance with Section 806.

9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows, nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their frames, aprons and show cases.

10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.

11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant only and that do not establish a corridor serving an occupant load of 30 or more shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.

13. Combustible exterior wall coverings, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel windows in accordance with Chapter 14.

14. Blocking such as for handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.


16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components of exterior wall construction.

17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.

18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.13.

19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.3 and 705.2.3.

20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.2.

21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings, determined on the basis of fire resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and installed in accordance with Sections 1705.14 and 1705.15, respectively.

22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 714.

23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 715.

24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction in accordance with Section 718.5.

25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the Mechanical Code.

26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m²), in size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

603.1.1 Ducts. The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the Mechanical Code.

603.1.2 Piping. The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the Mechanical Code and the Plumbing Code.

603.1.3 Electrical. The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing, raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of this code.
CHAPTER 7
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, systems and assemblies used for structural fire resistance and fire-resistance-rated construction separation of adjacent spaces to safeguard against the spread of fire and smoke within a building and the spread of fire to or from buildings.

701.2 Multiple use fire assemblies. Fire assemblies that serve multiple purposes in a building shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable for each of the individual fire assemblies.

SECTION 702
DEFINITIONS

702.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ANNULAR SPACE.
BUILDING ELEMENT.
CEILING RADIATION DAMPER.
COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER.
CORRIDOR DAMPER.
DAMPER.
DRAFTSTOP
F RATING.
FIRE BARRIER.
FIRE DAMPER.
FIRE DOOR.
FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.
FIRE PARTITION.
FIRE PROTECTION RATING.
FIRE-RATED GLAZING.
FIRE RESISTANCE.
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING.
FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEM.
FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE.
FIRE WALL.
FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY.
FIREBLOCKING.
FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.
HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY.
JOINT.
L RATING.
MEMBRANE PENETRATION.
MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP.
MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.
MINERAL FIBER.
MINERAL WOOL.
PENETRATION FIRESTOP.
SELF-CLOSING.
SHAFT.
SHAFT ENCLOSURE.
SMOKE BARRIER.
SMOKE COMPARTMENT.
SMOKE DAMPER.
SPLICE.
T RATING.
THROUGH PENETRATION.
THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.

SECTION 703
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS AND FIRE TESTS

703.1 Scope. Materials prescribed herein for fire resistance shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

703.2 Fire-resistance ratings. The fire-resistance rating of building elements, components or assemblies shall be determined in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263 or in accordance with Section 703.3. The fire-resistance rating of penetrations and fire-resistant joint systems shall be determined in accordance Sections 714 and 715, respectively.

703.2.1 Nonsymmetrical wall construction. Interior walls and partitions of nonsymmetrical construction shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire-resistance rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the building official, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side (see Section 705.5 for exterior walls).

703.2.2 Combustible components. Combustible aggregates are permitted in gypsum and Portland cement concrete mixes for fire-resistance-rated construction. Any component material or admixture is permitted in assemblies if the resulting tested assembly meets the fire-resistance test requirements of this code.
703.2.3 Restrained classification. Fire-resistance-rated assemblies tested under ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be considered to be restrained unless evidence satisfactory to the building official is furnished by the registered design professional showing that the construction qualifies for a restrained classification in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Restrained construction shall be identified on the construction documents.

703.2.4 Supplemental features. Where materials, systems or devices that have not been tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly are incorporated into the building element, component or assembly, sufficient data shall be made available to the building official to show that the required fire-resistance rating is not reduced.

703.2.5 Exterior bearing walls. In determining the fire-resistance rating of exterior bearing walls, compliance with the ASTM E119 or UL 263 criteria for unexposed surface temperature rise and ignition of cotton waste due to passage of flame or gases is required only for a period of time corresponding to the required fire-resistance rating of an exterior nonbearing wall with the same fire separation distance, and in a building of the same group. Where the fire-resistance rating determined in accordance with this exception exceeds the fire-resistance rating determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, the fire exposure time period, water pressure and application duration criteria for the hose stream test of ASTM E119 or UL 263, the tests indicated in Sections 703.5.1 and 703.5.2 shall not be classified as a noncombustible building construction material if it is subject to an increase in combustibility or flame spread beyond the limitations herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions.

703.3 Methods for determining fire resistance. The application of any of the methods listed in this section shall be based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263. The required fire resistance of a building element, component or assembly shall be permitted to be established by any of the following methods or procedures:

1. Fire-resistance designs documented in approved sources.
2. Prescriptive designs of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies as prescribed in Section 721.
3. Calculations in accordance with Section 722.
4. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of building element, component or assemblies designs having fire-resistance ratings as determined by the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. Alternative protection methods as allowed by Section 104.11.
6. Fire-resistance designs certified by an approved agency.

703.4 Automatic sprinklers. Under the prescriptive fire-resistance requirements of this code, the fire-resistance rating of a building element, component or assembly shall be established without the use of automatic sprinklers or any other fire suppression system being incorporated as part of the assembly tested in accordance with the fire exposure, procedures and acceptance criteria specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263. However, this section shall not prohibit or limit the duties and powers of the building official allowed by Sections 104.10 and 104.11.

703.5 Noncombustibility tests. The tests indicated in Sections 703.5.1 and 703.5.2 shall serve as criteria for acceptance of building materials as set forth in Sections 602.2, 602.3 and 602.4 in Type I, II, III and IV construction. The term “noncombustible” does not apply to the flame spread characteristics of interior finish or trim materials. A material shall not be classified as a noncombustible building construction material if it is subject to an increase in combustibility or flame spread beyond the limitations herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions.

703.5.1 Elementary materials. Materials required to be noncombustible shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E136.

703.5.2 Composite materials. Materials having a structural base of noncombustible material as determined in accordance with Section 703.5.1 with a surfacing not more than 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) thick that has a flame spread index not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 shall be acceptable as noncombustible materials.

703.6 Fire-resistance-rated glazing. Fire-resistance-rated glazing, when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and complying with the requirements of Section 707, shall be permitted. Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall bear a label marked in accordance with Table 716.3 issued by an agency and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

703.7 Marking and identification. Where there is an accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or attic space, fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions or any other wall required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling in the concealed space. Such identification shall:

1. Be located within 15 feet (4572 mm) of the end of each wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet (9144 mm) measured horizontally along the wall or partition.
2. Include lettering not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height with a minimum 3/4-inch (9.5 mm) stroke in a contrasting color incorporating the suggested wording, “FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER—PROTECT ALL OPENINGS,” or other wording.

SECTION 704
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

704.1 Requirements. The fire-resistance ratings of structural members and assemblies shall comply with this section and the requirements for the type of construction as specified in Table 601. The fire-resistance ratings shall be not less than
the ratings required for the fire-resistance-rated assemblies supported by the structural members.

**Exception:** *Fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and horizontal assemblies* as provided in Sections 707.5, 708.4, 709.4 and 711.2, respectively.

### 704.2 Column protection

Where columns are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating, the entire column shall be provided individual encasement protection by protecting it on all sides for the full column height, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required fire-resistance rating. Where the column extends through a ceiling, the encasement protection shall be continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below through the ceiling space to the top of the column.

### 704.3 Protection of the primary structural frame other than columns

Members of the primary structural frame other than columns that are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating and support more than two floors or one floor and roof, or support a load-bearing wall or a nonload-bearing wall more than two stories high, shall be provided individual encasement protection by protecting them on all sides for the full length, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required fire-resistance rating.

**Exception:** Individual encasement protection on all sides shall be permitted on all exposed sides provided the extent of protection is in accordance with the required fire-resistance rating, as determined in Section 703.

### 704.4 Protection of secondary members

Secondary members that are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating shall be protected by individual encasement protection.

#### 704.4.1 Light-frame construction

Studs and boundary elements that are integral elements in load-bearing walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to have required fire-resistance ratings provided by the membrane protection provided for the load-bearing wall.

#### 704.4.2 Horizontal assemblies

Horizontal assemblies are permitted to be protected with a membrane or ceiling where the membrane or ceiling provides the required fire-resistance rating and is installed in accordance with Section 711.

### 704.5 Truss protection

The required thickness and construction of fire-resistance-rated assemblies enclosing trusses shall be based on the results of full-scale tests or combinations of tests on truss components or on approved calculations based on such tests that satisfactorily demonstrate that the assembly has the required fire resistance.

### 704.6 Attachments to structural members

The edges of lugs, brackets, rivets and bolt heads attached to structural members shall be permitted to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of the surface of the fire protection.

### 704.7 Reinforcing

Thickness of protection for concrete or masonry reinforcement shall be measured to the outside of the reinforcement except that stirrups and spiral reinforcement ties are permitted to project not more than 0.5-inch (12.7 mm) into the protection.

### 704.8 Embedments and enclosures

Pipes, wires, conduits, ducts or other service facilities shall not be embedded in the required fire protective covering of a structural member that is required to be individually encased.

### 704.9 Impact protection

Where the fire protective covering of a structural member is subject to impact damage from moving vehicles, the handling of merchandise or other activity, the fire protective covering shall be protected by corner guards or by a substantial jacket of metal or other noncombustible material to a height adequate to provide full protection, but not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the finished floor.

**Exception:** Corner protection is not required on concrete columns in open or enclosed parking garages.

### 704.10 Exterior structural members

Load-bearing structural members located within the exterior walls or on the outside of a building or structure shall be provided with the highest fire-resistance rating as determined in accordance with the following:

1. As required by Table 601 for the type of building element based on the type of construction of the building;
2. As required by Table 601 for exterior bearing walls based on the type of construction; and
3. As required by Table 602 for exterior walls based on the fire separation distance.

### 704.11 Bottom flange protection

Fire protection is not required at the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates, spanning not more than 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) whether part of the primary structural frame or not, and from the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates not part of the structural frame, regardless of span.

### 704.12 Seismic isolation systems

Fire-resistance ratings for the isolation system shall meet the fire-resistance rating required for the columns, walls or other structural elements in which the isolation system is installed in accordance with Table 601. Isolation systems required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected with approved materials or construction assemblies designed to provide the same degree of fire resistance as the structural element in which the system is installed when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 (see Section 703.2).

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be capable of retarding the transfer of heat to the isolator unit in such a manner that the required gravity load-carrying capacity of the isolator unit will not be impaired after exposure to the standard time-temperature curve fire test prescribed in ASTM E119 or UL 263 for a duration not less than that required for the fire-resistance rating of the structure element in which the system is installed.

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be suitably designed and securely installed so as not to dislodge, loosen, sustain damage or otherwise impair its abil-
ity to accommodate the seismic movements for which the isolator unit is designed and to maintain its integrity for the purpose of providing the required fire-resistance protection.

704.13 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM). Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) shall comply with Sections 704.13.1 through 704.13.5.

704.13.1 Fire-resistance rating. The application of SFRM shall be consistent with the fire-resistance rating and the listing, including, but not limited to, minimum thickness and dry density of the applied SFRM, method of application, substrate surface conditions and the use of bonding adhesives, sealants, reinforcing or other materials.

704.13.2 Manufacturer’s installation instructions. The application of SFRM shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. The instructions shall include, but are not limited to, substrate temperatures and surface conditions and SFRM handling, mixing, conveyance, method of application, curing and ventilation.

704.13.3 Substrate condition. The SFRM shall be applied to a substrate in compliance with Sections 704.13.3.1 through 704.13.3.2.

704.13.3.1 Surface conditions. Substrates to receive SFRM shall be free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, loose scale and any other condition that prevents adhesion. The substrates shall be free of primers, paints or encapsulants other than those fire tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing agency. Primed, painted or encapsulated steel shall be allowed, provided that testing has demonstrated that required adhesion is maintained.

704.13.3.2 Primers, paints and encapsulants. Where the SFRM is to be applied over primers, paints or encapsulants other than those specified in the listing, the material shall be field tested in accordance with ASTM E736. Where testing of the SFRM with primers, paints or encapsulants demonstrates that required adhesion is maintained, SFRM shall be applied to primed, painted or encapsulated steel or wood shall be allowed, provided that testing has demonstrated that required adhesion is maintained.

704.13.4 Temperature. A minimum ambient and substrate temperature of 40°F (4.44°C) shall be maintained during and for not fewer than 24 hours after the application of the SFRM, unless the manufacturer’s instructions allow otherwise.

704.13.5 Finished condition. The finished condition of SFRM applied to structural members or assemblies shall not, upon complete drying or curing, exhibit cracks, voids, spalls, delamination or any exposure of the substrate. Surface irregularities of SFRM shall be deemed acceptable.

SECTION 705 EXTERIOR WALLS

705.1 General. Exterior walls shall comply with this section.

705.2 Projections. Cornices, eave overhangs, exterior balconies and similar projections extending beyond the exterior wall shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 1406. Exterior egress balconies and exterior exit stairways and ramps shall comply with Sections 1021 and 1027, respectively. Projections shall not extend any closer to the line used to determine the fire separation distance than shown in Table 705.2.

Exception: Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with this section for projections between the buildings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (FSD)</th>
<th>MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM LINE USED TO DETERMINE FSD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 feet to 2 feet</td>
<td>Projections not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 2 feet to 3 feet</td>
<td>24 inches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 3 feet to less than 30 feet</td>
<td>24 inches plus 8 inches for every foot of FSD beyond 3 feet or fraction thereof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 feet or greater</td>
<td>20 feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

705.2.1 Type I and II construction. Projections from walls of Type I or II construction shall be of noncombustible materials or combustible materials as allowed by Sections 1406.3 and 1406.4.

705.2.2 Type III, IV or V construction. Projections from walls of Type III, IV or V construction shall be of any approved material.

705.2.3 Combustible projections. Combustible projections extending to within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the line used to determine the fire separation distance shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction, Type IV construction, fire-retardant-treated wood or as required by Section 1406.3.

Exception: Type VB construction shall be allowed for combustible projections in Group R-3 and U occupancies with a fire separation distance greater than or equal to 5 feet (1524 mm).
705.3 Buildings on the same lot. For the purposes of determining the required wall and opening protection, projections and roof-covering requirements, buildings on the same lot shall be assumed to have an imaginary line between them.

Where a new building is to be erected on the same lot as an existing building, the location of the assumed imaginary line with relation to the existing building shall be such that the exterior wall and opening protection of the existing building meet the criteria as set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8.

Exceptions:
1. Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be either regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building if the aggregate area of such buildings is within the limits specified in Chapter 5 for a single building. Where the buildings contain different occupancy groups or are of different types of construction, the area shall be that allowed for the most restrictive occupancy or construction.
2. Where an S-2 parking garage of Construction Type I or IIA is erected on the same lot as a Group R-2 building, and there is no fire separation distance between these buildings, then the adjoining exterior walls between the buildings are permitted to have occupant use openings in accordance with Section 706.8. However, opening protectives in such openings shall only be required in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage, not in the exterior wall openings in the R-2 building, and these opening protectives in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage shall be not less than 1 1/2-hour fire protection rating.

705.4 Materials. Exterior walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

705.5 Fire-resistance ratings. Exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Tables 601 and 602 and this section. The required fire-resistance rating of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The required fire-resistance rating of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of less than or equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from both sides.

705.6 Structural stability. Exterior walls shall extend to the height required by Section 705.11. Interior structural elements that brace the exterior wall but that are not located within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum fire-resistance rating required in Table 601 for that structural element. Structural elements that brace the exterior wall but are located outside of the exterior wall or within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum fire-resistance rating required in Tables 601 and 602 for the exterior wall.

705.7 Unexposed surface temperature. Where protected openings are not limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of exterior walls as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply.

Where protected openings are limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of exterior walls as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply provided that a correction is made for radiation from the unexposed exterior wall surface in accordance with the following formula:

\[ A_e = A + (A_f \times F_{eo}) \]  

(Equation 7-1)

where:
- \( A_e \) = Equivalent area of protected openings.
- \( A \) = Actual area of protected openings.
- \( A_f \) = Area of exterior wall surface in the story under consideration exclusive of openings, on which the temperature limitations of ASTM E119 or UL 263 for walls are exceeded.
- \( F_{eo} \) = An “equivalent opening factor” derived from Figure 705.7 based on the average temperature of the unexposed wall surface and the fire-resistance rating of the wall.

705.8 Openings. Openings in exterior walls shall comply with Sections 705.8.1 through 705.8.7.

705.8.1 Allowable area of openings. The maximum area of unprotected and protected openings permitted in an exterior wall in any story of a building shall not exceed the percentages specified in Table 705.8.

Exceptions:
1. Openings permitted by Section 705.8.7.
2. In other than Group H occupancies, unlimited unprotected openings are permitted in the first story above grade plane either:
   2.1 Where the wall faces a street and has a fire separation distance of more than 15 feet (4572 mm).
   2.2 Where the wall faces an unoccupied space. The unoccupied space shall be on the same lot or dedicated for public use, shall not be less than 30 feet (9144 mm) in width and shall have access from a street via a posted fire lane in accordance with the Fire Code.
3. Buildings, whose exterior bearing walls, exterior nonbearing walls, and exterior primary structural frame are not required to be fire-resistance rated and shall be permitted to have unlimited unprotected openings.

705.8.2 Protected openings. Where openings are required to be protected, fire doors and fire shutters shall comply with Section 716.5 and fire window assemblies shall comply with Section 716.6.

Exception: Opening protectives are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the exterior openings are protected by a water curtain using automatic sprinklers approved for that use.
705.8.3 Unprotected openings. Where unprotected openings are permitted, windows and doors shall be constructed of any approved materials. Glazing shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 24 and 26.

705.8.4 Mixed openings. Where both unprotected and protected openings are located in the exterior wall in any story of a building, the total area of openings shall be determined in accordance with the following:

\[
(A_p/a_p) + (A_u/a_u) \leq 1
\]

(Equation 7-2)

where:

- \(A_p\) = Actual area of protected openings, or the equivalent area of protected openings, \(A_e\) (see Section 705.7).
- \(a_p\) = Allowable area of protected openings.
- \(A_u\) = Actual area of unprotected openings.
- \(a_u\) = Allowable area of unprotected openings.

705.8.5 Vertical separation of openings. Openings in exterior walls in adjacent stories shall be separated vertically to protect against fire spread on the exterior of the buildings where the openings are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of each other horizontally and the opening in the lower story is not a protected opening with a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour. Such openings shall be separated vertically not less than 3 feet (914 mm) by spandrel girders, exterior walls or other similar assemblies that have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from both sides, or by flame barriers that extend horizontally not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall. Flame barriers shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. The unexposed surface temperature limitations specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply to the flame barriers or vertical separation unless otherwise required by the provisions of this code.

Exceptions:
1. This section shall not apply to buildings that are three stories or less above grade plane.
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE

TABLE 705.8
MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)</th>
<th>DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION</th>
<th>ALLOWABLE AREA*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to less than 3(^{b,c,k})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>Not Permitted(^{k})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>Not Permitted(^{k})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>Not Permitted(^{k})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 to less than 5(^{a,e})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 to less than 10(^{c,l,j})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 to less than 15(^{c,l,j})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 to less than 20(^{c,j})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 to less than 25(^{c,j})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 to less than 30(^{c,j})</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 or greater</td>
<td>Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S)(^{l})</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protected (P)</td>
<td>No Limit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.

a. Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.

b. For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.

c. For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.

d. The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.

e. Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.

f. The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire separation distance of 5 feet or greater.

g. The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be limited.

h. Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.

i. Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.

j. The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater shall not be limited.

k. For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.

2. This section shall not apply to buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

3. Open parking garages.

705.8.6 Vertical exposure. For buildings on the same lot, opening protective having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour shall be provided in every opening that is less than 15 feet (4572 mm) vertically above the roof of an adjacent building or structure based on assuming an imaginary line between them. The opening protective are required where the fire separation distance between the imaginary line and the adjacent building or structure is less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Opening protective are not required where the roof assembly of the adjacent building or structure has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the exterior wall facing the imaginary line and the entire length and span of the support-
ing elements for the fire-resistance-rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

2. Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with Section 705.8.6.

705.8.7 At-risk openings allowed 15 feet or less from adjacent structures or premises. Notwithstanding Table 705.8, exterior walls of buildings with a fire separation distance of 15 feet (4572 mm) or less shall be permitted to have openings if the building contains occupancies other than Group H, and is equipped throughout with sprinklers in accordance with Section 903, subject to the restrictions of Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.8.

Exceptions:

1. Nothing in this code shall be construed to allow mechanical or plumbing openings in exterior walls that would not otherwise be allowed by this code or by the Mechanical Code or Plumbing Code.

2. Openings allowed pursuant to this section shall not be counted towards requirements of the Construction Codes for emergency egress, natural light, natural ventilation, or smoke control.

3. Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.6.

705.8.7.1 Abutting buildings. A limited number of door openings between two abutting buildings, protected in accordance with Section 705.8.7.5, shall be permitted when all of the following occur:

1. The openings are approved by the code official as not posing an undue hazard to life safety.

2. The owners of both buildings provide written authorization for the openings.

3. Both buildings are subject to the covenant required by Section 705.8.7.8.

705.8.7.2 Horizontal exposure. Those stories that directly face other buildings or structures located either on the same lot or on an adjacent lot, having a distance between buildings of 15 feet (4572 mm) or less, shall comply with Sections 705.8.7.2.1 through 705.8.7.2.3.

705.8.7.2.1 Exposure by adjacent structure less than 3 feet away. Those portions of the exterior walls of a story that directly face another structure and have a distance to the adjacent structure of less than 3 feet (914 mm) shall have no openings, unless permitted by Table 705.8.

705.8.7.2.2 Exposure by adjacent structure between 3 and 10 feet away. Those portions of the exterior walls of a story that directly face another structure and have a distance to the adjacent structure of 3 feet (914 mm) to less than 10 feet (3046 mm) shall have no more than 45 percent openings.

705.8.7.2.3 Exposure by adjacent structure between 10 and 15 feet. Those portions of the exterior walls of a story that directly face another structure and have a distance to the adjacent structure of 10 feet (3046 mm) to less than 15 feet (4572 mm) shall comply with Section 705.8.7.2.2 or with Table 705.8.

705.8.7.3 Vertical exposure. Those stories that extend higher than the adjacent building or premises, but do not project over the adjacent building or premises, shall comply with Sections 705.8.7.3.1 and 705.8.7.3.2.

705.8.7.3.1 Less than 3 feet horizontally. No openings are allowed in those portions of the exterior walls of a story that meet both of the following conditions:

1. The vertical projection of the exterior wall is less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from the vertical projection of the nearest edge of the adjacent or adjoining structure or premises.

2. The portions of the exterior walls of the story are less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the level of the roof of the adjacent or adjoining structure or the grade of the adjacent or adjoining premises.

Exceptions:

1. When a registered architect or engineer has certified that the adjacent roof assembly and the entire length and span of its supporting elements have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, openings shall be allowed in the portions of those exterior walls that are more than 3 feet (914 mm) above the level of the roof. The maximum area of openings allowed under this exception shall be 45 percent of the area of such portions of the exterior wall.

1.1. Where there are skylights or other unprotected openings in the roof of the adjacent exposing building that are less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the vertical projection of the exterior wall of the opposing exposed building, the percentage of openings allowed under Section 705.8.7.2.2, Exception 1, shall be reduced to the following percentages of the exterior wall of the exposed building:

a. Zero feet up to 3 feet (0 mm up to 914 mm) from roof opening to wall: 0 percent.

b. Three feet up to 5 feet (914 mm up to 1524 mm) from roof opening to wall: 15 percent.

c. Five feet up to 10 feet (1524 mm up to 3048 mm) from roof opening to wall: 25 percent.
2. When a registered professional engineer has submitted a written report of inspection certifying that the adjacent building is protected throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system conforming to Section 903.3, openings shall be allowed in the portions of the exterior walls that are more than 3 feet (914 mm) above the level of the roof. The maximum area of openings allowed under this exception shall be 45 percent of the area of such portions of the exterior wall.

705.8.7.3.2 Greater than or equal to 3 feet horizontally. In those portions of the exterior walls of a story that are 3 feet (914 mm) or greater horizontally from the vertical projection of the nearest edge of the adjacent structure or premises, and less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the level of the roof of the adjacent structure or above the grade of the adjacent premises, a maximum area of openings of 45 percent of such portions of the exterior wall, calculated story by story and for each wall face, shall be allowed, where any one of the following conditions occur:

1. The openings are protected by opening protectives having a fire-protection rating of not less than 1/4 hour.
2. The roof assembly of the adjacent exposing building or structure, and the entire length and span of its supporting elements, have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the vertical projection of the exposed exterior wall.

Exception: Where there are skylights or other unprotected openings in the roof of the adjacent exposing building that are less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the vertical projection of the exterior wall of the exposed building, the percentage of openings allowed under Item 2 of this section shall be reduced to the following percentages:

1. Zero feet up to 3 feet (0 mm up to 914 mm) from roof opening to wall: 0 percent.
2. Three feet up to 5 feet (914 mm up to 1524 mm) from roof opening to wall: 15 percent.
3. Five feet up to 10 feet (1524 mm up to 3048 mm) from roof opening to wall: 25 percent.

705.8.7.4 Other allowable openings. In portions of the exterior walls of any story, other than those specified in Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.3, openings up to the maximum of 45 percent of those portions of the exterior wall, calculated story by story and for each wall face, shall be authorized. Openings in compliance with Table 705.8 shall also be authorized.

705.8.7.5 Required opening protection. Where openings are authorized by Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.4, such openings shall be protected as required by Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.4, and window openings shall be protected by tempered, wired, or laminated glass, installed in compliance with Section 716.6. Mechanical and door openings shall be protected in compliance with Section 716.5 or 717.5.6.

705.8.7.6 Owner’s responsibility. The owner of the building where openings are authorized pursuant to Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.5 is responsible for making any modifications in the openings, the exterior wall, or appurtenant protective systems necessary to maintain the building’s compliance with this code, whenever changes occur in the exterior envelope of any building or premises within a distance of 15 feet (4572 mm) or less of that exterior wall that render the openings no longer compliant with this code. The owner of the building with the resulting noncompliant openings shall complete all actions required to make the openings compliant with this code, as determined by the code official, including but not limited to: closing of openings, upgrading of opening protectives, and removal or extension of parts of the required sprinkler system protecting the openings.

705.8.7.7 Abatement of unsafe conditions. If the owner of a building or structure where any openings in exterior walls were allowed pursuant to Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.6 fails to maintain in working order the protective systems required, or fails to proceed to make any changes required by the code official under Section 705.8.7.5, the code official is authorized to cause the necessary work to be done, in the interest of the safety and welfare of the public, in accordance with DC Official Code §§ 6-801 et seq. (2018 Repl.) and any other applicable laws and regulations. The cost of work shall become a lien against the property of the offending owner, to be recovered by the District of Columbia through appropriate action.

705.8.7.8 Required covenants. Prior to issuance of a building permit authorizing work that includes openings authorized under Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.7, the applicant shall execute and record a covenant in accordance with the requirements of Section 106.2.19 and Section 120, as applicable, to ensure that compliance with the minimum requirements of Sections 705.8.7.1 through 705.8.7.7 will be maintained for as long as the openings shall exist, and that the responsibility to maintain this compliance will be conveyed to any future owner of the building or holder of an interest therein.

705.9 Joints. Joints made in or between exterior walls required by this section to have a fire-resistance rating shall comply with Section 715.

Exception: Joints in exterior walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.

705.9.1 Voids. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.
705.10 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations by air ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings shall comply with Section 717.

Exception: Foundation vents installed in accordance with this code are permitted.

705.11 Parapets. Parapets shall be provided on exterior walls of buildings.

Exceptions: A parapet need not be provided on an exterior wall where any of the following conditions exist:

1. The wall is not required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 602 because of fire separation distance.

2. The building has an area of not more than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) on any floor.

3. Walls that terminate at roofs of not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or where the roof, including the deck or slab and supporting construction, is constructed entirely of noncombustible materials.

4. One-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior walls that terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided:

   4.1. Where the roof/ceiling framing elements are parallel to the walls, such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a width of 4 feet (1220 mm) for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.

   4.2. Where roof/ceiling framing elements are not parallel to the wall, the entire span of such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

   4.3. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior wall for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.

   4.4. The entire building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.

5. In Groups R-2 and R-3 where the entire building is provided with a Class C roof covering, the exterior wall shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing or deck in Type III, IV and V construction, provided one or both of the following criteria is met:

   5.1. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of approved noncombustible materials or of fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

   5.2. The roof is protected with 0.625-inch (16 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than nominal 2-inch (51 mm) ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a minimum distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

6. Where the wall is permitted to have not less than 25 percent of the exterior wall areas containing unprotected openings based on fire separation distance as determined in accordance with Section 705.8.

705.11.1 Parapet construction. Parapets shall have the same fire-resistance rating as that required for the supporting wall, and on any side adjacent to a roof surface, shall have noncombustible faces for the uppermost 18 inches (457 mm), including counterflashing and coping materials. The height of the parapet shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the point where the roof surface and the wall intersect. Where the roof slopes toward a parapet at a slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope), the parapet shall extend to the same height as any portion of the roof within a fire separation distance where protection of wall openings is required, but in no case shall the height be less than 30 inches (762 mm).

SECTION 706
FIRE WALLS

706.1 General. Each portion of a building separated by one or more fire walls that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered a separate building. The extent and location of such fire walls shall provide a complete separation. Where a fire wall separates occupancies that are required to be separated by a fire barrier wall, the most restrictive requirements of each separation shall apply.

706.1.1 Party walls. Any wall that straddles, or is in close proximity to, a lot line, which is used for structural support by two or more adjoining buildings or structures shall be constructed as a fire wall in accordance with Section 706. Such walls shall be constructed without openings and shall create separate buildings.

Exceptions:

1. Openings allowed pursuant to Section 705.8.7, provided that the owners of the adjacent buildings shall provide written authorization for such openings to each other and both buildings are subject to the covenant required by Section 705.8.7.8.

2. Openings in a party wall separating an anchor building and a covered or open mall building shall be in accordance with Section 402.4.2.2.

706.2 Structural stability. Fire walls shall be designed and constructed to allow collapse of the structure on either side without collapse of the wall under fire conditions. Fire walls designed and constructed in accordance with NFPA 221 shall be deemed to comply with this section.
706.3 Materials. Fire walls shall be of any approved noncombustible materials.

Exception: Buildings of Type V construction.

706.4 Fire-resistance rating. Fire walls shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Table 706.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GROUP</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2, U</td>
<td>3²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-1, H-3, H-5, M, S-1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1, H-2</td>
<td>4¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-2, S-2, R-3, R-4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour fire-resistance rating.
b. For Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 buildings, also see Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

706.5 Horizontal continuity. Fire walls shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall and shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the exterior surface of exterior walls.

Exceptions:

1. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of combustible exterior sheathing or siding provided the exterior wall has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/4 hour.

2. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing, exterior siding or other noncombustible exterior finishes provided the sheathing, siding or other exterior noncombustible finish extends a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall.

3. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing where the building on each side of the fire wall is protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

706.5.1 Exterior walls. Where the fire wall intersects exterior walls, the fire-resistance rating and opening protection of the exterior walls shall comply with one of the following:

1. The exterior walls on both sides of the fire wall shall have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating with 3/4-hour protection where opening protection is required by Section 705.8. The fire-resistance rating of the exterior wall shall extend not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on each side of the intersection of the fire wall to exterior wall. Exterior wall intersections at fire walls that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) do not need exterior wall protection.

2. Buildings or spaces on both sides of the intersecting fire wall shall assume to have an imaginary lot line at the fire wall and extending beyond the exterior of the fire wall. The location of the assumed line in relation to the exterior walls and the fire wall shall be such that the exterior wall and opening protection meet the requirements set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8. Such protection is not required for exterior walls terminating at fire walls that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad).

706.5.2 Horizontal projecting elements. Fire walls shall extend to the outer edge of horizontal projecting elements such as balconies, roof overhangs, canopies, marquees and similar projections that are within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.

Exceptions:

1. Horizontal projecting elements without concealed spaces, provided the exterior wall behind and below the projecting element has not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting element on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

2. Noncombustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, provided a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall extends through the concealed space. The projecting element shall be separated from the building by not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. The wall is not required to extend under the projecting element where the building exterior wall is not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rated for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

3. For combustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, the fire wall need only extend through the concealed space to the outer edges of the projecting elements. The exterior wall behind and below the projecting element shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting elements on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire-protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.
706.6 Vertical continuity. Fire walls shall extend from the foundation to a termination point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above both adjacent roofs.

Exceptions:

1. Stepped buildings in accordance with Section 706.6.1.
2. Two-hour fire-resistance-rated walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided:
   2.1. The lower roof assembly within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the wall has not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating and the entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
   2.2. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.
   2.3. Each building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.
3. Walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of noncombustible roof sheathing, deck or slabs where both buildings are provided with not less than a Class B roof covering. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.
4. In buildings of Type III, IV and V construction, walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of combustible roof sheathing or decks, provided:
   4.1. There are no openings in the roof within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall,
   4.2. The roof is covered with a minimum Class B roof covering, and
   4.3. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the wall or the roof is protected with 3/8-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall.
5. In buildings designed in accordance with Section 510.2, fire walls located above the 3-hour horizontal assembly required by Section 510.2, Item 1 shall be permitted to extend from the top of this horizontal assembly.
6. Buildings with sloped roofs in accordance with Section 706.6.2.

706.6.1 Stepped buildings. Where a fire wall serves as an exterior wall for a building and separates buildings having different roof levels, such wall shall terminate at a point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof level, provided the exterior wall for a height of 15 feet (4572 mm) above the lower roof is not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction from both sides with openings protected by fire assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour.

Exception: Where the fire wall terminates at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the lower roof, provided:

1. The lower roof assembly within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the wall has not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating and the entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
2. Openings in the lower roof shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the fire wall.

706.6.2 Buildings with sloped roofs. Where a fire wall serves as an interior wall for a building, and the roof on one side or both sides of the fire wall slopes toward the fire wall at a slope greater than two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), the fire wall shall extend to a height equal to the height of the roof located 4 feet (1219 mm) from the fire wall plus 30 inches (762 mm). In no case shall the extension of the fire wall be less than 30 inches (762 mm).

706.7 Combustible framing in fire walls. Adjacent combustible members entering into a concrete or masonry fire wall from opposite sides shall not have less than a 4-inch (102 mm) distance between embedded ends. Where combustible members frame into hollow walls or walls of hollow units, hollow spaces shall be solidly filled for the full thickness of the wall and for a distance not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above, below and between the structural members, with noncombustible materials approved for fireblocking.

706.8 Openings. Each opening through a fire wall shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.5 and shall not exceed 156 square feet (15 m²) in total area. The aggregate width of openings at any floor level shall not exceed 25 percent of the length of the wall.

Exceptions:

1. Openings are not permitted in party walls constructed in accordance with Section 706.1.1, unless authorized by and subject to the limitations of Section 705.8.7.
2. Openings are allowed pursuant to Section 705.8.7 where a fire wall can be replaced by two exterior walls.
3. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m²) where both buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

706.9 Penetrations. Penetrations of fire walls shall comply with Section 714.

706.10 Joints. Joints made in or between fire walls shall comply with Section 715.
706.11 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate fire walls.

Exception: Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of fire walls that are not on a lot line shall be allowed provided the penetrations comply with Section 717. The size and aggregate width of all openings shall not exceed the limitations of Section 706.8.

SECTION 707
FIRE BARRIERS

707.1 General. Fire barriers installed as required elsewhere in this code or the Fire Code shall comply with this section.

707.2 Materials. Fire barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

707.3 Fire-resistance rating. The fire-resistance rating of fire barriers shall comply with this section.

707.3.1 Shaft enclosures. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from a shaft shall comply with Section 713.4.

707.3.2 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an interior exit stairway or ramp shall comply with Section 1023.1.

707.3.3 Enclosures for exit access stairways. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an exit access stairway or ramp shall comply with Section 713.4.

707.3.4 Exit passageway. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an exit passageway shall comply with Section 1024.3.

707.3.5 Horizontal exit. The fire-resistance rating of the separation between building areas connected by a horizontal exit shall comply with Section 1026.1.

707.3.6 Atriums. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating atriums shall comply with Section 404.6.

707.3.7 Incidental uses. The fire barrier separating incidental uses from other spaces in the building shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 509.

707.3.8 Control areas. Fire barriers separating control areas shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required in Section 414.2.4.

707.3.9 Separated occupancies. Where the provisions of Section 508.4 are applicable, the fire barrier separating mixed occupancies shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

707.3.10 Fire areas. The fire barriers or horizontal assemblies, or both, separating a single occupancy into different fire areas shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 707.3.10. The fire barriers or horizontal assemblies, or both, separating fire areas of mixed occupancies shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than the highest value indicated in Table 707.3.10 for the occupancies under consideration.

707.4 Exterior walls. Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated shaft or stairway or ramp enclosure, or separation, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure or separation requirements shall not apply.

Exception: Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramp.

707.5 Continuity. Fire barriers shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above and shall be securely attached thereto. Such fire barriers shall be continuous through concealed space, such as the space above a suspended ceiling. Joints and voids at intersections shall comply with Sections 707.8 and 707.9

Exceptions:
1. Shaft enclosures shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.
2. Interior exit stairway and ramp enclosures required by Section 1023 and exit access stairway and ramp enclosures required by Section 1019 shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.

707.5.1 Supporting construction. The supporting construction for a fire barrier shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier supported. Hollow vertical spaces within a fire barrier shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.2 at every floor level.

Exceptions:
1. The maximum required fire-resistance rating for assemblies supporting fire barriers separating tank storage as provided for in Section 415.9.1.2 shall be 2 hours, but not less than required by Table 601 for the building construction type.
2. Supporting construction for 1-hour fire barriers required by Table 509 in buildings of Type IIB, IIB and VB construction is not required to be fire-resistance rated unless required by other sections of this code.
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

707.6 Openings. Openings in a fire barrier shall be protected in accordance with Section 716. Openings shall be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall, and the maximum area of any single opening shall not exceed 156 square feet (15 m²). Openings in enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall also comply with Sections 1019, 1023.4 and 1024.5, respectively.

Exceptions:

1. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m²) where adjoining floor areas are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m²) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door serving enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps.
3. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m²) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective has been tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and has a minimum fire-resistance rating not less than the fire-resistance rating of the wall.
4. Fire window assemblies permitted in atrium separation walls shall not be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall.
5. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet (15 m²) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door assembly in a fire barrier separating an enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps from an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3.1.

707.7 Penetrations. Penetrations of fire barriers shall comply with Section 714.

707.7.1 Prohibited penetrations. Penetrations into enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, interior exit stairways and ramps, and exit passageways shall be allowed only where permitted by Sections 1019, 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

707.8 Joints. Joints made in or between fire barriers, and joints made at the intersection of fire barriers with underside of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above, and the exterior vertical wall intersection shall comply with Section 715.

707.9 Voids at intersections. The voids created at the intersection of a fire barrier and a non-fire-resistance-rated roof assembly or a non-fire-resistance-rated exterior wall assembly shall be filled. An approved material or system shall be used to fill the void, and shall be securely installed in or on the intersection for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

707.10 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations in a fire barrier by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

SECTION 708
FIRE PARTITIONS

708.1 General. The following wall assemblies shall comply with this section.

1. Separation walls as required by Section 420.2 for Groups I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3.
2. Walls separating tenant spaces in covered and open mall buildings as required by Section 402.4.2.1.
3. Corridor walls as required by Section 1020.1.
4. Elevator lobby separation as required by Section 3006.2.
5. Egress balconies as required by Section 1019.2

708.2 Materials. The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

708.3 Fire-resistance rating. Fire partitions shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

Exceptions:

1. Corridor walls permitted to have a 1/2-hour fire-resistance rating by Table 1020.1.
2. Dwelling unit and sleeping unit separations in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction shall have fire-resistance ratings of not less than 1/2 hour in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

708.4 Continuity. Fire partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above or to the fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly above, and shall be securely attached thereto. In combustible construction where the fire partitions are not required to be continuous to the sheathing, deck or slab, the space between the ceiling and the sheathing, deck or slab above shall be fire-blocked or draftstopped in accordance with Sections 718.2 and 718.3 at the partition line. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the wall supported, except for walls separating tenant spaces in covered and open mall buildings, walls separating dwelling units, walls separating sleeping units and corridor walls, in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction.

Exceptions:

1. The wall need not be extended into the crawl space below where the floor above the crawl space has a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Where the room-side fire-resistance-rated membrane of the corridor is carried through to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof above, the ceiling of the corridor shall be permitted to be protected by...
the use of ceiling materials as required for a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor or roof system.

3. Where the corridor ceiling is constructed as required for the corridor walls, the walls shall be permitted to terminate at the upper membrane of such ceiling assembly.

4. The fire partitions separating tenant spaces in a covered or open mall building, complying with Section 402.4.2.1, are not required to extend beyond the underside of a ceiling that is not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly. A wall is not required in attic or ceiling spaces above tenant separation walls.

5. Attic fireblocking or draftstopping is not required at the partition line in Group R-2 buildings that do not exceed four stories above grade plane, provided the attic space is subdivided by draftstopping into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m²) or above every two dwelling units, whichever is smaller.

6. Fireblocking or draftstopping is not required at the partition line in buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in combustible floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling spaces.

708.5 Exterior walls. Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated separation, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls, and the fire-resistance-rated separation requirements shall not apply.

Exception: Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.

708.6 Openings. Openings in a fire partition shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

708.7 Penetrations. Penetrations of fire partitions shall comply with Section 714.

708.8 Joints. Joints made in or between fire partitions shall comply with Section 715.

708.9 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations in a fire partition by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

SECTION 709
SMOKE BARRIERS

709.1 General. Vertical and horizontal smoke barriers shall comply with this section.

709.2 Materials. Smoke barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.


Exception: Smoke barriers constructed of minimum 0.10-inch-thick (2.5 mm) steel in Group I-3 buildings.

709.4 Continuity. Smoke barriers shall form an effective membrane continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above, including continuity through concealed spaces, such as those found above suspended ceilings, and interstitial structural and mechanical spaces. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the wall or floor supported in buildings of other than Type IIB, IIB or VB construction. Smoke barrier walls used to separate smoke compartments shall comply with Section 709.4.1. Smoke-barrier walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4 or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2 shall comply with Section 709.4.2.

Exception: Smoke-barrier walls are not required in interstitial spaces where such spaces are designed and constructed with ceilings or exterior walls that provide resistance to the passage of fire and smoke equivalent to that provided by the smoke-barrier walls.

709.4.1 Smoke-barrier walls separating smoke compartments. Smoke-barrier walls used to separate smoke compartments shall form an effective membrane continuous from outside wall to outside wall.

709.4.2 Smoke-barrier walls enclosing areas of refuge or elevator lobbies. Smoke-barrier walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4, or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2, shall form an effective membrane enclosure that terminates at a fire barrier wall having a level of fire protection rating not less than 1 hour, another smoke barrier wall or an outside wall. A smoke and draft control door assembly as specified in Section 716.5.3.1 shall not be required at each elevator hoistway door opening or at each exit doorway between an area of refuge and the exit enclosure.

709.5 Openings. Openings in a smoke barrier shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

Exceptions:

1. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 709.5.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall be close fitting within operational tolerances, and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops, and astragals or rabbits at meeting edges. Where permitted by the door manufacturer’s listing, positive-latching devices are not required.

2. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, horizontal sliding doors installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 and protected in accordance with Section 716.

709.5.1 Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where doors are
709.6 Penetrations. Penetrations of smoke barriers shall comply with Section 714.

709.7 Joints. Joints shall be filled with an approved material to limit the free passage of smoke.

709.8 Ducts and air transfer openings. The space around a duct penetrating a smoke partition shall be filled with an approved material to limit the free passage of smoke. Air transfer openings in smoke partitions shall be provided with a smoke damper complying with Section 717.3.2.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, approved alternative protection shall be utilized.

SECTION 710
SMOKE PARTITIONS

710.1 General. Smoke partitions installed as required elsewhere in the code shall comply with this section.

710.2 Materials. The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

710.3 Fire-resistance rating. Unless required elsewhere in the code, smoke partitions are not required to have a fire-resistance rating.

710.4 Continuity. Smoke partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above or to the underside of the ceiling above where the ceiling membrane is constructed to limit the transfer of smoke.

710.5 Openings. Openings in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.1 and 710.5.2.

710.5.1 Windows. Windows in smoke partitions shall be sealed to resist the free passage of smoke or be automatically closing upon detection of smoke.

710.5.2 Doors. Doors in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.1 through 710.5.2.3.

710.5.2.1 Louvers. Doors in smoke partitions shall not include louvers.

710.5.2.2 Smoke and draft control doors. Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall meet the requirements for a smoke and draft control door assembly tested in accordance with UL 1784. The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.015424 m³/(s · m²)) of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature test and the elevated temperature exposure test. Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

710.5.2.2.1 Smoke and draft control door labeling. Smoke and draft control doors complying only with UL 1784 shall be permitted to show the letter “S” on the manufacturer’s labeling.

710.5.2.3 Self- or automatic-closing doors. Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

SECTION 711
FLOOR AND ROOF ASSEMBLIES

711.1 General. Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 711.2. Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies shall comply with Section 711.3.

711.2 Horizontal assemblies. Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.2.1 through 711.2.6.

711.2.1 Materials. Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

711.2.2 Continuity. Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by this section and Section 712.

711.2.3 Supporting construction. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the horizontal assembly supported.

Exception: In buildings of Type IIIB, IIIB or VB construction, the construction supporting the horizontal assembly is not required to be fire-resistance rated at the following:

1. Horizontal assemblies at the separations of incidental uses as specified by Table 509 provided the required fire-resistance rating does not exceed 1 hour.

2. Horizontal assemblies at the separations of dwelling units and sleeping units as required by Section 420.3.

3. Horizontal assemblies at smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 709.

711.2.4 Fire-resistance rating. The fire-resistance rating of horizontal assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.2.4.1 through 711.2.4.6 but shall be not less than that required by the building type of construction.

711.2.4.1 Separating mixed occupancies. Where the horizontal assembly separates mixed occupancies, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

711.2.4.2 Separating fire areas. Where the horizontal assembly separates a single occupancy into different
fire areas, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 707.3.10.

711.2.4.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units. Horizontal assemblies serving as dwelling or sleeping unit separations in accordance with Section 420.3 shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

Exception: Horizontal assemblies separating dwelling units and sleeping units shall be not less than 1/2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction in a building of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

711.2.4.4 Separating smoke compartments. Where the horizontal assembly is required to be a smoke barrier, the assembly shall comply with Section 709.

711.2.4.5 Separating incidental uses. Where the horizontal assembly separates incidental uses from the remainder of the building, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 709.

711.2.4.6 Other separations. Where a horizontal assembly is required by other sections of this code, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by that section.

711.2.5 Ceiling panels. Where the weight of lay-in ceiling panels, used as part of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies, is not adequate to resist an upward force of 1 pound per square foot (48 Pa), wire or other approved devices shall be installed above the panels to prevent vertical displacement under such upward force.

711.2.6 Unusable space. In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assemblies, the ceiling membrane is not required to be installed over unusable crawl spaces. In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies, the floor membrane is not required to be installed where unusable attic space occurs above.

711.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies. Nonfire-resistance-rated floor, floor/ceiling, roof and roof/ceiling assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.3.1 and 711.3.2.

711.3.1 Materials. Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

711.3.2 Continuity. Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by Section 712.

SECTION 712
VERTICAL OPENINGS

712.1 General. Each vertical opening shall comply in accordance with one of the protection methods in Sections 712.1.1 through 712.1.16.

712.1.1 Shaft enclosures. Vertical openings contained entirely within a shaft enclosure complying with Section 713 shall be permitted.

712.1.2 Individual dwelling unit. Unconcealed vertical openings totally within an individual residential dwelling unit and connecting four stories or less shall be permitted.

712.1.3 Escalator openings. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, vertical openings for escalators shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 712.1.3.1 or 712.1.3.2.

712.1.3.1 Opening size. Protection by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be permitted where the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the horizontal projected area of the escalator. In other than Groups B and M, this application is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

712.1.3.2 Automatic shutters. Protection of the vertical opening by approved shutters at every penetrated floor shall be permitted in accordance with this section. The shutters shall be of noncombustible construction and have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1.5 hours. The shutter shall be so constructed as to close immediately upon the actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 907.3.1 and shall completely shut off the well opening. Escalators shall cease operation when the shutter begins to close. The shutter shall operate at a speed of not more than 30 feet per minute (152.4 mm/s) and shall be equipped with a sensitive leading edge to arrest its progress where in contact with any obstacle, and to continue its progress on release there from.

712.1.4 Penetrations. Penetrations, concealed and unconcealed, shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 714.

712.1.5 Joints. Joints shall be permitted where complying with Section 712.1.5.1 or 712.1.5.2, as applicable.

712.1.5.1 Joints in or between horizontal assemblies. Joints made in or between horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 715. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

712.1.5.2 Joints in or between nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies. Joints in or between floor assemblies without a required fire-resistance rating shall be permitted where they comply with one of the following:

1. The joint shall be concealed within the cavity of a wall.
2. The joint shall be located above a ceiling.
3. The joint shall be sealed, treated or covered with an approved material or system to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

Exception: Joints meeting one of the exceptions listed in Section 715.1.

712.1.6 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected in accor-
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

dance with Section 717. Grease ducts shall be protected in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

712.1.7 Atriums. In other than Group H occupancies, atriums complying with Section 404 shall be permitted.

712.1.8 Masonry chimney. Approved vertical openings for masonry chimneys shall be permitted where the annular space is fireblocked at each floor level in accordance with Section 718.2.5.

712.1.9 Two-story openings. In other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a vertical opening that is not used as one of the applications listed in this section shall be permitted if the opening complies with all of the items below:
   1. Does not connect more than two stories.
   2. Does not penetrate a horizontal assembly that separates fire areas or smoke barriers that separate smoke compartments.
   3. Is not concealed within the construction of a wall or a floor/ceiling assembly.
   4. Is not open to a corridor in Group I and R occupancies.
   5. Is not open to a corridor on nonsprinklered floors.
   6. Is separated from floor openings and air transfer openings serving other floors by construction conforming to required shaft enclosures.

712.1.10 Parking garages. Vertical openings in parking garages for automobile ramps, elevators and duct systems shall comply with Section 712.1.10.1, 712.1.10.2 or 712.1.10.3, as applicable.

712.1.10.1 Automobile ramps. Vertical openings for automobile ramps in open and enclosed parking garages shall be permitted where constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

712.1.10.2 Elevators. Vertical openings for elevator hoistways in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, and complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted.

712.1.10.3 Duct systems. Vertical openings for mechanical exhaust or supply duct systems in open or enclosed parking garages complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted to be unenclosed where such duct system is contained within and serves only the parking garage.

712.1.11 Mezzanine. Vertical openings between a mezzanine complying with Section 505 and the floor below shall be permitted.

712.1.12 Exit access stairways and ramps. Vertical openings containing exit access stairways or ramps in accordance with Section 1019 shall be permitted.

712.1.13 Openings. Vertical openings for floor fire doors and access doors shall be permitted where protected by Section 712.1.13.1 or 712.1.13.2.

712.1.13.1 Horizontal fire door assemblies. Horizontal fire door assemblies used to protect openings in fire-resistance-rated horizontal assemblies shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 288, and shall achieve a fire-resistance rating not less than the assembly being penetrated. Horizontal fire door assemblies shall be labeled by an approved agency. The label shall be permanently affixed and shall specify the manufacturer, the test standard and the fire-resistance rating.

712.1.13.2 Access doors. Access doors shall be permitted in ceilings of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies, provided such doors are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as horizontal assemblies and labeled by an approved agency for such purpose.

712.1.14 Group I-3. In Group I-3 occupancies, vertical openings shall be permitted in accordance with Section 408.5.

712.1.15 Skylights. Skylights and other penetrations through a fire-resistance-rated roof deck or slab are permitted to be unprotected, provided that the structural integrity of the fire-resistance-rated roof assembly is maintained. Unprotected skylights shall not be permitted in roof assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 705.8.6. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the horizontal assembly supported.

712.1.16 Openings otherwise permitted. Vertical openings shall be permitted where allowed by other sections of this code.

SECTION 713
SHAFT ENCLOSURES

713.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to shafts required to protect openings and penetrations through floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.

713.2 Construction. Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

713.3 Materials. The shaft enclosure shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

713.4 Fire-resistance rating. Shaft enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more, and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the shaft enclosure shall include any basements but not any mezzanines. Shaft enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours. Shaft enclosures shall meet the requirements of Section 703.2.1.

713.5 Continuity. Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, and shall have continuity in accordance with Section 707.5 for fire barriers or Section 711.2.2 for horizontal assemblies, as applicable.
713.6 Exterior walls. Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required shaft enclosure, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure requirements shall not apply.

Exception: Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.

713.7 Openings. Openings in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 716 as required for fire barriers. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

713.7.1 Prohibited openings. Openings other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

713.8 Penetrations. Penetrations in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 714 as required for fire barriers. Structural elements, such as beams or joists, where protected in accordance with Section 714 shall be permitted to penetrate a shaft enclosure.

713.8.1 Prohibited penetrations. Penetrations other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

713.9 Joints. Joints in a shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 715.

713.10 Duct and air transfer openings. Penetrations of a shaft enclosure by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

713.11 Enclosure at the bottom. Shafts that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall comply with one of the following:

1. They shall be enclosed at the lowest level with construction of the same fire-resistance rating as the lowest floor through which the shaft passes, but not less than the rating required for the shaft enclosure.

2. They shall terminate in a room having a use related to the purpose of the shaft. The room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating and opening protective shall be not less than the protection required for the shaft enclosure.

3. They shall be protected by approved fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing at the lowest floor level within the shaft enclosure.

Exceptions:

1. The fire-resistance-rated room separation is not required, provided there are no openings in or penetrations of the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building except at the bottom. The bottom of the shaft shall be closed off around the penetrating items with materials permitted by Section 718.3.1 for draftstopping, or the room shall be provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2. A shaft enclosure containing a waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall discharge in a room protected in accordance with Section 713.13.4.

3. The fire-resistance-rated room separation and the protection at the bottom of the shaft are not required provided there are no combustibles in the shaft and there are no openings or other penetrations through the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building.

713.12 Enclosure at top. A shaft enclosure that does not extend to the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the building shall be enclosed at the top with construction of the same fire-resistance rating as the topmost floor penetrated by the shaft, but not less than the fire-resistance rating required for the shaft enclosure.

713.13 Waste and linen chutes and incinerator rooms. Waste and linen chutes shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 82, Chapter 5 and shall meet the requirements of Sections 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the provisions of Sections 713.13.4 through 713.13.5.

Exception: Chutes serving and contained within a single dwelling unit.

713.13.1 Waste and linen. A shaft enclosure containing a recycling, or waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4. Openings into the shaft, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with this section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in corridors. Doors into chutes shall be self-closing. Discharge doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3, except that heat-activated closing devices shall be permitted between the shaft and the discharge room.

713.13.2 Materials. A shaft enclosure containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.

713.13.3 Chute access rooms. Access openings for waste or linen chutes shall be located in rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/4 hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

713.13.4 Chute discharge room. Waste or linen chutes shall discharge into an enclosed room separated by fire barriers with a fire-resistance rating not less than the required fire rating of the shaft enclosure and constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the discharge room from the remainder of the building shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating equal to the protection required for the shaft enclosure. Doors shall be self- or automatic-
closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Waste chutes shall not terminate in an incinerator room. Waste and linen rooms that are not provided with chutes need only comply with Table 509.

713.13.5 Incinerator room. Incinerator rooms shall comply with Table 509.

713.13.6 Automatic sprinkler system. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.2.11.2.

713.14 Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistways. Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be constructed in accordance with Section 713 and Chapter 30.

SECTION 714
PENETRATIONS

714.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall govern the materials and methods of construction used to protect through penetrations and membrane penetrations of horizontal assemblies and fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies.

714.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings. Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls by ducts that are not protected with dampers shall comply with Sections 714.2 through 714.3.3. Penetrations of horizontal assemblies not protected with a shaft as permitted by Section 717.6, and not required to be protected with fire dampers by other sections of this code, shall comply with Sections 714.4 through 714.5.2. Ducts and air transfer openings that are protected with dampers shall comply with Section 717.

714.2 Installation details. Where sleeves are used, they shall be securely fastened to the assembly penetrated. The space between the item contained in the sleeve and the sleeve itself and any space between the sleeve and the assembly penetrated shall be protected in accordance with this section. Insulation and coverings on or in the penetrating item shall not penetrate the assembly unless the specific material used has been tested as part of the assembly in accordance with this section.

714.3 Fire-resistance-rated walls. Penetrations into or through fire walls, fire barriers, smoke barrier walls and fire partitions shall comply with Sections 714.3.1 through 714.3.3. Penetrations in smoke barrier walls shall also comply with Section 714.4.4.

714.3.1 Through penetrations. Through penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls shall comply with Section 714.3.1.1 or 714.3.1.2.

Exception: Where the penetrating items are steel, ferrous or copper pipes, tubes or conduits, the annular space between the penetrating item and the fire-resistance-rated wall is permitted to be protected by either of the following measures:

1. In concrete or masonry walls where the penetrating item is a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter and the area of the opening through the wall does not exceed 144 square inches (0.0929 m²), concrete, grout or mortar is permitted where installed the full thickness of the wall or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating.

2. The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

714.3.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations shall be installed as tested in an approved fire-resistance-rated assembly.

714.3.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system. Through penetrations shall be protected by an approved penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water and shall have an F rating of not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated.

714.3.2 Membrane penetrations. Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section 714.3.1. Where walls or partitions are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

Exceptions:

1. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.103 m²) in area, provided the aggregate area of the openings through the membrane does not exceed 100 square inches (0.645 m²) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of wall area. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed 1/4 inch (3.2 mm). Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:

   1.1. By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) where the wall or partition is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities;

   1.2. By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity where the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loose-fill, rockwool or slag mineral wool insulation;

   1.3. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1;

   1.4. By protecting both outlet boxes with listed putty pads; or

   1.5. By other listed materials and methods.
2. Membrane penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed 1/4 inch (3.2 mm) unless listed otherwise. Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:

2.1. By the horizontal distance specified in the listing of the electrical boxes;
2.2. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1;
2.3. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads; or
2.4. By other listed materials and methods.

3. Membrane penetrations by electrical boxes of any size or type, that have been listed as part of a wall opening protective material system for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

4. Membrane penetrations by boxes other than electrical boxes, provided such penetrating items and the annular space between the wall membrane and the box, are protected by an approved membrane penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water, and shall have an F and T rating of not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated and be installed in accordance with their listing.

5. The annular space created by the penetration of an automatic sprinkler, provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

6. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that exceed 16 square inches (0.0103 m²) in area, or steel electrical boxes of any size having an aggregate area through the membrane exceeding 100 square inches (0.0645 m²) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of wall area, provided such penetrating items are protected by listed putty pads or other listed materials and methods, and installed in accordance with the listing.

714.3.3 Dissimilar materials. Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible items beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the wall is maintained.

714.4 Horizontal assemblies. Penetrations of a fire-resistance-rated floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly not required to be enclosed in a shaft by Section 712.1 shall be protected in accordance with Sections 714.4.1 through 714.4.4.

714.4.1 Through penetrations. Through penetrations of horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents or concrete or masonry items through a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly where the annular space is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated. Penetrating items with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter shall not be limited to the penetration of a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly, provided the aggregate area of the openings through the assembly does not exceed 144 square inches (92 900 mm²) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of floor area.

2. Penetrations in a single concrete floor by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter, provided the concrete, grout or mortar is installed the full thickness of the floor or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating. The penetrating items shall not be limited to the penetration of a single concrete floor, provided the area of the opening through each floor does not exceed 144 square inches (92 900 mm²).

3. Penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

714.4.1.1 Installation. Through penetrations shall be installed as tested in the approved fire-resistance-rated assembly.

714.4.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system. Through penetrations shall be protected by an approved through-penetration firestop system installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water (2.49 Pa). The system shall have an F rating/T rating of not less than 1 hour but not less than the required rating of the floor penetrated.

Exceptions:

1. Floor penetrations contained and located within the cavity of a wall above the floor or below the floor do not require a T rating.
2. Floor penetrations by floor drains, tub drains or shower drains contained and
located within the concealed space of a horizontal assembly do not require a T rating.

3. Floor penetrations of maximum 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter penetrating directly into metal-enclosed electrical power switchgear do not require a T rating.

**714.4.2 Membrane penetrations.** Penetrations of membranes that are part of a horizontal assembly shall comply with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2. Where floor/ceiling assemblies are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

**Exceptions:**

1. **Membrane penetrations** by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents, or concrete or masonry items where the **annular space** is protected either in accordance with Section 714.4.1 or to prevent the free passage of flame and the products of combustion. The aggregate area of the openings through the membrane shall not exceed 100 square inches (64 500 mm²) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of ceiling area in assemblies tested without penetrations.

2. Ceiling **membrane penetrations** of maximum 2-hour horizontal assemblies by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (10 323 mm²) in area, provided the aggregate area of such penetrations does not exceed 100 square inches (44 500 mm²) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of ceiling area, and the **annular space** between the ceiling membrane and the box does not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

3. **Membrane penetrations** by electrical boxes of any size or type, that have been listed as part of an opening protective material system for use in horizontal assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

4. **Membrane penetrations** by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The **annular space** between the ceiling membrane and the box shall not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) unless listed otherwise.

5. The **annular space** created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler, provided it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.

6. Noncombustible items that are cast into concrete building elements and that do not penetrate both top and bottom surfaces of the element.

7. The ceiling membrane of 1- and 2-hour fire-resistance-rated horizontal assemblies is permitted to be interrupted with the double wood top plate of a wall assembly that is sheathed with Type X gypsum wallboard, provided that all penetrating items through the double top plates are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2 and the ceiling membrane is tight to the top plates.

**714.4.3 Dissimilar materials.** Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible materials beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the horizontal assembly is maintained.

**714.4.4 Penetrations in smoke barriers.** Penetrations in smoke barriers shall be protected by an approved through-penetration firestop system installed and tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 1479 for air leakage. The L rating of the system measured at 0.30 inch (7.47 Pa) of water in both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests shall not exceed:

1. 5.0 cfm per square foot (0.025 m³/s · m²) of penetration opening for each through-penetration firestop system; or

2. A total cumulative leakage of 50 cfm (0.024 m³/s) for any 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of wall area, or floor area.

**714.5 Nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Penetrations of nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies or the ceiling membrane of a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly shall meet the requirements of Section 713 or shall comply with Section 714.5.1 or 714.5.2.

**714.5.1 Noncombustible penetrating items.** Noncombustible penetrating items that connect not more than five stories are permitted, provided that the **annular space** is filled to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion with an approved noncombustible material or with a fill, void or cavity material that is tested and classified for use in through-penetration firestop systems.

**714.5.2 Penetrating items.** Penetrating items that connect not more than two stories are permitted, provided that the **annular space** is filled with an approved material to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

**SECTION 715**

**FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEMS**

**715.1 General.** Joints installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls, floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies shall be protected by an approved fire-resistant joint system designed to resist the passage of fire for a time period not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor or roof in or between which the system is installed. Fire-resistant joint systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 715.3.

**Exception:** Fire-resistant joint systems shall not be required for joints in all of the following locations:

1. Floors within a single dwelling unit.

2. Floors where the joint is protected by a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.
3. Floors within atriums where the space adjacent to the atrium is included in the volume of the atrium for smoke control purposes.

4. Floors within malls.

5. Floors and ramps within open and enclosed parking garages or structures constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.


7. Walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.

8. Roofs where openings are permitted.

9. Control joints not exceeding a maximum width of 0.625 inch (15.9 mm) and tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

715.1.1 Curtain wall assembly. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

715.2 Installation. A fire-resistant joint system shall be securely installed in accordance with the listing criteria in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

715.3 Fire test criteria. Fire-resistant joint systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079. Nonsymmetrical wall joint systems shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire-resistance rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the building official, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side.

Exception: For exterior walls with a horizontal fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the joint system shall be required to be tested for interior fire exposure only.

715.4 Exterior curtain wall/floor intersection. Where fire resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies are required, voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall assemblies and such floor assemblies shall be sealed with an approved system to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such systems shall be securely installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E2307 to provide an F rating for a time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly. Height and fire-resistance requirements for curtain wall spandrels shall comply with Section 705.8.5.

Exception: Voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall assemblies and such floor assemblies where the vision glass extends to the finished floor level shall be permitted to be sealed with an approved material to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such material shall be securely installed and capable of preventing the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (0.254 mm) of water column (2.5 Pa) for the time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.

715.4.1 Exterior curtain wall/non-fire-resistance-rated floor assembly intersections. Voids created at the intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies shall be sealed with an approved material or system to retard the interior spread of fire and hot gases between stories.

715.4.2 Exterior curtain wall/vertical fire barrier intersections. Voids created at the intersection of nonfire-resistance-rated exterior curtain wall assemblies and fire barriers shall be filled. An approved material or system shall be used to fill the void and shall be securely installed in or on the intersection for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

715.5 Spandrel wall. Height and fire-resistance requirements for curtain wall spandrels shall comply with Section 705.8.5. Where Section 705.8.5 does not require a fire-resistance-rated spandrel wall, the requirements of Section 715.4 shall still apply to the intersection between the spandrel wall and the floor.

715.6 Fire-resistant joint systems in smoke barriers. Fire-resistant joint systems in smoke barriers, and joints at the intersection of a horizontal smoke barrier and an exterior curtain wall, shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 2079 for air leakage. The L rating of the joint system shall not exceed 5 cfm per linear foot (0.00775 m³/s m) of joint at 0.30 inch (7.47 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests.

SECTION 716 OPENING PROTECTIVES

716.1 General. Opening protectives required by other sections of this code shall comply with the provisions of this section.

716.2 Fire-resistance-rated glazing. Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated wall or floor/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and labeled in accordance with Section 703.6 shall not otherwise be required to comply with this section where used as part of a wall or floor/ceiling assembly. Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall be permitted in fire door and fire window assemblies where tested and installed in accordance with their listings and where in compliance with the requirements of this section.

716.3 Marking fire-rated glazing assemblies. Fire-rated glazing assemblies shall be marked in accordance with Tables 716.3, 716.5 and 716.6.

716.3.1 Fire-rated glazing identification. For fire-rated glazing, the label shall bear the identification required in Tables 716.3 and 716.5. “D” indicates that the glazing is permitted to be used in fire door assemblies and that the glazing meets the fire protection requirements of NFPA.
252. “H” shall indicate that the glazing meets the hose stream requirements of NFPA 252. “T” shall indicate that the glazing meets the temperature requirements of Section 716.5.5.1. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

**716.3.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing identification.** For fire-protection-rated glazing, the label shall bear the following identification required in Tables 716.3 and 716.6: “OH – XXX.” “OH” indicates that the glazing meets both the fire protection and the hose-stream requirements of NFPA 257 or UL 9 and is permitted to be used in fire window openings. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

**716.3.3 Fire-rated glazing that exceeds the code requirements.** Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked as complying with hose stream requirements (H) shall be permitted in applications that do not require compliance with hose stream requirements. Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked as complying with temperature rise requirements (T) shall be permitted in applications that do not require compliance with temperature rise requirements. Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked with ratings (XXX) that exceed the ratings required by this code shall be permitted.

**716.4 Alternative methods for determining fire protection ratings.** The application of any of the alternative methods listed in this section shall be based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in NFPA 252, NFPA 257 or UL 9. The required fire resistance of an opening protective shall be permitted to be established by any of the following methods or procedures:

1. Designs documented in approved sources.
2. Calculations performed in an approved manner.
3. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of opening protective designs having fire protection ratings as determined by the test procedures set forth in NFPA 252, NFPA 257 or UL 9.
4. Alternative protection methods as allowed by Section 104.11.

**716.5 Fire door and shutter assemblies.** Approved fire door and fire shutter assemblies shall be constructed of any material or assembly of component materials that conforms to the test requirements of Section 716.5.1, 716.5.2 or 716.5.3 and the fire protection rating indicated in Table 716.5. Fire door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both shall be permitted in accordance with Section 716.5.6. Fire door assemblies and shutters shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section and NFPA 80.

**Exceptions:**

1. Labeled protective assemblies that conform to the requirements of this section or UL 10A, UL 14B and UL 14C for tin-clad fire door assemblies.
2. Floor fire door assemblies in accordance with Section 712.1.13.1.

**716.5.1 Side-hinged or pivoted swinging doors.** Fire door assemblies with side-hinged and pivoted swinging doors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. After 5 minutes into the NFPA 252 test, the neutral pressure level in the furnace shall be established at 40 inches (1016 mm) or less above the sill.

**716.5.2 Other types of assemblies.** Fire door assemblies with other types of doors, including swinging elevator doors, horizontal sliding fire door assemblies, and fire shutter assemblies, bottom and side-hinged chute intake doors, and top-hinged chute discharge doors, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B. The pressure in the furnace shall be maintained as nearly equal to the atmospheric pressure as possible. Once established, the pressure shall be maintained during the entire test period.

**716.5.3 Door assemblies in corridors and smoke barriers.** Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum fire protection rating of 20 minutes where located in corridor walls or smoke barrier walls having a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Table 716.5 shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C without the hose stream test.

**Exceptions:**

1. Viewports that require a hole not larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter through the door, have not less than a 0.25-inch-thick (6.4 mm) glass disc and the holder is of metal that will not melt out where subject to temperatures of 1,700°F (927°C).
2. Corridor door assemblies in occupancies of Group I-2 shall be in accordance with Section 407.3.1.

---

**TABLE 716.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE TEST STANDARD</th>
<th>MARKING</th>
<th>DEFINITION OF MARKING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E119 or UL 263</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Meets wall assembly criteria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 257 or UL 9</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>Meets fire window assembly criteria including the hose stream test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 252 or UL 10B or UL 10C</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Meets fire door assembly criteria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Meets fire door assembly hose stream test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Meets 450°F temperature rise criteria for 30 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>The time in minutes of the fire resistance or fire protection rating of the glazing assembly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.
### TABLE 716.5
OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF ASSEMBLY</th>
<th>REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)</th>
<th>MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)</th>
<th>DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE</th>
<th>FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL</th>
<th>MINIMUM SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)</th>
<th>FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire walls and fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating greater than 1 hour</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>See Note b</td>
<td>D-H-W-240</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>See Note b</td>
<td>D-H-W-180</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-W-90</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-W-90</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>11/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enclosures for shafts, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-T-W-90</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal exits in fire walls</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-W-240</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-W-180</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour: Enclosures for shafts, exit access stairways, exit access ramps, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps; and exit passageway walls</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>≤100 sq. in. = D-H-60 &gt;100 sq. in. = D-H-T-W-60</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other fire barriers</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-H</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>D-H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire partitions: Corridor walls</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-20</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>D-H-OH-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-20</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>D-H-OH-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other fire partitions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-H-45</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>D-H-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-H-20</td>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>D-H-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

TABLE 716.5—continued
OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF ASSEMBLY</th>
<th>REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)</th>
<th>MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)</th>
<th>DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE</th>
<th>FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL</th>
<th>FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDE/LIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exterior walls</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>D-H-90</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100 sq. in.</td>
<td>D-H-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;100 sq. in.</td>
<td>D-H-W-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke barriers</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>Maximum size tested</td>
<td>D-H-45</td>
<td>3/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square inch = 645.2 mm.

a. Two doors, each with a fire protection rating of 1 1/2 hours, installed on opposite sides of the same opening in a fire wall, shall be deemed equivalent in fire protection rating to one 3-hour fire door.
b. Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested to ASTM E119 in accordance with Section 716.2 shall be permitted, in the maximum size tested.
c. Except where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler and the fire-rated glazing meets the criteria established in Section 716.5.5.
d. Under the column heading “Fire-rated glazing marking door vision panel,” W refers to the fire-resistance rating of the glazing, not the frame.
e. See Section 716.5.8.1.2.1.

3. Unprotected openings shall be permitted for corridors in multitheater complexes where each motion picture auditorium has not fewer than one-half of its required exit or exit access doorways opening directly to the exterior or into an exit passageway.

4. Horizontal sliding doors in smoke barriers that comply with Sections 408.6 and 408.8.4 in occupancies in Group I-3.

716.5.3.1 Smoke and draft control. Fire door assemblies shall meet the requirements for a smoke and draft control door assembly tested in accordance with UL 1784. The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot (0.01524 m³/s · m²) of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests. Louvers shall be prohibited. Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

716.5.3.2 Glazing in door assemblies. In a 20-minute fire door assembly, the glazing material in the door itself shall have a minimum fire-protection-rated glazing of 20 minutes and shall be exempt from the hose stream test. Glazing material in any other part of the door assembly, including transom lights and sidelights, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose stream test, in accordance with Section 716.6.

716.5.4 Door assemblies in other fire partitions. Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum fire protection rating of 20 minutes where located in other fire partitions having a fire-resistance rating of 0.5 hour in accordance with Table 716.5 shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C with the hose stream test.

716.5.5 Doors in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways. Fire door assemblies in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise of not more than 450°F (250°C) above ambient at the end of 30 minutes of standard fire test exposure.

Exception: The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

716.5.5.1 Glazing in doors. Fire-protection-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches (0.065 m²) is not permitted. Fire-resistance-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches (0.065 m²) shall be permitted in fire doors. Listed fire-resistance-rated glazing in a fire door shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise in accordance with Section 716.5.5 when the fire door is tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C.

716.5.6 Fire door frames with transom lights and sidelights. Door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both, shall be permitted where a 3/4-hour fire protection rating or less is required in accordance with Table 716.5. Fire door frames with transom lights, sidelights, or both, installed with fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as an assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall
be permitted where a fire protection rating exceeding \( \frac{3}{4} \) hour is required in accordance with Table 716.5.

716.5.7 Labeled protective assemblies. *Fire door* assemblies shall be labeled by an approved agency. The labels shall comply with NFPA 80, and shall be permanently affixed to the door or frame.

716.5.7.1 Fire door labeling requirements. *Fire doors* shall be labeled showing the name of the manufacturer or other identification readily traceable back to the manufacturer, the name or trademark of the third-party inspection agency, the fire protection rating and, where required for *fire doors* in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways by Section 716.5.5, the maximum transmitted temperature end point. Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled as such and shall comply with Section 716.5.7.3. Labels shall be approved and permanently affixed. The label shall be applied at the factory or location where fabrication and assembly are performed.

716.5.7.1.1 Light kits, louvers and components. Listed light kits and louvers and their required preparations shall be considered as part of the labeled door where such installations are done under the listing program of the third-party agency. *Fire doors* and door assemblies shall be permitted to consist of components, including glazing, vision light kits and hardware that are listed or classified and labeled for such use by different third-party agencies.

716.5.7.2 Oversized doors. Oversized *fire doors* shall bear an oversized *fire door label* by an approved agency or shall be provided with a certificate of inspection furnished by an approved testing agency. Where a certificate of inspection is furnished by an approved testing agency, the certificate shall state that the door conforms to the requirements of design, materials and construction, but has not been subjected to the fire test.

716.5.7.3 Smoke and draft control door labeling requirements. Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled in accordance with Section 716.5.7.1 and shall show the letter “S” on the fire-rating label of the door. This marking shall indicate that the door and frame assembly are in compliance where listed or labeled gasketing is installed.

716.5.7.4 Fire door frame labeling requirements. *Fire door* frames shall be labeled showing the names of the manufacturer and the third-party inspection agency.

716.5.7.5 Fire door operator labeling requirements. *Fire door* operators for horizontal sliding doors shall be labeled and listed for use with the assembly.

716.5.8 Glazing material. *Fire-rated glazing* and *fire-resistance-rated* glazing conforming to the opening protection requirements in Section 716.5 shall be permitted in *fire door* assemblies.

716.5.8.1 Size limitations. *Fire-resistance-rated glazing* shall comply with the size limitations in Section 716.5.8.1.1. *Fire-protection-rated glazing* shall comply with the size limitations of NFPA 80, and as provided in Section 716.5.8.1.2.

716.5.8.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour. *Fire-resistance-rated* glazing tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263 and NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C shall be permitted in *fire door assemblies* located in *fire walls* and in *fire barriers* in accordance with Table 716.5 to the maximum size tested and in accordance with their listings.

716.5.8.1.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour. *Fire-protection-rated* glazing shall be prohibited in *fire walls* and *fire barriers* except as provided in Sections 716.5.8.1.2.1 and 716.5.8.1.2.2.

716.5.8.1.2.1 Horizontal exits. *Fire-protection-rated* glazing shall be permitted as vision panels in self-closing swinging *fire door* assemblies serving as horizontal exits in *fire walls* where limited to 100 square inches (0.065 m²) with no dimension exceeding 10 inches (0.3 mm).

716.5.8.1.2.2 Fire barriers. *Fire-protection-rated* glazing shall be permitted in *fire doors* having a 1\(\frac{1}{2}\)-hour *fire protection rating* intended for installation in *fire barriers*, where limited to 100 square inches (0.065 m²).

716.5.8.2 Elevator, stairway and ramp protective features. Approved fire-protection-rated glazing used in *fire door* assemblies in elevator, stairway and ramp enclosures shall be so located as to furnish clear vision of the passageway or approach to the elevator, stairway or ramp.

716.5.8.3 Labeling. *Fire-rated glazing* shall bear a label or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Table 716.3 that shall be issued by an approved agency and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

716.5.8.4 Safety glazing. *Fire-protection-rated* glazing and *fire-resistance-rated* glazing installed in *fire door* assemblies shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 where applicable.

716.5.9 Door closing. *Fire doors* shall be latching and self- or automatic-closing in accordance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. *Fire doors* located in common walls separating *sleeping units* in Group R-1 shall be permitted without automatic- or self-closing devices.

2. The elevator car doors and the associated hoist-way enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I emergency recall operation.
716.5.9.1 Latch required. Unless otherwise specifically permitted, single fire doors and both leaves of pairs of side-hinged swinging fire doors shall be provided with an active latch bolt that will secure the door when it is closed.

716.5.9.1.1 Chute intake door latching. Chute intake doors shall be positive latching, remaining latched and closed in the event of latch spring failure during a fire emergency.

716.5.9.2 Automatic-closing fire door assemblies. Automatic-closing fire door assemblies shall be self-closing in accordance with NFPA 80.

716.5.9.3 Smoke-activated doors. Automatic-closing doors installed in the following locations shall be automatic-closing by the actuation of smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 or by loss of power to the smoke detector or hold-open device. Doors that are automatic-closing by smoke detection shall not have more than a 10-second delay before the door starts to close after the smoke detector is actuated:

1. Doors installed across a corridor.
2. Doors installed in the enclosures of exit access stairways and ramps in accordance with Sections 1019 and 1023, respectively.
3. Doors that protect openings in exits or corridors required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Doors that protect openings in walls that are capable of resisting the passage of smoke in accordance with Section 509.4.
5. Doors installed in smoke barriers in accordance with Section 709.5.
6. Doors installed in fire barriers in accordance with Section 708.6.
7. Doors installed in a fire wall in accordance with Section 706.8.
8. Doors installed in shaft enclosures in accordance with Section 713.7.
9. Doors installed in waste and linen chutes, discharge openings and access and discharge rooms in accordance with Section 713.13. Loading doors installed in waste and linen chutes shall meet the requirements of Sections 716.5.9 and 716.5.9.1.1.
10. Doors installed in the walls for compartmentation of underground buildings in accordance with Section 405.4.2.
11. Doors installed in the elevator lobby walls of underground buildings in accordance with Section 405.4.3.
12. Doors installed in smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710.5.2.3.

716.5.9.4 Doors in pedestrian ways. Vertical sliding or vertical rolling steel fire doors in openings through which pedestrians travel shall be heat activated or activated by smoke detectors with alarm verification.

716.5.10 Swinging fire shutters. Where fire shutters of the swinging type are installed in exterior openings, not less than one row in every three vertical rows shall be arranged to be readily opened from the outside, and shall be identified by distinguishing marks or letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high.

716.5.11 Rolling fire shutters. Where fire shutters of the rolling type are installed, such shutters shall include approved automatic-closing devices.

716.6 Fire-protection-rated glazing. Glazing in fire window assemblies shall be fire protection rated in accordance with this section and Table 716.6. Glazing in fire door assemblies shall comply with Section 716.5.8. Fire-protection-rated glazing in fire window assemblies shall be tested in accordance with and shall meet the acceptance criteria of NFPA 257 or UL 9. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall comply with NFPA 80. Openings in nonfire-resistance-rated exterior wall assemblies that require protection in accordance with Section 705.3, 705.8, 705.8.5 or 705.8.6 shall have a fire protection rating of not less than 1/2 hour. Fire-protection-rated glazing in 0.5-hour fire-resistance-rated partitions is permitted to have an 0.33-hour fire protection rating.

716.6.1 Testing under positive pressure. NFPA 257 or UL 9 shall evaluate fire-protection-rated glazing under positive pressure. Within the first 10 minutes of a test, the pressure in the furnace shall be adjusted so not less than two-thirds of the test specimen is above the neutral pressure plane, and the neutral pressure plane shall be maintained at that height for the balance of the test.

716.6.2 Nonsymmetrical glazing systems. Nonsymmetrical fire-protection-rated glazing systems in fire partitions, fire barriers or in exterior walls with a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less pursuant to Section 705 shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire protection rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

716.6.3 Safety glazing. Fire-protection-rated glazing and fire-resistance-rated glazing installed in fire window assemblies shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 where applicable.

716.6.4 Glass and glazing. Glazing in fire window assemblies shall be fire-protection-rated glazing installed in accordance with and complying with the size limitations set forth in NFPA 80.

716.6.5 Installation. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be in the fixed position or be automatic-closing and shall be installed in approved frames.

716.6.6 Window mullions. Metal mullions that exceed a nominal height of 12 feet (3658 mm) shall be protected with materials to afford the same fire-resistance rating as required for the wall construction in which the protective is located.
716.6.7 **Interior fire window assemblies.** Fire-protection-rated glazing used in fire window assemblies located in fire partitions and fire barriers shall be limited to use in assemblies with a maximum fire-resistance rating of 1 hour in accordance with this section.

716.6.7.1 Where 3/4-hour fire protection window assemblies permitted. Fire-protection-rated glazing requiring 45-minute opening protection in accordance with Table 716.6 shall be limited to fire partitions designed in accordance with Section 708 and fire barriers utilized in the applications set forth in Sections 707.3.6, 707.3.7 and 707.3.9 where the fire-resistance rating does not exceed 1 hour. Fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be subject to the limitations of this section.

716.6.7.2 Area limitations. The total area of the glazing in fire-protection-rated window assemblies shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of a common wall with any room.

716.6.7.3 Where 1/3-hour fire-protection window assemblies permitted. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in window assemblies tested to NFPA 257 or UL 9 in smoke barriers and fire partitions requiring 15-minute opening protection in accordance with Table 716.6.

716.6.8 Labeling requirements. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall bear a label or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Section 716.3.2 and Table 716.6 that shall be issued by an approved agency and permanently identified on the glazing.

**SECTION 717**

**DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS**

717.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected and duct penetrations in nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.

717.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with dampers complying with this section.

717.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers. Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.2 through 714.3.3. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.4 through 714.5.2.

717.1.2.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies. The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3.

717.2 Installation. Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section, the manufacturer’s instructions and the dampers’ listing.

717.2.1 Smoke control system. Where the installation of a fire damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section
TABLE 717.3.2.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF PENETRATION</th>
<th>MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

717.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts. Fire dampers for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with the Mechanical Code.

717.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation. Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.1 through 717.3.3.

717.3.1 Damper testing. Dampers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with the standards in this section.
1. Fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. Only fire dampers and ceiling radiation dampers labeled for use in dynamic systems shall be installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire.
2. Smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S.
3. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S.
4. Ceiling radiation dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. Corridor dampers shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Corridor dampers shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 mps) velocity across the face of the damper during the UL 555 fire exposure test.

717.3.2 Damper rating. Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.2.1 through 717.3.2.4.

717.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings. Fire dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified in Table 717.3.2.1 for the type of penetration.

717.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings. Smoke damper leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

717.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified for fire dampers in Table 717.3.2.1 for the type of penetration and shall have a minimum smoke damper rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2.

717.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings. Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:
1. One hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2.

717.3.3 Damper actuation. Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 through 717.3.3.5 as applicable.

717.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation device. The fire damper actuation device shall meet one of the following requirements:
1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (10°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).
2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

717.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation. The smoke damper shall close upon actuation of a listed smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 and one of the following methods, as applicable:
1. Where a smoke damper is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a smoke damper is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
3. Where a smoke damper is installed within an air transfer opening in a wall, a spot-type detector shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
4. Where a smoke damper is installed in a corridor wall or ceiling, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.

5. Where a smoke detection system is installed in all areas served by the duct in which the damper will be located, the smoke dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

717.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation. Combination fire/smoke damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2. Combination fire/smoke dampers installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

717.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation. The operating temperature of a ceiling radiation damper actuation device shall be 50°F (27.8°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

717.3.3.5 Corridor damper actuation. Corridor damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2.

717.4 Access and identification. Fire and smoke dampers shall be provided with an approved means of access that is large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than 1/4 inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

717.5 Where required. Fire, dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, ceiling radiation dampers and corridor dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 717.5.1 through 717.5.7 and 717.6. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or a fire damper and a smoke damper shall be provided.

717.5.1 Fire walls. Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 706.11 shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

717.5.1.1 Horizontal exits. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a fire wall that serves as a horizontal exit.

717.5.2 Fire barriers. Ducts and air transfer openings of fire barriers shall be protected with approved fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways, except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.

2. Ducts are used as part of an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 and where the use of a fire damper would interfere with the operation of a smoke control system.

3. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure’s HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

717.5.3 Shaft enclosures. Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with approved fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. Fire and smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of exhaust shafts where steel exhaust subducts extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts provided there is a continuous airflow upward to the outside and the fan is provided with backup standby power.

2. Fire dampers are not required where penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3. Fire and smoke dampers are not required where ducts are used as part of an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909.

4. Fire and smoke dampers are not required where the penetrations are in dedicated parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

5. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where the building is equipped through-
out with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

6. Fire dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems when installed in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

717.5.4 Fire partitions. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions: In occupancies other than Group H, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714.

2. Tenant partitions in covered and open mall buildings where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the code to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.

3. The duct system is constructed of approved materials in accordance with the Mechanical Code and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:

   3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m²).

   3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.

   3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.

   3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.

   3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.

4. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum 1 1/2-inch by 1 1/2-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with mineral wool batting on all sides.

4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure’s HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

717.5.4.1 Corridors. Duct and air transfer openings that penetrate corridors shall be protected with dampers as follows:

1. A corridor damper shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, are penetrated.

2. A ceiling radiation damper shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, is penetrated.

3. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with Section 716.5.3.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke dampers are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, and smoke dampers are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.

2. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.

717.5.5 Smoke barriers. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke dampers are not required where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.

2. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barriers required by Section 407.5 for Group I-2, Condition 2—where the HVAC system is fully ducted in accordance with Section 603 of the Mechanical Code and where buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and equipped with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.
717.5.6 Exterior walls. Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.10 shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

717.5.7 Smoke partitions. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, approved alternative protection shall be utilized.

717.6 Horizontal assemblies. Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 or ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with an approved smoke protection system installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section 714.4. For air transfer openings, see Section 712.1.9.

Exception: A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor, provided such duct meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum wall thickness of 0.0187 inches (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).

2. The duct shall open into only one dwelling or sleeping unit and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.

3. The duct shall not exceed 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.065 m²) in any 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of floor area.

4. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a listed ceiling radiation damper installed in accordance with Section 717.6.2.1.

717.6.2 Membrane penetrations. Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of approved materials in accordance with the Mechanical Code that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.

2. A listed ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

3. A listed ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

717.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers. Ceiling radiation dampers shall be tested in accordance with Section 717.3.1. Ceiling radiation dampers shall be installed in accordance with the details listed in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer’s instructions and the listing. Ceiling radiation dampers are not required where one of the following applies:

1. Tests in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 have shown that ceiling radiation dampers are not necessary in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.

2. Where exhaust duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another dwelling unit or tenant space.

3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet protection system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

717.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies. Duct systems constructed of approved materials in accordance with the Mechanical Code that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.

2. The duct connects not more than two stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

3. In floor assemblies composed of noncombustible materials, a shaft shall not be required where the duct connects not more than three stories, the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion and a fire damper is installed at each floor line.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required in ducts within individual residential dwelling units.
717.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors. Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

SECTION 718
CONCEALED SPACES

718.1 General. Fireblocking and draftstopping shall be installed in combustible concealed locations in accordance with this section. Fireblocking shall comply with Section 718.2. Draftstopping in floor/ceiling spaces and attic spaces shall comply with Sections 718.3 and 718.4, respectively. The permitted use of combustible materials in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction shall be limited to the applications indicated in Section 718.5.

718.2 Fireblocking. In combustible construction, fireblocking shall be installed to cut off concealed draft openings (both vertical and horizontal) and shall form an effective barrier between floors, between a top story and a roof or attic space. Fireblocking shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 718.2.2 through 718.2.7.

718.2.1 Fireblocking materials. Fireblocking shall consist of the following materials:

1. Two-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber.
2. Two thicknesses of 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber with broken lap joints.
3. One thickness of 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels with joints backed by 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels.
4. One thickness of 0.75-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard with joints backed by 0.75-inch (19 mm) particleboard.
5. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.
6. One-fourth-inch (6.4 mm) cement-based millboard.
7. Batts or blankets of mineral wool, mineral fiber or other approved materials installed in such a manner as to be securely retained in place.
8. Cellulose insulation installed as tested for the specific application.

718.2.1.1 Batts or blankets of mineral wool or mineral fiber. Batts or blankets of mineral wool or mineral fiber or other approved nonrigid materials shall be permitted for compliance with the 10-foot (3048 mm) horizontal fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

718.2.1.2 Unfaced fiberglass. Unfaced fiberglass batt insulation used as fireblocking shall fill the entire cross section of the wall cavity to a minimum height of 16 inches (406 mm) measured vertically. Where piping, conduit or similar obstructions are encountered, the insulation shall be packed tightly around the obstruction.

718.2.1.3 Loose-fill insulation material. Loose-fill insulation material, insulating foam sealants and caulk materials shall not be used as a fireblock unless specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.

718.2.1.4 Fireblocking integrity. The integrity of fireblocks shall be maintained.

718.2.1.5 Double stud walls. Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other approved nonrigid materials shall be allowed as fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

718.2.2 Conceived wall spaces. Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces, and parallel rows of studs or staggered studs, as follows:

1. Vertically at the ceiling and floor levels.
2. Horizontally at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm).

718.2.3 Connections between horizontal and vertical spaces. Fireblocking shall be provided at interconnections between concealed vertical stud wall or partition spaces and concealed horizontal spaces created by an assembly of floor joists or trusses, and between concealed vertical and horizontal spaces such as occur at soffits, drop ceilings, cove ceilings and similar locations.

718.2.4 Stairways. Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces between stair stringers at the top and bottom of the run. Enclosed spaces under stairways shall comply with Section 1011.7.3.

718.2.5 Ceiling and floor openings. Where required by Section 712.1.8, Exception 1 of Section 714.4.1.2 or Section 714.5, fireblocking of the annular space around vents, pipes, ducts, chimneys and fireplaces at ceilings and floor levels shall be installed with a material specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

718.2.5.1 Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces. Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces shall be fireblocked in accordance with UL 103 and UL 127.

718.2.6 Exterior wall coverings. Fireblocking shall be installed within concealed spaces of exterior wall coverings and other exterior architectural elements where permitted to be of combustible construction as specified in Section 1406 or where erected with combustible frames. Fireblocking shall be installed at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6096 mm) in either dimension so that there will be no concealed space exceeding 100 square feet (9.3 m²) between fireblocking. Where wood furring strips are used, they shall be of approved wood of natural decay resistance or preservative-treated wood. If noncontinuous, such elements shall have closed ends, with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of separation between sections.

Exceptions:

1. Fireblocking of cornices is not required in single-family dwellings. Fireblocking of cornices of a
two-family dwelling is required only at the line of dwelling unit separation.

2. Fireblocking shall not be required where the exterior wall covering is installed on noncombustible framing and the face of the exterior wall covering exposed to the concealed space is covered by one of the following materials:
   2.1. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm).
   2.2. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.
   2.3. Other approved noncombustible materials.

3. Fireblocking shall not be required where the exterior wall covering has been tested in accordance with, and complies with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285. The exterior wall covering shall be installed as tested in accordance with NFPA 285.

718.2.7 Concealed sleeper spaces. Where wood sleepers are used for laying wood flooring on masonry or concrete fire-resistance-rated floors, the space between the floor slab and the underside of the wood flooring shall be filled with an approved material to resist the free passage of flame and products of combustion or fireblocked in such a manner that there will be no open spaces under the flooring that will exceed 100 square feet (9.3 m²) in area and such space shall be filled solidly under permanent partitions so that there is no communication under the flooring between adjoining rooms.

Exceptions:
1. Fireblocking is not required for slab-on-grade floors in gymnasiums.
2. Fireblocking is required only at the juncture of each alternate lane and at the ends of each lane in a bowling facility.

718.3 Draftstopping in floors. In combustible construction, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide floor/ceiling assemblies in the locations prescribed in Sections 718.3.2 through 718.3.3.

718.3.1 Draftstopping materials. Draftstopping materials shall be not less than 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) particleboard, 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber, cement fiberboard, batts or blankets of mineral wool or glass fiber, or other approved materials adequately supported. The integrity of draftstoppers shall be maintained.

718.3.2 Groups R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4. Draftstopping shall be provided in floor/ceiling spaces in Group R-1 buildings, in Group R-2 buildings with three or more dwelling units, in Group R-3 buildings with two dwelling units and in Group R-4 buildings. Draftstopping shall be located above and in line with the dwelling unit and sleeping unit separations.

Exceptions:
1. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in the combustible concealed spaces where the draftstopping is being omitted.

718.3.3 Other groups. In other groups, draftstopping shall be installed so that horizontal floor areas do not exceed 1,000 square feet (93 m²).

Exception: Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

718.4 Draftstopping in attics. In combustible construction, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide attic spaces and concealed roof spaces in the locations prescribed in Sections 718.4.2 and 718.4.3. Ventilation of concealed roof spaces shall be maintained in accordance with Section 1203.2.

718.4.1 Draftstopping materials. Materials utilized for draftstopping of attic spaces shall comply with Section 718.3.1.

718.4.1.1 Openings. Openings in the partitions shall be protected by self-closing doors with automatic latches constructed as required for the partitions.

718.4.2 Groups R-1 and R-2. Draftstopping shall be provided in attics, mansards, overhangs or other concealed roof spaces of Group R-2 buildings with three or more dwelling units and in all Group R-1 buildings. Draftstopping shall be installed above, and in line with, sleeping unit and dwelling unit separation walls that do not extend to the underside of the roof sheathing above.

Exceptions:
1. Where corridor walls provide a sleeping unit or dwelling unit separation, draftstopping shall only be required above one of the corridor walls.
2. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. In occupancies in Group R-2 that do not exceed four stories above grade plane, the attic space shall be subdivided by draftstops into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m²) or above every two dwelling units, whichever is smaller.
4. Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2, provided that automatic sprinklers are installed in the combustible concealed space where the draftstopping is being omitted.
718.4.3 Other groups. Draftstopping shall be installed in attics and concealed roof spaces, such that any horizontal area does not exceed 3,000 square feet (279 m²).

Exception: Draftstopping is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

718.5 Combustible materials in concealed spaces in Type I or II construction. Combustible materials shall not be permitted in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction.

Exceptions:
1. Combustible materials in accordance with Section 603.
2. Combustible materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the Mechanical Code.
3. Class A interior finish materials classified in accordance with Section 803.
4. Combustible piping within partitions or shaft enclosures installed in accordance with the provisions of this code.
5. Combustible piping within concealed ceiling spaces installed in accordance with the Mechanical Code and the Plumbing Code.
6. Combustible insulation and covering on pipe and tubing, installed in concealed spaces other than plenums, complying with Section 720.7.

SECTION 719
FIRE-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR PLASTER

719.1 Thickness of plaster. The minimum thickness of gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster used in a fire-resistance-rated system shall be determined by the prescribed fire tests. The plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of the lath where applied to gypsum lath or metal lath.

719.2 Plaster equivalents. For fire-resistance purposes, 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of unsanded gypsum plaster shall be deemed equivalent to 1/4 inch (19.1 mm) of one-to-three gypsum sand plaster or 1 inch (25 mm) of Portland cement sand plaster.

719.3 Noncombustible furring. In buildings of Type I and II construction, plaster shall be applied directly on concrete or masonry or on approved noncombustible plastering base and furring.

719.4 Double reinforcement. Plaster protection more than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness shall be reinforced with an additional layer of approved lath embedded not less than 1/4 inch (19.1 mm) from the outer surface and fixed securely in place.

Exception: Solid plaster partitions or where otherwise determined by fire tests.

719.5 Plaster alternatives for concrete. In reinforced concrete construction, gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster is permitted to be substituted for 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of the required poured concrete protection, except that a minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) of poured concrete shall be provided in reinforced concrete floors and 1 inch (25 mm) in reinforced concrete columns in addition to the plaster finish. The concrete base shall be prepared in accordance with Section 2510.7.

SECTION 720
THERMAL- AND SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS

720.1 General. Insulating materials, including facings such as vapor retarders and vapor-permeable membranes, similar coverings and all layers of single and multilayer reflective foil insulations, shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where a flame spread index or a smoke-developed index is specified in this section, such index shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Any material that is subject to an increase in flame spread index or smoke-developed index beyond the limits herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions shall not be permitted.

Exceptions:
1. Fiberboard insulation shall comply with Chapter 23.
2. Foam plastic insulation shall comply with Chapter 26.
3. Duct and pipe insulation and duct and pipe coverings and linings in plenums shall comply with the Mechanical Code.
4. All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2613.

720.2 Concealed installation. Insulating materials, where concealed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

720.2.1 Facings. Where such materials are installed in concealed spaces in buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the flame spread and smoke-developed limitations do not apply to facings, coverings, and layers of reflective foil insulation that are installed behind and in substantial contact with the unexposed surface of the ceiling, wall or floor finish.

Exception: All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2613.

720.3 Exposed installation. Insulating materials, where exposed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but
shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

720.3.1 Attic floors. Exposed insulation materials installed on attic floors shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.12 watt per square centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM E970.

720.4 Loose-fill insulation. Loose-fill insulation materials that cannot be mounted in the ASTM E84 or UL 723 apparatus without a screen or artificial supports shall comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed limits of Sections 720.2 and 720.3 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

Exception: Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2, provided such insulation has a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 and complies with the requirements of Section 720.6.

720.5 Roof insulation. The use of combustible roof insulation not complying with Sections 720.2 and 720.3 shall be permitted in any type of construction provided that insulation is covered with approved roof coverings directly applied thereto.

720.6 Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation. Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation shall comply with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404. Each package of such insulating material shall be clearly labeled in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404.

720.7 Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing. Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

Exception: Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing installed in plenums shall comply with the Mechanical Code.

SECTION 721 PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE

721.1 General. The provisions of this section contain prescriptive details of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies. The materials of construction listed in Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2), and 721.1(3) shall be assumed to have the fire-resistance ratings prescribed therein. Where materials that change the capacity for heat dissipation are incorporated into a fire-resistance-rated assembly, fire test results or other substantiating data shall be made available to the building official to show that the required fire-resistance-rating time period is not reduced.

721.1.1 Thickness of protective coverings. The thickness of fire-resistant materials required for protection of structural members shall be not less than set forth in Table 721.1(1), except as modified in this section. The figures shown shall be the net thickness of the protecting materials and shall not include any hollow space in back of the protection.

721.1.2 Unit masonry protection. Where required, metal ties shall be embedded in bed joints of unit masonry for protection of steel columns. Such ties shall be as set forth in Table 721.1(1) or be equivalent thereto.

721.1.3 Reinforcement for cast-in-place concrete column protection. Cast-in-place concrete protection for steel columns shall be reinforced at the edges of such members with wire ties of not less than 0.18 inch (4.6 mm) in diameter wound spirally around the columns on a pitch of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) or by equivalent reinforcement.

721.1.4 Plaster application. The finish coat is not required for plaster protective coatings where those coatings comply with the design mix and thickness requirements of Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2) and 721.1(3).

721.1.5 Bonded prestressed concrete tendons. For members having a single tendon or more than one tendon installed with equal concrete cover measured from the nearest surface, the cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1). For members having multiple tendons installed with variable concrete cover, the average tendon cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1), provided:

1. The clearance from each tendon to the nearest exposed surface is used to determine the average cover.

2. In no case can the clear cover for individual tendons be less than one-half of that set forth in Table 721.1(1). A minimum cover of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) for slabs and 1 inch (25 mm) for beams is required for any aggregate concrete.

3. For the purpose of establishing a fire-resistance rating, tendons having a clear covering less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1) shall not contribute more than 50 percent of the required ultimate moment capacity for members less than 350 square inches (0.226 m²) in cross-sectional area and 65 percent for larger members. For structural design purposes, however, tendons having a reduced cover are assumed to be fully effective.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>INSULATING MATERIAL USED</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 1-1.1 Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 6" × 6" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel).  
1-1.2 Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 8" × 8" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel).  
1-1.3 Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" × 12" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel).  
1-1.4 Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 6" × 6" or greater.  
1-1.5 Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 8" × 8" or greater.  
1-1.6 Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 12" × 12" or greater.  
1-2.1 Clay or shale brick with brick and mortar fill.  
1-3.1 4" hollow clay tile in two 2" layers; 1/4" mortar between tile and column; 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; tile fill.  
1-3.2 2" hollow clay tile; 3/4" mortar between tile and column; 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; limestone concrete fill; plastered with 3/4" gypsum plaster.  
1-3.3 2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile or 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" diameter wire in horizontal joints; limestone or trap-rock concrete fill extending 1" outside column on all sides.  
1-3.4 2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile with or without concrete fill; 3/4" mortar between tile and column.  
1-4.1 Cement plaster over metal lath wire tied to 1/8" cold-rolled vertical channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 1/2 by volume, cement to sand.  
1-5.1 Vermiculite concrete, 1:4 mix by volume over paper-faced wire fabric lath wrapped directly around column with additional 2" × 2" 0.065"/0.065" (No. 16/16 B.W. gage) wire fabric placed 3/4" from outer concrete surface. Wire fabric tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire spaced 6" on center for inner layer and 2" on center for outer layer.  
1-6.1 Perforate or vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath wrapped around column and furred 1/8" from column flanges. Sheets lapped at ends and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster pushed through to flanges.  
1-6.2 Perforate or vermiculite gypsum plaster over self-furring metal lath wrapped directly around column, lapped 1" and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire.  
1-6.3 Perforate or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath applied to 3/4" cold-rolled channels spaced 24" apart vertically and wrapped flatwise around column.  
1-6.4 Perforate or vermiculite gypsum plaster over two layers of 1/8" plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20 gage wire and tied with doubled 0.035" diameter (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2 3/4 cubic feet of aggregate for the 3-hour system.  

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(1)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS
FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>INSULATING MATERIAL USED</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours  3 hours  2 hours  1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Steel columns and all of primary trusses</td>
<td>1-6.5</td>
<td>Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over one layer of 1/8&quot; plain-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath tied with doubled 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23&quot; on center and scratch coat wrapped with 1&quot; hexagonal mesh 0.035&quot; (No. 20 B.W. gage) wire fabric. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 21/2 cubic feet of aggregate.</td>
<td>—  2  —  —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-7.1</td>
<td>Multiple layers of 1/8&quot; gypsum wallboard adhesively secured to column flanges and successive layers. Wallboard applied without horizontal joints. Corner edges of each layer staggered. Wallboard layer below outer layer secured to column with doubled 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel wire ties spaced 15&quot; on center. Exposed corners taped and treated.</td>
<td>—  —  2  1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-7.2</td>
<td>Three layers of 3/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard. First and second layer held in place by 1/8&quot; diameter by 11/2&quot; long ring shank nails with 3/8&quot; diameter heads spaced 24&quot; on center at corners. Middle layer also secured with metal straps at mid-height and 18&quot; from each end, and by metal corner bead at each corner held by the metal straps. Third layer attached to corner bead with 1&quot; long gypsum wallboard screws spaced 12&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—  —  11/8  —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-7.3</td>
<td>Three layers of 3/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard, each layer screw attached to 11/16&quot; steel studs 0.018&quot; thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) at each corner of column. Middle layer also secured with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) double-strand steel wire ties, 24&quot; on center. Screws are No. 6 by 1&quot; spaced 24&quot; on center for inner layer, No. 6 by 11/4&quot; spaced 12&quot; on center for middle layer and No. 8 by 21/4&quot; spaced 12&quot; on center for outer layer.</td>
<td>—  11/8  —  —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-8.1</td>
<td>Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum-to-sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath lapped 1&quot; and tied 6&quot; on center at all end, edges and spacers with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Lath applied over 1/4&quot; furring channel with 2&quot; legs bent around each corner. Spacers located 1&quot; from top and bottom of member and a maximum of 40&quot; on center and wire tied with a single strand of 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Corner bead tied to the lath at 6&quot; on center along each corner to provide plaster thickness.</td>
<td>—  —  11/8  —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-9.1</td>
<td>Minimum W8x35 wide flange steel column (w/d ≥ 0.75) with each web cavity filled even with the flange tip with normal weight carbonate or siliceous aggregate concrete (3,000 psi minimum compressive strength with 145 pcf ± 3 pcf unit weight). Reinforce the concrete in each web cavity with a minimum No. 4 deformed reinforcing bar installed vertically and centered in the cavity, and secured to the column web with a minimum No. 2 horizontal deformed reinforcing bar welded to the web every 18&quot; on center vertically. As an alternative to the No. 4 rebar, 3/16&quot; diameter by 3&quot; long headed studs, spaced at 12&quot; on center vertically, shall be welded on each side of the web midway between the column flanges.</td>
<td>—  —  —  See Note n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders (continued)</td>
<td>2-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel) with 3&quot; or finer metal mesh placed 1&quot; from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.</td>
<td>2  11/2  1  1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-1.2</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 2-1.1 with 3&quot; or finer metal mesh placed 1&quot; from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.</td>
<td>21/2  2  11/2  1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2.1</td>
<td>Cement plaster on metal lath attached to 3/4&quot; cold-rolled channels with 0.04&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3&quot; to 6&quot; on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 1/2 by volume, cement to sand.</td>
<td>—  —  21/2  7/8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 721.1(1)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>INSULATING MATERIAL USED</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders</td>
<td>2-3.1</td>
<td>Vermiculite gypsum plaster on a metal lath cage, wire tied to 0.165” diameter (No. 8 B.W. gage) steel wire hangers wrapped around beam and spaced 16” on center. Metal lath ties spaced approximately 5” on center at cage sides and bottom.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-4.1</td>
<td>Two layers of 7/8” Type X gypsum wallboard are attached to U-shaped brackets spaced 24” on center. 0.018” thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1 1/16” deep by 1” galvanized steel runner channels are first installed parallel to and on each side of the top beam flange to provide a 1/8” clearance to the flange. The channel runners are attached to steel deck or concrete floor construction with approved fasteners spaced 12” on center. U-shaped brackets are formed from members identical to the channel runners. At the bent portion of the U-shaped bracket, the flanges of the channel are cut out so that 1 3/8” deep corner channels can be inserted without attachment parallel to each side of the lower flange. As an alternative, 0.021” thick (No. 24 carbon sheet steel gage) 1” × 2” runner and corner angles shall be used in lieu of channels, and the web cutouts in the U-shaped brackets shall not be required. Each angle is attached to the bracket with 1/2”-long No. 8 self-drilling screws. The vertical legs of the U-shaped bracket are attached to the runners with one 1/2” long No. 8 self-drilling screw. The completed steel framing provides a 2 1/8” and 1 1/2” space between the inner layer of wallboard and the sides and bottom of the steel beam, respectively. The inner layer of wallboard is attached to the top runners and bottom corner channels or corner angles with 1 3/4”-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 16” on center. The outer layer of wallboard is applied with 1 3/4”-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 8” on center. The bottom corners are reinforced with metal corner beads.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bonded pretensioned reinforcement in prestressed concrete</td>
<td>3-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate concrete Beams or girders</td>
<td>4 #</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Solid b</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 721.1(1)—continued

**MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>INSULATING MATERIAL USED</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Bonded or unbonded post-tensioned tendons in prestressed concrete</td>
<td>4-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Unrestrained members:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-1.2</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Restrained members:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete columns, beams girders and trusses</td>
<td>5-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12&quot; or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.)</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete, members 12&quot; or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.2</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete joists</td>
<td>6-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-1.2</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Reinforcing and tie rods in floor and roof slabs</td>
<td>7-1.1</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-1.2</td>
<td>Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm², 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m³, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m³.

a. Reentrant parts of protected members to be filled solidly.

b. Two layers of equal thickness with a 1/4-inch airspace between.

c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in Table 721.1(1), gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard and the joints on the face layer are reinforced, and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/16-inch gypsum veneer plaster.

d. An approved adhesive qualified under ASTM E119 or UL 263.

e. Where lightweight or sand-lightweight concrete having an oven-dry weight of 110 pounds per cubic foot or less is used, the tabulated minimum cover shall be permitted to be reduced 25 percent, except that in no case shall the cover be less than 3/4 inch in slabs or 1 1/2 inches in beams or girders.

f. For solid slabs of siliceous aggregate concrete, increase tendon cover 20 percent.

g. Adequate provisions against spalling shall be provided by U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member with a clear cover of 1 inch.

h. Prestressed slabs shall have a thickness not less than that required in Table 721.1(3) for the respective fire-resistance time period.

i. Fire coverage and end anchorages shall be as follows: Cover to the prestressing steel at the anchor shall be 1 1/2 inch greater than that required away from the anchor. Minimum cover to steel-bearing plate shall be 1 inch in beams and 1 1/4 inch in slabs.

j. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, cover thickness shall be permitted to be determined by interpolation.

k. Interior spans of continuous slabs, beams and girders shall be permitted to be considered restrained.

l. For use with concrete slabs having a comparable fire endurance where members are framed into the structure in such a manner as to provide equivalent performance to that of monolithic concrete construction.

m. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.

n. No additional insulating material is required on the exposed outside face of the column flange to achieve a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.
### Table 721.1(2)
#### Rated Fire-Resistance Periods for Various Walls and Partitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Item Number</th>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>Minimum Finished Thickness Face-To-Face (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Brick of clay or shale</td>
<td>1-1.1</td>
<td>Solid brick of clay or shale</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-1.2</td>
<td>Hollow brick, not filled.</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-1.3</td>
<td>Hollow brick unit wall, grout or filled with perlite vermiculite or expanded shale aggregate.</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-2.1</td>
<td>4” nominal thick units not less than 75 percent solid backed with a hat-shaped metal furring channel 1/4” thick formed from 0.021” sheet metal attached to the brick wall on 24” centers with approved fasteners, and 1/2” Type X gypsum wallboard attached to the metal furring strips with 1”-long Type S screws spaced 8” on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Combination of clay brick and load-bearing hollow clay tile</td>
<td>2-1.1</td>
<td>4” solid brick and 4” tile (not less than 40 percent solid).</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-1.2</td>
<td>4” solid brick and 8” tile (not less than 40 percent solid).</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Concrete masonry units</td>
<td>3-1.1f</td>
<td>Expanded slag or pumice.</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-1.2f</td>
<td>Expanded clay, shale or slate.</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-1.3f</td>
<td>Limestone, cinders or air-cooled slag.</td>
<td>5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-1.4f</td>
<td>Calcareous or siliceous gravel.</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Solid concrete</td>
<td>4-1.1</td>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete.</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carbonate aggregate concrete.</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sand-lightweight concrete.</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lightweight concrete.</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Glazed or unglazed facing tile, nonload-bearing</td>
<td>5-1.1</td>
<td>One 2” unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4” unit cored 25 percent maximum with 1/4” mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions reversed in alternate courses.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.2</td>
<td>One 2” unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4” unit cored 40 percent maximum with 1/4” mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions side with 1/4” gypsum plaster. Two wythes tied together every fourth course with No. 22 gage corrugated metal ties.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.3</td>
<td>One unit with three cells in wall thickness, cored 29 percent maximum.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.4</td>
<td>One 2” unit cored 22 percent maximum and one 4” unit cored 41 percent maximum with 1/4” mortar-filled collar joint. Two wythes tied together every third course with 0.030” (No. 22 galvanized sheet steel gage) corrugated metal ties.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.5</td>
<td>One 4” unit cored 25 percent maximum with 1/4” gypsum plaster on one side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.6</td>
<td>One 4” unit with two cells in wall thickness, cored 22 percent maximum.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.7</td>
<td>One 4” unit cored 30 percent maximum with 1/4” vermiculite gypsum plaster on one side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-1.8</td>
<td>One 4” unit cored 39 percent maximum with 1/4” gypsum plaster on one side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE * (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Solid gypsum plaster</td>
<td>6-1.1</td>
<td>1/4&quot; by 0.055&quot; (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16&quot; on center with 2.6-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6&quot; spacing. Gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-1.2</td>
<td>3/4&quot; by 0.055&quot; (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels 16&quot; on center with metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6&quot; spacing. Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2 1/2 cubic feet of aggregate for the 1-hour system.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-1.3</td>
<td>3/4&quot; by 0.055&quot; (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16&quot; on center with 3/8&quot; gypsum lath applied to one face and attached with sheet metal clips. Gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-2.1</td>
<td>Studless with 1/2&quot; full-length plain gypsum lath and gypsum plaster each side. Plaster mixed 1:1 for scratch coat and 1:2 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-2.2</td>
<td>Studless with 1/2&quot; full-length plain gypsum lath and perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-2.3</td>
<td>Studless partition with 3/8&quot; rib metal lath installed vertically adjacent edges tied 6&quot; on center with No. 18 gage wire ties, gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Solid perlite and Portland cement</td>
<td>7-1.1</td>
<td>Perlite mixed in the ratio of 3 cubic feet to 100 pounds of Portland cement and machine applied to stud side of 1 1/2&quot; mesh by 0.058-inch (No. 17 B.W. gage) paper-backed woven wire fabric wire-tied to 4&quot;-deep steel trussed wire studs 16&quot; on center. Wire ties of 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire 6&quot; on center vertically.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Solid neat wood fibered gypsum plaster</td>
<td>8-1.1</td>
<td>3/4&quot; by 0.055-inch (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels, 12&quot; on center with 2.5-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6&quot; spacing. Neat gypsum plaster applied each side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Solid wallboard partition</td>
<td>9-1.1</td>
<td>One full-length layer 1/2&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard laminated to each side of 1&quot; full-length V-edge gypsum coreboard with approved laminating compound. Vertical joints of face layer and coreboard staggered not less than 3&quot;.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Hollow (studless) gypsum wallboard partition</td>
<td>10-1.1</td>
<td>One full-length layer of 3/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners laminated to each side of 1&quot; x 6&quot; full-length gypsum coreboard ribs spaced 2&quot; on center with approved laminating compound. Ribs centered at vertical joints of face plies and joints staggered 24&quot; in opposing faces. Ribs may be recessed 6&quot; from the top and bottom.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10-1.2</td>
<td>1&quot; regular gypsum V-edge full-length backing board attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners with nails or 1 1/4&quot; drywall screws at 24&quot; on center. Minimum width of runners 1 1/8&quot;. Face layer of 1/2&quot; regular full-length gypsum wallboard laminated to outer faces of backing board with approved laminating compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 721.1(2) —continued
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Noncombustible studs-interior partition with plaster each side</td>
<td>11-1.1</td>
<td>$3\frac{1}{4}'' \times 0.044''$ (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 24'' on center. $\frac{7}{8}''$ gypsum plaster on metal lath each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11-1.2</td>
<td>$3\frac{1}{8}'' \times 0.055''$ (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable studs spaced 24'' on center. $\frac{5}{8}''$ neat gypsum wood-fibered plaster each side over $\frac{7}{8}''$ rib metal lath nailed to studs with 6d common nails, 8'' on center. Nails driven $1\frac{1}{2}''$ and bent over.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11-1.3</td>
<td>$4'' \times 0.044''$ (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped steel studs at 16'' on center. On each side approved resilient clips pressed onto stud flange at 16'' vertical spacing, $\frac{1}{4}''$ pencil rods snapped into or wire tied onto outer loop of clips, metal lath wire-tied to pencil rods at 6'' intervals, 1'' perlite gypsum plaster, each side.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11-1.4</td>
<td>$2\frac{1}{8}'' \times 0.044''$ (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 16'' on center. Wood fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied on $\frac{7}{8}''$ pound metal lath wire tied to studs, each side. $\frac{1}{4}''$ plaster applied over each face, including finish coat.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Wood studs-interior partition with plaster each side</td>
<td>12-1.1</td>
<td>$2'' \times 4''$ wood studs 16'' on center with $\frac{7}{8}''$ gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached by 4d common nails bent over or No. 14 gage by $1\frac{1}{4}''$ by $\frac{3}{4}''$ crown width staples spaced 6'' on center. Plaster mixed 1:1/2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12-1.2</td>
<td>$2'' \times 4''$ wood studs 16'' on center with metal lath and $\frac{7}{8}''$ neat wood-fibered gypsum plaster each side. Lath attached by 6d common nails, 7'' on center. Nails driven $1\frac{1}{2}''$ and bent over.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12-1.3</td>
<td>$2'' \times 4''$ wood studs 16'' on center with $\frac{7}{8}''$ perforated or plain gypsum lath and $\frac{1}{2}''$ gypsum plaster each side. Lath nailed with $1\frac{1}{4}''$ by No. 13 gage by $\frac{3}{4}''$ head plasterboard blued nails, 4'' on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12-1.4</td>
<td>$2'' \times 4''$ wood studs 16'' on center with $\frac{1}{8}''$ Type X gypsum lath and $\frac{1}{2}''$ gypsum plaster each side. Lath nailed with $1\frac{1}{4}''$ by No. 13 gage by $\frac{3}{4}''$ head plasterboard blued nails, 5'' on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Noncombustible studs-interior partition with gypsum wallboard each side</td>
<td>13-1.1</td>
<td>$0.018''$ (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 24'' on center with one full-length layer of $\frac{7}{8}''$ Type X gypsum wallboard applied vertically attached with 1''-long No. 6 drywall screws to each stud. Screws are 8'' on center around the perimeter and 12'' on center on the intermediate stud. Where applied horizontally, the Type X gypsum wallboard shall be attached to $\frac{3}{8}''$ studs and the horizontal joints shall be staggered with those on the opposite side. Screws for the horizontal application shall be 8'' on center at vertical edges and 12'' on center at intermediate studs.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13-1.2</td>
<td>$0.018''$ (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 25'' on center with two full-length layers of $\frac{7}{8}''$ Type X gypsum wallboard applied vertically each side. First layer attached with 1''-long, No. 6 drywall screws, 8'' on center around the perimeter and 12'' on center on the intermediate stud. Second layer applied with vertical joints offset one stud space from first layer using $\frac{1}{8}''$ long, No. 6 drywall screws spaced 9'' on center along vertical joints, 12'' on center at intermediate studs and 24'' on center along top and bottom runners.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13-1.3</td>
<td>$0.055''$ (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable metal studs 24'' on center with full-length $\frac{7}{8}''$ Type X gypsum wallboard applied vertically and nailed 7'' on center with 6d cement-coated common nails. Approved metal fastener grips used with nails at vertical butt joints along studs.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**

**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACEb (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Wood studs-interior partition with gypsum wallboard each side</td>
<td>14-1.1h</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 16” on center with two layers of 1/8” regular gypsum wallboard each side, 4d cooler or wallboard nails at 8” on center first layer, 5d cooler or wallboard nails at 8” on center second layer with laminating compound between layers, joints staggered. First layer applied full length vertically, second layer applied horizontally or vertically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14-1.1</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 16” on center with two layers 1/2” regular gypsum wallboard applied vertically or horizontally each side, joints staggered. Nail base layer with 5d cooler or wallboard nails at 8” on center face layer with 8d cooler or wallboard nails at 8” on center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14-1.3</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 24” on center with 1/2” Type X gypsum wallboard applied vertically or horizontally nailed with 6d cooler or wallboard nails at 7” on center with end joints on nailing members. Stagger joints each side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14-1.1</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” × 3” fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24” on center with one layer of 5/8” Type X gypsum wallboard applied with face paper grain (long dimension) parallel to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cooler or wallboard nails at 7” on center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14-1.5</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 16” on center with two layers 5/8” Type X gypsum wallboard each side. Base layers applied vertically and nailed with 6d cooler or wallboard nails at 9” on center. Face layer applied vertically or horizontally and nailed with 8d cooler or wallboard nails at 7” on center. For nail-adhesive application, base layers are nailed 6” on center. Face layers applied with coating of approved wallboard adhesive and nailed 12” on center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14-1.6</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 3” × 3” fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24” on center with one layer of 5/8” Type X gypsum wallboard applied with face paper grain (long dimension) at right angles to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cement-coated box nails spaced 7” on center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)</td>
<td>15-1.1</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>Exterior surface with 1/4” drop siding over 1/2” gypsum sheathing on 2” × 4” wood studs at 16” on center, interior surface treatment as required for 1-hour-rated exterior or interior 2” × 4” wood stud partitions. Gypsum sheathing nailed with 1/2” by No. 11 gage by 7/16” head galvanized nails at 8” on center. Siding nailed with 7d galvanized smooth box nails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15-1.2</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 16” on center with metal lath and 1/2” cement plaster on each side. Lath attached with 6d common nails 7” on center driven to 1” minimum penetration and bent over. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15-1.3</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>2” × 4” wood studs 16” on center with 1/8” cement plaster (measured from the face of studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treatment as required for interior wood stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15-1.4</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>3/8” No. 16 gage noncombustible studs 16” on center with 1/8” cement plaster (measured from the face of the studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treatment as required for interior, nonbearing, noncombustible stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 721.1(2)—continued

#### RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS a, o, p

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15-1.5m</td>
<td>2(\frac{1}{4})&quot; × 3(\frac{1}{4})&quot; clay face brick with cored holes over (\frac{1}{2})&quot; gypsum sheathing on exterior surface of 2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; on center and two layers (\frac{1}{8})&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard on interior surface. Sheathing placed horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs nailed 6&quot; on center with 1(\frac{1}{4})&quot; × No. 11 gage by (\frac{7}{8})&quot; head galvanized nails. Inner layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8&quot; on center with 6d cooler or wallboard nails. Outer layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8&quot; on center with 8d cooler or wallboard nails. Joints staggered with vertical joints over studs. Outer layer joints taped and finished with compound. Nail heads covered with joint compound. 0.035 inch (No. 20 galvanized sheet gage) corrugated galvanized steel wall ties (\frac{3}{4})&quot; by 6(\frac{1}{8})&quot; attached to each stud with two 8d coolers or wallboard nails every sixth course of bricks.</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-1.6lm</td>
<td>2&quot; × 6&quot; fire-retardant-treated wood studs 16&quot; on center. Interior face has two layers of (\frac{1}{2})&quot; Type X gypsum with the base layer placed vertically and attached with 6d box nails 12&quot; on center. The face layer is placed horizontally and attached with 8d box nails 8&quot; on center at joints and 12&quot; on center elsewhere. The exterior face has a base layer of (\frac{1}{4})&quot; Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8&quot; on center at joints and 12&quot; on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by self-furred exterior lath attached with 2(\frac{1}{2})&quot; No. 12 gage galvanized roofing nails with a (\frac{3}{8})&quot; diameter head and spaced 6&quot; on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a (\frac{1}{2})&quot; brown coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-1.7lm</td>
<td>2&quot; × 6&quot; wood studs 16&quot; on center. The exterior face has a layer of (\frac{1}{6})&quot; Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8&quot; on center at joints and 12&quot; on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by 1&quot; by No. 18 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by 2(\frac{1}{2})&quot; long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6&quot; on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a (\frac{1}{2})&quot; scratch coat, a bonding agent and a (\frac{1}{2})&quot; brown coat and a finish coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat. The exterior is covered with (\frac{3}{8})&quot; gypsum lath with 1&quot; hexagonal mesh of 0.035 inch (No. 20 B.W. gage) woven wire lath furred out (\frac{3}{8})&quot; and 1&quot; perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with 1(\frac{1}{2})&quot; head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5&quot; on center. Mesh attached by 1(\frac{1}{2})&quot; No. 12 gage by (\frac{1}{4})&quot; head nails with (\frac{3}{8})&quot; furrings, spaced 8&quot; on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2(\frac{1}{2}) cubic feet of aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 721.1(2)—continued

**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL ITEM</th>
<th>MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACEb (inches)</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 15-1.8li  | — — 8
t/8  | 2" × 6" wood studs 16" on center. The exterior face has a layer of 3/8" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by 11/2" by No. 17 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by 21/2" long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a 1/4" scratch coat, and a 3/8" brown coat is then applied. The plaster may be placed by machine. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:5 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The interior is covered with 3/8" gypsum lath with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20 gage woven wire lath furred out 3/16" and 1" perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with 11/2" by No. 13 gage by 3/4" head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5" on center. Mesh attached by 11/2" by No. 12 gage by 3/4" head nails with 3/8" furrings, spaced 8" on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 21/2 cubic feet of aggregate. |
| 15-1.9  | — — 61/2  | 4" No. 18 gage, nonload-bearing metal studs, 16" on center, with 1" Portland cement lime plaster (measured from the back side of the 3/4-pound expanded metal lath) on the exterior surface. Interior surface to be covered with 1" of gypsum plaster on 3/4-pound expanded metal lath proportioned by weight-1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown, gypsum to sand. Lath on one side of the partition fastened to 1/2" diameter pencil rods supported by No. 20 gage metal clips, located 16" on center vertically, on each stud. 3" thick mineral fiber insulating batts friction fitted between the studs. |
| 15-1.10  | — — 61/2  | Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, with 3/8" Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two 1/2"-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with 3/8" thick GFRC bonding pads that extend 21/2" beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have two layers of 3/8" Type X gypsum wallboard. The first layer of wallboard to be attached with 1"-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 24" on center and the second layer is attached with 3/8"-long Type S screws spaced at 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has 3/8" returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior. |
| 15-1.11  | — — 61/2  | Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, respectively, with 3/8" Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two 1/2"-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with 3/8"-thick GFRC bonding pads that extend 21/2" beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have one layer of 3/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, attached with 11/4"-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has 3/8" returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior. |
| 15-1.12s  | — — 61/4  | 2" × 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 3/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4" wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 21/4" Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. Cavity to be filled with 51/2" mineral wool insulation. |
### Table 721.1(2)—continued

#### Rated Fire-Resistance Periods for Various Walls and Partitions \(^a, o, p\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>4 hours</th>
<th>3 hours</th>
<th>2 hours</th>
<th>1 hour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15-1.13^q</td>
<td>2&quot; × 6&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied vertically with all joints over framing or blocking and fastened with 2 1/4&quot; Type S drywall screws, spaced 12&quot; on center. R-19 mineral fiber insulation installed in stud cavity.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6 1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-1.14^q</td>
<td>2&quot; × 6&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2 1/4&quot; Type S drywall screws, spaced 7&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6 1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-1.15^q</td>
<td>2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with 5/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard and sheathing, respectively, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2 1/4&quot; Type S drywall screws, spaced 12&quot; on center. Cavity to be filled with 3 1/2&quot; mineral wool insulation.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>4 1/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-2.1^d</td>
<td>3 1/8&quot; No. 16 gage steel studs at 24&quot; on center or 2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 24&quot; on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 6&quot; on center and covered with minimum 3/4&quot; thick Portland cement plaster. Thin veneer brick units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in running bond in accordance with Section 1405.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than 1 1/4&quot;. Interior side covered with one layer of 5/8&quot; thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 12&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-2.2^d</td>
<td>3 1/8&quot; No. 16 gage steel studs at 24&quot; on center or 2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 24&quot; on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 6&quot; on center and covered with minimum 3/4&quot; thick Portland cement plaster. Thin veneer brick units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in running bond in accordance with Section 1405.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than 2&quot;. Interior side covered with two layers of 5/8&quot; thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 24&quot; on center. Top layer attached to studs with 1 1/8&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 12&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6 1/4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-2.3^d</td>
<td>3 1/8&quot; No. 16 gage steel studs at 16&quot; on center or 2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 6&quot; on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than 2 1/8&quot; thick complying with ASTM C216 installed in accordance with Section 1405.6 with a minimum 1&quot; airspace. Interior side covered with one layer of 5/8&quot; thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 12&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>7 1/4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(2)—continued
RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS \(^a, b, p\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE(^a) (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Exterior or interior walls</td>
<td>15-2.4(^d)</td>
<td>35/8&quot; No. 16 gage steel studs at 16&quot; on center or 2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 6&quot; on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than 25/8&quot; thick complying with ASTM C216 installed in accordance with Section 1405.6 with a minimum 1&quot; airspace. Interior side covered with two layers of 5/8&quot; thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 24&quot; on center. Top layer attached to studs with 15/8&quot; long No. 6 drywall screws at 12&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Exterior walls rated for fire resistance from the inside only in accordance with Section 705.5.</td>
<td>16-1.1(^q)</td>
<td>2&quot; × 4&quot; wood studs at 16&quot; centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior side covered with 5/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard, 4&quot; wide, applied horizontally unblocked, and fastened with 25/8&quot; Type S drywall screws, spaced 12&quot; on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener heads covered with joint compound. Exterior covered with 35/8&quot; wood structural panels, applied vertically, horizontal joints blocked and fastened with 5d common nails (bright) — 12&quot; on center in the field, and 6&quot; on center panel edges. Cavity to be filled with 3 1/2&quot; mineral wool insulation. Rating established for exposure from interior side only.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm\(^2\), 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m\(^3\).

a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.

b. Thickness shown for brick and clay tile is nominal thicknesses unless plastered, in which case thicknesses are net. Thickness shown for concrete masonry and clay masonry is equivalent thickness defined in Section 722.3.1 for concrete masonry and Section 722.4.1.1 for clay masonry. Where all cells are solid grouted or filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, the equivalent thickness shall be the thickness of the block or brick using specified dimensions as defined in Chapter 21. Equivalent thickness shall include the thickness of applied plaster and lath or gypsum wallboard, where specified.

c. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

d. Shall be used for nonbearing purposes only.

e. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/8-inch gypsum veneer plaster.

f. The fire-resistance time period for concrete masonry units meeting the equivalent thicknesses required for a 2-hour fire-resistance rating in Item 3, and having a thickness of not less than 75/8 inches is 4 hours where cores that are not grouted are filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, sand or slag having a maximum particle size of 3/8 inch.

g. The fire-resistance rating of concrete masonry units composed of a combination of aggregate types or where plaster is applied directly to the concrete masonry shall be determined in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. Lightweight aggregates shall have a maximum combined density of 65 pounds per cubic foot.

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(2)—continued

RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS a, b

h. See Note b. The equivalent thickness shall be permitted to include the thickness of cement plaster or 1.5 times the thickness of gypsum plaster applied in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 25.
i. Concrete walls shall be reinforced with horizontal and vertical temperature reinforcement as required by Chapter 19.
j. Studs are welded truss wire studs with 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) flange wire and 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) truss wires.
k. Nailable metal studs consist of two channel studs spot welded back to back with a crimped web forming a nailing groove.
l. Wood structural panels shall be permitted to be installed between the fire protection and the wood studs on either the interior or exterior side of the wood frame assemblies in this table, provided the length of the fasteners used to attach the fire protection is increased by an amount not less than the thickness of the wood structural panel.
m. For studs with a slenderness ratio, \( \frac{l}{d} \), greater than 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of allowable \( F'c \). For studs with a slenderness ratio, \( \frac{l}{d} \), not exceeding 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of the adjusted stress \( F'c \), calculated for studs having a slenderness ratio \( \frac{l}{d} \) of 33.

n. For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C514, ASTM C547 or ASTM F1667.
o. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.
p. NCMA TEK 5-8A shall be permitted for the design of fire walls.
q. The design stress of studs shall be equal to a maximum of 100 percent of the allowable \( F'c \) calculated in accordance with Section 2306.

TABLE 721.1(3)

MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS a, q

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
<td>1-1.1</td>
<td>Slab (no ceiling required). Minimum cover over nonpre-stressed reinforcement shall be not less than ( \frac{3}{4} ) in. b</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Carbonate aggregate concrete</td>
<td>2-1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sand-lightweight concrete</td>
<td>3-1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lightweight concrete</td>
<td>4-1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Reinforced concrete</td>
<td>5-1.1</td>
<td>Slab with suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath attached to ( \frac{3}{8} ) in. cold-rolled channels spaced 12&quot; on center. Ceiling located 6&quot; minimum below joists.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-2.1</td>
<td>( \frac{3}{8} ) in. Type X gypsum wallboard attached to 0.018 inch (No. 25 carbon steel sheet gage) by ( \frac{1}{4} ) in. deep by ( \frac{2}{3} ) in. hat-shaped galvanized steel channels with 1&quot;-long No. 6 screws. The channels are spaced 24&quot; on center, span 35&quot; and are supported along their length at 35&quot; intervals by 0.033&quot; (No. 21 galvanized sheet gage) galvanized steel flat strap hangers having formed edges that engage the lips of the channel. The strap hangers are attached to the side of the concrete joists with ( \frac{3}{8} ) in. by ( \frac{1}{2} ) in. long power-driven fasteners. The wallboard is installed with the long dimension perpendicular to the channels. End joints occur on channels and supplementary channels are installed parallel to the main channels, 12&quot; each side, at end joint occurrences. The finished ceiling is located approximately 12&quot; below the soffit of the floor slab.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Steel joists constructed with a poured reinforced concrete slab on metal lath forms or steel form units&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6-1.1</td>
<td>Gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom cord with single No. 16 gage or doubled No. 18 gage wire ties spaced 6&quot; on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 2-hour system. For 3-hour system plaster is neat.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-2.1</td>
<td>Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom chord with single No. 16 gage or doubled 0.049-inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties 6&quot; on center.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-3.1</td>
<td>Cement plaster over metal lath attached to the bottom chord of joists with single No. 16 gage or doubled 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6&quot; on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat for 1-hour system and 1:1 for scratch coat, 1:1 1/2 for brown coat for 2-hour system, by weight, cement to sand.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-4.1</td>
<td>Ceiling of 5/8&quot; Type X wallboard&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt; attached to 5/8&quot; deep by 2&lt;sup&gt;1/8&lt;/sup&gt;&quot; by 0.021 inch (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) hat-shaped furring channels 12&quot; on center with 1&quot; long No. 6 wallboard screws at 8&quot; on center. Channels wire tied to bottom chord of joists with doubled 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire or suspended below joists on wire hangers.&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-5.1</td>
<td>Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath tied 6&quot; on center to 13&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;1/2&quot; channels spaced 13&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;1/2&quot; on center. Channels secured to joists at each intersection with two strands of 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) galvanized wire.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Reinforced concrete slabs and joists with hollow clay tile fillers laid end to end in rows 2&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;1/2&quot; or more apart; reinforcement placed between rows and concrete cast around and over tile.</td>
<td>7-1.1</td>
<td>5/8&quot; gypsum plaster on bottom of floor or roof construction.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-1.2</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Steel joists constructed with a reinforced concrete slab on top poured on a 1/2&quot; deep steel deck.&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8-1.1</td>
<td>Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to 1/4&quot; cold-rolled channels with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6&quot; on center.</td>
<td>2&lt;sup&gt;1/2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 3&quot; deep cellular steel deck with concrete slab on top. Slab thickness measured to top.</td>
<td>9-1.1</td>
<td>Suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster base coat and vermiculite acoustical plaster on metal lath attached at 6&quot; intervals to 3/4&quot; cold-rolled channels spaced 12&quot; on center and secured to 1 1/2&quot; cold-rolled channels spaced 36&quot; on center with 0.065&quot; (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire. 1 1/2&quot; channels supported by No. 8 gage wire hangers at 36&quot; on center. Beams within envelope and with a 2 1/2&quot; airspace between beam soffit and lath have a 4-hour rating.</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. 1 1/2&quot;-deep steel roof deck on steel framing. Insulation board, 30 pcf density, composed of wood fibers with cement binders of thickness shown bonded to deck with unified asphalt adhesive. Covered with a Class A or B roof covering.</td>
<td>10-1.1</td>
<td>Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to 3/4&quot; furring channels with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6&quot; on center. 3/4&quot; channel saddle tied to 2&quot; channels with doubled 0.065&quot; (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2&quot; channels spaced 36&quot; on center suspended 2&quot; below steel framing and saddle-tied with 0.165&quot; (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 7/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. 1 1/2&quot;-deep steel roof deck on steel-framing wood fiber insulation board, 17.5 pcf density on top applied over a 15-lb asphalt-saturated felt. Class A or B roof covering.</td>
<td>11-1.1</td>
<td>Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to 3/4&quot; furring channels with 0.049&quot; (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6&quot; on center. 3/4&quot; channels saddle tied to 2&quot; channels with doubled 0.065&quot; (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2&quot; channels spaced 36&quot; on center suspended 2&quot; below steel framing and saddle tied with 0.165&quot; (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 1-hour system. For 2-hour system, plaster mix is 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.  1 1/2&quot; deep steel roof deck on steel-framing insulation of rigid board consisting of expanded perlite and fibers impregnated with integral asphalt waterproofing; density 9 to 12pcf secured to metal roof deck by 1/2&quot; wide ribbons of waterproof, cold-process liquid adhesive spaced 6&quot; apart. Steel joist or light steel construction with metal roof deck, insulation, and Class A or B built-up roof covering.</td>
<td>12-1.1</td>
<td>Gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath wire tied at 6&quot; intervals to 1/4&quot; furring channels spaced 12&quot; on center and wire tied to 2&quot; runner channels spaced 32&quot; on center. Runners wire tied to bottom chord of steel joists.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Double wood floor over wood joists spaced 16&quot; on center.</td>
<td>13-1.1</td>
<td>Gypsum plaster over 3/8&quot; Type X gypsum lath. Lath initially applied with not less than four 1 1/2&quot; by No. 13 gage by 5/64&quot; head plasterboard blued nails per bearing. Continuous stripping over lath along all joist lines. Stripping consists of 3&quot; wide strips of metal lath attached by 1 1/2&quot; by No. 11 gage by 1/2&quot; head roofing nails spaced 6&quot; on center. Alternate stripping consists of 3&quot; wide 0.049&quot; diameter wire stripping weighing 1 pound per square yard and attached by No.16 gage by 1/2&quot; by 3/4&quot; crown width staples, spaced 4&quot; on center. Where alternate stripping is used, the lath nailing shall consist of two nails at each end and one nail at each intermediate bearing. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-1.2</td>
<td>Cement or gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath fastened with 1 1/2&quot; by No. 11 gage by 7/16&quot; head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5&quot; on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, cement to sand aggregate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-1.3</td>
<td>Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath secured to joists with 1 1/2&quot; by No. 11 gage by 7/16&quot; head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5&quot; on center.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-1.4</td>
<td>5/8&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard nailed to joists with 5d cooler or wallboard nails at 6&quot; on center. End joints of wallboard centered on joists.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(3) —continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14. Plywood stressed skin panels consisting of 3/8&quot;-thick interior C-D (exterior glue) top stressed skin on 2&quot; × 6&quot; nominal (minimum) stringers. Adjacent panel edges joined with 8d common wire nails spaced 6&quot; on center. Stringers spaced 12&quot; maximum on center.</td>
<td>14-1.1</td>
<td>3/4&quot;-thick wood fiberboard weighing 15 to 18 pounds per cubic foot installed with long dimension parallel to stringers or 3/8&quot; C-D (exterior glue) plywood glued and/or nailed to stringers. Nailing to be with 5d cooler or wallboard nails at 12&quot; on center. Second layer of 1/2&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard applied with long dimension perpendicular to joists and attached with 8d cooler or wallboard nails at 6&quot; on center at end joints and 8&quot; on center elsewhere. Wallboard joints staggered with respect to fiberboard joints.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Vermiculite concrete slab proportioned 1:4 (Portland cement to vermiculite aggregate) on a 1 1/2&quot;-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10&quot; where deck is less than 0.019 inch (No. 26 carbon steel sheet gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 4&quot; × 8&quot; 0.109/0.083&quot; (No. 12/14 B.W. gage) welded wire mesh.</td>
<td>15-1.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a 1 1/2&quot;-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Slab reinforced with 4&quot; × 8&quot; 0.109/0.083&quot; (No. 12/14 B.W. gage) welded wire mesh.</td>
<td>16-1.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a $\frac{3}{16}''$-deep steel deck supported by steel joists 4' on center. Class A or B roof covering on top.</td>
<td>17-1.1</td>
<td>Perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath wire tied to $\frac{3}{4}''$ furring channels attached with 0.065&quot; (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties to lower chord of joists.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2(p)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on 1$\frac{1}{4}''$-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10&quot; where deck is less than 0.019&quot; (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) and 8'-0&quot; where deck is 0.019&quot; (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 0.042&quot; (No. 19 B.W. gage) hexagonal wire mesh. Class A or B roof covering on top.</td>
<td>18-1.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2(1/4)p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Floor and beam construction consisting of 3''-deep cellular steel floor unit mounted on steel members with 1:4 (proportion of Portland cement to perlite aggregate) perlite-concrete floor slab on top.</td>
<td>19-1.1</td>
<td>Suspended envelope ceiling of perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}''$ cold-rolled channels, secured to 1$\frac{1}{2}''$ cold-rolled channels spaced 42&quot; on center supported by 0.203 inch (No. 6 B.W. gage) wire 36&quot; on center. Beams in envelope with 3'' minimum airspace between beam soffit and lath have a 4-hour rating.</td>
<td>2(p)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
#### MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Perlite concrete proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) poured to (\frac{1}{8})&quot; thickness above top of corrugations of (\frac{1}{16})&quot;-deep galvanized steel deck maximum span 8'-0&quot; for 0.024&quot; (No. 24 galvanized sheet gage) or 6'-0&quot; for 0.019&quot; (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) with deck supported by individually protected steel framing. Approved polystyrene foam plastic insulation board having a flame spread not exceeding 75 (1&quot; to 4&quot; thickness) with vent holes that approximate 3 percent of the board surface area placed on top of perlite slurry. A 2' by 4' insulation board contains six (2\frac{3}{4})&quot; diameter holes. Board covered with (2\frac{3}{4})&quot; minimum perlite concrete slab. Slab reinforced with mesh consisting of 0.042&quot; (No. 19 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire twisted together to form 2&quot; hexagons with straight 0.065&quot; (No. 16 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire woven into mesh and spaced 3&quot;. Alternate slab reinforcement shall be permitted to consist of 4&quot; × 8&quot;, 0.109/0.238&quot; (No. 12/4 B.W. gage), or 2&quot; × 2&quot;, 0.083/0.083&quot; (No. 14/14 B.W. gage) welded wire fabric. Class A or B roof covering on top.</td>
<td>20-1.1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Wood joists, wood I-joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24&quot; o.c. with (\frac{1}{2})&quot; wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with 8d nails. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nominal (\frac{1}{2})&quot; nor less than required by Chapter 23.</td>
<td>21-1.1</td>
<td>Base layer (\frac{1}{4})&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard applied at right angles to joist or truss 24&quot; o.c. with (\frac{1}{4})&quot; Type S or Type W drywall screws 24&quot; o.c. Face layer (\frac{1}{8})&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard or veneer base applied at right angles to joist or truss through base layer with (\frac{1}{8})&quot; Type S or Type W drywall screws 12&quot; o.c. at joints and intermediate joist or truss. Face layer Type G drywall screws placed 2&quot; back on either side of face layer end joints, 12&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Steel joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24&quot; o.c. with 1/2&quot; wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with No. 8 screws. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nominal 1/2&quot; nor less than required by Chapter 23.</td>
<td>22-1.1</td>
<td>Base layer 1/8&quot; Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing 24&quot; on center with 1&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 24&quot; on center. Face layer 1/8&quot; Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing attached through base layer with 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws 12&quot; on center at end joints and intermediate joints and 1/2&quot; Type G drywall screws 12 inches on center placed 2&quot; back on either side of face layer end joints. Joints of the face layer are offset 24&quot; from the joints of the base layer.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Wood I-joist (minimum joist depth 9 1/4&quot; with a minimum flange depth of 1 1/16&quot; and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches) at 24&quot; o.c. spacing with a minimum 1 x 4 (1/2&quot; x 3.5&quot; actual) ledger strip applied parallel to and covering the bottom of the bottom flange of each member, tacked in place. 2&quot; mineral wool insulation, 3.5 pcf (nominal) installed adjacent to the bottom flange of the I-joist and supported by the 1 x 4 ledger strip.</td>
<td>23-1.1</td>
<td>1/2&quot; deep single leg resilient channel 16&quot; on center (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the furring strip and joist and attached to each joist by 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws. 1/8&quot; Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered not less than 4' and fastened with 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 7&quot; on center. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9 1/4&quot; with a minimum flange depth of 1 1/2&quot; and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of 1/8&quot;) @ 24&quot; o.c., 1 1/2&quot; mineral wool insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on hat-shaped furring channels.</td>
<td>24-1.1</td>
<td>Minimum 0.026&quot; thick hat-shaped channel 16&quot; o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws. 1/8&quot; Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. in the field and 8&quot; o.c. at the wallboard ends. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9 1/4&quot; with a minimum flange depth of 1 1/2&quot; and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of 1/8&quot;) @ 24&quot; o.c., 1 1/2&quot; mineral wool insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on resilient channels.</td>
<td>25-1.1</td>
<td>Minimum 0.019&quot; thick resilient channel 16&quot; o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by 1/8&quot; Type S drywall screws. 1/8&quot; Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with 1&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. in the field and 8&quot; o.c. at the wallboard ends. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9½&quot; with a minimum flange thickness of 1½&quot; and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of 3/8&quot;) @ 24&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>26-1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Two layers of 1/2&quot; Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1/2&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 2&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. in the field and 8&quot; o.c. on the edges. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24&quot; from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with 1½&quot; Type G drywall screws spaced 8&quot; o.c. placed 6&quot; from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 27. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9½" with a minimum flange depth of 1¾", and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 1.95 square inches; minimum web thickness of 3/8") @ 24" o.c. | 27-1.1      | Minimum 0.019" thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by 1½" Type S drywall screws. Two layers of 1/2" Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1½" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 1½" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with 1½" Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound. | —       | —       | —       | Varies | —       | —       | 1       |

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(3)—continued
MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS\(^a, b\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9(\frac{1}{4})&quot; with a minimum flange depth of 1(\frac{1}{2})&quot; and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of (\frac{3}{4})&quot;) @ 24&quot; o.c. Unfaced fiberglass insulation or mineral wool insulation is installed between the I-joists supported on the upper surface of the flange by stay wires spaced 12&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>28-1.1</td>
<td>Base layer of (\frac{7}{8})&quot; Type C gypsum wallboard attached directly to I-joists with (\frac{7}{8})&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. with ends staggered. Minimum 0.0179&quot; thick hat-shaped (\frac{3}{16})-inch furring channel 16&quot; o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by (\frac{1}{2})&quot; Type S drywall screws after the base layer of gypsum wallboard has been applied. The middle and face layers of (\frac{3}{8})&quot; Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered. The middle layer is fastened with 1&quot; Type S drywall screws spaced 12&quot; o.c. The face layer is applied parallel to the middle layer but with the edge joints offset 24&quot; from those of the middle layer and fastened with (\frac{1}{2})&quot; Type S drywall screws 8&quot; o.c. The joints shall be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 29. Channel-shaped 18 gage steel joists (minimum depth 8") spaced a maximum 24" o.c. supporting tongue-and-groove wood structural panels (nominal minimum \(\frac{7}{8}\)" thick) applied perpendicular to framing members. Structural panels attached with \(\frac{3}{8}\)" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. | 29-1.1 | Base layer \(\frac{5}{8}\)" Type X gypsum board applied perpendicular to bottom of framing members with \(\frac{1}{2}\)" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Second layer \(\frac{5}{8}\)" Type X gypsum board attached perpendicular to framing members with \(\frac{1}{2}\)" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Second layer joints offset 24" from base layer. Third layer \(\frac{5}{8}\)" Type X gypsum board attached perpendicular to framing members with 2\(\frac{1}{8}\)" Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Third layer joints offset 12" from second layer joints. Hat-shaped \(\frac{7}{16}\)-inch rigid furring channels applied at right angles to framing members over third layer with two 2\(\frac{1}{8}\)" Type S-12 screws at each framing member. Face layer \(\frac{7}{8}\)" Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to furring channels with \(\frac{1}{2}\)" Type S screws spaced 12" o.c. | — | Varies | — | — | 3\(\frac{1}{8}\) |

(continued)
TABLE 721.1(3)—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>ITEM NUMBER</th>
<th>CEILING CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum 0.019” thick resilient channel 16” o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joists and attached to each joist by 1/4” Type S drywall screws. Two layers of 1/4” Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1/4” Type S drywall screws spaced 12” o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 1/4” Type S drywall screws spaced 12” o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24” from base layer joints. Face layer to be attached to base layer with 1/4” Type G drywall screws spaced 8” o.c. placed 6” from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth 9 1/2” with a minimum flange depth of 1 1/2” and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of 1/8”) @ 24” o.c. Fiberglass insulation placed between I-joists supported by the resilient channels.</td>
<td>30-1.1</td>
<td>— — — Varies — — — 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m$^3$, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.4882 kg/m.

a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.
b. Where the slab is in an unrestrained condition, minimum reinforcement cover shall be not less than 1 5/8 inches for 4 hours (siliceous aggregate only); 1 1/4 inches for 4 and 3 hours; 1 inch for 2 hours (siliceous aggregate only); and 3/4 inch for all other restrained and unrestrained conditions.
c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/16-inch gypsum veneer plaster.
d. Slab thickness over steel joists measured at the joists for metal lath form and at the top of the form for steel form units.
e. (a) The maximum allowable stress level for H-Series joists shall not exceed 22,000 psi.
   (b) The allowable stress for K-Series joists shall not exceed 26,000 psi, the nominal depth of such joist shall be not less than 10 inches and the nominal joist weight shall be not less than 5 pounds per linear foot.
f. Cement plaster with 15 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per bag of cement.
g. Gypsum wallboard ceilings attached to steel framing shall be permitted to be suspended with 1/4-inch cold-formed carrying channels spaced 48 inches on center, that are suspended with No. 8 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire (double strand) and spaced as required for direct attachment to the framing. This alternative is applicable to those steel framing assemblies recognized under Note q.
h. Six-inch hollow clay tile with 2-inch concrete slab above.
i. Four-inch hollow clay tile with 1 1/2-inch concrete slab above.
j. Thickness measured to bottom of steel form units.
k. Five-eighths inch of vermiculite gypsum plaster plus 1/2 inch of approved vermiculite acoustical plastic.
l. Furring channels spaced 12 inches on center.
m. Double wood floor shall be permitted to be either of the following:
   (a) Subfloor of 1-inch nominal boarding, a layer of asbestos paper weighing not less than 14 pounds per 100 square feet and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring; or
   (b) Subfloor of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove boarding or 1 1/2-inch wood structural panels with exterior glue and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring or 1 1/2-inch wood structural panel finish flooring or a layer of Type I Grade M-1 particleboard not less than 3/4-inch thick.

For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C514, ASTM C547 or ASTM F1667.
p. Thickness measured on top of steel deck unit.
q. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein listed.
SECTION 722
CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE

722.1 General. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire resistance of specific materials or combinations of materials is established by calculations. These procedures apply only to the information contained in this section and shall not be otherwise used. The calculated fire resistance of concrete, concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. The calculated fire resistance of steel assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 29. The calculated fire resistance of exposed wood members and wood decking shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 16 of ANSI/AWC National Design Specification for Wood Construction (NDS).

722.1.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET.
CONCRETE, CARBONATE AGGREGATE.
CONCRETE, CELLULAR.
CONCRETE, LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATE.
CONCRETE, PERLITE.
CONCRETE, SAND-LIGHTWEIGHT.
CONCRETE, SILICEOUS AGGREGATE.
CONCRETE, VERMICULITE.
GLASS FIBERBOARD.
MINERAL BOARD.

722.2 Concrete assemblies. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete assemblies are established by calculations.

722.2.1 Concrete walls. Cast-in-place and precast concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.1. Multiwythe concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.2. Joints between precast panels shall comply with Section 722.2.1.3. Concrete walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finish shall comply with Section 722.2.1.4.

722.2.1.1 Cast-in-place or precast walls. The minimum equivalent thicknesses of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.1.1. For solid walls with flat vertical surfaces, the equivalent thickness is the same as the actual thickness. The values in Table 722.2.1.1 apply to plain, reinforced or prestressed concrete walls.

722.2.1.1.1 Hollow-core precast wall panels. For hollow-core precast concrete wall panels in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, calculation of the equivalent thickness by dividing the net cross-sectional area (the gross cross section minus the area of the cores) of the panel by its width shall be permitted.

### Table 722.2.1.1

**MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS OF CAST-IN-PLACE OR PRECAST CONCRETE WALLS, LOAD-BEARING OR NONLOAD-BEARING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONCRETE TYPE</th>
<th>MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches) FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siliceous</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand-lightweight</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lightweight</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

722.2.1.1.2 Core spaces filled. Where all of the core spaces of hollow-core wall panels are filled with loose-fill material, such as expanded shale, clay or slag, or vermiculite or perlite, the fire-resistance rating of the wall is the same as that of a solid wall of the same concrete type and of the same overall thickness.

722.2.1.1.3 Tapered cross sections. The thickness of panels with tapered cross sections shall be determined at a distance 2t or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where t is the minimum thickness.

722.2.1.1.4 Ribbed or undulating surfaces. The equivalent thickness of panels with ribbed or undulating surfaces shall be determined by one of the following expressions:

For $s \geq 4t$, the thickness to be used shall be $t$
For $s \leq 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be $t_e$
For $4t > s > 2t$, the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \frac{4t}{s} - 1\left(t_e - t\right)$$

(Equation 7-3)

where:

- $s$ = Spacing of ribs or undulations.
- $t$ = Minimum thickness.
- $t_e$ = Equivalent thickness of the panel calculated as the net cross-sectional area of the panel divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed 2t.
722.2.1.2 Multiwythe walls. For walls that consist of two wythes of different types of concrete, the fire-resistance ratings shall be permitted to be determined from Table 722.2.1.2.

The fire-resistance ratings based on $R_{0.59}$ are given in Table 722.2.1.2(1).

722.2.1.2.1 Two or more wythes. The fire-resistance rating for wall panels consisting of two or more wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

$$ R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \ldots + R_n^{0.59})^{1.7} \quad \text{(Equation 7-4)} $$

where:

$R$ = The fire endurance of the assembly, minutes.

$R_1$, $R_2$, and $R_n$ = The fire endurances of the individual wythes, minutes. Values of $R_n^{0.59}$ for use in Equation 7-4 are given in Table 722.2.1.2(1).

722.2.1.2.2 Foam plastic insulation. The fire-resistance ratings of precast concrete wall panels consisting of a layer of foam plastic insulation sandwiched between two wythes of concrete shall be permitted to be determined by use of Equation 7-4. Foam plastic insulation with a total thickness of less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be disregarded. The $R_n$ value for thickness of foam plastic insulation of 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, for use in the calculation, is 5 minutes; therefore $R_n^{0.59} = 2.5$.

722.2.1.3 Joints between precast wall panels. Joints between precast concrete wall panels that are not insulated as required by this section shall be considered as openings in walls. Uninsulated joints shall be included in determining the percentage of openings permitted by Table 705.8. Where openings are not permitted or are required by this code to be protected, the provisions of this section shall be used to determine the amount of joint insulation required. Insulated joints shall not be

![Figure 722.2.1.2](image-url)

**TABLE 722.2.1.2(1)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF MATERIAL</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF INSIDE WYTHE (inches)</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Siliceous aggregate concrete</td>
<td>1(\frac{1}{2}) 2 2(\frac{1}{2}) 3 4 4(\frac{1}{2}) 5 5(\frac{1}{2}) 6 6(\frac{1}{2}) 7</td>
<td>5.3 6.5 8.1 9.5 11.3 13.0 14.9 16.9 18.8 20.7 22.8 25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate aggregate concrete</td>
<td>5.5 7.1 8.9 10.4 12.0 14.0 16.2 18.1 20.3 21.9 24.7 27.2c</td>
<td>Note c Note c Note c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand-lightweight concrete</td>
<td>6.5 8.2 10.5 12.8 15.5 18.1 20.7 23.3 26.5c</td>
<td>Note c Note c Note c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lightweight concrete</td>
<td>6.6 8.8 11.2 13.7 16.5 19.1 21.9 24.7 27.8c</td>
<td>Note c Note c Note c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulating concrete</td>
<td>9.3 13.3 16.6 18.3 23.1 26.5c</td>
<td>Note c Note c Note c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airspaced</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m³.

- **a.** Dry unit weight of 35 pcf or less and consisting of cellular, perlite or vermiculite concrete.
- **b.** The $R_n^{0.59}$ value for one 1\(\frac{1}{2}\)" to 3\(\frac{1}{2}\)" airspace is 3.3. The $R_n^{0.59}$ value for two 1\(\frac{1}{2}\)" to 3\(\frac{1}{2}\)" airspaces is 6.7.
- **c.** The fire-resistance rating for this thickness exceeds 4 hours.

**TABLE 722.2.1.2(2)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$R'$, MINUTES</th>
<th>$R^{0.59}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>11.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>16.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>21.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>25.37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **a.** Based on Equation 7-4.
considered openings for purposes of determining compliance with the allowable percentage of openings in Table 705.8.

**722.2.1.3.1 Ceramic fiber joint protection.** Figure 722.2.1.3.1 shows thicknesses of ceramic fiber blankets to be used to insulate joints between precast concrete wall panels for various panel thicknesses and for joint widths of $3/8$ inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours. For joint widths between $3/8$ inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm), the thickness of ceramic fiber blanket is allowed to be determined by direct interpolation. Other tested and labeled materials are acceptable in place of ceramic fiber blankets.

![Figure 722.2.1.3.1 Ceramic Fiber Joint Protection](image)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.2.1.4 Walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finishes.** The fire-resistance rating of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls with finishes of gypsum wallboard or plaster applied to one or both sides shall be permitted to be calculated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**TABLE 722.2.1.4(1) MULTIPLYING FACTOR FOR FINISHES ON NONFIRE-EXPOSED SIDE OF WALL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF FINISH APPLIED TO CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY WALL</th>
<th>TYPE OF AGGREGATE USED IN CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portland cement-sand plaster</td>
<td>Concrete: siliceous or carbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concrete Masonry: siliceous or carbonate; solid clay brick;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concrete masonry units of expanded shale and &lt; 20% sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum-sand plaster</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum-vermiculite or perlite plaster</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For Portland cement-sand plaster $3/4$ inch or less in thickness and applied directly to the concrete or concrete masonry on the nonfire-exposed side of the wall, the multiplying factor shall be 1.00.

**722.2.1.4.1 Nonfire-exposed side.** Where the finish of gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The thickness of the finish shall first be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by the applicable factor determined from Table 722.2.1.4(1) based on the type of aggregate in the concrete. The corrected thickness of finish shall then be added to the actual or equivalent thickness of concrete and fire-resistance rating of the concrete and finish determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1) and Figure 722.2.1.2.

**722.2.1.4.2 Fire-exposed side.** Where gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the fire-resistance rating determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1) and Figure 722.2.1.2 for the concrete alone, or to the rating determined in Section 722.2.1.4.1 for the concrete and finish on the non-fire-exposed side.

**722.2.1.4.3 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.** For a wall having no finish on one side or different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of Sections 722.2.1.4.1 and 722.2.1.4.2 shall be performed twice, assuming either side of the wall to be the fire-exposed side. The fire-resistance rating of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values.

Exception: For an exterior wall with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

**722.2.1.4.4 Minimum concrete fire-resistance rating.** Where finishes applied to one or both sides of a concrete wall contribute to the fire-resistance rating, the concrete alone shall provide not less than one-half of the total required fire-resistance rating.
Additionally, the contribution to the fire resistance of the finish on the nonfire-exposed side of a load-bearing wall shall not exceed one-half the contribution of the concrete alone.

### 722.2.2.1.4.5 Concrete finishes

Finishes on concrete walls that are assumed to contribute to the total fire-resistance rating of the wall shall comply with the installation requirements of Section 722.3.2.5.

### 722.2.2 Concrete floor and roof slabs

Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs shall comply with Section 722.2.2.1. Multicourse floors and roofs shall comply with Sections 722.2.2.2 and 722.2.2.3, respectively.

#### 722.2.2.1 Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs

The minimum thicknesses of reinforced and prestressed concrete floor or roof slabs for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.2.1.

**Exception:** Minimum thickness shall not be required for floors and ramps within open and enclosed parking garages constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

#### 722.2.2.1.1 Hollow-core prestressed slabs

For hollow-core prestressed concrete slabs in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, the equivalent thickness shall be permitted to be obtained by dividing the net cross-sectional area of the slab including grout in the joints, by its width.

#### 722.2.2.1.2 Slabs with sloping soffits

The thickness of slabs with sloping soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.2) shall be determined at a distance 2t or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where t is the minimum thickness.
**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**

722.2.2.1.3 **Slabs with ribbed soffits.** The thickness of slabs with ribbed or undulating soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.3) shall be determined by one of the following expressions, whichever is applicable:

- For \( s > 4t \), the thickness to be used shall be \( t \)
- For \( s \leq 2t \), the thickness to be used shall be \( t_e \)
- For \( 4t > s > 2t \), the thickness to be used shall be \( t + \left( \frac{4t}{s} - 1 \right) (t_e - t) \) (Equation 7-5)

where:
- \( s \) = Spacing of ribs or undulations.
- \( t \) = Minimum thickness.
- \( t_e \) = Equivalent thickness of the slab calculated as the net area of the slab divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed 2\( t \).

722.2.2.2 **Multicourse floors.** The fire-resistance ratings of floors that consist of a base slab of concrete with a topping (overlay) of a different type of concrete shall comply with Figure 722.2.2.2.

722.2.2.3 **Multicourse roofs.** The fire-resistance ratings of roofs that consist of a base slab of concrete with an insulating board and built-up roofing shall comply with Figures 722.2.2.3(1) and 722.2.2.3(2).

722.2.2.3.1 **Heat transfer.** For the transfer of heat, three-ply built-up roofing contributes 10 minutes to the fire-resistance rating. The fire-resistance rating for concrete assemblies such as those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(1) shall be increased by 10 minutes. This increase is not applicable to those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(2).

722.2.2.4 **Joints in precast slabs.** Joints between adjacent precast concrete slabs need not be considered in calculating the slab thickness provided that a concrete topping not less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick is used. Where no concrete topping is used, joints must be grouted to a depth of not less than one-third the slab thickness at the joint, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm), or the joints must be made fire resistant by other approved methods.

722.2.3 **Concrete cover over reinforcement.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover over reinforcement in concrete slabs, reinforced beams and prestressed beams shall comply with this section.
722.2.3.1 Slab cover. The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement shall comply with Table 722.2.3(1) for reinforced concrete and Table 722.2.3(2) for prestressed concrete. These tables are applicable for solid or hollow-core one-way or two-way slabs with flat undersurfaces. These tables are applicable to slabs that are either cast in place or precast. For precast prestressed concrete not covered elsewhere, the procedures contained in PCI MNL 124 shall be acceptable.

722.2.3.2 Reinforced beam cover. The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement (bottom steel) for reinforced concrete beams is shown in Table 722.2.3(3) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours.

722.2.3.3 Prestressed beam cover. The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment pre-stressing tendons (bottom steel) for restrained and unrestrained prestressed concrete beams and stemmed units shall comply with the values shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours. Values in Table 722.2.3(4) apply to beams 8 inches (203 mm) or greater in width. Values in Table 722.2.3(5) apply to beams or stems of any width, provided the cross-section area is not less than 40 square inches (25 806 mm²). In case of differences between the values determined from Table 722.2.3(4) or 722.2.3(5), it is permitted to use the smaller value. The concrete cover shall be calculated in accordance with Section 722.2.3.3.1. The minimum concrete cover for nonprestressed reinforcement in prestressed concrete beams shall comply with Section 722.2.3.2.

722.2.3.3.1 Calculating concrete cover. The concrete cover for an individual tendon is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the tendon and the fire-exposed surface of the beam, except that for ungrouted ducts, the assumed cover thickness is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the duct and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which two or more tendons are used, the cover is assumed to be the average of the minimum cover of the individual tendons. For corner tendons (tendons equal distance from the bottom and side), the minimum cover used in the calculation shall be one-half the actual value. For stemmed members with two or more prestressing tendons located along the vertical centerline of the stem, the average cover shall be the distance from the bottom of the member to the centroid of the tendons. The actual cover for any individual tendon shall be not less than one-half the smaller value shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5), or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is greater.
TABLE 722.2.3(1)
COVER THICKNESS FOR REINFORCED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restrained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unrestrained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siliceous</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand-lightweight or lightweight</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 722.2.3(2)
COVER THICKNESS FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Restrained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unrestrained</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siliceous</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand-lightweight or lightweight</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 722.2.3(3)
MINIMUM COVER FOR MAIN REINFORCING BARS OF REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS c
(APPLICABLE TO ALL TYPES OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED a</th>
<th>BEAM WIDTH (inches)</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/4</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥ 10</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of 3/4 inch is adequate for ratings of 4 hours or less.

b. For beam widths between the tabulated values, the minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.

c. The cover for an individual reinforcing bar is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the bar and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which several bars are used, the cover for corner bars used in the calculation shall be reduced to one-half of the actual value. The cover for an individual bar must be not less than one-half of the value given in Table 722.2.3(3) nor less than 3/4 inch.
TABLE 722.2.3(4)
MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS 8 INCHES OR GREATER IN WIDTH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED</th>
<th>CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE</th>
<th>BEAM WIDTH (inches)</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restained</td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>≥ 12</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>≥ 12</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unrestrained</td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>≥ 12</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of ⅛ inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.

b. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.

c. Not practical for 8-inch-wide beam but shown for purposes of interpolation.

TABLE 722.2.3(5)
MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS OF ALL WIDTHS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED</th>
<th>CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE</th>
<th>BEAM AREA a (square inches)</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restained</td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>40 ≤ A ≤ 150</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>150 &lt; A ≤ 300</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>300 &lt; A</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>150 &lt; A</td>
<td>1⅜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unrestrained</td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>40 ≤ A ≤ 150</td>
<td>2⅛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbonate or siliceous</td>
<td>150 &lt; A ≤ 300</td>
<td>2⅛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>300 &lt; A</td>
<td>2⅛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sand lightweight</td>
<td>150 &lt; A</td>
<td>2⅛</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of ⅛ inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.

b. The cross-sectional area of a stem is permitted to include a portion of the area in the flange, provided the width of the flange used in the calculation does not exceed three times the average width of the stem.

c. U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member and having a minimum cover of 1 inch shall be provided.

722.2.4 Concrete columns. Concrete columns shall comply with this section.

722.2.4.1 Minimum size. The minimum overall dimensions of reinforced concrete columns for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours for exposure to fire on all sides shall comply with this section.

722.2.4.1.1 Concrete strength less than or equal to 12,000 psi. For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, f’c, of less than or equal to 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), the minimum dimension shall comply with Table 722.2.4.
722.2.4.1.2 Concrete strength greater than 12,000 psi. For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, $f'_{c}$, greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), the fire-resistance rating of the column shall be determined as follows:

$$T_{eq} = T_{c} + T_{nf}$$

(Equation 7-6)

722.2.4.2 Minimum cover for R/C columns. The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the main longitudinal reinforcement in columns, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete and the specified compressive strength of concrete, $f'_{c}$, shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) times the number of hours of required fire resistance or 2 inches (51 mm), whichever is less.

722.2.4.3 Tie and spiral reinforcement. For concrete columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength, $f'_{c}$, greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), tie and spiral reinforcement shall comply with the following:

1. The free ends of rectangular ties shall terminate with a 135-degree (2.4 rad) standard tie hook.
2. The free ends of circular ties shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.
3. The free ends of spirals, including at lap splices, shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.

The hook extension at the free end of ties and spirals shall be the larger of six bar diameters and the extension required by Section 7.1.3 of ACI 318. Hooks shall project into the core of the column.

722.2.4.4 Columns built into walls. The minimum dimensions of Table 722.2.4 do not apply to a reinforced concrete column that is built into a concrete or masonry wall provided all of the following are met:

1. The fire-resistance rating for the wall is equal to or greater than the required rating of the column;
2. The main longitudinal reinforcing in the column has cover not less than that required by Section 722.2.4.2; and
3. Openings in the wall are protected in accordance with Table 716.5.

Where openings in the wall are not protected as required by Section 716.5, the minimum dimension of columns required to have a fire-resistance rating of 3 hours or less shall be 8 inches (203 mm), and 10 inches (254 mm) for columns required to have a fire-resistance rating of 4 hours, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete.

722.2.4.5 Precast cover units for steel columns. See Section 722.5.1.4.

722.3 Concrete masonry. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete masonry are established by calculations.

722.3.1 Equivalent thickness. The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry construction shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of this section.

722.3.1.1 Concrete masonry unit plus finishes. The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry assemblies, $T_{eq}$, shall be computed as the sum of the equivalent thickness of the concrete masonry unit, $T_{c}$, as determined by Section 722.3.1.2, 722.3.1.3 or 722.3.1.4, plus the equivalent thickness of finishes, $T_{nf}$, determined in accordance with Section 722.3.2:

$$T_{eq} = T_{c} + T_{nf}$$

722.3.1.2 Unglazed or partially glazed construction. $T_{c}$ shall be the value obtained for the concrete masonry unit determined in accordance with ASTM C140.

722.3.1.3 Solid glazed construction. The equivalent thickness, $T_{c}$, of solid glazed concrete masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit.

722.3.1.4 Airspaces and cells filled with loose-fill material. The equivalent thickness of completely filled hollow concrete masonry is the actual thickness of the unit where loose-fill materials are: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders that comply with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

722.3.2 Concrete masonry walls. The fire-resistance rating of walls and partitions constructed of concrete masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.3.2. The rating shall be based on the equivalent thickness of the masonry and type of aggregate used.

722.3.2.1 Finish on nonfire-exposed side. Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The thickness of gypsum wallboard or plaster shall be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by applicable factor determined from Table 722.2.1.4(1). This corrected thickness of finish shall be added to the equivalent thickness of masonry and the fire-resistance rating of the masonry and finish determined from Table 722.3.2.

722.3.2.2 Finish on fire-exposed side. Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the fire-resistance rating determined in Section 722.3.2 for the masonry alone, or in Section 722.3.2.1 for the masonry and finish on the nonfire-exposed side.

722.3.2.3 Non symmetrical assemblies. For a wall having no finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice,
722.3.2 Minimum equivalent thickness corresponding to the hourly fire-resistance rating of masonry walls. Where combustible members are framed into the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown in the table.

722.3.3 Multiwythe masonry walls. The fire-resistance rating of wall assemblies constructed of multiple wythes of masonry materials shall be permitted to be based on the fire-resistance rating period of each wythe and the continuous airspace between each wythe in accordance with the following formula:

$$ R_A = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \ldots + R_n^{0.59} + A_1 + A_2 + \ldots + A_n)^{1/7} $$

(Equation 7-7)

where:

- $R_A$ = Fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).
- $R_1, R_2, \ldots, R_n$ = Fire-resistance rating of wythes for 1, 2, \ldots, n (hours), respectively.
- $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n = 0.30$, factor for each continuous airspace for 1, 2, \ldots,n, respectively, having a depth of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or more between wythes.

722.3.4 Concrete masonry lintels. Fire-resistance ratings for concrete masonry lintels shall be determined based upon the nominal thickness of the lintel and the minimum thickness of concrete masonry or concrete, or any combination thereof, covering the main reinforcing bars, as determined in accordance with Table 722.3.4, or by approved alternate methods.

722.3.5 Concrete masonry columns. The fire-resistance rating of concrete masonry columns shall be determined based upon the least plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.3.5 or by approved alternate methods.

722.4 Clay brick and tile masonry. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of clay brick and tile masonry are established by calculations.

722.4.1 Masonry walls. The fire-resistance rating of masonry walls shall be based upon the equivalent thickness as calculated in accordance with this section. The calculation shall take into account finishes applied to the wall and airspaces between wythes in multiwythe construction.

---

### TABLE 722.3.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF AGGREGATE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pumice or expanded slag</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded shale, clay or slate</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limestone, cinders or unexpanded slag</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcareous or siliceous gravel</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. Values between those shown in the table can be determined by direct interpolation.
- b. Where combustible members are framed into the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown in the table.
- c. Requirements of ASTM C55, ASTM C73, ASTM C90 or ASTM C744 shall apply.
- d. Minimum required equivalent thickness corresponding to the hourly fire-resistance rating for units with a combination of aggregate shall be determined by linear interpolation based on the percent by volume of each aggregate used in manufacture.

---
722.4.1.1 **Equivalent thickness.** The fire-resistance ratings of walls or partitions constructed of solid or hollow clay masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.4.1(1) or 722.4.1(2). The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit shall be determined by Equation 7-8 where using Table 722.4.1(1). The fire-resistance rating determined from Table 722.4.1(1) shall be permitted to be used in the calculated fire-resistance rating procedure in Section 722.4.2.

\[ T_e = \frac{V_n}{LH} \]  
(Equation 7-8)

where:

- \( T_e \) = The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit (inches).
- \( V_n \) = The net volume of the clay masonry unit (inches³).
- \( L \) = The specified length of the clay masonry unit (inches).
- \( H \) = The specified height of the clay masonry unit (inches).

722.4.1.1.1 **Hollow clay units.** The equivalent thickness, \( T_e \) shall be the value obtained for hollow clay units as determined in accordance with Equation 7-8. The net volume, \( V_n \), of the units shall be determined using the gross volume and percentage of void area determined in accordance with ASTM C67.

722.4.1.1.2 **Solid grouted clay units.** The equivalent thickness of solid grouted clay masonry units shall be taken as the actual thickness of the units.

722.4.1.1.3 **Units with filled cores.** The equivalent thickness of the hollow clay masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit where completely filled with loose-fill materials of: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded

### TABLE 722.4.1(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL TYPE</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE RESISTANCEa, b, c (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid brick of clay or shale(^d)</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, unfilled</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, grouted or filled with materials specified in Section 722.4.1.1.3</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Equivalent thickness as determined from Section 722.4.1.1.

b. Calculated fire resistance between the hourly increments listed shall be determined by linear interpolation.

c. Where combustible members are framed in the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown.

d. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

### TABLE 722.4.1(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WALL OR PARTITION ASSEMBLY</th>
<th>PLASTER SIDE EXPOSED (hours)</th>
<th>BRICK FACED SIDE EXPOSED (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outside facing of steel studs; 1/2&quot; wood fiberboard sheathing next to studs, 1/4&quot; airspace formed with 3/4&quot; x 1 1/2&quot; wood strips placed over the fiberboard and secured to the studs; metal or wire lath nailed to such strips; 3 1/2&quot; brick veneer held in place by filling 3/4&quot; airspace between the brick and lath with mortar. Inside facing of studs: 1/4&quot; unsanded gypsum plaster on metal or wire lath attached to 1/4&quot; wood strips secured to edges of the studs.</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside facing of steel studs; 1&quot; insulation board sheathing attached to studs, 1&quot; airspace, and 3 1/4&quot; brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: 1/8&quot; sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied on metal or wire lath attached directly to the studs.</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same as above except use 1/8&quot; vermiculite-gypsum plaster or 1&quot; sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to metal or wire.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside facing of steel studs; 1/4&quot; gypsum sheathing board, attached to studs, and 3 1/4&quot; brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: 1/2&quot; sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to 1/2&quot; perforated gypsum lath securely attached to studs and having strips of metal lath 3 inches wide applied to all horizontal joints of gypsum lath.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders in compliance with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

722.4.1.2 Plaster finishes. Where plaster is applied to the wall, the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined by the formula:

\[ R = (R_n^{0.59} + pl)^{1.7} \]  
(Equation 7-9)

where:

- \( R \) = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).
- \( R_n \) = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wall (hours).
- \( pl \) = Coefficient for thickness of plaster.

Values for \( R_n^{0.59} \) for use in Equation 7-9 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). Coefficients for thickness of plaster shall be selected from Table 722.4.1(4) based on the actual thickness of plaster applied to the wall or partition and whether one or two sides of the wall are plastered.

**TABLE 722.4.1(3)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( R_n ) 0.59</th>
<th>( R ) (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2.27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 722.4.1(4)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THICKNESS OF PLASTER (inch)</th>
<th>ONE SIDE</th>
<th>TWO SIDES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Values listed in the table are for 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.

**TABLE 722.4.1(5)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL LINTEL WIDTH (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM LONGITUDINAL REINFORCEMENT COVER FOR FIRE RESISTANCE (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 or more</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

NP = Not permitted.

### Reinforced Masonry Lintels

#### Reinforced Clay Masonry Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN SIZE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum column dimension (inches)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

#### Reinforced Masonry Lintels

**TABLE 722.4.1(6)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL LINTEL WIDTH (inches)</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 or more</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

NP = Not permitted.

**722.4.1.3 Multiwythe walls with airspace.** Where a continuous airspace separates multiple wythes of the wall or partition, the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined by the formula:

\[ R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \ldots + R_n^{0.59} + as)^{1.7} \]  
(Equation 7-10)

where:

- \( R \) = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).
- \( R_1, R_2 \) and \( R_n \) = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wythes (hours).
- \( as \) = Coefficient for continuous airspace.

Values for \( R_n^{0.59} \) for use in Equation 7-10 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). The coefficient for each continuous airspace of 1/2 inch to 3 1/2 inches (12.7 to 89 mm) separating two individual wythes shall be 0.3.

**722.4.1.4 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.** For a wall having no finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice, assuming either side to be the fire-exposed side of the wall. The fire resistance of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values determined.

**Exception:** For exterior walls with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

**722.4.2 Multiwythe walls.** The fire-resistance rating for walls or partitions consisting of two or more dissimilar wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

\[ R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \ldots + R_n^{0.59} + as)^{1.7} \]  
(Equation 7-11)

where:

- \( R \) = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).
- \( R_1, R_2 \) and \( R_n \) = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wythes (hours).

Values for \( R_n^{0.59} \) for use in Equation 7-11 are given in Table 722.4.1(3).

**722.4.2.1 Multiwythe walls of different material.** For walls that consist of two or more wythes of different materials (concrete or concrete masonry units) in combination with clay masonry units, the fire-resistance rating of the different materials shall be permitted to be determined from Table 722.2.1.1 for concrete; Table 722.3.2 for concrete masonry units or Table 722.4.1(1) or 722.4.1(2) for clay and tile masonry units.
722.4.3 Reinforced clay masonry lintels. Fire-resistance ratings for clay masonry lintels shall be determined based on the nominal width of the lintel and the minimum covering for the longitudinal reinforcement in accordance with Table 722.4.1(5).

722.4.4 Reinforced clay masonry columns. The fire-resistance ratings shall be determined based on the last plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.4.1(6). The minimum cover for longitudinal reinforcement shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

722.5 Steel assemblies. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of steel assemblies are established by calculations.

722.5.1 Structural steel columns. The fire-resistance ratings of structural steel columns shall be based on the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

722.5.1.1 General. These procedures establish a basis for determining the fire resistance of column assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material and, the weight, \( W \), and heated perimeter, \( D \), of structural steel columns. As used in these sections, \( W \) is the average weight of a structural steel column in pounds per linear foot. The heated perimeter, \( D \), is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(1).

722.5.1.1.1 Nonload-bearing protection. The application of these procedures shall be limited to column assemblies in which the fire-resistant material is not designed to carry any of the load acting on the column.

722.5.1.1.2 Embedments. In the absence of substantiating fire-endurance test results, ducts, conduit, piping, and similar mechanical, electrical, and plumbing installations shall not be embedded in any required fire-resistant materials.

\[
D = 4b_f + 2d - 2w_f
\]

\[
D = 2(a + d)
\]

**FIGURE 722.5.1(1)**
DETERMINATION OF THE HEATED PERIMETER OF STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS

---

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.

1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as \( h \) in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
   1. As a single layer with no horizontal joints.
   2. As multiple layers with no horizontal joints permitted in any layer.
   3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified fire-resistance rating and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio \( (W/D) \) of the column. For fire-resistance ratings of 2 hours or less, one of the required layers of gypsum board or gypsum panel product may be applied to the exterior of the sheet steel column covers with 1-inch long Type S screws spaced 1 inch from the wallboard edge and 8 inches on center. For such installations, 0.0149-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel corner beads with 11/2-inch legs shall be attached to the wallboard with Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.

3. For fire-resistance ratings of 3 hours or less, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel. For 4-hour fire-resistance ratings, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness stainless steel. The column covers shall be erected with the Snap Lock or Pittsburgh joint details.

For fire-resistance ratings of 2 hours or less, column covers fabricated from 0.0269-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel shall be permitted to be erected with lap joints. The lap joints shall be permitted to be located anywhere around the perimeter of the column cover. The lap joints shall be secured with 1/2-inch-long No. 8 sheet metal screws spaced 12 inches on center.

The column covers shall be provided with a minimum expansion clearance of 1/8 inch per linear foot between the ends of the cover and any restraining construction.
250 2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE

FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

FIGURE 722.5.1(3)
GYPSUM-PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH STEEL STUD/SCREW ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.
1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2. 1 1/8-inch deep studs fabricated from 0.0179-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel with 1 5/16 or 1 7/16-inch legs. The length of the steel studs shall be 1/2 inch less than the height of the assembly.
3. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as \( h \) in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
   1. As a single layer with no horizontal joints.
   2. As multiple layers with no horizontal joints permitted in any layer.
   3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified fire-resistance rating and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column.
4. Galvanized 0.0149-inch minimum thickness steel corner beads with 1 1/2-inch legs attached to the gypsum board or gypsum panel products with 1-inch-long Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.
5. No. 18 SWG steel tie wires spaced 24 inches on center.
6. Sheet metal angles with 2-inch legs fabricated from 0.0221-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel.
7. Type S screws, 1 inch long, shall be used for attaching the first layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the third layer to the sheet metal angles at 24 inches on center. Type S screws 1 3/4-inch long shall be used for attaching the second layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the fourth layer to the sheet metal angles at 12 inches on center. Type S screws 2 1/4 inches long shall be used for attaching the third layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs at 12 inches on center.

FIGURE 722.5.1(4)
FIRE RESISTANCE OF STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS PROTECTED WITH VARIOUS THICKNESSES OF TYPE X GYPSUM WALLBOARD

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot/inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

a. The W/D ratios for typical wide flange columns are listed in Table 722.5.1(1). For other column shapes, the W/D ratios shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.1.

FIGURE 722.5.1(5)
WIDE FLANGE STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS
FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

722.5.1.1.3 Weight-to-perimeter ratio. Table 722.5.1(1) contains weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (W/D) for both contour and box fire-resistant profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as columns. For different fire-resistant protection profiles or column cross sections, the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (W/D) shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

722.5.1.2 Gypsum wallboard protection. The fire resistance of structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (W/D) less than or equal to 3.65 and that are protected with Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

\[
R = 130 \left( \frac{h(W/D)}{2} \right)^{0.75}
\]

(Equation 7-12)

where:
- \( R \) = Fire resistance (minutes).
- \( h \) = Total thickness of gypsum wallboard (inches).
- \( D \) = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
- \( W' \) = Total weight of the structural steel column and gypsum wallboard protection (pounds per linear foot).
- \( W'' = W + 50hD/144 \).

722.5.1.2.1 Attachment. The gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be supported as illustrated in either Figure 722.5.1(2) for fire-resistance ratings of 4 hours or less, or Figure 722.5.1(3) for fire-resistance ratings of 3 hours or less.
722.5.1.2.2 Gypsum wallboard equivalent to concrete. The determination of the fire resistance of structural steel columns from Figure 722.5.1(4) is permitted for various thicknesses of gypsum wallboard as a function of the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column. For structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (W/D) greater than 3.65, the thickness of gypsum wallboard required for specified fire-resistance ratings shall be the same as the thickness determined for a W14 × 233 wide flange shape.

722.5.1.3 Sprayed fire-resistant materials. The fire resistance of wide-flange structural steel columns protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(5), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

\[ R = [C_1(W/D) + C_2]h \]  
(Equation 7-13)

where:
- \( R \) = Fire resistance (minutes).
- \( h \) = Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material (inches).
- \( D \) = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
- \( C_1 \) and \( C_2 \) = Material-dependent constants.
- \( W \) = Weight of structural steel columns (pounds per linear foot).

The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.5.1.3.1 Material-dependent constants. The material-dependent constants, \( C_1 \) and \( C_2 \), shall be determined for specific fire-resistant materials on the basis of standard fire endurance tests in accordance with Section 703.2. Unless evidence is submitted to the building official substantiating a broader application, this expression shall be limited to determining the fire resistance of structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios (W/D) between the largest and smallest columns for which standard fire-resistance test results are available.

722.5.1.3.2 Identification. Sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be identified by density and thickness required for a given fire-resistance rating.

722.5.1.4 Concrete-protected columns. The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with concrete, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(6)(a) and (b), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

\[ R = R_o (1 + 0.03_m) \]  
(Equation 7-14)

where:
- \( R_o \) = Fire endurance at zero moisture content (minutes).
- \( m \) = Equilibrium moisture content of the concrete by volume (percent).
- \( W \) = Average weight of the structural steel column (pounds per linear foot).
- \( D \) = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).
- \( h \) = Thickness of the concrete cover (inches).
- \( k_c \) = Ambient temperature thermal conductivity of the concrete (Btu/hr ft °F).
- \( c_c \) = Ambient temperature specific heat of concrete (Btu/lb °F).
- \( L \) = Interior dimension of one side of a square concrete box protection (inches).

As used in these expressions:

\[ R = \text{Fire endurance at equilibrium moisture conditions (minutes)}. \]
\[ R_o = \text{Fire endurance at zero moisture content (minutes)}. \]
\[ m = \text{Equilibrium moisture content of the concrete by volume (percent)}. \]
\[ W = \text{Average weight of the structural steel column (pounds per linear foot)}. \]
\[ D = \text{Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches)}. \]
\[ h = \text{Thickness of the concrete cover (inches)}. \]
\[ k_c = \text{Ambient temperature thermal conductivity of the concrete (Btu/hr ft °F)}. \]
\[ c_c = \text{Ambient temperature specific heat of concrete (Btu/lb °F)}. \]
\[ L = \text{Interior dimension of one side of a square concrete box protection (inches)}. \]

722.5.1.4.1 Reentrant space filled. For wide-flange structural steel columns completely encased in concrete with all reentrant spaces filled [Figure 722.5.1(6)(c)], the thermal capacity of the concrete within the reentrant spaces shall be permitted to be added to the thermal capacity of the steel column, as follows:

\[ H = 0.11 W + (p_c c_c / 144) (b f d - A_s) \]  
(Equation 7-15)

where:
- \( b_f \) = Flange width of the structural steel column (inches).
- \( d \) = Depth of the structural steel column (inches).
- \( A_s \) = Cross-sectional area of the steel column (square inches).

722.5.1.4.2 Concrete properties unknown. If specific data on the properties of concrete are not available, the values given in Table 722.5.1(2) are permitted.

722.5.1.4.3 Minimum concrete cover. For structural steel column encased in concrete with all reentrant spaces filled, Figure 722.5.1(6)(c) and Tables 722.5.1(7) and 722.5.1(8) indicate the thickness of concrete cover required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical wide-flange sections. The thicknesses of concrete indicated in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those listed.

722.5.1.4.4 Minimum precast concrete cover. For structural steel columns protected with precast concrete column covers as shown in Figure 722.5.1(6)(a), Tables 722.5.1(9) and 722.5.1(10) indicate the thickness of the column covers required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical wide-
flange shapes. The thicknesses of concrete given in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those listed.

722.5.1.4.5 Masonry protection. The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry units or clay masonry units as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(7) shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$ R = 0.17 \left( \frac{W}{D} \right)^{0.7} + \left[ 0.285 \left( \frac{T_e}{K} \right)^{0.2} \right] [1.0 + 42.7 \left( \frac{A_s}{d_m T_e} \right) \left( \frac{0.25 p + T_e}{1.6} \right)]^{0.8} $$

(Equation 7-16)

where:

- $R$ = Fire-resistance rating of column assembly (hours).
- $W$ = Average weight of structural steel column (pounds per foot).
- $D$ = Heated perimeter of structural steel column (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].
- $T_e$ = Equivalent thickness of concrete or clay masonry unit (inches) [see Table 722.3.2 Note a or Section 722.4.1].
- $K$ = Thermal conductivity of concrete or clay masonry unit (Btu/hr · ft · °F) [see Table 722.5.1(3)].
- $A_s$ = Cross-sectional area of structural steel column (square inches).
- $d_m$ = Density of the concrete or clay masonry unit (pounds per cubic foot).
- $p$ = Inner perimeter of concrete or clay masonry protection (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].

722.5.1.4.6 Equivalent concrete masonry thickness. For structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry, Table 722.5.1(5) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical column shapes. For structural steel columns protected with clay masonry, Table 722.5.1(6) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical column shapes.

722.5.2 Structural steel beams and girders. The fire-resistance ratings of structural steel beams and girders shall be based upon the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

722.5.2.1 Determination of fire resistance. These procedures establish a basis for determining resistance of structural steel beams and girders that differ in size from that specified in approved fire-resistance-rated assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material and the weight ($W$) and heated perimeter ($D$) of the beam or girder. As used in these sections, $W$ is the average weight of a structural steel element in pounds per linear foot (plf). The heated perimeter, $D$, is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.2.

722.5.2.1.1 Weight-to-heated perimeter. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ($W/D$), for both contour and box fire-resistant protection profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as beams or girders are given in Table 722.5.1(4). For different shapes, the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ($W/D$) shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

722.5.2.1.2 Beam and girder substitutions. Except as provided for in Section 722.5.2.2, structural steel beams in approved fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be considered the minimum permissible size. Other beam or girder shapes shall be permitted to be substituted provided that the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio ($W/D$) of the substitute beam is equal to or greater than that of the beam specified in the approved assembly.

722.5.2.2 Sprayed fire-resistant materials. The provisions in this section apply to structural steel beams and girders protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials. Larger or smaller beam and girder shapes shall be permitted to be substituted for beams specified in approved unrestrained or restrained fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provided that the thickness of the fire-resistant material is adjusted in accordance with the following expression:

$$ h_2 = h_1 \left[ \left( \frac{W_1}{D_1} \right) + 0.60 \right] / \left[ \left( \frac{W_2}{D_2} \right) + 0.60 \right] $$

(Equation 7-17)

where:

- $h$ = Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material in inches.
- $W$ = Weight of the structural steel beam or girder in pounds per linear foot.
- $D$ = Heated perimeter of the structural steel beam in inches.

Subscript 1 refers to the beam and fire-resistant material thickness in the approved assembly.

Subscript 2 refers to the substitute beam or girder and the required thickness of fire-resistant material.
### TABLE 722.5.1(1)
**W/D Ratios for Steel Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structural Shape</th>
<th>Contour Profile</th>
<th>Box Profile</th>
<th>Structural Shape</th>
<th>Contour Profile</th>
<th>Box Profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 233</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>3.65</td>
<td>W10 × 112</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>2.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 211</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>3.35</td>
<td>× 100</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>2.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 193</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>3.09</td>
<td>× 88</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>2.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 176</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>2.85</td>
<td>× 77</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>1.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 159</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>× 68</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>1.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 145</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>× 60</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>1.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 132</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>× 54</td>
<td>0.922</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 120</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.06</td>
<td>× 49</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 109</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td>× 45</td>
<td>0.888</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 99</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>× 39</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 90</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>× 33</td>
<td>0.661</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 82</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>× 28</td>
<td>0.688</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 74</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>W8 × 67</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 68</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>× 58</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>1.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 61</td>
<td>0.928</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>× 48</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 53</td>
<td>0.915</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>0.849</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td>0.835</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.749</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td>0.752</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>× 31</td>
<td>0.665</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 190</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>3.51</td>
<td>× 24</td>
<td>0.591</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 170</td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>3.20</td>
<td>× 21</td>
<td>0.577</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 152</td>
<td>2.04</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>× 18</td>
<td>0.499</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 136</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.431</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 120</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>W6 × 25</td>
<td>0.696</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 106</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.563</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 96</td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>1.93</td>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.584</td>
<td>0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 87</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.431</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 79</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>× 12</td>
<td>0.448</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 72</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.48</td>
<td>× 9</td>
<td>0.338</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 65</td>
<td>0.925</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>× 9</td>
<td>0.338</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 58</td>
<td>0.925</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>W5 × 19</td>
<td>0.644</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 53</td>
<td>0.855</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 50</td>
<td>0.909</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 45</td>
<td>0.829</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>W4 × 13</td>
<td>0.556</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>0.734</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>× 28</td>
<td>0.688</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

### TABLE 722.5.1(2)
**Properties of Concrete**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Normal-Weight Concrete</th>
<th>Structural Lightweight Concrete</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermal conductivity ($k_c$)</td>
<td>0.95 Btu·hr·ft·°F</td>
<td>0.35 Btu/hr·ft·°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific heat ($c_c$)</td>
<td>0.20 Btu/lb·°F</td>
<td>0.20 Btu/lb·°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density ($\rho_c$)</td>
<td>145 lb/ft³</td>
<td>110 lb/ft³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equilibrium (free) moisture content (m) by volume</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 lb/ft³ = 16.0185 kg/m³, Btu/hr·ft·°F = 1.731 W/(m·K).
### Table 722.5.1(3)

**Thermal Conductivity of Concrete or Clay Masonry Units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Density ((d_m)) of Units ((\text{lb/ft}^3))</th>
<th>Thermal Conductivity ((k)) of Units ((\text{Btu/hr} \cdot \text{ft} \cdot \degree\text{F}))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Masonry Units</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>0.228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>0.252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>0.278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>0.340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>0.376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>0.416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0.459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>0.561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>0.620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>0.685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>0.758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clay Masonry Units</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m³, Btu/hr · ft · °F = 1.731 W/(m · K).

### Table 722.5.1(4)

**Weight-to-Heated-Perimeter Ratios \((W/D)\) for Typical Wide Flange Beam and Girder Shapes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structural Shape</th>
<th>Contour Profile</th>
<th>Box Profile</th>
<th>Structural Shape</th>
<th>Contour Profile</th>
<th>Box Profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W36 × 300</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>3.33</td>
<td>W24 × 68</td>
<td>0.942</td>
<td>1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×280</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>3.12</td>
<td>×62</td>
<td>0.934</td>
<td>1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×260</td>
<td>2.18</td>
<td>2.92</td>
<td>×55</td>
<td>0.828</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×245</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>2.76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×230</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>W21 × 147</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×210</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>2.45</td>
<td>×132</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×194</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>×122</td>
<td>1.57</td>
<td>2.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×182</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>×111</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>2.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×170</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>2.01</td>
<td>×101</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×160</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>×93</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×150</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>×83</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>×135</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>×73</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>×68</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>CONTOUR PROFILE</th>
<th>BOX PROFILE</th>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>CONTOUR PROFILE</th>
<th>BOX PROFILE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W33 × 241</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>W21 × 62</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 221</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>× 57</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 201</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>× 50</td>
<td>0.838</td>
<td>1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 152</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>1.94</td>
<td>× 44</td>
<td>0.746</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 141</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>× 97</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 130</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>1.67</td>
<td>W18 × 119</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>2.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 118</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 106</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>2.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 106</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 97</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 97</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 86</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 96</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 76</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 95</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 71</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>1.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 94</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 65</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>1.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 93</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 60</td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>1.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 92</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 55</td>
<td>0.963</td>
<td>1.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 91</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 50</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 89</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 46</td>
<td>0.878</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>0.768</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 87</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 86</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 85</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 25</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 84</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 83</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 82</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td>× 10</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W27 × 178</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 161</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 160</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 25</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 159</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 158</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 157</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 10</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 156</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 5</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 155</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>× 4</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W24 × 162</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td>2.57</td>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 146</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 145</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 144</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 25</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 143</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 142</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 141</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 10</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 140</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 5</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W21 × 80</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 139</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 25</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 138</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 137</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 136</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 10</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 135</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 5</td>
<td>0.762</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 99</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>2.31</td>
<td>W10 × 30</td>
<td>0.806</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 90</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 26</td>
<td>0.708</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 89</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 22</td>
<td>0.606</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 19</td>
<td>0.607</td>
<td>0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 87</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 17</td>
<td>0.543</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 86</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.484</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 53</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>1.48</td>
<td>× 12</td>
<td>0.392</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td>0.970</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>(continued)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued

**WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (W/D) FOR TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>CONTOUR PROFILE</th>
<th>BOX PROFILE</th>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>CONTOUR PROFILE</th>
<th>BOX PROFILE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 43</td>
<td>0.874</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>W8 × 67</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.809</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>× 58</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 34</td>
<td>0.725</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>× 48</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.644</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>1.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 26</td>
<td>0.628</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.907</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 22</td>
<td>0.534</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>× 31</td>
<td>0.803</td>
<td>1.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>× 28</td>
<td>0.819</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 87</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>× 21</td>
<td>0.704</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 79</td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>× 18</td>
<td>0.675</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 72</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.583</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 65</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>× 13</td>
<td>0.551</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 58</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>× 10</td>
<td>0.483</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 53</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>× 9</td>
<td>0.375</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 50</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 45</td>
<td>0.974</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>W6 × 25</td>
<td>0.839</td>
<td>1.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>0.860</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>0.678</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 35</td>
<td>0.810</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.684</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 30</td>
<td>0.699</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>0.521</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 26</td>
<td>0.612</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>× 12</td>
<td>0.526</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 22</td>
<td>0.623</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>× 9</td>
<td>0.398</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 19</td>
<td>0.540</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.457</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>W5 × 19</td>
<td>0.776</td>
<td>1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 14</td>
<td>0.405</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>× 16</td>
<td>0.664</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W10 × 112</td>
<td>2.17</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>W4 × 13</td>
<td>0.670</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 100</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>3.07</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 77</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>2.45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 68</td>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 60</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 54</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 49</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 45</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 39</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 33</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.
### TABLE 722.5.1(5)

**FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN SIZE</th>
<th>CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, ( t_e ) (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 82</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 68</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 53</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 43</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 72</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 58</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 50</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 40</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 1/2 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 3/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 722.5.1(5)—continued

#### FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN SIZE</th>
<th>CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)</th>
<th>COLUMN SIZE</th>
<th>CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>3.01</td>
<td>3.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>3.26</td>
<td>4.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>4.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.48</td>
<td>2.59</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>2.54</td>
<td>3.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>1.99</td>
<td>2.84</td>
<td>3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>2.98</td>
<td>3.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>3.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 3/8 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>2.71</td>
<td>3.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>3.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.19</td>
<td>2.25</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>3.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>3.26</td>
<td>4.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 1/2 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>2.92</td>
<td>3.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>3.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>2.43</td>
<td>3.30</td>
<td>4.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>2.52</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>4.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>2.44</td>
<td>3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>3.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>2.02</td>
<td>2.89</td>
<td>3.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>3.03</td>
<td>3.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8 × 3/8 wall thickness</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>1.84</td>
<td>2.63</td>
<td>3.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>2.06</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>3.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>3.06</td>
<td>3.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>3.19</td>
<td>3.98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic feet = 16.02 kg/m³.

**Note:** Tabulated values assume 1-inch air gap between masonry and steel section.
## TABLE 722.5.1(6)
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN SIZE</th>
<th>CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, ( t_e ) (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 82</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 68</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 53</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 43</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 72</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 58</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 50</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 40</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### STEEL TUBING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL TUBE SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, ( t_e ) (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 3/8 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>3.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 × 4 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>3.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>2.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 3/8 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>3.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 × 6 × 1/2 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.83</td>
<td>3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8 × 1/4 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>2.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8 × 3/8 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8 × 1/2 wall thickness</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>1.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>3.14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 722.5.1(7)  
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS ENCASED IN NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE [FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/4</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 233</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 176</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 152</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 65</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 50</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W10 × 88</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 49</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 33</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W8 × 67</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 31</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W6 × 25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 20</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 15</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.  
a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

TABLE 722.5.1(8)  
MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS ENCASED IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE [FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/4</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 233</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 193</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 65</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 53</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 40</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W10 × 112</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 33</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W8 × 35</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 18</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.  
a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).
### TABLE 722.5.1(9)
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS IN NORMAL-WEIGHT PRECAST COVERS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 233</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 211</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 176</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 145</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 109</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 61</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 190</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 152</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 120</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 87</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 40</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W10 × 112</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 77</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 33</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W8 × 67</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 21</td>
<td></td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W6 × 25</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 20</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 12</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).**

### TABLE 722.5.1(10)
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT PRECAST COVERS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURAL SHAPE</th>
<th>FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W14 × 233</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 176</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 145</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 109</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 68</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W12 × 190</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 152</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 136</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 106</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 96</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 65</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W10 × 112</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 88</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 60</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 33</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W8 × 67</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 35</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 18</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× 9</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/2</td>
<td>3/2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a. The tabulated thicknesses are based upon the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).**
The fire resistance of structural steel beams and girders protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.5.2.2.1 Minimum thickness. The use of Equation 7-17 is subject to the following conditions:
1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio for the substitute beam or girder \((W_f/D_f)\) shall not be less than 0.37.
2. The thickness of fire protection materials calculated for the substitute beam or girder \((T_f)\) shall be not less than \(\frac{1}{8}\) inch (9.5 mm).
3. The unrestrained or restrained beam rating shall be not less than 1 hour.
4. Where used to adjust the material thickness for a restrained beam, the use of this procedure is limited to structural steel sections classified as compact in accordance with AISC 360.

722.5.2.3 Structural steel trusses. The fire resistance of structural steel trusses protected with fire-resistant materials sprayed to each of the individual truss elements shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with this section. The thickness of the fire-resistant material shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.3. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio \((W/D)\) of truss elements that can be simultaneously exposed to fire on all sides shall be determined on the same basis as columns, as specified in Section 722.5.1.1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio \((W/D)\) of truss elements that directly support floor or roof assembly shall be determined on the same basis as beams and girders, as specified in Section 722.5.2.1.

The fire resistance of structural steel trusses protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

722.6 Wood assemblies. The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of wood assemblies are established by calculations.

722.6.1 General. This section contains procedures for calculating the fire-resistance ratings of walls, floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies based in part on the standard method of testing referenced in Section 703.2.

722.6.1.1 Maximum fire-resistance rating. Fire-resistance ratings calculated for assemblies using the methods in Section 722.6 shall be limited to a maximum of 1 hour.

722.6.1.2 Dissimilar membranes. Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly that requires consideration of fire exposure from both sides, the calculation shall be made from the least fire-resistant (weaker) side.

722.6.2 Walls, floors and roofs. These procedures apply to both load-bearing and nonload-bearing assemblies.

722.6.2.1 Fire-resistance rating of wood frame assemblies. The fire-resistance rating of a wood frame assembly is equal to the sum of the time assigned to the membrane on the fire-exposed side, the time assigned to the framing members and the time assigned for additional contribution by other protective measures such as insulation. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the fire resistance of the assembly.

722.6.2.2 Time assigned to membranes. Table 722.6.2(1) indicates the time assigned to membranes on the fire-exposed side.

722.6.2.3 Exterior walls. For an exterior wall with a fire separation distance greater than 10 feet (3048 mm), the wall is assigned a rating dependent on the interior membrane and the framing as described in Tables 722.6.2(1) and 722.6.2(2). The membrane on the outside of the nonfire-exposed side of exterior walls with a fire separation distance greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall consist of sheathing, sheathing paper and siding as described in Table 722.6.2(3).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF FINISH</th>
<th>TIME (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/4-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/32-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/16-inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/16-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch Type X gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/32-inch Type X gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double 1/4-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch + 1/4-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double 1/2-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. These values apply only where membranes are installed on framing members that are spaced 16 inches o.c. or less.
b. Gypsum wallboard installed over framing or furring shall be installed so that all edges are supported, except 1/4-inch Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be installed horizontally with the horizontal joints staggered 24 inches each side and unsupported but finished.
c. On wood frame floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies, gypsum board shall be installed with the long dimension perpendicular to framing members and shall have all joints finished.
d. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the fire resistance of the assembly. Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly, the calculation shall be made from the least fire-resistant (weaker) side.
e. The time assigned is not a finished rating.
722.6.2.4 **Floors and roofs.** In the case of a floor or roof, the standard test provides only for testing for fire exposure from below. Except as noted in Section 703.3, Item 5, floor or roof assemblies of wood framing shall have an upper membrane consisting of a subfloor and finished floor conforming to Table 722.6.2(4) or any other membrane that has a contribution to fire resistance of not less than 15 minutes in Table 722.6.2(1).

722.6.2.5 **Additional protection.** Table 722.6.2(5) indicates the time increments to be added to the fire resistance where glass fiber, rockwool, slag mineral wool or cellulose insulation is incorporated in the assembly.

722.6.2.6 **Fastening.** Fastening of wood frame assemblies and the fastening of membranes to the wood framing members shall be done in accordance with Chapter 23.

---

**TABLE 722.6.2(2)**

**TIME ASSIGNED FOR CONTRIBUTION OF WOOD FRAME a, b, c**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>TIME ASSIGNED TO FRAME (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wood studs 16 inches o.c.</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood floor and roof joists 16 inches o.c.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table does not apply to studs or joists spaced more than 16 inches o.c.
b. All studs shall be nominal 2 × 4 and all joists shall have a nominal thickness of not less than 2 inches.
c. Allowable spans for joists shall be determined in accordance with Sections 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1 and 2308.7.2.

---

**TABLE 722.6.2(3)**

**MEMBRANE* ON EXTERIOR FACE OF WOOD STUD WALLS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHEATHING</th>
<th>PAPER</th>
<th>EXTERIOR FINISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5/16-inch T &amp; G lumber</td>
<td>Sheathing paper</td>
<td>Lumber siding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/16-inch exterior glue wood structural panel</td>
<td></td>
<td>Wood shingles and shakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/4-inch fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/4-inch wood structural panels-exterior type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4-inch fiberboard</td>
<td></td>
<td>1/4-inch hardboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4-inch fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding</td>
<td></td>
<td>Metal siding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/16-inch exterior glue wood structural panel</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stucco on metal lath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch gypsum wallboard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Masonry veneer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch fiberboard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vinyl siding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/8-inch exterior-grade wood structural panels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Any combination of sheathing, paper and exterior finish is permitted.
TABLE 722.6.2(4)
FLOORING OR ROOFING OVER WOOD FRAMING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASSEMBLY</th>
<th>STRUCTURAL MEMBERS</th>
<th>SUBFLOOR OR ROOF DECK</th>
<th>FINISHED FLOORING OR ROOFING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>15/32-inch wood structural panels or 11/16-inch T &amp; G softwood</td>
<td>Hardwood or softwood flooring on building paper resilient flooring, parquet floor felted-synthetic fiber floor coverings, carpeting, or ceramic tile on 1/4-inch-thick fiber-cement underlayment or 3/4-inch-thick panel-type underlayment Ceramic tile on 11/4-inch mortar bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>15/32-inch wood structural panels or 11/16-inch T &amp; G softwood</td>
<td>Finished roofing material with or without insulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. This table applies only to wood joist construction. It is not applicable to wood truss construction.

TABLE 722.6.2(5)
TIME ASSIGNED FOR ADDITIONAL PROTECTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF ADDITIONAL PROTECTION</th>
<th>FIRE RESISTANCE (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add to the fire-resistance rating of wood stud walls if the spaces between the studs are completely filled with glass fiber mineral wool batts weighing not less than 2 pounds per cubic foot (0.6 pound per square foot of wall surface) or rockwool or slag material wool batts weighing not less than 3.3 pounds per cubic foot (1 pound per square foot of wall surface), or cellulose insulation having a nominal density not less than 2.6 pounds per cubic foot.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound/cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m³.
CHAPTER 8
INTERIOR FINISHES

SECTION 801
GENERAL

801.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the use of materials used as interior finishes, trim and decorative materials.

801.2 Interior wall and ceiling finish. The provisions of Section 803 shall limit the allowable fire performance and smoke development of interior wall and ceiling finish materials based on occupancy classification.

801.3 Interior floor finish. The provisions of Section 804 shall limit the allowable fire performance of interior floor finish materials based on occupancy classification.

801.4 Decorative materials and trim. Decorative materials and trim shall be restricted by combustibility, fire performance or flame propagation performance criteria in accordance with Section 806.

801.5 Applicability. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, interior finishes, trim and decorative materials below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be flood-damage-resistant materials.

801.6 Application. Combustible materials shall be permitted to be used as finish for walls, ceilings, floors and other interior surfaces of buildings.

801.7 Windows. Show windows in the exterior walls of the first story above grade plane shall be permitted to be of wood or of unprotected metal framing.

801.8 Foam plastics. Foam plastics shall not be used as interior finish except as provided in Section 803.4. Foam plastics shall not be used as interior trim except as provided in Section 806.5 or 2604.2. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

SECTION 802
DEFINITIONS

802.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

EXPANDED VINYL WALL COVERING.
FLAME SPREAD.
FLAME SPREAD INDEX.
INTERIOR FINISH.
INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH.
INTERIOR FLOOR-WALL BASE.
INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH.
SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM.
SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX.
TRIM.

SECTION 803
WALL AND CEILING FINISHES

803.1 General. Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified for fire performance and smoke development in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, except as shown in Sections 803.2 through 803.13. Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.2 shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section 803.1.1.

803.1.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish materials. Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Such interior finish materials shall be grouped in the following classes in accordance with their flame spread and smoke-developed indexes.

Class A: Flame spread index 0-25; smoke-developed index 0-450.
Class B: Flame spread index 26-75; smoke-developed index 0-450.
Class C: Flame spread index 76-200; smoke-developed index 0-450.

Exception: Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.2.

803.1.2 Room corner test for interior wall or ceiling finish materials. Interior wall or ceiling finish materials shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with NFPA 286. Interior wall or ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 shall comply with Section 803.1.2.1.

803.1.2.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 286. The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
4. The peak heat release rate throughout the test shall not exceed 800 kW.
5. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m2.

803.1.3 Room corner test for textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings. Textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings shall meet the criteria of Section 803.1.3.1 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with the Method B protocol of NFPA 265 using the product-mounting system, including adhesive.
803.1.3.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 265. The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremities of the samples on the 8-foot by 12-foot (203 by 305 mm) walls.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 265, shall not occur.
4. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m².

803.1.4 Acceptance criteria for textile and expanded vinyl wall or ceiling coverings tested to ASTM E84 or UL 723. Textile wall and ceiling coverings and expanded vinyl wall and ceiling coverings shall have a Class A flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2404.

803.2 Thickness exemption. Materials having a thickness less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) applied directly to the surface of walls or ceilings shall not be required to be tested.

803.3 Heavy timber exemption. Exposed portions of building elements complying with the requirements for buildings of Type IV construction in Section 602.4 shall not be subject to interior finish requirements.

803.4 Foam plastics. Foam plastics shall not be used as interior finish except as provided in Section 2603.9. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

803.5 Textile wall coverings. Where used as interior wall finish materials, textile wall coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2, 803.1.3 or 803.1.4.

803.6 Textile ceiling coverings. Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, textile ceiling coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2 or 803.1.4.

803.7 Expanded vinyl wall coverings. Where used as interior wall finish materials, expanded vinyl wall coverings shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2, 803.1.3 or 803.1.4.

803.8 Expanded vinyl ceiling coverings. Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, expanded vinyl ceiling coverings shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.2 or 803.1.4.

803.9 High-density polyethylene (HDPE) and polypropylene (PP). Where high-density polyethylene or polypropylene is used as an interior finish it shall comply with Section 803.1.2.

803.10 Site-fabricated stretch systems. Where used as interior wall or interior finish materials, site-fabricated stretch systems containing all three components described in the definition in Chapter 2 shall be tested in the manner intended for use, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2. If the materials are tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2573.

803.11 Interior finish requirements based on group. Interior wall and ceiling finish shall have a flame spread index not greater than that specified in Table 803.11 for the group and location designated. Interior wall and ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meeting the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1, shall be permitted to be used where a Class A classification in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 is required.

803.12 Stability. Interior finish materials regulated by this chapter shall be applied or otherwise fastened in such a manner that such materials will not readily become detached where subjected to room temperatures of 200°F (93°C) for not less than 30 minutes.

803.13 Application of interior finish materials to fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible building elements. Where interior finish materials are applied on walls, ceilings or structural elements required to have a fire-resistance rating or to be of noncombustible construction, these finish materials shall comply with the provisions of this section.

803.13.1 Direct attachment and furred construction. Where walls and ceilings are required by any provision in this code to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction, the interior finish material shall be applied directly against such construction or to furring strips not exceeding 1 3/4 inches (44 mm), applied directly against such surfaces.

803.13.1.1 Furred construction. If the interior finish material is applied to furring strips, the intervening spaces between such furring strips shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be filled with material that is inorganic or noncombustible;
2. Be filled with material that meets the requirements of a Class A material in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2; or
3. Be fireblocked at a maximum of 8 feet (2438 mm) in every direction in accordance with Section 718.

803.13.2 Set-out construction. Where walls and ceilings are required to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction and walls are set out or ceilings are
dropped distances greater than specified in Section 803.13.1, Class A finish materials, in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, shall be used.

Exceptions:

1. Where interior finish materials are protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2. Where interior finish materials are attached to noncombustible backing or furring strips installed as specified in Section 803.13.1.1.

803.13.2.1 Hangers and assembly members. The hangers and assembly members of such dropped ceilings that are below the horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assemblies shall be of noncombustible materials. The construction of each set-out wall and horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly shall be of fire-resistance-rated construction as required elsewhere in this code.

Exception: In Type III and V construction, fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted for use as hangers and assembly members of dropped ceilings.

803.13.3 Heavy timber construction. Wall and ceiling finishes of all classes as permitted in this chapter that are installed directly against the wood decking or planking of Type IV construction or to wood furring strips applied directly to the wood decking or planking shall be fire-blocked as specified in Section 803.13.1.1.

803.13.4 Materials. An interior wall or ceiling finish material that is not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick shall be applied directly onto the wall, ceiling or structural element without the use of furring strips and shall not be sus-

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m².

a. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted for wainscoting or paneling of not more than 1,000 square feet of applied surface area in the grade lobby where applied directly to a noncombustible base or over furring strips applied to a noncombustible base and fireblocked as required by Section 803.13.1.

b. In other than Group I-3 occupancies in buildings less than three stories above grade plane, Class B interior finish for nonsprinklered buildings and Class C interior finish for sprinklered buildings shall be permitted in interior exit stairways and ramps.

c. Requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces shall be based upon spaces enclosed by partitions. Where a fire-resistance rating is required for structural elements, the enclosing partitions shall extend from the floor to the ceiling. Partitions that do not comply with this shall be considered enclosing spaces and the rooms or spaces on both sides shall be considered one. In determining the applicable requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces, the specific occupancy thereof shall be the governing factor regardless of the group classification of the building or structure.

d. Lobby areas in Group A-1, A-2 and A-3 occupancies shall not be less than Class B materials.

e. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in places of assembly with an occupant load of 300 persons or less.

f. For places of religious worship, wood used for ornamental purposes, trusses, paneling or chancel furnishing shall be permitted.

g. Class B material is required where the building exceeds two stories.

h. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in administrative spaces.

i. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in rooms with a capacity of four persons or less.

j. Class B materials shall be permitted as wainscoting extending not more than 48 inches above the finished floor in corridors and exit access stairways and ramps.

k. Finish materials as provided for in other sections of this code.

l. Applies when protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
pended away from the building element to which that finish material it is applied.

Exceptions:
1. Noncombustible interior finish materials.
2. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material furred out from the noncombustible backing shall be permitted to be used with furring strips.
3. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material suspended away from the noncombustible backing shall be permitted to be used suspended away from the building element.

SECTION 804
INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH

804.1 General. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.2 through 804.4.2.

Exception: Floor finishes and coverings of a traditional type, such as wood, vinyl, linoleum or terrazzo, and resilient floor covering materials that are not comprised of fibers.

804.2 Classification. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials required by Section 804.4.2 to be of Class I or II materials shall be classified in accordance with NFPA 253. The classification referred to herein corresponds to the classifications determined by NFPA 253 as follows: Class I, 0.45 watts/cm² or greater; Class II, 0.22 watts/cm² or greater.

804.3 Testing and identification. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall be tested by an agency in accordance with NFPA 253 and identified by a hang tag or other suitable method so as to identify the manufacturer or supplier and style, and shall indicate the suitable method so as to identify the manufacturer or supplier and style, and shall indicate the minimum critical radiant flux and style, and shall indicate the suitable method so as to identify the manufacturer or supplier and style, and shall indicate the minimum critical radiant flux.

804.4 Interior floor finish requirements. Interior floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.4.1 and 804.4.2 and interior floor finish materials shall comply with Section 804.4.2.

804.4.1 Test requirement. In all occupancies, interior floor covering materials shall comply with the requirements of the DOC FF-1 “pill test” (CPSC 16 CFR Part 1630) or with ASTM D2859.

804.4.2 Minimum critical radiant flux. In all occupancies, interior floor finish and floor covering materials in enclosures for stairways and ramps, exit passageways, corridors and rooms or spaces not separated from corridors by partitions extending from the floor to the underside of the ceiling shall withstand a minimum critical radiant flux.

The minimum critical radiant flux shall be not less than Class I in Groups I-1, I-2 and I-3 and not less than Class II in Groups A, B, E, H, I-4, M, R-1, R-2 and S.

Exception: Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, Class II materials are permitted in any area where Class I materials are required, and materials complying with DOC FF-1 “pill test” (CPSC 16 CFR Part 1630) or with ASTM D2859 are permitted in any area where Class II materials are required.

SECTION 805
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION

805.1 Application. Combustible materials installed on or embedded in floors of buildings of Type I or II construction shall comply with Sections 805.1.1 through 805.1.3.

Exception: Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.3 and 410.4, respectively.

805.1.1 Subfloor construction. Floor sleepers, bucks and nailing blocks shall not be constructed of combustible materials, unless the space between the fire-resistant rated floor assembly and the flooring is either solidly filled with noncombustible materials or fireblocked in accordance with Section 718, and provided that such open spaces shall not extend under or through permanent partitions or walls.

805.1.2 Wood finish flooring. Wood finish flooring is permitted to be attached directly to the embedded or fire-blocked wood sleepers and shall be permitted where cemented directly to the top surface of fire-resistant rated floor assemblies or directly to a wood subfloor attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

805.1.3 Insulating boards. Combustible insulating boards not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick and covered with finish flooring are permitted where attached directly to a noncombustible floor assembly or to wood subflooring attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

SECTION 806
DECORATIVE MATERIALS AND TRIM

806.1 General. Combustible decorative materials, other than decorative vegetation, shall comply with Sections 806.2 through 806.8.

806.2 Noncombustible materials. The permissible amount of noncombustible materials shall not be limited.

806.3 Combustible decorative materials. In other than Group I-3, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which such materials are attached.

Fixed or movable walls and partitions, paneling, wall pads and crash pads applied structurally or for decoration, acousti-
cal correction, surface insulation or other purposes shall be considered interior finish shall comply with Section 803 and shall not be considered decorative materials or furnishings.

Exceptions:

1. In auditoriums in Group A, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall not exceed 75 percent of the aggregate wall area where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and where the material is installed in accordance with Section 803.13 of this code.

2. In Group R-2 dormitories, within sleeping units and dwelling units, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall not exceed 50 percent of the aggregate wall areas where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.1.1.

3. In Group B and M occupancies, the amount of combustible fabric partitions suspended from the ceiling and not supported by the floor shall comply with Section 804.4 and shall not be limited.

806.4 Acceptance criteria and reports. Where required to exhibit improved fire performance, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall be tested by an approved agency and meet the flame propagation performance criteria of Test 1 or 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701, or exhibit a maximum heat release rate of 100 kW when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. Reports of test results shall be prepared in accordance with the test method used and furnished to the building official upon request.

806.5 Foam plastic. Foam plastic used as trim in any occupancy shall comply with Section 2604.2.

806.6 Pyroxylin plastic. Imitation leather or other material consisting of or coated with a pyroxylin or similarly hazardous base shall not be used in Group A occupancies.

806.7 Interior trim. Material, other than foam plastic used as interior trim, shall have a minimum Class C flame spread and smoke-developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, as described in Section 803.1.1. Combustible trim, excluding handrails and guardrails, shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which it is attached.

806.8 Interior floor-wall base. Interior floor-wall base that is 6 inches (152 mm) or less in height shall be tested in accordance with Section 804.2 and shall be not less than Class II. Where a Class I floor finish is required, the floor-wall base shall be Class I.

Exception: Interior trim materials that comply with Section 806.7.

SECTION 807
INSULATION

807.1 Insulation. Thermal and acoustical insulation shall comply with Section 720.

SECTION 808
ACOUSTICAL CEILING SYSTEMS

808.1 Acoustical ceiling systems. The quality, design, fabrication and erection of metal suspension systems for acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings in buildings or structures shall conform to generally accepted engineering practice, the provisions of this chapter and other applicable requirements of this code.

808.1.1 Materials and installation. Acoustical materials complying with the interior finish requirements of Section 803 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations and applicable provisions for applying interior finish.

808.1.1.1 Suspended acoustical ceilings. Suspended acoustical ceiling systems shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASTM C635 and ASTM C636.

808.1.1.2 Fire-resistance-rated construction. Acoustical ceiling systems that are part of fire-resistance-rated construction shall be installed in the same manner used in the assembly tested and shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.
CHAPTER 9
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall specify where fire protection systems are required and shall apply to the design, installation and operation of fire protection systems.

901.2 Fire protection systems. Fire protection systems shall be installed, repaired, operated and maintained in accordance with this code and the Fire Code.

Any fire protection system for which an exception or reduction to the provisions of this code has been granted shall be considered to be a required system.

Exception: Any fire protection system or portion thereof not required by this code shall be permitted to be installed for partial or complete protection provided that such system meets the requirements of this code.

901.3 Modifications. Persons shall not remove or modify any fire protection system installed or maintained under the provisions of this code or the Fire Code without approval by the building official.

901.4 Threads. Threads provided for fire department connections to sprinkler systems, standpipes, yard hydrants or any other fire hose connection shall be compatible with the connections used by the local fire department.

901.5 Acceptance tests. Fire protection systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of this code and the Fire Code. When required, the tests shall be conducted in the presence of the building official. Tests required by this code, the Fire Code and the standards listed in this code shall be conducted at the expense of the owner or the owner’s authorized agent. It shall be unlawful to occupy portions of a structure until the required fire protection systems within that portion of the structure have been tested and approved.

901.6 Supervisory service. Where required, fire protection systems shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be monitored by an approved supervising station.

Exceptions:

1. A supervising station is not required for automatic sprinkler systems protecting one- and two-family dwellings.
2. Limited area systems serving fewer than 20 sprinklers.

901.6.2 Fire alarm systems. Fire alarm systems required by the provisions of Section 907.2 of this code and Sections 907.2 and 907.9 of the Fire Code shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6.

Exceptions:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.
3. Supervisory service is not required for automatic sprinkler systems in one- and two-family dwellings.

901.6.3 Group H. Supervision and monitoring of emergency alarm, detection and automatic fire-extinguishing systems in Group H occupancies shall be in accordance with the Fire Code.

901.7 Fire areas. Where buildings, or portions thereof, are divided into fire areas so as not to exceed the limits established for requiring a fire protection system in accordance with this chapter, such fire areas shall be separated by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, having a fire-resistance rating of not less than that determined in accordance with Section 707.3.10.

901.8 Pump and riser room size. Where provided, fire pump rooms and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be designed with adequate space for all equipment necessary for the installation, as defined by the manufacturer, with sufficient working room around the stationary equipment. Clearances around equipment to elements of permanent construction, including other installed equipment and appliances, shall be sufficient to allow inspection, service, repair or replacement without removing such elements of permanent construction or disabling the function of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly. Fire pump and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be provided with a door(s) and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest piece of equipment.

SECTION 902
DEFINITIONS

902.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.
ALARM SIGNAL.
ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE.
ANNUNCIATOR.
AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.
AUTOMATIC.
AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.
AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM.
AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM.
AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM.
AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL.
CARBON DIOXIDE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS.
CEILING LIMIT.
CLEAN AGENT.
COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE.
CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION.
DELUGE SYSTEM.
DETECTOR, HEAT.
DRY-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING AGENT.
ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM.
ELEVATOR GROUP.
EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEM.
EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATIONS.
FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL.
FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT.
FIRE ALARM SIGNAL.
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.
FIRE COMMAND CENTER.
FIRE DETECTOR, AUTOMATIC.
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM.
FIRE SAFETY FUNCTIONS.
FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.
HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.
INITIATING DEVICE.
MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX.
MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE.
MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.
NOTIFICATION ZONE.
NUISANCE ALARM.
PRIVATE GARAGE.
RECORD DRAWINGS.
SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.
SMOKE ALARM.
SMOKE DETECTOR.
SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE.
STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF.
    Class I system.
    Class II system.
    Class III system.
STANDPIPE, TYPES OF.
    Automatic dry.
    Automatic wet.
    Manual dry.
    Manual wet.
    Semiautomatic dry.
SUPERVISING STATION.
SUPERVISORY SERVICE.
SUPERVISORY SIGNAL.
SUPERVISORY SIGNAL-INITIATING DEVICE.
TIRES, BULK STORAGE OF.
TROUBLE SIGNAL.
VISIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES.
WET CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.
WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM.
ZONE.
ZONE, NOTIFICATION.

SECTION 903
AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

903.1 General. Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section.

903.1.1 Alternative protection. Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems complying with Section 904 shall be permitted instead of automatic sprinkler protection where recognized by the applicable standard and approved by the fire code official.

903.2 Where required. Approved automatic sprinkler systems in new buildings and structures shall be provided in the locations described in Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.12.

Exception: Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

903.2.1 Group A. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings and portions thereof used as Group A occupancies as provided in this section. For Group A-1, A-2, A-3 and A-4 occupancies, the automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout the story where the fire area containing the Group A-1, A-2, A-3 or A-4 occupancy is located, and throughout all stories from the Group A occupancy to, and including, the levels of exit discharge serving the Group A occupancy. For Group A-5 occupancies, the automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in the spaces indicated in Section 903.2.1.5.
903.2.1.1 Group A-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for fire areas containing Group A-1 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:
1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.
4. The fire area contains a multitheater complex.

903.2.1.2 Group A-2. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for fire areas containing Group A-2 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:
1. The fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464.5 m²).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 100 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.

903.2.1.3 Group A-3. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for fire areas containing Group A-3 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:
1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.

903.2.1.4 Group A-4. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for fire areas containing Group A-4 occupancies and intervening floors of the building where one of the following conditions exists:
1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.

903.2.1.5 Group A-5. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for Group A-5 occupancies in the following areas: concession stands, retail areas, press boxes and other accessory use areas in excess of 1,000 square feet (93 m²).

903.2.1.6 Assembly occupancies on roofs. Where an occupied roof has an assembly occupancy with an occupant load exceeding 100 for Group A-2 and 300 for other Group A occupancies, all floors between the occupied roof and the level of exit discharge shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

Exception: Open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction.

903.2.1.7 Multiple fire areas. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided where multiple fire areas of Group A-1, A-2, A-3 or A-4 occupancies share exit or exit access components and the combined occupant load of those fire areas is 300 or more.

903.2.2 Ambulatory care facilities. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire floor containing an ambulatory care facility where either of the following conditions exist at any time:
1. Four or more care recipients are incapable of self-preservation, whether rendered incapable by staff or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable.
2. One or more care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation are located at other than the level of exit discharge serving such a facility.

In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the level of exit discharge, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire floor where such care is provided as well as all floors below, and all floors between the level of ambulatory care and the nearest level of exit discharge, including the level of exit discharge.

903.2.3 Group E. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for Group E occupancies as follows:
1. Throughout all Group E fire areas greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m²) in area.
2. Throughout every portion of educational buildings below the lowest level of exit discharge serving that portion of the building.

Exception: An automatic sprinkler system is not required in any area below the lowest level of exit discharge serving that area where every classroom throughout the building has not fewer than one exterior exit door at ground level.

903.2.4 Group F-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1. A Group F-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. A Group F-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group F-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
4. A Group F-1 occupancy used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m²).
903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all Group F-1 occupancy fire areas that contain woodworking operations in excess of 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area that generate finely divided combustible waste or use finely divided combustible materials.

903.2.5 Group H. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in high-hazard occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.

903.2.5.1 General. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in Group H occupancies.

903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler system shall be not less than that required by this code for the occupancy hazard classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a corridor protected by one row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.

903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY HAZARD CLASSIFICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fabrication areas</td>
<td>Ordinary Hazard Group 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service corridors</td>
<td>Ordinary Hazard Group 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage rooms without dispensing</td>
<td>Ordinary Hazard Group 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage rooms with dispensing</td>
<td>Extra Hazard Group 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corridors</td>
<td>Ordinary Hazard Group 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

903.2.6 Group I. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings with a Group I fire area.

Exceptions:

1. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group I-1 Condition 1 facilities.

2. An automatic sprinkler system is not required where Group I-4 day care facilities are at the level of exit discharge and where every room where care is provided has not fewer than one exterior exit door.

3. In buildings where Group I-4 day care is provided on levels other than the level of exit discharge, an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be installed on the entire floor where care is provided, all floors between the level of care and the level of exit discharge, and all floors below the level of exit discharge other than areas classified as an open parking garage.

903.2.7 Group M. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group M fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).

2. A Group M fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.

3. The combined area of all Group M fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).

4. A Group M occupancy used for the display and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

903.2.7.1 High-piled storage. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in accordance with the Fire Code in all buildings of Group M where storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.

903.2.8 Group R. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R fire area.

903.2.8.1 Group R-3. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.

903.2.8.2 Group R-4 Condition 1. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 1 occupancies.

903.2.8.3 Group R-4 Condition 2. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 2 occupancies. Attics shall be protected in accordance with Section 903.2.8.3.1 or 903.2.8.3.2.

903.2.8.3.1 Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment. Attics used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

903.2.8.3.2 Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment. Attics not used for living purposes, storage or fuel-fired equipment shall be protected in accordance with one of the following:

1. Attics protected throughout by a heat detector system arranged to activate the building fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907.2.10.

2. Attics constructed of noncombustible materials.

3. Attics constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood framing complying with Section 2303.2.

4. The automatic sprinkler system shall be extended to provide protection throughout the attic space.

903.2.8.4 Care facilities. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall
be permitted in care facilities with five or fewer individuals in a single-family dwelling.

903.2.9 Group S-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group S-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. A Group S-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group S-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).
5. A Group S-1 occupancy used for the storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m²).

903.2.9.1 Repair garages. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:

1. Buildings having two or more stories above grade plane, including basements, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet (929 m²).
2. Buildings not more than one story above grade plane, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

903.2.10 Group S-2 enclosed parking garages. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings classified as enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 406.6 where either of the following conditions exists:

1. Where the fire area of the enclosed parking garage exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
2. Where the enclosed parking garage is located beneath other groups.

   Exception: Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3 occupancies.

903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehi-

cles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

903.2.11 Specific building areas and hazards. In all occupancies other than Group U, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through 903.2.11.6.

903.2.11.1 Stories without openings. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all stories, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²) and where there is not provided not fewer than one of the following types of exterior wall openings:

1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior stairway complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012. Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totaling not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m²) in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

903.2.11.1.1 Opening dimensions and access. Openings shall have a minimum dimension of not less than 30 inches (762 mm). Such openings shall be accessible to the fire department from the exterior and shall not be obstructed in a manner such that fire fighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.

903.2.11.1.2 Openings on one side only. Where openings in a story are provided on only one side and the opposite wall of such story is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from such openings, the story shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, or openings as specified above shall be provided on not fewer than two sides of the story.

903.2.11.1.3 Basements. Where any portion of a basement is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls, partitions or other obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from hose streams, the basement shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.
903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and ending with the floor above the discharge. Chute sprinklers shall be accessible for servicing.

903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more located 55 feet (16 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.

Exceptions:
1. Open parking structures.
2. Occupancies in Group F-2.

903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts. Where required by the Mechanical Code, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.

Exception: Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).

903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct systems where an automatic sprinkler system is used to comply with Section 904.

903.2.11.6 Other required suppression systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 903.2, the provisions indicated in Table 903.2.11.6 require the installation of a fire suppression system for certain buildings and areas.

903.2.12 During construction. Automatic sprinkler systems required during construction, alteration and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 33 of the Fire Code.

903.3 Installation requirements. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through 903.3.8.

903.3.1 Standards. Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other chapters of this code, as applicable.

903.3.1.1 NFPA 13 sprinkler systems. Where the provisions of this code require that a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13 except as provided in Sections 903.3.1.1.1 and 903.3.1.1.2.

903.3.1.1.1 Exempt locations. Automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such rooms or areas are protected with an approved automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from a room merely because it is damp, of fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

1. A room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard.
2. A room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents, where approved by the fire code official.
3. Generator and transformer rooms separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
4. Rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly noncombustible contents.
5. Fire service access elevator machine rooms and machinery spaces.
6. Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces associated with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008.

903.3.1.2 Bathrooms. In Group R occupancies, other than Group R-4 occupancies, sprinklers shall not be required in bathrooms that do not exceed 55 square feet (5 m²) in area and are located within individual dwelling units or sleeping units, provided that walls and ceilings, including the walls and ceilings behind a shower enclosure or tub, are of noncombustible or limited-combustible materials with a 15-minute thermal barrier rating.

903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks. Sprinkler protection shall be provided for exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units and sleeping units where the building is of Type V construction, provided there is a roof or deck above. Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm) below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist construction.

903.3.1.2.2 Open-ended corridors. Sprinkler protection shall be provided in open-ended corridors and associated exterior stairways and ramps as specified in Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

903.3.1.2.3 Attics. Attic protection shall be provided as follows:

1. Attics that are used or intended for living purposes or storage shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system.

2. Where fuel-fired equipment is installed in an unapproved attic, not fewer than one quick-response intermediate temperature sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment.

3. Where located in a building of Type III, Type IV or Type V construction designed in accordance with Section 510.2 or 510.4, attics not required by Item 1 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following if the roof assembly is located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the lowest level of required fire department vehicle access:

3.1. Provide automatic sprinkler system protection.

3.2. Construct the attic using noncombustible materials.

3.3. Construct the attic using fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 of this code.

3.4. Fill the attic with noncombustible insulation. The height of the roof assembly shall be determined by measuring the distance from the lowest required fire vehicle access road surface adjacent to the building to the eave of the highest pitched roof, the intersection of the highest roof to the exterior wall or the top of the highest parapet, whichever yields the greatest distance. For the purpose of this measurement, required fire vehicle access roads shall include only those roads that are necessary for compliance with Section 503.

4. Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancy attics not required by Item 1 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following:

4.1. Provide automatic sprinkler system protection.

4.2. Provide a heat detection system throughout the attic that is arranged to activate the building fire alarm system.

4.3. Construct the attic using noncombustible materials.

4.4. Construct the attic using fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.

4.5. Fill the attic with noncombustible insulation.

903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one- and two-family dwellings; Group R-3, Group R-4 Condition 1 and townhouses shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D.

903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers. Where automatic sprinkler systems are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in all of the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:

1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient sleeping units in Group I-1 in accordance with this code.

2. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in ambulatory care facilities.

3. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group I-1 and R occupancies.

4. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.
903.3.3 Obstructed locations. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed with due regard to obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession stands, or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Not less than a 3-foot (914 mm) clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible fibers.

Exception: Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 904.

903.3.4 Actuation. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be automatically actuated unless specifically provided for in this code.

903.3.5 Water supplies. Water supplies for automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the requirements of this section and the Plumbing Code. For connections to public waterworks systems, the water supply test used for design of fire protection systems shall be adjusted to account for seasonal and daily pressure fluctuations based on information from the water supply authority and as approved by the fire code official.

903.3.5.1 Domestic services. Where the domestic service provides the water supply for the automatic sprinkler system, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

903.3.5.2 Residential combination services. A single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13R.

903.3.6 Hose threads. Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with automatic sprinkler systems shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.

903.3.7 Fire department connections. Fire department connections for automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.

903.3.8 Limited area sprinkler systems. Limited area sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with the standards listed in Section 903.3.1 except as provided in Sections 903.3.8.1 through 903.3.8.5.

903.3.8.1 Number of sprinklers. Limited area sprinkler systems shall not exceed six sprinklers in any single fire area.

903.3.8.2 Occupancy hazard classification. Only areas classified by NFPA 13 as Light Hazard or Ordinary Hazard Group 1 shall be permitted to be protected by limited area sprinkler systems.

903.3.8.3 Piping arrangement. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building with an automatic wet standpipe system, sprinklers shall be supplied by the standpipe system. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building without an automatic wet standpipe system, water shall be permit-

903.3.8.4 Supervision. Control valves shall not be installed between the water supply and sprinklers unless the valves are of an approved indicating type that are supervised or secured in the open position.

903.3.8.5 Calculations. Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be provided to demonstrate that the available water flow and pressure are adequate to supply all sprinklers installed in any single fire area with discharge densities corresponding to the hazard classification.

903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms. Valves controlling the water supply for automatic sprinkler systems, pumps, tanks, water levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and waterflow switches on all sprinkler systems shall be electrically supervised by a listed fire alarm control unit.

Exceptions:

1. Automatic sprinkler systems protecting one- and two-family dwellings.

2. Limited area sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.

3. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the automatic sprinkler system, and a separate shutoff valve for the automatic sprinkler system is not provided.

4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.

5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are sealed or locked in the open position.

6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the open position.

7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are sealed or locked in the open position.

903.4.1 Monitoring. Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different and shall be automatically transmitted to an approved supervising station or, where approved by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

Exceptions:

1. Underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility are not required to be monitored.

2. Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and separately annunciuated.
903.4.2 Alarms. An approved audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location, shall be connected to each automatic sprinkler system. Such sprinkler water-flow alarm devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation of the automatic sprinkler system shall actuate the building fire alarm system.

Exception: An alarm device shall not be required on the exterior of the building when the sprinkler system is monitored by an approved central station, remote supervising station or proprietary supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

903.4.3 Floor control valves. Approved supervised indicating control valves shall be provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor in high-rise buildings.

903.4.4 Where a sprinkler system is looped such that more than one control valve must be closed to stop flow from that zone, a sign shall be placed at each control valve indicating the locations of the other control valves for that zone.

903.5 Testing and maintenance. Sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.

SECTION 904
ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

904.1 General. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, other than automatic sprinkler systems, shall be designed, installed, inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this section and the applicable referenced standards.

904.2 Where permitted. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems installed as an alternative to the required automatic sprinkler systems of Section 903 shall be approved by the fire code official.

904.2.1 Restriction on using automatic sprinkler system exceptions or reductions. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall not be considered alternatives for the purposes of exceptions or reductions allowed for automatic sprinkler systems or by other requirements of this code.

904.2.2 Commercial hood and duct systems. Each required commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct system required by Section 609 of the Fire Code or Chapter 5 of the Mechanical Code to have a Type I hood shall be protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system installed in accordance with this code.

904.3 Installation. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed in accordance with this section.

904.3.1 Electrical wiring. Electrical wiring shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

904.3.2 Actuation. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be automatically actuated and provided with a manual means of actuation in accordance with Section 904.11.1. Where more than one hazard could be simultaneously involved in fire due to their proximity, all hazards shall be protected by a single system designed to protect all hazards that could become involved.

Exception: Multiple systems shall be permitted to be installed if they are designed to operate simultaneously.

904.3.3 System interlocking. Automatic equipment interlocks with fuel shutoffs, ventilation controls, door closers, window shutters, conveyor openings, smoke and heat vents and other features necessary for proper operation of the fire-extinguishing system shall be provided as required by the design and installation standard utilized for the hazard.

904.3.4 Alarms and warning signs. Where alarms are required to indicate the operation of automatic fire-extinguishing systems, distinctive audible and visible alarms and warning signs shall be provided to warn of pending agent discharge. Where exposure to automatic-extinguishing agents poses a hazard to persons and a delay is required to ensure the evacuation of occupants before agent discharge, a separate warning signal shall be provided to alert occupants once agent discharge has begun. Audible signals shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.

904.3.5 Monitoring. Where a building fire alarm system is installed, automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be monitored by the building fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

904.4 Inspection and testing. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the provisions of this section prior to acceptance.

904.4.1 Inspection. Prior to conducting final acceptance tests, all of the following items shall be inspected:

1. Hazard specification for consistency with design hazard.
2. Type, location and spacing of automatic- and manual-initiating devices.
3. Size, placement and position of nozzles or discharge orifices.
4. Location and identification of audible and visible alarm devices.
5. Identification of devices with proper designations.
6. Operating instructions.

904.4.2 Alarm testing. Notification appliances, connections to fire alarm systems and connections to approved supervising stations shall be tested in accordance with this section and Section 907 to verify proper operation.

904.4.2.1 Audible and visible signals. The audibility and visibility of notification appliances signaling agent discharge or system operation, where required, shall be verified.

904.4.3 Monitor testing. Connections to protected premises and supervising station fire alarm systems shall be tested to verify proper identification and retransmission of alarms from automatic fire-extinguishing systems.
904.5 Wet-chemical systems. Wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.6 Dry-chemical systems. Dry-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.7 Foam systems. Foam-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 17A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.8 Carbon dioxide systems. Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.9 Halon systems. Halogenated extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 12 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.10 Clean-agent systems. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 2001 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

904.11 Automatic water mist systems. Automatic water mist systems shall be permitted in applications that are consistent with the applicable listing or approvals and shall comply with Sections 904.11.1 through 904.11.3.

904.11.1 Design and installation requirements. Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 904.11.1.1 through 904.11.1.4.

904.11.1.1 General. Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 750 and the manufacturer’s instructions.

904.11.1.2 Actuation. Automatic water mist systems shall be automatically actuated.

904.11.1.3 Water supply protection. Connections to a potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the Plumbing Code.

904.11.1.4 Secondary water supply. Where a secondary water supply is required for an automatic sprinkler system, an automatic water mist system shall be provided with an approved secondary water supply.

904.11.2 Water mist system supervision and alarms. Supervision and alarms shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.

904.11.2.1 Monitoring. Monitoring shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.1.

904.11.2.2 Alarms. Alarms shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.2.

904.11.2.3 Floor control valves. Floor control valves shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.3.

904.11.3 Testing and maintenance. Automatic water mist systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.

904.12 Commercial cooking systems. The automatic fire-extinguishing system for commercial cooking systems shall be of a type recognized for protection of commercial cooking equipment and exhaust systems of the type and arrangement protected. Preengineered automatic dry- and wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be tested in accordance with UL 300 and listed and labeled for the intended application. Other types of automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be listed and labeled for specific use as protection for commercial cooking operations. The system shall be installed in accordance with this code, its listing and the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems of the following types shall be installed in accordance with the referenced standard indicated, as follows:

1. Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems, NFPA 12.
3. Foam-water sprinkler system or foam-water spray systems, NFPA 16.
4. Dry-chemical extinguishing systems, NFPA 17.
5. Wet-chemical extinguishing systems, NFPA 17A.

Exception: Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are tested in accordance with UL 710B and listed, labeled and installed in accordance with Section 304.1 of the Mechanical Code.

904.12.1 Manual system operation. A manual actuation device shall be located at or near a means of egress from the cooking area not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from the kitchen exhaust system. The manual actuation device shall be installed not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the floor and shall clearly identify the hazard protected. The manual actuation shall require a maximum force of 40 pounds (178 N) and a maximum movement of 14 inches (356 mm) to actuate the fire suppression system.

Exception: Automatic sprinkler systems shall not be required to be equipped with manual actuation means.

904.12.2 System interconnection. The actuation of the fire suppression system shall automatically shut down the fuel or electrical power supply to the cooking equipment. The fuel and electrical supply reset shall be manual.

904.12.3 Carbon dioxide systems. Where carbon dioxide systems are used, there shall be a nozzle at the top of the ventilating duct. Additional nozzles that are symmetrically arranged to give uniform distribution shall be installed within vertical ducts exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) and horizontal ducts exceeding 50 feet (15240 mm). Dampers shall be installed at either the top or the bottom of the duct and shall be arranged to operate automatically upon ac-
SECTION 905
STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

905.1 General. Standpipe systems shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 905.2 through 905.10. In buildings used for high-piled combustible storage, fire protection shall be in accordance with the Fire Code.

905.2 Installation standard. Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14. Fire department connections for standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.

Exceptions:

1. The residual pressure of 100 psi for 2 inches by 1 1/2 inches (63.5 mm by 38.2 mm) hose connection and 65 psi for 1 1/2 inches by 1 1/2 inches (38.2 mm by 38.2 mm) hose connection is not required to be greater than 65 psi in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where the highest floor level is not more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

2. No fire pump shall be required provided that the standpipes are capable of accepting delivery by fire department apparatus of a minimum of 250 gallons per minute (gpm) at 65 pounds per square inch (psi) to the topmost floor in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, or a minimum of 500 gpm at 65 psi to the topmost floor in all other buildings, from the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

905.3 Required installations. Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by Sections 905.3.1 through 905.3.8. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with automatic sprinkler systems.

Exception: Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

905.3.1 Building height. Class III standpipe systems shall be installed throughout buildings where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, or where the floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the highest level of fire department vehicle access. In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access for purposes of this section, recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less shall be excluded. Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department vehicle to the building impractical or impossible shall be excluded from the determination of the lowest level or highest level of fire department vehicle access.

Exceptions:

1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2. Class I manual standpipes are allowed in open parking garages where the highest floor is located not more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

3. Class I manual dry standpipes are allowed in open parking garages that are subject to freezing temperatures, provided that the hose connections are located as required for Class II standpipes in accordance with Section 905.5.

4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.

5. Hose stations for use by the building occupants shall be allowed, subject to the approval of the Fire Chief, provided that each hose connection is 2 inches (63.5 mm) and is equipped with a 2 1/2 inches by 1 1/2 inches (63.5 mm by 38.2 mm) reducer and a cap attached with a chain.
905.3.2 **Group A.** Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered Group A buildings having an *occupant load* exceeding 1,000 persons.

**Exceptions:**
1. Open-air-seating spaces without enclosed spaces.
2. Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.

905.3.3 **Covered and open mall buildings.** Covered mall and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be equipped with Class I hose connections connected to the *automatic sprinkler system* sized to deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the most hydraulically remote hose connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The standpipe system shall be designed to not exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa) residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire department connection to the most remote hose connection. Hose connections shall be provided at each of the following locations:

1. Within the mall at the entrance to each *exit passageway* or *corridor*.
2. At each floor-level landing within *interior exit stairways* opening directly on the mall.
3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.
4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.
5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

905.3.4 **Stages.** Stages greater than 1,000 square feet in area (93 m²) shall be equipped with a Class III wet standpipe system with 1 1/2-inch and 2 1/2-inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose connections on each side of the stage.

**Exception:** Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system*, a 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

905.3.4.1 **Hose and cabinet.** The 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped with sufficient lengths of 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an *approved* adjustable fog nozzle and be mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

905.3.5 **Underground buildings.** Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

905.3.6 **Helistops and heliports.** Buildings with a rooftop helistop or heliport shall be equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the helistop or heliport is located in accordance with Section 2007.5 of the Fire Code.

905.3.7 **Marinas and boatyards.** Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with Chapter 36 of the Fire Code.

905.3.8 **Rooftop gardens and landscaped roofs.** Buildings or structures that have rooftop gardens or landscaped roofs and that are equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the rooftop garden or landscaped roof is located.

905.4 **Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.** Class I standpipe hose connections shall be provided in all of the following locations:

1. In every required *interior exit stairway*, a hose connection shall be provided for each story above and below grade. Hose connections shall be located at an intermediate landing between stories, unless otherwise approved by the fire code official.
2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the *exit opening* of a *horizontal exit*.

**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to a *horizontal exit* are reachable from an *interior exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the *horizontal exit*.

3. In every *exit passageway*, at the entrance from the *exit passageway* to other areas of a building.

**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an *exit passageway* are reachable from an *interior exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the entrance from the *exit passageway* to other areas of the building.

4. In covered mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall. In open mall buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.

5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), a hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an *interior exit stairway* with access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.
6. Where the most remote portion of a nonsprinklered floor or story is more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) from a hose connection or the most remote portion of a sprinklered floor or story is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection, the fire code official is authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in approved locations.

905.4.1 Protection. Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an interior exit stairway shall be protected by a degree of fire resistance equal to that required for vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.

Exception: In buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, laterals that are not located within an interior exit stairway are not required to be enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.

905.4.2 Interconnection. In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.5 Location of Class II standpipe hose connections. Class II standpipe hose connections shall be accessible and located so that all portions of the building are within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose.

905.5.1 Groups A-1 and A-2. In Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies having occupant loads exceeding 1,000 persons, hose connections shall be located on each side of any stage, on each side of the rear of the auditorium, on each side of the balcony and on each tier of dressing rooms.

905.5.2 Protection. Fire-resistance-rated protection of risers and laterals of Class II standpipe systems is not required.

905.5.3 Class II system 1-inch hose. A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) hose shall be allowed to be used for hose stations in light-hazard occupancies where investigated and listed for this service and where approved by the fire code official.

905.6 Location of Class III standpipe hose connections. Class III standpipe systems shall have hose connections located as required for Class I standpipes in Section 905.4 and shall have Class II hose connections as required in Section 905.5.

905.6.1 Protection. Risers and laterals of Class III standpipe systems shall be protected as required for Class I systems in accordance with Section 905.4.1.

905.6.2 Interconnection. In buildings where more than one Class III standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.7 Cabinets. Cabinets containing fire-fighting equipment such as standpipes, fire hoses, fire extinguishers or fire department valves shall not be blocked from use or obscured from view.

905.7.1 Cabinet equipment identification. Cabinets shall be identified in an approved manner by a permanently attached sign with letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high in a color that contrasts with the background color, indicating the equipment contained therein.

Exceptions:
1. Doors not large enough to accommodate a written sign shall be marked with a permanently attached attached pictogram of the equipment contained therein.
2. Doors that have either an approved visual identification clear glass panel or a complete glass door panel are not required to be marked.

905.7.2 Locking cabinet doors. Cabinets shall be unlocked.

Exceptions:
1. Visual identification panels of glass or other approved transparent frangible material that is easily broken and allows access.
2. Approved locking arrangements.

905.8 Dry standpipes. Dry standpipes shall not be installed.

Exception: Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.9 Valve supervision. Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the open position so that a change in the normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory signal at the supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is provided, a signal shall be transmitted to the control unit.

Exceptions:
1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility do not require supervision.
2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.

905.10 During construction. Standpipe systems required during construction and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Section 3311.

SECTION 906
PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

906.1 Where required. Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in all of the following locations:
1. In Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4 and S occupancies.

Exceptions:
1. In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each dwelling unit is provided with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.
2. In Group E occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in locations specified in
Items 2 through 6 where each classroom is provided with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C.

3. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) distance of travel from commercial cooking equipment and from domestic cooking equipment in Group I-1; Group I-2, Condition 1; and Group R-2 college dormitory occupancies.

4. In areas where flammable or combustible liquids are stored, used or dispensed.

5. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in accordance with Section 3315.1 of the Fire Code.

6. Where required by the Fire Code sections indicated in Table 906.1.

7. Special-hazard areas, including but not limited to laboratories, computer rooms and generator rooms, where required by the fire code official.

906.2 General requirements. Portable fire extinguishers shall be selected and installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 10.

Exceptions:

1. The distance of travel to reach an extinguisher shall not apply to the spectator seating portions of Group A-5 occupancies.

2. In Group I-3, portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be located at staff locations.

906.3 Size and distribution. The size and distribution of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.3.1 through 906.3.4.

906.3.1 Class A fire hazards. The minimum sizes and distribution of portable fire extinguishers for occupancies that involve primarily Class A fire hazards shall comply with Table 906.3(1).

906.3.2 Class B fire hazards. Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with depths less than or equal to 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with Table 906.3(2).

Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with a depth of greater than 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with NFPA 10.

906.3.3 Class C fire hazards. Portable fire extinguishers for Class C fire hazards shall be selected and placed on the basis of the anticipated Class A or B hazard.

906.3.4 Class D fire hazards. Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving combustible metals shall be selected and placed in accordance with NFPA 10.

906.4 Cooking grease fires. Fire extinguishers provided for the protection of cooking grease fires shall be of an approved type compatible with the automatic fire-extinguishing system agent and in accordance with Section 904.12.5 of the Fire Code.

### Table 906.1
 ADDITIONAL REQUIRED PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS IN THE FIRE CODE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IFC SECTION</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>303.5</td>
<td>Asphalt kettles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307.5</td>
<td>Open burning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308.1.3</td>
<td>Open flames—torches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309.4</td>
<td>Powered industrial trucks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005.2</td>
<td>Aircraft towing vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005.3</td>
<td>Aircraft welding apparatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005.4</td>
<td>Aircraft fuel-servicing tank vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005.5</td>
<td>Aircraft hydrant fuel-servicing vehicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005.6</td>
<td>Aircraft fuel-dispensing stations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007.7</td>
<td>Heliports and heliports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2108.4</td>
<td>Dry cleaning plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2305.5</td>
<td>Motor fuel-dispensing facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2310.6.4</td>
<td>Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2311.6</td>
<td>Repair garages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2404.4.1</td>
<td>Spray-finishing operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2405.4.2</td>
<td>Dip-tank operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2406.4.2</td>
<td>Powder-coating areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2804.3</td>
<td>Lumberyards/woodworking facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2808.8</td>
<td>Recycling facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2809.5</td>
<td>Exterior lumber storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2903.5</td>
<td>Organic-coating areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3006.3</td>
<td>Industrial ovens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3104.12</td>
<td>Tents and membrane structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3206.10</td>
<td>High-piled storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3315.1</td>
<td>Buildings under construction or demolition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3317.3</td>
<td>Roofing operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3408.2</td>
<td>Tire rebuilding/storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3504.2.6</td>
<td>Welding and other hot work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3604.4</td>
<td>Marinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3703.6</td>
<td>Combustible fibers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5703.2.1</td>
<td>Flammable and combustible liquids, general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5704.3.3.1</td>
<td>Indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5704.3.7.5.2</td>
<td>Liquid storage rooms for flammable and combustible liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5705.4.9</td>
<td>Solvent distillation units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5706.4.2</td>
<td>Farms and construction sites—flammable and combustible liquids storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5706.4.10.1</td>
<td>Bulk plants and terminals for flammable and combustible liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5706.5.4.5</td>
<td>Commercial, industrial, governmental or manufacturing establishments—fuel dispensing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5706.6.4</td>
<td>Tank vehicles for flammable and combustible liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5906.5.7</td>
<td>Flammable solids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6108.2</td>
<td>LP-gas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
906.5 Conspicuous location. Portable fire extinguishers shall be located in conspicuous locations where they will be readily accessible and immediately available for use. These locations shall be along normal paths of travel, unless the fire code official determines that the hazard posed indicates the need for placement away from normal paths of travel.

906.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Portable fire extinguishers shall not be obstructed or obscured from view. In rooms or areas in which visual obstruction cannot be completely avoided, means shall be provided to indicate the locations of extinguishers.

906.7 Hangers and brackets. Hand-held portable fire extinguishers, not housed in cabinets, shall be installed on the hangers or brackets supplied. Hangers or brackets shall be securely anchored to the mounting surface in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

906.8 Cabinets. Cabinets used to house portable fire extinguishers shall not be locked.

Exceptions:
1. Where portable fire extinguishers subject to malicious use or damage are provided with a means of ready access.
2. In Group I-3 occupancies and in mental health areas in Group I-2 occupancies, access to portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be locked or to be located in staff locations provided the staff has keys.

906.9 Extinguisher installation. The installation of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.9.1 through 906.9.3.

906.9.1 Extinguishers weighing 40 pounds or less. Portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight not exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor.

906.9.2 Extinguishers weighing more than 40 pounds. Hand-held portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 3.5 feet (1067 mm) above the floor.

906.9.3 Floor clearance. The clearance between the floor and the bottom of installed hand-held portable fire extinguishers shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

906.10 Wheeled units. Wheeled fire extinguishers shall be conspicuously located in a designated location.

SECTION 907
FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS

907.1 General. This section covers the application, installation, performance and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components.

907.1.1 Construction documents. Construction documents for fire alarm systems shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the Fire Code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code official.

907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings. Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be submitted for review and approval prior to system installation, and shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following where applicable to the system being installed:
1. A floor plan that indicates the use of all rooms.
2. Locations of alarm-initiating devices.
3. Locations of alarm notification appliances, including candela ratings for visible alarm notification appliances.
4. Design minimum audibility level for occupant notification.
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

5. Location of fire alarm control unit, transponders and notification power supplies.
6. Annunciators.
7. Power connection.
8. Battery calculations.
9. Conductor type and sizes.
10. Voltage drop calculations.
11. Manufacturers' data sheets indicating model numbers and listing information for equipment, devices and materials.
12. Details of ceiling height and construction.
13. The interface of fire safety control functions.

907.1.3 Equipment. Systems and components shall be listed and approved for the purpose for which they are installed.

907.2 Where required—new buildings and structures. An approved fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and NFPA 72 shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.23 and provide occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5, unless other requirements are provided by another section of this code.

Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box shall be provided in an approved location to initiate a fire alarm signal for fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices. Where other sections of this code allow elimination of fire alarm boxes due to sprinklers, a single fire alarm box shall be installed.

Exceptions:
1. The manual fire alarm box is not required for fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control and supervisory service.
2. The manual fire alarm box is not required for Group R-2 occupancies unless required by the fire code official to provide a means for fire watch personnel to initiate an alarm during a sprinkler system impairment event. Where provided, the manual fire alarm box shall not be located in an area that is accessible to the public.

907.2.1 Group A. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies where the occupant load due to the assembly occupancy is 300 or more. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more. Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

Exception: Where approved, the prerecorded announcement is allowed to be manually deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole purpose of allowing a live voice announcement from an approved, constantly attended location.

907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions. Stadiums, arenas and grandstands required tocaption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.4.

907.2.2 Group B. A manual fire alarm system shall be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group B occupant load of all floors is 500 or more.
2. The Group B occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.
3. The fire area contains an ambulatory care facility.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities. Fire areas containing ambulatory care facilities shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system installed within the ambulatory care facility and in public use areas outside of tenant spaces, including public corridors and elevator lobbies.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, provided the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.3 Group E. A manual fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E occupancies. When automatic sprinkler systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

Exceptions:
1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or less.
2. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not be required in Group E occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an approved occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.

3. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:
   - 3.1. Interior corridors are protected by smoke detectors.
   - 3.2. Auditoriums, cafeterias, gymnasiums and similar areas are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.
   - 3.3. Shops and laboratories involving dusts or vapors are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.

4. Manual fire alarm boxes shall not be required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:
   - 4.1. The building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
   - 4.2. The emergency voice/alarm communication system will activate on sprinkler waterflow.
   - 4.3. Manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

907.2.4 Group F. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group F occupancies where both of the following conditions exist:
   1. The Group F occupancy is two or more stories in height.
   2. The Group F occupancy has a combined occupant load of 500 or more above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler waterflow.

907.2.5 Group H. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group H-5 occupancies and in occupancies used for the manufacture of organic coatings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed for highly toxic gases, organic peroxides and oxidizers in accordance with Chapters 60, 62 and 63, respectively, of the Fire Code.

907.2.6 Group I. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group I occupancies. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.6.1, 907.2.6.2 and 907.2.6.3.3.

Exceptions:
   1. Manual fire alarm boxes in sleeping units of Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies shall not be required at exits if located at all care providers’ control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.
   2. Occupant notification systems are not required to be activated where private mode signaling installed in accordance with NFPA 72 is approved by the fire code official and staff evacuation responsibilities are included in the fire safety and evacuation plan required by Section 404 of the Fire Code.

907.2.6.1 Group I-1. In Group I-1 occupancies, an automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in corridors, waiting areas open to corridors and habitable spaces other than sleeping units and kitchens. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5.

Exceptions:
   1. For Group I-1 Condition 1 occupancies, smoke detection in habitable spaces is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
   2. Smoke detection is not required for exterior balconies.

907.2.6.1.1 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.6.2 Group I-2. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in corridors in Group I-2 Condition 1 facilities and spaces permitted to be open to the corridors by Section 407.2. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.4. Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies shall be equipped with an automatic smoke detection system as required in Section 407.

Exceptions:
   1. Corridor smoke detection is not required in smoke compartments that contain sleeping units where such units are provided with smoke detectors that comply with UL 268. Such detectors shall provide a visual display on the corridor side of each sleeping unit and
shall provide an audible and visual alarm at the care providers’ station attending each unit.

2. Corridor smoke detection is not required in smoke compartments that contain sleeping units where sleeping unit doors are equipped with automatic door-closing devices with integral smoke detectors on the unit sides installed in accordance with their listing, provided that the integral detectors perform the required alerting function.

907.2.6.3 Group I-3 occupancies. Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection system installed for alerting staff.

907.2.6.3.1 System initiation. Actuation of an automatic fire-extinguishing system, automatic sprinkler system, a manual fire alarm box or a fire detector shall initiate an approved fire alarm signal that automatically notifies staff.

907.2.6.3.2 Manual fire alarm boxes. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required to be located in accordance with Section 907.4.2 where the fire alarm boxes are provided at staff-attended locations having direct supervision over areas where manual fire alarm boxes have been omitted.

907.2.6.3.2.1 Manual fire alarm boxes in detainee areas. Manual fire alarm boxes are allowed to be locked in areas occupied by detainees, provided that staff members are present within the subject area and have keys readily available to operate the manual fire alarm boxes.

907.2.6.3.3 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout resident housing areas, including sleeping units and contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally accessible to residents.

Exceptions:

1. Other approved smoke detection arrangements providing equivalent protection, including, but not limited to, placing detectors in exhaust ducts from cells or behind protective guards listed for the purpose, are allowed when necessary to prevent damage or tampering.

2. Sleeping units in Use Conditions 2 and 3 as described in Section 308.

3. Smoke detectors are not required in sleeping units with four or fewer occupants in smoke compartments that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

907.2.7 Group M. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group M occupant load of all floors is 500 or more persons.

2. The Group M occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in covered or open mall buildings complying with Section 402.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.7.1 Occupant notification. During times that the building is occupied, the initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box or from a waterflow switch shall not be required to activate the alarm notification appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a constantly attended location from which evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.8 Group R-1. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.8.1 through 907.2.8.3.

907.2.8.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building where all of the following conditions are met:

2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow.
2.3. Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

907.2.8.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping units.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

907.2.8.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.9 Group R-2. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.9.1 through 907.2.9.3.

907.2.9.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located three or more stories above the lowest level of exit discharge.

2. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located more than one story below the highest level of exit discharge of exits serving the dwelling unit or sleeping unit.

3. The building contains more than 16 dwelling units or sleeping units.

Exceptions:

1. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all dwelling units or sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour fire partitions and each dwelling unit or sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon a sprinkler water flow.

3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving dwelling units and are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that dwelling units either have a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to the exits or are served by open-ended corridors designed in accordance with Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

907.2.9.2 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.9.3 Group R-2 college and university buildings. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing in all of the following locations:

1. Common spaces outside of dwelling units and sleeping units.

2. Laundry rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and storage rooms.

3. All interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units and where each sleeping unit or dwelling unit either has a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit or a means of egress door opening directly to an exit.

Required smoke alarms in dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing shall be interconnected with the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.2.10 Group R-4. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.10.1 through 907.2.10.3.

907.2.10.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building where all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system...
installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow.

2.3. Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

3. Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at exits where located at all nurses’ control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.

907.2.10.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in corridors, waiting areas open to corridors and habitable spaces other than sleeping units and kitchens.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke detection in habitable spaces is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

907.2.10.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.11 Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms. Listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms complying with UL 217 shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11.1 through 907.2.11.6 and NFPA 72.

907.2.11.1 Group R-1. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1:

1. In sleeping areas.

2. In every room in the path of the means of egress from the sleeping area to the door leading from the sleeping unit.

3. In each story within the sleeping unit, including basements. For sleeping units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

907.2.11.2 Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-1. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-3, R-4 and I-1 regardless of occupant load at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.

2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.

3. In each story within a dwelling unit, including basements but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

907.2.11.3 Installation near cooking appliances. Smoke alarms shall not be installed in the following locations unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm in a location required by Section 907.2.11.1 or 907.2.11.2:

1. Ionization smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 20 feet (6096 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

2. Ionization smoke alarms with an alarm-silencing switch shall not be installed less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

3. Photoelectric smoke alarms shall not be installed less than 6 feet (1829 mm) horizontally from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

907.2.11.4 Installation near bathrooms. Smoke alarms shall be installed not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from the door or opening of a bathroom that contains a bathtub or shower unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm required by Section 907.2.11.1 or 907.2.11.2.

907.2.11.5 Interconnection. Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit in Group R or I-1 occupancies, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

907.2.11.6 Power source. In new construction, required smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery backup shall be connected to an emergency electrical system in accordance with Section 2702. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be per-
manent and without a disconnecting switch other than as required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Smoke alarms are not required to be equipped with battery backup where they are connected to an emergency electrical system that complies with Section 2702.

907.2.11.7 Smoke detection system. Smoke detectors listed in accordance with UL 268 and provided as part of the building fire alarm system shall be an acceptable alternative to single- and multiple-station smoke alarms and shall comply with the following:

1. The fire alarm system shall comply with all applicable requirements in Section 907.
2. Activation of a smoke detector in a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall initiate alarm notification in the dwelling unit or sleeping unit in accordance with Section 907.5.2.
3. Activation of a smoke detector in a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall not activate alarm notification appliances outside of the dwelling unit or sleeping unit, provided that a supervisory signal is generated and monitored in accordance with Section 907.6.6.

907.2.12 Special amusement buildings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be provided in special amusement buildings in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1 through 907.2.12.3.

907.2.12.1 Alarm. Activation of any single smoke detector, the automatic sprinkler system or any other automatic fire detection device shall immediately activate an audible and visible alarm at the building at a constantly attended location from which emergency action can be initiated, including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

907.2.12.2 System response. The activation of two or more smoke detectors, a single smoke detector equipped with an alarm verification feature, the automatic sprinkler system or other approved fire detection device shall automatically do all of the following:

1. Cause illumination of the means of egress with light of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface level.
2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.
3. Activate an approved directional exit marking that will become apparent in an emergency.
4. Activate a prerecorded message, audible throughout the special amusement building, instructing patrons to proceed to the nearest exit. Alarm signals used in conjunction with the prerecorded message shall produce a sound that is distinctive from other sounds used during normal operation.

907.2.12.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. An emergency voice/alarm communication system, which is also allowed to serve as a public address system, shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2 and be audible throughout the entire special amusement building.

907.2.13 High-rise buildings. High-rise buildings shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

Exceptions:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Sections 412 and 907.2.22.
2. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
5. Buildings with an occupancy in Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 in accordance with Section 415.
6. In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a constantly attended location and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm communication system.

907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection. Automatic smoke detection in high-rise buildings shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.13.1.1 and 907.2.13.1.2.

907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection. Area smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section shall activate the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.10, smoke detectors shall be located as follows:

1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment or similar room that is not provided with sprinkler protection.
2. In each elevator machine room, machinery space, control room and control space and in elevator lobbies.

907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection. Duct smoke detectors complying with Section 907.3.1 shall be located as follows:

1. In the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m3/s). Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from a return air
duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m$^3$/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system. Where a wired communication system is approved in lieu of an emergency responder radio coverage system in accordance with Section 510 of the Fire Code, the wired fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, areas of refuge and inside interior exit stairways. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the interior exit stairway.

907.2.14 Atriums connecting more than two stories. A fire alarm system shall be installed in occupancies with an atrium that connects more than two stories, with smoke detection installed in locations required by a rational analysis in Section 909.4 and in accordance with the system operation requirements in Section 909.17. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5. Such occupancies in Group A, E or M shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system complying with the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.15 High-piled combustible storage areas. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout high-piled combustible storage areas where required by Section 3206.5 of the Fire Code.

907.2.16 Aerosol storage uses. Aerosol storage rooms and general-purpose warehouses containing aerosols shall be provided with an approved manual fire alarm system where required by the Fire Code.

907.2.17 Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills. Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills shall be provided with a manual fire alarm system.

907.2.18 Underground buildings with smoke control systems. Where a smoke control system is installed in an underground building in accordance with this code, automatic smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.18.1.

907.2.18.1 Smoke detectors. Not fewer than one smoke detector listed for the intended purpose shall be installed in all of the following areas:

1. Mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.
2. Elevator lobbies.
3. The main return and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system serving more than one story and located in a serviceable area down-stream of the last duct inlet.
4. Each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more floors from return air ducts or plenums of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems, except that in Group R occupancies, a listed smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m$^3$/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

907.2.18.2 Alarm required. Activation of the smoke control system shall activate an audible alarm at a constantly attended location.

907.2.19 Deep underground buildings. Where the lowest level of a structure is more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge, the structure shall be equipped throughout with a manual fire alarm system, including an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.20 Covered and open mall buildings. Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m$^2$) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.21 Residential aircraft hangars. Not fewer than one single-station smoke alarm shall be installed within a residential aircraft hangar as defined in Chapter 2 and shall be interconnected into the residential smoke alarm or other sounding device to provide an alarm that will be audible in all sleeping areas of the dwelling.

907.2.22 Airport traffic control towers. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in airport control towers in accordance with Sections 907.2.22.1 and 907.2.22.2.

Exception: Audible appliances shall not be installed within the control tower cab.

907.2.22.1 Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and automatic sprinklers. Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Outside each opening into interior exit stairways.
5. Along the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.
6. Outside each opening into the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.
907.2.22.2 Other airport traffic control towers. Airport traffic control towers with a single exit or where sprinklers are not installed throughout shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.
7. Accessible utility shafts.

907.2.23 Battery rooms. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in areas containing stationary storage battery systems with a liquid capacity of more than 50 gallons (189 L).

907.3 Fire safety functions. Automatic fire detectors utilized for the purpose of performing fire safety functions shall be connected to the building’s fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Detectors shall, upon actuation, perform the intended function and activate the alarm notification appliances or activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system, the automatic fire detector shall be powered by normal electrical service and, upon actuation, perform the intended function. The detectors shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.3.1 Duct smoke detectors. Smoke detectors installed in ducts shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity present in the duct. Duct smoke detectors shall be connected to the building’s fire alarm control unit when a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Actuation of a duct smoke detector shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location and shall perform the intended fire safety function in accordance with this code and the Mechanical Code. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal and not as a fire alarm. They shall not be used as a substitute for required open area detection.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where duct smoke detectors activate the building’s alarm notification appliances.
2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and an audible signal in an approved location. Smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an approved location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

907.3.2 Delayed egress locks. Where delayed egress locks are installed on means of egress doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.7, an automatic smoke or heat detection system shall be installed as required by that section.

907.3.3 Elevator emergency operation. Automatic fire detectors and all fire alarm system components installed for elevator emergency operation shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and NFPA 72. Smoke detectors shall not be installed in unsprinklered elevator hoistways unless they are installed to activate the elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment.

907.3.4 Wiring. The wiring to the auxiliary devices and equipment used to accomplish the fire safety functions shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.4 Initiating devices. Where manual or automatic alarm initiation is required as part of a fire alarm system, the initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.1 through 907.4.3.1.

907.4.1 Protection of fire alarm control unit. In areas that are not continuously occupied, a single smoke detector shall be provided at the location of each fire alarm control unit, notification appliance circuit power extenders, and supervising station transmitting equipment.

Exception: Where ambient conditions prohibit installation of a smoke detector, a heat detector shall be permitted.

907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes. Where a manual fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6.

907.4.2.1 Location. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the entrance to each exit. In buildings not protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be located so that the exit access travel distance to the nearest box does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

907.4.2.2 Height. The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1372 mm) measured vertically, from the floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.

907.4.2.3 Color. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

907.4.2.4 Signs. Where fire alarm systems are not monitored by a supervising station, an approved permanent sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM SOUNDS CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.

Exception: Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the manual fire alarm box.

907.4.2.5 Protective covers. The fire code official is authorized to require the installation of listed manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box.
with protection from physical damage. The protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless approved. Protective covers shall not project more than that permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be accessible, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.

907.4.3 Automatic smoke detection. Where an automatic smoke detection system is required it shall utilize smoke detectors unless ambient conditions prohibit such an installation. In spaces where smoke detectors cannot be utilized due to ambient conditions, approved automatic heat detectors shall be permitted.

907.4.3.1 Automatic sprinkler system. For conditions other than specific fire safety functions noted in Section 907.3, in areas where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, an automatic sprinkler system installed in such areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and that is connected to the fire alarm system shall be approved as automatic heat detection.

907.5 Occupant notification systems. A fire alarm system shall announce at the fire alarm control unit and shall initiate occupant notification upon activation, in accordance with Sections 907.5.1 through 907.5.2.3.3. Where a fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by:

1. Automatic fire detectors.
2. Automatic sprinkler system workflow devices.
4. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

Exception: Where notification systems are allowed elsewhere in Section 907 to announce at a constantly attended location.

907.5.1 Presignal feature. A presignal feature shall not be installed unless approved by the fire code official and the fire department. Where a presignal feature is provided, a signal shall be announced at a constantly attended location approved by the fire department so that occupant notification can be activated in the event of fire or other emergency.

907.5.2 Alarm notification appliances. Alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall be listed for their purpose.

907.5.2.1 Audible alarms. Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and emit a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm.

Exceptions:
1. Audible alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.
2. A visible alarm notification appliance installed in a nurses’ control station or other continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2 Condition 2 suite shall be an acceptable alternative to the installation of audible alarm notification appliances throughout the suite in Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.
3. Where provided, audible notification appliances located in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3008.9.1 shall be connected to a separate notification zone for manual paging only.

907.5.2.1.1 Average sound pressure. The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of not less than 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupiable space within the building.

907.5.2.1.2 Maximum sound pressure. The maximum sound pressure level for audible alarm notification appliances shall be 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. Where the average ambient noise is greater than 95 dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.

907.5.2.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler workflow device or manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions giving approved information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in accordance with the building’s fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404 of the Fire Code. In high-rise buildings, the system shall operate on at least the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below. Speakers shall be provided throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided as follows:

1. Elevator groups.
2. Interior exit stairways.
3. Each floor.
4. Areas of refuge as defined in Chapter 2.

Exception: In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound in a constantly attended area and a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the overhead page.

907.5.2.2.1 Manual override. A manual override for emergency voice communication shall be pro-
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

vided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

907.5.2.2 Live voice messages. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

907.5.2.2.2 Live voice messages. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

907.5.2.2.2 Live voice messages. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

907.5.2.2.3 Alternate uses. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided the manual fire alarm use takes precedence over any other use.

907.5.2.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions. Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands are required to caption audible public announcements in accordance with Section 1108.2.7.3, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall be captioned. Prerecorded or live emergency captions shall be from an approved location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an emergency.

907.5.2.2.5 Emergency power. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

907.5.2.3 Visible alarms. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.3.

Exceptions:
1. Visible alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.
2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in exits as defined in Chapter 2.
3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.
4. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

907.5.2.3.1 Public use areas and common use areas. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public use areas and common use areas.

Exception: Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with not less than 20 percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-impaired employee(s).

907.5.2.3.2 Groups I-1 and R-1. Group I-1 and R-1 dwelling units or sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF SLEEP UNITS</th>
<th>SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS WITH VISIBLE ALARMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 to 25</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 75</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 to 100</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 200</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 1,000</td>
<td>5% of total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,001 and over</td>
<td>50 plus 5 for each 100 over 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

907.5.2.3.3 Group R-2. In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1. Such capability shall be permitted to include the potential for future interconnection of the building fire alarm system with the unit smoke alarms, replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible appliances, or future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations to required locations for visible appliances.

907.6 Installation and monitoring. A fire alarm system shall be installed and monitored in accordance with Sections 907.6.1 through 907.6.6.2 and NFPA 72.

907.6.1 Wiring. Wiring shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 72. Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

907.6.2 Power supply. The primary and secondary power supply for the fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Back-up power for single-station and multiple-station smoke alarms as required in Section 907.2.11.6.

907.6.3 Initiating device identification. The fire alarm system shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and supervisory status, as appropriate.

Exceptions:
1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m²) in area.
2. Fire alarm systems that only include manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating devices and not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.

3. Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.

4. Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.

907.6.3.1 Annunciation. The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an approved on-site location.

907.6.4 Zones. Each floor shall be zoned separately and a zone shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m²). The length of any zone shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm) in any direction.

Exception: Automatic sprinkler system zones shall not exceed the area permitted by NFPA 13.

907.6.4.1 Zoning indicator panel. A zoning indicator panel and the associated controls shall be provided in an approved location that is readily discernible and readily accessible to the responding fire department. The visual zone indication shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be canceled by the operation of an audible alarm-silencing switch. Zoning indicator panels shall include remote annunciator panels and zoning displays that are integral to the fire alarm control equipment.

907.6.4.1.1 Remote annunciator panels. Where remote annunciator panels are required, they shall be provided at the main entrance, at each designated fire department entrance, and where specified by Section 907.6.4.1.1.2. Remote annunciator panels shall be provided as follows:

907.6.4.1.1.1 Directory-style display. A directory-style annunciator shall be provided in buildings more than one story above or below grade and in buildings with more than one zone per floor. The directory-style annunciator shall consist of either an alpha-numeric LCD display or an approved directory-style panel with individual lamps. As a minimum, the annunciator shall indicate related floor, zone and status conditions using readily identifiable designations in plain English text.

Exception: Where a graphic display with individual lamps is provided in accordance with Section 907.6.4.1.1.2.

907.6.4.1.1.2 Graphic display. A graphic annunciator display shall be provided at the main entrance, and in the fire command center or at the fire alarm control panel location where there is no fire command center, for buildings of the following types:

1. High-rise buildings.
2. Covered mall buildings.
3. Nursing homes and hospitals.

4. Buildings of any occupancy where three or more exits are provided per floor level above or below the level of exit discharge.

5. Buildings comprised of more than one street address with separate entrances.


907.6.4.1.2.1 Graphic display features. Graphic annunciator displays shall consist of an integrated graphic annunciator panel, or where approved in buildings not more than four stories above or two stories below the fire department entrance, a directory-style annunciator panel with a permanently mounted graphic diagram. Graphic annunciator displays shall be fabricated of a durable material and shall incorporate the following features:

1. A graphic diagram that identifies:
   1.1. Building address.
   1.2. North arrow.
   1.3. Building floor plan outline of each general type, where the orientation of each diagram is consistent with the annunciator location.

2. Individual lamps that identify each associated device, floor, zone and system status condition. Lamp colors shall be coordinated with the associated system conditions as follows: red for alarm, yellow or amber for supervisory, and yellow or amber for system trouble. Green lamps shall be permitted to indicate annunciator power supervision. A push-button style switch shall be provided for lamp test operation.

3. Audible alert sounder that locally annunciates alarm, trouble, and supervisory conditions with an alert silencing-switch that is accessible to authorized personnel only.

Exception: An audible sounder is not required for an annunciator panel where the
required audible annunciation is provided by fire alarm control equipment that is located adjacent to the annunciator.

907.6.4.2 High-rise buildings. In high-rise buildings, a separate zone by floor shall be provided for each of the following types of alarm-initiating devices where provided:

1. Smoke detectors.
2. Sprinkler waterflow devices.
4. Other approved types of automatic fire detection devices or suppression systems.

907.6.5 Access. Access shall be provided to each fire alarm device and notification appliance for periodic inspection, maintenance and testing.

907.6.6 Monitoring. Fire alarm systems required by this chapter or by the Fire Code shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.
3. Automatic sprinkler systems in one- and two-family dwellings.

907.6.6.1 Automatic telephone-dialing devices. Automatic telephone-dialing devices used to transmit an emergency alarm shall not be connected to any fire department telephone number unless approved by the fire chief.

907.6.6.2 Termination of monitoring service. Termination of fire alarm monitoring services shall be in accordance with Section 901.9 of the Fire Code.

907.7 Acceptance tests and completion. Upon completion of the installation, the fire alarm system and all fire alarm components shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.7.1 Single- and multiple-station alarm devices. When the installation of the alarm devices is complete, each device and interconnecting wiring for multiple-station alarm devices shall be tested in accordance with the smoke alarm provisions of NFPA 72.

907.7.2 Record of completion. A record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72 verifying that the system has been installed and tested in accordance with the approved plans and specifications shall be provided.

907.7.3 Instructions. Operating, testing and maintenance instructions and record drawings (“as-builts”) and equipment specifications shall be provided at an approved location.

907.8 Inspection, testing and maintenance. The maintenance and testing schedules and procedures for fire alarm and fire detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 907.8 of the Fire Code.

---

SECTION 908
EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS

908.1 General. The systems required by this section shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of both this code and the Fire Code. Before proceeding with design, construction, installation, or use of systems required by Sections 908.2 through 908.6, the owner shall request and participate in a coordination meeting with DCRA and the Fire Department to determine the applicable code requirements. The meeting shall be attended by all concerned parties, including, but not limited to, the owner, contractor, architect and design professionals.

908.2 Group H occupancies. Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided in accordance with Section 415.5. Emergency alarms for notification of an emergency condition in an HPM facility shall be provided as required in Section 415.11.3.5. A continuous gas-detection system shall be provided for HPM gases in accordance with Section 415.11.7.

908.3 Highly toxic and toxic materials. A gas detection system shall be provided to detect the presence of highly toxic or toxic gas at or below the permissible exposure limit (PEL) or ceiling limit of the gas for which detection is provided. The system shall be capable of monitoring the discharge from the treatment system at or below one-half the immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) limit.

Exception: A gas detection system is not required for toxic gases when the physiological warning threshold level for the gas is at a level below the accepted PEL for the gas.

908.3.1 Alarms. The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to a constantly attended control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be both visible and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

Exception: Signal transmission to a constantly attended control station is not required when not more than one cylinder of highly toxic or toxic gas is stored.

908.3.2 Shutoff of gas supply. The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for whichever gas is detected.

Exception: Automatic shutdown is not required for reactors utilized for the production of highly toxic or toxic compressed gases where such reactors are:

1. Operated at pressures less than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103.4 kPa).
2. Constantly attended.
3. Provided with readily accessible emergency shutoff valves.

908.3.3 Valve closure. The automatic closure of shutoff valves shall be in accordance with the following:

1. When the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or
exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

2. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

3. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold enclosure, the shutoff valve for the compressed container of specific gas detected supplying the manifold shall automatically close.

**Exception:** When the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at a use location or within a gas valve enclosure of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve in the gas valve enclosure for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

908.4 Ozone gas-generator rooms. Ozone gas-generator rooms shall be equipped with a continuous gas detection system that will shut off the generator and sound a local alarm when concentrations above the PEL occur.

908.5 Repair garages. A flammable-gas detection system shall be provided in repair garages for vehicles fueled by non-odorized gases in accordance with Section 406.8.5.

908.6 Refrigerant detector. Machinery rooms shall contain a refrigerant detector with an audible and visual alarm. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The alarm shall be actuated at a value not greater than the corresponding TLV-TWA values for the refrigerant classification shown in the Mechanical Code for the refrigerant classification. Detectors and alarms shall be placed in approved locations. The detector shall transmit a signal to an approved location.

908.7 Carbon dioxide (CO₂) systems. Emergency alarm systems in accordance with Section 5307.5.2 of the Fire Code shall be provided where required for compliance with Section 5307.5 of the Fire Code.

**SECTION 909**

**SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS**

909.1 Scope and purpose. This section applies to mechanical or passive smoke control systems where they are required by other provisions of this code. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke- and heat-venting provisions found in Section 910. Mechanical smoke control systems shall not be considered exhaust systems under Chapter 5 of the Mechanical Code.

909.2 General design requirements. Buildings, structures or parts thereof required by this code to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The construction documents shall include sufficient information and detail to adequately describe the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied by sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

909.3 Special inspection and test requirements. In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements that buildings, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 shall undergo special inspections and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the construction documents shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms in Section 1704.

909.4 Analysis. A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted construction documents and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 909.4.1 through 909.4.7.

909.4.1 Stack effect. The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effect will not adversely interfere with the system’s capabilities. In determining the maximum probable stack effect, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

909.4.2 Temperature effect of fire. Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 909.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with the system’s capabilities.

909.4.3 Wind effect. The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of Chapter 16.

909.4.4 HVAC systems. The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems status. The design shall consider the effects of the fire on the HVAC systems.
909.5 Smoke barrier construction. Smoke barriers required for passive smoke control and a smoke control system using the pressurization method shall comply with Section 709. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls \( A/A_w = 0.00100 \)
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways: \( A/A_w = 0.00035 \)
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts: \( A/A_w = 0.00150 \)
4. Floors and roofs: \( A/A_f = 0.00050 \)
where:

\( A = \) Total leakage area, square feet (m²).
\( A_f = \) Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m²).
\( A_w = \) Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m²).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings due to gaps around doors and operable windows. The total leakage area of the smoke barrier shall be determined in accordance with Section 909.5.1 and tested in accordance with Section 909.5.2.

909.5.1 Total leakage area. Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area multiplied by the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps around doors and operable windows.

909.5.2 Testing of leakage area. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems utilizing the pressurization method. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area of passive smoke control systems shall be verified through methods such as door fan testing or other methods, as approved by the fire code official.

909.5.3 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by fire door assemblies complying with Section 716.5.3.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors listed for releasing service installed in accordance with Section 907.3.
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method.
3. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 909.5.3.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall be close-fitting within operational tolerances and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and, where permitted by the door manufacturer’s listing, positive-latching devices are not required.
4. In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.
5. Group I-3.
6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank-down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

909.5.3.1 Group I-1 Condition 2; Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where doors are installed across a corridor, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and shall have a vision panel with fire protection-rated glazing materials in fire protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

909.5.3.2 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) smoke damper complying with Section 717.

909.6 Pressurization method. The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

909.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The minimum pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be 0.05-inch water gage (0.0124 kPa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

909.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be
determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with Section 1010.1.3. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

\[ F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/(2(W-d)) \]  \hspace{1cm} (Equation 9-1)

where:
\[ A = \text{Door area, square feet (m}^2\text{).} \]
\[ d = \text{Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).} \]
\[ F = \text{Total door opening force, pounds (N).} \]
\[ F_{dc} = \text{Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).} \]
\[ K = \text{Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).} \]
\[ W = \text{Door width, feet (m).} \]
\[ \Delta P = \text{Design pressure difference, inches of water (Pa).} \]

909.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways. Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 909 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of this code and 909.21 of the Fire Code.

909.7 Airflow design method. Where approved by the fire code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflow shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects. Smoke control systems using the airflow method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

909.7.1 Prohibited conditions. This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. In no case shall airflow toward the fire exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the calculated airflow exceeds this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

909.8 Exhaust method. Where approved by the fire code official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

909.8.1 Smoke layer. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the smoke layer interface shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above a walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

909.9 Design fire. The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the registered design professional and approved by the fire code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 909.4 and this section.

909.9.1 Factors considered. The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

909.9.2 Design fire fuel. Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

909.9.3 Heat-release assumptions. The analysis shall make use of best available data from approved sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

909.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions. A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

909.10 Equipment. Equipment including, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers, shall be suitable for its intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates and as approved by the fire code official.

909.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

\[ T_s = (Qc/mc) + (T_a) \]  \hspace{1cm} (Equation 9-2)

where:
\[ c = \text{Specific heat of smoke at smoke layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg·K).} \]
\[ m = \text{Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).} \]
\[ Qc = \text{Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).} \]
\[ T_a = \text{Ambient temperature, °F (K).} \]
\[ T_s = \text{Smoke temperature, °F (K).} \]

Exception: Reduced \( T_s \) as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

909.10.2 Ducts. Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 909.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with the Mechanical Code. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, complying with the Mechanical Code and that are constructed of approved fire-resistance-rated materials.
909.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets. Equipment shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outside air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard.

909.10.4 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be listed and conform to the requirements of approved, recognized standards.

909.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty, with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer’s fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 16.

Motors driving fans shall not be operated beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts), as determined from measurement of actual current draw, and shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

909.11 Standby power. Smoke control systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

909.11.1 Equipment room. The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gears and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

909.11.2 Power sources and power surges. Elements of the smoke control system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptable power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke control system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other approved means.

909.12 Detection and control systems. Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and listed as smoke control equipment.

909.12.1 Verification. Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A preprogrammed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report. The preprogrammed weekly test shall operate all devices, equipment and components used for smoke control.

Exception: Where verification of individual components tested through the preprogrammed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal building operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly testing, where approved by the building official and in accordance with both of the following:

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a listed control unit.

2. Testing of all components bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the Fire Code.

909.12.2 Wiring. In addition to meeting requirements of NFPA 70, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

909.12.3 Activation. Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with this section.

909.12.3.1 Pressurization, airflow or exhaust method. Mechanical smoke control systems using the pressurization, airflow or exhaust method shall have completely automatic control.

909.12.3.2 Passive method. Passive smoke control systems actuated by approved spot-type detectors listed for releasing service shall be permitted.

909.12.4 Automatic control. Where completely automatic control is required or used, the automatic-control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1, manual controls that are readily accessible to the fire department and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

909.13 Control air tubing. Control air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections and shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

909.13.1 Materials. Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or brass, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Brass compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP-5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquids below 1,500°F.
(816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-brass joints only.

**Exception:** Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3 of the Mechanical Code.
2. Tubing and connected devices shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or moveable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing serving devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

909.13.2 Isolation from other functions. Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

909.13.3 Testing. Control air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

909.14 Marking and identification. The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

909.15 Control diagrams. Identical control diagrams showing all devices in the system and identifying their location and function shall be maintained current and kept on file with the fire code official, the fire department and in the fire command center in a format and manner approved by the fire chief.

909.16 Fire fighter’s smoke control panel. A fire fighter’s smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided and shall include manual control or override of automatic control for mechanical smoke systems. The panel shall be located in a fire command center complying with Section 911 in high-rise buildings or buildings with smoke-protected assembly seating. In all other buildings, the fire fighter’s smoke control panel shall be installed in an approved location adjacent to the fire alarm control panel. The fire fighter’s smoke control panel shall comply with Sections 909.16.1 through 909.16.3.

**Exception:** Where buildings are equipped with stair pressurization systems and/or elevator hoistway venting systems and no mechanical smoke control systems in accordance with Section 909, the required manual controls are permitted to be integral to the fire alarm control panel or located at another approved location and are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 909.16.

909.16.1 Smoke control systems. Fans within the building shall be shown on the fire fighter’s control panel. A clear indication of the direction of airflow and the relationship of components shall be displayed. Status indicators shall be provided for all smoke control equipment, annunciated by fan and zone, and by pilot-lamp-type indicators as follows:

1. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their normal status—WHITE.
2. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their off or closed status—RED.
3. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their on or open status—GREEN.
4. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in a fault status—YELLOW/AMBER.

909.16.2 Smoke control panel. The fire fighter’s control panel shall provide control capability over the complete smoke control system equipment within the building as follows:

1. ON-AUTO-OFF control over each individual piece of operating smoke control equipment that can also be controlled from other sources within the building. This includes stairway pressurization fans; smoke exhaust fans; supply, return and exhaust fans; elevator shaft fans and other operating equipment used or intended for smoke control purposes.
2. OPEN-AUTO-CLOSE control over individual dampers relating to smoke control and that are also controlled from other sources within the building.
3. ON-OFF or OPEN-CLOSE control over smoke control and other critical equipment associated with a fire or smoke emergency and that can only be controlled from the fire fighter’s control panel.

**Exceptions:**

1. Complex systems, where approved, where the controls and indicators are combined to control and indicate all elements of a single smoke zone as a unit.
2. Complex systems, where approved, where the control is accomplished by computer interface using approved, plain English commands.

909.16.3 Control action and priorities. The fire-fighter’s control panel actions shall be as follows:

1. ON-OFF and OPEN-CLOSE control actions shall have the highest priority of any control point within the building. Once issued from the fire fighter’s control panel, automatic or manual control from any other control point within the building shall not contradict the control action. Where automatic means are provided to interrupt normal, nonemergency equipment operation or produce a specific result to safeguard the building or equipment including, but
not limited to, duct freezestats, duct smoke detectors, high-temperature cutouts, temperature-actuated linkage and similar devices, such means shall be capable of being overridden by the fire fighter’s control panel. The last control action as indicated by each fire fighter’s control panel switch position shall prevail. Control actions shall not require the smoke control system to assume more than one configuration at any one time.

**Exception:** Power disconnects required by NFPA 70.

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of airflow in both minimum and maximum conditions.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure-difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification.

### 909.18 Acceptance testing

**Devices, equipment, components and sequences** shall be individually tested. These tests, in addition to those required by other provisions of this code, shall consist of determination of function, sequence and, where applicable, capacity of their installed condition.

**909.18.1 Detection devices.** Smoke or fire detectors that are a part of a smoke control system shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 9 in their installed condition. Where applicable, this testing shall include verification of airflow in both minimum and maximum conditions.

**909.18.2 Ducts.** Ducts that are part of a smoke control system shall be traversed using generally accepted practices to determine actual air quantities.

**909.18.3 Dampers.** Dampers shall be tested for function in their installed condition.

**909.18.4 Inlets and outlets.** Inlets and outlets shall be read using generally accepted practices to determine air quantities.

**909.18.5 Fans.** Fans shall be examined for correct rotation. Measurements of voltage, amperage, revolutions per minute (rpm) and belt tension shall be made.

**909.18.6 Smoke barriers.** Measurements using inclined manometers or other approved calibrated measuring devices shall be made of the pressure differences across smoke barriers. Such measurements shall be conducted for each possible smoke control condition.

**909.18.7 Controls.** Each smoke zone equipped with an automatic-initiation device shall be put into operation by the actuation of one such device. Each additional device within the zone shall be verified to cause the same sequence without requiring the operation of fan motors in order to prevent damage. Control sequences shall be verified throughout the system, including verification of override from the fire-fighter’s control panel and simulation of standby power conditions.

**909.18.8 Testing for smoke control.** Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector in accordance with Section 1705.18.

**909.18.8.1 Scope of testing.** Testing shall be conducted in accordance with the following:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure-difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification.

**909.18.8.2 Qualifications.** Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

**909.18.8.3 Reports.** A complete report of testing shall be prepared by the approved agency. The report shall include identification of all devices by manufacturer, nameplate data, design values, measured values and identification tag or mark. The report shall be reviewed by the responsible registered design professional and, when satisfied that the design intent has been achieved, the responsible registered design professional shall sign, seal and date the report.

**909.18.8.3.1 Report filing.** A copy of the final report shall be filed with the fire code official and an identical copy shall be maintained in an approved location at the building.

**909.18.9 Identification and documentation.** Charts, drawings and other documents identifying and locating each component of the smoke control system, and describing its proper function and maintenance requirements, shall be maintained on file at the building as an attachment to the report required by Section 909.18.8.3. Devices shall have an approved identifying tag or mark on them consist-
tent with the other required documentation and shall be dated indicating the last time they were successfully tested and by whom.

909.19 System acceptance. Buildings, or portions thereof, required by this code to comply with this section shall not be issued a certificate of occupancy until such time that the fire code official determines that the provisions of this section have been fully complied with and that the fire department has received satisfactory instruction on the operation, both automatic and manual, of the system and a written maintenance program complying with the requirements of Section 909.20.1 of the Fire Code has been submitted and approved by the fire code official.

Exception: In buildings of phased construction, a temporary certificate of occupancy, as approved by the fire code official, shall be allowed provided that those portions of the building to be occupied meet the requirements of this section and that the remainder does not pose a significant hazard to the safety of the proposed occupants or adjacent buildings.

909.20 Smokeproof enclosures. Where required by Section 1023.11, a smokeproof enclosure shall be constructed in accordance with this section. A smokeproof enclosure shall consist of an interior exit stairway or ramp that is enclosed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 1023 and an open exterior balcony or ventilated vestibule meeting the requirements of this section. Where access to the roof is required by the Fire Code, such access shall be from the smokeproof enclosure where a smokeproof enclosure is required.

909.20.1 Access. Access to the stairway or ramp shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony. The minimum dimension of the vestibule shall be not less than the required width of the corridor leading to the vestibule but shall not have a width of less than 44 inches (1118 mm) and shall not have a length of less than 72 inches (1829 mm) in the direction of egress travel.

909.20.2 Construction. The smokeproof enclosure shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings are not permitted other than the required means of egress doors. The vestibule shall be separated from the stairway or ramp by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The open exterior balcony shall be constructed in accordance with the fire-resistance rating requirements for floor assemblies.

909.20.2.1 Door closers. Doors in a smokeproof enclosure shall be self- or automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 and shall be installed at the floor-side entrance to the smokeproof enclosure. The actuation of the smoke detector on any door shall activate the closing devices on all doors in the smokeproof enclosure at all levels.

Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

909.20.3 Natural ventilation alternative. The provisions of Sections 909.20.3.1 through 909.20.3.3 shall apply to ventilation of smokeproof enclosures by natural means.

909.20.3.1 Balcony doors. Where access to the stairway or ramp is by way of an open exterior balcony, the door assembly into the enclosure shall be a fire door assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.

909.20.3.2 Vestibule doors. Where access to the stairway or ramp is by way of a vestibule, the door assembly into the vestibule shall be a fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5. The door assembly from the vestibule to the stairway shall have not less than a 20-minute fire protection rating complying with Section 716.5.

909.20.3.3 Vestibule ventilation. Each vestibule shall have a minimum net area of 16 square feet (1.5 m²) of opening in a wall facing an outer court, yard or public way that is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width.

909.20.4 Mechanical ventilation alternative. The provisions of Sections 909.20.4.1 through 909.20.4.4 shall apply to ventilation of smokeproof enclosures by mechanical means.

909.20.4.1 Vestibule doors. The door assembly from the building into the vestibule shall be a fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5.3. The door assembly from the vestibule to the stairway or ramp shall have not less than a 20-minute fire protection rating and shall meet the requirements for a smoke door assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.3. The door shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 105.

909.20.4.2 Vestibule ventilation. The vestibule shall be supplied with not less than one air change per minute and the exhaust shall be not less than 150 percent of supply. Supply air shall enter and exhaust air shall discharge from the vestibule through separate, tightly constructed ducts used only for that purpose. Supply air shall enter the vestibule within 6 inches (152 mm) of the floor level. The top of the exhaust register shall be located at the top of the smoke trap but not more than 6 inches (152 mm) down from the top of the trap, and shall be entirely within the smoke trap area. Doors in the open position shall not obstruct duct openings. Duct openings with controlling dampers are permitted where necessary to meet the design requirements, but dampers are not otherwise required.

909.20.4.2.1 Engineered ventilation system. Where a specially engineered system is used, the system shall exhaust a quantity of air equal to not less than 90 air changes per hour from any vestibule in the emergency operation mode and shall be sized to handle three vestibules simultaneously. Smoke detectors shall be located at the floor-side entrance to each vestibule and shall activate the system for the affected vestibule. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.
909.20.4.3 Smoke trap. The vestibule ceiling shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm) higher than the door opening into the vestibule to serve as a smoke and heat trap and to provide an upward-moving air column. The height shall not be decreased unless approved and justified by design and test.

909.20.4.4 Stairway or ramp shaft air movement system. The stairway or ramp shaft shall be provided with a dampered relief opening and supplied with sufficient air to maintain a minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) in the shaft relative to the vestibule with all doors closed.

909.20.5 Stairway and ramp pressurization alternative. Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the vestibule is not required, provided each interior exit stairway or ramp is pressurized to not less than 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and not more than 0.35 inches of water (87 Pa) in the shaft relative to the building measured with all interior exit stairway and ramp doors closed under maximum anticipated conditions of stack effect and wind effect.

909.20.6 Ventilating equipment. The activation of ventilating equipment required by the alternatives in Sections 909.20.4 and 909.20.5 shall be by smoke detectors installed at each floor level at an approved location at the entrance to the smokeproof enclosure. When the closing device for the stairway and ramp shaft and vestibule doors is activated by smoke detection or power failure, the mechanical equipment shall activate and operate at the required performance levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

909.20.6.1 Ventilation systems. Smokeproof enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems. The equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall comply with one of the following:

1. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and directly connected to the smokeproof enclosure or connected to the smokeproof enclosure by ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

2. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the smokeproof enclosure with intake or exhaust directly from and to the outside or through ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

3. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the building if separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

909.20.6.2 Standby power. Mechanical vestibule and stairway and ramp shaft ventilation systems and automatic fire detection systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

909.20.6.3 Acceptance and testing. Before the mechanical equipment is approved, the system shall be tested in the presence of the building official to confirm that the system is operating in compliance with these requirements.

909.21 Elevator hoistway pressurization alternative. Where elevator hoistway pressurization is provided in lieu of required enclosed elevator lobbies, the pressurization system shall comply with Sections 909.21.1 through 909.21.11.

909.21.1 Pressurization requirements. Elevator hoistways shall be pressurized to maintain a minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to adjacent occupied space on all floors. This pressure shall be measured at the midpoint of each hoistway door, with all elevator cars at the floor of recall and all hoistway doors on the floor of recall open and all other hoistway doors closed. The pressure differentials shall be measured between the hoistway and the adjacent elevator landing. The opening and closing of hoistway doors at each level must be demonstrated during this test. The supply air intake shall be from an outside, uncontaminated source located a minimum distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) from any air exhaust system or outlet.

Exceptions:

1. On floors containing only Group R occupancies, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and a dwelling unit or sleeping unit.

2. Where an elevator opens into a lobby enclosed in accordance with Section 3007.6 or 3008.6, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and the space immediately outside the door(s) from the floor to the enclosed lobby.

3. The pressure differential is permitted to be measured relative to the outdoor atmosphere on floors other than the following:

3.1. The fire floor.
3.2. The two floors immediately below the fire floor.
3.3. The floor immediately above the fire floor.
4. The minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to occupied floors are not required at the floor of recall with the doors open.

Section 909.21.1 Use of ventilation systems. Ventilation systems, other than hoistway supply air systems, are permitted to be used to exhaust air from adjacent spaces on the fire floor, two floors immediately below and one floor immediately above the fire floor to the building’s exterior where necessary to maintain positive pressure relationships as required in Section 909.21.1 during operation of the elevator shaft pressurization system.

Section 909.21.2 Rational analysis. A rational analysis complying with Section 909.4 shall be submitted with the construction documents.

Section 909.21.3 Ducts for system. Any duct system that is part of the pressurization system shall be protected with the same fire-resistance rating as required for the elevator shaft enclosure.

Section 909.21.4 Fan system. The fan system provided for the pressurization system shall be as required by Sections 909.21.4.1 through 909.21.4.4.

Section 909.21.4.1 Fire resistance. Where located within the building, the fan system that provides the pressurization shall be protected with the same fire-resistance rating required for the elevator shaft enclosure.

Section 909.21.4.2 Smoke detection. The fan system shall be equipped with a smoke detector that will automatically shut down the fan system when smoke is detected within the system.

Section 909.21.4.3 Separate systems. A separate fan system shall be used for each elevator hoistway.

Section 909.21.4.4 Fan capacity. The supply fan shall be either adjustable with a capacity of not less than 1,000 cfm (0.4719 m³/s) per door, or that specified by a registered design professional to meet the requirements of a designed pressurization system.

Section 909.21.5 Standby power. The pressurization system shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

Section 909.21.6 Activation of pressurization system. The elevator pressurization system shall be activated upon activation of either the building fire alarm system or the elevator lobby smoke detectors. Where both a building fire alarm system and elevator lobby smoke detectors are present, each shall be independently capable of activating the pressurization system.

Section 909.21.7 Testing. Testing for performance shall be required in accordance with Section 909.18.8. System acceptance shall be in accordance with Section 909.19.

Section 909.21.8 Marking and identification. Detection and control systems shall be marked in accordance with Section 909.14.

Section 909.21.9 Control diagrams. Control diagrams shall be provided in accordance with Section 909.15.

Section 909.21.10 Control panel. A control panel complying with Section 909.16 shall be provided.

Section 909.21.11 System response time. Hoistway pressurization systems shall comply with the requirements for smoke control system response time in Section 909.17.

SECTION 910
SMOKE AND HEAT REMOVAL

Section 910.1 General. Where required by this code, smoke and heat vents or mechanical smoke removal systems shall conform to the requirements of this section.

Section 910.2 Where required. Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall be installed as required by Sections 910.2.1 and 910.2.2.

Exceptions:
1. Frozen food warehouses used solely for storage of Class I and II commodities where protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
2. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers.
3. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of 50 (m·s)₁/₂ or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers.

Section 910.2.1 Group F-1 or S-1. Smoke and heat vents installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or a mechanical smoke removal system installed in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group F-1 or S-1 occupancy having more than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) of undivided area. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.

Exception: Group S-1 aircraft repair hangars.

Section 910.2.2 High-piled combustible storage. Smoke and heat removal required by Table 3206.2 of the Fire Code for buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 in unsprinklered buildings. In buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a smoke and heat removal system shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or 910.4. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the upper sur-
910.3 Smoke and heat vents. The design and installation of smoke and heat vents shall be in accordance with Sections 910.3.1 through 910.3.3.

910.3.1 Listing and labeling. Smoke and heat vents shall be listed and labeled to indicate compliance with UL 793 or FM 4430.

910.3.2 Smoke and heat vent locations. Smoke and heat vents shall be located 20 feet (6096 mm) or more from adjacent lot lines and fire walls and 10 feet (3048 mm) or more from fire barriers. Vents shall be uniformly located within the roof in the areas of the building where the vents are required to be installed by Section 910.2 with consideration given to roof pitch, sprinkler location and structural members.

910.3.3 Smoke and heat vents area. The required aggregate area of smoke and heat vents shall be calculated as follows:

For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1:

\[ A_{VR} = \frac{V}{9000} \]  
(Equation 9-3)

where:

- \( A_{VR} \) = The required aggregate vent area (ft\(^2\)).
- \( V \) = Volume (ft\(^3\)) of the area that requires smoke removal.

For unsprinklered buildings:

\[ A_{VR} = \frac{A_{FA}}{50} \]  
(Equation 9-4)

where:

- \( A_{VR} \) = The required aggregate vent area (ft\(^2\)).
- \( A_{FA} \) = The area of the floor in the area that requires smoke removal.

910.4 Mechanical smoke removal systems. Mechanical smoke removal systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 910.4.1 through 910.4.7.

910.4.1 Automatic sprinklers required. The building shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

910.4.2 Exhaust fan construction. Exhaust fans that are part of a mechanical smoke removal system shall be rated for operation at 221°F (105°C). Exhaust fan motors shall be located outside of the exhaust fan air stream.

910.4.3 System design criteria. The mechanical smoke removal system shall be sized to exhaust the building at a minimum rate of two air changes per hour based upon the volume of the building or portion thereof without contents. The capacity of each exhaust fan shall not exceed 30,000 cubic feet per minute (14.2 m\(^3\)/sec).

910.4.3.1 Makeup air. Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be manual or automatic. The minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per minute (0.74 m\(^2\) per 0.4719 m\(^3\)/s) of smoke exhaust.

910.4.4 Activation. The mechanical smoke removal system shall be activated by manual controls only.

910.4.5 Manual control location. Manual controls shall be located so as to be accessible to the fire service from an exterior door of the building and protected against interior fire exposure by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

910.4.6 Control wiring. Wiring for operation and control of mechanical smoke removal systems shall be connected ahead of the main disconnect in accordance with Section 701.12E of NFPA 70 and be protected against interior fire exposure to temperatures in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

910.4.7 Controls. Where building air-handling and mechanical smoke removal systems are combined or where independent building air-handling systems are provided, fans shall automatically shut down in accordance with the Mechanical Code. The manual controls provided for the smoke removal system shall have the capability to override the automatic shutdown of fans that are part of the smoke removal system.

910.5 Maintenance. Smoke and heat vents and mechanical smoke removal systems shall be maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.

SECTION 911
FIRE COMMAND CENTER

911.1 General. Where required by other sections of this code and in buildings classified as high-rise buildings by this code, a fire command center for fire department operations shall be provided and shall comply with Sections 911.1.1 through 911.1.6.

911.1.1 Location and access. The fire command center shall be directly accessible from the exterior on the address side of the building; or, where approved by the code official in consultation with the Fire Chief, in an interior location which has direct access from the entrance lobby on the address side of the building.

911.1.1.1 Identification. The entrance door to the fire command center shall be illuminated and clearly marked “Fire Command Center” with letters a minimum of 3 inches (76 mm) in height on a contrasting background. In instances where the fire command center is not located near the building’s main entrance, a sign indicating the location of the fire control room shall be conspicuously posted near the building’s main entrance.

911.1.1.2 Prohibited use. Electrical, mechanical or plumbing equipment other than those associated with the fire command center, shall not be located within the fire command center. The fire command center shall
not be used for other than its intended use unless approved by the Fire Chief.

911.1.1.3 Locking arrangements. The fire command center shall be secured from unauthorized entry and shall be accessible to the Department at all times.

911.1.1.4 Access. Where access to the fire command center from the building’s exterior is restricted because of secured openings, a key box-in accordance with Section 506 of the Fire Code shall be installed at the building’s main entrance or other approved location for Department access. The key box shall be of an approved type and shall contain keys to gain necessary access to the building and fire command center as required by the code official in consultation with the Fire Chief.

911.1.2 Separation. The fire command center shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

911.1.3 Size. The room shall be of sufficient size to accommodate all equipment and features required by this section but not less than 96 square feet (8.9 m²). A minimum clear aisle width of 48 inches (122 cm) shall be provided in front of all equipment panels.

911.1.4 Layout approval. A layout of the fire command center and all features required by this section to be contained therein shall be submitted for approval prior to installation.

911.1.5 Storage. Storage unrelated to the operation of the fire command center shall be prohibited.

911.1.6 Required features. The fire command center shall comply with NFPA 72 and shall contain all of the following features:

1. The emergency voice/alarm communication system control unit.
2. The fire department communications system.
3. Fire detection and alarm system annunciator.
4. Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational.
5. The fire fighter’s control panel required by Section 909.16 for smoke control systems installed in the building.
6. Controls for unlocking interior exit stairway doors simultaneously.
7. Sprinkler valve and waterflow detector display panels.
8. Emergency and standby power status indicators.
9. A telephone for Department use with controlled access to the public telephone system.
10. Fire pump status indicators.
11. Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, fire fighter air replenishment system, fire-fighting equipment and fire department access, and other building features affecting emergency response. The schematic plans shall be readily accessible, diagrammatic in nature, and fabricated of durable material or provided with a protective cover and bound in one set.
12. A copy of the facility’s Fire Safety Plans and Fire Evacuation Plans that are prepared and maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.
13. Generator supervision devices, manual start and transfer features.
14. Public address system, where specifically required by other sections of this code.
15. Elevator fire recall switch in accordance with ASME A17.1/BSA 44.
16. Elevator emergency or standby power selector switch(es), where emergency or standby power is provided.
17. An approved Building Information Card that contains, but is not limited to, the following information:

17.1. General building information that includes: property name, address, the number of floors in the building (above and below grade), use and occupancy classification (for mixed uses, identify the different types of occupancies on each floor), and the estimated building population during the day, night, and weekend.
17.2. Building emergency contact information that includes: a list of the building’s emergency contacts including but not limited to building manager and building engineer and their respective work phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address.
17.3. Building construction information that includes: the type of building construction including but not limited to floors, walls, columns, and roof assembly.
17.4. Exit access and exit stairway information that includes: number of exit access and exit stairways in the building; each exit access and exit stairway designation and floors served; location where each exit access and exit stairway discharges; interior exit stairways that are pressurized; exit stairways provided with emergency lighting; each exit stairway that allows reentry; exit stairways providing roof access; elevator information that includes: number of elevator banks, elevator bank designation, elevator car numbers and respective floors that they serve; location of elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces; location of sky lobby; and location of freight elevator banks.
17.5. Building services and system information that includes: location of mechanical rooms, location of building management system, location and capacity of all fuel oil tanks, location of emergency generator, and location of natural gas service.

17.6. Fire protection system information that includes: locations of standpipes, location of fire pump room, location of fire department connections, floors protected by automatic sprinklers, location of different types of sprinkler systems installed including, but not limited to, dry, wet and pre-action.

17.7 Hazardous material information that includes: location of hazardous material and quantity of hazardous material.

SECTION 912
FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

912.1 Installation. Fire department connections shall be installed in accordance with the NFPA standard applicable to the system design and shall comply with Sections 912.2 through 912.6.

912.2 Location. With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hose connected to supply the system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. The location of fire department connections shall be approved by the fire chief.

912.2.1 Visible location. Fire department connections shall be located on the street side of buildings, fully visible and recognizable from the street or nearest point of fire department vehicle access or as otherwise approved by the fire chief.

912.2.2 Existing buildings. On existing buildings, wherever the fire department connection is not visible to approaching fire apparatus, the fire department connection shall be indicated by an approved sign mounted on the street front or on the side of the building. Such sign shall have the letters “FDC” not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high and words in letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high or an arrow to indicate the location. Such signs shall be subject to the approval of the fire code official.

912.3 Fire hose threads. Fire hose threads used in connection with standpipe systems shall be approved and shall be compatible with fire department hose threads.

912.4 Access. Immediate access to fire department connections shall be maintained at all times and without obstruction by fences, bushes, trees, walls or any other fixed or moveable object. Access to fire department connections shall be approved by the fire chief.

Exception: Fences, where provided with an access gate equipped with a sign complying with the legend requirements of this section and a means of emergency operation. The gate and the means of emergency operation shall be approved by the fire chief and maintained operational at all times.

912.4.1 Locking fire department connection caps. The fire code official is authorized to require locking caps on fire department connections for water-based fire protection systems where the responding fire department carries appropriate key wrenches for removal.

912.4.2 Clear space around connections. A working space of not less than 36 inches (762 mm) in width, 36 inches (914 mm) in depth and 78 inches (1981 mm) in height shall be provided and maintained in front of and to the sides of wall-mounted fire department connections and around the circumference of free-standing fire department connections, except as otherwise required or approved by the fire chief.

912.4.3 Physical protection. Where fire department connections are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, vehicle impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 312 of the Fire Code.

912.5 Signs. A metal sign with raised letters not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in size shall be mounted on all fire department connections serving automatic sprinklers, standpipes or fire pump connections. Such signs shall read: AUTOMATIC SPRINKLERS or STANDPIPES or TEST CONNECTION and shall be maintained at all times. Such signs shall include the words “FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION” in letters not less than 1 inch in size and a typeface not less than 1 inch in size. Such signs shall be publicly visible from the street or adjacent to the building served.

912.6 Backflow protection. The potable water supply to automatic sprinkler and standpipe systems shall be protected against backflow as required by the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 913
FIRE PUMPS

913.1 General. Where provided, fire pumps shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 20.

913.2 Protection against interruption of service. The fire pump, driver and controller shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 20 against possible interruption of service through damage caused by explosion, fire, flood, earthquake, rodents, insects, windstorm, freezing, vandalism and other adverse conditions.

913.2.1 Protection of fire pump rooms. Fire pumps shall be located in rooms that are separated from all other areas of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:
1. In other than high-rise buildings, separation by 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Separation is not required for fire pumps physically separated in accordance with NFPA 20.

3. Access to the fire pump room shall not be required to be directly from the exterior or from a fire-rated enclosure.

913.2.2 Circuits supplying fire pumps. Cables used for survivability of circuits supplying fire pumps shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.

913.3 Temperature of pump room. Suitable means shall be provided for maintaining the temperature of a pump room or pump house, where required, above 40°F (5°C).

913.3.1 Engine manufacturer’s recommendation. Temperature of the pump room, pump house or area where engines are installed shall never be less than the minimum recommended by the engine manufacturer. The engine manufacturer’s recommendations for oil heaters shall be followed.

913.4 Valve supervision. Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass valves, and isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised open by one of the following methods:

1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.
2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended location.
3. Locking valves open.
4. Sealing of valves and approved weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision. Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in the closed position.

913.5 Acceptance test. Acceptance testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 20.

SECTION 914
EMERGENCY RESPONDER SAFETY FEATURES

914.1 Shaftway markings. Vertical shafts shall be identified as required by Sections 914.1.1 and 914.1.2.

914.1.1 Exterior access to shaftways. Outside openings accessible to the fire department and that open directly on a hoistway or shaftway communicating between two or more floors in a building shall be plainly marked with the word “SHAFTWAY” in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible from the outside of the building.

914.1.2 Interior access to shaftways. Door or window openings to a hoistway or shaftway from the interior of the building shall be plainly marked with the word “SHAFT-WAY” in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible.

**Exception:** Markings shall not be required on shaftway openings that are readily discernible as openings onto a shaftway by the construction or arrangement.

914.2 Equipment room identification. Fire protection equipment shall be identified in an approved manner. Rooms containing controls for air-conditioning systems, sprinkler risers and valves or other fire detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for the use of the fire department. Approved signs required to identify fire protection equipment and equipment location shall be constructed of durable materials, permanently installed and readily visible.

SECTION 915
CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

915.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 915.1.1 through 915.6. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with Chapter 11 of the Fire Code.

915.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.3 Forced-air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an approved location.

915.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

**Exceptions:**

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms where there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms...
where carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:

2.1. In an approved location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

915.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an approved location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

915.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an approved location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

915.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 915.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 shall not be considered a private garage.

915.2 Locations. Where required by Section 915.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 915.2.1 through 915.2.3.

915.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

915.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in sleeping units.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the sleeping unit where the sleeping unit or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

915.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.

915.3 Detection equipment. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 915.1 through 915.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 915.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 915.5.

915.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 915.4.1 through 915.4.3.

915.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

915.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

915.4.3 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

915.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 915.5.1 through 915.5.3.

915.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

915.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 915.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

915.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

915.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.

SECTION 916
EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE

916.1 General. Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in all new buildings in accordance with Section 510 of the Fire Code.
917  
FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS
917.1 General. Fire apparatus access roads shall be provided and maintained in accordance with Section 503 of the Fire Code.

918  
KEY BOXES
918.1 General. Key boxes shall be provided and maintained in accordance with Section 506 of the Fire Code.
918.2 Where required. Key boxes are required where access to or within a structure or an area is restricted.
CHAPTER 10
MEANS OF EGRESS

SECTION 1001
ADMINISTRATION

1001.1 General. Buildings or portions thereof shall be provided with a means of egress system as required by this chapter. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design, construction and arrangement of means of egress components required to provide an approved means of egress from structures and portions thereof.

1001.2 Minimum requirements. It shall be unlawful to alter a building or structure in a manner that will reduce the number of exits or the minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress to less than required by this code.

1001.3 Maintenance. Means of egress shall be maintained in accordance with the Fire Code.

1001.4 Fire safety and evacuation plans. Fire safety and evacuation plans shall be provided for all occupancies and buildings where required by the Fire Code. Such fire safety and evacuation plans shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 401.2 and 404 of the Fire Code.

SECTION 1002
DEFINITIONS

1002.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS.
AISLE.
AISLE ACCESSWAY.
ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE.
AREA OF REFUGE.
BLEACHERS.
BREAKOUT.
COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL.
CORRIDOR.
DOOR, BALANCED.
EGRESS COURT.
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING.
EXIT.
EXIT ACCESS.
EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY.
EXIT ACCESS RAMP.
EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAY.
EXIT DISCHARGE.
EXIT DISCHARGE, LEVEL OF.
EXIT, HORIZONTAL.
EXIT PASSAGEWAY.
EXTERIOR EXIT RAMP.
EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.
FIRE EXIT HARDWARE.
FIXED SEATING.
FLIGHT.
FLOOR AREA, GROSS.
FLOOR AREA, NET.
FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING.
GRANDSTAND.
GUARD.
HANDRAIL.
INTERIOR EXIT RAMP.
INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.
LOW ENERGY POWER-OPERATED DOOR.
MEANS OF EGRESS.
MERCHANDISE PAD.
NOSING.
OCCUPANT LOAD.
OPEN-ENDED CORRIDOR.
PANIC HARDWARE.
PHOTOLUMINESCENT.
POWER-ASSISTED DOOR.
POWER-OPERATED DOOR.
PUBLIC WAY.
RAMP.
SCISSOR STAIRWAY.
SELF-LUMINOUS.
SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING.
STAIR.
STAIRWAY.
STAIRWAY, SPIRAL.
WINDER.

SECTION 1003
GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS

1003.1 Applicability. The general requirements specified in Sections 1003 through 1015 shall apply to all three elements of the means of egress system, in addition to those specific requirements for the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge detailed elsewhere in this chapter.
MEANS OF EGRESS

1003.2 Ceiling height. The means of egress shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Sloped ceilings in accordance with Section 1208.2.
2. Ceilings of dwelling units and sleeping units within residential occupancies in accordance with Section 1208.2.
3. Allowable projections in accordance with Section 1003.3.
4. Stair headroom in accordance with Section 1011.3.
5. Door height in accordance with Section 1010.1.1.
6. Ramp headroom in accordance with Section 1012.5.2.
7. The clear height of floor levels in vehicular and pedestrian traffic areas of public and private parking garages in accordance with Section 406.4.1.
8. Areas above and below mezzanine floors in accordance with Section 505.2.
9. The exit discharge and exit passageways in a means of egress system shall be allowed to have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

1003.3 Protruding objects. Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.

1003.3.1 Headroom. Protruding objects are permitted to extend below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2 where a minimum headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm) is provided over any walking surface, including walks, corridors, aisles and passageways. Not more than 50 percent of the ceiling area of a means of egress shall be reduced in height by protruding objects.

Exception: Door closers and stops shall not reduce headroom to less than 78 inches (1981 mm).

A barrier shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high. The leading edge of such a barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the floor.

1003.3.2 Post-mounted objects. A free-standing object mounted on a post or pylon shall not overhang that post or pylon more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the lowest point of the leading edge is more than 27 inches (686 mm) and less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (686 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to sloping portions of handrails between the top and bottom riser of stairs and above the ramp run.

1003.3.3 Horizontal projections. Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor shall not project horizontally more than 4 inches (102 mm) into the circulation path.

Exception: Handrails are permitted to protrude 4\(\frac{1}{2}\) inches (114 mm) from the wall.

1003.3.4 Clear width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of accessible routes.

1003.4 Floor surface. Walking surfaces of the means of egress shall have a slip-resistant surface and be securely attached.

1003.5 Elevation change. Where changes in elevation of less than 12 inches (305 mm) exist in the means of egress, sloped surfaces shall be used. Where the slope is greater than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), ramps complying with Section 1012 shall be used. Where the difference in elevation is 6 inches (152 mm) or less, the ramp shall be equipped with either handrails or floor finish materials that contrast with adjacent floor finish materials.

Exceptions:

1. A single step with a maximum riser height of 7 inches (178 mm) is permitted for buildings with occupancies in Groups F, H, R-2, R-3, S and U at exterior doors not required to be accessible by Chapter 11.
2. A stair with a single riser or with two risers and a tread is permitted at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter 11 where the risers and treads comply with Section 1011.5, the minimum depth of the tread is 13 inches (330 mm) and not less than one handrail complying with Section 1014 is provided within 30 inches (762 mm) of the centerline of the normal path of egress travel on the stair.
3. A step is permitted in aisles serving seating that has a difference in elevation less than 12 inches (305 mm) at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter 11, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1029.13 and the aisle is provided with a handrail complying with Section 1029.15.

Throughout a story in a Group I-2 occupancy, any change in elevation in portions of the means of egress that serve nonambulatory persons shall be by means of a ramp or sloped walkway.

1003.6 Means of egress continuity. The path of egress travel along a means of egress shall not be interrupted by a building element other than a means of egress component as specified in this chapter. Obstructions shall not be placed in the minimum width or required capacity of a means of egress component except projections permitted by this chapter. The minimum width or required capacity of a means of egress system shall not be diminished along the path of egress travel.

1003.7 Elevators, escalators and moving walks. Elevators, escalators and moving walks shall not be used as a component of a required means of egress from any other part of the building.

Exception: Elevators used as an accessible means of egress in accordance with Section 1009.4.
SECTION 1004 OCCUPANT LOAD

1004.1 Design occupant load. In determining means of egress requirements, the number of occupants for whom means of egress facilities are provided shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1004.1.1 Cumulative occupant loads. Where the path of egress travel includes intervening rooms, areas or spaces, cumulative occupant loads shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1004.1.1.1 Intervening spaces or accessory areas. Where occupants egress from one or more rooms, areas or spaces through others, the design occupant load shall be the combined occupant load of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces. Design of egress path capacity shall be based on the cumulative portion of occupant loads of all rooms, areas or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

1004.1.1.2 Adjacent levels for mezzanines. That portion of the occupant load of a mezzanine with required egress through a room, area or space on an adjacent level shall be added to the occupant load of that room, area or space.

1004.1.1.3 Adjacent stories. Other than for the egress components designed for convergence in accordance with Section 1005.6, the occupant load from separate stories shall not be added.

1004.1.2 Areas without fixed seating. The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.1.2. For areas without fixed seating, the occupant load shall be not less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under consideration by the occupant load factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in Table 1004.1.2. Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.1.2, the building official shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended function.

Exception: Where approved by the building official, the actual number of occupants for whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design occupant load.

1004.2 Increased occupant load. The occupant load permitted in any building, or portion thereof, is permitted to be increased from that number established for the occupancies in Table 1004.1.2, provided that all other requirements of the code are met based on such modified number and the occupant load does not exceed one occupant per 7 square feet (0.65 m²) of occupiable floor space. Where required by the building official, an approved aisle, seating or fixed equipment diagram substantiating any increase in occupant load shall be submitted. Where required by the building official, such diagram shall be posted.

1004.3 Posting of occupant load. Every room or space that is an assembly occupancy shall have the occupant load of the room or space posted in a conspicuous place, near the main

---

### TABLE 1004.1.2

#### MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES PER OCCUPANT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUNCTION OF SPACE</th>
<th>OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessory storage areas, mechanical equipment room</td>
<td>300 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural building</td>
<td>300 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft hangars</td>
<td>500 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airport terminal Baggage claim</td>
<td>20 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baggage handling</td>
<td>300 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concourse</td>
<td>100 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting areas</td>
<td>15 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly Gaming floors (keno, slots, etc.)</td>
<td>11 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhibit gallery and museum</td>
<td>30 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly with fixed seats</td>
<td>See Section 1004.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly without fixed seats Concentrated (chairs only—not fixed)</td>
<td>5 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standing space</td>
<td>15 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unconcentrated (tables and chairs)</td>
<td>7 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowling centers, allow 5 persons for each lane including 15 feet of runway, and for additional areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business areas</td>
<td>100 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courtrooms—other than fixed seating areas</td>
<td>40 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day care</td>
<td>35 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitories</td>
<td>50 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Educational Classroom area</td>
<td>20 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shops and other vocational room areas</td>
<td>50 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise rooms</td>
<td>50 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group H-5 Fabrication and manufacturing areas</td>
<td>200 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial areas</td>
<td>100 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institutional areas Inpatient treatment areas</td>
<td>240 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outpatient areas</td>
<td>100 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeping areas</td>
<td>120 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchens, commercial</td>
<td>200 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library Reading rooms</td>
<td>50 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stack area</td>
<td>100 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locker rooms</td>
<td>50 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mall buildings—covered and open</td>
<td>See Section 402.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercantile Storage, stock, shipping areas</td>
<td>60 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garages</td>
<td>300 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential</td>
<td>200 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skating rinks, swimming pools Rink and pool</td>
<td>50 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decks</td>
<td>15 gross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages and platforms</td>
<td>15 net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warehouses</td>
<td>500 gross</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Floor area in square feet per occupant.
MEANS OF EGRESS

exit or exit access doorway from the room or space. Posted
signs shall be of an approved legible permanent design and
shall be maintained by the owner or the owner’s authorized
agent.

1004.4 Fixed seating. For areas having fixed seats and aisles,
the occupant load shall be determined by the number of fixed
seats installed therein. The occupant load for areas in which
fixed seating is not installed, such as waiting spaces, shall be
determined in accordance with Section 1004.1.2 and added to
the number of fixed seats.

The occupant load of wheelchair spaces and the associ-
ated companion seat shall be based on one occupant for each
wheelchair space and one occupant for the associated com-
panion seat provided in accordance with Section 1108.2.3.

For areas having fixed seating without dividing arms, the
occupant load shall be not less than the number of seats based
on one person for each 18 inches (457 mm) of seating length.

The occupant load of seating booths shall be based on one
person for each 24 inches (610 mm) of booth seat length mea-
sured at the backrest of the seating booth.

1004.5 Outdoor areas. Yards, patios, courts and similar out-
door areas accessible to and usable by the building occupants
shall be provided with means of egress as required by this
chapter. The occupant load of such outdoor areas shall be
assigned by the building official in accordance with the antic-
pipated use. Where outdoor areas are to be used by persons in
addition to the occupants of the building, and the path of
egress travel from the outdoor areas passes through the build-
ing, means of egress requirements for the building shall be
based on the sum of the occupant loads of the building plus
the outdoor areas.

Exceptions:

1. Outdoor areas used exclusively for service of the
building need only have one means of egress.

2. Both outdoor areas associated with Group R-3 and
individual dwelling units of Group R-2.

1004.6 Multiple occupancies. Where a building contains
two or more occupancies, the means of egress requirements
shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occu-
pancy of that space. Where two or more occupancies utilize
portions of the same means of egress system, those egress
components shall meet the more stringent requirements of all
occupancies that are served.

SECTION 1005
MEANS OF EGRESS SIZING

1005.1 General. All portions of the means of egress system
shall be sized in accordance with this section.

Exception: Aisles and aisle accessways in rooms or
spaces used for assembly purposes complying with Sec-
tion 1029.

1005.2 Minimum width based on component. The mini-
imum width, in inches (mm), of any means of egress compo-
nents shall be not less than that specified for such component,
elsewhere in this code.

1005.3 Required capacity based on occupant load. The
required capacity, in inches (mm), of the means of egress for
any room, area, space or story shall be not less than that
determined in accordance with Sections 1005.3.1 and
1005.3.2.

1005.3.1 Stairways. The capacity, in inches, of means of
egress stairways shall be calculated by multiplying the
occupant load served by such stairways by a means of
egress capacity factor of 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) per occupant.
Where stairways serve more than one story, only the occu-
pant load of each story considered individually shall be
used in calculating the required capacity of the stairways
serving that story.

Exceptions:

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the
capacity, in inches (mm), of the means of egress stairways
shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by the stairway by a means of
egress capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant. Where stairways serve more than one story, only the occu-
pant load of each story considered individually shall be
used in calculating the required capacity of the stairways
serving that story.

2. Facilities with smoke-protected assembly seating
shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1029.6.2 indicated for stepped aisles for
exit access or exit stairways where the entire path
for means of egress from the seating to the exit
discharge is provided with a smoke control sys-
tem complying with Section 909.

3. Facilities with outdoor smoke-protected assembly
seating shall be permitted to use the capacity fac-
tors in Table 1029.6.3 indicated for stepped aisles for
exit access or exit stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit
discharge is open to the outdoors.

1005.3.2 Other egress components. The capacity, in
inches, of means of egress components other than stair-
ways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load
served by such component by a means of egress capacity
factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant.

Exceptions:

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the
capacity, in inches (mm), of means of egress components other than stair-
ways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by such component by a means of egress capacity
factor of 0.15 inch (3.8 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Facilities with smoke-protected assembly seating shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1029.6.2 indicated for level or ramped aisles for means of egress components other than stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

3. Facilities with outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1029.6.3 indicated for level or ramped aisles for means of egress components other than stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is open to the outdoors.

1005.4 Continuity. The minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress required from any story of a building shall not be reduced along the path of egress travel until arrival at the public way.

1005.5 Distribution of minimum width and required capacity. Where more than one exit, or access to more than one exit, is required, the means of egress shall be configured such that the loss of any one exit, or access to one exit, shall not reduce the available capacity or width to less than 50 percent of the required capacity or width.

1005.6 Egress convergence. Where the means of egress from stories above and below converge at an intermediate level, the capacity of the means of egress from the point of convergence shall be not less than the largest minimum width or the sum of the required capacities for the stairways or ramps serving the two adjacent stories, whichever is larger.

1005.7 Encroachment. Encroachments into the required means of egress width shall be in accordance with the provisions of this section.

1005.7.1 Doors. Doors, when fully opened, shall not reduce the required width by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Doors in any position shall not reduce the required width by more than one-half.

Exceptions:

1. Surface-mounted latch release hardware shall be exempt from inclusion in the 7-inch maximum (178 mm) encroachment where both of the following conditions exist:
   1.1. The hardware is mounted to the side of the door facing away from the adjacent wall where the door is in the open position.
   1.2. The hardware is mounted not less than 34 inches (865 mm) nor more than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor.

2. The restrictions on door swing shall not apply to doors within individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R-2 occupancies and dwelling units of Group R-3 occupancies.

1005.7.2 Other projections. Handrail projections shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 1014.8. Other nonstructural projections such as trim and similar decorative features shall be permitted to project into the required width not more than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) on each side.

Exception: Projections are permitted in corridors within Group I-2 Condition 1 in accordance with Section 407.4.3.

1005.7.3 Protruding objects. Protruding objects shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1003.3.

SECTION 1006

NUMBER OF EXITS AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAYS

1006.1 General. The number of exits or exit access doorways required within the means of egress system shall comply with the provisions of Section 1006.2 for spaces, including mezzanines, and Section 1006.3 for stories.

1006.2 Egress from spaces. Rooms, areas or spaces, including mezzanines, within a story or basement shall be provided with the number of exits or access to exits in accordance with this section.

1006.2.1 Egress based on occupant load and common path of egress travel distance. Two exits or exit access doorways from any space shall be provided where the design occupant load or the common path of egress travel distance exceeds the values listed in Table 1006.2.1.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, one means of egress is permitted within and from individual dwelling units with a maximum occupant load of 20 where the dwelling unit is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the common path of egress travel does not exceed 125 feet (38 100 mm).

2. Care suites in Group I-2 occupancies complying with Section 407.4.

1006.2.1.1 Three or more exits or exit access doorways. Three exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load of 501 to 1,000. Four exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load greater than 1,000.

1006.2.2 Egress based on use. The numbers of exits or access to exits shall be provided in the uses described in Sections 1006.2.2.1 through 1006.2.2.5.

1006.2.2.1 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms. Two exit access doorways are required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet (46 m²) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000
MEANS OF EGRESS

KJ) input capacity. Where two exit access doorways are required, one is permitted to be a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the room.

1006.2.2 Refrigeration machinery rooms. Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room.

All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1017.1.

Doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel, regardless of the occupant load served. Doors shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

1006.2.2.3 Refrigerated rooms or spaces. Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m²), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

Exit access travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1017.1, but all portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway where such rooms are not protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

Exception: Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the volume set forth in the Mechanical Code.

1006.2.2.4 Day care means of egress. Day care facilities, rooms or spaces where care is provided for more than 10 children that are 2 1/2 years of age or less, shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps. Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.

### TABLE 1006.2.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE</th>
<th>MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)</th>
<th>Without Sprinkler System (feet)</th>
<th>With Sprinkler System (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupant Load</td>
<td>OL ≤ 30</td>
<td>OL &gt; 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, E, M</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1, H-2, H-3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-4, H-5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1, I-2, I-4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-3 &lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-4 &lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S &lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.

c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1029.8.

d. For the travel distance limitations in Group I-2, see Section 407.4.

e. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building or within a Group R-3 or R-4 congregate living facility.

f. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
1006.3 Egress from stories or occupied roofs. The means of egress system serving any story or occupied roof shall be provided with the number of exits or access to exits based on the aggregate occupant load served in accordance with this section. The path of egress travel to an exit shall not pass through more than one adjacent story.

1006.3.1 Egress based on occupant load. Each story and occupied roof shall have the minimum number of independent exits, or access to exits, as specified in Table 1006.3.1. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1006.3.2. The required number of exits, or exit access stairways or ramps providing access to exits, from any story or occupied roof shall be maintained until arrival at the exit discharge or a public way.

TABLE 1006.3.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS PER STORY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS FROM STORY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-500</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501-1,000</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1,000</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1006.3.2 Single exits. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted from any story or occupied roof where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load, number of dwelling units and common path of egress travel distance does not exceed the values in Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2).

2. Rooms, areas and spaces complying with Section 1006.2.1 with exits that discharge directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, are permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.

3. Parking garages where vehicles are mechanically parked shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.

4. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.

5. Individual single-story or multistory dwelling units shall be permitted to have a single exit or access to a single exit from the dwelling unit provided that both of the following criteria are met:

   5.1. The dwelling unit complies with Section 1006.2.1 as a space with one means of egress.

   5.2. Either the exit from the dwelling unit discharges directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, or the exit access outside the dwelling unit’s entrance door provides access to not less than two approved independent exits.

1006.3.2.1 Mixed occupancies. Where one exit, or exit access stairway or ramp providing access to exits at other stories, is permitted to serve individual stories, mixed occupancies shall be permitted to be served by single exits provided each individual occupancy complies with the applicable requirements of Table 1006.3.2(1) or 1006.3.2(2) for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative occupant loads from adjacent occupancies shall be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1. In each story of a mixed occupancy building, the maximum number of occupants served by a single exit shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the calculated number of occupants of the space divided by the allowable number of occupants indicated in Table 1006.3.2(2) for each occupancy does not exceed one. Where dwelling units are located on a story with other occupancies, the actual number of dwelling units divided by four plus the ratio from the other occupancy does not exceed one.

SECTION 1007
EXIT AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY CONFIGURATION

1007.1 General. Exits, exit access doorways, and exit access stairways and ramps serving spaces, including individual building stories, shall be separated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

1007.1.1 Two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exits, exit access doorways, exit access stairways or ramps, or any combination thereof, are required from any portion of the exit access, they shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length of the

TABLE 1006.3.2(1)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 OCCUPANCIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STORY</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS</th>
<th>MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basement, first, second or third story above grade plane</td>
<td>R-2a,b</td>
<td>4 dwelling units</td>
<td>125 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth story above grade plane and higher</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 3048 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

NA = Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1030.

b. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units, use Table 1006.3.2(2).
maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in a straight line between them. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one exit stairway.

Exceptions:

1. Where interior exit stairways or ramps are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1020, the required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel within the corridor.

2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance shall not be less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the area served.

1007.1.3 Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps. Where two exit access stairways or ramps provide the required means of egress to exits at another story, the required separation distance shall be maintained for all portions of such exit access stairways or ramps.

1007.1.3.1 Three or more exit access stairways or ramps. Where more than two exit access stairways or ramps provide the required means of egress, not less than two shall be arranged in accordance with Section 1007.1.3.

SECTION 1008
MEANS OF EGRESS ILLUMINATION

1008.1 Means of egress illumination. Illumination shall be provided in the means of egress in accordance with Section 1008.2. Under emergency power, means of egress illumination shall comply with Section 1008.3.

1008.2 Illumination required. The means of egress serving a room or space shall be illuminated at all times that the room or space is occupied.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group U.
2. Aisle accessways in Group A.
3. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Groups R-1, R-2 and R-3.
4. Sleeping units of Group I occupancies.

1008.2.1 Illumination level under normal power. The means of egress illumination level shall be not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface.

Exception: For auditoriums, theaters, concert or opera halls and similar assembly occupancies, the illumination at the walking surface is permitted to be reduced during performances by one of the following methods...
provided that the required illumination is automatically restored upon activation of a premises’ fire alarm system:

1. Externally illuminated walking surfaces shall be permitted to be illuminated to not less than 0.2 footcandle (2.15 lux).
2. Steps, landings and the sides of ramps shall be permitted to be marked with self-luminous materials in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1, 1025.2.2 and 1025.2.4 by systems listed in accordance with UL 1994.

1008.2.2 Exit discharge. In Group I-2 occupancies where two or more exits are required, on the exterior landings required by Section 1010.6.1, means of egress illumination levels for the exit discharge shall be provided such that failure of any single lighting unit shall not reduce the illumination level on that landing to less than 1 footcandle (11 lux).

1008.3 Emergency power for illumination. The power supply for means of egress illumination shall normally be provided by the premises’ electrical supply.

1008.3.1 General. In the event of power supply failure in rooms and spaces that require two or more means of egress, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Aisles.
2. Corridors.
3. Exit access stairways and ramps.

1008.3.2 Buildings. In the event of power supply failure in buildings that require two or more means of egress, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Interior exit access stairways and ramps.
2. Interior and exterior exit stairways and ramps.
3. Exit passageways.
4. Vestibules and areas on the level of discharge used for exit discharge in accordance with Section 1028.1.
5. Exterior landings as required by Section 1010.1.6 for exit doorways that lead directly to the exit discharge.

1008.3.3 Rooms and spaces. In the event of power supply failure, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Electrical equipment rooms.
2. Fire command centers.
3. Fire pump rooms.
4. Generator rooms.
5. Public restrooms with an area greater than 300 square feet (27.87 m²).

1008.3.4 Duration. The emergency power system shall provide power for a duration of not less than 90 minutes and shall consist of storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Section 2702.

1008.3.5 Illumination level under emergency power. Emergency lighting facilities shall be arranged to provide initial illumination that is not less than an average of 1 footcandle (11 lux) and a minimum at any point of 0.1 footcandle (0.1 lux) measured along the path of egress at floor level. Illumination levels shall be permitted to decline to 0.6 footcandle (6 lux) average and a minimum at any point of 0.06 footcandle (0.6 lux) at the end of the emergency lighting time duration. A maximum-to-minimum illumination uniformity ratio of 40 to 1 shall not be exceeded. In Group I-2 occupancies, failure of any single lighting unit shall not reduce the illumination level to less than 0.2 foot-candle (2.2 lux).

SECTION 1009
ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

1009.1 Accessible means of egress required. Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. Accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. Where more than one means of egress are required by Section 1006.2 or 1006.3 from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by not less than two accessible means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. Accessible means of egress are not required to be provided in existing buildings.
2. One accessible means of egress is required from an accessible mezzanine level in accordance with Section 1009.3, 1009.4 or 1009.5.
3. In assembly areas with ramped aisles or stepped aisles, one accessible means of egress is permitted where the common path of egress travel is accessible and meets the requirements in Section 1029.8.

1009.2 Continuity and components. Each required accessible means of egress shall be continuous to a public way and shall consist of one or more of the following components:

1. Accessible routes complying with Section 1104.
2. Interior exit stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023.
3. Exit access stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1019.3 or 1019.4.
4. Exterior exit stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1027 and serving levels other than the level of exit discharge.
5. Elevators complying with Section 1009.4.
6. Platform lifts complying with Section 1009.5.
7. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1026.
8. Ramps complying with Section 1012.
9. Areas of refuge complying with Section 1009.6.
10. Exterior areas for assisted rescue complying with Section 1009.7 serving exits at the level of exit discharge.
1009.2.1 Elevators required. In buildings where a required accessible floor is four or more stories above or below a level of exit discharge, not less than one required accessible means of egress shall be an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

Exceptions:
1. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a horizontal exit and located at or above the levels of exit discharge.
2. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a ramp conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.

1009.3 Stairways. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, a stairway between stories shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between handrails and shall either incorporate an area of refuge within an enlarged floor-level landing or shall be accessed from an area of refuge complying with Section 1009.6. Exit access stairways that connect levels in the same story are not permitted as part of an accessible means of egress.

Exceptions:
1. Exit access stairways providing means of egress from mezzanines are permitted as part of an accessible means of egress.
2. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required for stairways accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.
4. Areas of refuge are not required at exit access stairways where two-way communication is provided at the elevator landing in accordance with Section 1009.8.
5. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
6. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways serving open parking garages.
7. Areas of refuge are not required for smoke-protected assembly seating areas complying with Section 1029.6.2.
8. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways in Group R-2 occupancies.
9. Areas of refuge are not required for stairways accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.

1009.4 Elevators. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, an elevator shall comply with the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44. Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27 and Section 3003. The elevator shall be accessed from an area of refuge complying with Section 1009.6.

Exceptions:
1. Areas of refuge are not required at the elevator in open parking garages.
2. Areas of refuge are not required in buildings and facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. Areas of refuge are not required at elevators not required to be located in a shaft in accordance with Section 712.
4. Areas of refuge are not required at elevators serving smoke-protected assembly seating areas complying with Section 1029.6.2.
5. Areas of refuge are not required for elevators accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.

1009.5 Platform lifts. Platform lifts shall be permitted to serve as part of an accessible means of egress where allowed as part of a required accessible route in Section 1109.8 except for Item 10. Standby power for the platform lift shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27.

1009.6 Areas of refuge. Every required area of refuge shall be accessible from the space it serves by an accessible means of egress.

1009.6.1 Travel distance. The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the exit access travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1017.1.

1009.6.2 Stairway or elevator access. Every required area of refuge shall have direct access to a stairway complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023 or an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

1009.6.3 Size. Each area of refuge shall be sized to accommodate one wheelchair space of 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) for each 200 occupants or portion thereof, based on the occupant load of the area of refuge and areas served by the area of refuge. Such wheelchair spaces shall not reduce the means of egress minimum width or required capacity. Access to any of the required wheelchair spaces in an area of refuge shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining wheelchair space.

1009.6.4 Separation. Each area of refuge shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a smoke barrier complying with Section 709 or a horizontal exit comply-
shall be provided at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators on each accessible floor that is one or more stories above or below the level of exit discharge.

Exceptions:

1. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators where the two-way communication system is provided within areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.5.

2. Two-way communication systems are not required on floors provided with ramps conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.

3. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only service elevators that are not designated as part of the accessible means of egress or serve as part of the required accessible route into a facility.

4. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only freight elevators.

5. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving a private residence elevator.

1009.8.1 System requirements. Two-way communication systems shall provide communication between each required location and the fire command center or a central control point location approved by the fire department. Where the central control point is not a constantly attended location, a two-way communication system shall have a timed automatic telephone dial-out capability to a monitoring location or 9-1-1. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.

1009.8.2 Directions. Directions for the use of the two-way communication system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communication system and written identification of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communication system. Signage shall comply with the ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters.

1009.9 Signage. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:

1. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign stating: AREA OF REFUGE.

2. Each door providing access to an exterior area for assisted rescue shall be identified by a sign stating: EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE.

Signage shall comply with the ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1013.3, the signs shall be illuminated. Additionally, visual characters, raised character and braille signage complying with ICC A117.1 shall be located at each door to an area of refuge and exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1013.4.

1009.10 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the location of all other means of egress and which of those
MEANS OF EGRESS

are accessible means of egress shall be provided at the following:

1. At exits serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress.
2. At elevator landings.
3. Within areas of refuge.

1009.11 Instructions. In areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted. Signage shall comply with the ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters. The instructions shall include all of the following:

1. Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.
2. Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.
3. Directions for use of the two-way communication system where provided.

SECTION 1010
DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

1010.1 Doors. Means of egress doors shall meet the requirements of this section. Doors serving a means of egress system shall meet the requirements of this section and Section 1022.2. Doors provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

Means of egress doors shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting materials shall not be used on means of egress doors. Means of egress doors shall not be concealed by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

1010.1.1 Size of doors. The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). The maximum width of a swinging door leaf shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) nominal. Means of egress doors in a Group I-2 occupancy used for the movement of beds shall provide a clear width not less than 411/2 inches (1054 mm). The height of door openings shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The minimum and maximum width shall not apply to door openings that are not part of the required means of egress in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies.
2. Door openings to resident sleeping units in Group I-3 occupancies shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).
3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area shall not be limited by the minimum width.
4. Width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 shall not be limited.
5. Door openings within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height.
6. Exterior door openings in dwelling units and sleeping units, other than the required exit door, shall be not less than 76 inches (1930 mm) in height.
7. In other than Group R-1 occupancies, the minimum widths shall not apply to interior egress doors within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that is not required to be an Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit.
8. Door openings required to be accessible within Type B units shall have a minimum clear width of 31.75 inches (806 mm).
9. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm).
10. In Group R-1 dwelling units or sleeping units not required to be Accessible units, the minimum width shall not apply to doors for showers or saunas.

1010.1.1.1 Projections into clear width. There shall not be projections into the required clear width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

1010.1.2 Door swing. Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging type.

Exceptions:

1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an occupant load of 10 or less.
2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
4. Doors within or serving a single dwelling unit in Groups R-2 and R-3.
5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.1.
6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.

7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.2.

8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual sleeping unit in Group R-1.

9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are permitted in means of egress from spaces with an occupant load of 10 or less.

1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing. Pivot or side-hinged swinging doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an occupant load of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy.

1010.1.3 Door opening force. The force for pushing or pulling open interior swinging egress doors, other than fire doors, shall not exceed 5 pounds (22 N). These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door in a closed position. For other swinging doors, as well as sliding and folding doors, the door latch shall release when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force. The door shall be set in motion when subjected to a 30-pound (133 N) force. The door shall swing to a full-open position when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force.

1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces. Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the door.

1010.1.4 Special doors. Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.1.4.1 through 1010.1.4.4.

1010.1.4.1 Revolving doors. Revolving doors shall comply with the following:

1. Revolving doors shall comply with BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

2. Each revolving door shall be capable of breakout in accordance with BHMA A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).

3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top of stairways or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the stairways or escalators and the revolving doors.

4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(1). Automatic or power-operated revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.1.4.1(2).

5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of power or automatic operated revolving doors within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the door and between 24 inches (610 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.

6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door that complies with Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving door.

7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an accessible route required by Section 1009 and Chapter 11.

### Table 1010.1.4.1(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-0</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

### Table 1010.1.4.1(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-0</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-0</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-0</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-6</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-0</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-0</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-0</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18-0</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-0</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-0</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1010.1.4.1.1 Egress component. A revolving door used as a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1 and the following three conditions:

1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the minimum width or required capacity.

2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person occupant load.

3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA A156.27 with a breakout force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).
1010.1.4.1.2 Other than egress component. A revolving door used as other than a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.1.4.1. The breakout force of a revolving door not used as a component of a means of egress shall not be more than 180 pounds (801 N).

Exception: A breakout force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the collapsing force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door wings in position.
2. There is an actuation of the automatic sprinkler system where such system is provided.
3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.
4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an approved location and clearly identified, that reduces the breakout force to not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

1010.1.4.2 Power-operated doors. Where means of egress doors are operated or assisted by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of being opened manually to permit means of egress travel or closed where necessary to safeguard means of egress. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of swinging open from any position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. Power-operated swinging doors, power-operated sliding doors and power-operated folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.10. Power-assisted swinging doors and low-energy power-operated swinging doors shall comply with BHMA A156.19.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group I-3.
2. Horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.3.
3. For a biparting door in the emergency breakout mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirement of Section 1010.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

1010.1.4.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies permitted to be a component of a means of egress in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method from both sides without special knowledge or effort.
3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.
4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.
5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable fire protection rating and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.
6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

1010.1.4.4 Security grilles. In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main exit and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more means of egress are required, not more than one-half of the exits or exit access doorways shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles.

1010.1.5 Floor elevation. There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level except for exterior landings, which are permitted to
have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**Exceptions:**

1. Doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 where the following apply:
   1.1. A door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided the door does not swing over the top step.
   1.2. Screen doors and storm doors are permitted to swing over stairs or landings.
2. Exterior doors as provided for in Section 1003.5, Exception 1, and Section 1022.2, which are not on an accessible route.
3. In Group R-3 occupancies not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units, the landing at an exterior doorway shall be not more than 7 3/4 inches (197 mm) below the top of the threshold, provided the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.
4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of Type B dwelling units, have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit.
6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be accessible in accordance with Section 1103.2.9 and serving an occupant load of five or less shall be permitted to have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below the landing on the egress side of the door.

1010.1.6 Landings at doors. Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the stairway or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Where a landing serves an occupant load of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).

**Exception:** Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).

1010.1.7 Thresholds. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed 1/4 inch (19.1 mm) in height above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving dwelling units or 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).

**Exceptions:**

1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to 7 3/4 inches (197 mm) in height if all of the following apply:
   1.1. The door is not part of the required means of egress.
   1.2. The door is not part of an accessible route as required by Chapter 11.
   1.3. The door is not part of an Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit.
2. In Type B units, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.5 permits a 4-inch (102 mm) elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door shall not exceed 4 3/4 inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for sliding doors or 4 3/2 inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for other doors.

1010.1.8 Door arrangement. Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

**Exceptions:**

1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).
2. Storm and screen doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.
3. Doors within individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than within Type A dwelling units.

1010.1.9 Door operations. Except as specifically permitted by this section, egress doors shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

1010.1.9.1 Hardware. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be accessible by Chapter 11 shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

1010.1.9.2 Hardware height. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices shall be installed 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.

**Exception:** Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall
MEANS OF EGRESS

be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

1010.1.9.3 Locks and latches. Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of doors where any of the following exist:

1. Places of detention or restraint.

2. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an occupant load of 300 or less, Groups B, F, M and S, and in places of religious worship, the main door or doors are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress side provided:
   
   2.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked.
   
   2.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side or on adjacent to the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THIS SPACE IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background.
   
   2.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revocable by the building official for due cause.

3. Where egress doors are used in pairs, approved automatic flush bolts shall be permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts does not have a doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.

4. Doors from individual dwelling or sleeping units of Group R occupancies having an occupant load of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.

5. Fire doors after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures.

1010.1.9.4 Bolt locks. Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

Exceptions:

1. On doors not required for egress in individual dwelling units or sleeping units.

2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.

3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

1010.1.9.5 Unlatching. The unlatching of any door or leaf shall not require more than one operation.

Exceptions:

1. Places of detention or restraint.

2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.1.9.4.

3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 3.

4. Doors from individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 4.

1010.1.9.5.1 Closet and bathroom doors in Group R-4 occupancies. In Group R-4 occupancies, closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be operable from inside the closet, and bathroom doors that latch in the closed position shall be capable of being unlocked from the ingress side.

1010.1.9.5.2 Public toilet facility door locking. Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

1010.1.9.6 Controlled egress doors in Groups I-1 and I-2. Electric locking systems, including electromechanical locking systems and electromagnetic locking systems, shall be permitted to be locked in the means of egress in Group I-1 or I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of persons receiving care require their containment. Controlled egress doors shall be permitted in such occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an approved automatic smoke or heat detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors
1. The door locks shall unlock on actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system.

2. The door locks shall unlock on loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.

3. The door locking system shall be installed to have the capability of being unlocked by a switch located at the fire command center, a nursing station or other approved location. The switch shall directly break power to the lock.

4. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door equipped with a controlled egress locking system before entering an exit.

5. The procedures for unlocking the doors shall be described and approved as part of the emergency planning and preparedness required by Chapter 4 of the Fire Code.

6. All clinical staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the locking systems.

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.

8. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

Exceptions:

1. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas occupied by persons who, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function of a psychiatric treatment area.

2. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas where a listed egress control system is utilized to reduce the risk of child abduction from nursery and obstetric areas of a Group I-2 hospital.

1010.1.9.7 Delayed egress. Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving any occupancy except Group A and H in buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an approved automatic smoke or heat detection system installed in accordance with Section 907. The locking system shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system, allowing immediate, free egress.

2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing immediate free egress.

3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being deactivated at the fire command center and other approved locations.

4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated, rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only.

   Exception: Where approved, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted on a delayed egress door.

5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress locking system.

   Exception: In Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies, the egress path from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not exceed 30 seconds.

6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

   6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read: PUSH UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

   6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read: PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

   6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in ICC A117.1.

   Exception: Where approved, in Group I occupancies, the installation of a sign is not required where care recipients who because of clinical needs require restraint or containment as part of the function of the treatment area.

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.7.1 Delayed egress. Delayed egress locking systems are authorized to be installed on doors serving Group E in buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907.2.3. The locking system shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon actuation of the automatic fire alarm system, allowing immediate, free egress.
2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing immediate free egress.

3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being deactivated at the fire command center and other approved locations, if a fire command center is provided.

4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated, rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only.

Exception: Where approved, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted on a delayed egress door.

5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress locking system.

6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read: PUSH UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read: PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS.

6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in ICC A117.

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.8 Sensor release of electrically locked egress doors. The electric locks on sensor released doors located in a means of egress in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 and entrance doors to tenant spaces in occupancies in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 are permitted where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following criteria:

1. The sensor shall be installed on the egress side, arranged to detect an occupant approaching the doors. The doors shall be arranged to unlock by a signal from or loss of power to the sensor.

2. Loss of power to the lock or locking system shall automatically unlock the doors.

3. The doors shall be arranged to unlock from a manual unlocking device located 40 inches to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided to the manual unlocking device and the device shall be clearly identified by a sign that reads “PUSH TO EXIT.” When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct interruption of power to the lock—indepenedent of other electronics—and the doors shall remain unlocked for not less than 30 seconds.

4. Activation of the building fire alarm system, where provided, shall automatically unlock the doors, and the doors shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.

5. Activation of the building automatic sprinkler system or fire detection system, where provided, shall automatically unlock the doors. The doors shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.

6. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.9 Electromagnetically locked egress doors. Doors in the means of egress in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 and doors to tenant spaces in Group A, B, E, I-1, I-2, I-4, M, R-1 or R-2 shall be permitted to be locked with an electromagnetic locking system where equipped with hardware that incorporates a built-in switch and where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The hardware that is affixed to the door leaf has an obvious method of operation that is readily operated under all lighting conditions.

2. The hardware is capable of being operated with one hand.

3. Operation of the hardware directly interrupts the power to the electromagnetic lock and unlocks the door immediately.

4. Loss of power to the locking system automatically unlocks the door.

5. Where panic or fire exit hardware is required by Section 1010.1.10, operation of the panic or fire exit hardware also releases the electromagnetic lock.

6. The locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

1010.1.9.10 Locking arrangements in correctional facilities. In occupancies in Groups A-2, A-3, A-4, B, E, F, I-2, I-3, M and S within correctional and detention facilities, doors in means of egress serving rooms or spaces occupied by persons whose movements are controlled for security reasons shall be permitted to be locked where equipped with egress control devices that
shall unlock manually and by not less than one of the following means:

1. Activation of an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Activation of an approved manual fire alarm box.
3. A signal from a constantly attended location.

1010.1.9.11 Stairway doors. Interior stairway means of egress doors shall be openable from both sides without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

Exceptions:

1. Stairway discharge doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side.
2. This section shall not apply to doors arranged in accordance with Section 403.5.3.
3. In stairways serving not more than four stories, doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress side, provided they are openable from the egress side and capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the fire command center, if present, or upon a signal by emergency personnel from a single location inside the main entrance to the building.
4. Stairway exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group B, F, M and S occupancies where the only interior access to the tenant space is from a single exit stairway where permitted in Section 1006.3.2.
5. Stairway exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group R-2 occupancies where the only interior access to the dwelling unit is from a single exit stairway where permitted in Section 1006.3.2.
6. In buildings five or more stories in height, including existing buildings without a fire command center complying with Section 911, doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress side, provided they are unlocked without unlatching upon activation of the building’s fire alarm system and the stairway is provided with a telephone or other two-way communication system in accordance with Section 403.5.3.

1010.1.9.12 Elevator lobby doors. Exit access doors in the elevator lobby serving a single Use Group B occupancy tenant are permitted to be equipped with an approved egress access control system when all of the following conditions are met:

1. The building is equipped throughout with either an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.1.1 or an approved automatic smoke or heat detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.
2. The elevator lobby exit access doors shall unlock upon loss of power to the access control system.
3. A readily accessible and visible manual unlocking device is installed 40 to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the secured doors, identified by a sign with minimum 1/8-inch (12.5 mm) high letters that reads “EMERGENCY DOOR RELEASE—ACTIVATE TO OPEN DOORS.” Activation of the device shall unlock the doors for a minimum of 30 seconds.
4. Activation of the building fire alarm system, if provided, shall automatically unlock the doors, and the doors shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.
5. Activation of the building automatic sprinkler or fire detection system, if provided, shall automatically unlock the doors. The doors shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.
6. Where a manual fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2, a manual fire alarm box shall be provided and located within the elevator lobby.

1010.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. Doors serving a Group H occupancy and doors serving rooms or spaces with an occupant load of 50 or more in a Group A or E occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than panic hardware or fire exit hardware.

Exceptions:

1. A main exit of a Group A occupancy shall be permitted to be locking in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.3, Item 2.
2. Doors serving a Group A or E occupancy shall be permitted to be electromagnetically locked in accordance with Section 1010.1.9.9.

Electrical rooms with equipment rated 1,200 amperes or more and over 6 feet (1829 mm) wide, and that contain overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices with exit or exit access doors, shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel.

1010.1.10.1 Installation. Where panic or fire exit hardware is installed, it shall comply with the following:

1. Panic hardware shall be listed in accordance with UL 305.
2. Fire exit hardware shall be listed in accordance with UL 10C and UL 305.
3. The actuating portion of the releasing device shall extend not less than one-half of the door leaf width.
4. The maximum unlatching force shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).
1010.1.10.2 Balanced doors. If balanced doors are used and panic hardware is required, the panic hardware shall be the push-pad type and the pad shall not extend more than one-half the width of the door measured from the latch side.

1010.2 Gates. Gates serving the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Gates used as a component in a means of egress shall conform to the applicable requirements for doors.

Exception: Horizontal sliding or swinging gates exceeding the 4-foot (1219 mm) maximum leaf width limitation are permitted in fences and walls surrounding a stadium.

1010.2.1 Stadiums. Panic hardware is not required on gates surrounding stadiums where such gates are under constant immediate supervision while the public is present, and where safe dispersal areas based on 3 square feet (0.28 m²) per occupant are located between the fence and enclosed space. Such required safe dispersal areas shall not be located than a maximum of 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the enclosed space. See Section 1028.5 for means of egress from safe dispersal areas.

1010.3 Turnstiles. Turnstiles or similar devices that restrict travel to one direction shall not be placed so as to obstruct any required means of egress.

Exception: Each turnstile or similar device shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person occupant load where all of the following provisions are met:

1. Each device shall turn free in the direction of egress travel when primary power is lost and on the manual release by an employee in the area.
2. Such devices are not given credit for more than 50 percent of the required egress capacity or width.
3. Each device is not more than 39 inches (991 mm) high.
4. Each device has not less than 161/2 inches (419 mm) clear width at and below a height of 39 inches (991 mm) and not less than 22 inches (559 mm) clear width at heights above 39 inches (991 mm).

Where located as part of an accessible route, turnstiles shall have not less than 36 inches (914 mm) clear at and below a height of 34 inches (864 mm), not less than 32 inches (813 mm) clear width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) and shall consist of a mechanism other than a revolving device.

1010.3.1 High turnstile. Turnstiles more than 39 inches (991 mm) high shall meet the requirements for revolving doors.

1010.3.2 Additional door. Where serving an occupant load greater than 300, each turnstile that is not portable shall have a side-hinged swinging door that conforms to Section 1010.1 within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

SECTION 1011
STAIRWAYS

1011.1 General. Stairways serving occupied portions of a building shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1011.2 through 1011.13. Alternating tread devices shall comply with Section 1011.14. Ship’s ladders shall comply with Section 1011.15. Ladders shall comply with Section 1011.16.

Exception: Within rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes, stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1029.

1011.2 Width and capacity. The required capacity of stairways shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm). See Section 1009.3 for accessible means of egress stairways.

Exceptions:

1. Stairways serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall have a width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
2. Spiral stairways as provided for in Section 1011.10.
3. Where an incline platform lift or stairway chairlift is installed on stairways serving occupancies in Group R-3, or within dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, a clear passage width not less than 20 inches (508 mm) shall be provided. Where the seat and platform can be folded when not in use, the distance shall be measured from the folded position.

1011.3 Headroom. Stairways shall have a headroom clearance of not less than 80 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the edge of the nosings. Such headroom shall be continuous above the stairway to the point where the line intersects the landing below, one tread depth beyond the bottom riser. The minimum clearance shall be maintained the full width of the stairway and landing.

Exceptions:

1. Spiral stairways complying with Section 1011.10 are permitted a 78-inch (1981 mm) headroom clearance.
2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; where the nosings of treads at the side of a flight extend under the edge of a floor opening through which the stair passes, the floor opening shall be allowed to project horizontally into the required headroom not more than 41/4 inches (121 mm).

1011.4 Walkline. The walkline across winder treads shall be concentric to the direction of travel through the turn and located 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the winders are narrower. The 12-inch (305 mm) dimension shall be measured from the widest point of the clear stair width at the walking surface of the winder. Where winders are adjacent within the flight, the point of the widest clear stair width of the adjacent winders shall be used.
1011.5 Stair treads and risers. *Stair* treads and risers shall comply with Sections 1011.5.1 through 1011.5.5.3.

1011.5.1 Dimension reference surfaces. For the purpose of this section, all dimensions are exclusive of carpets, rugs or runners.

1011.5.2 Riser height and tread depth. *Stair* riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm) maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the *nosing* of adjacent treads. Rectangular tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the tread’s *nosing*. *Winder* treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm) between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections with the walkline and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) within the clear width of the *stair*.

Exceptions:

1. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.
2. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted to use the riser/tread dimension in Section 1029.13.2.
3. In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; the maximum riser height shall be $7^{1/4}$ inches (197 mm); the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm); the minimum *winder* tread depth at the walkline shall be 10 inches (254 mm); and the minimum *winder* tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A *nosing* projection not less than $7^{1/4}$ inch (19.1 mm) but not more than $1^{1/4}$ inches (32 mm) shall be provided on *stairways* with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches (279 mm).
4. See Section 403.1 of the *Existing Building Code* for the replacement of existing *stairways*.
5. In Group I-3 facilities, *stairways* providing access to guard towers, observation stations and control rooms, not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area, shall be permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

1011.5.3 Winder treads. *Winder* treads are not permitted in means of egress *stairways* except within a *dwelling unit*.

Exceptions:

1. Curved *stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.9.
2. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.

1011.5.4 Dimensional uniformity. *Stair* treads and risers shall be of uniform size and shape. The tolerance between the largest and smallest riser height or between the largest and smallest tread depth shall not exceed $3/8$ inch (9.5 mm) in any *flight* of *stairs*. The greatest *winder* tread depth at the walkline within any *flight* of *stairs* shall not exceed the smallest by more than $3/8$ inch (9.5 mm).

Exceptions:

1. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted to comply with the dimensional nonuniformity in Section 1029.13.2.
2. Consistently shaped *winders*, complying with Section 1011.5, differing from rectangular treads in the same *flight* of *stairs*.
3. Nonuniform riser dimension complying with Section 1011.5.4.1.

1011.5.4.1 Nonuniform height risers. Where the bottom or top riser adjoins a sloping *public way*, walkway or driveway having an established grade and serving as a landing, the bottom or top riser is permitted to be reduced along the slope to less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height, with the variation in height of the bottom or top riser not to exceed one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope) of *stairs* width. The *nosing* or leading edges of treads at such nonuniform height risers shall have a distinctive marking stripe, different from any other *nosing* marking provided on the *stair flight*. The distinctive marking stripe shall be visible in descent of the *stair* and shall have a slip-resistant surface. Marking stripes shall have a width of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm).

1011.5.5 Nosing and riser profile. *Nosings* shall have a curvature or bevel of not less than $3/16$ inch (1.6 mm) but not more than $9/16$ inch (14.3 mm) from the foremost projection of the tread. Risers shall be solid and vertical or sloped under the tread above from the underside of the *nosing* above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

1011.5.5.1 Nosing projection size. The leading edge (*nosings*) of treads shall project not more than $1^{1/4}$ inches (32 mm) beyond the tread below.

1011.5.5.2 Nosing projection uniformity. *Nosings* projections of the leading edges shall be of uniform size, including the projections of the *nosing*’s leading edge of the floor at the top of a *flight*.

1011.5.5.3 Solid risers. Risers shall be solid.

Exceptions:

1. Solid risers are not required for *stairways* that are not required to comply with Section 1009.3, provided that the opening between treads does not permit the passage of a sphere with a diameter of 4 inches (102 mm).
2. Solid risers are not required for occupancies in Group I-3 or in Group F, H and S occupancies other than areas accessible to the public. There are no restrictions on the size of the opening in the riser.
MEANS OF EGRESS

3. Solid risers are not required for spiral stairways constructed in accordance with Section 1011.10.

1011.6 Stairway landings. There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each stairway. The width of landings shall be not less than the width of stairways served. Every landing shall have a minimum width measured perpendicular to the direction of travel equal to the width of the stairway. Where the stairway has a straight run the depth need not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm). Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half the required width. When fully open, the door shall not project more than 7 inches (178 mm) into a landing. Where wheelchair spaces are required on the stairway landing in accordance with Section 1009.6.3, the wheelchair space shall not be located in the required width of the landing and doors shall not swing over the wheelchair spaces.

Exception: Where stairways connect stepped aisles to cross aisles or concourses, stairway landings are not required at the transition between stairways and stepped aisles constructed in accordance with Section 1029.

1011.7 Stairway construction. Stairways shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1011.7.1 Stairway walking surface. The walking surface of treads and landings of a stairway shall not be sloped steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Stairway treads and landings shall have a solid surface. Finish floor surfaces shall be securely attached.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in stair walking surfaces shall be a size that does not permit the passage of 11/2-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) sphere. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the direction of travel.

2. In Group F, H and S occupancies, other than areas of parking structures accessible to the public, openings in treads and landings shall not be prohibited provided a sphere with a diameter of 11/8 inches (29 mm) cannot pass through the opening.

1011.7.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor stairways and outdoor approaches to stairways shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1011.7.3 Enclosures under interior stairways. The walls and soffits within enclosed usable spaces under enclosed and unenclosed stairways shall be protected by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or the fire-resistance rating of the stairway enclosure, whichever is greater. Access to the enclosed space shall not be directly from within the stairway enclosure.

Exception: Spaces under stairways serving and contained within a single residential dwelling unit in Group R-2 or R-3 shall be permitted to be protected on the enclosed side with 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

1011.7.4 Enclosures under exterior stairways. There shall not be enclosed usable space under exterior exit stairways unless the space is completely enclosed in 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. The open space under exterior stairways shall not be used for any purpose.

1011.8 Vertical rise. A flight of stairs shall not have a vertical rise greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) between floor levels or landings.

Exception: Spiral stairways used as a means of egress from technical production areas.

1011.9 Curved stairways. Curved stairways with winder treads shall have treads and risers in accordance with Section 1011.5 and the smallest radius shall be not less than twice the minimum width or required capacity of the stairway.

Exception: The radius restriction shall not apply to curved stairways in Group R-3 and within individual dwelling units in Group R-2.

1011.10 Spiral stairways. Spiral stairways are permitted to be used as a component in the means of egress only within dwelling units or from a space not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and serving not more than five occupants, or from technical production areas in accordance with Section 410.6.

A spiral stairway shall have a 71/2-inch (191 mm) minimum clear tread depth at a point 12 inches (305 mm) from the narrow edge. The risers shall be sufficient to provide a headroom of 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum, but riser height shall not be more than 91/2 inches (241 mm). The minimum stairway clear width at and below the handrail shall be 26 inches (660 mm).

1011.11 Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails on each side and shall comply with Section 1014. Where glass is used to provide the handrail, the handrail shall comply with Section 2407.

Exceptions:

1. Stairways within dwelling units and spiral stairways are permitted to have a handrail on one side only.

2. Decks, patios and walkways that have a single change in elevation where the landing depth on each side of the change of elevation is greater than what is required for a landing do not require handrails.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies, a change in elevation consisting of a single riser at an entrance or egress door does not require handrails.

4. Changes in room elevations of three or fewer risers are permitted to have a handrail on one side only.

1011.12 Stairway to roof. In buildings four or more stories above grade plane, one stairway shall extend to the roof surface unless the roof has a slope steeper than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

Exception: Other than where required by Section 1011.12.1, in buildings without an occupied roof access to the roof from the top story shall be permitted to be by an
1011.13 Guards. Guards shall be provided along stairways and landings where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015. Where the roof hatch opening provided the required access is located within 10 feet (3049 mm) of the roof edge, such roof access or roof edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with Section 1015.

1011.14 Alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices are limited to an element of a means of egress in buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs. The minimum clear width at and below the handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

1011.15.2 Treads of ship’s ladders. Ship’s ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is not less than 8 1/2 inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be 9 1/2 inches (241 mm).

1011.16 Ladders. Permanent ladders shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from occupied spaces within a building. Permanent ladders shall be permitted to provide access to the following areas:

1. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment.
2. Nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways.
3. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands.
4. Elevated levels in Group U not open to the general public.
5. Nonoccupied roofs that are not required to have stairway access in accordance with Section 1011.12.1.
6. Ladders shall be constructed in accordance with Section 306.5 of the Mechanical Code.

SECTION 1012 RAMPS

1012.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in Section 1029.
2. Curb ramps shall comply with ICC A117.1.
3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an accessible means of egress.

1012.2 Slope. Ramps used as part of a means of egress shall have a running slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian ramps shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).
1012.3 **Cross slope.** The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramp shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1012.4 **Vertical rise.** The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

1012.5 **Minimum dimensions.** The minimum dimensions of means of egress ramps shall comply with Sections 1012.5.1 through 1012.5.3.

1012.5.1 **Width and capacity.** The minimum width and required capacity of a means of egress ramp shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2. The clear width of a ramp between handrails, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

1012.5.2 **Headroom.** The minimum headroom in all parts of the means of egress ramp shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

1012.5.3 **Restrictions.** Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required ramp and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

1012.6 **Landings.** Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each ramp, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1012.6.1 through 1012.6.5.

1012.6.1 **Slope.** Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

1012.6.2 **Width.** The landing width shall be not less than the width of the widest ramp run adjoining the landing.

1012.6.3 **Length.** The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units in accordance with Section 1107, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

2. Where the ramp is not a part of an accessible route, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1220 mm) in the direction of travel.

1012.6.4 **Change in direction.** Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between ramp runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units in accordance with Section 1107, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

1012.6.5 **Doorways.** Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by ICC A117.1 are permitted to overlap the required landing area.

1012.7 **Ramp construction.** Ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1012.7.1 **Ramp surface.** The surface of ramps shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

1012.7.2 **Outdoor conditions.** Outdoor ramps and outdoor approaches to ramps shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

1012.8 **Handrails.** Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails shall comply with Section 1014.

1012.9 **Guards.** Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015.

1012.10 **Edge protection.** Edge protection complying with Section 1012.10.1 or 1012.10.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Edge protection is not required on ramps that are not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with the ICC A117.1 curb ramp provisions.

2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.

3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical dropoff of not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.

1012.10.1 **Curb, rail, wall or barrier.** A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

1012.10.2 **Extended floor or ground surface.** The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with Section 1014.

---

**SECTION 1013**

**EXIT SIGNS**

1013.1 **Where required.** Exits and exit access doors shall be marked by an approved exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to exits and within exits shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the exit or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening means of egress doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that no point in an exit access corridor or
exit passageway is more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the listed viewing distance for the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

Exceptions:
1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one exit or exit access.
2. Main exterior exit doors or gates that are obviously and clearly identifiable as exits need not have exit signs where approved by the building official.
3. Exit signs are not required in occupancies in Group U and individual sleeping units or dwelling units in Group R-1, R-2 or R-3.
4. Exit signs are not required in dayrooms, sleeping rooms or dormitories in occupancies in Group I-3.
5. In occupancies in Groups A-4 and A-5, exit signs are not required on the seating side of vomitories or openings into seating areas where exit signs are provided in the concourse that are readily apparent from the vomitories. Egress lighting is provided to identify each vomitory or opening within the seating area in an emergency.

1013.2 Floor-level exit signs in Group R-1. Where exit signs are required in Group R-1 occupancies by Section 1013.1, additional low-level exit signs shall be provided in all areas serving guest rooms in Group R-1 occupancies and shall comply with Section 1013.5.

The bottom of the sign shall be not less than 10 inches (254 mm) nor more than 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor level. The sign shall be flush mounted to the door or wall. Where mounted on the wall, the edge of the sign shall be within 4 inches (102 mm) of the door frame on the latch side.

1013.3 Illumination. Exit signs shall be internally or externally illuminated.

Exception: Tactile signs required by Section 1013.4 need not be provided with illumination.

1013.4 Raised character and braille exit signs. A sign stating EXIT in visual characters, raised characters and braille and complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided adjacent to each door to an area of refuge, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an exit stairway or ramp, an exit passageway and the exit discharge.

1013.5 Internally illuminated exit signs. Electrically powered, self-luminous and photoluminescent exit signs shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 924 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and Chapter 27. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times.

1013.6 Externally illuminated exit signs. Externally illuminated exit signs shall comply with Sections 1013.6.1 through 1013.6.3.

1013.6.1 Graphics. Every exit sign and directional exit sign shall have plainly legible letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high with the principal strokes of the letters not less than 3/8 inch (19.1 mm) wide. The word “EXIT” shall have letters having a width not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide, except the letter “I,” and the minimum spacing between letters shall be not less than 1/4 inch (9.5 mm). Signs larger than the minimum established in this section shall have letter widths, strokes and spacing in proportion to their height.

The word “EXIT” shall be in high contrast with the background and shall be clearly discernible when the means of exit sign illumination is or is not energized. If a chevron directional indicator is provided as part of the exit sign, the construction shall be such that the direction of the chevron directional indicator cannot be readily changed.

1013.6.2 Exit sign illumination. The face of an exit sign illuminated from an external source shall have an intensity of not less than 5 footcandles (54 lux).

1013.6.3 Power source. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times. To ensure continued illumination for a duration of not less than 90 minutes in case of primary power loss, the sign illumination means shall be connected to an emergency power system provided from storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Chapter 27.

Exceptions:
1. Approved exit sign illumination means that provide continuous illumination independent of external power sources for a duration of not less than 90 minutes, in case of primary power loss, are not required to be connected to an emergency electrical system.
2. Group I-2 Condition 2 exit sign illumination shall not be provided by unit equipment battery only.

SECTION 1014
HANDRAILS

1014.1 Where required. Handrails serving stairways, ramps, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8. Handrails required for stairways by Section 1011.11 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.9. Handrails required for ramps by Section 1012.8 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8. Handrails for stepped aisles and ramped aisles required by Section 1029.15 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8.

1014.2 Height. Handrail height, measured above stair tread nosings, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be uniform, not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm). Handrail height of alternating tread devices and ship’s ladders, measured above tread nosings, shall be uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

Exceptions:
1. Where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.
2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are associated with a Group R-3 occupancy or associated with individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, transition at winder treads, transition from handrail to guard, or where used at the start of a flight, the handrail height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.

3. Handrails on top of a guard where permitted along stepped aisles and ramped aisles in accordance with Section 1029.15.

1014.3 Handrail graspability. Required handrails shall comply with Section 1014.3.1 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

**Exception:** In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; handrails shall be Type I in accordance with Section 1014.3.1, Type II in accordance with Section 1014.3.2 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

1014.3.1 Type I. Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of not less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). Where the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than 6 1/4 inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross-sectional dimension of 2 1/4 inches (57 mm) and minimum cross-sectional dimension of 1 inch (25 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

1014.3.2 Type II. Handrails with a perimeter greater than 6 1/4 inches (160 mm) shall provide a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within a distance of 1 3/4 inches (45 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and achieve a depth of not less than 1 3/16 inch (8 mm) within 1 3/8 inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for not less than 1 3/4 inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The width of the handrail above the recess shall be not less than 1 1/8 inches (32 mm) to not greater than 2 1/4 inches (70 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

1014.4 Continuity. Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous, without interruption by newel posts or other obstructions.

**Exceptions:**
1. Handrails within dwelling units are permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at a turn or landing.
2. Within a dwelling unit, the use of a volute, turnout, starting easing or starting newel is allowed over the lowest tread.
3. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail that do not project horizon-
   tally beyond the sides of the handrail within 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) of the bottom of the handrail shall not be considered obstructions. For each 1 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced by 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
4. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of the handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.
5. Handrails serving stepped aisles or ramped aisles are permitted to be discontinuous in accordance with Section 1029.15.

1014.5 Fittings. Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

1014.6 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent flight of stairs or ramp run. Where handrails are not continuous between flights, the handrails shall extend horizontally not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top riser and continue to slope for the depth of one tread beyond the bottom riser. At ramps where handrails are not continuous between runs, the handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. The extensions of handrails shall be in the same direction of the flights of stairs at stairways and the ramp runs at ramps.

**Exceptions:**
1. Handrails within a dwelling unit that is not required to be accessible need extend only from the top riser to the bottom riser.
2. Handrails serving aisles in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes are permitted to comply with the handrail extensions in accordance with Section 1029.15.
3. Handrails for alternating tread devices and ship’s ladders are permitted to terminate at a location vertically above the top and bottom risers. Handrails for alternating tread devices are not required to be continuous between flights or to extend beyond the top or bottom risers.

1014.7 Clearance. Clear space between a handrail and a wall or other surface shall be not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). A handrail and a wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements.

1014.8 Projections. On ramps and on ramped aisles that are part of an accessible route, the clear width between handrails shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. Projections into the required width of aisles, stairways and ramps at each side shall not exceed 4 1/8 inches (114 mm) at or below the handrail height. Projections into the required width shall not be limited above the minimum headroom height required in Section 1011.3. Projections due to intermediate handrails shall not constitute a reduction in the egress width. Where a pair of intermediate handrails are provided within the stairway
width without a walking surface between the pair of intermediate handrails and the distance between the pair of intermediate handrails is greater than 6 inches (152 mm), the available egress width shall be reduced by the distance between the closest edges of each such intermediate pair of handrails that is greater than 6 inches (152 mm).

1014.9 Intermediate handrails. Stairways shall have intermediate handrails located in such a manner that all portions of the stairway minimum width or required capacity are within 30 inches (762 mm) of a handrail. On monumental stairs, handrails shall be located along the most direct path of egress travel.

SECTION 1015
GUARDS

1015.1 General. Guards shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1015.2 through 1015.7. Operable windows with sills located more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished grade or other surface below shall comply with Section 1015.8.

1015.2 Where required. Guards shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, including mezzanines, equipment platforms, aisles, stairs, ramps and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. Guards shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.

Exception: Guards are not required for the following locations:

1. On the loading side of loading docks or piers.
2. On the audience side of stages and raised platforms, including stairs leading up to the stage and raised platforms.
3. On raised stage and platform floor areas, such as runways, ramps and side stages used for entertainment or presentations.
4. At vertical openings in the performance area of stages and platforms.
5. At elevated walking surfaces appurtenant to stages and platforms for access to and utilization of special lighting or equipment.
6. Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.
7. In assembly seating areas at cross aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.2.

1015.2.1 Glazing. Where glass is used to provide a guard or as a portion of the guard system, the guard shall comply with Section 2407. Where the glazing provided does not meet the strength and attachment requirements of Section 1607.8, complying guards shall be located along glazed sides of open-sided walking surfaces.

1015.3 Height. Required guards shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high, measured vertically as follows:

1. From the adjacent walking surfaces.
2. On stairways and stepped aisles, from the line connecting the leading edges of the tread nosings.
3. On ramps and ramped aisles, from the ramp surface at the guard.

Exceptions:

1. For occupancies in Group R-3 not more than three stories above grade in height and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2 not more than three stories above grade in height with separate means of egress, required guards shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height measured vertically above the adjacent walking surfaces or adjacent fixed seating.
2. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, guards on the open sides of stairs shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
3. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, where the top of the guard also serves as a handrail on the open sides of stairs, the top of the guard shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
4. The guard height in assembly seating areas shall comply with Section 1029.16 as applicable.
5. Along alternating tread devices and ship’s ladders, guards where the top rail also serves as a handrail shall have height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm), measured vertically from the leading edge of the device tread nosing.

1015.4 Opening limitations. Required guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter from the walking surface to the required guard height.

Exceptions:

1. From a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm), guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 3/8 inches (111 mm) in diameter.
2. The triangular openings at the open sides of a stair, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter.
3. At elevated walking surfaces for access to and use of electrical, mechanical or plumbing systems or equipment, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.
4. In areas that are not open to the public within occupancies in Group I-3, F, H or S, and for alternating tread devices and ship’s ladders, guards shall not
have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

5. In aisles seating areas, guards required at the end of aisles in accordance with Section 1029.16.4 shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter up to a height of 26 inches (660 mm). From a height of 26 inches (660 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent walking surfaces, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

6. Within individual dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, guards on the open sides of stairs shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 41/8 (111 mm) inches in diameter.

1015.5 Screen porches. Porches and decks that are enclosed with insect screening shall be provided with guards where the walking surface is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below.

1015.6 Mechanical equipment, systems and devices. Guards shall be provided where various components that require service are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such components. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: Guards are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be reevaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge or open side of the walking surface.

1015.7 Roof access. Guards shall be provided where the roof hatch opening is located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

Exception: Guards are not required where permanent fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are affixed for use during the entire roof covering lifetime. The devices shall be reevaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the roof edge or open side of the walking surface.

1015.8 Window openings. Windows in Group R-2 and R-3 buildings including dwelling units, where the top of the sill of an operable window opening is located less than 36 inches above the finished floor and more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below on the exterior of the building, shall comply with one of the following:

1. Operable windows where the top of the sill of the opening is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2006.

2. Operable windows where the openings will not allow a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere to pass through the opening when the window is in its largest opened position.

3. Operable windows where the openings are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2090.

4. Operable windows that are provided with window opening control devices that comply with Section 1015.8.1.

SECTION 1016
EXIT ACCESS

1016.1 General. The exit access shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 1003 through 1015. Exit access arrangement shall comply with Sections 1016 through 1021.

1016.2 Egress through intervening spaces. Egress through intervening spaces shall comply with this section.

1. Exit access through an enclosed elevator lobby is permitted. Access to not less than one of the required exits shall be provided without travel through the enclosed elevator lobbies required by Section 3006. Where the path of exit access travel passes through an enclosed elevator lobby, the level of protection required for the enclosed elevator lobby is not required to be extended to the exit unless direct access to an exit is required by other sections of this code.

2. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas, except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an exit.

Exception: Means of egress are not prohibited through adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces in a Group H, S or F occupancy where the adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces are the same or a lesser hazard occupancy group.
3. An exit access shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.

4. Means of egress from dwelling units or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.

5. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar purposes.

Exceptions:

1. Means of egress are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms constituting part of the same dwelling unit or sleeping unit.

2. Means of egress are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M occupancies where all of the following are met:
   2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail area.
   2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the exit access is through the stockroom.
   2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side.
   2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) aisle defined by full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the exit without obstructions.

1016.2.1 Multiple tenants. Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a building or structure, each tenant space, dwelling unit and sleeping unit shall be provided with access to the required exits without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, dwelling units and sleeping units.

Exception: The means of egress from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space through which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernible path of egress travel to an exit is provided; and the means of egress into the adjoining space is not subject to locking from the egress side. A required means of egress serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.

### SECTION 1017
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

1017.1 General. Travel distance within the exit access portion of the means of egress system shall be in accordance with this section.

1017.2 Limitations. Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the values given in Table 1017.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)</th>
<th>WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A, E, F-1, M, R, S-1</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-2, S-2, U</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-2</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-3</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-4</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-5</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-2, I-3, I-4</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See the following sections for modifications to exit access travel distance requirements:

- Section 402.8: For the distance limitation in malls.
- Section 404.9: For the distance limitation through an atrium space.
- Section 407.4: For the distance limitation in Group I-2.
- Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.
- Section 411.4: For the distance limitation in special amusement buildings.
- Section 412.7: For the distance limitations in aircraft manufacturing facilities.
- Section 1006.2.2.2: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.
- Section 1006.2.2.3: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.
- Section 1006.3.2: For buildings with one exit.
- Section 1017.2.2: For increased distance limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.
- Section 1029.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.
- Section 3103.4: For temporary structures.
- Section 3104.9: For pedestrian walkways.
- b. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- d. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.1.

1017.2.1 Exterior egress balcony increase. Exit access travel distances specified in Table 1017.2 shall be increased up to an additional 100 feet (30 480 mm) provided the last portion of the exit access leading to the exit occurs on an exterior egress balcony constructed in accordance with Section 1021. The length of such balcony shall be not less than the amount of the increase taken.

1017.2.2 Group F-1 and S-1 increase. The maximum exit access travel distance shall be 400 feet (122 m) in Group F-1 or S-1 occupancies where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The portion of the building classified as Group F-1 or S-1 is limited to one story in height.
2. The minimum height from the finished floor to the bottom of the ceiling or roof slab or deck is 24 feet (7315 mm).

3. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

1017.3 Measurement. Exit access travel distance shall be measured from the most remote point within a story along the natural and unobstructed path of horizontal and vertical egress travel to the entrance to an exit.

**Exception:** In open parking garages, exit access travel distance is permitted to be measured to the closest riser of an exit access stairway or the closest slope of an exit access ramp.

1017.3.1 Exit access stairways and ramps. Travel distance on exit access stairways or ramps shall be included in the exit access travel distance measurement. The measurement along stairways shall be made on a plane parallel and tangent to the stair tread nosings in the center of the stair and landings. The measurement along ramps shall be made on the walking surface in the center of the ramp and landings.

**SECTION 1018 AISLES**

1018.1 General. Aisles and aisle accessways serving as a portion of the exit access in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Aisles or aisle accessways shall be provided from all occupied portions of the exit access that contain seats, tables, furnishings, displays and similar fixtures or equipment. The minimum width or required capacity of aisles shall be unobstructed.

**Exception:** Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

1018.2 Aisles in assembly spaces. Aisles and aisle accessways serving a room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Section 1029.

1018.3 Aisles in Groups B and M. In Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle width shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.2.

**Exception:** Nonpublic aisles serving less than 50 people and not required to be accessible by Chapter 11 need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

**SECTION 1019 EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS**

1019.1 General. Exit access stairways and ramps serving as an exit access component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. The number of stories connected by exit access stairways and ramps shall include basements, but not mezzanines.

1019.2 All occupancies. Exit access stairways and ramps that serve floor levels within a single story are not required to be enclosed.

1019.3 Occupancies other than Groups I-2 and I-3. In other than Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, floor openings containing exit access stairways or ramps that do not comply with one of the conditions listed in this section shall be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

1. Exit access stairways and ramps that serve or atmospherically communicate between only two stories. Such interconnected stories shall not be open to other stories.

2. In Group R-1, R-2 or R-3 occupancies, exit access stairways and ramps connecting four stories or less serving and contained within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit or live/work unit.

3. Exit access stairways serving and contained within a Group R-3 congregate residence or a Group R-4 facility are not required to be enclosed.

4. Exit access stairways and ramps in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the horizontal projected area of the stairway or ramp and the opening is protected by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13. In other than Group B and M occupancies, this provi-
sion is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

5. Exit access stairways and ramps within an atrium complying with the provisions of Section 404.

6. Exit access stairways and ramps in open parking garages that serve only the parking garage.

7. Exit access stairways and ramps serving open-air seating complying with the exit access travel distance requirements of Section 1029.

8. Exit access stairways and ramps serving the balcony, gallery or press box and the main assembly floor in occupancies such as theaters, places of religious worship, auditoriums and sports facilities.

1019.4 Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies. In Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, floor openings between stories containing exit access stairways or ramps are required to be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

Exception: In Group I-3 occupancies, exit access stairways or ramps constructed in accordance with Section 408 are not required to be enclosed.

SECTION 1020 CORRIDORS

1020.1 Construction. Corridors shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1020.1. The corridor walls required to be fire-resistant rated shall comply with Section 708 for fire partitions.

Exceptions:

1. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group E where each room that is used for instruction has not less than one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have not less than one-half of the required means of egress doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.

2. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors contained within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit in an occupancy in Groups I-1 and R.

3. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in open parking garages.

4. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group B that is a space requiring only a single means of egress complying with Section 1006.2.

5. Corridors adjacent to the exterior walls of buildings shall be permitted to have unprotected openings on unrated exterior walls where unrated walls are permitted by Table 602 and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8.

### TABLE 1020.1 CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY CORRIDOR</th>
<th>REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Without sprinkler system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-1, H-2, H-3</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-4, H-5</td>
<td>Greater than 30</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A, B, E, F, M, S, U</td>
<td>Greater than 30</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Greater than 10</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-2, I-4</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-1, I-3</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. For requirements for occupancies in Group I-2, see Sections 407.2 and 407.3.
b. For a reduction in the fire-resistance rating for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.
c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 where allowed.

1020.2 Width and capacity. The required capacity of corridors shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than that specified in Table 1020.2.

Exception: In Group I-2 occupancies, corridors are not required to have a clear width of 96 inches (2438 mm) in areas where there will not be stretcher or bed movement for access to care or as part of the defend-in-place strategy.

### TABLE 1020.2 MINIMUM CORRIDOR WIDTH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>MINIMUM WIDTH (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any facilities not listed below</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to and utilization of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems or equipment</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With an occupant load of less than 50</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Within a dwelling unit</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Group E with a corridor having an occupant load of 100 or more</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In corridors and areas serving stretcher traffic in occupancies where patients receive outpatient medical care that causes the patient to be incapable of self-preservation</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I-2 in areas where required for bed movement</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1020.3 Obstruction. The minimum width or required capacity of corridors shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.
### MEANS OF EGRESS

**1020.4 Dead ends.** Where more than one exit or exit access doorway is required, the exit access shall be arranged such that there are no dead ends in corridors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.

**Exceptions:**

1. In occupancies in Group I-3 of Condition 2, 3 or 4, the dead end in a corridor shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2. In occupancies in Groups B, E, F, I-1, M, R-1, R-2, R-4, S and U, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the length of the dead-end corridors shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

3. A dead-end corridor shall not be limited in length where the length of the dead-end corridor is less than 2.5 times the least width of the dead-end corridor.

**1020.5 Air movement in corridors.** Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or ventilation air ducts.

**Exceptions:**

1. Use of a corridor as a source of makeup air for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of makeup air taken from the corridor.

2. Where located within a dwelling unit, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.

3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m²) or less in area, utilization of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.

4. Incidental air movement from pressurized rooms within health care facilities, provided that the corridor is not the primary source of supply or return to the room.

**1020.5.1 Corridor ceiling.** Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air plenum is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.

2. The corridor is separated from the plenum by fire-resistance-rated construction.

3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by the Mechanical Code.

4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler water flow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.

5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an approved engineered smoke control system.

**1020.6 Corridor continuity.** Fire-resistance-rated corridors shall be continuous from the point of entry to an exit, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms. Where the path of egress travel within a fire-resistance-rated corridor to the exit includes travel along unenclosed exit access stairways or ramps, the fire-resistance rating shall be continuous for the length of the stairway or ramp and for the length of the connecting corridor on the adjacent floor leading to the exit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as required for corridors shall not be construed as intervening rooms.

2. Enclosed elevator lobbies as permitted by Item 1 of Section 1016.2 shall not be construed as intervening rooms.

---

### SECTION 1021

**EGRESS BALCONIES**

**1021.1 General.** Balconies used for egress purposes shall conform to the same requirements as corridors for minimum width, required capacity, headroom, dead ends and projections.

**1021.2 Wall separation.** Exterior egress balconies shall be separated from the interior of the building by walls and opening protectives as required for corridors.

*Exception:* Separation is not required where the exterior egress balcony is served by not less than two stairways and a dead-end travel condition does not require travel past an unprotected opening to reach a stairway.

**1021.3 Openness.** The long side of an egress balcony shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area above the guards shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

**1021.4 Location.** Exterior egress balconies shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the egress balcony to the following:

1. Adjacent lot lines.

2. Other portions of the building.

3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on fire separation distance.

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.
SECTION 1022
EXITs

1022.1 General. Exits shall comply with Sections 1022 through 1027 and the applicable requirements of Sections 1003 through 1015. An exit shall not be used for any purpose that interferes with its function as a means of egress. Once a given level of exit protection is achieved, such level of protection shall not be reduced until arrival at the exit discharge. Exits shall be continuous from the point of entry into the exit to the exit discharge.

1022.2 Exterior exit doors. Buildings or structures used for human occupancy shall have not less than one exterior door that meets the requirements of Section 1010.1.1.

1022.2.1 Detailed requirements. Exterior exit doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1010.1.

1022.2.2 Arrangement. Exterior exit doors shall lead directly to the exit discharge or the public way.

SECTION 1023
INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

1023.1 General. Interior exit stairways and ramps serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall be enclosed and lead directly to the exterior of the building or shall be extended to the exterior of the building with an exit passageway conforming to the requirements of Section 1024, except as permitted in Section 1028.1. An interior exit stairway or ramp shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress and a circulation path.

1023.2 Construction. Enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Interior exit stairway and ramp enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the interior exit stairways or ramps shall include any basements, but not any mezzanines. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours.

Exceptions:

1. Interior exit stairways and ramps in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.3.8.
2. Interior exit stairways within an atrium enclosed in accordance with Section 404.6.

1023.3 Termination. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way.

Exception: A combination of interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways, constructed in accordance with Sections 1023.2, 1023.3.1 and 1024, respectively, and forming a continuous protected enclosure, shall be permitted to extend an interior exit stairway or ramp to the exit discharge or a public way.

1023.3.1 Extension. Where interior exit stairways and ramps are extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the interior exit stairway and ramp shall be separated from the exit passageway by a fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than that required for the interior exit stairway and ramp. A fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5 shall be installed in the fire barrier to provide a means of egress from the interior exit stairway and ramp to the exit passageway. Openings in the fire barrier other than the fire door assembly are prohibited. Penetrations of the fire barrier are prohibited.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations of the fire barrier in accordance with Section 1023.5 shall be permitted.
2. Separation between an interior exit stairway or ramp and the exit passageway extension shall not be required where there are no openings into the exit passageway extension.

3. Separation between an interior exit stairway or ramp and the exit passageway extension shall be eliminated when the interior exit stair and the exit passageway extension are pressurized in accordance with Section 909.20.5.

1023.4 Openings. Interior exit stairway and ramp opening protective shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Openings in interior exit stairways and ramps other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for exit access to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the enclosure.

Elevators shall not open into interior exit stairways and ramps.

1023.5 Penetrations. Penetrations into or through interior exit stairways and ramps are prohibited except for equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication systems and electrical raceway serving the interior exit stairway and ramp and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m²). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communication openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent interior exit stairways and ramps.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the interior exit stairway and ramp. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2.
1023.6 Ventilation. Equipment and ductwork for interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation as permitted by Section 1023.5 shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the interior exit stairway and ramp by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

2. Where such equipment and ductwork is located within the interior exit stairway and ramp, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

3. Where located within the building, such equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

The interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

1023.7 Interior exit stairway and ramp exterior walls. Exterior walls of the interior exit stairway or ramp shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the stairway or ramps and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/2 hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the topmost landing of the stairway or ramp, or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

1023.8 Discharge identification. An interior exit stairway and ramp shall not continue below its level of exit discharge unless an approved barrier is provided at the level of exit discharge to prevent persons from unintentionally continuing into levels below. Directional exit signs shall be provided as specified in Section 1013.

1023.9 Stairway signage. Signs shall be provided for all interior exit stairways and ramps connecting more than three stories, and for all interior exit stairways and ramps in buildings with three or more interior exit stairs or ramps.

1023.9.1 Signs outside stairway. A sign shall be provided at each entrance to the exit stairway and ramp, identifying the stair or ramp with the same designations used for the stairway identification signs in Section 1023.9.2.1. The sign also shall state “EXIT” in accordance with Section 1013.4. The sign shall state the required text in visual characters, in raised characters, and in braille complying with ICC A117.1.

1023.9.2 Signs inside stairway. Stairway identification signs, floor-level signs, and exit discharge signs shall comply with the following requirements:

1023.9.2.1 Stairway identification signs. A stairway identification sign shall be provided at each floor landing in the interior exit stairway and ramp designating the floor level, the terminus of the top and bottom of the interior exit stairway or ramp and the identification of the stair or ramp. The signage shall also identify the story of, and the direction to, the exit discharge and the availability of roof access from the interior exit stairway and ramp for the fire department. The sign shall be located entirely between 5 feet (1524 mm) and 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor landing in a position that is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions and located so that occupants exiting from floors that are more remote from the exit discharge will face the sign frontally at some point in their path of egress.

Exception: Stairway identification signs are not required to identify the story of, and direction to the exit discharge in interior exit stairways and ramps that connect less than three stories.

1023.9.2.1.1 Signage requirements. Stairway identification signs shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The signs shall be a minimum size of 18 inches (457 mm) by 12 inches (305 mm).

2. The word “STAIR” and the stair designation or “RAMP” and the ramp designation shall consist of numerals and/or capital letters designating the identification of the interior exit stairway and ramp. The characters shall be a minimum of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in height but not greater than one-third the height of the floor level identification characters.

3. The numerals or capital letters designating the floor level shall be a minimum of 5 inches (127 mm) in height and located in the center of the sign.

4. All other lettering and numbers shall be a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in height but not greater than the stair or ramp identification characters.

5. The directional arrow shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) in length.

6. If the interior exit stairway or ramp provides access to the roof, the words “FIRE DEPT. ROOF ACCESS” shall be displayed immediately after the stair or ramp identification.

7. The signs shall identify floor levels, stairs and ramps by one or more characters, using a designation that is consistent with the floor level, stair and ramp designations used throughout the building.
8. Characters and their background shall have a nonglare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

9. The sign shall be of an approved design, and shall be durable and of a material that complies with other sections of the Construction Codes. Unless painted on the wall, the sign shall be securely fastened to the structure.

1023.9.2.2 Floor-level signs. In addition to the stairway identification sign, a floor-level sign in visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with ICC A117.1 shall be located at each floor-level landing adjacent to the door leading from the interior exit stairway and ramp into the corridor or other building space to identify the floor level.

1023.9.2.3 Exit discharge signs. A sign stating “EXIT” in visual characters, raised characters and braille shall be located adjacent to the door to the exit discharge in accordance with Section 1013.4.

1023.10 Elevator lobby identification signs. At landings in interior exit stairways where two or more doors lead to the floor level, any door with direct access to an enclosed elevator lobby shall be identified by signage located on the door or directly adjacent to the door stating “Elevator Lobby.” Signage shall be in accordance with Section 1023.9.1, Items 4, 5 and 6.

1023.11 Smokeproof enclosures. Where required by Section 403.5.4 or 405.7.2, interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20.

1023.11.1 Termination and extension. A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3. The exit passageway shall be without openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.

2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.

3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

1023.11.2 Enclosure access. Access to the stairway or ramp within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

Exception: Access is not required by way of a vestibule or exterior balcony for stairways and ramps using the pressurization alternative complying with Section 909.20.5.

SECTION 1024
[Reserved]

SECTION 1025
[Reserved]

SECTION 1026
HORIZONTAL EXITS

1026.1 Horizontal exits. Horizontal exits serving as an exit in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. A horizontal exit shall not serve as the only exit from a portion of a building, and where two or more exits are required, not more than one-half of the total number of exits or total exit minimum width or required capacity shall be horizontal exits.

Exceptions:

1. Horizontal exits are permitted to comprise two-thirds of the required exits from any building or floor area for occupancies in Group I-2.

2. Horizontal exits are permitted to comprise 100 percent of the exits required for occupancies in Group I-3. Not less than 6 square feet (0.6 m²) of accessible space per occupant shall be provided on each side of the horizontal exit for the total number of people in adjoining compartments.

1026.2 Separation. The separation between buildings or refuge areas connected by a horizontal exit shall be provided by a fire wall complying with Section 706; or by a fire barrier complying with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly complying with Section 711, or both. The minimum fire-resistance rating of the separation shall be 2 hours. Opening protectives in horizontal exits shall also comply with Section 716. Duct and air transfer openings in a fire wall or fire barrier that serves as a horizontal exit shall also comply with Section 717. The horizontal exit separation shall extend vertically through all levels of the building unless floor assemblies have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours with no unprotected openings.

Exception: A fire-resistance rating is not required at horizontal exits between a building area and an above-grade pedestrian walkway constructed in accordance with Section 3104, provided that the distance between connected buildings is more than 20 feet (6096 mm).
Horizontal exits constructed as fire barriers shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall so as to divide completely the floor served by the horizontal exit.

1026.3 Opening protectives. Fire doors in horizontal exits shall be self-closing or automatic-closing when activated by a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3. Doors, where located in a cross-corridor condition, shall be automatic-closing by activation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3.

1026.4 Refuge area. The refuge area of a horizontal exit shall be a space occupied by the same tenant or a public area and each such refuge area shall be adequate to accommodate the original occupant load of the refuge area plus the occupant load anticipated from the adjoining compartment. The anticipated occupant load from the adjoining compartment shall be based on the capacity of the horizontal exit doors entering the refuge area.

1026.4.1 Capacity. The capacity of the refuge area shall be computed based on a net floor area allowance of 3 square feet (0.2787 m²) for each occupant to be accommodated therein.

Exceptions: The net floor area allowable per occupant shall be as follows for the indicated occupancies:

1. Six square feet (0.6 m²) per occupant for occupancies in Group I-3.
2. Fifteen square feet (1.4 m²) per occupant for ambulatory occupancies in Group I-2.
3. Thirty square feet (2.8 m²) per occupant for nonambulatory occupancies in Group I-2.

1026.4.2 Number of exits. The refuge area into which a horizontal exit leads shall be provided with exits adequate to meet the occupant requirements of this chapter, but not including the added occupant load imposed by persons entering the refuge area through horizontal exits from other areas. Not less than one refuge area exit shall lead directly to the exterior or to an interior exit stairway or ramp.

Exception: The adjoining compartment shall not be required to have a stairway or door leading directly outside, provided the refuge area into which a horizontal exit leads has stairways or doors leading directly outside and are so arranged that egress shall not require the occupants to return through the compartment from which egress originates.

SECTION 1027
EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

1027.1 Exterior exit stairways and ramps. Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an element of a required means of egress shall comply with this section.

1027.2 Use in a means of egress. Exterior exit stairways shall not be used as an element of a required means of egress for Group I-2 occupancies. For occupancies in other than Group I-2, exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be permitted as an element of a required means of egress for buildings not exceeding six stories above grade plane or that are not high-rise buildings.

1027.3 Open side. Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an element of a required means of egress shall be open on not less than one side, except for required structural columns, beams, handrails and guards. An open side shall have not less than 35 square feet (3.3 m²) of aggregate open area adjacent to each floor level and the level of each intermediate landing. The required open area shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent floor or landing level.

1027.4 Side yards. The open areas adjoining exterior exit stairways or ramps shall be either yards, courts or public ways; the remaining sides are permitted to be enclosed by the exterior walls of the building.

1027.5 Location. Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the stairway or ramps, including landings, to:

1. Adjacent lot lines.
2. Other portions of the building.
3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on fire separation distance.

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.

1027.6 Exterior exit stairway and ramp protection. Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be separated from the interior of the building as required in Section 1023.2. Openings shall be limited to those necessary for egress from normally occupied spaces. Where a vertical plane projecting from the edge of an exterior exit stairway or ramp and landings is exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the exterior wall shall be rated in accordance with Section 1023.7.

Exceptions:

1. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for occupancies, other than those in Group R-1 or R-2, in buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane where a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies is the first story above grade plane.
2. Separation from the interior of the building is not required where the exterior exit stairway or ramp is served by an exterior exit ramp or balcony that connects two remote exterior exit stairways or other approved exits with a perimeter that is not less than 50 percent open. To be considered open, the opening shall be not less than 50 percent of the height of the enclosing wall, with the top of the openings not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the top of the balcony.
SECTION 1028
EXIT DISCHARGE

1028.1 General. Exits shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building. The exit discharge shall be at grade or shall provide a direct path of egress travel to grade. The exit discharge shall not reenter a building. The combined use of Exceptions 1 and 2 shall not exceed 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the required exits.

Exceptions:

1. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through areas on the level of discharge provided all of the following conditions are met:

   1.1. Discharge of interior exit stairways and ramps shall be provided with a free and unobstructed path of travel to an exterior exit door and such exit is readily visible and identifiable from the point of termination of the enclosure.

   1.2. The entire area of the level of exit discharge is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating for the enclosure.

   1.3. The egress path from the interior exit stairway and ramp on the level of exit discharge is protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system. Portions of the level of exit discharge with access to the egress path shall be either equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, or separated from the egress path in accordance with the requirements for the enclosure of interior exit stairways or ramps.

   1.4. Where a required interior exit stairway or ramp and an exit access stairway or ramp serve the same floor level and terminate at the same level of exit discharge, the termination of the exit access stairway or ramp and the exit discharge door of the interior exit stairway or ramp shall be separated by a distance of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the exit discharge door from the interior exit stairway or ramp and the last tread of the exit access stairway or termination of slope of the exit access ramp.

2. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through a vestibule provided all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1. The entire area of the vestibule is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating of the interior exit stairway or ramp enclosure.

   2.2. The depth from the exterior of the building is not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) and the length is not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).

   2.3. The area is separated from the remainder of the level of exit discharge by a fire partition constructed in accordance with Section 708.

   Exception: The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required.

   2.4. The area is used only for means of egress and exits directly to the outside.

3. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1026 shall not be required to discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

1028.2 Exit discharge width or capacity. The minimum width or required capacity of the exit discharge shall be not less than the minimum width or required capacity of the exits being served.

1028.3 Exit discharge components. Exit discharge components shall be sufficiently open to the exterior so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases.
1028.4 Egress courts. Egress courts serving as a portion of the exit discharge in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1028.4.1 and 1028.4.2.

1028.4.1 Width or capacity. The required capacity of egress courts shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except as specified herein. Egress courts serving Group R-3 and U occupancies shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The required capacity and width of egress courts shall be unobstructed to a height of 7 feet (2134 mm).

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

Where an egress court exceeds the minimum required width and the width of such egress court is then reduced along the path of exit travel, the reduction in width shall be gradual. The transition in width shall be affected by a guard not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height and shall not create an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with respect to the axis of the egress court along the path of egress travel. The width of the egress court shall not be less than the required capacity.

1028.4.2 Construction and openings. Where an egress court serving a building or portion thereof is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width, the egress court walls shall have not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor of the egress court. Openings within such walls shall be protected by opening protective having a fire protection rating of not less than 1/4 hour.

Exceptions:
1. Egress courts serving an occupant load of less than 10.
2. Egress courts serving Group R-3.

1028.5 Access to a public way. The exit discharge shall provide a direct and unobstructed access to a public way.

Exception: Where access to a public way cannot be provided, a safe dispersal area shall be provided where all of the following are met:
1. The area shall be of a size to accommodate not less than 5 square feet (0.46 m²) for each person.
2. The area shall be located on the same lot not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from the building requiring egress.
3. The area shall be permanently maintained and identified as a safe dispersal area.
4. The area shall be provided with a safe and unobstructed path of travel from the building.

SECTION 1029
ASSEMBLY

1029.1 General. A room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, equipment or other material shall comply with this section.

1029.1.1 Bleachers. Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, that are not building elements, shall comply with ICC 300.

1029.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers. Where bleachers,grandstands are used for purposes other than ticket booths less than 100 square feet (9.29 m²) and toilet rooms, such spaces shall be separated by fire barriers complying with Section 707 and horizontal assemblies complying with Section 711 with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

1029.2 Assembly main exit. A building, room or space used for assembly purposes that has an occupant load of greater than 300 and is provided with a main exit, that main exit shall be of sufficient capacity to accommodate not less than one-half of the occupant load, but such capacity shall be not less than the total required capacity of all means of egress leading to the exit. Where the building is classified as a Group A occupancy, the main exit shall front on not less than one street or an unoccupied space of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width that adjoins a street or public way. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total capacity of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required capacity.

1029.3 Assembly other exits. In addition to having access to a main exit, each level in a building used for assembly purposes having an occupant load greater than 300 and provided with a main exit, shall be provided with additional means of egress that shall provide an egress capacity for not less than one-half of the total occupant load served by that level and shall comply with Section 1007.1. In a building used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits for each level shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building, provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width.

1029.4 Foyers and lobbies. In Group A-1 occupancies, where persons are admitted to the building at times when seats are not available, such persons shall be allowed to wait in a lobby or similar space, provided such lobby or similar space shall not encroach upon the minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress. Such foyer, if not directly connected to a public street by all the main entrances or exits, shall have a straight and unobstructed corridor or path of travel to every such main entrance or exit.
1029.5 Interior balcony and gallery means of egress. For balconies, galleries or press boxes having a seating capacity of 50 or more located in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, not less than two means of egress shall be provided, with one from each side of every balcony, gallery or press box.

1029.6 Capacity of aisle for assembly. The required capacity of aisles shall be not less than that determined in accordance with Section 1029.6.1 where smoke-protected assembly seating is not provided and with Section 1029.6.2 or 1029.6.3 where smoke-protected assembly seating is provided.

1029.6.1 Without smoke protection. The required capacity in inches (mm) of the aisles for assembly seating without smoke protection shall be not less than the occupant load served by the egress element in accordance with all of the following, as applicable:

1. Not less than 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) of aisle capacity for each occupant served shall be provided on stepped aisles having riser heights 7 inches (178 mm) or less and tread depths 11 inches (279 mm) or greater, measured horizontally between tread nosings.

2. Not less than 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) of additional aisle capacity for each occupant shall be provided for each 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) of riser height above 7 inches (178 mm).

3. Where egress requires stepped aisle descent, not less than 0.075 inch (1.9 mm) of additional aisle capacity for each occupant shall be provided on those portions of aisle capacity having no handrail within a horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm).

4. Ramped aisles, where slopes are steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) of clear aisle capacity for each occupant served. Level or ramped aisles, where slopes are not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.20 inch (5.1 mm) of clear aisle capacity for each occupant served.

1029.6.2 Smoke-protected assembly seating. The required capacity in inches (mm) of the aisle for smoke-protected assembly seating shall be not less than the occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by the appropriate factor in Table 1029.6.2. The total number of seats specified shall be those within the space exposed to the same smoke-protected environment. Interpolation is permitted between the specific values shown. A life safety evaluation, complying with NFPA 101, shall be done for a facility utilizing the reduced width requirements of Table 1029.6.2 for smoke-protected assembly seating.

Exception: For outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating with an occupant load not greater than 18,000, the required capacity in inches (mm) shall be determined using the factors in Section 1029.6.3.

1029.6.2.1 Smoke control. Aisles and aisle accessways serving a smoke-protected assembly seating area shall be provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the means of egress.

1029.6.2.2 Roof height. A smoke-protected assembly seating area with a roof shall have the lowest portion of the roof deck not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

Exception: A roof canopy in an outdoor stadium shall be permitted to be less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway provided that there are no objects less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

1029.6.2.3 Automatic sprinklers. Enclosed areas with walls and ceilings in buildings or structures containing smoke-protected assembly seating shall be protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. The floor area used for contests, performances or entertainment provided the roof construction is more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the floor level and the use is restricted to low fire hazard uses.

2. Press boxes and storage facilities less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area.

3. Outdoor seating facilities where seating and the means of egress in the seating area are essentially open to the outside.

### TABLE 1029.6.2
CAPACITY FOR AISLES FOR SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING</th>
<th>INCHES OF CAPACITY PER SEAT SERVED</th>
<th>Stepped aisles with handrails within 30 inches</th>
<th>Stepped aisles without handrails within 30 inches</th>
<th>Level aisles or ramped aisles not steeper than 1 in 10 in slope</th>
<th>Rampasted aisles steeper than 1 in 10 in slope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equal to or less than 5,000</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>0.250</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.165</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.163</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>0.096</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>0.070</td>
<td>0.077</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>0.076</td>
<td>0.095</td>
<td>0.056</td>
<td>0.062</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal to or greater than 25,000</td>
<td>0.060</td>
<td>0.075</td>
<td>0.044</td>
<td>0.048</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
1029.6.3 Outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating. The required capacity in inches (mm) of aisles shall be not less than the total occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by 0.08 (2.0 mm) where egress is by stepped aisle and multiplied by 0.06 (1.52 mm) where egress is by level aisles and ramped aisles.

Exception: The required capacity in inches (mm) of aisles shall be permitted to comply with Section 1029.6.2 for the number of seats in the outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating where Section 1029.6.2 permits less capacity.

1029.7 Travel distance. Exits and aisles shall be so located that the travel distance to an exit door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm) measured along the line of travel in nonsprinklered buildings. Travel distance shall be not more than 250 feet (76 200 mm) in sprinklered buildings. Where aisles are provided for seating, the distance shall be measured along the aisles and aisle accessways without travel over or on the seats.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke-protected assembly seating: The travel distance from each seat to the nearest entrance to a vomitory or concourse shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The travel distance from the entrance to the vomitory or concourse to a stairway, ramp or walk on the exterior of the building shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

2. Open-air seating: The travel distance from each seat to the building exterior shall not exceed 400 feet (122 m). The travel distance shall not be limited in facilities of Type I or II construction.

1029.8 Common path of egress travel. The common path of egress travel shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to a point where an occupant has a choice of two paths of egress travel to two exits.

Exceptions:

1. For areas serving less than 50 occupants, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

2. For smoke-protected assembly seating, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

1029.8.1 Path through adjacent row. Where one of the two paths of travel is across the aisle through a row of seats to another aisle, there shall be not more than 24 seats between the two aisles, and the minimum clear width between rows for the row between the two aisles shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row between aisles.

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating there shall be not more than 40 seats between the two aisles and the minimum clear width shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat.

1029.9 Assembly aisles are required. Every occupied portion of any building, room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, similar fixtures or equipment shall be provided with aisles leading to exits or exit access doorways in accordance with this section.

1029.9.1 Minimum aisle width. The minimum clear width for aisles shall comply with one of the following:

1. Forty-eight inches (1219 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on each side.

Exception: Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the stepped aisles serve less than 50 seats.

2. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on only one side.

Exception: Twenty-three inches (584 mm) where a stepped aisle handrail or guard and seating where the stepped aisle is subdivided by a mid-aisle handrail.

3. Forty-two inches (1067 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on both sides.

Exceptions:

1. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the aisle serves less than 50 seats.

2. Thirty inches (762 mm) where the aisle does not serve more than 14 seats.

3. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on only one side.

Exception: For other than ramped aisles that serve as part of an accessible route, 30 inches (762 mm) where the ramped aisle does not serve more than 14 seats.

1029.9.2 Aisle catchment area. The aisle shall provide sufficient capacity for the number of persons accommodated by the catchment area served by the aisle. The catchment area served by an aisle is that portion of the total space served by that section of the aisle. In establishing catchment areas, the assumption shall be made that there is a balanced use of all means of egress, with the number of persons in proportion to egress capacity.

1029.9.3 Converging aisles. Where aisles converge to form a single path of egress travel, the required capacity of that path shall be not less than the combined required capacity of the converging aisles.

1029.9.4 Uniform width and capacity. Those portions of aisles, where egress is possible in either of two directions, shall be uniform in minimum width or required capacity.

1029.9.5 Dead end aisles. Each end of an aisle shall be continuous to a cross aisle, foyer, doorway, vomitory, concourse or stairway in accordance with Section 1029.9.7 having access to an exit.

Exceptions:

1. Dead-end aisles shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.
2. Dead-end *aisles* longer than 16 rows are permitted where seats beyond the 16th row dead-end *aisle* are not more than 24 seats from another *aisle*, measured along a row of seats having a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

3. For smoke-protected assembly seating, the dead end *aisle* length of vertical *aisles* shall not exceed a distance of 21 rows.

4. For smoke-protected assembly seating, a longer dead-end *aisle* is permitted where seats beyond the 21-row dead-end *aisle* are not more than 40 seats from another *aisle*, measured along a row of seats having an *aisle* accessway with a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

**1029.9.6 Aisle measurement.** The clear width for *aisles* shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges except for permitted projections.

*Exception:* The clear width of *aisles* adjacent to seating at tables shall be permitted to be measured in accordance with Section 1029.12.1.

1029.9.6.1 Assembly *aisle* obstructions. There shall not be obstructions in the minimum width or required capacity of *aisles*.

*Exception:* Handrails are permitted to project into the required width of stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* in accordance with Section 1014.8.

1029.9.7 Stairways connecting to stepped *aisles*. A stairway that connects a stepped *aisle* to a cross *aisle* or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly *aisle* walking surface requirements of Section 1029.13. Transitions between stairways and stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.9.8 Stairways connecting to vomitories. A stairway that connects a vomitory to a cross *aisle* or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly *aisle* walking surface requirements of Section 1029.13. Transitions between stairways and stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1029.10.

1029.10 Transitions. Transitions between stairways and stepped *aisles* shall comply with either Section 1029.10.1 or 1029.10.2.

1029.10.1 Transitions and stairways that maintain stepped *aisle* riser and tread dimensions. Stepped *aisles*, transitions and stairways that maintain riser and tread dimensions shall comply with Section 1029.13 as one exit access component.

1029.10.2 Transitions to stairways that do not maintain stepped *aisle* riser and tread dimensions. Transitions to stairways from stepped *aisles* with riser and tread dimen-
sions that differ from the stairways shall comply with Sections 1029.10.2.1 through 1029.10.3.

1029.10.2.1 Stairways and stepped *aisles* in a straight run. Transitions where the stairway is a straight run from the stepped *aisle* shall have a minimum depth of 22 inches (559 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have greater depth and 30 inches (762 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have lesser depth.

1029.10.2.2 Stairways and stepped *aisles* that change direction. Transitions where the stairway changes direction from the stepped *aisle* shall have a minimum depth of 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped *aisle* tread depth, whichever is greater, between the stepped *aisle* and stairway.

1029.10.3 Transition marking. A distinctive marking stripe shall be provided at each nosing or leading edge adjacent to the transition. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the stepped *aisle* contrasting marking stripe.

1029.11 Construction. *Aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building.

*Exception:* Wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

1029.11.1 Walking surface. The surface of *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached. The surface for stepped *aisles* shall comply with Section 1011.7.1.

1029.11.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* and outdoor approaches to *aisles*, stepped *aisles* and ramped *aisles* shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surface.

1029.12 Aisle accessways. *Aisle accessways* for seating at tables shall comply with Section 1029.12.1. *Aisle accessways* for seating in rows shall comply with Section 1029.12.2.

1029.12.1 Seating at tables. Where seating is located at a table or counter and is adjacent to an *aisle* or *aisle accessway*, the measurement of required clear width of the *aisle* or *aisle accessway* shall be made to a line 19 inches (483 mm) away from and parallel to the edge of the table or counter. The 19-inch (483 mm) distance shall be measured perpendicular to the side of the table or counter. In the case of other side boundaries for *aisles* or *aisle accessways*, the clear width shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges.

*Exception:* Where tables or counters are served by fixed seats, the width of the *aisle* or *aisle accessway* shall be measured from the back of the seat.

1029.12.1.1 Aisle accessway capacity and width for seating at tables. *Aisle accessways* serving arrangements of seating at tables or counters shall comply with the capacity requirements of Section 1005.1 but shall not have less than 12 inches (305 mm) of width plus $\frac{1}{2}$...
MEANS OF EGRESS

inch (12.7 mm) of width for each additional 1 foot (305 mm), or fraction thereof, beyond 12 feet (3658 mm) of aisle accessway length measured from the center of the seat farthest from an aisle.

Exception: Portions of an aisle accessway having a length not exceeding 6 feet (1829 mm) and used by a total of not more than four persons.

1029.12.1.2 Seating at table aisle accessway length. The length of travel along the aisle accessway shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to the point where a person has a choice of two or more paths of egress travel to separate exits.

1029.12.2 Clear width of aisle accessways serving seating in rows. Where seating rows have 14 or fewer seats, the minimum clear aisle accessway width shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) measured as the clear horizontal distance from the back of the row ahead and the nearest projection of the row behind. Where chairs have automatic or self-rising seats, the measurement shall be made with seats in the raised position. Where any chair in the row does not have an automatic or self-rising seat, the measurement shall be made with the seat in the down position. For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing shall be determined with the tablet arm in the used position.

Exception: For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing is permitted to be determined with the tablet arm in the stored position where the tablet arm when raised manually to vertical position in one motion automatically returns to the stored position by force of gravity.

1029.12.2.1 Dual access. For rows of seating served by aisles or doorways at both ends, there shall be not more than 100 seats per row. The minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for every additional seat beyond 14 seats where seats have backrests or beyond 21 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

1029.12.2.2 Single access. For rows of seating served by an aisle or doorway at only one end of the row, the minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for every additional seat beyond seven seats where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1029.12.2.1.

1029.13 Assembly aisle walking surfaces. Ramped aisles shall comply with Sections 1029.13.1 through 1029.13.1.3. Stepped aisles shall comply with Sections 1029.13.2 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.1 Ramped aisles. Aisles that are sloped more than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) shall be considered a ramped aisle. Ramped aisles that serve as part of an accessible route in accordance with Sections 1009 and 1108.2 shall have a maximum slope of one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other ramped aisles shall not exceed one unit vertical in 8 units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

1029.13.1.1 Cross slope. The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramped aisle shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1029.13.1.2 Landings. Ramped aisles shall have landings in accordance with Sections 1012.6 through 1012.6.5. Landings for ramped aisles shall be permitted to overlap required aisles or cross aisles.

1029.13.1.3 Edge protection. Ramped aisles shall have edge protection in accordance with Sections 1012.10 and 1012.10.1.

Exception: In assembly spaces with fixed seating, edge protection is not required on the sides of ramped aisles where the ramped aisles provide access to the adjacent seating and aisle accessways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING</th>
<th>MAXIMUM NUMBER OF SEATS PER ROW PERMITTED TO HAVE A MINIMUM 12-INCH CLEAR WIDTH AISLE ACCESSWAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aisle or doorway at both ends of row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seats with backrests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 4,000</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13,000</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16,000</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19,000</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22,000 and greater</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
1029.13.2 Stepped aisles. Aisles with a slope exceeding one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope) shall consist of a series of risers and treads that extends across the full width of aisles and complies with Sections 1029.13.2.1 through 1029.13.2.4.

1029.13.2.1 Treads. Tread depths shall be not less than 11 inches (279 mm) and shall have dimensional uniformity.

Exception: The tolerance between adjacent treads shall not exceed $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm).

1029.13.2.2 Risers. Where the gradient of stepped aisles is to be the same as the gradient of adjoining seating areas, the riser height shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nor more than 8 inches (203 mm) and shall be uniform within each flight.

Exceptions:

1. Riser height nonuniformity shall be limited to the extent necessitated by changes in the gradient of the adjoining seating area to maintain adequate sightlines. Where nonuniformities exceed $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) between adjacent risers, the exact location of such nonuniformities shall be indicated with a distinctive marking stripe on each tread at the nosing or leading edge adjacent to the nonuniform risers. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the contrasting marking stripe.

2. Riser heights not exceeding 9 inches (229 mm) shall be permitted where they are necessitated by the slope of the adjacent seating areas to maintain sightlines.

1029.13.2.2.1 Construction tolerances. The tolerance between adjacent risers on a stepped aisle that were designed to be equal height shall not exceed $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm). Where the stepped aisle is designed in accordance with Exception 1 of Section 1029.13.2.2, the stepped aisle shall be constructed so that each riser of unequal height, determined in the direction of descent, is not more than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are less than 22 inches (560 mm) in depth and $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are 22 inches (560 mm) or greater in depth.

1029.13.2.3 Tread contrasting marking stripe. A contrasting marking stripe shall be provided on each tread at the nosing or leading edge such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide.

Exception: The contrasting marking stripe is permitted to be omitted where tread surfaces are such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent.

1029.13.2.4 Nosing and profile. Nosing and riser profile shall comply with Sections 1011.5.5 through 1011.5.5.3.

1029.14 Seat stability. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

Exceptions:

1. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with 200 or fewer seats, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof with seating at tables and without ramped or tiered floors for seating, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

3. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with greater than 200 seats, the seats shall be fastened together in groups of not less than three or the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

4. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where flexibility of the seating arrangement is an integral part of the design and function of the space and seating is on tiered levels, not more than 200 seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor. Plans showing seating, tiers and aisles shall be submitted for approval.

5. Groups of seats within a building, room or space used for assembly purposes separated from other seating by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers with level floors and having not more than 14 seats per group shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

6. Seats intended for musicians or other performers and separated by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

1029.15 Handrails. Ramped aisles having a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7-percent slope) and stepped aisles shall be provided with handrails in compliance with Section 1014 located either at one or both sides of the aisle or within the aisle width.

Exceptions:

1. Handrails are not required for ramped aisles with seating on both sides.

2. Handrails are not required where, at the side of the aisle, there is a guard with a top surface that complies with the graspsability requirements of handrails in accordance with Section 1014.3.

3. Handrail extensions are not required at the top and bottom of stepped aisles and ramped aisles to permit crossovers within the aisles.

1029.15.1 Discontinuous handrails. Where there is seating on both sides of the aisle, the mid-aisle handrails shall
be discontinuous with gaps or breaks at intervals not exceeding five rows to facilitate access to seating and to permit crossing from one side of the aisle to the other. These gaps or breaks shall have a clear width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm) and not greater than 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally, and the mid-aisle handrail shall have rounded terminations or bends.

1029.15.2 Handrail termination. Handrails located on the side of stepped aisles shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stepped aisle flight.

1029.15.3 Mid-aisle termination. Mid-aisle handrails shall not extend beyond the lowest riser and shall terminate within 18 inches (381 mm), measured horizontally, from the lowest riser. Handrail extensions are not required.

Exception: Mid-aisle handrails shall be permitted to extend beyond the lowest riser where the handrail extensions do not obstruct the width of the cross aisle.

1029.15.4 Rails. Where mid-aisle handrails are provided in stepped aisles, there shall be an additional rail located approximately 12 inches (305 mm) below the handrail. The rail shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8.1.2.

1029.16 Assembly guards. Guards adjacent to seating in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015 except where provided in accordance with Sections 1029.16.1 through 1029.16.4. At bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, guards must be provided where required by ICC 300 and Section 1029.16.1.

1029.16.1 Perimeter guards. Perimeter guards shall be provided where the footboards or walking surface of seating facilities are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. Where the seatboards are adjacent to the perimeter, guard height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the seatboard. Where the seats are self-rising, guard height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the floor surface. Where there is an aisle between the seating and the perimeter, the guard height shall be measured in accordance with Section 1015.2.

Exceptions:
1. Guards that impact sightlines shall be permitted to comply with Section 1029.16.3.
2. Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating shall not be required to have perimeter guards where the seating is located adjacent to a wall and the space between the wall and the seating is less than 4 inches (102 mm).

1029.16.2 Cross aisles. Cross aisles located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below shall have guards in accordance with Section 1015.

Where an elevation change of 30 inches (762 mm) or less occurs between a cross aisle and the adjacent floor or grade below, guards not less than 26 inches (660 mm) above the cross aisle shall be provided.

Exception: Where the backs of seats on the front of the cross aisle project 24 inches (610 mm) or more above the adjacent floor of the aisle, a guard need not be provided.

1029.16.3 Sightline-constrained guard heights. Unless subject to the requirements of Section 1029.16.4, a fascia or railing system in accordance with the guard requirements of Section 1015 and having a minimum height of 26 inches (660 mm) shall be provided where the floor or footboard elevation is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and the fascia or railing would otherwise interfere with the sightlines of immediately adjacent seating.

1029.16.4 Guards at the end of aisles. A fascia or railing system complying with the guard requirements of Section 1015 shall be provided for the full width of the aisle where the foot of the aisle is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. The fascia or railing shall be a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) high and shall provide a minimum 42 inches (1067 mm) measured diagonally between the top of the rail and the nosing of the nearest tread.

SECTION 1030
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE

1030.1 General. In addition to the means of egress required by this chapter, provisions shall be made for emergency escape and rescue openings in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Tables 1006.3.2(1) and 1006.3.2(2) and Group R-3 occupancies. Basements and sleeping rooms below the fourth story above grade plane shall have at least one exterior emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with this section. Where basements contain one or more sleeping rooms, emergency escape and rescue openings shall be required in each sleeping room, but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the basement. Such openings shall open directly into a public way or to a yard or court that opens to a public way.

Exceptions:
1. Basements with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings.
2. Emergency escape and rescue openings are not required from basements or sleeping rooms that have an exit door or exit access door that opens directly into a public way or to a yard, court or exterior exit balcony that opens to a public way.
3. Basements without habitable spaces and having not more than 200 square feet (18.6 m²) in floor area shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings.
4. Where access to a public way cannot be provided, a safe dispersal area shall be provided where all of the following are met:
   1. The area shall be of a size to accommodate at least 5 square feet (0.46 m²) for each person.
   2. The area shall be located on the same lot at least 25 feet (7620 mm) away from the building requiring egress.
   3. The area shall be permanently maintained and identified as a safe dispersal area.
   4. The area shall be provided with a safe and unobstructed path of travel from the building.

1030.2 Minimum size. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet (0.53 m²).

   Exception: The minimum net clear opening for grade-floor emergency escape and rescue openings shall be 5 square feet (0.46 m²).

1030.2.1 Minimum dimensions. The minimum net clear opening height dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm). The minimum net clear opening width dimension shall be 20 inches (508 mm). The net clear opening dimensions shall be the result of normal operation of the opening.

1030.3 Maximum height from floor. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have the bottom of the clear opening not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

1030.4 Operational constraints. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys or tools. Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are permitted to be placed over emergency escape and rescue openings provided the minimum net clear opening size complies with Section 1030.2 and such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the emergency escape and rescue opening. Where such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are installed in existing buildings, smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11 regardless of the valuation of the alteration.

1030.5 Window wells. An emergency escape and rescue opening with a finished sill height below the adjacent ground level shall be provided with a window well in accordance with Sections 1030.5.1 and 1030.5.2.

   1030.5.1 Minimum size. The minimum horizontal area of the window well shall be 9 square feet (0.84 m²), with a minimum dimension of 36 inches (914 mm). The area of the window well shall allow the emergency escape and rescue opening to be fully opened.

   1030.5.2 Ladders or steps. Window wells with a vertical depth of more than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with an approved permanently affixed ladder or steps. Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of at least 12 inches (305 mm), shall project at least 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center (o.c.) vertically for the full height of the window well. The ladder or steps shall not encroach into the required dimensions of the window well by more than 6 inches (152 mm). The ladder or steps shall not be obstructed by the emergency escape and rescue opening. Ladders or steps required by this section are exempt from the stairway requirements of Section 1011.
CHAPTER 11
ACCESSIBILITY

SECTION 1101
GENERAL


1101.2 Design. Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be accessible in accordance with this code and ICC A117.1.

1101.3 Fractional numbers. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the calculations and percentages in Section 1107 shall be rounded up to the next whole number.

SECTION 1102
DEFINITIONS

1102.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCESSIBLE.
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.
ACCESSIBLE UNIT.
AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY.
CIRCULATION PATH.
COMMON USE.
DETECTABLE WARNING.
EMPLOYEE WORK AREA.
FACILITY.
INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE.
MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING.
MULTISTORY UNIT.
PUBLIC ENTRANCE.
PUBLIC-USE AREAS.
RESTRICTED ENTRANCE.
SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.
SERVICE ENTRANCE.
SITE.
TYPE A UNIT.
TYPE B UNIT.
WHEELCHAIR SPACE.

SECTION 1103
SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

1103.1 Where required. Sites, buildings, structures, facilities, elements and spaces, temporary or permanent, shall be accessible to individuals with disabilities.

1103.2 General exceptions. Sites, buildings, structures, facilities, elements and spaces shall be exempt from this chapter to the extent specified in this section.

1103.2.1 Specific requirements. Accessibility is not required in buildings and facilities, or portions thereof, to the extent permitted by Sections 1104 through 1111.

1103.2.2 Employee work areas. Spaces and elements within employee work areas shall only be required to comply with Sections 907.5.2.3.1, 1009 and 1104.3.1 and shall be designed and constructed so that individuals with disabilities can approach, enter and exit the work area. Work areas, or portions of work areas, other than raised courtroom stations in accordance with Section 1108.4.1.4, that are less than 300 square feet (30 m²) in area and located 7 inches (178 mm) or more above or below the ground or finished floor where the change in elevation is essential to the function of the space shall be exempt from all requirements.

1103.2.3 Detached dwellings. Detached one- and two-family dwellings, their accessory structures and their associated sites and facilities are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.4 Utility buildings. Group U occupancies are not required to comply with this chapter other than the following:

1. In agricultural buildings, access is required to paved work areas and areas open to the general public.

2. Private garages or carports that contain required accessible parking.

1103.2.5 Construction sites. Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage or construction trailers are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.6 Raised areas. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.7 Limited access spaces. Spaces accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways are not required to comply with this chapter.
1103.2.8 Areas in places of religious worship. Raised or lowered areas, or portions of areas, in places of religious worship that are less than 300 square feet (30 m²) in area and located 7 inches (178 mm) or more above or below the finished floor and used primarily for the performance of religious ceremonies are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.9 Equipment spaces. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment are not required to be accessible. Such spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits, elevator pent-houses, mechanical, electrical or communications equipment rooms, piping or equipment catwalks, water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations, electric substations and transformer vaults, and highway and tunnel utility facilities.

1103.2.10 Highway tollbooths. Highway tollbooths where the access is provided only by bridges above the vehicular traffic or underground tunnels are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.11 Residential Group R-1. Buildings of Group R-1 containing not more than five sleeping units for rent or hire that are also occupied as the residence of the proprietor are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.12 Day care facilities. Where a day care facility is part of a dwelling unit, only the portion of the structure utilized for the day care facility is required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.13 Detention and correctional facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel, and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to be Accessible units, are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.14 Walk-in coolers and freezers. Walk-in coolers and freezers intended for employee use only are not required to comply with this chapter.

1103.2.15 Existing buildings. Existing buildings shall comply with the Existing Building Code.

SECTION 1104
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

1104.1 Site arrival points. At least one accessible route within the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking, accessible passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance served.

Exception: Other than in buildings or facilities containing or serving Type B units, an accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.

1104.2 Within a site. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces that are on the same site.

Exceptions:

1. An accessible route is not required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces that have, as the only means of access between them, a vehicular way not providing for pedestrian access.

2. An accessible route to recreational facilities shall only be required to the extent specified in Section 1110.

1104.3 Connected spaces. When a building or portion of a building is required to be accessible, at least one accessible route shall be provided to each portion of the building, to accessible building entrances connecting accessible pedestrian walkways and to the public way.

Exceptions:

1. Stories and mezzanines exempted by Section 1104.4.

2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes with fixed seating, an accessible route shall not be required to serve levels where wheelchair spaces are not provided.

3. Vertical access to elevated employee work stations within a courtroom complying with Section 1108.4.1.4.

4. An accessible route to recreational facilities shall only be required to the extent specified in Section 1110.

1104.3.1 Employee work areas. Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall be accessible routes.

Exceptions:

1. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas that are less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in size and defined by permanently installed partitions, counters, casework or furnishings, shall not be required to be accessible routes.

2. Common use circulation paths, located within employee work areas, that are an integral component of equipment, shall not be required to be accessible routes.

3. Common use circulation paths, located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather, shall not be required to be accessible routes.
1104.3.2 Press boxes. Press boxes in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be on an accessible route.

Exceptions:
1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have a single point of entry from the bleachers, provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes for each playing field is not more than 500 square feet (46 m²).
2. An accessible route shall not be required to freestanding press boxes that are more than 12 feet (3660 mm) above grade provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes for each playing field is not more than 500 square feet (46 m²).

1104.4 Multistory buildings and facilities. At least one accessible route shall connect each accessible story and mezzanine in multilevel buildings and facilities.

Exceptions:
1. An accessible route is not required to stories and mezzanines that have an aggregate area of not more than 3,000 square feet (278.7 m²) and are located above and below accessible levels. This exception shall not apply to:
   1.1. Multiple tenant facilities of Group M occupancies containing five or more tenant spaces used for the sales or rental of goods and where at least one such tenant space is located on a floor level above or below the accessible levels;
   1.2. Stories or mezzanines containing offices of health care providers (Group B or I);
   1.3. Passenger transportation facilities and airports (Group A-3 or B); or
2. Stories or mezzanines that do not contain accessible elements or other spaces as determined by Section 1107 or 1108 are not required to be served by an accessible route from an accessible level.
3. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route is not required to serve the cab and the floor immediately below the cab.
4. Where a two-story building or facility has one story or mezzanine with an occupant load of five or fewer persons that does not contain public use space, that story or mezzanine shall not be required to be connected by an accessible route to the story above or below.

1104.5 Location. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path. Where the circulation path is interior, the accessible route shall also be interior. Where only one accessible route is provided, the accessible route shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or similar spaces.

Exceptions:
1. Accessible routes from parking garages contained within and serving Type B units are not required to be interior.
2. A single accessible route is permitted to pass through a kitchen or storage room in an Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit.

1104.6 Security barriers. Security barriers including, but not limited to, security bollards and security check points shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.

Exception: Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements, such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be provided adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.

SECTION 1105
ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES

1105.1 Public entrances. In addition to accessible entrances required by Sections 1105.1.1 through 1105.1.7, at least 60 percent of all public entrances shall be accessible.

Exceptions:
1. An accessible entrance is not required to areas not required to be accessible.
2. Loading and service entrances that are not the only entrance to a tenant space.

1105.1.1 Parking garage entrances. Where provided, direct access for pedestrians from parking structures to buildings or facility entrances shall be accessible.

1105.1.2 Entrances from tunnels or elevated walkways. Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, at least one entrance to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall be accessible.

1105.1.3 Restricted entrances. Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, at least one restricted entrance to the building or facility shall be accessible.

1105.1.4 Entrances for inmates or detainees. Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall be accessible.
1105.1.5 Service entrances. If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or a tenant space in a facility, that entrance shall be accessible.

1105.1.6 Tenant spaces. At least one accessible entrance shall be provided to each tenant in a facility.

   Exception: An accessible entrance is not required to self-service storage facilities that are not required to be accessible.

1105.1.7 Dwelling units and sleeping units. At least one accessible entrance shall be provided to each dwelling unit and sleeping unit in a facility.

   Exception: An accessible entrance is not required to dwelling units and sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units.

SECTION 1106
PARKING AND PASSENGER LOADING FACILITIES

1106.1 Required. Where parking is provided, accessible parking spaces shall be provided in compliance with Table 1106.1, except as required by Sections 1106.2 through 1106.4. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, the number of parking spaces required to be accessible shall be calculated separately for each parking facility.

   Exception: This section does not apply to parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles or vehicular impound and motor pools where lots accessed by the public are provided with an accessible passenger loading zone.

### Table 1106.1 ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL PARKING SPACES PROVIDED IN PARKING FACILITIES</th>
<th>REQUIRED MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE SPACES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 25</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 75</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 to 100</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 200</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 1,000</td>
<td>2% of total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,001 and over</td>
<td>20, plus one for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1106.2 Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4. Accessible parking spaces shall be provided in Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies in accordance with Items 1 through 4 as applicable.

   1. In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies that are required to have Accessible, Type A or Type B dwelling units or sleeping units, at least 2 percent, but not less than one, of each type of parking space provided shall be accessible.

   2. In Group I-1 and R-1 occupancies, accessible parking shall be provided in accordance with Table 1106.1.

   3. Where at least one parking space is provided for each dwelling unit or sleeping unit, at least one accessible parking space shall be provided for each Accessible and Type A unit.

   4. Where parking is provided within or beneath a building, accessible parking spaces shall also be provided within or beneath the building.

1106.3 Hospital outpatient facilities. At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of care recipient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities shall be accessible.

1106.4 Rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities. At least 20 percent, but not less than one, of the portion of care recipient and visitor parking spaces serving rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall be accessible.

1106.5 Van spaces. For every six or fraction of six accessible parking spaces, at least one shall be a van-accessible parking space.

   Exception: In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, van-accessible spaces located within private garages shall be permitted to have vehicular routes, entrances, parking spaces and access aisles with a minimum vertical clearance of 7 feet (2134 mm).

1106.6 Location. Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest accessible route of travel from adjacent parking to an accessible building entrance. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building, accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest route to an accessible pedestrian entrance to the parking facility. Where buildings have multiple accessible entrances with adjacent parking, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the accessible entrances.

   Exceptions:

   1. In multilevel parking structures, van-accessible parking spaces are permitted on one level.

   2. Accessible parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee and user convenience.

1106.7 Passenger loading zones. Passenger loading zones shall be accessible.

   1106.7.1 Continuous loading zones. Where passenger loading zones are provided, one passenger loading zone in every continuous 100 linear feet (30.4 m) maximum of loading zone space shall be accessible.

   1106.7.2 Medical facilities. A passenger loading zone shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical and long-term care facilities where people receive physical or medical treatment or care and where the period of stay exceeds 24 hours.
1106.7.3 Valet parking. A passenger loading zone shall be provided at valet parking services.

1106.7.4 Mechanical access parking garages. Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger loading zone at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pick-up areas.

SECTION 1107
DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

1107.1 General. In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, occupancies having dwelling units or sleeping units shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with this section.

1107.2 Design. Dwelling units and sleeping units that are required to be Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1. Units required to be Type A units are permitted to be designed and constructed as Accessible units. Units required to be Type B units are permitted to be designed and constructed as Accessible units or as Type A units.

1107.3 Accessible spaces. Rooms and spaces available to the general public or available for use by residents and serving Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units shall be accessible. Accessible spaces shall include toilet and bathing rooms, kitchen, living and dining areas and any exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies.

Exceptions:
1. Stories and mezzanines exempted by Section 1107.4.
2. Recreational facilities in accordance with Section 1110.2.
3. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of Type B units and have impervious surfaces, and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the unit.

1107.4 Accessible route. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with the primary entrance of each Accessible unit, Type A unit and Type B unit within the building or facility and with those exterior and interior spaces and facilities that serve the units.

Exceptions:
1. If due to circumstances outside the control of the owner, either the slope of the finished ground level between accessible facilities and buildings exceeds one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1:12), or where physical barriers or legal restrictions prevent the installation of an accessible route, a vehicular route with parking that complies with Section 1106 at each public or common use facility or building is permitted in place of the accessible route.
2. In Group I-3 facilities, an accessible route is not required to connect stories or mezzanines where Accessible units, all common use areas serving Accessible units and all public use areas are on an accessible route.

3. In Group R-2 facilities with Type A units complying with Section 1107.6.2.2.1, an accessible route is not required to connect stories or mezzanines where Type A units, all common use areas serving Type A units and all public use areas are on an accessible route.

4. In other than Group R-2 dormitory housing provided by places of education, in Group R-2 facilities with Accessible units complying with Section 1107.6.2.3.1, an accessible route is not required to connect stories or mezzanines where Accessible units, all common use areas serving Accessible units and all public use areas are on an accessible route.

5. In Group R-1, an accessible route is not required to connect stories or mezzanines within individual units, provided the accessible level meets the provisions for Accessible units and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum and a toilet facility are provided on that level.

6. In congregate residences in Groups R-3 and R-4, an accessible route is not required to connect stories or mezzanines where Accessible units or Type B units, all common use areas serving Accessible units and Type B units and all public use areas serving Accessible units and Type B units are on an accessible route.

7. An accessible route between stories is not required where Type B units are exempted by Section 1107.7.

1107.5 Group I. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in Group I occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.

1107.5.1 Group I-1. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in Group I-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.1.1 and 1107.5.1.2.

1107.5.1.1 Accessible units. In Group I-1 Condition 1, at least 4 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units. In Group I-1 Condition 2, at least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.

1107.5.1.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.2 Group I-2 nursing homes. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in nursing homes of Group I-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.2.1 and 1107.5.2.2.

1107.5.2.1 Accessible units. At least 50 percent but not less than one of each type of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.
1107.5.2.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.3 Group I-2 hospitals. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in general-purpose hospitals, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities of Group I-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.3.1 and 1107.5.3.2.

1107.5.3.1 Accessible units. At least 10 percent, but not less than one, of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.

Exception: Entry doors to Accessible dwelling units or sleeping units shall not be required to provide the maneuvering clearance beyond the latch side of the door.

1107.5.3.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.5.4 Group I-2 rehabilitation facilities. In hospitals and rehabilitation facilities of Group I-2 occupancies that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, or units within either that specialize in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the dwelling units and sleeping units shall be Accessible units.

1107.5.5 Group I-3. Accessible units shall be provided in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.5.5.1 through 1107.5.5.3.

1107.5.5.1 Group I-3 sleeping units. In Group I-3 occupancies, at least 5 percent of the sleeping units, but not less than one unit, shall be Accessible units.

1107.5.5.2 Special holding cells and special housing cells or rooms. In addition to the Accessible units required by Section 1107.5.5.1, where special holding cells or special housing cells or rooms are provided, at least one serving each purpose shall be an Accessible unit. Cells or rooms subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification and medical isolation.

Exception: Cells or rooms specially designed without protrusions and that are used solely for purposes of suicide prevention shall not be required to include grab bars.

1107.5.5.3 Medical care facilities. Patient sleeping units or cells required to be Accessible units in medical care facilities shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with Section 1107.5.5.2.

1107.6 Group R. Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall be provided in Group R occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1 through 1107.6.4.

1107.6.1 Group R-1. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in Group R-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.1.1 and 1107.6.1.2.

1107.6.1.1 Accessible units. Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1. In order to determine the total number of Accessible units, all dwelling units and sleeping units on a site shall be considered. Accessible units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units. At least one Accessible unit shall also provide communication features complying with Appendix E, Section 1107.5.5.1.

TABLE 1107.6.1.1
ACCESSIBLE DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF UNITS PROVIDED</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE UNITS WITHOUT ROLL-IN SHOWERS</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE UNITS WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS</th>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE UNITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 75</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 to 100</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 200</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 1,000</td>
<td>2% of total</td>
<td>1% of total</td>
<td>3% of total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 1,000</td>
<td>20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000</td>
<td>10 plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000</td>
<td>30 plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1107.6.2 Group R-2. Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall be provided in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.1 through 1107.6.2.3.

1107.6.2.1 Live/work units. In live/work units constructed in accordance with Section 419, the nonresidential portion is required to be accessible. In a structure where there are four or more live/work units intended to be occupied as a residence, the residential portion of the live/work unit shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.2.2 Apartment houses, monasteries and convents. Type A units and Type B units shall be provided in apartment houses, monasteries and convents in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2.2.

1107.6.2.2.1 Type A units. In Group R-2 occupancies containing more than ten dwelling units or sleeping units, at least 15 percent of the units shall be Type A units, and at least 1 percent of the Type A units, but not less than one of the Type A units, shall be served by a roll-in shower that includes a permanently mounted folding shower seat. All Group R-2 units on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of units and the required number of Type A units. Type A units shall be dispersed among the various classes of units. Bedrooms in monasteries and convents shall be counted as sleeping units for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the sleeping units are grouped into suites, only one sleeping unit in each suite shall count towards the number of required Type A units.

Exceptions:

1. The number of Type A units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

2. Existing structures on a site shall not contribute to the total number of units on a site.

3. Type A units may contain the following adaptable features:

   3.1 Kitchen and laundry appliances that do not have accessible controls.

   3.2 Refrigerator/freezers that do not have the required accessible freezer space.

   3.3 Kitchen sink cabinets and countertops that are not accessible, but that can be removed provided floor finishes extend under such cabinetry and the walls behind and surrounding cabinetry are finished.

   3.4 Switches & outlets located above kitchen counters that are not accessible but that can be modified to be accessible.

1107.6.2.2.2 Type B units. Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exceptions:

1. The number of Type B units is allowed to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

2. Type B units may contain the following adaptable features:

   2.1 Shower compartment doors that are not accessible, but that can be removed without damaging the shower enclosure, provided that the mounting holes can be readily made water tight and finishes extend behind the doors.

1107.6.2.3 Group R-2 other than live/work units, apartment houses, monasteries and convents. In Group R-2 occupancies, other than live/work units, apartment houses, monasteries and convents falling within the scope of Sections 1107.6.2.1 and 1107.6.2.2, Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1107.6.2.3.1 and 1107.6.2.3.2. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as sleeping units for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the sleeping units are grouped into suites, only one sleeping unit in
each suite shall be permitted to count towards the number of required Accessible units.

1107.6.2.3.1 Accessible units. Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided in accordance with Table 1107.6.1.1.

1107.6.2.3.2 Type B units. Where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and every sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.3 Group R-3. In Group R-3 occupancies where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence in a single structure, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as sleeping units for the purpose of determining the number of units.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.6.4 Group R-4. Accessible units and Type B units shall be provided in Group R-4 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1107.6.4.1 and 1107.6.4.2. Bedrooms in Group R-4 facilities shall be counted as sleeping units for the purpose of determining the number of units.

1107.6.4.1 Accessible units. In Group R-4 Condition 1, at least one of the sleeping units shall be an Accessible unit. In Group R-4 Condition 2, at least two of the sleeping units shall be an Accessible unit.

1107.6.4.2 Type B units. In structures with four or more sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, every sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

Exception: The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1107.7.

1107.7 General exceptions. Where specifically permitted by Section 1107.5 or 1107.6, the required number of Type A units and Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Sections 1107.7.1 through 1107.7.5.

1107.7.1 Structures without elevator service. Where no elevator service is provided in a structure, only the dwelling units and sleeping units that are located on stories indicated in Sections 1107.7.1.1 and 1107.7.1.2 are required to be Type A units and Type B units, respectively. The number of Type A units shall be determined in accordance with Section 1107.6.2.2.1.

1107.7.1.1 One story with Type B units required. At least one story containing dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence shall be provided with an accessible entrance from the exterior of the structure and all units intended to be occupied as a residence on that story shall be Type B units.

1107.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units. On all other stories that have a building entrance in proximity to arrival points intended to serve units on that story, as indicated in Items 1 and 2, all dwelling units and sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence served by that entrance on that story shall be Type B units.

1. Where the slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and

2. Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance are 10 percent or less.

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest arrival point shall be used unless that arrival point serves the story required by Section 1107.7.1.1.

1107.7.2 Multistory units. A multistory dwelling unit or sleeping unit that is not provided with elevator service is not required to be a Type B unit. Where a multistory unit is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for a Type B unit and, where provided within the unit, a living area, a kitchen and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.

1107.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units. Where elevator service in the building provides an accessible route only to the lowest story containing dwelling units or sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence, only the units on that story that are intended to be occupied as a residence are required to be Type B units.

1107.7.4 Site impracticality. On a site with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of units required by Section 1107.7.1 to be Type B units is permitted to be reduced to a percentage that is equal to the percentage of the entire site having grades, prior to development, that are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1107.7.1 on the site are Type B units;

2. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater than 8.33 percent, are Type B units;

3. Units required by Section 1107.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance serving the units on that story and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less, are Type B units; and

4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 1107.7.3 are Type B units.
1107.7.5 Design flood elevation. The required number of Type A units and Type B units shall not apply to a site where the required elevation of the lowest floor or the lowest horizontal structural building members of nonelevator buildings are at or above the design flood elevation resulting in:

1. A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and
2. A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances, the closest arrival points shall be used.

SECTION 1108
SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES

1108.1 General. In addition to the other requirements of this chapter, the requirements of Sections 1108.2 through 1108.4 shall apply to specific occupancies.

1108.2 Assembly area seating. A building, room or space used for assembly purposes with fixed seating shall comply with Sections 1108.2.1 through 1108.2.6. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.

1108.2.1 General seating. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.

TABLE 1108.2.2.1
ACCESSIBLE WHEELCHAIR SPACES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREAS</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 to 25</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 300</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 500</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 5,000</td>
<td>6, plus 1 for each 150, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,001 and over</td>
<td>36 plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1108.2.2 Luxury boxes, club boxes and suites. In each luxury box, club box and suite within arenas, stadiums and grandstands, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1.

1108.2.3 Other boxes. In boxes other than those required to comply with Section 1108.2.2.2, the total number of wheelchair spaces provided shall be determined in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes provided.

1108.2.4 Dispersion of wheelchair spaces in multilevel assembly seating areas. In multilevel assembly seating areas, wheelchair spaces shall be provided on the main floor level and on one of each two additional floor or mezzanine levels. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in each luxury box, club box and suite within assembly facilities.

Exceptions:

1. In multilevel assembly seating areas utilized for worship services where the second floor or mezzanine level contains 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity, wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to all be located on the main level.
2. In multilevel assembly seating areas where the second floor or mezzanine level provides 25 percent or less of the total seating capacity and 300 or fewer seats, all wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located on the main level.
3. Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating serving areas of sport activity are not required to be dispersed.

1108.2.5 Designated aisle seats. At least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the total number of aisle seats provided shall be designated aisle seats and shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.

Exception: Designated aisle seats are not required in team or player seating serving areas of sport activity.

1108.2.6 Lawn seating. Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an accessible route.

1108.2.7 Assistive listening systems. Each building, room or space used for assembly purposes where audible communications are integral to the use of the space shall have an assistive listening system.

Exception: Other than in courtrooms, an assistive listening system is not required where there is no audio amplification system.

1108.2.7.1 Receivers. The number and type of receivers shall be provided for assistive listening systems in accordance with Table 1108.2.7.1.

Exceptions:

1. Where a building contains more than one room or space used for assembly purposes, the
total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated based on the total number of seats in the building, provided that all receivers are usable with all systems and if the rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes required to provide assistive listening are under one management.

2. Where all seats in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Table 1108.2.7.1 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required.

1108.2.7.2 Ticket windows. Where ticket windows are provided in stadiums and arenas, at least one window at each location shall have an assistive listening system.

1108.2.7.3 Public address systems. Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands have 15,000 fixed seats or more and provide audible public announcements, they shall also provide prerecorded or real-time captions of those audible public announcements.

1108.2.8 Performance areas. An accessible route shall directly connect the performance area to the assembly seating area where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers.

1108.2.9 Dining and drinking areas. In dining and drinking areas, all interior and exterior floor areas shall be accessible and be on an accessible route.

Exceptions:

1. An accessible route between accessible levels and stories above or below is not required where permitted by Section 1104.4, Exception 1.

2. An accessible route to dining and drinking areas in a mezzanine is not required, provided that the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total combined area for dining and drinking and the same services, and decor are provided in the accessible area.

3. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to be accessible shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area, provided that accessible routes serve accessible seating and where each tier is provided with the same services.

4. Employee-only work areas shall comply with Sections 1103.2.2 and 1104.3.1.

1108.2.9.1 Dining surfaces. Where dining surfaces for the consumption of food or drink are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the dining surfaces for the seating and standing spaces shall be accessible and be distributed throughout the facility and located on a level accessed by an accessible route.

1108.3 Self-service storage facilities. Self-service storage facilities shall provide accessible individual self-storage spaces in accordance with Table 1108.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1108.3</th>
<th>ACCESSIBLE SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL SPACES IN FACILITY</td>
<td>MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE SPACES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 to 200</td>
<td>5%, but not less than 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 200</td>
<td>10, plus 2% of total number of units over 200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1108.3.1 Dispersion. Accessible individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number of required accessible spaces, the number of accessible spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 1108.3. Accessible spaces are permitted to be dispersed in a single building of a multibuilding facility.

1108.4 Judicial facilities. Judicial facilities shall comply with Sections 1108.4.1 and 1108.4.2.

1108.4.1 Courtrooms. Each courtroom shall be accessible and comply with Sections 1108.4.1.1 through 1108.4.1.5.

1108.4.1.1 Jury box. A wheelchair space shall be provided within the jury box.

Exception: Adjacent companion seating is not required.

1108.4.1.2 Gallery seating. Wheelchair spaces shall be provided in accordance with Table 1108.2.2.1. Designated aisle seats shall be provided in accordance with Section 1108.2.5.
1108.4.3 Assistive listening systems. An assistive listening system must be provided. Receivers shall be provided for the assistive listening system in accordance with Section 1108.2.7.1.

1108.4.4 Employee work stations. The judge’s bench, clerk’s station, bailiff’s station, deputy clerk’s station and court reporter’s station shall be located on an accessible route. The vertical access to elevated employee work stations within a courtroom is not required at the time of initial construction, provided a ramp, lift or elevator can be installed without requiring reconfiguration or extension of the courtroom or extension of the electrical system.

1108.4.5 Other work stations. The litigant’s and counsel stations, including the lectern, shall be accessible.

1108.5 Holding cells. Central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with Sections 1108.5.1 and 1108.5.2.

1108.5.1 Central holding cells. Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, one of each type shall be accessible. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one accessible cell shall be provided.

1108.5.2 Court-floor holding cells. Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult males, juvenile males, adult females or juvenile females, each courtroom shall be served by one accessible cell of each type. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one accessible cell. Accessible cells shall be permitted to serve more than one courtroom.

1108.5.3 Special holding cells and special housing cells. Special holding cells or rooms shall be provided in accordance with Section 1107.5.5.3.

1108.5.4 Medical care facilities. Accessible patient sleeping units or cells in medical care facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 1107.5.5.3.

1108.5.5 Visiting areas. Visiting areas shall comply with Section 1108.5.5.

1108.5.5.1 Cubicles and counters. At least 5 percent, but not less than one cubicle, shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to the inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at noncontact visiting areas not serving holding or housing cells to comply with Section 1108.5.

1108.5.5.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separates visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall be accessible.

SECTION 1109
OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES

1109.1 General. Accessible building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.2 through 1109.15.

Exception: Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall comply with Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1.

1109.2 Toilet and bathing facilities. Each toilet room and bathing room shall be accessible. Where a floor level is not required to be connected by an accessible route, the only toilet rooms or bathing rooms provided within the facility shall not be located on the inaccessible floor. Except as provided for in Sections 1109.2.2 and 1109.2.3, at least one of each type of fixture, element, control or dispenser in each accessible toilet room and bathing room shall be accessible.

Exceptions:

1. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms accessed only through a private office, not for common or public use and intended for use by a single occupant, shall be permitted to comply with the specific exceptions in ICC A117.1.

2. This section is not applicable to toilet and bathing rooms that serve dwelling units or sleeping units that are not required to be accessible by Section 1107.
3. Where multiple single-user toilet rooms or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location, at least 50 percent but not less than one room for each use at each cluster shall be accessible.

4. Where no more than one urinal is provided in a toilet room or bathing room, the urinal is not required to be accessible.

5. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms that are part of critical care or intensive care patient sleeping rooms serving Accessible units are not required to be accessible.

6. Toilet rooms or bathing rooms designed for bariatrics patients are not required to comply with the toilet room and bathing room requirement in ICC A117.1. The sleeping units served by bariatrics toilet or bathing rooms shall not count toward the required number of Accessible sleeping units.

7. Where toilet facilities are primarily for children’s use, required accessible water closets, toilet compartments and lavatories shall be permitted to comply with children’s provision of ICC A117.1.

**1109.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.** In assembly and mercantile occupancies, an accessible family or assisted-use toilet room shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets is required. In buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile occupancy shall be used to determine the family or assisted-use toilet room requirement. In recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an accessible family or assisted-use bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in an occupancy.

**Exception:** Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture, a family or assisted-use bathing room is not required.

**1109.2.1.1 Standard.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Sections 1109.2.1.2 through 1109.2.1.7.

**1109.2.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet rooms.** Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A family or assisted-use bathing room in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.3 shall be considered a family or assisted-use toilet room.

**Exception:** A urinal is permitted to be provided in addition to the water closet in a family or assisted-use toilet room.

**1109.2.1.3 Family or assisted-use bathing rooms.** Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for separate-sex bathing rooms, accessible storage facilities shall be provided for family or assisted-use bathing rooms.

**1109.2.1.4 Location.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on an accessible route. Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall be located not more than one story above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The accessible route from any separate-sex toilet room to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).

**1109.2.1.5 Prohibited location.** In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the accessible route from separate-sex toilet rooms to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not pass through security checkpoints.

**1109.2.1.6 Clear floor space.** Where doors swing into a family or assisted-use toilet or bathing room, a clear floor space not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided, within the room, beyond the area of the door swing.

**1109.2.1.7 Privacy.** Doors to family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be securable from within the room.

**1109.2.2 Water closet compartment.** Where water closet compartments are provided in a toilet room or bathing room, at least 5 percent of the total number of compartments shall be wheelchair accessible. Where the combined total water closet compartments and urinals provided in a toilet room or bathing room is six or more, at least 5 percent of the total number of compartments shall be ambulatory accessible, provided in addition to the wheelchair-accessible compartment.

**1109.2.3 Lavatories.** Where lavatories are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, shall be accessible. Where an accessible lavatory is located within the accessible water closet compartment at least one additional accessible lavatory shall be provided in the multicompartment toilet room outside the water closet compartment. Where the total lavatories provided in a toilet room or bathing facility is six or more, at least one lavatory with enhanced reach ranges shall be provided.

**1109.3 Sinks.** Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent but not less than one provided in accessible spaces shall be accessible.

**Exception:** Mop or service sinks are not required to be accessible.

**1109.4 Kitchens and kitchenettes.** Where kitchens and kitchenettes are provided in accessible spaces or rooms, they shall be accessible.

**1109.5 Drinking fountains.** Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor or within a secured area, the drinking fountains shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1109.5.1 and 1109.5.2.

**1109.5.1 Minimum number.** No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for people who use a wheel-
chair and one drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

**Exceptions:**

1. A single drinking fountain with two separate spouts that complies with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and standing persons shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children’s use, drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children’s provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

1109.5.2 **More than the minimum number.** Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in Section 1109.5.1 is provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for persons who use a wheelchair and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down, provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with this section equals 100 percent of the drinking fountains.

2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children’s use, drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children’s provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

1109.6 **Saunas and steam rooms.** Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall be accessible.

**Exception:** Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but not less than one, of each type in each cluster shall be accessible.

1109.7 **Elevators.** Passenger elevators on an accessible route shall be accessible and comply with Chapter 30.

1109.8 **Lifts.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts are permitted to be a part of a required accessible route in new construction where indicated in Items 1 through 10. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be installed in accordance with ASME A18.1.

1. An accessible route to a performing area and speaker platforms.

2. An accessible route to wheelchair spaces required to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion requirements of Sections 1108.2.2 through 1108.2.6.

3. An accessible route to spaces that are not open to the general public with an occupant load of not more than five.

4. An accessible route within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit required to be an Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit.

5. An accessible route to jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations including judges’ benches, clerks’ stations, bailiffs’ stations, deputy clerks’ stations and court reporters’ stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of the court.

6. An accessible route to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.

7. An accessible route to play components or soft contained play structures.

8. An accessible route to team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.


10. An accessible route where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.

1109.9 **Storage.** Where fixed or built-in storage elements such as cabinets, coat hooks, shelves, medicine cabinets, lockers, closets and drawers are provided in required accessible spaces, at least 5 percent, but not less than one of each type shall be accessible.

1109.9.1 **Equity.** Accessible facilities and spaces shall be provided with the same storage elements as provided in the similar nonaccessible facilities and spaces.

1109.9.2 **Shelving and display units.** Self-service shelves and display units shall be located on an accessible route. Such shelving and display units shall not be required to comply with reach-range provisions.

1109.10 **Detectable warnings.** Passenger transit platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guards shall have a detectable warning.

**Exception:** Detectable warnings are not required at bus stops.

1109.11 **Seating at tables, counters and work surfaces.** Where seating or standing space at fixed or built-in tables, counters or work surfaces is provided in accessible spaces, at least 5 percent of the seating and standing spaces, but not less than one, shall be accessible.

**Exception:** Check-writing surfaces at check-out aisles not required to comply with Section 1109.12.2 are not required to be accessible.

1109.11.1 **Dispersion.** Accessible fixed or built-in seating at tables, counters or work surfaces shall be distributed throughout the space or facility containing such elements and located on a level accessed by an accessible route.

1109.11.2 **Visiting areas.** Visiting areas in judicial facilities and Group I-3 shall comply with Sections 1109.11.2.1 and 1109.11.2.2.
1109.11.2.1 Cubicles and counters. At least 5 percent, but not less than one of the cubicles, shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall be accessible on both the visitor and detainee sides.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to the detainee side of cubicles or counters at noncontact visiting areas not serving Accessible unit holding cells.

1109.11.2.2 Partitions. Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees, at least one of each type of cubicule or counter partition shall be accessible.

1109.12 Service facilities. Service facilities shall provide for accessible features in accordance with Sections 1109.12.1 through 1109.12.5.

1109.12.1 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms. Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall be accessible.

1109.12.2 Check-out aisles. Where check-out aisles are provided, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.12.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, accessible check-out aisles shall be provided in accordance with Table 1109.12.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, accessible check-out aisles shall also be dispersed. Traffic control devices, security devices and turnstiles located in accessible check-out aisles or lanes shall be accessible.

Exception: Where the public use area is under 5,000 square feet (465 m²) not more than one accessible check-out aisle shall be required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF ACCESSIBLE CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 to 8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 to 15</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 15</td>
<td>3, plus 20% of additional aisles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1109.13 Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware. Controls, operating mechanisms and hardware intended for operation by the occupant, including switches that control lighting and ventilation and electrical convenience outlets, in accessible spaces, along accessible routes or as parts of accessible elements shall be accessible.

Exceptions:

1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to be accessible.
2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to be accessible.
3. Where two or more outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of counter top that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one outlet shall not be required to be accessible.
4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to be accessible.
5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to be accessible.
6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to be accessible.
7. Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to comply with Section 1010.1.9.2.

1109.14 Fuel-dispensing systems. Fuel-dispensing systems shall be accessible.

1109.15 Gaming machines and gaming tables. Two percent, but not less than one, of each type of gaming table provided shall be accessible and provided with a front approach. Two percent of gaming machines provided shall be accessible and provided with a front approach. Accessible gaming machines shall be distributed throughout the different types of gaming machines provided.

SECTION 1110
RECREATIONAL FACILITIES

1110.1 General. Recreational facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections 1110.2 through 1110.4.

1110.2 Facilities serving Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies. Recreational facilities that serve Group R-2, R-3 and Group R-4 occupancies shall comply with Sections 1110.2.1 through 1110.2.3, as applicable.

1110.2.1 Facilities serving Accessible units. In Group R-2 and R-4 occupancies where recreational facilities serve Accessible units, every recreational facility of each type serving Accessible units shall be accessible.

1110.2.2 Facilities serving Type A and Type B units in a single building. In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies where recreational facilities serve a single building containing Type A units or Type B units, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility shall be
Every recreational facility of each type on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of each type that is required to be accessible.

1110.2.3 Facilities serving Type A and Type B units in multiple buildings. In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies on a single site where multiple buildings containing Type A units or Type B units are served by recreational facilities, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility serving each building shall be accessible. The total number of each type of recreational facility that is required to be accessible shall be determined by considering every recreational facility of each type serving each building on the site.

1110.3 Other occupancies. Recreational facilities not falling within the purview of Section 1110.2 shall be accessible.

1110.4 Recreational facilities. Recreational facilities shall be accessible and shall be on an accessible route to the extent specified in this section.

1110.4.1 Area of sport activity. Each area of sport activity shall be on an accessible route and shall not be required to be accessible except as provided for in Sections 1110.4.2 through 1110.4.14.

1110.4.2 Team or player seating. At least one wheelchair space shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

Exception: Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes that are not required to be accessible in accordance with Section 1110.4.3.

1110.4.3 Bowling lanes. An accessible route shall be provided to at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of bowling lane.

1110.4.4 Court sports. In court sports, at least one accessible route shall directly connect both sides of the court.

1110.4.5 Raised boxing or wrestling rings. Raised boxing or wrestling rings are not required to be accessible or to be on an accessible route.

1110.4.6 Raised refereeing, judging and scoring areas. Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging or scoring a sport are not required to be accessible or to be on an accessible route.

1110.4.7 Animal containment areas. Animal containment areas that are not within public use areas are not required to be accessible or to be on an accessible route.

1110.4.8 Amusement rides. Amusement rides that move persons through a fixed course within a defined area shall comply with Sections 1110.4.8.1 through 1110.4.8.3.

Exception: Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to be accessible.

1110.4.8.1 Load and unload areas. Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall be accessible and be on an accessible route. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an accessible route.

1110.4.8.2 Wheelchair spaces, ride seats designed for transfer and transfer devices. Where amusement rides are in the load and unload position, the following shall be on an accessible route.

1. The position serving a wheelchair space.
2. Amusement ride seats designed for transfer.
3. Transfer devices.

1110.4.8.3 Minimum number. Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space, amusement ride seat designed for transfer or transfer device.

Exceptions:

1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider are not required to comply with this section.
2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, are not required to comply with this section.
3. Amusement rides that do not provide seats that are built-in or mechanically fastened shall not be required to comply with this section.

1110.4.9 Recreational boating facilities. Boat slips required to be accessible by Sections 1110.4.9.1 and 1110.4.9.2 and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to be accessible by Section 1110.4.9.3 shall be on an accessible route.

1110.4.9.1 Boat slips. Accessible boat slips shall be provided in accordance with Table 1110.4.9.1. All units on the site shall be combined to determine the number of accessible boat slips required. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12 m) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

Exception: Boat slips not designed for embarking or disembarking are not required to be accessible or be on an accessible route.

1110.4.9.2 Dispersion. Accessible boat slips shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of accessible boat slips has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.

1110.4.9.3 Boarding piers at boat launch ramps. Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of the boarding piers shall be accessible.

1110.4.10 Exercise machines and equipment. At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall be on an accessible route.

1110.4.11 Fishing piers and platforms. Fishing piers and platforms shall be accessible and be on an accessible route.

1110.4.12 Miniature golf facilities. Miniature golf facilities shall comply with Sections 1110.4.12.1 through 1110.4.12.3.
**ACCESSIBILITY**

**1110.4.12.1 Minimum number.** At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall be accessible.

**1110.4.12.2 Miniature golf course configuration.** Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the accessible holes are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an accessible route from the last accessible hole to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.

**Exception:** One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

**1110.4.12.3 Accessible route.** Holes required to comply with Section 1110.4.12.1, including the start of play, shall be on an accessible route.

**1110.4.13 Swimming pools, wading pools, hot tubs and spas.** Swimming pools, wading pools, hot tubs and spas shall be accessible and be on an accessible route.

**Exceptions:**

1. Catch pools or a designated section of a pool used as a terminus for a water slide flume shall not be required to provide an accessible means of entry, provided that a portion of the catch pool edge is on an accessible route.

2. Where spas or hot tubs are provided in a cluster, at least 5 percent, but not less than one spa or hot tub in each cluster, shall be accessible and be on an accessible route.

3. Swimming pools, wading pools, spas and hot tubs that are required to be accessible by Sections 1110.2.2 and 1110.2.3 are not required to provide accessible means of entry into the water.

**1110.4.13.1 Raised diving boards and diving platforms.** Raised diving boards and diving platforms are not required to be accessible or to be on an accessible route.

**1110.4.13.2 Water slides.** Water slides are not required to be accessible or to be on an accessible route.

**1110.4.14 Shooting facilities with firing positions.** Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type of firing position shall be accessible and be on an accessible route.

---

**SECTION 1111
SIGNAGE**

**1111.1 Signs.** Required accessible elements shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility at the following locations.

1. **Accessible parking spaces required by Section 1106.1.**

   **Exception:** Where the total number of parking spaces provided is four or less, identification of accessible parking spaces is not required.

2. **Accessible parking spaces required by Section 1106.2.**

   **Exception:** In Group I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific dwelling units or sleeping units, identification of accessible parking spaces is not required.

3. **Accessible passenger loading zones.**

4. **Accessible rooms where multiple single-user toilet or bathing rooms are clustered at a single location.**

5. **Accessible entrances where not all entrances are accessible.**

6. **Accessible check-out aisles where not all aisles are accessible.** The sign, where provided, shall be above the check-out aisle in the same location as the check-out aisle number or type of check-out identification.

---

**TABLE 1110.4.9.1
BOAT SLIPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF BOAT SLIPS PROVIDED</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE BOAT SLIPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 25</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 300</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 600</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601 to 700</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701 to 800</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801 to 900</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>901 to 1000</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001 and over</td>
<td>12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.
8. Accessible dressing, fitting and locker rooms where not all such rooms are accessible.
9. Accessible areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.9.
10. Exterior areas for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1009.9.
11. In recreational facilities, lockers that are required to be accessible in accordance with Section 1109.9.

1111.2 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the nearest like accessible element shall be provided at the following locations. These directional signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility and sign characters shall meet the visual character requirements in accordance with ICC A117.1.

1. Inaccessible building entrances.
2. Inaccessible public toilets and bathing facilities.
3. Elevators not serving an accessible route.
4. At each separate-sex toilet and bathing room indicating the location of the nearest family/assisted use toilet or bathing room where provided in accordance with Section 1109.2.1.
5. At exits and exit stairways serving a required accessible space, but not providing an approved accessible means of egress, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.10.
6. Where drinking fountains for persons using wheelchairs and drinking fountains for standing persons are not located adjacent to each other, directional signage shall be provided indicating the location of the other drinking fountains.

1111.3 Other signs. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown.

1. Each assembly area required to comply with Section 1108.2.7 shall provide a sign notifying patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems. The sign shall comply with ICC A117.1 requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss.

   Exception: Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs are not required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.
2. At each door to an area of refuge, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an egress stairway, exit passageway and exit discharge, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1013.4.
3. At areas of refuge, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.11.
4. At exterior areas for assisted rescue, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.11.
5. At two-way communication systems, signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009.8.2.
6. In interior exit stairways and ramps, floor level signage shall be provided in accordance with Section 1023.9.
7. Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides required to be accessible by Section 1110.4.8 shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where accessible unload areas also serve as accessible load areas, signs indicating the location of the accessible load and unload areas shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. These directional sign characters shall meet the visual character requirements in accordance with ICC A117.1.

1111.4 Variable message signs. Where provided in the locations in Sections 1111.4.1 and 1111.4.2, variable message signs shall comply with the variable message sign requirements of ICC A117.1.

1111.4.1 Transportation facilities. Where provided in transportation facilities, variable message signs conveying transportation-related information shall comply with Section 1111.4.

1111.4.2 Emergency shelters. Where provided in buildings that are designated as emergency shelters, variable message signs conveying emergency-related information shall comply with Section 1111.4.

   Exception: Where equivalent information is provided in an audible manner, variable message signs are not required to comply with ICC A117.1.
CHAPTER 12
INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

SECTION 1201
GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern ventilation, temperature control, lighting, yards and courts, sound transmission, room dimensions, surrounding materials and rodentproofing associated with the interior spaces of buildings.

SECTION 1202
DEFINITIONS

1202.1 General. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
SUNROOM.
THERMAL ISOLATION.

SECTION 1203
VENTILATION

1203.1 General. Buildings shall be provided with natural ventilation in accordance with Section 1203.4, or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the Mechanical Code. Each new dwelling unit shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403 of the Mechanical Code and shall have at least one opening to the outdoors for natural ventilation of not less than 4 percent of the floor area of the habitable spaces of the dwelling unit. Ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 occupancies shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407 of the Mechanical Code.

1203.2 Ventilation required. Enclosed attics and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof framing members shall have cross ventilation for each separate space by ventilation openings protected against the entrance of rain and snow. Blocking and bridging shall be arranged so as not to interfere with the movement of air. An airspace of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing. The net free ventilating area shall be not less than 1/150 of the area of the space ventilated. Ventilators shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s installation instructions.

Exception: The net free cross-ventilation area shall be permitted to be reduced to 1/300 provided both of the following conditions are met:

1. In Climate Zones 6, 7 and 8, a Class I or II vapor retarder is installed on the warm-in-winter side of the ceiling.
2. At least 40 percent and not more than 50 percent of the required venting area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the attic or rafter space. Upper ventilators shall be located not more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space, measured vertically, with the balance of the ventilation provided by eave or cornice vents. Where the location of wall or roof framing members conflicts with the installation of upper ventilators, installation more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space shall be permitted.

1203.2.1 Openings into attic. Exterior openings into the attic space of any building intended for human occupancy shall be protected to prevent the entry of birds, squirrels, rodents, snakes and other similar creatures. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension of not less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall be permitted. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension larger than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, perforated vinyl or similar material with openings having a least dimension of not less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). Where combustion air is obtained from an attic area, it shall be in accordance with Chapter 7 of the Mechanical Code.

1203.3 Unvented attic and unvented enclosed rafter assemblies. Unvented attics and unvented enclosed roof framing assemblies created by ceilings applied directly to the underside of the roof framing members/rafters and the structural roof sheathing at the top of the roof framing members shall be permitted where all the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented attic space is completely within the building thermal envelope.
2. No interior Class I vapor retarders are installed on the ceiling side (attic floor) of the unvented attic assembly or on the ceiling side of the unvented enclosed roof framing assembly.
3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, a minimum 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) vented airspace separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.
4. In Climate Zones 5, 6, 7 and 8, any air-impermeable insulation shall be a Class II vapor retarder or shall have a Class II vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.
5. Insulation shall be located in accordance with the following:
5.1. Item 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.3 or 5.1.4 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.
5.1.1. Where only air-impermeable insulation is provided, it shall be applied
in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.

5.1.2. Where air-permeable insulation is provided inside the building thermal envelope, it shall be installed in accordance with Item 5.1. In addition to the air-permeable insulation installed directly below the structural sheathing, rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing in accordance with the R values in Table 1203.3 for condensation control.

5.1.3. Where both air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation are provided, the air-impermeable insulation shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing in accordance with Item 5.1.1 and shall be in accordance with the R values in Table 1203.3 for condensation control. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the air-impermeable insulation.

5.1.4. Alternatively, sufficient rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

5.2. Where preformed insulation board is used as the air-impermeable insulation layer, it shall be sealed at the perimeter of each individual sheet interior surface to form a continuous layer.

Exceptions:

1. Section 1203.3 does not apply to special use structures or enclosures such as swimming pool enclosures, data processing centers, hospitals or art galleries.

2. Section 1203.3 does not apply to enclosures in Climate Zones 5 through 8 that are humidified beyond 35 percent during the three coldest months.

1203.4 Under-floor ventilation. The space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any building except spaces occupied by basements or cellars shall be provided with ventilation openings through foundation walls or exterior walls. Such openings shall be placed so as to provide cross ventilation of the under-floor space.

1203.4.1 Openings for under-floor ventilation. The net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot for each 150 square feet (0.67 m² for each 100 m²) of crawl-space area. Ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with any of the following materials, provided that the least dimension of the covering shall be not greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm):

1. Perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick.
2. Expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick.
3. Cast-iron grilles or gratings.
4. Extruded load-bearing vents.
5. Hardware cloth of 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.
6. Corrosion-resistant wire mesh, with the least dimension not greater than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

1203.4.2 Exceptions. The following are exceptions to Sections 1203.4 and 1203.4.1:

1. Where warranted by climatic conditions, ventilation openings to the outdoors are not required if ventilation openings to the interior are provided.

### Table 1203.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLIMATE ZONE</th>
<th>MINIMUM R-VALUE OF AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2B and 3B tile roof only</td>
<td>0 (none required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2A, 2B, 3A, 3B, 3C</td>
<td>R-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4C</td>
<td>R-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A, 4B</td>
<td>R-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>R-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>R-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>R-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>R-35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Contributes to, but does not supersede, thermal resistance requirements for attic and roof assemblies in Section C402.2.1 of the Energy Conservation Code.
2. The total area of ventilation openings is permitted to be reduced to $\frac{1}{1,500}$ of the under-floor area where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder material and the required openings are placed so as to provide cross ventilation of the space. The installation of operable louvers shall not be prohibited.

3. Ventilation openings are not required where continuously operated mechanical ventilation is provided at a rate of 1.0 cubic foot per minute (cfm) for each 50 square feet (1.02 L/s for each 10 m²) of crawl-space floor area and the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder.

4. Ventilation openings are not required where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder, the perimeter walls are insulated and the space is conditioned in accordance with the Energy Conservation Code.

5. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the openings for under-floor ventilation shall be deemed as meeting the flood opening requirements of ASCE 24 provided that the ventilation openings are designed and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**1203.5 Natural ventilation.** Natural ventilation of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants.

**1203.5.1 Ventilation area required.** The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be not less than 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

**1203.5.1.1 Adjoining spaces.** Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining room shall be unobstructed and shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m²). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

**Exception:** Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m²). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

**1203.5.1.2 Openings below grade.** Where openings below grade provide required natural ventilation, the outside horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

**1203.5.2 Contaminants exhausted.** Contaminant sources in naturally ventilated spaces shall be removed in accordance with the Mechanical Code and the Fire Code.

**1203.5.2.1 Bathrooms.** Rooms containing bathtubs, showers, spas and similar bathing fixtures shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the Mechanical Code.

**1203.5.3 Openings on yards or courts.** Where natural ventilation is to be provided by openings onto yards or courts, such yards or courts shall comply with Section 1206.

**1203.6 Other ventilation and exhaust systems.** Ventilation and exhaust systems for occupancies and operations involving flammable or combustible hazards or other contaminant sources as covered in the Mechanical Code or the Fire Code shall be provided as required by both codes.

**SECTION 1204 TEMPERATURE CONTROL**

**1204.1 Equipment and systems.** Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor on the design heating day.

**Exceptions:** Space heating systems are not required for:

1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose of the space is not associated with human comfort.
2. Group F, H, S or U occupancies.

**SECTION 1205 LIGHTING**

**1205.1 General.** Every space intended for human occupancy shall be provided with natural light by means of exterior glazed openings in accordance with Section 1205.2 or shall be provided with artificial light in accordance with Section 1205.3.

**Exception:** Artificial light shall not be used to meet the lighting requirements for bedrooms, living rooms and sleeping units.

**1205.2 Natural light.** The minimum net glazed area shall be not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the room or rooms served. At least 50 percent of required glazing shall be clear glass; it is permissible for the remainder of the required glazing to be obscure glass, glass block or other approved translucent material.

**1205.2.1 Adjoining spaces.** For the purpose of natural lighting, any room is permitted to be considered as a portion of an adjoining room where one-half of the area of the common wall provides an opening of not less than one-
tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 25 square feet (2.32 m²), whichever is greater.

1. It is permissible for glazing to fill a portion or all of the required opening between adjoining spaces.

2. It is permissible to install doors in openings between adjoining spaces. However, opaque portions of doors shall not contribute to meeting the minimum opening requirement of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 25 square feet (2.32 m²), whichever is greater.

Exception: Openings required for natural light shall be allowed to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover where the common wall provides a glazed area of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 20 square feet (1.86 m²), whichever is greater.

1205.2.2 Exterior openings. Exterior openings required by Section 1205.2 for natural light shall open directly onto a public way, yard or court, as set forth in Section 1206.

Exceptions:

1. Required exterior openings are permitted to open into a roofed porch where the porch:
   1.1. Abuts a public way, yard or court;
   1.2. Has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm); and
   1.3. Has a longer side at least 65 percent open and unobstructed.

2. Skylights are not required to open directly onto a public way, yard or court.

1205.3 Artificial light. Artificial light shall be provided that is adequate to provide an average illumination of 10 footcandles (107 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

1205.4 Stairway illumination. Stairways within dwelling units and exterior stairways serving a dwelling unit shall have an illumination level on tread runs of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux). Stairways in other occupancies shall be governed by Chapter 10.

1205.4.1 Controls. The control for activation of the required stairway lighting shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

1205.5 Emergency egress lighting. The means of egress shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 1008.1.

SECTION 1206

YARDS OR COURTS

1206.1 General. This section shall apply to yards and courts adjacent to exterior openings that provide natural light or ventilation. Such yards and courts shall be on the same lot as the building.

1206.2 Yards. Yards shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width for buildings two stories or less above grade plane. For buildings more than two stories above grade plane, the minimum width of the yard shall be increased at the rate of 1 foot (305 mm) for each additional story. For buildings exceeding 14 stories above grade plane, the required width of the yard shall be computed on the basis of 14 stories above grade plane.

1206.3 Courts. Courts shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width. Courts having windows opening on opposite sides shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in width. Courts shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length unless bounded on one end by a public way or yard. For buildings more than two stories above grade plane, the court shall be increased 1 foot (305 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in length for each additional story. For buildings exceeding 14 stories above grade plane, the required dimensions shall be computed on the basis of 14 stories above grade plane.

1206.3.1 Court access. Access shall be provided to the bottom of courts for cleaning purposes.

1206.3.2 Air intake. Courts more than two stories in height shall be provided with a horizontal air intake at the bottom not less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area and leading to the exterior of the building unless abutting a yard or public way.

1206.3.3 Court drainage. The bottom of every court shall be properly graded and drained to a public sewer or other approved disposal system complying with the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 1207

SOUND TRANSMISSION

1207.1 Scope. This section shall apply to common interior walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies between adjacent dwelling units and sleeping units or between dwelling units and sleeping units and adjacent public areas such as halls, corridors, stairs, service areas, or Group A-2 occupancies.

1207.2 Interior sound. Walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies separating dwelling units and sleeping units from each other or from public or service areas shall have a sound transmission class (STC) of not less than 50 (45 if field tested) for air-borne noise when tested in accordance with ASTM E90. Walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies separating Group A-2 occupancies from dwelling units and sleeping units shall have an STC of not less than 55 and shall be field tested to achieve a rating of not less than 50 for airborne noise. Penetrations or openings in construction assemblies for piping; electrical devices; recessed cabinets; bathtubs; soffits; or heating, ventilating or exhaust ducts shall be sealed, lined, insulated or otherwise treated to maintain the required ratings. This requirement shall not apply to dwelling unit and sleeping unit entrance doors; however, such doors shall be tight fitting to the frame and sill.

Exception: Group A-2 occupancies that do not utilize amplified music as part of their use shall be exempt from these provisions.

1207.3 Structure-borne sound. Floor/ceiling assemblies between dwelling units and sleeping units or between a dwell-
ing unit or sleeping unit and a public or service area within
the structure shall have an impact insulation class rating of
not less than 50, or not less than 45 if field tested, when tested
in accordance with ASTM E492.

SECTION 1208
INTERIOR SPACE DIMENSIONS

1208.1 Minimum room widths. Habitable spaces, other
than a kitchen, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) in any
plan dimension. Kitchens shall have a clear passageway of
not less than 3 feet (914 mm) between counter fronts and
appliances or counter fronts and walls.

1208.2 Minimum ceiling heights. Occupiable spaces, habit-
able spaces and corridors shall have a ceiling height of not
less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm). Bathrooms, toilet rooms,
kitchens, storage rooms and laundry rooms shall have a ceil-
ing height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

Exceptions:

1. In one- and two-family dwellings, beams or girders
spaced not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center
shall be permitted to project not more than 6 inches
(152 mm) below the required ceiling height.

2. If any room in a building has a sloped ceiling, the
prescribed ceiling height for the room is required in
one-half the area thereof. Any portion of the room
measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the fin-
ished floor to the ceiling shall not be included in any
computation of the minimum area thereof.

3. The height of mezzanines and spaces below mezza-
nines shall be in accordance with Section 505.1.

4. Corridors contained within a dwelling unit or sleep-
ing unit in a Group R occupancy shall have a ceiling
height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

1208.2.1 Furred ceiling. Any room with a furred ceiling
shall be required to have the minimum ceiling height in
two-thirds of the area thereof, but in no case shall the
height of the furred ceiling be less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

1208.3 Room area. Every dwelling unit shall have no fewer
than one room that shall have not less than 120 square feet
(11.2 m²) of net floor area. Other habitable rooms shall have
a net floor area of not less than 70 square feet (6.5 m²).

Exception: Kitchens are not required to be of a minimum
floor area.

1208.4 Efficiency dwelling units. An efficiency living unit
shall conform to the requirements of the code except as mod-
ified herein:

1. The unit shall have a living room of not less than 220
square feet (20.4 m²) of floor area. An additional 100
square feet (9.3 m²) of floor area shall be provided for
each occupant of such unit in excess of two.

2. The unit shall be provided with a separate closet.

3. The unit shall be provided with a kitchen sink, cooking
appliances and refrigeration facilities, each having a
clear working space of not less than 30 inches (762
mm) in front. Light and ventilation conforming to this
code shall be provided.

4. The unit shall be provided with a separate bathroom
containing a water closet, lavatory and bathtub or
shower.

SECTION 1209
ACCESS TO UNOCCUPIED SPACES

1209.1 Crawl spaces. Crawl spaces shall be provided with
not fewer than one access opening that shall be not less than
18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

1209.2 Attic spaces. An opening not less than 20 inches by
30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided to any attic
area having a clear height of over 30 inches (762 mm). Clear
headroom of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) shall be pro-
vided in the attic space at or above the access opening.

1209.3 Mechanical appliances. Access to mechanical appli-
cances installed in under-floor areas, in attic spaces and on
roofs or elevated structures shall be in accordance with the
Mechanical Code.

SECTION 1210
TOILET AND BATHROOM REQUIREMENTS

1210.1 Required fixtures. The number and type of plumbing
fixtures provided in any occupancy shall comply with Chap-
ter 29.

1210.2 Finish materials. Walls, floors and partitions in toilet
and bathrooms shall comply with Sections 1210.2.1 through
1210.2.4.

1210.2.1 Floors and wall bases. In other than dwelling
units, toilet, bathing and shower room floor finish materi-
als shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface. The
intersections of such floors with walls shall have a smooth,
hard, nonabsorbent vertical base that extends upward onto
the walls not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

1210.2.2 Walls and partitions. Walls and partitions
within 2 feet (610 mm) of service sinks, urinals and water
closets shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface, to
a height of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor,
and except for structural elements, the materials used in
such walls shall be of a type that is not adversely affected
by moisture.

Exception: This section does not apply to the follow-
ing buildings and spaces:

1. Dwelling units and sleeping units.

2. Toilet rooms that are not accessible to the public
and that have not more than one water closet.

Accessories such as grab bars, towel bars, paper dis-
pensers and soap dishes, provided on or within walls, shall
be installed and sealed to protect structural elements from
moisture.

1210.2.3 Showers. Shower compartments and walls above
bathtubs with installed shower heads shall be finished with

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE
a smooth, nonabsorbent surface to a height not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the drain inlet.

1210.2.4 Waterproof joints. Built-in tubs with showers shall have waterproof joints between the tub and adjacent wall.

1210.3 Privacy. Privacy at water closets and urinals shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1210.3.1 and 1210.3.2.

1210.3.1 Water closet compartment. Each water closet utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

Exceptions:

1. Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.

3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 occupancy housing areas.

1210.3.2 Urinal partitions. Each urinal utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished backwall surface, whichever is greater.

Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single-occupant or family or assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.
CHAPTER 13
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION 1301
GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. This chapter governs the design and construction of buildings for energy efficiency.

1301.1.1 Criteria. Buildings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the Energy Conservation Code.
CHAPTER 14
EXTERIOR WALLS

SECTION 1401
GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall establish the minimum requirements for exterior walls; exterior wall coverings; exterior wall openings; exterior windows and doors; architectural trim; balconies and similar projections; and bay and oriel windows.

SECTION 1402
DEFINITIONS

1402.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
ADHERED MASONRY VENEER.
ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER.
BACKING.
EXTERNAL INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS).
EXTERNAL INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE.
EXTERNAL WALL.
EXTERNAL WALL COVERING.
EXTERNAL WALL ENVELOPE.
FENESTRATION.
FIBER-CEMENT SIDING.
HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR- GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL).
HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR- GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM.
METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM).
METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM.
POLYPROPYLENE SIDING.
PORCELAIN TILE.
VENEER.
VINYL SIDING.
WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.

SECTION 1403
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1403.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to exterior walls, wall coverings and components thereof.

1403.2 Weather protection. Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing, as described in Section 1405.2. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in such a manner as to prevent the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistant barrier behind the exterior veneer, as described in Section 1404.2, and a means for draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior. Protection against condensation in the exterior wall assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section 1405.3.

Exceptions:

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapters 19 and 21, respectively.

2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections 1404.2 and 1405.4, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated through testing to resist wind-driven rain, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:

   2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include at least one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. Tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.

   2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be at least 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.

   2.3. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.297 kN/m²).

   2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to a minimum test exposure duration of 2 hours.

   The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

2. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) complying with Section 1408.4.1.

1403.3 Structural. Exterior walls, and the associated openings, shall be designed and constructed to resist safely the superimposed loads required by Chapter 16.

1403.4 Fire resistance. Exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated as required by other sections of this code with opening protection as required by Chapter 7.

1403.5 Vertical and lateral flame propagation. Exterior walls on buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction that are
EXTERIOR WALLS

greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane and contain a combustible water-resistant barrier shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. For the purposes of this section, fenestration products and flashing of fenestration products shall not be considered part of the water-resistant barrier.

Exceptions:

1. Walls in which the water-resistant barrier is the only combustible component and the exterior wall has a wall covering of brick, concrete, stone, terra cotta, stucco or steel with minimum thicknesses in accordance with Table 1405.2.

2. Walls in which the water-resistant barrier is the only combustible component and the water-resistant barrier has a peak heat release rate of less than 150 kW/m², a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m², and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18 MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354 and has a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m².

1403.6 Flood resistance. For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, exterior walls extending below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be constructed with flood-damage-resistant materials.

1403.7 Flood resistance for coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones. For buildings in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones as established in Section 1612.3, electrical, mechanical and plumbing system components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through exterior walls that are designed to break away under flood loads.

SECTION 1404
MATERIALS

1404.1 General. Materials used for the construction of exterior walls shall comply with the provisions of this section. Materials not prescribed herein shall be permitted, provided that any such alternative has been approved.

1404.2 Water-resistant barrier. Not fewer than one layer of No.15 asphalt felt, complying with ASTM D226 for Type I felt or other approved materials, shall be attached to the studs or sheathing, with flashing as described in Section 1405.4, in such a manner as to provide a continuous water-resistant barrier behind the exterior wall veneer.

1404.3 Wood. Exterior walls of wood construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 23.

1404.3.1 Basic hardboard. Basic hardboard shall conform to the requirements of AHA A135.4.

1404.3.2 Hardboard siding. Hardboard siding shall conform to the requirements of AHA A135.6 and, where used structurally, shall be so identified by the label of an approved agency.

1404.4 Masonry. Exterior walls of masonry construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section and Chapter 21. Masonry units, mortar and metal accessories used in anchored and adhered veneer shall meet the physical requirements of Chapter 21. The backing of anchored and adhered veneer shall be of concrete, masonry, steel framing or wood framing. Continuous insulation meeting the applicable requirements of this code shall be permitted between the backing and the masonry veneer.

1404.5 Metal. Exterior walls constructed of cold-formed steel, structural steel or aluminum shall be designed in accordance with Chapters 22 and 20, respectively.

1404.5.1 Aluminum siding. Aluminum siding shall conform to the requirements of AAMA 1402.

1404.5.2 Cold-rolled copper. Copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B370.

1404.5.3 Lead-coated copper. Lead-coated copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B101.

1404.6 Concrete. Exterior walls of concrete construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 19.

1404.7 Glass-unit masonry. Exterior walls of glass-unit masonry shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 21.

1404.8 Plastics. Plastic panel, apron or spandrel walls as defined in this code shall not be limited in thickness, provided that such plastics and their assemblies conform to the requirements of Chapter 26 and are constructed of approved weather-resistant materials of adequate strength to resist the wind loads for cladding specified in Chapter 16.

1404.9 Vinyl siding. Vinyl siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D3679 by an approved quality control agency.

1404.10 Fiber-cement siding. Fiber-cement siding shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A (or ISO 8336, Category A), and shall be so identified on labeling listing an approved quality control agency.

1404.11 Exterior insulation and finish systems. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) and exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) with drainage shall comply with Section 1408.

1404.12 Polypropylene siding. Polypropylene siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7254 and those of Section 1404.12.1 or 1404.12.2 by an approved quality control agency. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section 1405.18 and in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.
1404.12.1 Flame spread index. The certification of the flame spread index shall be accompanied by a test report stating that all portions of the test specimen ahead of the flame front remained in position during the test in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1404.12.2 Fire separation distance. The fire separation distance between a building with polypropylene siding and the adjacent building shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

1404.13 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic insulation used in exterior wall covering assemblies shall comply with Chapter 26.

SECTION 1405
INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERINGS

1405.1 General. Exterior wall coverings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section.

1405.2 Weather protection. Exterior walls shall provide weather protection for the building. The materials of the minimum nominal thickness specified in Table 1405.2 shall be acceptable as approved weather coverings.

1405.3 Vapor retarders. Vapor retarders as described in Section 1405.3.1 and 1405.3.2, or an approved design using accepted engineering practice for hygrothermal analysis.

1405.3.1 Class I and II vapor retarders. Class I and II vapor retarders shall not be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 1 and 2. Class I vapor retarders shall not be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 3 and 4. Class I or II vapor retarders shall be provided on the interior side of frame walls in Zones 5, 6, 7, 8 and Marine 4. The appropriate zone shall be selected in accordance with Chapter 3 [CE] of the Energy Conservation Code-Commercial Provisions.

Exceptions:
1. Basement walls.
2. Below-grade portion of any wall.
3. Construction where moisture or its freezing will not damage the materials.
4. Conditions where Class III vapor retarders are required in Section 1405.3.2.

1405.3.2 Class III vapor retarders. Class III vapor retarders shall be permitted where any one of the conditions in Table 1405.3.2 is met. Only Class III vapor retarders shall be used on the interior side of frame walls where foam plastic insulating sheathing with a perm rating of less than 1 is applied in accordance with Table 1405.3.2 on the exterior side of the frame wall.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COVERING TYPE</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adhered masonry veneer</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum siding</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchored masonry veneer</td>
<td>2.625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asbestos-cement boards</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asbestos shingles</td>
<td>0.156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-rolled copperd</td>
<td>0.0216 nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper shinglesd</td>
<td>0.0162 nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior plywood (with sheathing)</td>
<td>0.313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior plywood (without sheathing)</td>
<td>See Section 2304.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber cement lap siding</td>
<td>0.25c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber cement panel siding</td>
<td>0.25c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiberboard siding</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass-fiber reinforced concrete panels</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardboard sidingc</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-yield copperd</td>
<td>0.0162 nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead-coated copperd</td>
<td>0.0216 nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead-coated high-yield copper</td>
<td>0.0162 nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marble slabs</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particleboard (with sheathing)</td>
<td>See Section 2304.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particleboard (without sheathing)</td>
<td>See Section 2304.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain tile</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel (approved corrosion resistant)</td>
<td>0.0149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone (cast artificial, anchored)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone (natural)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural glass</td>
<td>0.344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stucco or exterior cement plaster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-coat work over:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal plaster base</td>
<td>0.875b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit masonry</td>
<td>0.625b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-place or precast concrete</td>
<td>0.625b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two-coat work over:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit masonry</td>
<td>0.5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-place or precast concrete</td>
<td>0.375b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terra cotta (anchored)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terra cotta (adhered)</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinyl siding</td>
<td>0.035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood shingles</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood siding (without sheathing)d</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

a. Wood siding of thicknesses less than 0.5 inch shall be placed over sheathing that conforms to Section 2304.6.

b. Exclusive of texture.

c. As measured at the bottom of decorative grooves.

d. 16 ounces per square foot for cold-rolled copper and lead-coated copper, 12 ounces per square foot for copper shingles, high-yield copper and lead-coated high-yield copper.
TABLE 1405.3.2
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ZONE</th>
<th>CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marine 4</td>
<td>Vented cladding over wood structural panels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vented cladding over fiberboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vented cladding over gypsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R2.5 over 2 × 4 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R3.75 over 2 × 6 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Vented cladding over wood structural panels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vented cladding over fiberboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vented cladding over gypsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R5 over 2 × 4 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 6 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Vented cladding over fiberboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vented cladding over gypsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R7.5 over 2 × 4 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R11.25 over 2 × 6 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 and 8</td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R10 over 2 × 4 wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insulated sheathing with R-value ≥ R15 over 2 × 6 wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m³.
a. Spray foam with a minimum density of 2 lbs/ft³ applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the insulating sheathing requirement where the spray foam R-value meets or exceeds the specified insulating sheathing R-value.

1405.3.3 Material vapor retarder class. The vapor retarder class shall be based on the manufacturer’s certified testing or a tested assembly.

The following shall be deemed to meet the class specified:

Class I: Sheet polyethylene, nonperforated aluminum foil with a perm rating of less than or equal to 0.1.

Class II: Kraft-faced fiberglass batts or paint with a perm rating greater than 0.1 and less than or equal to 1.0.

Class III: Latex or enamel paint with a perm rating of greater than 1.0 and less than or equal to 10.0.

1405.3.4 Minimum clear airspaces and vented openings for vented cladding. For the purposes of this section, vented cladding shall include the following minimum clear airspaces:

1. Vinyl lap or horizontal aluminum siding applied over a weather-resistant barrier as specified in this chapter.

2. Brick veneer with a clear airspace as specified in this code.

3. Other approved vented claddings.

1405.4 Flashing. Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture from entering the wall or to redirect that moisture to the exterior. Flashing shall be installed at the perimeters of exterior door and window assemblies, penetrations and terminations of exterior wall assemblies, exterior wall intersections with roofs, chimneys, porches, decks, balconies and similar projections and at built-in gutters and similar locations where moisture could enter the wall. Flashing with projecting flanges shall be installed on both sides and the ends of copings, under sills and continuously above projecting trim.

1405.4.1 Exterior wall pockets. In exterior walls of buildings or structures, wall pockets or crevices in which moisture can accumulate shall be avoided or protected with caps or drips, or other approved means shall be provided to prevent water damage.

1405.4.2 Masonry. Flashing and weep holes in anchored veneer shall be located in the first course of masonry above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab, and other points of support, including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels where anchored veneers are designed in accordance with Section 1405.6.

1405.5 Wood veneers. Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm) exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exterior-type wood structural panels or particleboard and shall conform to the following:

1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height above grade.

2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance rated as required by other provisions of this code.

3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.

1405.6 Anchored masonry veneer. Anchored masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1405.6, 1405.7, 1405.8 and 1405.9 and Sections 12.1 and 12.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

1405.6.1 Tolerances. Anchored masonry veneers in accordance with Chapter 14 are not required to meet the tolerances in Article 3.3 F1 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

1405.6.2 Seismic requirements. Anchored masonry veneer located in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall conform to the requirements of Section 12.2.2.10 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

1405.7 Stone veneer. Anchored stone veneer units not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or to stud construction by one of the following methods:

1. With concrete or masonry backing, anchor ties shall be not less than 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, formed beyond the base of the backing. The legs of the loops shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length bent at right angles and laid in the mortar joint, and spaced so that the eyes or loops are 12 inches (305 mm) maximum on center in both directions. There shall be provided not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire tie, or approved equal, threaded through the exposed loops for...
every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall be a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

2. With wood stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to wood studs spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. On studs, the mesh shall be attached with 2-inch-long (51 mm) corrosion-resistant steel wire furring nails at 4 inches (102 mm) on center, into top and bottom plates or with equivalent wire ties. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than an 8d (0.120 in. diameter) annular threaded nail for every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

3. With cold-formed steel stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1404.2 shall be applied directly to steel studs spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. The mesh shall be attached with corrosion-resistant #8 self-drilling, tapping screws at 4 inches (102 mm) on center, and at 8 inches (203 mm) on center into top and bottom tracks or with equivalent wire ties. Screws shall extend through the steel connection not fewer than three exposed threads. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than a #8 self-drilling, tapping screw extending through the steel framing not fewer than three exposed threads for every 2 square feet (0.2 m²) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer. The cold-formed steel framing members shall have a minimum bare steel thickness of 0.0428 inches (1.087 mm).

1405.8 Slab-type veneer. Anchored slab-type veneer units not exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or light-frame construction. For veneer units of marble, travertine, granite or other stone units of slab form, ties of corrosion-resistant dowels in drilled holes shall be located in the middle third of the edge of the units, spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) apart around the periphery of each unit with not less than four ties per veneer unit. Units shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.9 m²) in area. If the dowels are not tight fitting, the holes shall be drilled not more than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) larger in diameter than the dowel, with the hole countersunk to a diameter and depth equal to twice the diameter of the dowel in order to provide a tight-fitting key of cement mortar at the dowel locations where the mortar in the joint has set. Veneer ties shall be corrosion-resistant metal capable of resisting, in tension or compression, a force equal to two times the weight of the attached veneer. If made of sheet metal, veneer ties shall be not smaller in area than 0.0336 by 1 inch (0.853 by 25 mm) or, if made of wire, not smaller in diameter than 0.1483-inch (3.76 mm) wire.

1405.9 Terra cotta. Anchored terra cotta or ceramic units not less than 1 5/8 inches (41 mm) thick shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or stud construction. Tied terra cotta or ceramic veneer units shall be not less than 1 5/8 inches (41 mm) thick with projecting dovetail webs on the back surface spaced approximately 8 inches (203 mm) on center. The facing shall be tied to the backing wall with corrosion-resistant metal anchors of not less than No. 8 gage wire installed at the top of each piece in horizontal bed joints not less than 12 inches (305 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center; these anchors shall be secured to 1/8-inch (6.4 mm) corrosion-resistant pencil rod that pass through the vertical aligned loop anchors in the backing wall. The veneer ties shall have sufficient strength to support the full weight of the veneer in tension. The facing shall be set with not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) space from the backing wall and the space shall be filled solidly with Portland cement grout and pea gravel. Immediately prior to setting, the backing wall and the facing shall be drenched with clean water and shall be distinctly damp when the grout is poured.

1405.10 Adhered masonry veneer. Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the applicable requirements in this section and Sections 12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

1405.10.1 Exterior adhered masonry veneer. Exterior adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.10 and the manufacturer’s instructions.

1405.10.1.1 Water-resistive barriers. Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 2510.6.

1405.10.1.2 Flashing. Flashing shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1405.4 and the following.

1405.10.1.2.1 Flashing at foundation. A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26 gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of 3/16 inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section 1405.4. The water-resistive barrier shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing.
1405.10.1.3 Clearances. On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth, or not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas, or not less than 1/8 inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

1405.10.1.4 Adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar. Exterior adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar shall comply with the following.

1405.10.1.4.1 Lathing. Lathing shall comply with the requirements of Section 2510.

1405.10.1.4.2 Scratch coat. A nominal 1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) layer of mortar complying with the material requirements of Sections 2103 and 2512.2 shall be applied, encapsulating the lathing. The surface of this mortar shall be scored horizontally, resulting in a scratch coat.

1405.10.1.4.3 Adhering veneer. The masonry veneer units shall be adhered to the mortar scratch coat with a nominal 1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) setting bed of mortar complying with Sections 2103 and 2512.2 applied to create a full setting bed for the back of the masonry veneer units. The masonry veneer units shall be worked into the setting bed resulting in a nominal 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) setting bed after the masonry veneer units are applied.

1405.10.1.5 Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry and concrete. Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry or concrete shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1405.10 and with the requirements of Section 1405.10.4 or 2510.7.

1405.10.1.6 Cold weather construction. Cold weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104 and 2512.4.

1405.10.1.7 Hot weather construction. Hot weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section 2104.

1405.10.2 Exterior adhered masonry veneers—porcelain tile. Adhered units shall not exceed 3/8 inch (15.8 mm) thickness and 24 inches (610 mm) in any face dimension nor more than 3 square feet (0.28 m²) in total face area and shall not weigh more than 9 pounds psf (0.43 kN/m²). Porcelain tile shall be adhered to an approved backing system.

1405.10.3 Interior adhered masonry veneers. Interior adhered masonry veneers shall have a maximum weight of 20 psf (0.958 kg/m²) and shall be installed in accordance with Section 1405.10. Where the interior adhered masonry veneer is supported by wood construction, the supporting members shall be designed to limit deflection to 1/600 of the span of the supporting members.

1405.11 Metal veneers. Veneers of metal shall be fabricated from approved corrosion-resistant materials or shall be protected front and back with porcelain enamel, or otherwise be treated to render the metal resistant to corrosion. Such veneers shall be not less than 0.0149-inch (0.378 mm) nominal thickness sheet steel mounted on wood or metal furring strips or approved sheathing on light-frame construction.

1405.11.1 Attachment. Exterior metal veneer shall be securely attached to the supporting masonry or framing members with corrosion-resistant fastenings, metal ties or by other approved devices or methods. The spacing of the fastenings or ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally, but where units exceed 4 square feet (0.4 m²) in area there shall be not less than four attachments per unit. The metal attachments shall have a cross-sectional area not less than provided by W 1.7 wire. Such attachments and their supports shall be designed and constructed to resist the wind loads as specified in Section 1609 for components and cladding.

1405.11.2 Weather protection. Metal supports for exterior metal veneer shall be protected by painting, galvanizing or by other equivalent coating or treatment. Wood studs, furring strips or other wood supports for exterior metal veneer shall be approved pressure-treated wood or protected as required in Section 1403.2. Joints and edges exposed to the weather shall be caulked with approved durable waterproofing material or by other approved means to prevent penetration of moisture.

1405.11.3 Backup. Masonry backup shall not be required for metal veneer unless required by the fire-resistance requirements of this code.

1405.11.4 Grounding. Grounding of metal veneers on buildings shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 27 of this code.

1405.12 Glass veneer. The area of a single section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 10 square feet (0.93 m²) where that section is not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the level of the sidewalk or grade level directly below, and shall not exceed 6 square feet (0.56 m²) where it is more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above that level.

1405.12.1 Length and height. The length or height of any section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm).

1405.12.2 Thickness. The thickness of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be not less than 0.344 inch (8.7 mm).

1405.12.3 Application. Thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be set only after backing is thoroughly dry and after application of an approved bond coat uniformly over the entire surface of the backing so as to effectively seal the surface. Glass shall be set in place with an approved mastic cement in sufficient quantity so that at least 50 percent of the area of each glass unit is directly bonded to the backing by mastic not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick and not more than 3/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick. The
bond coat and mastic shall be evaluated for compatibility and shall bond firmly together.

1405.12.4 Installation at sidewalk level. Where glass extends to a sidewalk surface, each section shall rest in an approved metal molding, and be set at least 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) above the highest point of the sidewalk. The space between the molding and the sidewalk shall be thoroughly caulked and made water tight.

1405.12.4.1 Installation above sidewalk level. Where thin exterior structural glass veneer is installed above the level of the top of a bulkhead facing, or at a level more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the sidewalk level, the mastic cement binding shall be supplemented with approved nonferrous metal shelf angles located in the horizontal joints in every course. Such shelf angles shall be not less than 0.0478-inch (1.2 mm) thick and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) long and shall be spaced at approved intervals, with not less than two angles for each glass unit. Shelf angles shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other approved methods.

1405.12.5 Joints. Unless otherwise specifically approved by the building official, abutting edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be ground square. Mitered joints shall not be used except where specifically approved for wide angles. Joints shall be uniformly buttered with an approved jointing compound and horizontal joints shall be held to not less than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) by an approved nonrigid substance or device. Where thin exterior structural glass veneer abuts nonresilient material at sides or top, expansion joints not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) wide shall be provided.

1405.12.6 Mechanical fastenings. Thin exterior structural glass veneer installed above the level of the heads of show windows and veneer installed more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above sidewalk level shall, in addition to the mastic cement and shelf angles, be held in place by the use of fastenings at each vertical or horizontal edge, or at the four corners of each glass unit. Fastenings shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other methods. Fastenings shall be so designed as to hold the glass veneer in a vertical plane independent of the mastic cement. Shelf angles providing both support and fastenings shall be permitted.

1405.12.7 Flashing. Exposed edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be flashed with overlapping corrosion-resistant metal flashing and caulked with a waterproof compound in a manner to effectively prevent the entrance of moisture between the glass veneer and the backing.

1405.13 Exterior windows and doors. Windows and doors installed in exterior walls shall conform to the testing and performance requirements of Section 1709.5.

1405.13.1 Installation. Windows and doors shall be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer’s instructions. Fastener size and spacing shall be provided in such instructions and shall be calculated based on maximum loads and spacing used in the tests.

1405.14 Vinyl siding. Vinyl siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with ASTM D3679 shall be permitted on exterior walls of buildings located in areas where $V_{wd}$ as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 does not exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and the building height is less than or equal to 40 feet (12192 mm) in Exposure C. Where construction is located in areas where $V_{wd}$ as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), or building heights are in excess of 40 feet (12192 mm), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Vinyl siding shall be sealed to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

1405.14.1 Application. The siding shall be applied over sheathing or materials listed in Section 2304.6. Siding shall be applied to conform to the water-resistive barrier requirements in Section 1403. Siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer’s instructions. Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer’s instructions, nails used to fasten the siding and accessories shall have a minimum 0.313-inch (7.9 mm) head diameter and 1/8-inch (3.18 mm) shank diameter. The nails shall be corrosion resistant and shall be long enough to penetrate the studs or nailing strip at least 1/4 inch (19 mm). For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate the cold-formed steel framing at least three exposed threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer’s instructions. Where the siding is installed horizontally, the fastener spacing shall not exceed 16 inches (406 mm) horizontally and 12 inches (305 mm) vertically. Where the siding is installed vertically, the fastener spacing shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally and 12 inches (305 mm) vertically.

1405.15 Cement plaster. Cement plaster applied to exterior walls shall conform to the requirements specified in Chapter 25.

1405.16 Fiber-cement siding. Fiber-cement siding complying with Section 1404.10 shall be permitted on exterior walls of Type I, II, III, IV and V construction for wind pressure resistance or wind speed exposures as indicated by the manufacturer’s listing and label and approved installation instructions. Where specified, the siding shall be installed over sheathing or materials listed and approved installation instructions. Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer’s instructions, nails used to fasten the siding to wood studs shall be corrosion-resistant round head smooth shank and shall be long enough to penetrate the studs at least 1 inch (25 mm). For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate the cold-formed steel framing at least three exposed full threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer’s instructions.
1405.16.1 Panel siding. Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be protected with caulking, with battens or flashing, or be vertical or horizontal shiplap or otherwise designed to comply with Section 1403.2. Panel siding shall be installed with fasteners in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s instructions.

1405.16.2 Lap siding. Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches (305 mm) shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Lap siding shall be lapped a minimum of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends protected with caulking, covered with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing or shall be otherwise designed to comply with Section 1403.2. Lap siding courses shall be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s instructions.

1405.17 Fastening. Weather boarding and wall coverings shall be securely fastened with aluminum, copper, zinc, zinc-coated or other approved corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the nailing schedule in Table 2304.10.1 or the approved manufacturer’s instructions. Shingles and other weather coverings shall be attached with appropriate standard-shingle nails to furring strips securely nailed to studs, or with approved mechanically bonding nails, except where sheathing is of wood not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or of wood structural panels as specified in Table 2308.9.3(3).

1405.18 Polypropylene siding. Polypropylene siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with Section 1404.12 shall be limited to exterior walls of Type VB construction located in areas where the wind speed specified in Chapter 16 does not exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and the building height is less than or equal to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Exposure C. Where construction is located in areas where the basic wind speed exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), or building heights are in excess of 40 feet (12 192 mm), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

SECTION 1406
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS ON THE EXTERIOR SIDE OF EXTERIOR WALLS

1406.1 General. Section 1406 shall apply to exterior wall coverings; balconies and similar projections; and bay and oriel windows constructed of combustible materials.

1406.2 Combustible exterior wall coverings. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall comply with this section.

Exception: Plastics complying with Chapter 26.

1406.2.1 Type I, II, III and IV construction. On buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, exterior wall coverings shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials, complying with the following limitations:

1. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exceed 10 percent of an exterior wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less.

2. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall be limited to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane.

3. Combustible exterior wall coverings constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation shall not be limited in wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less and shall be permitted up to 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane regardless of the fire separation distance.

4. Wood veneers shall comply with Section 1405.5.

1406.2.1.1 Ignition resistance. Where permitted by Section 1406.2.1, combustible exterior wall coverings shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268.

Exceptions:

1. Wood or wood-based products.

2. Other combustible materials covered with an exterior weather covering, other than vinyl sidings, included in and complying with the thickness requirements of Table 1405.2.

3. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).

1406.2.1.2 Fire separation 5 feet or less. Where installed on exterior walls having a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

1406.2.1.2 Fire separation greater than 5 feet. For fire separation distances greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), any exterior wall covering shall be permitted that has been exposed to a reduced level of incident radiant heat flux in accordance with the
NFPA 268 test method without exhibiting sustained flaming. The minimum fire separation distance required for the exterior wall covering shall be determined from Table 1406.2.1.1.2 based on the maximum tolerable level of incident radiant heat flux that does not cause sustained flaming of the exterior wall covering.

### Table 1406.2.1.1.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)</th>
<th>TOLERABLE LEVEL INCIDENT RADIANT HEAT ENERGY (kW/m²)</th>
<th>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)</th>
<th>TOLERABLE LEVEL INCIDENT RADIANT HEAT ENERGY (kW/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 Btu/H 2 × °F = 0.0057 kW/m² × K.

#### 1406.2.2 Location.
Combustible exterior wall coverings located along the top of exterior walls shall be completely backed up by the exterior wall and shall not extend over or above the top of the exterior wall.

#### 1406.2.3 Fireblocking.
Where the combustible exterior wall covering is furred out from the exterior wall and forms a solid surface, the distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall not exceed 1 5/8 inches (41 mm). The concealed space thereby created shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.

**Exception:** The distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall be permitted to exceed 1 5/8 inches (41 mm) where the concealed space is not required to be fireblocked by Section 718.

#### 1406.3 Balconies and similar projections.
Balconies and similar projections of combustible construction other than fire-retardant-treated wood shall be fire-resistance rated where required by Table 601 for floor construction or shall be of Type IV construction in accordance with Section 602.4. The aggregate length of the projections shall not exceed 50 percent of the building’s perimeter on each floor.

**Exceptions:**
1. On buildings of Type I and II construction, three stories or less above grade plane, fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted for balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits.
2. Untreated wood is permitted for pickets and rails or similar guardrail devices that are limited to 42 inches (1067 mm) in height.
3. Balconies and similar projections on buildings of Type III, IV and V construction shall be permitted to be of Type V construction, and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where sprinkler protection is extended to these areas.
4. Where sprinkler protection is extended to the balcony areas, the aggregate length of the balcony on each floor shall not be limited.

#### 1406.4 Bay and oriel windows.
Bay and oriel windows shall conform to the type of construction required for the building to which they are attached.

**Exception:** Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted on buildings three stories or less above grade plane of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

### Section 1407

#### Metal Composite Materials (MCM)

#### 1407.1 General.
The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of metal composite materials (MCM) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

#### 1407.2 Exterior wall finish.
MCM used as exterior wall finish or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1407.4 through 1407.14.

#### 1407.3 Architectural trim and embellishments.
MCM used as architectural trim or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1407.7 through 1407.14.

#### 1407.4 Structural design.
MCM systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

#### 1407.5 Approval.
Results of approved tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the building official to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

#### 1407.6 Weather resistance.
MCM systems shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

#### 1407.7 Durability.
MCM systems shall be constructed of approved materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1407 for the duration of use.

#### 1407.8 Fire-resistance rating.
Where MCM systems are used on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the building official that the required fire-resistance rating is maintained.

**Exception:** MCM systems not containing foam plastic insulation, which are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated exterior wall in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire exte-
1407.9 Surface-burning characteristics. Unless otherwise specified, MCM shall have a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1407.10 Type I, II, III and IV construction. Where installed on buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, MCM systems shall comply with Sections 1407.10.1 through 1407.10.4, or Section 1407.11.

1407.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics. MCM shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1407.10.2 Thermal barriers. MCM shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier consisting of 1/4-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

1407.10.3 Thermal barrier not required. The thermal barrier specified for MCM in Section 1407.10.2 is not required where:

1. The MCM system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 286 and with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use. The MCM system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.
2. The MCM is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural trim or embellishments.

1407.10.4 Full-scale tests. The MCM system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the MCM system with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use.

1407.11 Alternate conditions. MCM and MCM systems shall not be required to comply with Sections 1407.10.1 through 1407.10.4 provided such systems comply with Section 1407.11.1, 1407.11.2, 1407.11.3 or 1407.11.4.

1407.11.1 Installations up to 40 feet in height. MCM shall not be installed more than 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.1.1 and 1407.11.1.2.

1407.11.1.1 Fire separation distance of 5 feet or less. Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of MCM shall not exceed 10 percent of the exterior wall surface.

1407.11.1.2 Fire separation distance greater than 5 feet. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of exterior wall surface coverage using MCM.

1407.11.2 Installations up to 50 feet in height. MCM shall not be installed more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.2.1 and 1407.11.2.2.

1407.11.2.1 Self-ignition temperature. MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

1407.11.2.2 Limitations. Sections of MCM shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m²) in area and shall be separated by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

1407.11.3 Installations up to 75 feet in height (Option 1). MCM shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.3.1 through 1407.11.3.5.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be exempt from the height limitation.

1407.11.3.1 Prohibited occupancies. MCM shall not be permitted on buildings classified as Group A-1, A-2, H, I-2 or I-3 occupancies.

1407.11.3.2 Nonfire-resistance-rated exterior walls. MCM shall not be permitted on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this code.

1407.11.3.3 Specifications. MCM shall be required to comply with all of the following:

1. MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.
2. MCM shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications when tested in accordance with ASTM D635:
   Class CC1: Materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or in the thickness intended for use.
   Class CC2: Materials that have a burning rate of 2 1/2 inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or in the thickness intended for use.

1407.11.3.4 Area limitation and separation. The maximum area of a single MCM panel and the minimum vertical and horizontal separation requirements for MCM panels shall be as provided for in Table 1407.11.3.4. The maximum percentage of exterior wall area of any story covered with MCM panels shall not exceed that indicated in Table 1407.11.3.4 or the percentage of unprotected openings permitted by Section 705.8, whichever is smaller.

Exception: In buildings provided with flame barriers complying with Section 705.8.5 and extending 30 inches (760 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the
plane of the floor, a vertical separation shall not be required at the floor other than that provided by the vertical thickness of the flame barrier.

1407.11.3.5 Automatic sprinkler system increases. Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum percentage area of exterior wall of any story covered with MCM panels and the maximum square footage of a single area of MCM panels in Table 1407.11.3.4 shall be increased 100 percent. The area of MCM panels shall not exceed 50 percent of the exterior wall area of any story or the area permitted by Section 704.8 for unprotected openings, whichever is smaller.

1407.11.4 Installations up to 75 feet in height (Option 2). MCM shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1407.11.4.1 through 1407.11.4.4.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be exempt from the height limitation.

1407.11.4.1 Minimum fire separation distance. MCM shall not be installed on any wall with a fire separation distance less than 30 feet (9 144 mm).

Exception: Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the fire separation distance shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

1407.11.4.2 Specifications. MCM shall be required to comply with all of the following:

1. MCM shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.
2. MCM shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications when tested in accordance with ASTM D635:

Class CC1: Materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use.
Class CC2: Materials that have a burning rate of 2 1/2 inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less when tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use.

1407.11.4.3 Area and size limitations. The aggregate area of MCM panels shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of any exterior wall face of the story on which those panels are installed. The area of a single MCM panel installed above the first story above grade plane shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 m²) and the vertical dimension of a single MCM panel shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

Exception: Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum aggregate area of MCM panels shall be increased to 50 percent of the exterior wall face of the story on which those panels are installed and there shall not be a limit on the maximum dimension or area of a single MCM panel.

1407.11.4.4 Vertical separations. Flame barriers complying with Section 705.8 and extending 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall or a vertical separation of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height shall be provided to separate MCM panels located on the exterior walls at one-story intervals.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

1407.12 Type V construction. MCM shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.
1407.13 Foam plastic insulation. MCM systems containing foam plastic insulation shall also comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

1407.14 Labeling. MCM shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

SECTION 1408
EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS)

1408.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 7, 14, 16, 17 and 26.

1408.2 Performance characteristics. EIFS shall be constructed such that it meets the performance characteristics required in ASTM E2568.

1408.3 Structural design. The underlying structural framing and substrate shall be designed and constructed to resist loads as required by Chapter 16.

1408.4 Weather resistance. EIFS shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer’s application instructions.

1408.4.1 EIFS with drainage. EIFS with drainage shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance the requirements of ASTM E2273 and is required on framed walls of Type V construction, Group R1, R2, R3 and R4 occupancies.

1408.4.1.1 Water-resistant barrier. For EIFS with drainage, the water-resistant barrier shall comply with Section 1404.2 or ASTM E2570.

1408.5 Installation. Installation of the EIFS and EIFS with drainage shall be in accordance with the EIFS manufacturer’s instructions.

1408.6 Special inspections. EIFS installations shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1704.2 and 1705.16.

SECTION 1409
HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATES (HPL)

1409.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of High-Pressure Decorative Exterior-Grade Compact Laminates (HPL) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

1409.2 Exterior wall finish. HPL used as exterior wall covering or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1409.4 and 1409.14.

1409.3 Architectural trim and embellishments. HPL used as architectural trim or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1409.7 through 1409.14.

1409.4 Structural design. HPL systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

1409.5 Approval. Results of approved tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the building official to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

1409.6 Weather resistance. HPL systems shall comply with Section 1403 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer’s instructions.

1409.7 Durability. HPL systems shall be constructed of approved materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1409 for the duration of use.

1409.8 Fire-resistance rating. Where HPL systems are used on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the building official that the required fire-resistance rating is maintained.

Exception: HPL systems not containing foam plastic insulation, which are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated exterior wall in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire exterior wall assembly, shall not be required to comply with this section.

1409.9 Surface-burning characteristics. Unless otherwise specified, HPL shall have a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1409.10 Type I, II, III and IV construction. Where installed on buildings of Type I, II, III and IV construction, HPL systems shall comply with Sections 1409.10.1 through 1409.10.4, or Section 1409.11.

1409.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics. HPL shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1409.10.2 Thermal barriers. HPL shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier consisting of 1/4-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

1409.10.3 Thermal barrier not required. The thermal barrier specified for HPL in Section 1409.10.2 is not required where:

1. The HPL system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use. The HPL system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.
2. The HPL is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural trim or embellishments.

1409.10.4 Full-scale tests. The HPL system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the HPL system with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use.

1409.11 Alternate conditions. HPL and HPL systems shall not be required to comply with Sections 1409.10.1 through 1409.10.4 provided such systems comply with Section 1409.11.1 or 1409.11.2.

1409.11.1 Installations up to 40 feet in height. HPL shall not be installed more than 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1409.11.1.1 and 1409.11.1.2.

1409.11.1.1 Fire separation distance of 5 feet or less. Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of HPL shall not exceed 10 percent of the exterior wall surface.

1409.11.1.2 Fire separation distance greater than 5 feet. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of exterior wall surface coverage using HPL.

1409.11.2 Installations up to 50 feet in height. HPL shall not be installed more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Sections 1409.11.2.1 and 1409.11.2.2.

1409.11.2.1 Self-ignition temperature. HPL shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.

1409.11.2.2 Limitations. Sections of HPL shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m²) in area and shall be separated by a minimum 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

1409.12 Type V construction. HPL shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.

1409.13 Foam plastic insulation. HPL systems containing foam plastic insulation shall also comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

1409.14 Labeling. HPL shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

SECTION 1410

PLASTIC COMPOSITE DECKING

1410.1 Plastic composite decking. Exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guard systems constructed of plastic composites, including plastic lumber, shall comply with Section 2612.
CHAPTER 15
ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

SECTION 1501
GENERAL

1501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies, and rooftop structures.

SECTION 1502
DEFINITIONS

1502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
AGGREGATE.
BALLAST.
BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT.
BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.
INTERLAYMENT.
MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN.
METAL ROOF PANEL.
METAL ROOF SHINGLE.
MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.
PENTHOUSE.
PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE.
PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL.
PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM.
PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES.
POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.
RADIANT BARRIER.
REROOFING.
ROOF ASSEMBLY.
ROOF COVERING.
ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.
ROOF DECK.
ROOF RECOVER.
ROOF REPAIR.
ROOF REPLACEMENT.
ROOF VENTILATION.
ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.
SCUPPER.
SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE.
UNDERLAYMENT.
VEGETATIVE ROOF.

SECTION 1503
WEATHER PROTECTION

1503.1 General. Roof decks shall be covered with approved roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code and the approved manufacturer’s instructions such that the roof covering shall serve to protect the building or structure.

1503.2 Flashing. Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture-permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

1503.2.1 Locations. Flashing shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, at gutters, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.483 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

1503.3 Coping. Parapet walls shall be properly coped with noncombustible, weatherproof materials of a width no less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

1503.4 Roof drainage. Design and installation of roof drainage systems shall comply with Section 1503 of this code and Sections 1106 and 1108, as applicable, of the Plumbing Code.

1503.4.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. The installation and sizing of secondary emergency overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with Sections 1106 and 1108, as applicable, of the Plumbing Code.

1503.4.2 Scuppers. When scuppers are used for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage, the quantity, size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1611.1. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing scuppers.

1503.4.3 Gutters. Gutters and leaders placed on the outside of buildings, other than Group R-3, private garages and buildings of Type V construction, shall be of noncombustible material or a minimum of Schedule 40 plastic pipe.

1503.5 Attic and rafter ventilation. Intake and exhaust vents shall be provided in accordance with Section 1203.2 and the vent product manufacturer’s installation instructions.
1503.6 Crickets and saddles. A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration greater than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpendicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

Exception: Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section 2405.5 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

SECTION 1504
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
1504.1 Wind resistance of roofs. Roof decks and roof coverings shall be designed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and Sections 1504.2, 1504.3 and 1504.4.

1504.1.1 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1504.1.1 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

Exception: Asphalt shingles that are not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1504.1.1.

1504.2 Wind resistance of clay and concrete tile. Wind loads on clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall be in accordance with Section 1609.5.

1504.2.1 Testing. Testing of concrete and clay roof tiles shall be in accordance with Sections 1504.2.1.1 and 1504.2.1.2.

1504.2.1.1 Overturning resistance. Concrete and clay roof tiles shall be tested to determine their resistance to overturning due to wind in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.2.1.2 Wind tunnel testing. Where concrete and clay roof tiles do not satisfy the limitations in Chapter 16 for rigid tile, a wind tunnel test shall be used to determine the wind characteristics of the concrete or clay tile roof covering in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 and Chapter 15.

1504.3 Wind resistance of nonballasted roofs. Roof coverings installed on roofs in accordance with Section 1507 that are mechanically attached or adhered to the roof deck shall be designed to resist the design wind load pressures for components and cladding in accordance with Section 1609.

1504.3.1 Other roof systems. Built-up, modified bitumen, fully adhered or mechanically attached single-ply roof systems, metal panel roof systems applied to a solid or closely fitted deck and other types of membrane roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with FM 4474, UL 580 or UL 1897.

1504.3.2 Structural metal panel roof systems. Where the metal roof panel functions as the roof deck and roof covering and it provides both weather protection and support for loads, the structural metal panel roof system shall comply with this section. Structural standing-seam metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1592 or FM 4474. Structural through-fastened metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with FM 4474, UL 580 or ASTM E1592.

Exceptions:

1. Metal roofs constructed of cold-formed steel shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2210.1.

2. Metal roofs constructed of aluminum shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2002.1.

1504.4 Ballasted low-slope roof systems. Ballasted low-slope (roof slope < 2:12) single-ply roof system coverings installed in accordance with Sections 1507.12 and 1507.13, and protected membrane ballasted low-slope (roof slope < 2:12) hot-applied rubberized-asphalt roofing systems installed in accordance with Section 1507.18, shall be designed in accordance with Section 1504.8 and ANSI/SPRI RP-4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Basic Wind Speed, $V_{uw}$, from Figure 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2), 1609.3(3) or ASCE 7</th>
<th>Maximum Basic Wind Speed, $V_{uw}$, from Table 1609.3.1</th>
<th>ASTM D7158* Classification</th>
<th>ASTM D3161 Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>D, G or H</td>
<td>A, D or F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>D, G or H</td>
<td>A, D or F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>G or H</td>
<td>A, D or F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>G or H</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>G or H</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. The standard calculations contained in ASTM D7158 assume Exposure Category B or C and building height of 60 feet or less. Additional calculations are required for conditions outside of these assumptions.
1504.5 Edge securement for low-slope roofs. Low-slope built-up, modified bitumen and single-ply roof system metal edge securement, except gutters, shall be designed and installed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and tested for resistance in accordance with Test Methods RE-1, RE-2 and RE-3 of ANSI/SPRI ES-1, except those tested for resistance in accord ance with Test Methods RE-1, installed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and edge securement, except gutters, shall be designed and built-up, modified bitumen and single-ply roof system metal edge securement for reinforced membranes when tested as herein required.

1504.6 Physical properties. Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with Section 1507 shall demonstrate physical integrity over the working life of the roof based upon 2,000 hours of exposure to accelerated weathering tests conducted in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G155 or ASTM G154. Those roof coverings that are subject to cyclical flexural response due to wind loads shall not demonstrate any significant loss of tensile strength for unreinforced membranes or breaking strength for reinforced membranes when tested as herein required.

1504.7 Impact resistance. Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with Section 1507 shall resist impact damage based on the results of tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, CGSB 37-GP-52M or the “Resistance to Foot Traffic Test” in Section 5.5 of FM 4470.

1504.8 Aggregate. Aggregate used as surfacing for roof coverings and aggregate, gravel or stone used as ballast shall not be used on the roof of a building located in a hurricane-prone region as defined in Section 202, or on any other building with a mean roof height exceeding that permitted by Table 1504.8 based on the exposure category and basic wind speed at the site.

### TABLE 1504.8 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE MEAN ROOF HEIGHT PERMITTED FOR BUILDINGS WITH AGGREGATE ON THE ROOF IN AREAS OUTSIDE A HURRICANE-PRONE REGION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V_{w0}$ (mph)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (ft)</th>
<th>Exposure category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 120</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Mean roof height as defined in ASCE 7.

b. For intermediate values of $V_{w0}$, the height associated with the next higher value of $V_{w0}$ shall be used, or direct interpolation is permitted.

c. NP = gravel and stone not permitted for any roof height.

d. $V_{w0}$ shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

### SECTION 1505

## FIRE CLASSIFICATION

1505.1 General. Roof assemblies shall be divided into the classes defined below. Class A, B and C roof assemblies and roof coverings required to be listed by this section shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790. In addition, fire-retardant-treated wood roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D2898. The minimum roof coverings installed on buildings shall comply with Table 1505.1 based on the type of construction of the building.

**Exception:** Skylights and sloped glazing that comply with Chapter 24 or Section 2610.

### TABLE 1505.1a,b MINIMUM ROOF COVERING CLASSIFICATION FOR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IA</th>
<th>IB</th>
<th>IIA</th>
<th>IIB</th>
<th>IIIA</th>
<th>IIIB</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>VA</th>
<th>VB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Unless otherwise required in accordance with the Wildland-Urban Interface Code or due to the location of the building within a fire district in accordance with Appendix D.

b. Nonclassified roof coverings shall be permitted on buildings of Group R-3 and Group U occupancies, where there is a minimum fire-separation distance of 6 feet measured from the leading edge of the roof.

c. Buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane and having not more than 6,000 square feet of projected roof area and where there is a minimum 10-foot fire-separation distance from the leading edge of the roof to a lot line on all sides of the building, except for street fronts or public ways, shall be permitted to have roofs of No. 1 cedar or redwood shakes and No. 1 shingles constructed in accordance with Section 1505.7.

1505.2 Class A roof assemblies. Class A roof assemblies are those that are effective against severe fire test exposure. Class A roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be listed and identified as Class A by an approved testing agency. Class A roof assemblies shall be permitted for use in buildings or structures of all types of construction.

**Exceptions:**

1. Class A roof assemblies include those with coverings of brick, masonry or an exposed concrete roof deck.

2. Class A roof assemblies also include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile or slate installed on noncombustible decks or ferrous, copper or metal sheets installed without a roof deck on noncombustible framing.

3. Class A roof assemblies include minimum 16 ounce per square foot (0.0416 kg/m²) copper sheets installed over combustible decks.

4. Class A roof assemblies include slate installed over ASTM D226, Type II underlayment over combustible decks.

1505.3 Class B roof assemblies. Class B roof assemblies are those that are effective against moderate fire-test exposure. Class B roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be listed and identified as Class B by an approved testing agency.
SECTION 1507
REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

1507.1 Scope. Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

1507.2 Asphalt shingles. The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.2.1 Deck requirements. Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

1507.2.2 Slope. Asphalt shingles shall only be used on roof slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.2.8.

1507.2.3 Underlayment. Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D226, Type I, ASTM D4869, Type I, or ASTM D6757.

1507.2.4 Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet. Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall comply with ASTM D1970.

1507.2.5 Asphalt shingles. Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D225 or ASTM D3462.

1507.2.6 Fasteners. Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum 3/8-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and a minimum of 1/4 inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

1507.2.7 Attachment. Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12), shingles shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

1507.2.8 Underlayment application. For roof slopes from two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) and up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), underlayment shall be two layers applied in the following manner. Apply a minimum 19-inch-wide (483 mm) strip of underlayment felt parallel with and starting at the eaves, fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide (914 mm) sheets of underlayment overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm) and fasten sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. For roof slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied in the following manner. Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened sufficiently to hold in place. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal.
1507.2.8.1 High wind attachment. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds \([V_{adm} \text{ greater than 110 mph (49 m/s)}\) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1\] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \(V_{adm}\) in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II, ASTM D4869 Type IV, or ASTM D6757. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Section 1507.2.8 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \(\frac{1}{4}\) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.3 Clay and concrete tile. The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.3.1 Deck requirements. Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing or spaced structural sheathing boards.

1507.3.2 Deck slope. Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of \(2\frac{1}{2}\) units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from \(2\frac{1}{2}\) units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.3.3.

1507.3.3 Underlayment. Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to: ASTM D226, Type II; ASTM D2626 or ASTM D6380, Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing.

1507.3.3.1 Low-slope roofs. For roof slopes from \(2\frac{1}{2}\) units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope), up to four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), underlayment shall be a minimum of two layers applied as follows:

1. Starting at the eave, a 19-inch (483 mm) strip of underlayment shall be applied parallel with the eave and fastened sufficiently in place.

2. Starting at the eave, 36-inch-wide (914 mm) strips of underlayment felt shall be applied overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm) and fastened sufficiently in place.

1507.2.9.2 Valleys. Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be at least 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table 1507.2.9.2.
layer of underlayment felt applied shingle fashion, parallel to, and starting from the eaves and lapped 2 inches (51 mm), fastened only as necessary to hold in place.

1507.3.3 High wind attachment. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high wind \[V_{awd} > 110\text{ mph} (49 \text{ m/s})\] as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \[V_{awd}\], in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Sections 1507.3.3.1 and 1507.3.3.2 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage \[0.0134\text{ inch} (0.34 \text{ mm})\] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage \[0.105\text{ inch} (2.67 \text{ mm})\] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.3.4 Clay tile. Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1167.

1507.3.5 Concrete tile. Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1492.

1507.3.6 Fasteners. Tile fasteners shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11-gage, \[\frac{3}{16}\text{ inch} (8.0 \text{ mm})\] head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck a minimum of \[\frac{3}{4}\text{ inch} (19.1 \text{ mm})\] or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2.1 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

1507.3.7 Attachment. Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with Table 1507.3.7.

1507.3.8 Application. Tile shall be applied according to the manufacturer’s installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. Underlayment system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

1507.3.9 Flashing. At the juncture of the roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions, and where of metal, shall not be less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley, or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.4 Metal roof panels. The installation of metal roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.4.1 Deck requirements. Metal roof panel roof coverings shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.
### TABLE 1507.3.7
CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT a, b, c

#### GENERAL - CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, $V_{rad}$ (mph)</th>
<th>Mean roof height (feet)</th>
<th>Roof slope &lt; 3:12</th>
<th>Roof slope 3:12 and over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>One fastener per tile. Flat tile without vertical laps, two fasteners per tile.</td>
<td>Two fasteners per tile. Only one fastener on slopes of 7:12 and less for tiles with installed weight exceeding 7.5 lbs./sq. ft. having a width not more than 16 inches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0-40</td>
<td>The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer’s mastic.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>&gt;40-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>&gt;60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS d, e

(Installations on spaced/solid sheathing with battens or spaced sheathing)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, $V_{rad}$ (mph)</th>
<th>Mean roof height (feet)</th>
<th>Roof slope &lt; 5:12</th>
<th>Roof slope 5:12 &lt; 12:12</th>
<th>Roof slope 12:12 and over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>Fasteners are not required.</td>
<td>One fastener per tile every other row. All perimeter tiles require one fastener. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require a minimum of one fastener per tile.</td>
<td>One fastener required for every tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require a minimum of one fastener per tile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0-40</td>
<td>The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer’s mastic.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>&gt;40-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>&gt;60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS f

(Installations on solid sheathing without battens)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, $V_{rad}$ (mph)</th>
<th>Mean roof height (feet)</th>
<th>All roof slopes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>One fastener per tile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0-40</td>
<td>One fastener per tile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>&gt; 40-60</td>
<td>The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. All rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer’s mastic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>0-60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>&gt;60</td>
<td>The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m².

a. Minimum fastener size. Corrosion-resistant nails not less than No. 11 gage with 5/16-inch head. Fasteners shall be long enough to penetrate into the sheathing 3/4 inch or through the thickness of the sheathing, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay and concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch.

b. Snow areas. A minimum of two fasteners per tile are required or battens and one fastener.

c. Roof slopes greater than 24:12. The nose of all tiles shall be securely fastened.

d. Horizontal battens. Battens shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inch nominal. Provisions shall be made for drainage by a minimum of 1/8-inch riser at each nail or by 4-foot-long battens with at least a 1/4-inch separation between battens. Horizontal battens are required for slopes over 7:12.

e. Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

f. $V_{rad}$ shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.
1507.4.2 Deck slope. Minimum slopes for metal roof panels shall comply with the following:

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels without applied lap sealant shall be three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels with applied lap sealant shall be one-half unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s installation instructions.

3. The minimum slope for standing-seam metal roof panel systems shall be one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1507.4.3 Material standards. Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 22. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table 1507.4.3(2).

1507.4.4 Attachment. Metal roof panels shall be secured to the supports in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s fasteners. In the absence of manufacturer recommendations, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.

2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.

3. Stainless-steel fasteners are acceptable for all types of metal roofs.

4. Aluminum fasteners are acceptable for aluminum roofs attached to aluminum supports.

1507.4.5 Underlayment and high wind. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [V_{im} greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where V_{im} in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II, ASTM D4869 Type IV, or ASTM D1970. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12

### TABLE 1507.4.3(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOF COVERING TYPE</th>
<th>STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum</td>
<td>ASTM B209, 0.024 inch minimum thickness for roll-formed panels and 0.019 inch minimum thickness for press-formed shingles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel</td>
<td>ASTM A792 AZ 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-rolled copper</td>
<td>ASTM B370 minimum 16 oz./sq. ft. and 12 oz./sq. ft. high yield copper for metal-sheet roof covering systems: 12 oz./sq. ft. for preformed metal shingle systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>16 oz./sq. ft. for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz./sq. ft. for preformed metal shingle systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanized steel</td>
<td>ASTM A653 G-90 zinc-coated²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard lead</td>
<td>2 lbs./sq. ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead-coated copper</td>
<td>ASTM B101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepainted steel</td>
<td>ASTM A755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft lead</td>
<td>3 lbs./sq. ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel</td>
<td>ASTM A240, 300 Series Alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>ASTM A924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terne and terne-coated stainless</td>
<td>Terne coating of 40 lbs. per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer’s installation instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>0.027 inch minimum thickness; 99.995% electrolytic high grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08% - 0.20%), titanium (0.07% - 0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m², 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m², 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For Group U buildings, the minimum coating thickness for ASTM A653 galvanized steel roofing shall be G-60.

### TABLE 1507.4.3(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>55% Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5% Aluminum alloy-coated steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aluminum-coated steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanized steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepainted steel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A792, ASTM A875, ASTM A463 or ASTM A653. gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

**Exception:** As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.5 Metal roof shingles. The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.
1507.5.1 Deck requirements. Metal roof shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

1507.5.2 Deck slope. Metal roof shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes below three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

1507.5.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.5.3.1 Underlayment and high wind. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds \( V_{\text{out}} \) greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not farther apart than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \( V_{\text{out}} \) in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II or ASTM D4869 Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch spacing (152 mm) at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.5.4 Ice barrier. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of either one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. The metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for roof slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

1507.5.5 Material standards. Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses specified in the standards listed in Table 1507.4.3(2).

1507.5.6 Attachment. Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s installation instructions.

1507.5.7 Flashing. Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.4.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend at least 8 inches (203 mm) from the centerline each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than \( \frac{3}{8} \) inch (19.1 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment directly under it consisting of either one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. The metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roof sheathing or a minimum of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.6 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing. The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

1507.6.1 Deck requirements. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

1507.6.2 Deck slope. Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

1507.6.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

1507.6.3.1 Underlayment and high wind. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds \( V_{\text{out}} \) greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \( V_{\text{out}} \) in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226 Type II. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch spacing (152 mm) at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.6.5 Material standards. Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses specified in the standards listed in Table 1507.4.3(2).

1507.6.6 Attachment. Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with the approved manufacturer’s installation instructions.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.
1507.6.4 Ice barrier. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.7 Slate shingles. The installation of slate shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.7.1 Deck requirements. Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

1507.7.2 Deck slope. Slate shingles shall only be used on slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater.

1507.7.3 Underlayment. Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type III or IV.

1507.7.3.1 Underlayment and high wind. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [\(V_{aud} \geq 110 \text{ mph} \ (49 \text{ m/s)}\) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \(V_{aud}\), in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage (0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)) sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage (0.105 inch (2.67 mm)) with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \(\frac{3}{8}\) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.7.4 Ice barrier. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.7.5 Material standards. Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C406.

1507.7.6 Application. Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table 1507.7.6. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SLOPE</th>
<th>HEADLAP (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:12 &lt; slope &lt; 8:12</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12 &lt; slope &lt; 20:12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slope ≥ 20:12</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
Underlayment installed where \(V_{\text{avg}}\), in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869, Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1507.8</th>
<th>WOOD SHINGLE AND SHAKE INSTALLATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ROOF ITEM</strong></td>
<td><strong>WOOD SHINGLES</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Roof slope</td>
<td>Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (3:12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Deck requirement</td>
<td>Shingles shall be applied to roofs with solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1” × 4” nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperate climate</strong></td>
<td>Solid sheathing is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.</td>
<td>Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Underlayment</td>
<td>Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperate climate</strong></td>
<td>An ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall extend from the eave's edge to a point at least 24 inches inside the exterior wall line of the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. Application</strong></td>
<td>Fasteners for wood shingles shall be hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 (Type 316 for coastal areas) stainless steel with a minimum penetration of 0.75 inch into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 0.5 inch thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment</td>
<td>Two per shingle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of fasteners</td>
<td>Weather exposures shall not exceed those set forth in Table 1507.8.7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure</td>
<td>Shingles shall be laid with a side lap of not less than 1.5 inches between joints in courses, and no two joints in any three adjacent courses shall be in direct alignment. Spacing between shingles shall be 0.25 to 0.375 inch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method</td>
<td>In accordance with Section 1507.8.8.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = \(\left(^\circ\text{F} - 32\right)/1.8\).
with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

**Exception:** As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

**1507.8.4 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

**1507.8.5 Material standards.** Wood shingles shall be of naturally durable wood and comply with the requirements of Table 1507.8.5.

### TABLE 1507.8.5
**WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>APPLICABLE MINIMUM GRADES</th>
<th>GRADING RULES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wood shingles of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>1, 2 or 3</td>
<td>CSSB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau

**1507.8.6 Attachment.** Fasteners for wood shingles shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shingle shall be attached with a minimum of two fasteners.

**1507.8.7 Application.** Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than 1/4 inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses, and not be in direct alignment in alternate courses. Spacing between shingles shall be 1/4 to 3/4 inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed that set in Table 1507.8.7.

### TABLE 1507.8.7
**WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOFING MATERIAL</th>
<th>LENGTH (inches)</th>
<th>GRADE</th>
<th>3:12 pitch to &lt; 4:12</th>
<th>4:12 pitch or steeper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shingles of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>No. 1</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18</td>
<td>No. 1</td>
<td>4.25</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 3</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>No. 1</td>
<td>5.75</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**1507.8.8 Flashing.** At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counter-flashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (−4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

**1507.9 Wood shakes.** The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section and Table 1507.8.

**1507.9.1 Deck requirements.** Wood shakes shall only be used on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

**1507.9.1.1 Solid sheathing required.** Solid sheathing is required in areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (−4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.

**1507.9.2 Deck slope.** Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

**1507.9.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I or ASTM D4869.

**1507.9.3.1 Underlayment and high wind.** Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds \[V_{\text{wind}}\] greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Fasteners are to be applied along the overlap not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center.

Underlayment installed where \[V_{\text{wind}}\] in accordance with Section 1609.3.1, equals or exceeds 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II or ASTM D4869 Type IV. The underlayment shall be attached in
a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of at least 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

**Exception:** As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

### 1507.9.4 Ice barrier
In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be used in lieu of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point at least 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

### 1507.9.5 Interlayment
Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I.

### 1507.9.6 Material standards
Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table 1507.9.6.

#### TABLE 1507.9.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>MINIMUM GRADES</th>
<th>APPLICABLE GRADING RULES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wood shakes of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CSSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
<td>CSSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CSSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CSSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 3B and Section 5.6)</td>
<td>1 or 2</td>
<td>TFS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau. TFS = Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services.

### 1507.9.7 Attachment
Fasteners for wood shakes shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than \( \frac{3}{8} \) inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shake shall be attached with a minimum of two fasteners.

### 1507.9.8 Application
Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than \( \frac{3}{8} \) inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be \( \frac{3}{4} \) to \( \frac{5}{8} \) inch (9.5 to 15.9 mm) for shakes and taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be \( \frac{1}{4} \) to \( \frac{3}{8} \) inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm) for preservative taper sawn shakes. Weather exposure for wood shakes shall not exceed those set in Table 1507.9.8.

### 1507.9.9 Flashing
At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend at least 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet complying with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

### 1507.10 Built-up roofs
The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section.

#### 1507.10.1 Slope
Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs that shall have a design slope of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

#### 1507.10.2 Material standards
Built-up roof covering materials shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.10.2 or UL 55A.

#### 1507.11 Modified bitumen roofing
The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

#### 1507.11.1 Slope
Modified bitumen membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

#### 1507.11.2 Material standards

### 1507.12 Thermoset single-ply roofing
The installation of thermoset single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

#### 1507.12.1 Slope
Thermoset single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.
1507.12.2 Material standards. Thermoset single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4637, ASTM D5019 or CGSB 37-GP-52M.

1507.13 Thermoplastic single-ply roofing. The installation of thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.13.1 Slope. Thermoplastic single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1507.13.2 Material standards. Thermoplastic single-ply roof coverings shall comply with ASTM D4434, ASTM D6754, ASTM D6878 or CGSB CAN/CGSB 37-54.

1507.13.3 Ballasted thermoplastic low-slope roofs. Ballasted thermoplastic low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) shall be installed in accordance with this section and Section 1504.4. Stone used as ballast shall comply with ASTM D448 or ASTM D7655.

1507.14 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing. The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.14.1 Slope. Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

1507.14.2 Material standards. Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with Type III or IV as defined in ASTM C1029.

1507.14.3 Application. Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Table 1507.14.3 shall be applied no less than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For 24-inch by 0.375-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is 7.5 inches.
1507.14.4 Foam plastics. Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Chapter 26.

1507.15 Liquid-applied roofing. The installation of liquid-applied roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.15.1 Slope. Liquid-applied roofing shall have a design slope of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

1507.15.2 Material standards. Liquid-applied roofing shall comply with ASTM C836, ASTM C957, ASTM D1227 or ASTM D3468, ASTM D6083, ASTM D6694 or ASTM D6947.

1507.16 Vegetative roofs, roof gardens and landscaped roofs. Vegetative roofs, roof gardens and landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of this chapter, Sections 1607.12.3 and 1607.12.3.1 and the Fire Code.

1507.16.1 Structural fire resistance. The structural frame and roof construction supporting the load imposed upon the roof by the vegetative roof, roof gardens or landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of Table 601.

1507.17 Photovoltaic shingles. The installation of photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.17.1 Deck requirements. Photovoltaic shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the shingles are specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

1507.17.2 Deck slope. Photovoltaic shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

1507.17.3 Underlayment. Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to ASTM D226, ASTM D4869 or ASTM D6757.

1507.17.4 Underlayment application. Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave, lapped 2 inches (51 mm) and fastened sufficiently to hold in place.

1507.17.4.1 High wind attachment. Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds \( V_{wd} \) greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 shall be applied with corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Fasteners shall be applied along the overlap at not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center. Underlayment installed where \( V_{wd} \) is not less than 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type II, ASTM D4869, Type IV or ASTM D6757. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Section 1507.2.8 except all laps shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) with a thickness of not less than 32-gage [0.0134 inch (0.34 mm)] sheet metal. The cap nail shank shall be a minimum of 12 gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] with a length to penetrate through the roof sheathing or a minimum of \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

Exception: As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

1507.17.4.2 Ice barrier. In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier that consists of at least two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used instead of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

Exception: Detached accessory structures that contain no conditioned floor area.

1507.17.5 Fasteners. Fasteners for photovoltaic shingles shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum \( \frac{1}{8} \) inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and a minimum of \( \frac{1}{4} \) inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

1507.17.6 Material standards. Photovoltaic shingles shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703.

1507.17.7 Attachment. Photovoltaic shingles shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

1507.17.8 Wind resistance. Photovoltaic shingles shall be tested in accordance with procedures and acceptance criteria in ASTM D3161. Photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the classification requirements of Table 1504.1.1 for the appropriate maximum nominal design wind speed. Photovoltaic shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with the procedures in ASTM D3161 and the required classification from Table 1504.1.1.

1507.18 Hot-applied rubberized-asphalt roofing. The installation of hot-applied rubberized-asphalt roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

1507.18.1 Slope. Hot-applied rubberized-asphalt roof membranes shall not be required to have a minimum design slope (0-percent slope).

### PROTECTIVE COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrylic coating</td>
<td>ASTM D6083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silicone coating</td>
<td>ASTM D6694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture-cured polyurethane coating</td>
<td>ASTM D6947</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SECTION 1508**

**ROOF INSULATION**

**1508.1 General.** The use of above-deck thermal insulation shall be permitted provided such insulation is covered with an approved roof covering and passes the tests of NFPA 276 or UL 1256 when tested as an assembly.

Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic roof insulation shall conform to the material and installation requirements of Chapter 26.
2. Where a concrete roof deck is used and the above-deck thermal insulation is covered with an approved roof covering.

**1508.1.1 Cellulosic fiberboard.** Cellulosic fiberboard roof insulation shall conform to the material and installation requirements of Chapter 23.

**1508.2 Material standards.** Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table 1508.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1508.2</th>
<th>MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cellular glass board</td>
<td>ASTM C552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite boards</td>
<td>ASTM C1289, Type III, IV, V or VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded polystyrene</td>
<td>ASTM C578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extruded polystyrene</td>
<td>ASTM C578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber-reinforced gypsum board</td>
<td>ASTM C1278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass-faced gypsum board</td>
<td>ASTM C1177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral fiber insulation board</td>
<td>ASTM C726</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perlite board</td>
<td>ASTM C728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysiccyanurate board</td>
<td>ASTM C1289, Type I or II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood fiberboard</td>
<td>ASTM C208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECTION 1509**

**RADIANT BARRIERS INSTALLED ABOVE DECK**

**1509.1 General.** A radiant barrier installed above a deck shall comply with Sections 1509.2 through 1509.4.

**1509.2 Fire testing.** Radiant barriers shall be permitted for use above decks where the radiant barrier is covered with an approved roof covering and the system consisting of the radiant barrier and the roof covering complies with the requirements of either FM 4550 or UL 1256.

**1509.3 Installation.** The low emittance surface of the radiant barrier shall face the continuous airspace between the radiant barrier and the roof covering.

**1509.4 Material standards.** A radiant barrier installed above a deck shall comply with ASTM C1313/1313M.

**SECTION 1510**

**ROOFTOP STRUCTURES**

**1510.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the construction of rooftop structures.

**1510.2 Penthouses.** Penthouses in compliance with Sections 1510.2.1 through 1510.2.5 shall be considered as a portion of the story directly below the roof deck on which such penthouses are located. All other penthouses shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

**1510.2.1 Height above roof deck.** Penthouses constructed on buildings of other than Type I construction shall not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in height above the roof deck as measured to the highest point of the roof of the penthouse.

Exceptions:

1. Where used to enclose tanks or elevators that travel to the roof level, penthouses shall be permitted to have a maximum height of 28 feet (8534 mm) above the roof deck.
2. Penthouses located on the roof of buildings of Type I construction shall not be limited in height.

**1510.2.2 Area limitation.** The aggregate area of penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck. Such penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not be required to be included in determining the building area or number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of such penthouses shall not be included in determining the fire area specified in Section 901.7.

**1510.2.3 Use limitations.** Penthouses shall not be used for purposes other than the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment, tanks, or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly.

**1510.2.4 Weather protection.** Provisions such as louvers, louver blades or flashing shall be made to protect the mechanical and electrical equipment, tanks, or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly.

**1510.2.5 Type of construction.** Penthouses shall be constructed with walls, floors and roofs as required for the type of construction of the building on which such penthouses are built.

Exceptions:

1. On buildings of Type I construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
2. On buildings of Type I construction two stories or less in height above grade plane or of Type II
construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 602 and be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating. Interior framing and walls shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood.

3. On buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 602. On buildings of Type III, IV or VA construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be of Type IV or noncombustible construction or fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.

1510.3 Tanks. Tanks having a capacity of more than 500 gallons (1893 L) located on the roof deck of a building shall be supported on masonry, reinforced concrete, steel or Type IV or V construction provided that, where such supports are located in supported on masonry, reinforced concrete, steel or Type IV or V construction (1893 L) located on the roof deck of a building shall be resistance rated as required for Type IA construction.

1510.3.2 Location. Tanks shall not be placed over or near a stairway or an elevator shaft, unless there is a solid roof or floor underneath the tank.

1510.3.3 Tank cover. Unenclosed roof tanks shall have covers sloping toward the perimeter of the tanks.

1510.4 Cooling towers. Cooling towers located on the roof deck of a building and greater than 250 square feet (23.2 m²) in base area or greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the cooling tower, where the roof is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade plane shall be constructed of non-combustible materials. The base area of cooling towers shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck.

Exception: Drip boards and the enclosing construction shall be permitted to be of wood not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, provided the wood is covered on the exterior of the tower with noncombustible material.

1510.5 Towers, spires, domes and cupolas. Towers, spires, domes and cupolas shall be of a type of construction having fire-resistance ratings not less than required for the building on top of which such tower, spire, dome or cupola is built. Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 85 feet (25 908 mm) in height above grade plane as measured to the highest point on such structures, and either greater than 200 square feet (18.6 m²) in horizontal area or used for any purpose other than a belfry or an architectural embellishment, shall be constructed of and supported on Type I or II construction.

1510.5.1 Noncombustible construction required. Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above the highest point at which such structure contacts the roof as measured to the highest point on such structure, or that exceeds 200 square feet (18.6 m²) in area at any horizontal section, or which is intended to be used for any purpose other than a belfry or architectural embellishment, or is located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (1524 mm) in building height shall be constructed of and supported by noncombustible materials and shall be separated from the building below by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1.5 hours with openings protected in accordance with Section 711. Such structures located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in building height shall be supported by noncombustible construction.

1510.5.2 Towers and spires. Enclosed towers and spires shall have exterior walls constructed as required for the building on top of which such towers and spires are built. The roof covering of spires shall be not less than the same class of roof covering required for the building on top of which the spire is located.

1510.6 Mechanical equipment screens. Mechanical equipment screens shall be constructed of the materials specified for the exterior walls in accordance with the type of construction of the building. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), mechanical equipment screens shall not be required to comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements.

1510.6.1 Height limitations. Mechanical equipment screens shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

Exceptions:

1. Where located on buildings of Type IA construction, the height of mechanical equipment screens shall not be limited.

2. Where used to screen elevators that travel to the roof level, mechanical equipment screens shall not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in height above the roof deck as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

1510.6.2 Type I, II, III and IV construction. Regardless of the requirements in Section 1510.6, mechanical equipment screens that are located on the roof decks of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction shall be permitted
to be constructed of combustible materials in accordance with any one of the following limitations:

1. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the height of the mechanical equipment screen above the roof deck shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

2. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation.

3. Where exterior wall covering panels are used, the panels shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use, with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The panels shall be tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with, and shall comply with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285 and shall be installed as tested. Where the panels are tested as part of an exterior wall assembly in accordance with NFPA 285, the panels shall be installed on the face of the mechanical equipment screen supporting structure in the same manner as they were installed on the tested exterior wall assembly.

1510.6.3 Type V construction. The height of mechanical equipment screens located on the roof decks of buildings of Type V construction, as measured from grade plane to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen, shall be permitted to exceed the maximum building height allowed for the building by other provisions of this code where complying with any one of the following limitations, provided the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm):

1. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the height above grade plane of the mechanical equipment screen shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) more than the maximum building height allowed;

2. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of noncombustible materials;

3. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation; or

4. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

1510.7 Photovoltaic panels and modules. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be designed in accordance with this section.

1510.7.1 Wind resistance. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be designed for component and cladding wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 using an effective wind area based on the dimensions of a single unit frame.

1510.7.2 Fire classification. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall have the fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.9.

1510.7.3 Installation. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

1510.7.4 Photovoltaic panels and modules. Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

1510.8 Other rooftop structures. Rooftop structures not regulated by Sections 1510.2 through 1510.7 shall comply with Sections 1510.8.1 through 1510.8.5, as applicable.

1510.8.1 Aerial supports. Aerial supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

Exception: Aerial supports not greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) in height as measured from the roof deck to the highest point on the aerial supports shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials.

1510.8.2 Bulkheads. Bulkheads used for the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly shall comply with Section 1510.2 as penthouses. Bulkheads used for any other purpose shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

1510.8.3 Dormers. Dormers shall be of the same type of construction as required for the roof in which such dormers are located or the exterior walls of the building.

1510.8.4 Fences. Fences and similar structures shall comply with Section 1510.6 as mechanical equipment screens.

1510.8.5 Flagpoles. Flagpoles and similar structures shall not be required to be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall not be limited in height or number.

1510.9 Structural fire resistance. The structural frame and roof construction supporting imposed loads upon the roof by any rooftop structure shall comply with the requirements of Table 601. The fire-resistance reduction permitted by Table 601, Note a, shall not apply to roofs containing rooftop structures.

SECTION 1511 REROOFING

1511.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15.

Exceptions:

1. Roof replacement or roof recover of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be required to meet
the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.

2. Recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not be required to meet the requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers in Section 1503.4 for roofs that provide for positive roof drainage. For the purposes of this exception, existing secondary drainage or scupper systems required in accordance with this code shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or scuppers designed and installed in accordance with Section 1503.4.

1511.2 Structural and construction loads. Structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof-covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the system.

1511.3 Roof replacement. Roof replacement shall include the removal of all existing layers of roof coverings down to the roof deck.

Exception: Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 1507.

1511.3.1 Roof recover. The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer’s approved instructions.

2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof panel systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building’s structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.

3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section 1511.4.

4. The application of a new protective coating over an existing spray polyurethane foam roofing system shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof coverings.

1511.3.1 Exceptions. A roof recover shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.

2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.

3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.
CHAPTER 16
STRUCTURAL DESIGN

SECTION 1601
GENERAL

1601.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the structural design of buildings, structures and portions thereof regulated by this code.

SECTION 1602
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS

1602.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN.
DEAD LOADS.
DESIGN STRENGTH.
DIAPHRAGM.
   Diaphragm, blocked.
   Diaphragm boundary.
   Diaphragm chord.
ESSENTIAL FACILITIES.
FABRIC PARTITION.
FACTORED LOAD.
HELIPAD.
ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE.
IMPACT LOAD.
LIMIT STATE.
LIVE LOAD.
LIVE LOAD (ROOF).
LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD).
LOAD EFFECTS.
LOAD FACTOR.
LOADS.
NOMINAL LOADS.
OTHER STRUCTURES.
PANEL (PART OF A STRUCTURE).
RESISTANCE FACTOR.
RISK CATEGORY.
STRENGTH, NOMINAL.
STRENGTH, REQUIRED.
STRENGTH DESIGN.
SUSCEPTIBLE BAY.
VEHICLE BARRIER.
NOTATIONS.

\( A_r \) = wind area in accordance with Chapters 26 through 30 of ASCE 7.
\( D \) = Dead load.
\( D_i \) = Weight of ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.
\( E \) = Combined effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake induced forces as defined in Section 12.4.2 of ASCE 7.
\( F \) = Load due to fluids with well-defined pressures and maximum heights.
\( F_a \) = Flood load in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7.
\( H \) = Load due to lateral earth pressures, ground water pressure or pressure of bulk materials.
\( L \) = Roof live load greater than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m²) and floor live load.
\( L_r \) = Roof live load of 20 psf (0.96 kN/m²) or less.
\( R \) = Rain load.
\( S \) = Snow load.
\( T \) = Self-straining load.
\( V_{asd} \) = Nominal design wind speed (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) where applicable.
\( V_{ult} \) = Ultimate design wind speeds (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) determined from Figure 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2), 1609.3(3) or ASCE 7.
\( W \) = Load due to wind pressure.
\( W_i \) = Wind-on-ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 1603
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

1603.1 General. Construction documents shall show the size, section and relative locations of structural members with floor levels, column centers and offsets dimensioned. The design loads and other information pertinent to the structural design required by Sections 1603.1.1 through 1603.1.8 shall be indicated on the construction documents.

Exception: Construction documents for buildings constructed in accordance with the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308 shall indicate the following structural design information:

1. Floor and roof live loads.
2. Ground snow load, \( P_s \).
3. Ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \) (3-second gust), miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) and nominal design wind speed, \( V_{asd} \) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 and wind exposure.
4. Seismic design category and site class.
5. Flood design data, if located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3.
6. Design load-bearing values of soils.

1603.1.1 Floor live load. The uniformly distributed, concentrated and impact floor live load used in the design shall be indicated for floor areas. Use of live load reduction in accordance with Section 1607.10 shall be indicated for each type of live load used in the design.

1603.1.2 Roof live load. The roof live load used in the design shall be indicated for roof areas (Section 1607.12).

1603.1.3 Roof snow load data. The ground snow load, $P_g$, shall be indicated. In areas where the ground snow load, $P_g$ exceeds 10 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.479 kN/m²), the following additional information shall also be provided, regardless of whether snow loads govern the design of the roof:
   1. Flat-roof snow load, $P_f$.
   2. Snow exposure factor, $C_e$.
   3. Snow load importance factor, $I_s$.
   4. Thermal factor, $C_t$.
   5. Drift surcharge load(s), $P_d$, where the sum of $P_d$ and $P_f$ exceeds 20 psf (0.96 kN/m²).
   6. Width of snow drift(s), $w$.

1603.1.3.1 Roof drift on existing structures. It shall be the responsibility of the owner undertaking work on its premises to determine the impact of that work on the roof snow load of any adjacent existing structure(s). The following information shall be provided in any permit application for a new or altered building:
   1. The increased snow load on the roof of adjacent existing structure(s), if any, due to the proposed work.
   2. Information sufficient to show whether the roof of any adjacent structure can safely support any additional drift load caused by the work.
   3. A plan to strengthen the roof of any adjacent structure so that it is able to support the new snow loads caused by the work.

Exception: Items 2 and 3 are not required where:
   1. The proposed work will not increase the snow load on the roof of the adjacent structure above 30 psf; and
   2. The owner of the existing adjacent structure denies access to the owner undertaking the proposed work to inspect and measure the roof joists with ceiling access to determine whether the roof of the existing adjacent structure can support any additional snow drift loads caused by the work, and the owner undertaking the proposed work provides evidence of such denial in accordance with Section 3307.5.2.

1603.1.4 Wind design data. The following information related to wind loads shall be shown, regardless of whether wind loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:
   1. Ultimate design wind speed, $V_{ult}$ (3-second gust), miles per hour (km/hr) and nominal design wind speed, $V_{nom}$, as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.
   2. Risk category.
   3. Wind exposure. Applicable wind direction if more than one wind exposure is utilized.
   4. Applicable internal pressure coefficient.
   5. Design wind pressures to be used for exterior component and cladding materials not specifically designed by the registered design professional responsible for the design of the structure, psf (kN/m²).

1603.1.5 Earthquake design data. The following information related to seismic loads shall be shown, regardless of whether seismic loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:
   1. Risk category.
   2. Seismic importance factor, $I_e$.
   4. Site class.
   5. Design spectral response acceleration parameters, $S_{dx}$ and $S_{dy}$.
   6. Seismic design category.
   7. Basic seismic force-resisting system(s).
   8. Design base shear(s).
   9. Seismic response coefficient(s), $CS$.
   10. Response modification coefficient(s), $R$.
   11. Analysis procedure used.

1603.1.6 Geotechnical information. The design load-bearing values of soils shall be shown on the construction documents.

1603.1.7 Flood design data. For buildings located in whole or in part in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the documentation pertaining to design, if required in Section 1612.5, shall be included and the following information, referenced to the datum on the community’s Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), shall be shown, regardless of whether flood loads govern the design of the building:
   1. Flood design class assigned according to ASCE 24.
   2. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation of the proposed lowest floor, including the basement.
   3. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation to which any nonresidential building will be dry floodproofed.
4. In coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, the proposed elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member of the lowest floor, including the basement.

1603.1.8 Special loads. Special loads that are applicable to the design of the building, structure or portions thereof shall be indicated along with the specified section of this code that addresses the special loading condition.

1603.1.8.1 Photovoltaic panel systems. The dead load of rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems, including rack support systems, shall be indicated on the construction documents.

1603.1.8.2 Superimposed dead loads. The assumed superimposed dead loads including, but not limited to, hung ceilings, mechanical, electrical, and plumbing equipment shall be indicated on the construction documents.

SECTION 1604
GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1604.1 General. Building, structures and parts thereof shall be designed and constructed in accordance with strength design, load and resistance factor design, allowable stress design, empirical design or conventional construction methods, as permitted by the applicable material chapters.

1604.2 Strength. Buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the factored loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate strength limit states for the materials of construction. Alternatively, buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the nominal loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate specified allowable stresses for the materials of construction.

Loads and forces for occupancies or uses not covered in this chapter shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

### TABLE 1604.3
DEFLECTION LIMITS³

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>L or W¹</th>
<th>S or W¹</th>
<th>D + L⁴⁺</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roof members:²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting plaster or stucco ceiling</td>
<td>L/360</td>
<td>L/360</td>
<td>L/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting nonplaster ceiling</td>
<td>L/240</td>
<td>L/240</td>
<td>L/180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not supporting ceiling</td>
<td>L/180</td>
<td>L/180</td>
<td>L/120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor members</td>
<td>L/360</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior walls:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With plaster or stucco finishes</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/360</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With other brittle finishes</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/240</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With flexible finishes</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/120</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior partitions:²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With plaster or stucco finishes</td>
<td>L/360</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With other brittle finishes</td>
<td>L/240</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With flexible finishes</td>
<td>L/120</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm buildings</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenhouses</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>L/120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For structural roofing and siding made of formed metal sheets, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/60. For secondary roof structural members supporting formed metal roofing, the live load deflection shall not exceed L/150. For secondary wall members supporting formed metal siding, the design wind load deflection shall not exceed L/90. For roofs, this exception only applies when the metal sheets have no roof covering.

b. Flexible, folding and portable partitions are not governed by the provisions of this section. The deflection criterion for interior partitions is based on the horizontal load defined in Section 1607.14.

c. See Section 2403 for glass supports.

d. The deflection limit for the D+L load combination only applies to the deflection due to the creep component of long-term dead load deflection plus the short-term live load deflection. For wood structural members that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection shall be permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from 0.5D. For wood structural members at all other moisture conditions, the creep component of the long-term deflection is permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from D. The value of 0.5D shall not be used in combination with ANSI/AWC NDS provisions for long-term loading.

e. The above deflections do not ensure against ponding. Roofs that do not have sufficient slope or camber to ensure adequate drainage shall be investigated for ponding. See Section 1611 for rain and ponding requirements and Section 1503.4 for roof drainage requirements.

f. The wind load is permitted to be taken as 0.42 times the “component and cladding” loads for the purpose of determining deflection limits herein. Where members support glass in accordance with Section 2403 using the deflection limit therein, the wind load shall be no less than 0.6 times the “component and cladding” loads for the purpose of determining deflection.

g. For steel structural members, the dead load shall be taken as zero.

h. For aluminum structural members or aluminum panels used in skylights and sloped glazing framing, roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers not supporting edge of glass or aluminum sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/175 for each glass lite or L/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For aluminum sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed L/120.

i. For cantilever members, L shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

---

² See Section 1603.1.8.2 for additional requirements.

³ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

⁴ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

⁵ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

⁶ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

⁷ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

⁸ For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
1604.3 Serviceability. Structural systems and members thereof shall be designed to have adequate stiffness to limit deflections and lateral drift. See Section 12.12.1 of ASCE 7 for drift limits applicable to earthquake loading.

1604.3.1 Deflections. The deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of Sections 1604.3.2 through 1604.3.5 or that permitted by Table 1604.3.

1604.3.2 Reinforced concrete. The deflection of reinforced concrete structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 318.

1604.3.3 Steel. The deflection of steel structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AISC 360, AISI S100, ASCE 8, SJI CJ, SJI JG, SJI K or SJI LH/DLH, as applicable.

1604.3.4 Masonry. The deflection of masonry structural members shall not exceed that permitted by TMS 402/ACI 530/ACI 5.

1604.3.5 Aluminum. The deflection of aluminum structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AA ADM1.

1604.3.6 Limits. The deflection limits of Section 1604.3.1 shall be used unless more restrictive deflection limits are required by a referenced standard for the element or finish material.

1604.4 Analysis. Load effects on structural members and their connections shall be determined by methods of structural analysis that take into account equilibrium, general stability, geometric compatibility and both short- and long-term material properties.

Members that tend to accumulate residual deformations under repeated service loads shall have included in their analysis the added eccentricities expected to occur during their service life.

Any system or method of construction to be used shall be based on a rational analysis in accordance with well-established principles of mechanics. Such analysis shall result in a system that provides a complete load path capable of transferring loads from their point of origin to the load-resisting elements.

The total lateral force shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system in proportion to their rigidities, considering the rigidity of the horizontal bracing system or diaphragm. Rigid elements assumed not to be a part of the lateral force-resisting system are permitted to be incorporated into buildings provided their effect on the action of the system is considered and provided for in the design. A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of story shear and torsional moment when the lateral deformation of the diaphragm is less than or equal to two times the average story drift. Where required by ASCE 7, provisions shall be made for the increased forces induced on resisting elements of the structural system resulting from torsion due to eccentricity between the center of application of the lateral forces and the center of rigidity of the lateral force-resisting system.

Every structure shall be designed to resist the overturning effects caused by the lateral forces specified in this chapter. See Section 1609 for wind loads, Section 1610 for lateral soil loads and Section 1613 for earthquake loads.

1604.5 Risk category. Each building and structure shall be assigned a risk category in accordance with Table 1604.5.

Where a referenced standard specifies an occupancy category, the risk category shall not be taken as lower than the occupancy category specified therein. Where a referenced standard specifies that the assignment of a risk category be in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1, Table 1604.5 shall be used in lieu of ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1.

1604.5.1 Multiple occupancies. Where a building or structure is occupied by two or more occupancies not included in the same risk category, it shall be assigned the classification of the highest risk category corresponding to the various occupancies. Where buildings or structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a separated portion of a building or structure provides required access to, required egress from or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher risk category, both portions shall be assigned to the higher risk category.

1604.6 In-situ load tests. The building official is authorized to require an engineering analysis or a load test, or both, of any construction whenever there is reason to question the safety of the construction for the intended occupancy. Engineering analysis and load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.

1604.7 Preconstruction load tests. Materials and methods of construction that are not capable of being designed by approved engineering analysis or that do not comply with the applicable referenced standards, or alternative test procedures in accordance with Section 1707, shall be load tested in accordance with Section 1719.

1604.8 Anchorage. Buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be provided with anchorage in accordance with Sections 1604.8.1 through 1604.8.3, as applicable.

1604.8.1 General. Anchorage of the roof to walls and columns, and of walls and columns to foundations, shall be provided to resist the uplift and sliding forces that result from the application of the prescribed loads.

1604.8.2 Structural walls. Walls that provide vertical load-bearing resistance or lateral shear resistance for a portion of the structure shall be anchored to the roof and to all floors and members that provide lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall. The connections shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in Section 1.4.5 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A and to Section 12.11 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to all other seismic design categories. Required anchors in masonry walls of hollow units or cavity walls shall be embedded in a reinforced grouted structural element of the wall. See Sections 1609 for wind design requirements and 1613 for earthquake design requirements.
1604.8.3 Decks. Where supported by attachment to an exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting. Connections of decks with cantilevered framing members to exterior walls or other framing members shall be designed for both of the following:

1. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on all portions of the deck.

2. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load

---

### TABLE 1604.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RISK CATEGORY</th>
<th>NATURE OF OCCUPANCY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I             | Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to:  
  • Agricultural facilities.  
  • Certain temporary facilities.  
  • Minor storage facilities. |
| II            | Buildings and other structures except those listed in Risk Categories I, III and IV. |
| III           | Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to:  
  • Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300.  
  • Buildings and other structures containing Group E occupancies with an occupant load greater than 250.  
  • Buildings and other structures containing educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade with an occupant load greater than 500.  
  • Group I-2 occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more resident care recipients but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities.  
  • Group I-3 occupancies.  
  • Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000.a |
| IV            | Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to:  
  • Group I-2 occupancies having surgery or emergency treatment facilities.  
  • Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages.  
  • Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters.  
  • Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response.  
  • Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category IV structures.  
  • Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that:  
    Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the Fire Code; and  
    Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.b  
  • Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars.  
  • Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions.  
  • Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression. |

---

a. For purposes of occupant load calculation, occupancies required by Table 1004.1.2 to use gross floor area calculations shall be permitted to use net floor areas to determine the total occupant load.

b. Where approved by the building official, the classification of buildings and other structures as Risk Category III or IV based on their quantities of toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is permitted to be reduced to Risk Category II, provided it can be demonstrated by a hazard assessment in accordance with Section 1.5.3 of ASCE 7 that a release of the toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is not sufficient to pose a threat to the public.
specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck, and no live load or snow load on the remaining portion of the deck.

1604.9 Counteracting structural actions. Structural members, systems, components and cladding shall be designed to resist forces due to earthquakes and wind, with consideration of overturning, sliding and uplift. Continuous load paths shall be provided for transmitting these forces to the foundation. Where sliding is used to isolate the elements, the effects of friction between sliding elements shall be included as a force.

1604.10 Wind and seismic detailing. Lateral force-resisting systems shall meet seismic detailing requirements and limitations prescribed in this code and ASCE 7, excluding Chapter 14 and Appendix 11A, even when wind load effects are greater than seismic load effects.

SECTION 1605 LOAD COMBINATIONS

1605.1 General. Buildings and other structures and portions thereof shall be designed to resist:

1. The load combinations specified in Section 1605.2, 1605.3.1 or 1605.3.2;
2. The load combinations specified in Chapters 18 through 23; and
3. The seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 of ASCE 7 where required by Section 12.2.5.2, 12.3.3.3 or 12.10.2.1 of ASCE 7. With the simplified procedure of ASCE 7 Section 12.14, the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 shall be used.

Applicable loads shall be considered, including both earthquake and wind, in accordance with the specified load combinations. Each load combination shall also be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.

Where the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 12.4.3.2 of ASCE 7 apply, they shall be used as follows:

1. The basic combinations for strength design with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-5 and 16-7 in Section 1605.2.
2. The basic combinations for allowable stress design with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-12, 16-14 and 16-16 in Section 1605.3.1.
3. The basic combinations for allowable stress design with overstrength factor in lieu of Equations 16-21 and 16-22 in Section 1605.3.2.

1605.1.1 Stability. Regardless of which load combinations are used to design for strength, where overall structure stability (such as stability against overturning, sliding, or buoyancy) is being verified, use of the load combinations specified in Section 1605.2 or 1605.3 shall be permitted. Where the load combinations specified in Section 1605.2 are used, strength reduction factors applicable to soil resistance shall be provided by a registered design professional. The stability of retaining walls shall be verified in accordance with Section 1807.2.3.

1605.2 Load combinations using strength design or load and resistance factor design. Where strength design or load and resistance factor design is used, buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be designed to resist the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations of factored loads:

\[ 1.4(D + F) \]  
\[ 1.2(D + F) + 1.6(L + H) + 0.5(L, or S or R) \]  
\[ 1.2(D + F) + 1.6(L, or S or R) + 1.6H + (f_1L, or 0.5W) \]  
\[ 1.2(D + F) + 1.0W + f_1L + 1.6H + 0.5(L, or S or R) \]  
\[ 1.2(D + F) + 1.0E + f_1L + 1.6H + f_2S \]  
\[ 0.9D + 1.0W + 1.6H \]  
\[ 0.9(D + F) + 1.0E + 1.6H \]

where:

- \( f_1 = 1 \) for places of public assembly live loads in excess of 100 pounds per square foot (4.79 kN/m²), and parking garages; and 0.5 for other live loads.
- \( f_2 = 0.7 \) for roof configurations (such as saw tooth) that do not shed snow off the structure, and 0.2 for other roof configurations.

Exceptions:

1. Where other factored load combinations are specifically required by other provisions of this code, such combinations shall take precedence.
2. Where the effect of \( H \) resists the primary variable load effect, a load factor of 0.9 shall be included with \( H \) where \( H \) is permanent and \( H \) shall be set to zero for all other conditions.

1605.2.1 Other loads. Where flood loads, \( F_{st} \), are to be considered in the design, the load combinations of Section 2.3.3 of ASCE 7 shall be used. Where self-straining loads, \( T \), are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.3.5 of ASCE 7. Where an ice-sensitive structure is subjected to loads due to atmospheric icing, the load combinations of Section 2.3.4 of ASCE 7 shall be considered.

1605.3 Load combinations using allowable stress design.

1605.3.1 Basic load combinations. Where allowable stress design (working stress design), as permitted by this code, is used, structures and portions thereof shall resist
the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations of loads:

\[
D + F \quad \text{(Equation 16-8)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + L \quad \text{(Equation 16-9)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + (L, \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad \text{(Equation 16-10)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + 0.75(L) + 0.75(L, \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad \text{(Equation 16-11)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + (0.6W \text{ or } 0.7E) \quad \text{(Equation 16-12)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + 0.75(0.6W) + 0.75L + 0.75(L, \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad \text{(Equation 16-13)}
\]

\[
D + H + F + 0.75 (0.7E) + 0.75 L + 0.75 S \quad \text{(Equation 16-14)}
\]

\[
0.6D + 0.6W + H \quad \text{(Equation 16-15)}
\]

\[
0.6(D + F) + 0.7E + H \quad \text{(Equation 16-16)}
\]

**Exceptions:**

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live load or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.

2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) or less and roof live loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

3. Where the effect of \( H \) resists the primary variable load effect, a load factor of 0.6 shall be included with \( H \) where \( H \) is permanent and \( H \) shall be set to zero for all other conditions.

4. In Equation 16-15, the wind load, \( W \), is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Exception 2 of Section 2.4.1 of ASCE 7.

5. In Equation 16-16, 0.6 \( D \) is permitted to be increased to 0.9 \( D \) for the design of special reinforced masonry shear walls complying with Chapter 21.

**1605.3.1 Stress increases.** Increases in allowable stresses specified in the appropriate material chapter or the referenced standards shall not be used with the load combinations of Section 1605.3.1, except that increases shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 23.

**1605.3.2 Other loads.** Where flood loads, \( F_s \), are to be considered in design, the load combinations of Section 2.4.2 of ASCE 7 shall be used. Where self-straining loads, \( T \), are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.4.4 of ASCE 7. Where an ice-sensitive structure is subjected to loads due to atmospheric icing, the load combinations of Section 2.4.3 of ASCE 7 shall be considered.

**1605.3.2 Alternative basic load combinations.** In lieu of the basic load combinations specified in Section 1605.3.1, structures and portions thereof shall be permitted to be designed for the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations. When using these alternative basic load combinations that include wind or seismic loads, allowable stresses are permitted to be increased or load combinations reduced where permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards. For load combinations that include the counteracting effects of dead and wind loads, only two-thirds of the minimum dead load likely to be in place during a design wind event shall be used. When using allowable stresses that have been increased or load combinations that have been reduced as permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards, where wind loads are calculated in accordance with Chapters 26 through 31 of ASCE 7, the coefficient \( (\omega) \) in the following equations shall be taken as 1.3. For other wind loads, \( (\omega) \) shall be taken as 1.

When allowable stresses have not been increased or load combinations have not been reduced as permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards, \( (\omega) \) shall be taken as 1. When using these alternative load combinations to evaluate sliding, overturning and soil bearing at the soil-structure interface, the reduction of foundation overturning from Section 12.13.4 in ASCE 7 shall not be used. When using these alternative basic load combinations for proportioning foundations for loadings, which include seismic loads, the vertical seismic load effect, \( E_s \), in Equation 12.4.4 of ASCE 7 is permitted to be taken equal to zero.

\[
D + L + (L, \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad \text{(Equation 16-17)}
\]

\[
D + L + 0.6 \omega W \quad \text{(Equation 16-18)}
\]

\[
D + L + 0.6 \omega W + S/2 \quad \text{(Equation 16-19)}
\]

\[
D + L + S + 0.6 \omega W/2 \quad \text{(Equation 16-20)}
\]

\[
D + L + S + E/1.4 \quad \text{(Equation 16-21)}
\]

\[
0.9D + E/1.4 \quad \text{(Equation 16-22)}
\]

**Exceptions:**

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.

2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) or less and roof live loads of 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

**1605.3.2.1 Other loads.** Where \( F, H \) or \( T \) are to be considered in the design, each applicable load shall be added to the combinations specified in Section 1605.3.2. Where self-straining loads, \( T \), are considered in design, their structural effects in combination with other loads shall be determined in accordance with Section 2.4.4 of ASCE 7.

**SECTION 1606 DEAD LOADS**

**1606.1 General.** Dead loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code. Dead loads shall be considered permanent loads.
1606.2 Design dead load. For purposes of design, the actual weights of materials of construction and fixed service equipment shall be used. In the absence of definite information, values used shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

SECTION 1607
LIVE LOADS

1607.1 General. Live loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code.

1607.2 Loads not specified. For occupancies or uses not designated in Table 1607.1, the live load shall be determined in accordance with a method approved by the building official.

1607.3 Uniform live loads. The live loads used in the design of buildings and other structures shall be the maximum loads expected by the intended use or occupancy, but shall in no case be less than the minimum uniformly distributed live loads given in Table 1607.1.

**Exception:** In the alteration of buildings erected before July 1, 1925, the engineer of record is authorized to apply a maximum reduction of 30 percent of the specified minimum live loads in Table 1607.1 for live loads above 40 psf (1.92 kN/m²), provided that official live load placards are posted on the public areas of the affected floors showing this reduced live load. Live loads shall not be reduced to less than 40 psf.

1607.4 Concentrated live loads. Floors and other similar surfaces shall be designed to support the uniformly distributed live loads prescribed in Section 1607.3 or the concentrated live loads, given in Table 1607.1, whichever produces the greater load effects. Unless otherwise specified, the indicated concentration shall be assumed to be uniformly distributed over an area of 2 1/2 feet by 2 1/2 feet (762 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located so as to produce the maximum load effects in the structural members.

1607.5 Partition loads. In office buildings and in other buildings where partition locations are subject to change, provisions for partition weight shall be made, whether or not partitions are shown on the construction documents, unless the specified live load is 80 psf (3.83 kN/m²) or greater. The partition load shall be not less than a uniformly distributed live load of 15 psf (0.72 kN/m²).

1607.6 Helipads. Helipads shall be designed for the following live loads:

1. A uniform live load, L, as specified below. This load shall not be reduced.

   1.1. 40 psf (1.92 kN/m²) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN) or less.

   1.2. 60 psf (2.87 kN/m²) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight greater than 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN).

---

**TABLE 1607.1**
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, L₀, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY OR USE</th>
<th>UNIFORM (psf)</th>
<th>CONCENTRATED (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Apartments (see residential)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Access floor systems</td>
<td>Office use 50</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computer use 100</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Armories and drill rooms</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Assembly areas</td>
<td>Fixed seats (fastened to floor) 60</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Follow spot, projections and control rooms 50</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lobbies 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Movable seats 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stage floors 150</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Platforms (assembly) 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other assembly areas 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Balconies and decks</td>
<td>Same as occupancy served</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Catwalks</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Cornices</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Corridors</td>
<td>First floor 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other floors Same as occupancy served except as indicated</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Dining rooms and restaurants</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Dwellings (see residential)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Elevator machine room and control room grating (on area of 2 inches by 2 inches)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Finish light floor plate construction (on area of 1 inch by 1 inch)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Fire escapes</td>
<td>On single-family dwellings only 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Top deck of exposed garage 50</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50, plus snow loading in accordance with Section 1608</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trucks and buses See Section 1607.7</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Handrails, guards and grab bars</td>
<td>See Section 1607.8</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Helipads</td>
<td>See Section 1607.6</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Hospitals</td>
<td>Corridors above first floor 80</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operating rooms, laboratories 60</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patient rooms 40</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Hotels (see residential)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Libraries</td>
<td>Corridors above first floor 80</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading rooms 60</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stack rooms 150</td>
<td>1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Manufacturing</td>
<td>Heavy 250</td>
<td>3,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Light 125</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 1607.1—continued
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS, $L_o$, AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY OR USE</th>
<th>UNIFORM (psf)</th>
<th>CONCENTRATED (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21. Marquees, except one- and two-family dwellings</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Office buildings</td>
<td>Corridors above first floor</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>File and computer rooms shall be designed for heavier loads based on anticipated occupancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lobbies and first-floor corridors</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offices</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Penal institutions</td>
<td>Cell blocks</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corridors</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 24. Recreational uses: Bowling alleys, poolrooms and similar uses | 75

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY OR USE</th>
<th>UNIFORM (psf)</th>
<th>CONCENTRATED (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25. Residential</td>
<td>One- and two-family dwellings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uninhabitable attics without storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uninhabitable attics with storage</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Habitable attics and sleeping areas</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canopies, including marquees</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All other areas</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hotels and multifamily dwellings</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Private rooms and corridors serving them</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Public rooms and corridors serving them</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Roofs</td>
<td>All other construction, except one- and two-family dwellings</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs (that are not occupable)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Schools</td>
<td>Classrooms</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corridors above first floor</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First-floor corridors</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Scuttles, skylight ribs and accessible ceilings</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 29. Sidewalks, vehicular driveways and yards, subject to trucking | 250

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OCCUPANCY OR USE</th>
<th>UNIFORM (psf)</th>
<th>CONCENTRATED (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30. Stairs and exits One- and two-family dwellings</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All other</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Storage warehouses (shall be designed for heavier loads if required for anticipated storage) Heavy</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Light</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Stores Retail</td>
<td>First floor</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Upper floors</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wholesale, all floors</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
2. A single concentrated live load, \( L \), of 3,000 pounds (13.35 kN) applied over an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm) and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated load is not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

3. Two single concentrated live loads, \( L \), 8 feet (2438 mm) apart applied on the landing pad (representing the helicopter’s two main landing gear, whether skid type or wheeled type), each having a magnitude of 0.75 times the maximum take-off weight of the helicopter, and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated loads shall be applied over an area of 8 inches by 8 inches (203 mm by 203 mm) and are not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

Landing areas designed for a design basis helicopter with maximum take-off weight of 3,000-pounds (13.35 kN) shall be identified with a 3,000 pound (13.34 kN) weight limitation. The landing area weight limitation shall be indicated by the numeral “3” (kips) located in the bottom right corner of the landing area as viewed from the primary approach path. The indication for the landing area weight limitation shall be a minimum 5 feet (1524 mm) in height.

1607.7 Heavy vehicle loads. Floors and other surfaces that are intended to support vehicle loads greater than a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating shall comply with Sections 1607.7.1 through 1607.7.5.

1607.7.1 Loads. Where any structure does not restrict access for vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, those portions of the structure subject to such loads shall be designed using the vehicular live loads, including consideration of impact and fatigue, in accordance with the codes and specifications required by the jurisdiction having authority for the design and construction of the roadways and bridges in the same location of the structure.

1607.7.2 Fire truck and emergency vehicles. Where a structure or portions of a structure are accessed and loaded by fire department access vehicles and other similar emergency vehicles, the structure shall be designed for the greater of the following loads:

1. The actual operational loads, including outrigger reactions and contact areas of the vehicles as stipulated and approved by the building official; or

2. The live loading specified in Section 1607.7.1.

1607.7.3 Heavy vehicle garages. Garages designed to accommodate vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, shall be designed using the live loading specified by Section 1607.7.1. For garages the design for impact and fatigue is not required.

Exception: The vehicular live loads and load placement are allowed to be determined using the actual vehicle weights for the vehicles allowed onto the garage floors, provided such loads and placement are based on rational engineering principles and are approved by the building official, but shall not be less than 50 psf (2.9 kN/m²). This live load shall not be reduced.

1607.4 Forklifts and movable equipment. Where a structure is intended to have forklifts or other movable equipment present, the structure shall be designed for the total vehicle or equipment load and the individual wheel loads for the anticipated vehicles as specified by the owner of the facility. These loads shall be posted in accordance with Section 1607.7.5.

1607.7.4.1 Impact and fatigue. Impact loads and fatigue loading shall be considered in the design of the supporting structure. For the purposes of design, the vehicle and wheel loads shall be increased by 30 percentage to account for impact.

1607.7.5 Posting. The maximum weight of vehicles allowed into or on a garage or other structure shall be posted by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent in accordance with Section 106.1.

1607.8 Loads on handrails, guards, grab bars, seats and vehicle barriers. Handrails, guards, grab bars, accessible seats, accessible benches and vehicle barriers shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in this section.

1607.8.1 Handrails and guards. Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a linear load of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (0.73 kN/m) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7. Glass handrail assemblies and guards shall also comply with Section 2407.

Exceptions:

1. For one- and two-family dwellings, only the single concentrated load required by Section 1607.8.1.1 shall be applied.

2. In Group I-3, F, H and S occupancies, for areas that are not accessible to the general public and that have an occupant load less than 50, the minimum load shall be 20 pounds per foot (0.29 kN/m).

1607.8.1.1 Concentrated load. Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 200 pounds (0.89 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

1607.8.1.2 Intermediate rails. Intermediate rails (all those except the handrail), balusters and panel fillers shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 50 pounds (0.22 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

1607.8.2 Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats. Grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 pounds (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point on the grab bar or seat so as to produce the maximum load effects.
1607.8.3 Vehicle barriers. Vehicle barriers for passenger vehicles shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 6,000 pounds (26.70 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.3 of ASCE 7. Garages accommodating trucks and buses shall be designed in accordance with an approved method that contains provisions for traffic railings.

1607.9 Impact loads. The live loads specified in Sections 1607.3 through 1607.8 shall be assumed to include adequate allowance for ordinary impact conditions. Provisions shall be made in the structural design for uses and loads that involve unusual vibration and impact forces.

1607.9.1 Elevators. Members, elements and components subject to dynamic loads from elevators shall be designed for impact loads and deflection limits prescribed by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

1607.9.2 Machinery. For the purpose of design, the weight of machinery and moving loads shall be increased as follows to allow for impact: (1) light machinery, shaft- or motor-driven, 20 percent; and (2) reciprocating machinery or power-driven units, 50 percent. Percentages shall be increased where specified by the manufacturer.

1607.9.3 Elements supporting hoists for façade access equipment. In combination with any other applicable live loads, structural elements that support hoists for façade access equipment shall be designed for an ultimate load consisting of the larger of the rated load of the hoist times 4.0, but not less than 5000 pounds (22.2 kN).

1607.9.4 Lifeline anchorages for façade access equipment. In combination with any other applicable live loads, lifeline anchorages and structural elements that support lifeline anchorages shall be designed for an ultimate load of at least 5000 pounds (22.2 kN) for each attached lifeline, in every direction that a fall arrest load may be applied.

1607.10 Reduction in uniform live loads. Except for uniform live loads at roofs, all other minimum uniformly distributed live loads, \( L_o \), in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.1 or 1607.10.2. Uniform live loads at roofs are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.

1607.10.1 Basic uniform live load reduction. Subject to the limitations of Sections 1607.10.1.1 through 1607.10.1.3 and Table 1607.1, members for which a value of \( K_{LL}A_T \) is 400 square feet (37.16 m²) or more are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed live load, \( L \), in accordance with the following equation:

\[
L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right) \quad \text{(Equation 16-23)}
\]

For SI:
\[
L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right)
\]

where:
- \( L \) = Reduced design live load per square foot (m²) of area supported by the member.
- \( L_o \) = Unreduced design live load per square foot (m²) of area supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).

1607.10.1.1 One-way slabs. The tributary area, \( A_T \), for use in Equation 16-23 for one-way slabs shall not exceed an area defined by the slab span times a width normal to the span of 1.5 times the slab span.

1607.10.1.2 Heavy live loads. Live loads that exceed 100 psf (4.79 kN/m²) shall not be reduced.

Exceptions:
1. The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall not be less than \( L \) as calculated in Section 1607.10.1.
2. For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

1607.10.1.3 Passenger vehicle garages. The live loads shall not be reduced in passenger vehicle garages.

Exception: The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent, but the live load shall not be less than \( L \) as calculated in Section 1607.10.1.

1607.10.2 Alternative uniform live load reduction. As an alternative to Section 1607.10.1 and subject to the limitations of Table 1607.1, uniformly distributed live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following provisions. Such reductions shall apply to slab systems, beams, girders, columns, piers, walls and foundations.

1. A reduction shall not be permitted where the live load exceeds 100 psf (4.79 kN/m²) except that the design live load for members supporting two or
more floors is permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent.

**Exception:** For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

2. A reduction shall not be permitted in passenger vehicle parking garages except that the live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by a maximum of 20 percent.

3. For live loads not exceeding 100 psf (4.79 kN/m²), the design live load for any structural member supporting 150 square feet (13.94 m²) or more is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Equation 16-24.

4. For one-way slabs, the area, A, for use in Equation 16-24 shall not exceed the product of the slab span and a width normal to the span of 0.5 times the slab span.

\[ R = 0.08(A - 150) \]  
(Equation 16-24)

For SI: \( R = 0.861(A - 13.94) \)

Such reduction shall not exceed the smallest of:
- 40 percent for members supporting one floor.
- 60 percent for members supporting two or more floors.
- 3. \( R \) as determined by the following equation:

\[ R = 23.1(1 + \frac{D}{L_o}) \]  
(Equation 16-25)

where:
- \( A \) = Area of floor supported by the member, square feet (m²).
- \( D \) = Dead load per square foot (m²) of area supported.
- \( L_o \) = Unreduced live load per square foot (m²) of area supported.
- \( R \) = Reduction in percent.

**1607.11 Distribution of floor loads.** Where uniform floor live loads are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the floor live loads on spans selected to produce the greatest load effect at each location under consideration. Floor live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.

**1607.12 Roof loads.** The structural supports of roofs and marquees shall be designed to resist wind and, where applicable, snow and earthquake loads, in addition to the dead load of construction and the appropriate live loads as prescribed in this section, or as set forth in Table 1607.1. The live loads acting on a sloping surface shall be assumed to act vertically on the horizontal projection of that surface.

### 1607.12.1 Distribution of roof loads.

Where uniform roof live loads are reduced to less than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m²) in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.1 and are applied to the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the reduced roof live load shall be applied to adjacent spans or to alternate spans, whichever produces the most unfavorable load effect. See Section 1607.12.2 for reductions in minimum roof live loads and Section 7.5 of ASCE 7 for partial snow loading.

**1607.12.2 General.** The minimum uniformly distributed live loads of roofs and marquees, \( L_o \), in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.2.1.

**1607.12.2.1 Ordinary roofs, awnings and canopies.** Ordinary flat, pitched and curved roofs, and awnings and canopies other than of fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure, are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed roof live load, \( L_r \), as specified in the following equations or other controlling combinations of loads as specified in Section 1605, whichever produces the greater load effect.

In structures such as greenhouses, where special scaffolding is used as a work surface for workers and materials during maintenance and repair operations, a lower roof load than specified in the following equations shall not be used unless approved by the building official. Such structures shall be designed for a minimum roof live load of 12 psf (0.58 kN/m²).

\[ L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \]  
(Equation 16-26)

where: 12 ≤ \( L_r \) ≤ 20

For SI: \( L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \)

where: 0.58 ≤ \( L_r \) ≤ 0.96

- \( L_o \) = Unreduced roof live load per square foot (m²) of horizontal projection supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).
- \( L_r \) = Reduced roof live load per square foot (m²) of horizontal projection supported by the member.

The reduction factors \( R_1 \) and \( R_2 \) shall be determined as follows:

\[ R_1 = 1 \]  
(Equation 16-27)

\[ R_1 = 1.2 - 0.001A, \text{ for } 200 \text{ square feet} < A < 600 \text{ square feet} \]  
(Equation 16-28)

For SI: \( R_1 = 1.2 - 0.011A, \text{ for } 18.58 \text{ square meters} < A < 55.74 \text{ square meters} \)

\[ R_1 = 0.6 \text{ for } A \geq 600 \text{ square feet} (55.74 \text{ m}^2) \]  
(Equation 16-29)

where:
- \( A \) = Tributary area (span length multiplied by effective width) in square feet (m²) supported by the member, and
1607.12.3 Occupiable roofs. Areas of roofs that are occupiable, such as vegetative roofs, roof gardens or for assembly or other similar purposes, and marquees are permitted to have their uniformly distributed live loads reduced in accordance with Section 1607.10.

1607.12.4 Awnings and canopies. Awnings and canopies shall be designed for uniform live loads as required in Table 1607.1 as well as for snow loads and wind loads as specified in Sections 1608 and 1609.

1607.12.5 Photovoltaic panel systems. Roof structures that provide support for photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1607.12.5.1 through 1607.12.5.4, as applicable.

1607.12.5.1 Roof live load. Roof surfaces to be covered by solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed for the roof live load, \( L_r \), assuming that the photovoltaic panels or modules are not present. The roof photovoltaic live load in areas covered by solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be in addition to the panel loading unless the area covered by each solar photovoltaic panel or module is inaccessible. Areas where the clear space between the panels and the rooftop is not more than 24 inches (610 mm) shall be considered inaccessible. Roof surfaces not covered by photovoltaic panels shall be designed for the roof live load.

1607.12.5.2 Photovoltaic panels or modules. The structure of a roof that supports solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed to accommodate the full solar photovoltaic panels or modules and ballast dead load, including concentrated loads from support frames in combination with the loads from Section 1607.12.5.1 and other applicable loads. Where applicable, snow drift loads created by the photovoltaic panels or modules shall be included.

1607.12.5.3 Photovoltaic panels or modules installed as an independent structure. Solar photovoltaic panels or modules that are independent structures and do not have accessible/occupied space underneath are not required to accommodate a roof photovoltaic live load, provided the area under the structure is restricted to keep the public away. All other loads and combinations in accordance with Section 1605 shall be accommodated.

Solar photovoltaic panels or modules that are designed to be the roof, span to structural supports and have accessible/occupied space underneath shall have the panels or modules and all supporting structures designed to support a roof photovoltaic live load, as defined in Section 1607.12.5.1 in combination with other applicable loads. Solar photovoltaic panels or modules in this application are not permitted to be classified as “not accessible” in accordance with Section 1607.12.5.1.

1607.12.5.4 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems. Roof structures that provide support for ballasted photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed, or analyzed, in accordance with Section 1604.4; checked in accordance with Section 1604.3.6 for deflections; and checked in accordance with Section 1611 for ponding.

1607.13 Crane loads. The crane live load shall be the rated capacity of the crane. Design loads for the runway beams, including connections and support brackets, of moving bridge cranes and monorail cranes shall include the maximum wheel loads of the crane and the vertical, lateral and longitudinal forces induced by the moving crane.

1607.13.1 Maximum wheel load. The maximum wheel loads shall be the wheel loads produced by the weight of the bridge, as applicable, plus the sum of the rated capacity and the weight of the trolley with the trolley positioned on its runway at the location where the resulting load effect is maximum.

1607.13.2 Vertical impact force. The maximum wheel loads of the crane shall be increased by the percentages shown below to determine the induced vertical impact or vibration force:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crane Type</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monorail cranes (powered)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cab-operated or remotely operated bridge cranes (powered)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pendant-operated bridge cranes (powered)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge cranes or monorail cranes with hand-geared bridge, trolley and hoist</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1607.13.3 Lateral force. The lateral force on crane runway beams with electrically powered trolleys shall be calculated as 20 percent of the sum of the rated capacity of the crane and the weight of the hoist and trolley. The lateral force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction perpendicular to the beam, and shall be distributed with due regard to the lateral stiffness of the runway beam and supporting structure.

1607.13.4 Longitudinal force. The longitudinal force on crane runway beams, except for bridge cranes with hand-geared bridges, shall be calculated as 10 percent of the
maximum wheel loads of the crane. The longitudinal force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction parallel to the beam.

1607.14 Interior walls and partitions. Interior walls and partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the loads to which they are subjected but not less than a horizontal load of 5 psf (0.240 kN/m²).

1607.14.1 Fabric partitions. Fabric partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the following load conditions:

1. The horizontal distributed load need only be applied to the partition framing. The total area used to determine the distributed load shall be the area of the fabric face between the framing members to which the fabric is attached. The total distributed load shall be uniformly applied to such framing members in proportion to the length of each member.

2. A concentrated load of 40 pounds (0.176 kN) applied to an 8-inch-diameter (203 mm) area [50.3 square inches (32 452 mm²)] of the fabric face at a height of 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

1607.15 Powered maintenance platforms. The structural supports for powered maintenance platforms shall be designed in accordance with the requirements in 29 CFR 1910 Subpart F Standard 1910.66 (“Powered Platforms for Building Maintenance”) of Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards.

SECTION 1608
SNOW LOADS

1608.1 General. Design snow loads shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 7 of ASCE 7, but the design roof load shall not be less than that determined by Section 1607.

1608.1.1 Snow load for the District of Columbia. The ground snow load for the District of Columbia as shown in Figure 1608.2 shall be a minimum of 25 psf (1.20 kN/m²) plus drifting, or 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) equivalent uniform load, whichever is greater.

1608.2 Ground snow loads. The ground snow loads to be used in determining the design snow loads for roofs shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 or Figure 1608.2 for the contiguous United States and Table 1608.2 for Alaska. Site-specific case studies shall be made in areas designated “CS” in Figure 1608.2. Ground snow loads for sites at elevations above the limits indicated in Figure 1608.2 and for all sites within the CS areas shall be approved. Ground snow load determination for such sites shall be based on an extreme value statistical analysis of data available in the vicinity of the site using a value with a 2-percent annual probability of being exceeded (50-year mean recurrence interval). Snow loads are zero for Hawaii, except in mountainous regions as approved by the building official.

1608.3 Ponding instability. Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Section 7.11 of ASCE 7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT</th>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT</th>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adak</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Galena</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Petersburg</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anchorage</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Gulkana</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>St. Paul Islands</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angoon</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Homer</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Seward</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrow</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Juneau</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Shemya</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barter Island</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Kenai</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Sitka</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bethel</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Kodiak</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Talkeetna</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big Delta</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Kotzebue</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Unalakleet</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold Bay</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>McGrath</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Valdez</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cordova</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Nenana</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Whittier</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairbanks</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Nome</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Wrangell</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Yukon</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Palmer</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Yakutat</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m².
SECTION 1609
WIND LOADS

1609.1 Applications. Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be designed to withstand the minimum wind loads prescribed herein. Decreases in wind loads shall not be made for the effect of shielding by other structures.

1609.1.1 Determination of wind loads. Wind loads on every building or structure shall be determined in accordance with Chapters 26 to 30 of ASCE 7 or provisions of the alternate all-heights method in Section 1609.6. The type of opening protection required, the ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{d,u} \), and the exposure category for a site is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1609 or ASCE 7. Wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction and wind pressures shall be assumed to act normal to the surface considered.

Exceptions:

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, the provisions of ICC 600 shall be permitted for applicable Group R-2 and R-3 buildings.
2. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AWC WFCM.
3. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AISI S230.
5. Designs using TIA-222 for antenna-supporting structures and antennas, provided the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2 escarpments in Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA-222 shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.
6. Wind tunnel tests in accordance with ASCE 49 and Sections 31.4 and 31.5 of ASCE 7.

The wind speeds in Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3) are ultimate design wind speeds, \( V_{d,u} \), and shall be converted in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 to nominal design wind speeds, \( V_{d,n} \), when the provisions of the standards referenced in Exceptions 4 and 5 are used.

1609.1.1.1 Applicability. The provisions of ICC 600 are applicable only to buildings located within Exposure B or C as defined in Section 1609.4. The provisions of ICC 600, AWC WFCM and AISI S230 shall not apply to buildings sited on the upper half of an isolated hill, ridge or escarpment meeting the following conditions:

1. The hill, ridge or escarpment is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or higher; and
2. The maximum average slope of the hill exceeds 10 percent; and
3. The hill, ridge or escarpment is unobstructed upwind by other such topographic features for a distance from the high point of 50 times the height of the hill or 1 mile (1.61 km), whichever is greater.

1609.1.2 Minimum wind loads. The wind loads used in the design of the main windforce-resisting system ultimate load shall not be less than 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) multiplied by the area of the building or structure projected on a vertical plane normal to the wind direction. In the calculation of design ultimate wind loads for components and cladding for buildings, the algebraic sum of the pressures acting on opposite faces shall be taken into account. The design ultimate wind pressure for components and cladding of buildings shall not be less than 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) acting in either direction normal to the surface. The design ultimate wind pressure for open buildings and other structures shall not be less than 30 psf (1.44 kN/m²) multiplied by the area \( A_c \).

Exception: The ultimate wind pressures on tanks, signs, chimneys, stacks, cooling towers, dish antennas, and similar exposed surfaces and their supporting frames shall not be less than 50 psf (2.39 kN/m²) of projected area.

1609.1.2 Protection of openings. In wind-borne debris regions, glazing in buildings shall be impact resistant or protected with an impact-resistant covering meeting the requirements of an approved impact-resistant standard or ASTM E1996 and ASTM E1886 referenced herein as follows:

1. Glazed openings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of the large missile test of ASTM E1996.
2. Glazed openings located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade shall meet the provisions of the small missile test of ASTM E1996.

Exceptions:

1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of \( \frac{1}{16} \) inch (11.1 mm) and maximum panel span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less that are classified as a Group R-3 or R-4 occupancy. Panels shall be precut so that they shall be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method and shall be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the components and cladding loads determined in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 7, with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building. Attachment in accordance with Table 1609.1.2 with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 45 feet (13 716 mm) or less where \( V_{d,u} \) determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 does not exceed 140 mph (63 m/s).
In CS areas, site-specific Case Studies are required to establish ground snow loads. Extreme local variations in ground snow loads in these areas preclude mapping at this scale.

Numbers in parentheses represent the upper elevation limits in feet for the ground snow load values presented below. Site-specific case studies are required to establish ground snow loads at elevations not covered.

To convert lb/sq ft to kN/m², multiply by 0.0479.

To convert feet to meters, multiply by 0.3048.
FIGURE 1608.2—continued
GROUND SNOW LOADS, $p_g$, FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)
 TABLE 1609.1.2 WIND-BORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FASTENER TYPE</th>
<th>FASTENER SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Panel Span ≤ 4 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 8 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 10 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2-inch diameter lag-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

2. Glazing in Risk Category I buildings, including greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access shall be permitted to be unprotected.

3. Glazing in Risk Category II, III or IV buildings located over 60 feet (18 288 mm) above aggregate surface roofs located within 1,500 feet (458 m) of the building shall be permitted to be unprotected.

1609.1.2.2. Application of ASTM E1996. The text of Section 6.2.2 of ASTM E1996 shall be substituted as follows:

6.2.2.3 Wind Zone 3—150 mph (58 m/s) ≤ ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul} \) ≤ 160 mph (63 m/s), or 140 mph (54 m/s) ≤ ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul} \) ≤ 160 mph (63 m/s) and within one mile (1.6 km) of the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.4 Wind Zone 4—ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul} > 160 \) mph (63 m/s).

1609.1.2.3 Garage doors. Garage door glazed opening protection for wind-borne debris shall meet the requirements of an approved impact-resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

1609.2 Definitions. For the purposes of Section 1609 and as used elsewhere in this code, the following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS.

WIND-BORNE DEBRIS REGION.

WIND SPEED, \( V_{ul} \)

WIND SPEED, \( V_{ul}^* \)

1609.3 Ultimate design wind speed. The ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), in mph, for the determination of the wind loads shall be determined by Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3). The ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), for use in the design of Risk Category II buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(1). The ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), for use in the design of Risk Category III and IV buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(2). The ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), for use in the design of Risk Category I buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figure 1609.3(3). The ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), for the special wind regions indicated near mountainous terrain and near gorges shall be in accordance with local jurisdiction requirements. The ultimate design wind speeds, \( V_{ul}^* \), determined by the local jurisdiction shall be in accordance with Section 26.5.1 of ASCE 7.

In nonhurricane-prone regions, when the ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), is estimated from regional climatic data, the ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ul}^* \), shall be determined in accordance with Section 26.5.3 of ASCE 7.

1609.3.1 Wind speed conversion. When required, the ultimate design wind speeds of Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) and 1609.3(3) shall be converted to nominal design wind speeds, \( V_{nul} \) using Table 1609.3.1 or Equation 16-33.

\[
V_{nul} = V_{ul}^* \sqrt{0.6} \quad \text{(Equation 16-33)}
\]

where:

\( V_{ul}^* \) = Nominal design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 4 and 5 of Section 1609.1.1.

\( V_{ul}^* \) = Ultimate design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(2) or 1609.3(3).

1609.4 Exposure category. For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined.
for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features.

1609.4.1 Wind directions and sectors. For each selected wind direction at which the wind loads are to be evaluated, the exposure of the building or structure shall be determined for the two upwind sectors extending 45 degrees (0.79 rad) either side of the selected wind direction. The exposures in these two sectors shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1609.4.2 and 1609.4.3 and the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads shall be used to represent winds from that direction.

1609.4.2 Surface roughness categories. A ground surface roughness within each 45-degree (0.79 rad) sector shall be determined for a distance upwind of the site as defined in Section 1609.4.3 from the categories defined below, for the purpose of assigning an exposure category as defined in Section 1609.4.3.

Surface Roughness B. Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger.

Surface Roughness C. Open terrain with scattered obstructions having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm). This category includes flat open country, and grasslands.

Surface Roughness D. Flat, unobstructed areas and water surfaces. This category includes smooth mud flats, salt flats and unbroken ice.

1609.4.3 Exposure categories. An exposure category shall be determined in accordance with the following:

Exposure B. For buildings with a mean roof height of less than or equal to 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness B, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 1,500 feet (457 m). For buildings with a mean roof height greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where Surface Roughness B prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 2,600 feet (792 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

Exposure C. Exposure C shall apply for all cases where Exposure B or D does not apply.

Exposure D. Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness D, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of at least 5,000 feet (1524 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater. Exposure D shall also apply where the ground surface roughness immediately upwind of the site is B or C, and the site is within a distance of 600 feet (183 m) or 20 times the building height, whichever is greater, from an Exposure D condition as defined in the previous sentence.

1609.5 Roof systems. Roof systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1609.5.1 through 1609.5.3, as applicable.

1609.5.1 Roof deck. The roof deck shall be designed to withstand the wind pressures determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

1609.5.2 Roof coverings. Roof coverings shall comply with Section 1609.5.1.

Exception: Rigid tile roof coverings that are air permeable and installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 are permitted to be designed in accordance with Section 1609.5.3.

Asphalt shingles installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 shall comply with the wind-resistance requirements of Section 1504.1.1.

1609.5.3 Rigid tile. Wind loads on rigid tile roof coverings shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

\[ M_a = \frac{q_h C_L b L L_a}{1,000} \] (Equation 16-34)

where:

\[ b = \text{Exposed width, feet (mm) of the roof tile} \]

\[ C_L = \text{Lift coefficient. The lift coefficient for concrete and clay tile shall be 0.2 or shall be determined by test in accordance with Section 1504.2.1.} \]

\[ GC_p = \text{Roof pressure coefficient for each applicable roof zone determined from Chapter 30 of ASCE 7. Roof coefficients shall not be adjusted for internal pressure.} \]

\[ L = \text{Length, feet (mm) of the roof tile.} \]

\[ L_a = \text{Moment arm, feet (mm) from the axis of rotation to the point of uplift on the roof tile. The point of uplift shall be taken at 0.76L from the head of the tile and the middle of the exposed width. For roof tiles with nails or screws (with or without a tail clip), the axis of rotation shall be taken as the head of the tile for direct deck application or as the top edge of the batten for battened applications. For roof tiles fastened only by a nail or screw along the side of the tile, the axis of rotation shall be determined by testing. For roof tiles installed with battens and fastened only by a clip near the tail of the tile, the moment arm shall be determined about the top edge of the batten with consideration given for the point of rotation of the tiles based on straight bond or broken bond and the tile profile.} \]

\[ M_a = \text{Aerodynamic uplift moment, feet-pounds (N-mm) acting to raise the tail of the tile.} \]

\[ q_h = \text{Wind velocity pressure, psf (kN/m²) determined from Section 27.3.2 of ASCE 7.} \]

Concrete and clay roof tiles complying with the following limitations shall be designed to withstand the aerodynamic uplift moment as determined by this section.
FIGURE 1609.3(1)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, $v_{ult}$ FOR RISK CATEGORY II BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES

Notes:
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Vmph</th>
<th>(m/s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guam</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>(87)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgin Islands</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>(74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Samoa</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>(72)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawaii – Special Wind Region Statewide</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>(58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerto Rico</td>
<td>150(67)</td>
<td>(70(76) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIGURE 1609.3(2)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, $v_{ult}$ FOR RISK CATEGORY III AND IV BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES

Notes:
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (mph) at 33 ft (10m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 3% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.000588, MRI = 1700 Years).
Notes:
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 ft (10 m) above ground for Exposure C category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours is permitted.
3. Islands and coastal areas outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour of the coastal area.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 15% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00333, MRI = 300 Years).

FIGURE 1609.3(3)
ULTIMATE DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, $v_{ult}$, FOR RISK CATEGORY I BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES
1. The roof tiles shall be either loose laid on battens, mechanically fastened, mortar set or adhesive set.
2. The roof tiles shall be installed on solid sheathing that has been designed as components and cladding.
3. An underlayment shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 15.
4. The tile shall be single lapped interlocking with a minimum head lap of not less than 2 inches (51 mm).
5. The length of the tile shall be between 1.0 and 1.75 feet (305 mm and 533 mm).
6. The exposed width of the tile shall be between 0.67 and 1.25 feet (204 mm and 381 mm).
7. The maximum thickness of the tail of the tile shall not exceed 1.3 inches (33 mm).
8. Roof tiles using mortar set or adhesive set systems shall have at least two-thirds of the tile’s area free of mortar or adhesive contact.

1609.6 Alternate all-heights method. The alternate wind design provisions in this section are simplifications of the ASCE 7 Directional Procedure.

1609.6.1 Scope. As an alternative to ASCE 7 Chapters 27 and 30, the following provisions are permitted to be used to determine the wind effects on regularly shaped buildings, or other structures that are regularly shaped, that meet all of the following conditions:

1. The building or other structure is less than or equal to 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height with a height-to-least-width ratio of 4 or less, or the building or other structure has a fundamental frequency greater than or equal to 1 hertz.
2. The building or other structure is not sensitive to dynamic effects.
3. The building or other structure is not located on a site for which channeling effects or buffeting in the wake of upwind obstructions warrant special consideration.
4. The building shall meet the requirements of a simple diaphragm building as defined in ASCE 7 Section 26.2, where wind loads are only transmitted to the main windforce-resisting system (MWFRS) at the diaphragms.
5. For open buildings, multispan gable roofs, stepped roofs, sawtooth roofs, domed roofs, roofs with slopes greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad), solid freestanding walls and solid signs, and rooftop equipment, apply ASCE 7 provisions.

1609.6.1.1 Modifications. The following modifications shall be made to certain subsections in ASCE 7: in Section 1609.6.2, symbols and notations that are specific to this section are used in conjunction with the symbols and notations in ASCE 7 Section 26.3.

1609.6.2 Symbols and notations. Coefficients and variables used in the alternative all-heights method equations are as follows:

- $C_{net} = \text{Net-pressure coefficient based on } K_d \left( G \left( C_p \right) - \left( GC_{pi} \right) \right) \text{, in accordance with Table 1609.6.2.}$
- $G = \text{Gust effect factor for rigid structures in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 26.9.1.}$
- $K_d = \text{Wind directionality factor in accordance with ASCE 7 Table 26-6.}$
- $P_{net} = \text{Design wind pressure to be used in determination of wind loads on buildings or other structures or their components and cladding, in psf (kN/m}^2).$

1609.6.3 Design equations. When using the alternative all-heights method, the MWFRS, and components and cladding of every structure shall be designed to resist the effects of wind pressures on the building envelope in accordance with Equation 16-35.

$$P_{net} = 0.00256 V^2 K_z C_{net} K_{zt} \quad \text{(Equation 16-35)}$$

Design wind forces for the MWFRS shall be not less than 16 psf (0.77 kN/m$^2$) multiplied by the area of the structure projected on a plane normal to the assumed wind direction (see ASCE 7 Section 27.4.7 for criteria). Design net wind pressure for components and cladding shall be not less than 16 psf (0.77 kN/m$^2$) acting in either direction normal to the surface.

1609.6.4 Design procedure. The MWFRS and the components and cladding of every building or other structure shall be designed for the pressures calculated using Equation 16-35.

1609.6.4.1 Main windforce-resisting systems. The MWFRS shall be investigated for the torsional effects identified in ASCE 7 Figure 27.4-8.

1609.6.4.2 Determination of $K_z$ and $K_{zt}$. Velocity pressure exposure coefficient, $K_z$, shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 27.3.1 and the topo-
### TABLE 1609.6.2
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, $C_{net}$ a,b

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>$C_{net}$ FACTOR</th>
<th>Enclosed</th>
<th>Partially enclosed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+ Internal pressure</td>
<td>- Internal pressure</td>
<td>+ Internal pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windward wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls</td>
<td>Windward wall</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leeward wall</td>
<td>-0.51</td>
<td>-0.21</td>
<td>-0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sidewall</td>
<td>-0.66</td>
<td>-0.35</td>
<td>-0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parapet wall</td>
<td>Windward</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leeward</td>
<td>-0.85</td>
<td>-0.85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roofs:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind perpendicular to ridge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leeward roof or flat roof</td>
<td>-0.66</td>
<td>-0.35</td>
<td>-0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windward roof slopes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope &lt; 2:12 (10°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-1.09</td>
<td>-0.79</td>
<td>-1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>-0.28</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>-0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 4:12 (18°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-0.73</td>
<td>-0.42</td>
<td>-1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>-0.05</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>-0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 5:12 (23°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-0.58</td>
<td>-0.28</td>
<td>-0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>-0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 6:12 (27°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-0.47</td>
<td>-0.16</td>
<td>-0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>-0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 7:12 (30°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-0.37</td>
<td>-0.06</td>
<td>-0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>-0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 9:12 (37°) Condition 1</td>
<td>-0.27</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>-0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Condition 2</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>-0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope = 12:12 (45°)</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>-0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wind parallel to ridge and flat roofs</td>
<td>-1.09</td>
<td>-0.79</td>
<td>-1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonbuilding Structures: Chimneys, Tanks and Similar Structures:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>h/D</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Square (Wind normal to face)</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>1.53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Square (Wind on diagonal)</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hexagonal or octagonal</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open signs and lattice frameworks</td>
<td>Ratio of solid to gross area</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 1609.6.2—continued

**Net Pressure Coefficients, \( C_{net} \)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure or Part Thereof</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Enclosed</th>
<th>Partially enclosed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Components and cladding not in areas of discontinuity—roofs and overhangs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roof elements and slopes</strong></td>
<td>Gable of hipped configurations (Zone 1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 6:12 ((27^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.00</td>
<td>-1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-0.92</td>
<td>-1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overhang: Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 6:12 ((27^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2A Zone 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monosloped configurations (Zone 1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 7:12 ((30^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-5B Zone 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.26</td>
<td>-1.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.09</td>
<td>-1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tall flat-topped roofs (h) (&gt;) 60 feet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 2:12 ((10^\circ)) (Zone 1) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.8-1 Zone 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.34</td>
<td>-1.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>-0.92</td>
<td>-1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gable or hipped configurations at ridges, eaves and rakes (Zone 2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 6:12 ((27^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.68</td>
<td>-2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.17</td>
<td>-1.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overhang for Slope Flat (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 6:12 ((27^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6:12 ((27^\circ)) (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 12:12 ((45^\circ)) Figure 30.4-2C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.17</td>
<td>-1.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.00</td>
<td>-1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overhang for 6:12 ((27^\circ)) (&lt;) Slope (&lt;) 12:12 ((45^\circ)) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2C Zone 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(continued)*
### TABLE 1609.6.2—continued
NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, $C_{net}$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>$C_{net}$FACTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof elements and slopes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monosloped configurations at ridges, eaves and rakes (Zone 2)</td>
<td>Enclosed Partially enclosed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat $&lt; Slope &lt; 7:12 \left(30^\circ\right)$ See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-5B Zone 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tall flat topped roofs $h &gt; 60$ feet</td>
<td>Enclosed Partially enclosed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat $&lt; Slope &lt; 2:12 \left(10^\circ\right)$ (Zone 2) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.8-1 Zone 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gable or hipped configurations at corners (Zone 3) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat $&lt; Slope &lt; 6:12 \left(27^\circ\right)$</td>
<td>Enclosed Partially enclosed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-2.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 square feet or more</td>
<td>-1.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overhang for Slope Flat $&lt; Slope &lt; 6:12 \left(27^\circ\right)$ See ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-2B Zone 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>-2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall Elements: $h \leq 60$ feet (Zone 4) ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-1</td>
<td>Enclosed Partially enclosed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
<td>-1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>-0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall Elements: $h &gt; 60$ feet (Zone 4) See ASCE 7 Figure 30.6-1 Zone 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>20 square feet or less</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 1609.6.2—continued
**NET PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS, \( C_{net} \)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STRUCTURE OR PART THEREOF</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>( C_{net} ) FACTOR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. Components and cladding not in areas of discontinuity—walls and parapets</strong></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>20 square feet or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parapet Walls</td>
<td>Positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. Components and cladding in areas of discontinuity—walls and parapets</strong></td>
<td>Wall elements: ( h \leq 60 ) feet (Zone 5) ASCE 7 Figure 30.4-1</td>
<td>Enclosed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>10 square feet or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>20 square feet or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500 square feet or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parapet walls</td>
<td>Positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

- Linear interpolation between values in the table is permitted.
- Some \( C_{net} \) values have been grouped together. Less conservative results may be obtained by applying ASCE 7 provisions.

### TABLE 1610.1
**LATERAL SOIL LOAD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL ( c )</th>
<th>UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD ( ^a ) (pound per square foot per foot of depth)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes</td>
<td>GW</td>
<td>Active pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes</td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes</td>
<td>GM</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes</td>
<td>GC</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes</td>
<td>SW</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes</td>
<td>SP</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes</td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines</td>
<td>SM-SC</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic silts and clayey silts</td>
<td>ML</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixture of inorganic silt and clay</td>
<td>ML-CL</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity</td>
<td>CL</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity</td>
<td>OL</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts</td>
<td>MH</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic clays of high plasticity</td>
<td>CH</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic clays and silty clays</td>
<td>OH</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square foot per foot of depth = 0.157 kPa/m, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- Design lateral soil loads are given for moist conditions for the specified soils at their optimum densities. Actual field conditions shall govern. Submerged or saturated soil pressures shall include the weight of the buoyant soil plus the hydrostatic loads.
- Unsuitable as backfill material.
- The definition and classification of soil materials shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487.
graphic factor, $K_{zt}$, shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 26.8.

1. For the windward side of a structure, $K_{zt}$ and $K_z$ shall be based on height $z$.
2. For leeward and sidewalls, and for windward and leeward roofs, $K_{zt}$ and $K_z$ shall be based on mean roof height $h$.

**1609.6.4.3 Determination of net pressure coefficients, $C_{net}$** For the design of the MWFRS and for components and cladding, the sum of the internal and external net pressure shall be based on the net pressure coefficient, $C_{net}$.

1. The pressure coefficient, $C_{net}$, for walls and roofs shall be determined from Table 1609.6.2.
2. Where $C_{net}$ has more than one value, the more severe wind load condition shall be used for design.

**1609.6.4.4 Application of wind pressures.** When using the alternative all-heights method, wind pressures shall be applied simultaneously on, and in a direction normal to, all building envelope wall and roof surfaces.

**1609.6.4.4.1 Components and cladding.** Wind pressure for each component or cladding element is applied as follows using $C_{net}$ values based on the effective wind area, $A$, contained within the zones in areas of discontinuity of width and/or length “a,” “2a” or “4a” at: corners of roofs and walls; edge strips for ridges, rakes and eaves; or field areas on walls or roofs as indicated in figures in tables in ASCE 7 as referenced in Table 1609.6.2 in accordance with the following:

1. Calculated pressures at local discontinuities acting over specific edge strips or corner boundary areas.
2. Include “field” (Zone 1, 2 or 4, as applicable) pressures applied to areas beyond the boundaries of the areas of discontinuity.
3. Where applicable, the calculated pressures at discontinuities (Zone 2 or 3) shall be combined with design pressures that apply specifically on rakes or eave overhangs.

### SECTION 1610
#### SOIL LATERAL LOADS

**1610.1 General.** Foundation walls and retaining walls shall be designed to resist lateral soil loads. Soil loads specified in Table 1610.1 shall be used as the minimum design lateral soil loads unless determined otherwise by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803. Foundation walls and other walls in which horizontal movement is restricted at the top shall be designed for at-rest pressure. Retaining walls free to move and rotate at the top shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure. Design lateral pressure from surcharge loads shall be added to the lateral earth pressure load. Design lateral pressure shall be increased if soils at the site are expansive. Foundation walls shall be designed to support the weight of the full hydrostatic pressure of undrained backfill unless a drainage system is installed in accordance with Sections 1805.4.2 and 1805.4.3.

**Exception:** Foundation walls extending not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade and laterally supported at the top by flexible diaphragms shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure.

### SECTION 1611
#### RAIN LOADS

**1611.1 Design rain loads.** Each portion of a roof shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on it if the primary drainage system for that portion is blocked plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow. The design rainfall shall be based on the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figure 1611.1 or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data.

$$ R = 5.2(d_s + d_a) $$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 16-36)}

For SI: $R = 0.0098(d_s + d_a)$

where:

- $d_a = $ Additional depth of water on the undeflected roof above the inlet of secondary drainage system at its design flow (i.e., the hydraulic head), in inches (mm).
- $d_s = $ Depth of water on the undeflected roof up to the inlet of secondary drainage system when the primary drainage system is blocked (i.e., the static head), in inches (mm).
- $R = $ Rain load on the undeflected roof, in psf (kN/m²). When the phrase “undeflected roof” is used, deflections from loads (including dead loads) shall not be considered when determining the amount of rain on the roof.

**1611.2 Ponding instability.** Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Section 8.4 of ASCE 7.

**1611.3 Controlled drainage.** Roofs equipped with hardware to control the rate of drainage shall be equipped with a secondary drainage system at a higher elevation that limits accumu-
mulation of water on the roof above that elevation. Such roofs shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on them to the elevation of the secondary drainage system plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow determined from Section 1611.1. Such roofs shall also be checked for ponding instability in accordance with Section 1611.2.

SECTION 1612
FLOOD LOADS

1612.1 General. Within flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, all new construction of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one flood hazard area, the provisions associated with the most restrictive flood hazard area shall apply.

1612.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
BASE FLOOD.
BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.
BASEMENT.
COASTAL A ZONE.
COASTAL HIGH HAZARD AREA.
DESIGN FLOOD.
DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.
DRY FLOODPROOFING.
EXISTING STRUCTURE.
FLOOD or FLOODING.
FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.
FLOOD HAZARD AREA.
FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM).
FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY.
FLOODWAY.
LOWEST FLOOR.
SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA.
START OF CONSTRUCTION.
SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE.
SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT.

1612.3 Establishment of flood hazard areas. Flood hazard areas are established by the Floodplain Administrator pursuant to 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

1612.3.1 Design flood elevations. Where design flood elevations are not included in the flood hazard areas established in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31, or where floodways are not designated, the owner and/or the owner’s registered design professional shall provide a design floodway analysis and a floodplain analysis to develop design flood elevations. These analyses will be referred to the Floodplain Administrator for review and approval.

1612.3.2 Determination of impacts. In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the permit applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed work will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the District of Columbia. This analysis shall be referred to the Floodplain Administrator for review and approval.

1612.4 Design and construction. The design and construction of buildings and structures located in flood hazard areas, including coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, shall be in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7 and ASCE 24.

1612.4.1 Minimum elevation. Minimum elevation of the top of lowest floor and floodproofing of all classes of buildings and structures shall be 2 feet (610 mm) above the Base Flood Elevation, or 500-year flood elevation, whichever is higher.

1612.4.2 ASCE 24-14. Table 2-1 and Table 6-1 of ASCE 24-14 do not apply in the District of Columbia.

1612.5 Flood hazard documentation. The following documentation shall be prepared and sealed by a registered design professional and submitted to the building official:

1. For construction in flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones:
   1.1. The elevation of the lowest floor, including the basement, as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.10.1.
   1.2. For fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, construction documents shall include a statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.

2. For construction in coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones:
   2.1. The elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member as required by the
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) CENTRAL UNITED STATES

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) EASTERN UNITED STATES

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) ALASKA

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
FIGURE 1611.1—continued
100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) HAWAII

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
2.2. Construction documents shall include a statement that the building is designed in accordance with ASCE 24, including that the pile or column foundation and building or structure to be attached thereto is designed to be anchored to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement due to the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on all building components, and other load requirements of Chapter 16.

2.3. For breakaway walls designed to have a resistance of more than 20 psf (0.96 kN/m²) determined using allowable stress design, construction documents shall include a statement that the breakaway wall is designed in accordance with ASCE 24.

SECTION 1613
EARTHQUAKE LOADS

1613.1 Scope. Every structure, and portion thereof, including nonstructural components that are permanently attached to structures and their supports and attachments, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of earthquake motions in accordance with ASCE 7, excluding Chapter 14 and Appendix 11A. The seismic design category for a structure is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1613 or ASCE 7.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings, assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C, or located where the mapped short-period spectral response acceleration, \( S_s \), is less than 0.4 g.

2. The seismic force-resisting system of wood-frame buildings that conform to the provisions of Section 2308 are not required to be analyzed as specified in this section.

3. Agricultural storage structures intended only for incidental human occupancy.

4. Structures that require special consideration of their response characteristics and environment that are not addressed by this code or ASCE 7 and for which other regulations provide seismic criteria, such as vehicular bridges, electrical transmission towers, hydraulic structures, buried utility lines and their appurtenances and nuclear reactors.

1613.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

**DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION.**

**ORTHOGONAL.**

**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCEq) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATION.**

**SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY.**

**SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.**

**SITE CLASS.**

**SITE COEFFICIENTS.**

1613.3 Seismic ground motion values. Seismic ground motion values shall be determined in accordance with this section.

1613.3.1 Mapped acceleration parameters. The parameters \( S_s \) and \( S_t \) shall be determined from the 0.2 and 1-second spectral response accelerations shown on Figures 1613.3.1(1) through 1613.3.1(8). Where \( S_t \) is less than or equal to 0.04 and \( S_s \) is less than or equal to 0.15, the structure is permitted to be assigned Seismic Design Category A.

1613.3.2 Site class definitions. Based on the site soil properties, the site shall be classified as Site Class A, B, C, D, E or F in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7.

Where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, Site Class D shall be used unless the building official or geotechnical data determines Site Class E or F soils are present at the site.

1613.3.3 Site coefficients and adjusted maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameters. The maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration for short periods, \( S_{MSP} \), and at 1-
second period, \( S_{M1} \), adjusted for site class effects shall be determined by Equations 16-37 and 16-38, respectively:

\[
S_{MS} = F_a S_s \\
S_{M1} = F_v S_1
\]

(Equation 16-37)

(Equation 16-38)

where:

\( F_a \) = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.3.3(1).

\( F_v \) = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.3.3(2).

\( S_s \) = The mapped spectral accelerations for short periods as determined in Section 1613.3.1.

\( S_1 \) = The mapped spectral accelerations for a 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.3.1.

1613.3.4 Design spectral response acceleration parameters. Five-percent damped design spectral response acceleration at short periods, \( S_{DS} \), and at 1-second period, \( S_{D1} \), shall be determined from Equations 16-39 and 16-40, respectively:

\[
S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MS} \\
S_{D1} = \frac{2}{3} S_{M1}
\]

(Equation 16-39)

(Equation 16-40)

where:

\( S_{MS} \) = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for short period as determined in Section 1613.3.3.

\( S_{M1} \) = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.3.3.

1613.3.5 Determination of seismic design category. Structures classified as Risk Category I, II or III that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period, \( S_1 \), is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category E. Structures classified as Risk Category IV that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period, \( S_1 \), is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category F. All other structures shall be assigned to a seismic design category based on their risk category and the design spectral response acceleration parameters, \( S_{DS} \) and \( S_{D1} \), determined in accordance with Section 1613.3.4 or the site-specific procedures of ASCE 7. Each building and structure shall be assigned to the more severe seismic design category in accordance with Table 1613.3.5(1) or 1613.3.5(2), irrespective of the fundamental period of vibration of the structure, \( T \).

1613.3.5.1 Alternative seismic design category determination. Where \( S_1 \) is less than 0.75, the seismic design category is permitted to be determined from Table 1613.3.5(1) alone when all of the following apply:

1. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the approximate fundamental period of the structure, \( T_p \), in each of the two orthogonal directions determined in accordance with Section 12.8.2.1 of ASCE 7, is less than 0.8 \( T_s \) determined in accordance with Section 11.4.5 of ASCE 7.

2. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the fundamental period of the structure used to calculate the story drift is less than \( T_p \).

3. Equation 12.8-2 of ASCE 7 is used to determine the seismic response coefficient, \( C_r \).

4. The diaphragms are rigid or are permitted to be idealized as rigid in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7 or, for diaphragms permitted to be idealized as flexible in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7, the distances between vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system do not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm).

1613.3.5.2 Simplified design procedure. Where the alternate simplified design procedure of ASCE 7 is used, the seismic design category shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

1613.4 Alternatives to ASCE 7. The provisions of Section 1613.4 shall be permitted as alternatives to the relevant provisions of ASCE 7.

1613.4.1 Additional seismic force-resisting systems for seismically isolated structures. Add the following exception to the end of Section 17.5.4.2 of ASCE 7:

**Exception:** For isolated structures designed in accordance with this standard, the structural system limitations including structural height limits, in Table 12.2-1

---

### TABLE 1613.3.3(2)
VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT \( F_v \)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITE CLASS</th>
<th>MAPPED SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION AT 1-SECOND PERIOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( S_1 \leq 0.1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at 1-second period, \( S_1 \).

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.7 of ASCE 7.
for ordinary steel concentrically braced frames (OCBFs) as defined in Chapter 11 and ordinary moment frames (OMFs) as defined in Chapter 11 are permitted to be taken as 160 feet (48 768 mm) for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The value of $R_i$ as defined in Chapter 17 is taken as 1.
2. For OMFs and OCBFs, design is in accordance with AISC 341.

1613.5 Amendments to ASCE 7. The provisions of Section 1613.5 shall be permitted as an amendment to the relevant provisions of ASCE 7.

1613.5.1 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragm. Modify ASCE 7 Section 12.11.2.2.1 as follows:

12.11.2.2.1 Transfer of anchorage forces into diaphragm. Diaphragms shall be provided with continuous ties or struts between diaphragm chords to distribute these anchorage forces into the diaphragms. Diaphragm connections shall be positive, mechanical or welded. Added chords are permitted to be used to form subdiaphragms to transmit the anchorage forces to the main continuous cross-ties. The maximum length-to-width ratio of a wood, wood structural panel or unprotected steel deck sheathed structural subdiaphragm that serves as part of the continuous tie system shall be 2.5 to 1. Connections and anchorages capable of resisting the prescribed forces shall be provided between the diaphragm and the attached components. Connections shall extend into the diaphragm a sufficient distance to develop the force transferred into the diaphragm.

1613.6 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems. Ballasted, roof-mounted photovoltaic panel systems need not be rigidly attached to the roof or supporting structure. Ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed and installed only on roofs with slopes not more than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal. Ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to resist sliding and uplift resulting from lateral and vertical forces as required by Section 1605, using a coefficient of friction determined by acceptable engineering principles. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to accommodate seismic displacement determined by nonlinear response-history analysis or shake-table testing, using input motions consistent with ASCE 7 lateral and vertical seismic forces for nonstructural components on roofs.

SECTION 1614
ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS

1614.1 General. Ice-sensitive structures shall be designed for atmospheric ice loads in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.
FIGURE 1613.3.1(1)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCEₐ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
(continued)
FIGURE 1613.3.1(1)—continued
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE
ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION
(5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(2)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTIGUOUS UNITED STATES OF 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

(continued)
FIGURE 1613.3.1(2)—continued
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCEₜ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(3)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR HAWAII OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(4)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE_e) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR ALASKA OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(5)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR ALASKA OF 1.0-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(6)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR PUERTO RICO AND THE UNITED STATES VIRGIN ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
FIGURE 1613.3.1(7)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCEₜ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR GUAM AND THE NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B

Explanation

Contour intervals, %g

0 %
20%
50%
100%
200%

Northern Mariana Islands

Guam

0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration
(5% of Critical Damping)

1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration
(5% of Critical Damping)

Point values of spectral response acceleration expressed as a percent of gravity.

Local minimum

Local maximum

Saddle point

0 %
20%
50%
100%
200%

Northern Mariana Islands

Guam

MCEₜ values are determined by U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Sciences Safety Council (BSSC). The basis is explained in commentary prepared by BSSC and in the references.

Ground motion values contained on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a generic mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- maximum second spectral response expressed in terms of the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 54th percentile response), but not less than 50% and 60% for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-based 2012 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands posted at http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazardmaps.

REFERENCES


FIGURE 1613.3.1(8)
RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR AMERICAN SAMOA OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING), SITE CLASS B
allowable stress design (ASD) or two-thirds of the required shear strength for load and resistance factor design (LRFD) but not less than 10 kips (45 kN). For the purpose of this section, the shear force and the axial tensile force need not be considered to act simultaneously.

**Exception:** Where beams, girders, open web joist and joist girders support a concrete slab or concrete slab on metal deck that is attached to the beam or girder with not less than 3/8-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) headed shear studs, at a spacing of not more than 12 inches (305 mm) on center, averaged over the length of the member, or other attachment having equivalent shear strength, and the slab contains continuous distributed reinforcement in each of two orthogonal directions with an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area, the nominal axial tension strength of the end connection shall be permitted to be taken as half the required vertical shear strength for ASD or one-third of the required shear strength for LRFD, but not less than 10 kips (45 kN).

### 1615.4 Bearing wall structures

Bearing wall structures shall have vertical ties in all load-bearing walls and longitudinal ties, transverse ties and perimeter ties at each floor level in accordance with this section and as shown in Figure 1615.4.

#### 1615.4.1 Concrete wall structures

Precast bearing wall structures constructed solely of reinforced or prestressed concrete, or combinations of these shall conform to the requirements of Sections 16.2.4 and 16.2.5 of ACI 318.

#### 1615.4.2 Other bearing wall structures

Ties in bearing wall structures other than those covered in Section 1615.4.1 shall conform to this section.

#### 1615.4.2.1 Longitudinal ties

Longitudinal ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Longitudinal ties shall extend across interior load-bearing walls and shall connect to exterior load-bearing walls and shall be spaced at not greater than 10 feet (3038 mm) on center. Ties shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength, $T_r$, given by Equation 16-41. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$ T_r = \frac{w LS}{\alpha_T S} $$  

(Equation 16-41)

where:

- $L$ = The span of the horizontal element in the direction of the tie, between bearing walls, feet (m).
- $w$ = The weight per unit area of the floor or roof in the span being tied to or across the wall, psf (N/m²).
- $S$ = The spacing between ties, feet (m).
- $\alpha_T$ = A coefficient with a value of 1,500 pounds per foot (2.25 kN/m) for masonry bearing wall structures and a value of 375 pounds per foot (0.6 kN/m) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

#### 1615.4.2.2 Transverse ties

Transverse ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Transverse ties shall be placed no farther apart than the spacing of load-bearing walls. Transverse ties shall have minimum nominal tensile strength, $T_r$, given by Equation 16-41. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.
bers framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Ties around the perimeter of each floor and roof shall be located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the edge and shall provide a nominal strength in tension not less than $T_p$, given by Equation 16-42. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_p = 200w \leq \beta_T$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 16-42)}

For SI: $T_p = 90.7w \leq \beta_T$

where:

- $w = \text{As defined in Section 1615.4.2.1.}$
- $\beta_T = \text{A coefficient with a value of 16,000 pounds (7200 kN) for structures with masonry bearing walls and a value of 4,000 pounds (1300 kN) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.}$

**1615.4.2.4 Vertical ties.** Vertical ties shall consist of continuous or spliced reinforcing, continuous or spliced members, wall sheathing or other engineered systems. Vertical tension ties shall be provided in bearing walls and shall be continuous over the height of the building. The minimum nominal tensile strength for vertical ties within a bearing wall shall be equal to the weight of the wall within that story plus the weight of the diaphragm tributary to the wall in the story below. No fewer than two ties shall be provided for each wall. The strength of each tie need not exceed 3,000 pounds per foot (450 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of masonry construction or 750 pounds per foot (140 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

![Figure 1615.4](image-url)

**FIGURE 1615.4**

**LONGITUDINAL, PERIMETER, TRANSVERSE AND VERTICAL TIES**

- T = Transverse
- L = Longitudinal
- V = Vertical
- P = Perimeter
CHAPTER 17

SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

SECTION 1701
GENERAL

1701.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the quality, workmanship and requirements for materials covered. Materials of construction and tests shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this code.

1701.2 New materials. New building materials, equipment, appliances, systems or methods of construction not provided for in this code, and any material of questioned suitability proposed for use in the construction of a building or structure, shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in this chapter and in the approved rules to determine character, quality and limitations of use.

SECTION 1702
DEFINITIONS

1702.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

APPROVED AGENCY.
APPROVED FABRICATOR.
CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE.
DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM.
FABRICATED ITEM.
INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.
MAIN WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.
MASTIC FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.
SPECIAL INSPECTION.
Continuous special inspection.
Periodic special inspection.
SPECIAL INSPECTOR.
SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.
STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION.

SECTION 1703
APPROVALS

1703.1 Approved agency. An approved agency shall provide all information as necessary for the building official to determine that the agency meets the applicable requirements specified in Sections 1703.1.1 through 1703.1.3.

1703.1.1 Independence. An approved agency shall be objective, competent and independent from the contractor and the registered design professional responsible for the design and/or installation of the work being inspected. The agency shall also disclose possible conflicts of interest to the code official and the registered design professional in responsible charge so that objectivity can be confirmed. The agency should not be owned or controlled by any person associated with the project.

1703.1.2 Equipment. An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated.

1703.1.3 Personnel. An approved agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests and special inspections.

1703.2 Written approval. Any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction meeting the requirements of this code shall be approved in writing after satisfactory completion of the required tests and submission of required test reports.

1703.3 Record of approval. For any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction that has been approved, a record of such approval, including the conditions and limitations of the approval, shall be kept on file in the building official’s office and shall be available for public review at appropriate times.

1703.4 Performance. Specific information consisting of test reports conducted by an approved agency in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards, or other such information as necessary, shall be provided for the building official to determine that the product, material or assembly meets the applicable code requirements.

1703.4.1 Research and investigation. Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to the building official to substantiate the proposed use of any product, material or assembly. If it is determined that the evidence submitted is satisfactory proof of performance for the use intended, the building official shall approve the use of the product, material or assembly subject to the requirements of this code. The costs, reports and investigations required under these provisions shall be paid by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent.

1703.4.2 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of products, materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

1703.5 Labeling. Products, materials or assemblies required to be labeled shall be labeled in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 1703.5.1 through 1703.5.4.

1703.5.1 Testing. An approved agency shall test a representative sample of the product, material or assembly being labeled to the relevant standard or standards. The approved agency shall maintain a record of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.
1703.5.2 Inspection and identification. The approved agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the product or material that is to be labeled. The inspection shall verify that the labeled product, material or assembly is representative of the product, material or assembly tested.

1703.5.3 Label information. The label shall contain the manufacturer’s identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the performance characteristics of the product, material or assembly and the approved agency’s identification.

1703.5.4 Method of labeling. Information required to be permanently identified on the product, material or assembly shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

1703.6 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services. Where structural components or other items regulated by this code are not visible for inspection after completion of a prefabricated assembly, the owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall submit a report of each prefabricated assembly. The report shall indicate the complete details of the assembly, including a description of the assembly and its components, the basis upon which the assembly is being evaluated, test results and similar information and other data as necessary for the building official to determine conformance to this code. Such a report shall be approved by the building official.

1703.6.1 Follow-up inspection. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall provide for special inspections of fabricated items in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

1703.6.2 Test and inspection records. Copies of necessary test and special inspection records shall be filed with the building official.

SECTION 1704
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS,
CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY AND
STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION

1704.1 General. Special inspections and tests, statements of special inspections, responsibilities of contractors, submittals to the building official and structural observations shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

1704.2 Special inspections and tests. Where application is made to the building official for construction as specified in Section 105, the owner or the owner’s authorized agent, other than the contractor, shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests during construction on the types of work specified in Section 1705 and identify the approved agencies to the building official. These special inspections and tests are in addition to the inspections by the building official that are identified in Section 110.

Exceptions:

1. Special inspections and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as approved by the building official.

2. Unless otherwise required by the building official, special inspections and tests are not required for Group U occupancies that are accessory to a residential occupancy including, but not limited to, those listed in Section 312.1.

3. Special inspections and tests are not required for portions of structures designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction provisions of Section 2211.7 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308.

4. The contractor is permitted to employ the approved agencies where the contractor is also the owner.

1704.2.1 Special inspector qualifications. Prior to the start of the construction, the owner shall provide written documentation to the code official identifying approved agency who will perform the special inspections and tests during construction.

The registered design professional in responsible charge and engineers of record involved in the design and/or installation work for the project are not permitted to act as the approved agency. The approved agency and its personnel shall comply with the independence requirements in Section 1703.1.1.

1704.2.1.1 Personnel. An approved agency shall employ or contract with experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests or inspections, or both. Upon request by the code official, documentation shall be provided demonstrating the applicable agency’s accreditation as noted in ASTM E329 and the pertinent training, certifications and other qualifications of special inspection personnel performing special inspections or tests associated with the proposed construction. The code official is authorized to prescribe the manner of qualification documentation and frequency of updating information regarding agency or individual inspector approval. Persons providing special inspection services, including firms or individual inspectors seeking approval of alternative certifications or qualifications, or both, listed in ASTM E329, are allowed to submit documentation demonstrating equivalency. This documentation is allowed to include evidence of meeting other recognized standards or alternative certifications to demonstrate that the minimum qualifications, certification and experience intended by ASTM E329 have been met. The code official, if satisfied that equivalency has been demonstrated, is authorized to approve the credentials of the person.

1704.2.2 Access for special inspection. The construction or work for which special inspection or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for special inspection or testing purposes until completion of the required special inspections or tests.

1704.2.3 Statement of special inspections. The applicant shall submit a statement of special inspections in accordance with Section 106.3 as a condition for permit issui-
**1704.2.4 Report requirement.** Approved agencies shall keep records of special inspections and tests. The approved agency shall submit reports of special inspections and tests to the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge. Reports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not completed in conformance to approved construction documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and tests, and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to the building official.

**1704.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.** Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a fabricator’s shop, special inspections of the fabricated items shall be performed during fabrication.

**Exceptions:**

1. Special inspections during fabrication are not required where the fabricator maintains approved detailed fabrication and quality control procedures that provide a basis for control of the workmanship and the fabricator’s ability to conform to approved construction documents and this code. Approval shall be based upon review of fabrication and quality control procedures and periodic inspection of fabrication practices by the building official.

2. Special inspections are not required where the fabricator is registered and approved in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.

**1704.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.** Special inspections during fabrication are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator registered and approved to perform such work without special inspection. Approval shall be based upon review of the fabricator’s written procedural and quality control manuals and periodic auditing of fabrication practices by an approved agency. At completion of fabrication, the approved fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to the owner or the owner’s authorized agent for submittal to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5 stating that the work was performed in accordance with the approved construction documents.

**1704.3 Statement of special inspections.** Where special inspections or tests are required by Section 1705, the registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of special inspections in accordance with Section 1704.3.1 for submittal by the applicant in accordance with Section 1704.2.3.

**Exception:** The statement of special inspections is permitted to be prepared by a qualified person approved by the building official for construction not designed by a registered design professional.

**1704.3.2 Seismic requirements in the statement of special inspections.** The statement of special inspections shall identify the following:

1. The materials, systems, components and work required to have special inspections or tests by the building official or by the registered design professional responsible for each portion of the work.

2. The type and extent of each special inspection.

3. The type and extent of each test.

4. Additional requirements for special inspections or tests for seismic or wind resistance as specified in Sections 1705.11, 1705.12 and 1705.13.

5. For each type of special inspection, identification as to whether it will be continuous special inspection, periodic special inspection or performed in accordance with the notation used in the referenced standard where the inspections are defined.

**1704.3.3 Wind requirements in the statement of special inspections.** Where Section 1705.12 or 1705.13 specifies special inspections or tests for seismic resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the designated seismic systems and seismic force-resisting systems that are subject to the special inspections or tests.

**1704.4 Contractor responsibility.** Each contractor responsible for the construction of a main wind- or seismic force-resisting system, designated seismic system or a wind- or seismic force-resisting component listed in the statement of special inspections shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the building official and the owner or the owner’s authorized agent prior to the commencement of work on the system or component. The contractor’s statement of responsibility shall contain acknowledgment of awareness of the special requirements contained in the statement of special inspections.
1704.5 Submittals to the building official. In addition to the submittal of reports of special inspections and tests in accordance with Section 1704.2.4, reports and certificates shall be submitted by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to the building official for each of the following:

1. Certificates of compliance for the fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies on the premises of a registered and approved fabricator in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.

2. Certificates of compliance for the seismic qualification of nonstructural components, supports and attachments in accordance with Section 1705.13.2.

3. Certificates of compliance for designated seismic systems in accordance with Section 1705.13.3.

4. Reports of preconstruction tests for shotcrete in accordance with Section 1908.5.

5. Certificates of compliance for open web steel joists and joist girders in accordance with Section 2207.5.

6. Reports of material properties verifying compliance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for weldability as specified in Section 26.6.4 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars in concrete complying with a standard other than ASTM A706 that are to be welded; and

7. Reports of mill tests in accordance with Section 20.2.2.5 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars complying with ASTM A615 and used to resist earthquake-induced flexural or axial forces in the special moment frames, special structural walls or coupling beams connecting special structural walls of seismic force-resisting systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F.

SECTION 1705
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

1705.1 General. Special inspections and tests of elements and nonstructural components of buildings and structures shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

1705.1.1 Special cases. Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:

1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems prescribed by this code.

2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.

3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional manufacturer’s instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in standards referenced by this code.

1705.2 Steel construction. The special inspections and nondestructive testing of steel construction in buildings, structures, and portions thereof shall be in accordance with this section.

Exception: Special inspections of the steel fabrication process shall not be required where the fabricator does not perform any welding, thermal cutting or heating operation of any kind as part of the fabrication process. In such cases, the fabricator shall be required to submit a detailed procedure for material control that demonstrates the fabricator’s ability to maintain suitable records and procedures such that, at any time during the fabrication process, the material specification and grade for the main stress-carrying elements are capable of being determined. Mill test reports shall be identifiable to the main stress-carrying elements when required by the approved construction documents.

1705.2.1 Structural steel. Special inspections and nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of AISC 360.

Exception: Special inspection of railing systems composed of structural steel elements shall be limited to welding inspection of welds at the base of cantilevered rail posts.

1705.2.2 Cold-formed steel deck. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.

1705.2.3 Open-web steel joists and joist girders. Special inspections of open-web steel joists and joist girders in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Table 1705.2.3.

1705.2.4 Cold-formed steel trusses spanning 60 feet or greater. Where a cold-formed steel truss clear span is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

1705.3 Concrete construction. Special inspections and tests of concrete construction shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.3.

Exception: Special inspections and tests shall not be required for:

1. Isolated spread concrete footings of buildings three stories or less above grade plane that are fully supported on earth or rock.

2. Continuous concrete footings supporting walls of buildings three stories or less above grade plane that are fully supported on earth or rock where:

   2.1. The footings support walls of light-frame construction.
2.2. The footings are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

2.3. The structural design of the footing is based on a specified compressive strength, \( f'c \), not more than 2,500 pounds per square inch (psi) (17.2 MPa), regardless of the compressive strength specified in the approved construction documents or used in the footing construction.

3. Nonstructural concrete slabs supported directly on the ground, including prestressed slabs on grade, where the effective prestress in the concrete is less than 150 psi (1.03 MPa).

4. Concrete foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.2.

5. Concrete patios, driveways and sidewalks, on grade.

1705.3.1 Welding of reinforcing bars. Special inspections of welding and qualifications of special inspectors for reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for special inspection and of AWS D1.4 for special inspector qualification.

1705.3.2 Material tests. In the absence of sufficient data or documentation providing evidence of conformance to quality standards for materials in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318, the building official shall require testing of materials in accordance with the appropriate standards and criteria for the material in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318.

1705.4 Masonry construction. Special inspections and tests of masonry construction shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance program requirements of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 and TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

Exception: Special inspections and tests shall not be required for:

1. Empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2109, 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as Risk Category I, II or III.

2. Masonry foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1), 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4).

3. Masonry fireplaces, masonry heaters or masonry chimneys installed or constructed in accordance with Section 2111, 2112 or 2113, respectively.

1705.4.1 Empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry and masonry veneer in Risk Category IV. Special inspections and tests for empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2109, 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as Risk Category IV shall be performed in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Level B Quality Assurance.

1705.4.2 Vertical masonry foundation elements. Special inspections and tests of vertical masonry foundation elements shall be performed in accordance with Section 1705.4.

1705.5 Wood construction. Special inspections of prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies shall be in accordance with Section 1704.2.5. Special inspections of site-built assemblies shall be in accordance with this section.

1705.5.1 High-load diaphragms. High-load diaphragms designed in accordance with Section 2306.2 shall be installed with special inspections as indicated in Section 1704.2. The special inspector shall inspect the wood structural panel sheathing to ascertain whether it is of the grade and thickness shown on the approved construction documents. Additionally, the special inspector must verify the nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, the nail or staple diameter and length, the number of fastener lines and that the spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agrees with the approved construction documents.

1705.5.2 Metal-plate-connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater. Where a truss clear span is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

### TABLE 1705.2.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>REFERENCED STANDARDa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Installation of open-web steel joists and joist girders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. End connections – welding or bolted.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Bridging – horizontal or diagonal.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bridging that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Where applicable, see also Section 1705.12, Special inspections for seismic resistance.
TABLE 1705.3
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>REFERENCED STANDARD*</th>
<th>IBC REFERENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Inspect reinforcement, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318 Ch. 20, 25.2, 25.3, 26.6.1-26.6.3</td>
<td>1908.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Reinforcing bar welding:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum $\frac{5}{16}$ &quot;; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Inspect all other welds.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Inspect anchors cast in concrete.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 17.8.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Inspect anchors post-installed in hardened concrete members.b</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 17.8.2.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Adhesive anchors installed in horizontally or upwardly inclined orientations to resist sustained tension loads.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 17.8.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Mechanical anchors and adhesive anchors not defined in 4.a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Verify use of required design mix.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: Ch. 19, 26.4.3, 26.4.4</td>
<td>1904.1, 1904.2, 1908.2, 1908.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Prior to concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ASTM C172, ASTM C31, ACI 318: 26.4, 26.12</td>
<td>1908.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Inspect concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ACI 318: 26.5</td>
<td>1908.6, 1908.7, 1908.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 26.5.3-26.5.5</td>
<td>1908.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Inspect prestressed concrete for:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Application of prestressing forces; and</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ACI 318: 26.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Inspect erection of precast concrete members.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: Ch. 26.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Verify in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 26.11.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ACI 318: 26.11.1.2(b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where applicable, see also Section 1705.12, Special inspections for seismic resistance.
b. Specific requirements for special inspection shall be included in the research report for the anchor issued by an approved source in accordance with 17.8.2 in ACI 318, or other qualification procedures. Where specific requirements are not provided, special inspection requirements shall be specified by the registered design professional and shall be approved by the building official prior to the commencement of the work.
1705.6 Soils. Special inspections and tests of existing site soil conditions, fill placement and load-bearing requirements shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.6. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance. During fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that proper materials and procedures are used in accordance with the provisions of the approved geotechnical report.

Exception: Where Section 1803 does not require reporting of materials and procedures for fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that the in-place dry density of the compacted fill is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

1705.7 Driven deep foundations. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of driven deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.7. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

1705.8 Cast-in-place deep foundations. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of cast-in-place deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.8. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professional shall be used to determine compliance.

1705.9 Helical pile foundations. Continuous special inspections shall be performed during installation of helical pile foundations. The information recorded shall include installation equipment used, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other pertinent installation data as required by the registered design professional in responsible charge. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professional shall be used to determine compliance.

1705.10 Fabricated items. Special inspections of fabricated items shall be performed in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

1705.11 Special inspections for wind resistance. Special inspections for wind resistance specified in Sections 1705.11.1 through 1705.11.3, unless exempted by the exceptions to Section 1704.2, are required for buildings and structures constructed in the following areas:

1. In wind Exposure Category B, where $V_{aw}$ as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 is 120 miles per hour (52.8 m/sec) or greater.

2. In wind Exposure Category C or D, where $V_{aw}$ as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 is 110 mph (49 m/sec) or greater.

### TABLE 1705.6
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF SOILS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Perform classification and testing of compacted fill materials.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Verify use of proper materials, densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 1705.7
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF DRIVEN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
<th>PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Determine capacities of test elements and conduct additional load tests, as required.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Inspect driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. For steel elements, perform additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.2.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. For specialty elements, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1705.11 Structural wood. **Continuous special inspection** is required during field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. **Periodic special inspection** is required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces and hold-downs.

**Exception:** **Special inspections** are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the main windforce-resisting system, where the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

1705.11.2 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction. **Periodic special inspection** is required for welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. **Periodic special inspection** is required for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**Exception:** **Special inspections** are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screwing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the windforce resisting system, where either of the following applies:

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.
2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center (o.c.).

1705.11.3 Wind-resisting components. **Periodic special inspection** is required for fastening of the following systems and components:

1. Roof covering, roof deck and roof framing connections.
2. Exterior wall covering and wall connections to roof and floor diaphragms and framing.

1705.12 Special inspections for seismic resistance. **Special inspections** for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.12.1 through 1705.12.9, unless exempted by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

**Exception:** The **special inspections** specified in Sections 1705.12.1 through 1705.12.9 are not required for structures designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following:

1. The structure consists of light-frame construction; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods, $S_{D5}$ as determined in Section 1613.3.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the building height of the structure does not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm).
2. The seismic force-resisting system of the structure consists of reinforced masonry or reinforced concrete; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods, $S_{D5}$, as determined in Section 1613.3.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the building height of the structure does not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm).
3. The structure is a detached one- or two-family dwelling not exceeding two stories above grade plane and does not have any of the following horizontal or vertical irregularities in accordance with Section 12.3 of ASCE 7:
   3.1. Torsional or extreme torsional irregularity.
   3.2. Nonparallel systems irregularity.
   3.3. Stiffness-soft story or stiffness-extreme soft story irregularity.
   3.4. Discontinuity in lateral strength-weak story irregularity.

1705.12.1 Structural steel. **Special inspections** for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.12.1.1 or 1705.12.1.2, as applicable.

1705.12.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems. **Special inspections** of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exception:** **Special inspections** are not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C that are not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, with a response modification coefficient, $R$, of 3 or less, excluding cantilever column systems.

1705.12.1.2 Structural steel elements. **Special inspections** of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F other than...
those covered in Section 1705.12.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exception:** Special inspections of structural steel elements are not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C with a response modification coefficient, \( R \), of 3 or less.

**1705.12.2 Structural wood.** For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F:

1. Continuous special inspection shall be required during field gluing operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.

2. Periodic special inspection shall be required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces, shear panels and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the seismic force-resisting system, where the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**1705.12.3 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.** For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, periodic special inspection shall be required:

1. For welding operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system; and

2. For screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screw installation, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the seismic force-resisting system, where either of the following applies:

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.

2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the fastener spacing of the sheathing is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**1705.12.4 Designated seismic systems.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the special inspector shall examine designated seismic systems requiring seismic qualification in accordance with Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 and verify that the label, anchorage and mounting conform to the certificate of compliance.

**1705.12.5 Architectural components.** Periodic special inspection is required for the erection and fastening of exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**Exception:** Periodic special inspection is not required for the following:

1. Exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer 30 feet (9144 mm) or less in height above grade or walking surface.

2. Exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer weighing 5 psf (24.5 N/m²) or less.

3. Interior nonbearing walls weighing 15 psf (73.5 N/m²) or less.

**1705.12.5.1 Access floors.** Periodic special inspection is required for the anchorage of access floors in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1705.12.6 Plumbing, mechanical and electrical components.** Periodic special inspection of plumbing, mechanical and electrical components shall be required for the following:

1. Anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency and standby power systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

2. Anchorage of other electrical equipment in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F.

3. Installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials and their associated mechanical units in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

4. Installation and anchorage of ductwork designed to carry hazardous materials in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

5. Installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F where the approved construction documents require a nominal clearance of \( \frac{1}{4} \) inch (6.4 mm) or less between the equipment support frame and restraint.

**1705.12.7 Storage racks.** Periodic special inspection is required for the anchorage of storage racks that are 8 feet (2438 mm) or greater in height in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1705.12.8 Seismic isolation systems.** Periodic special inspection shall be provided for seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F during the fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices.

**1705.12.9 Cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames.** Periodic special inspection shall be provided for the installation of cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames in the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
1705.13 Testing for seismic resistance. Testing for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.13.1 through 1705.13.4, unless exempted from special inspections by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

1705.13.1 Structural steel. Nondestructive testing for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.13.1.1 or 1705.13.1.2, as applicable.

1705.13.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems. Nondestructive testing of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: Nondestructive testing is not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C that are not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, with a response modification coefficient, R, of 3 or less, excluding cantilever column systems.

1705.13.1.2 Structural steel elements. Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705.13.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements is not required in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C with a response modification coefficient, R, of 3 or less.

1705.13.2 Nonstructural components. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F, where the requirements of Section 13.2.1 of ASCE 7 for nonstructural components, supports or attachments are met by seismic qualification as specified in Item 2 therein, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements for seismic qualification by analysis, testing or experience data. Certificates of compliance for the seismic qualification shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

1705.13.3 Designated seismic systems. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F and with designated seismic systems that are subject to the requirements of Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 for certification, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements to be met by analysis, testing or experience data as specified therein. Certificates of compliance documenting that the requirements are met shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

1705.13.4 Seismic isolation systems. Seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be tested in accordance with Section 17.8 of ASCE 7.

1705.14 Sprayed fire-resistant materials. Special inspections and tests of sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1705.14.1 through 1705.14.6. Special inspections shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents. The tests set forth in this section shall be based on samplings from specific floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members. Special inspections and tests shall be performed after the rough installation of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems and suspension systems for ceilings, where applicable.

1705.14.1 Physical and visual tests. The special inspections and tests shall include the following to demonstrate compliance with the listing and the fire-resistance rating:

1. Condition of substrates.
2. Thickness of application.
3. Density in pounds per cubic foot (kg/m³).
5. Condition of finished application.

1705.14.2 Structural member surface conditions. The surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the approved fire-resistance design and the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The prepared surface of structural members to be sprayed shall be inspected by the special inspector before the application of the sprayed fire-resistant material.

1705.14.3 Application. The substrate shall have a minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified in the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The area for application shall be ventilated during and after application as required by the written instructions of approved manufacturers.

1705.14.4 Thickness. No more than 10 percent of the thickness measurements of the sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be less than the thickness required by the approved fire-resistance design, but in no case less than the minimum allowable thickness required by Section 1705.14.1.

1705.14.4.1 Minimum allowable thickness. For design thicknesses 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). For design thicknesses less than 1 inch (25 mm), the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 25 percent. Thickness shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Samples of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected in accordance with Sections 1705.14.4.2 and 1705.14.4.3.
1705.14.4.2 Floor, roof and wall assemblies. The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605, making not less than four measurements for each 1,000 square feet (93 m²) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

1705.14.4.3 Cellular decks. Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. A minimum of four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area.

1705.14.4.4 Fluted decks. Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. A minimum of four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area, including one each of the following: valley, crest and sides. The average of the measurements shall be reported.

1705.14.4.5 Structural members. The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to structural members shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Thickness testing shall be performed on not less than 25 percent of the structural members on each floor.

1705.14.4.6 Beams and girders. At beams and girders thickness measurements shall be made at nine locations around the beam or girder at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

1705.14.4.7 Joists and trusses. At joists and trusses, thickness measurements shall be made at seven locations around the joist or truss at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

1705.14.4.8 Wide-flanged columns. At wide-flanged columns, thickness measurements shall be made at 12 locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

1705.14.4.9 Hollow structural section and pipe columns. At hollow structural section and pipe columns, thickness measurements shall be made at a minimum of four locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

1705.14.5 Density. The density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall not be less than the density specified in the approved fire-resistance design. Density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. The test samples for determining the density of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected as follows:

1. From each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet (232 m²) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.
2. From beams, girders, trusses and columns at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet (232 m²) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

1705.14.6 Bond strength. The cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall not be less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.18 kN/m²). The cohesive/adhesive bond strength shall be determined in accordance with the field test specified in ASTM E736 by testing in-place samples of the sprayed fire-resistant material selected in accordance with Sections 1705.14.6.1 through 1705.14.6.3.

1705.14.6.1 Floor, roof and wall assemblies. The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet (232 m²) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

1705.14.6.2 Structural members. The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from beams, girders, trusses, columns and other structural members at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet (232 m²) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

1705.14.6.3 Primer, paint and encapsulant bond tests. Bond tests to qualify a primer, paint or encapsulant shall be conducted when the sprayed fire-resistant material is applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface for which acceptable bond-strength performance between these coatings and the fire-resistant material has not been determined. A bonding agent approved by the SFRM manufacturer shall be applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface where the bond strengths are found to be less than required values.

1705.15 Mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings. Special inspections and tests for mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings applied to structural elements and decks shall be performed in accordance with AWCI 12-B. Special inspections and tests shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents.

1705.16 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS). Special inspections shall be required for all EIFS applications.

Exceptions:
1. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over a water-resistive barrier with a means of draining moisture to the exterior.
2. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over masonry or concrete walls.

1705.16.1 Water-resistive barrier coating. A water-resistive barrier coating complying with ASTM E2570 requires special inspection of the water-resistive barrier coating when installed over a sheathing substrate.

1705.17 Fire-resistant penetrations and joints. In high-rise buildings or in buildings assigned to Risk Category III or IV, special inspections for through-penetrations, membrane
penetration firestops, fire-resistant joint systems and perimeter fire barrier systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714.3.1.2, 714.4.2, 715.3 and 715.4 shall be in accordance with Section 1705.17.1 or 1705.17.2.

1705.17 Penetration firestops. Inspections of penetration firestop systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714.3.1.2 and 714.4.2 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2174.

1705.17.2 Fire-resistant joint systems. Inspection of fire-resistant joint systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 715.3 and 715.4 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2393.

1705.18 Testing for smoke control. Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector.

1705.18.1 Testing scope. The test scope shall be as follows:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification.

1705.18.2 Qualifications. Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

1705.19 Underpinning. Underpinning of structures shall be subject to special inspections in accordance with Chapter 17. In addition to the special inspection for structural stability, any new foundation elements installed as part of underpinning operations shall be subject to special inspection as a permanent installation in accordance with the applicable sections of Chapter 17, including, but not limited to, special inspections for soil, concrete, welding, sequencing and pile driving.

SECTION 1706
DESIGN STRENGTHS OF MATERIALS

1706.1 Conformance to standards. The design strengths and permissible stresses of any structural material that are identified by a manufacturer’s designation as to manufacture and grade by mill tests, or the strength and stress grade is otherwise confirmed to the satisfaction of the building official, shall conform to the specifications and methods of design of accepted engineering practice or the approved rules in the absence of applicable standards.

1706.2 New materials. For materials that are not specifically provided for in this code, the design strengths and permissible stresses shall be established by tests as provided for in Section 1707.

SECTION 1707
ALTERNATIVE TEST PROCEDURE

1707.1 General. In the absence of approved rules or other approved standards, the building official shall make, or cause to be made, the necessary tests and investigations; or the building official shall accept duly authenticated reports from approved agencies in respect to the quality and manner of use of new materials or assemblies as provided for in Section 104.11. The cost of all tests and other investigations required under the provisions of this code shall be borne by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent.

SECTION 1708
IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

1708.1 General. Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the stability or load-bearing capacity of a completed building, structure or portion thereof for the expected loads, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall involve either a structural analysis or an in-situ load test, or both. The structural analysis shall be based on actual material properties and other as-built conditions that affect stability or load-bearing capacity, and shall be conducted in accordance with the applicable design standard. If the structural assessment determines that the load-bearing capacity is less than that required by the code, load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.2. If the building, structure or portion thereof is found to have inadequate stability or load-bearing capacity for the expected loads, modifications to ensure structural adequacy or the removal of the inadequate construction shall be required.

1708.2 Test standards. Structural components and assemblies shall be tested in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards. In the absence of a standard that contains an applicable load test procedure, the test procedure shall be developed by a registered design professional and approved. The test procedure shall simulate loads and conditions of application that the completed structure or portion thereof will be subjected to in normal use.

1708.3 In-situ load tests. In-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.3.1 or 1708.3.2 and shall be supervised by a registered design professional. The test shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16 as necessary to address the concerns regarding structural stability of the building, structure or portion thereof.

1708.3.1 Load test procedure specified. Where a referenced standard contains an applicable load test procedure and acceptance criteria, the test procedure and acceptance criteria in the standard shall apply. In the absence of specific load factors or acceptance criteria, the load factors and acceptance criteria in Section 1708.3.2 shall apply.

1708.3.2 Load test procedure not specified. In the absence of applicable load test procedures contained within a standard referenced by this code or acceptance criteria for a specific material or method of construction, such existing structure shall be subjected to a test proce-
dure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, at a minimum the test load shall be equal to the specified factored design loads. For materials such as wood that have strengths that are dependent on load duration, the test load shall be adjusted to account for the difference in load duration of the test compared to the expected duration of the design loads being considered. For statically loaded components, the test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. For components that carry dynamic loads (e.g., machine supports or fall arrest anchors), the load shall be left in place for a period consistent with the component’s actual function. The structure shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements where the following criteria are satisfied:

1. Under the design load, the deflection shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 1604.3.
2. Within 24 hours after removal of the test load, the structure shall have recovered not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection.
3. During and immediately after the test, the structure shall not show evidence of failure.

SECTION 1709
PRECONSTRUCTION LOAD TESTS

1709.1 General. Where proposed construction is not capable of being designed by approved engineering analysis, or where proposed construction design method does not comply with the applicable material design standard, the system of construction or the structural unit and the connections shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in Section 1709. The building official shall accept certified reports of such tests conducted by an approved testing agency, provided that such tests meet the requirements of this code and approved procedures.

1709.2 Load test procedures specified. Where specific load test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria are included in the applicable referenced standards, such test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria shall apply. In the absence of specific test procedures, load factors or acceptance criteria, the corresponding provisions in Section 1709.3 shall apply.

1709.3 Load test procedures not specified. Where load test procedures are not specified in the applicable referenced standards, the load-bearing and deformation capacity of structural components and assemblies shall be determined on the basis of a test procedure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components and assemblies that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, the test shall be as specified in Section 1709.3.1. Load tests shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16.

1709.3.1 Test procedure. The test assembly shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load equal to not less than two times the superimposed design load. The test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. The tested assembly shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements if the assembly recovers not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection within 24 hours after the removal of the test load. The test assembly shall then be reloaded and subjected to an increasing superimposed load until either structural failure occurs or the superimposed load is equal to two and one-half times the load at which the deflection limitations specified in Section 1709.3.2 were reached, or the load is equal to two and one-half times the superimposed design load. In the case of structural components and assemblies for which deflection limitations are not specified in Section 1709.3.2, the test specimen shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load until structural failure occurs or the load is equal to two and one-half times the desired superimposed design load. The allowable superimposed design load shall be taken as the lesser of:

1. The load at the deflection limitation given in Section 1709.3.2.
2. The failure load divided by 2.5.
3. The maximum load applied divided by 2.5.

1709.3.2 Deflection. The deflection of structural members under the design load shall not exceed the limitations in Section 1604.3.

1709.4 Wall and partition assemblies. Load-bearing wall and partition assemblies shall sustain the test load both with and without window framing. The test load shall include all design load components. Wall and partition assemblies shall be tested both with and without door and window framing.

1709.5 Exterior window and door assemblies. The design pressure rating of exterior windows and doors in buildings shall be determined in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2. For the purposes of this section, the required design pressure shall be determined using the allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.3.

Exception: Structural wind load design pressures for window units smaller than the size tested in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2 shall be permitted to be higher than the design value of the tested unit provided such higher pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis. All components of the small unit shall be the same as the tested unit. Where such calculated design pressures are used, they shall be validated by an additional test of the window unit having the highest allowable design pressure.

1709.5.1 Exterior windows and doors. Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/IS.2/A440. The label shall state the name of the manufacturer, the approved labeling agency and the product designation as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/IS.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/IS.2/A440 or comply with Section 1709.5.2. Products tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/IS.2/A440 shall not be subject to the requirements of Sections 2403.2 and 2403.3.
1709.5.2 Exterior windows and door assemblies not provided for in Section 1709.5.1. Exterior window and door assemblies shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330. Structural performance of garage doors and rolling doors shall be determined in accordance with either ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108, and shall meet the acceptance criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108. Exterior window and door assemblies containing glass shall comply with Section 2403. The design pressure for testing shall be calculated in accordance with Chapter 16. Each assembly shall be tested for 10 seconds at a load equal to 1.5 times the design pressure.

1709.6 Skylights and sloped glazing. Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24.

1709.7 Test specimens. Test specimens and construction shall be representative of the materials, workmanship and details normally used in practice. The properties of the materials used to construct the test assembly shall be determined on the basis of tests on samples taken from the load assembly or on representative samples of the materials used to construct the load test assembly. Required tests shall be conducted or witnessed by an approved agency.
CHAPTER 18
SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

SECTION 1801
GENERAL

1801.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to building and foundation systems.

1801.2 Design basis. Allowable bearing pressures, allowable stresses and design formulas provided in this chapter shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in Section 1605.3. The quality and design of materials used structurally in excavations and foundations shall comply with the requirements specified in Chapters 16, 19, 21, 22 and 23 of this code. Excavations and fills shall also comply with Chapter 33.

SECTION 1802
DEFINITIONS

1802.1 Definitions. The following words and terms are defined in Chapter 2:

DEEP FOUNDATION.
DRILLED SHAFT.
Socketed drilled shaft.
HELICAL PILE.
MICROPILE.
SHALLOW FOUNDATION.

SECTION 1803
GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATIONS

1803.1 General. Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1803.2 and reported in accordance with Section 1803.6. Where required by the building official or where geotechnical investigations involve in-situ testing, laboratory testing or engineering calculations, such investigations shall be conducted by a registered design professional.

1803.2 Investigations required. Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted as indicated in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.12.

1803.3 Basis of investigation. Soil classification shall be based on observation and any necessary tests of the materials disclosed by borings, test pits or other subsurface exploration made in appropriate locations. Additional studies shall be made as necessary to evaluate slope stability, soil strength, position and adequacy of load-bearing soils, the effect of moisture variation on soil-bearing capacity, compressibility, liquefaction and expansiveness.

1803.3.1 Scope of investigation. The scope of the geotechnical investigation including the number and types of borings or soundings, the equipment used to drill or sample, the in-situ testing equipment and the laboratory testing program shall be determined by a registered design professional.

1803.4 Qualified representative. The investigation procedure and apparatus shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. The registered design professional shall have a fully qualified representative on site during all boring or sampling operations.

1803.5 Investigated conditions. Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted as indicated in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.12.

1803.5.1 Classification. Soil materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D2487.

1803.5.2 Questionable soil. Where the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil is in doubt or where a load-bearing value superior to that specified in this code is claimed, the building official shall be permitted to require that a geotechnical investigation be conducted.

1803.5.3 Expansive soil. In areas likely to have expansive soil, the building official shall require soil tests to determine where such soils do exist.

Soils meeting all four of the following provisions shall be considered expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity index (PI) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.
2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No. 200 sieve (75 μm), determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
4. Expansion index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D4829.

1803.5.4 Ground water table. A subsurface soil investigation shall be performed to determine whether the existing ground water table is above or within 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the lowest floor level where such floor is located below the finished ground level adjacent to the foundation.

Exception: A subsurface soil investigation to determine the location of the ground water table shall not be required where waterproofing is provided in accordance with Section 1805.
1803.5.5 Deep foundations. Where deep foundations will be used, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following, unless sufficient data upon which to base the design and installation is otherwise available:

1. Recommended deep foundation types and installed capacities.
2. Recommended center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements.
3. Driving criteria.
4. Installation procedures.
5. Field inspection and reporting procedures (to include procedures for verification of the installed bearing capacity where required).
6. Load test requirements.
7. Suitability of deep foundation materials for the intended environment.
8. Designation of bearing stratum or strata.
9. Reductions for group action, where necessary.

1803.5.6 Rock strata. Where subsurface explorations at the project site indicate variations in the structure of rock upon which foundations are to be constructed, a sufficient number of borings shall be drilled to sufficient depths to assess the competency of the rock and its load-bearing capacity.

1803.5.7 Excavation near foundations. Where excavation will reduce support from any foundation, a registered design professional shall prepare an assessment of the structure as determined from examination of the structure, the review of available design documents and, if necessary, excavation of test pits. The registered design professional shall determine the requirements for underpinning and protection and prepare site-specific plans, details and sequence of work for submission. Such support shall be provided by underpinning, sheeting and bracing, or by other means acceptable to the building official.

1803.5.8 Compacted fill material. Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material more than 12 inches (305 mm) in depth, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of compacted fill material.
2. Specifications for material to be used as compacted fill.
3. Test methods to be used to determine the maximum dry density and optimum moisture content of the material to be used as compacted fill.
4. Maximum allowable thickness of each lift of compacted fill material.
5. Field test method for determining the in-place dry density of the compacted fill.
6. Minimum acceptable in-place dry density expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density determined in accordance with Item 3.
7. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 6.

1803.5.9 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of the CLSM.
2. Specifications for the CLSM.
3. Laboratory or field test method(s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.
4. Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.
5. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.

1803.5.10 Alternate setback and clearance. Where setbacks or clearances other than those required in Section 1808.7 are desired, the building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional to demonstrate that the intent of Section 1808.7 would be satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

1803.5.11 Seismic Design Categories C through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted, and shall include an evaluation of all of the following potential geologic and seismic hazards:

1. Slope instability.
2. Liquefaction.
3. Total and differential settlement.
4. Surface displacement due to faulting or seismically induced lateral spreading or lateral flow.

1803.5.12 Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the geotechnical investigation required by Section 1803.5.11 shall also include all of the following as applicable:

1. The determination of dynamic seismic lateral earth pressures on foundation walls and retaining walls supporting more than 6 feet (1.83 m) of backfill height due to design earthquake ground motions.
2. The potential for liquefaction and soil strength loss evaluated for site peak ground acceleration, earthquake magnitude and source characteristics consistent with the maximum considered earthquake ground motions. Peak ground acceleration shall be determined based on one of the following:
   2.1. A site-specific study in accordance with Section 21.5 of ASCE 7.
   2.2. In accordance with Section 11.8.3 of ASCE 7.
3. An assessment of potential consequences of liquefaction and soil strength loss including, but not limited to, the following:

3.1. Estimation of total and differential settlement.
3.2. Lateral soil movement.
3.3. Lateral soil loads on foundations.
3.4. Reduction in foundation soil-bearing capacity and lateral soil reaction.
3.5. Soil downdrag and reduction in axial and lateral soil reaction for pile foundations.
3.6. Increases in soil lateral pressures on retaining walls.
3.7. Flotation of buried structures.

4. Discussion of mitigation measures such as, but not limited to, the following:

4.1. Selection of appropriate foundation type and depths.
4.2. Selection of appropriate structural systems to accommodate anticipated displacements and forces.
4.3. Ground stabilization.
4.4. Any combination of these measures and how they shall be considered in the design of the structure.

1803.6 Reporting. Where geotechnical investigations are required, a written report of the investigations shall be submitted to the building official by the permit applicant at the time of permit application. This geotechnical report shall include, but need not be limited to, the following:

1. A plot showing the location of the soil investigations.
2. A complete record of the soil boring and penetration test logs and soil samples.
3. A record of the soil profile.
4. Elevation of the water table, if encountered.
5. Recommendations for foundation type and design criteria, including but not limited to: bearing capacity of natural or compacted soil; provisions to mitigate the effects of expansive soils; mitigation of the effects of liquefaction, differential settlement and varying soil strength; and the effects of adjacent loads.
7. Deep foundation information in accordance with Section 1803.5.5.
8. Special design and construction provisions for foundations of structures founded on expansive soils, as necessary.
9. Compacted fill material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.8.
10. Controlled low-strength material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.9.

SECTION 1804
EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL

1804.1 Excavation near foundations. Excavation for any purpose shall not reduce lateral support from any foundation or adjacent foundation without first underpinning or protecting the foundation against detrimental lateral or vertical movement, or both.

1804.2 Underpinning. Where underpinning is chosen to provide the protection or support of adjacent structures, the underpinning system shall be designed and installed in accordance with provisions of this chapter and Chapter 33, and special inspections shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 17.

1804.2.1 Underpinning sequencing. Underpinning shall be installed in a sequential manner that protects the neighboring structure and the working construction site. The sequence of installation shall be identical in the approved construction documents.

1804.3 Placement of backfill. The excavation outside the foundation shall be backfilled with soil that is free of organic material, construction debris, cobbles and boulders or with a controlled low-strength material (CLSM). The backfill shall be placed in lifts and compacted in a manner that does not damage the foundation or the waterproofing or dampproofing material.

Exception: CLSM need not be compacted.

1804.4 Site grading. The ground immediately adjacent to the foundation shall be sloped away from the building at a slope of not less than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. If physical obstructions or lot lines prohibit 10 feet (3048 mm) of horizontal distance, a 5-percent slope shall be provided to an approved alternative method of diverting water away from the foundation. Swales used for this purpose shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent where located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped a minimum of 2 percent away from the building.

Exception: Where climatic or soil conditions warrant, the slope of the ground away from the building foundation shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

The procedure used to establish the final ground level adjacent to the foundation shall account for additional settlement of the backfill.

1804.5 Grading and fill in flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, grading, fill, or both, shall not be approved:

1. Unless such fill is placed, compacted and sloped to minimize shifting, slumping and erosion during the rise and fall of flood water and, as applicable, wave action.
2. In floodways, unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed by a registered design professional in accordance with standard engineering practice that the proposed grading or fill, or
SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

both, will not result in any increase in flood levels during the occurrence of the design flood.

3. In coastal high hazard areas, unless such fill is conducted and/or placed to avoid diversion of water and waves toward any building or structure.

4. Where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, unless it has been demonstrated that the cumulative effect of the proposed flood hazard area encroachment, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point.

1804.6 Compacted fill material. Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material, the compacted fill shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

Exception: Compacted fill material 12 inches (305 mm) in depth or less need not comply with an approved report, provided the in-place dry density is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557. The compaction shall be verified by special inspection in accordance with Section 1705.6.

1804.7 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), the CLSM shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

SECTION 1805
DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING

1805.1 General. Walls or portions thereof that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be waterproofed and dampproofed in accordance with this section, with the exception of those spaces containing groups other than residential and institutional where such omission is not detrimental to the building or occupancy.

Ventilation for crawl spaces shall comply with Section 1203.4.

1805.1.1 Story above grade plane. Where a basement is considered a story above grade plane and the finished ground level adjacent to the basement wall is below the basement floor elevation for 25 percent or more of the perimeter, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2 and a foundation drain shall be installed in accordance with Section 1805.4.2. The foundation drain shall be installed around the portion of the perimeter where the basement floor is below ground level. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.3 and 1805.4.1 shall not apply in this case.

1805.1.2 Under-floor space. The finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall not be located below the bottom of the footings. Where there is evidence that the ground water table rises to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ground level at the outside building perimeter, or that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the ground level of the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished ground level, unless an approved drainage system is provided. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.2, 1805.3 and 1805.4 shall not apply in this case.

1805.1.2.1 Flood hazard areas. For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on at least one side.

Exception: Under-floor spaces of Group R-3 buildings that meet the requirements of FEMA TB 11.

1805.1.3 Ground water control. Where the ground water table is lowered and maintained at an elevation not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the lowest floor, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2. The design of the system to lower the ground water table shall be based on accepted principles of engineering that shall consider, but not necessarily be limited to, permeability of the soil, rate at which water enters the drainage system, rated capacity of pumps, head against which pumps are to operate and the rated capacity of the disposal area of the system.

1805.2 Dampproofing. Where hydrostatic pressure will not occur as determined by Section 1803.5.4, floors and walls for other than wood foundation systems shall be dampproofed in accordance with this section. Wood foundation systems shall be constructed in accordance with AWC PWF.

1805.2.1 Floors. Dampproofing materials for floors shall be installed between the floor and the base course required by Section 1805.4.1, except where a separate floor is provided above a concrete slab.

Where installed beneath the slab, dampproofing shall consist of not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm), or other approved methods or materials. Where permitted to be installed on top of the slab, dampproofing shall consist of mopped-on bitumen, not less than 4-mil (0.004 inch; 0.102 mm) polyethylene, or other approved methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

1805.2.2 Walls. Dampproofing materials for walls shall be installed on the exterior surface of the wall, and shall extend from the top of the footing to above ground level.

Dampproofing shall consist of a bituminous material, 3 pounds per square yard (16 N/m²) of acrylic modified cement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface-bonding mortar complying with ASTM C887, any of the materials permitted for waterproofing by Section 1803.3.2 or other approved methods or materials.

1805.2.2.1 Surface preparation of walls. Prior to application of dampproofing materials on concrete walls, holes and recesses resulting from the removal of form ties shall be sealed with a bituminous material or other approved methods or materials. Unit masonry
walls shall be parged on the exterior surface below ground level with not less than \( \frac{3}{4} \) inch (9.5 mm) of Portland cement mortar. The parging shall be covered at the footing.

**Exception:** Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is approved for direct application to the masonry.

### 1805.3 Waterproofing

Where the ground water investigation required by Section 1803.5.4 indicates that a hydrostatic pressure condition exists, and the design does not include a ground water control system as described in Section 1805.1.3, walls and floors shall be waterproofed in accordance with this section.

#### 1805.3.1 Floors

Floors required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete and designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures to which the floors will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be accomplished by placing a membrane of rubberized asphalt, butyl rubber, fully adhered/fully bonded HDPE or polyolefin composite membrane or not less than 6-mil [0.006 inch (0.152 mm)] polyvinyl chloride with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or other approved materials under the slab. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

#### 1805.3.2 Walls

Walls required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete or masonry and shall be designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures and other lateral loads to which the walls will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be applied from the bottom of the wall to not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the maximum elevation of the ground water table. The remainder of the wall shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2.2. Waterproofing shall consist of two-ply hot-mopped felts, not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyvinyl chloride, 40-mil (0.040 inch; 1.02 mm) polymer-modified asphalt, 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene or other approved methods or materials capable of bridging nonstructural cracks. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

#### 1805.3.3 Joints and penetrations

Joints in walls and floors, joints between the wall and floor and penetrations of the wall and floor shall be made water tight utilizing approved methods and materials.

#### 1805.4 Subsoil drainage system

Where a hydrostatic pressure condition does not exist, dampproofing shall be provided and a base shall be installed under the floor and a drain installed around the foundation perimeter. A subsoil drainage system designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1805.1.3 shall be deemed adequate for lowering the ground-water table.

**1805.4.1 Floor base course.** Floors of basements, except as provided for in Section 1805.1.1, shall be placed over a floor base course not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10 percent of material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

**Exception:** Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a floor base course is not required.

#### 1805.4.2 Foundation drain

A drain shall be placed around the perimeter of a foundation that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10-percent material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. The drain shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing. The thickness shall be such that the bottom of the drain is not higher than the bottom of the base under the floor, and that the top of the drain is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing. The top of the drain shall be covered with an approved filter membrane material. Where a drain tile or perforated pipe is used, the invert of the pipe or tile shall not be higher than the floor elevation. The top of joints or the top of perforations shall be protected with an approved filter membrane material. The pipe or tile shall be placed on not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of gravel or crushed stone complying with Section 1805.4.1, and shall be covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

#### 1805.4.3 Drainage discharge

The floor base and foundation perimeter drain shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an approved drainage system that complies with the Plumbing Code.

**Exception:** Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a dedicated drainage system is not required.

---

**SECTION 1806**

**PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF SOILS**

#### 1806.1 Load combinations

The presumptive load-bearing values provided in Table 1806.2 shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in Section 1605.3. The values of vertical foundation pressure and lateral bearing pressure given in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by one-third where used with the alternative basic load combinations of Section 1605.3.2 that include wind or earthquake loads.

#### 1806.2 Presumptive load-bearing values

The load-bearing values used in design for supporting soils near the surface shall not exceed the values specified in Table 1806.2 unless data to substantiate the use of higher values are submitted and approved. Where the building official has reason to doubt the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil, the requirements of Section 1803.5.2 shall be satisfied.

Presumptive load-bearing values shall apply to materials with similar physical characteristics and dispositions. Mud, organic silt, organic clays, peat or unprepared fill shall not be
assumed to have a presumptive load-bearing capacity unless data to substantiate the use of such a value are submitted.

**Exception:** A presumptive load-bearing capacity shall be permitted to be used where the building official deems the load-bearing capacity of mud, organic silt or unprepared fill is adequate for the support of lightweight or temporary structures.

1806.3 Lateral load resistance. Where the presumptive values of Table 1806.2 are used to determine resistance to lateral loads, the calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1806.3.1 through 1806.3.4.

1806.3.1 Combined resistance. The total resistance to lateral loads shall be permitted to be determined by combining the values derived from the lateral bearing pressure and the lateral sliding resistance specified in Table 1806.2.

1806.3.2 Lateral sliding resistance limit. For clay, sandy clay, silty clay, silt and sandy silt, in no case shall the lateral sliding resistance exceed one-half the dead load.

1806.3.3 Increase for depth. The lateral bearing pressures specified in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by the tabular value for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth to a maximum of 15 times the tabular value.

1806.3.4 Increase for poles. Isolated poles for uses such as flagpoles or signs and poles used to support buildings that are not adversely affected by a 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) motion at the ground surface due to short-term lateral loads shall be permitted to be designed using lateral bearing pressures equal to two times the tabular values.

### SECTION 1807
**FOUNDATION WALLS, RETAINING WALLS AND EMBEDDED POSTS AND POLES**

1807.1 Foundation walls. Foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1807.1.1 through 1807.1.6. Foundation walls shall be supported by foundations designed in accordance with Section 1808.

1807.1.1 Design lateral soil loads. Foundation walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads set forth in Section 1610.

1807.1.2 Unbalanced backfill height. Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab on grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, the unbalanced backfill height shall be permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab.

1807.1.3 Rubble stone foundation walls. Foundation walls of rough or random rubble stone shall not be less than 16 inches (406 mm) thick. Rubble stone shall not be used for foundation walls of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

1807.1.4 Permanent wood foundation systems. Permanent wood foundation systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with AWC PWF. Lumber and plywood shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and Section 5.2) and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2303.1.9.1.

1807.1.5 Concrete and masonry foundation walls. Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 19 or 21, as applicable.

**Exception:** Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1807.1.6.

1807.1.6 Prescriptive design of concrete and masonry foundation walls. Concrete and masonry foundation walls that are laterally supported at the top and bottom shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

1807.1.6.1 Foundation wall thickness. The thickness of prescriptively designed foundation walls shall not be less than the thickness of the wall supported, except that foundation walls of at least 8-inch (203 mm) nomi-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS OF MATERIALS</th>
<th>VERTICAL FOUNDATION PRESSURE (psf)</th>
<th>LATERAL BEARING PRESSURE (psf/ft below natural grade)</th>
<th>COEFFICIENT OF FRICTION</th>
<th>COHESION (psf)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Crystalline bedrock</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sedimentary and foliated rock</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sandy gravel and/or gravel (GW and GP)</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC)</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt (CL, ML, MH and CH)</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. Coefficient to be multiplied by the dead load.

b. Cohesion value to be multiplied by the contact area, as limited by Section 1806.3.2.
nal width shall be permitted to support brick-veneered frame walls and 10-inch-wide (254 mm) cavity walls provided the requirements of Section 1807.1.6.2 or 1807.1.6.3 are met.

1807.1.6.2 Concrete foundation walls. Concrete foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.2.

2. The size and spacing of vertical reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2 are based on the use of reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (414 MPa). Vertical reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi (276 MPa) or 50,000 psi (345 MPa) shall be permitted, provided the same size bar is used and the spacing shown in the table is reduced by multiplying the spacing by 0.67 or 0.83, respectively.

3. Vertical reinforcement, when required, shall be placed nearest the inside face of the wall a distance, \(d\), from the outside face (soil face) of the wall. The distance, \(d\), is equal to the wall thickness, \(t\), minus 1.25 inches (32 mm) plus one-half the bar diameter, \(d_b\), \[d = t - (1.25 + d_b / 2).\] The reinforcement shall be placed within a tolerance of \(\pm 1/8\) inch (9.5 mm) where \(d\) is less than or equal to 8 inches (203 mm) or \(\pm 1/2\) inch (12.7 mm) where \(d\) is greater than 8 inches (203 mm).

4. In lieu of the reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2, smaller reinforcing bar sizes with closer spacings that provide an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per unit length shall be permitted.

### TABLE 1807.1.6.2

**CONCRETE FOUNDATION WALLS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)</th>
<th>MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD (psf per foot of depth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum wall thickness (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.2.

c. “PC” means plain concrete.

d. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).

e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
5. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the inside face of the wall shall not be less than \(\frac{3}{4}\) inch (19.1 mm). Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the outside face of the wall shall not be less than \(1\frac{1}{2}\) inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) for larger bars.

6. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength, \(f'_{c}\), of not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).

7. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed \(1.2 t f'_{c}\), where \(t\) is the specified wall thickness in inches.

### 1807.1.6.2.1 Seismic requirements

Based on the seismic design category assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, concrete foundation walls designed using Table 1807.1.6.2 shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. **Seismic Design Categories A and B.** Not less than one No. 5 bar shall be provided around window, door and similar sized openings. The bar shall be anchored to develop \(f_y\) in tension at the corners of openings.

2. **Seismic Design Categories C, D, E and F.** Tables shall not be used except as allowed for plain concrete members in Section 1905.1.7.

### 1807.1.6.3 Masonry foundation walls

Masonry foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry walls or Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4) for masonry walls with reinforcement.

2. Vertical reinforcement shall have a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (414 MPa).

3. The specified location of the reinforcement shall equal or exceed the effective depth distance, \(d\), noted in Tables 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) and 1807.1.6.3(4) and shall be measured from the face of the exterior (soil) side of the wall to the center of the vertical reinforcement. The reinforcement shall be placed within the tolerances specified in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, Article 3.4.B.11, of the specified location.

4. Grout shall comply with Section 2103.3.

5. Concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C90.

6. Clay masonry units shall comply with ASTM C652 for hollow brick, except compliance with ASTM C62 or ASTM C216 shall be permitted where solid masonry units are installed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT (feet)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10 (solidc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12 (solidc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12 (solidc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9c</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. Solid grouted hollow units or solid masonry units.

d. A design in compliance with Chapter 21 or reinforcement in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(2) is required.

e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

f. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).
7. Masonry units shall be laid in running bond and installed with Type M or S mortar in accordance with Section 2103.2.1.

8. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed $1.2 t f_m'$ where $t$ is the specified wall thickness in inches and $f_m'$ is the specified compressive strength of masonry in pounds per square inch.

9. At least 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry shall be provided at girder supports at the top of hollow masonry unit foundation walls.

10. Corbeling of masonry shall be in accordance with Section 2104.1. Where an 8-inch (203 mm) wall is corbeled, the top corbel shall not extend higher than the bottom of the floor framing and shall be a full course of headers at least 6 inches (152 mm) in length or the top course bed joint shall be tied to the vertical wall projection. The tie shall be $W2.8$ (4.8 mm) and spaced at a maximum horizontal distance of 36 inches (914 mm). The hollow space behind the corbelled masonry shall be filled with mortar or grout.

1807.1.6.3.1 Alternative foundation wall reinforcement. In lieu of the reinforcement provisions for masonry foundation walls in Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4), alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per linear foot (mm) of wall shall be permitted to be used, provided the spacing of reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) and reinforcing bar sizes do not exceed No. 11.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHTc (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>Design lateral soil loadd (psf per foot of depth)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30e</td>
<td>45e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-8</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-8e</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
<td>#7 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-4</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-4e</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
<td>#7 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-4e</td>
<td>#7 at 48</td>
<td>#8 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 48</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 48</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-0e</td>
<td>#6 at 48</td>
<td>#7 at 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10-0e</td>
<td>#7 at 48</td>
<td>#8 at 48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.

d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.
1807.1.6.3.2 Seismic requirements. Based on the seismic design category assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, masonry foundation walls designed using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. **Seismic Design Categories A and B.** No additional seismic requirements.

2. **Seismic Design Category C.** A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.3 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

3. **Seismic Design Category D.** A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.4 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

4. **Seismic Design Categories E and F.** A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.5 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

### TABLE 1807.1.6.3(3)

#### 10-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE d \( \geq \) 6.75 INCHES \(^{a, b, c}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT(^s) (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>Design lateral soil load(^e) (psf per foot of depth)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30(^s)</td>
<td>45(^s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
<td>#6 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-8</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-8(^e)</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
<td>#6 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-4</td>
<td>4-0 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 56</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 56</td>
<td>#6 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-4(^e)</td>
<td>#6 at 56</td>
<td>#7 at 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10-0(^e)</td>
<td>#7 at 56</td>
<td>#8 at 56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 1.157 kPa/m.

- a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
- b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.
- c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.
- d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
- e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.
apply to this requirement. Instead, design shall be based on 0.7 times nominal earthquake loads, 1.0 times other nominal loads, and investigation with one or more of the variable loads set to zero. The safety factor against lateral sliding shall be taken as the available soil resistance at the base of the retaining wall foundation divided by the net lateral force applied to the retaining wall.

**Exception:** Where earthquake loads are included, the minimum safety factor for retaining wall sliding and overturning shall be 1.1.

### 1807.3 Embedded posts and poles

Designs to resist both axial and lateral loads employing posts or poles as columns embedded in earth or in concrete footings in earth shall be in accordance with Sections 1807.3.1 through 1807.3.3.

#### 1807.3.1 Limitations

- The design procedures outlined in this section are subject to the following limitations:
  1. The frictional resistance for structural walls and slabs on silts and clays shall be limited to one-half of the normal force imposed on the soil by the weight of the footing or slab.
  2. Posts embedded in earth shall not be used to provide lateral support for structural or nonstructural materials such as plaster, masonry or concrete unless bracing is provided that develops the limited deflection required.

Wood poles shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for sawn timber posts (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) and for round timber posts (Commodity Specification B, Use Category 4B).

#### 1807.3.2 Design criteria

- The depth to resist lateral loads shall be determined using the design criteria established in Sections 1807.3.2.1 through 1807.3.2.3, or by other methods approved by the building official.

### TABLE 1807.1.6.3(4)

**12-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE d ≥ 8.75 INCHES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHTa (feet-inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Design lateral soil loadb (psf per foot of depth)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>30°</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-8</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-8c</td>
<td>#5 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-4</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-4c</td>
<td>#6 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>4 (or less)</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>#4 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>#5 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9-0c</td>
<td>#6 at 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10-0c</td>
<td>#7 at 72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.
b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.
c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.
d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.
e. Where unbalanced backfill exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE 495
required to resist lateral loads where no lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or rigid ground surface pavement, and where no lateral constraint is provided above the ground surface, such as by a structural diaphragm.

\[
d = 0.5A\left\{1 + \left[1 + (4.36h/A)\right]^{1/2}\right\} \quad \text{(Equation 18-1)}
\]

where:

\[
A = \frac{2.34P}{S_1b}
\]

\[
b = \text{Diameter of round post or footing or diagonal dimension of square post or footing, feet (m)}.
\]

\[
d = \text{Depth of embedment in earth in feet (m) but not over 12 feet (3658 mm) for purpose of computing lateral pressure}.
\]

\[
h = \text{Distance in feet (m) from ground surface to point of application of “P.”}
\]

\[
P = \text{Applied lateral force in pounds (kN)}.
\]

\[
S_1 = \text{Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth of one-third the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (psf) (kPa)}.
\]

1807.3.2.2 Constrained. The following formula shall be used to determine the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or pavement.

\[
d = \frac{4.25Ph}{S_3b} \quad \text{(Equation 18-2)}
\]

or alternatively

\[
d = \frac{4.25M_g}{S_3b} \quad \text{(Equation 18-3)}
\]

where:

\[
M_g = \text{Moment in the post at grade, in foot-pounds (kN-m)}.
\]

\[
S_3 = \text{Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth equal to the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (psf) (kPa)}.
\]

1807.3.2.3 Vertical load. The resistance to vertical loads shall be determined using the vertical foundation pressure set forth in Table 1806.2.

1807.3.3 Backfill. The backfill in the annular space around columns not embedded in poured footings shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Backfill shall be of concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,000 psi (13.8 MPa). The hole shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diameter of the column at its bottom or 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diagonal dimension of a square or rectangular column.

2. Backfill shall be of clean sand. The sand shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping in layers not more than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth.

3. Backfill shall be of controlled low-strength material (CLSM).

SECTION 1808
FOUNDATIONS

1808.1 General. Foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1808.2 through 1808.9. Shallow foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1809. Deep foundations shall also satisfy the requirements of Section 1810.

1808.2 Design for capacity and settlement. Foundations shall be so designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is minimized. Foundations in areas with expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1808.6.

1808.3 Design loads. Foundations shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Section 1605.2 or 1605.3. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Sections 1607.10 and 1607.12, shall be permitted to be used in the design of foundations.

1808.3.1 Seismic overturning. Where foundations are proportioned using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 or 1605.3.1, and the computation of seismic overturning effects is by equivalent lateral force analysis or modal analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7.

1808.3.2 Surcharge. No fill or other surcharge loads shall be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or the surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that will be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against detrimental lateral or vertical movement or both.

Exception: Minor grading for landscaping purposes shall be permitted where done with walk-behind equipment, where the grade is not increased more than 1 foot (305 mm) from original design grade or where approved by the building official.

1808.4 Vibratory loads. Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation, consideration shall be given in the foundation design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

1808.5 Shifting or moving soils. Where it is known that the shallow subsoils are of a shifting or moving character, foundations shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.
1808.6 Design for expansive soils. Foundations for buildings and structures founded on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2.

**Exception:** Foundation design need not comply with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2 where one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. The soil is removed in accordance with Section 1808.6.3.
2. The building official approves stabilization of the soil in accordance with Section 1808.6.4.

1808.6.1 Foundations. Foundations placed on or within the active zone of expansive soils shall be designed to resist differential volume changes and to prevent structural damage to the supported structure. Deflection and racking of the supported structure shall be limited to that which will not interfere with the usability and serviceability of the structure.

Foundations placed below where volume change occurs or below expansive soil shall comply with the following provisions:

1. Foundations extending into or penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to prevent uplift of the supported structure.
2. Foundations penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to resist forces exerted on the foundation due to soil volume changes or shall be isolated from the expansive soil.

1808.6.2 Slab-on-ground foundations. Moments, shears and deflections for use in designing slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be determined in accordance with WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations or PTI DC 10.5. Using the moments, shears and deflections determined above, nonprestressed slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations and post-tensioned slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with PTI DC 10.5. It shall be permitted to analyze and design such slabs by other methods that account for soil-structure interaction, the deformed shape of the soil support, the plate or stiffened plate action of the slab as well as both center lift and edge lift conditions. Such alternative methods shall be rational and the basis for all aspects and parameters of the method shall be available for peer review.

1808.6.3 Removal of expansive soil. Where expansive soil is removed in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be removed to a depth sufficient to ensure a constant moisture content in the remaining soil. Fill material shall not contain expansive soils and shall comply with Section 1804.5 or 1804.6.

**Exception:** Expansive soil need not be removed to the depth of constant moisture, provided the confining pressure in the expansive soil created by the fill and supported structure exceeds the swell pressure.

1808.6.4 Stabilization. Where the active zone of expansive soils is stabilized in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be stabilized by chemical, dewatering, presaturation or equivalent techniques.

1808.7 Foundations on or adjacent to slopes. The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall comply with Sections 1808.7.1 through 1808.7.5.

1808.7.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes. In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.

**For SI:** 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 1808.7.1 FOUNDATION CLEARANCES FROM SLOPES**
1808.7.2 Foundation setback from descending slope surface. Foundations on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and setback from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the foundation without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

1808.7.3 Pools. The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.

1808.7.4 Foundation elevation. On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an approved drainage device a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the building official, provided it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

1808.7.5 Alternate setback and clearance. Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the building official. The building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.5.10.

1808.8 Concrete foundations. The design, materials and construction of concrete foundations shall comply with Sections 1808.8.1 through 1808.8.6 and the provisions of Chapter 19.

Exception: Where concrete footings supporting walls of light-frame construction are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7, a specific design in accordance with Chapter 19 is not required.

1808.8.1 Concrete or grout strength and mix proportioning. Concrete or grout in foundations shall have a specified compressive strength ($f_{cu}$) not less than the largest applicable value indicated in Table 1808.8.1.

Where concrete is placed through a funnel hopper at the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete mix shall be designed and proportioned so as to produce a cohesive workable mix having a slump of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not more than 8 inches (204 mm). Where concrete or grout is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable mixture.

1808.8.2 Concrete cover. The concrete cover provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement in foundations shall be no less than the largest applicable value specified in Table 1808.8.2. Longitudinal bars spaced less than 1/2 inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered bundled bars for which the concrete cover provided shall also be no less than that required by Section 20.6.1.3.4 of ACI 318. Concrete cover shall be measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the steel to which the cover requirement applies. Where concrete is placed in a temporary or permanent casing or a mandrel, the inside face of the casing or mandrel shall be considered the concrete surface.

1808.8.3 Placement of concrete. Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-size foundation. Concrete shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method approved by the building official is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by approved means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water. Where depositing concrete from the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete shall be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes or tubes or placed in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the element.

1808.8.4 Protection of concrete. Concrete foundations shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than five days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

1808.8.5 Forming of concrete. Concrete foundations are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the building official, soil conditions do not require formwork. Where formwork is required, it shall be in accordance with Section 26.11 of ACI 318.

1808.8.6 Seismic requirements. See Section 1905 for additional requirements for foundations of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318 shall apply where not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 1808 through 1810.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction and two stories or less above grade plane are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318.

2. Section 18.13.4.3(a) of ACI 318 shall not apply.

1808.9 Vertical masonry foundation elements. Vertical masonry foundation elements that are not foundation piers as defined in Section 202 shall be designed as piers, walls or columns, as applicable, in accordance with TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

SECTION 1809
SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

1809.1 General. Shallow foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1809.2 through 1809.13.
1809.2 Supporting soils. Shallow foundations shall be built on undisturbed soil, compacted fill material or controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Compacted fill material shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.5. CLSM shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.6.

1809.3 Stepped footings. The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall be permitted to have a slope not exceeding one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footing or where the surface of the ground slopes more than one unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

1809.4 Depth and width of footings. The minimum depth of footings below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 12 inches (305 mm). Where applicable, the requirements of Section 1809.5 shall also be satisfied. The minimum width of footings shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

1809.5 Frost protection. Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.
2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.
3. Erecting on solid rock.

Exception: Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be required to be protected:

1. Assigned to Risk Category I.
2. Area of 600 square feet (56 m²) or less for light-frame construction or 400 square feet (37 m²) or less for other than light-frame construction.
3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

Shallow foundations shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a permanent character.

1809.6 Location of footings. Footings on granular soil shall be so located that the line drawn between the lower edges of adjoining footings shall not have a slope steeper than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with the horizontal, unless the material supporting the higher footing is braced or retained or otherwise laterally supported in an approved manner or a greater slope has been properly established by engineering analysis.

1809.7 Prescriptive footings for light-frame construction. Where a specific design is not provided, concrete or masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.
### TABLE 1809.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF FLOORS SUPPORTED BY THE FOOTING</th>
<th>WIDTH OF FOOTING (inches)</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF FOOTING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Depth of footings shall be in accordance with Section 1809.4.
b. The ground under the floor shall be permitted to be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.
c. Interior stud-bearing walls shall be permitted to be supported by isolated footings. The footing width and length shall be twice the width shown in this table, and footings shall be spaced not more than 6 feet on center.
d. See Section 1905 for additional requirements for concrete footings of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
e. For thickness of foundation walls, see Section 1807.1.6.
f. Footings shall be permitted to support a roof in addition to the stipulated number of floors. Footings supporting roof only shall be as required for supporting one floor.
g. Plain concrete footings for Group R-3 occupancies shall be permitted to be 6 inches thick.

#### 1809.8 Plain concrete footings

The edge thickness of plain concrete footings supporting walls of other than light-frame construction shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm) where placed on soil or rock.

**Exception:** For plain concrete footings supporting Group R-3 occupancies, the edge thickness is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend beyond a distance greater than the thickness of the footing on either side of the supported wall.

#### 1809.9 Masonry-unit footings

The design, materials and construction of masonry-unit footings shall comply with Sections 1809.9.1 and 1809.9.2, and the provisions of Chapter 21.

**Exception:** Where a specific design is not provided, masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

#### 1809.10 Pier and curtain wall foundations

Except in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F, pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to be used to support light-frame construction not more than two stories above grade plane, provided the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings bonded integrally with the exterior wall footings.
2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal or 3/4 inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center (o.c.).
3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 21 and the following:
   3.1. The unsupported height of the masonry piers shall not exceed 10 times their least dimension.
   3.2. Where structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for piers supporting beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with concrete or Type M or S mortar.
      **Exception:** Unfilled hollow piers shall be permitted where the unsupported height of the pier is not more than four times its least dimension.
   3.3. Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete or the cavities of the top course shall be filled with concrete or grout.
4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood frame walls and floors shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.
5. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry, nor 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.

#### 1809.11 Steel grillage footings

Grillage footings of structural steel elements shall be separated with approved steel spacers and be entirely encased in concrete with at least 6 inches (152 mm) on the bottom and at least 4 inches (102 mm) at all other points. The spaces between the shapes shall be completely filled with concrete or cement grout.

#### 1809.12 Timber footings

Timber footings shall be permitted for buildings of Type V construction and as otherwise approved by the building official. Such footings shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B). Treated timbers are not required where placed entirely below permanent water level, or where used as capping for wood piles that project above the water level over submerged or marsh lands. The compressive stresses perpendicular to grain in untreated timber footings supported upon treated piles shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable stresses for the species and grade of timber as specified in the ANSI/AWC NDS.

#### 1809.13 Footing seismic ties

Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Section 1613.3.2 as Site Class E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger footing design gravity load times the seismic coeffi-
Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed, detailed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810.1 through 1810.4.

1810.1 General. Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810.1 through 1810.4.

1810.1.1 Geotechnical investigation. Deep foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.

1810.1.2 Use of existing deep foundation elements. Deep foundation elements left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the building official, which indicates that the elements are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such elements shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such elements shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or redriving data.

1810.1.3 Deep foundation elements classified as columns. Deep foundation elements standing unbraced in air, water or fluid soils shall be classified as columns and designed as such in accordance with the provisions of this code from their top down to the point where adequate lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

Exception: Where the unsupported height to least horizontal dimension of a cast-in-place deep foundation element does not exceed three, it shall be permitted to design and construct such an element as a pedestal in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.1.4 Special types of deep foundations. The use of types of deep foundation elements not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the building official, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such elements. The allowable stresses for materials shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

1810.2 Analysis. The analysis of deep foundations for design shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.2.1 through 1810.2.5.

1810.2.1 Lateral support. Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to prevent buckling of deep foundation elements and to permit the design of the elements in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

Where deep foundation elements stand unbraced in air, water or fluid soils, it shall be permitted to consider them laterally supported at a point 5 feet (1524 mm) into stiff soil or 10 feet (3048 mm) into soft soil unless otherwise approved by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional.

1810.2.2 Stability. Deep foundation elements shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more elements connected by a rigid cap shall be considered braced, provided that the elements are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees (1 rad) apart. A two-element group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two elements. Methods used to brace deep foundation elements shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

Deep foundation elements supporting walls shall be placed alternately in lines spaced at least 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the wall load carried, unless effective measures are taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the foundation elements are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability.

Exceptions:

1. Isolated cast-in-place deep foundation elements without lateral bracing shall be permitted where the least horizontal dimension is no less than 2 feet (610 mm), adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 is provided for the entire height and the height does not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.

2. A single row of deep foundation elements without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane or 35 feet (10 668 mm) in building height, provided the centers of the elements are located within the width of the supported wall.

1810.2.3 Settlement. The settlement of a single deep foundation element or group thereof shall be estimated based on approved methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.2.4 Lateral loads. The moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design of deep foundation elements shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as determined by a registered design professional. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the element to its least horizontal dimension is less than or equal to six, it shall be permitted to assume the element is rigid.

1810.2.4.1 Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation elements on Site Class E or F sites, as determined in Section 1613.3.2, shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-foundation-structure
interaction coupled with foundation element deformations associated with earthquake loads imparted to the foundation by the structure.

**Exception:** Deep foundation elements that satisfy the following additional detailing requirements shall be deemed to comply with the curvature capacity requirements of this section.

1. Precast prestressed concrete piles detailed in accordance with Section 1810.3.8.3.3.

2. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 extending the full length of the element and detailed in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 as required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2.2.

### 1810.2.5 Group effects

The analysis shall include group effects on lateral behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements in the direction of lateral force is less than eight times the least horizontal dimension of an element. The analysis shall include group effects on axial behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements is less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element. Group effects shall be evaluated using a generally accepted method of analysis; the analysis for uplift of grouped elements with center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.6.

### 1810.3 Design and detailing

Deep foundations shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.1 through 1810.3.12.

#### 1810.3.1 Design conditions

Design of deep foundations shall include the design conditions specified in Sections 1810.3.1.1 through 1810.3.1.6, as applicable.

1. **Seismic hooks.** Where concrete deep foundations are laterally supported in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 for the entire height and applied forces cause bending moments no greater than those resulting from accidental eccentricities, structural design of the element using the load combinations of Section 1605.3 and the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted. Otherwise, the structural design of concrete deep foundation elements shall use the load combinations of Section 1605.2 and approved strength design methods.

2. **Composite elements.** Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section of the composite assembly shall satisfy the applicable requirements of this code, and the maximum allowable load in each section shall be limited by the structural capacity of that section.

3. **Mislational.** The foundation or superstructure shall be designed to resist the effects of the mislocation of any deep foundation element by no less than 3 inches (76 mm). To resist the effects of mislocation, compressive overload of deep foundation elements to 110 percent of the allowable design load shall be permitted.

4. **Driven piles.** Driven piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

5. **Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by installation into the ground and service loads.

6. **Casings.** Temporary and permanent casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist collapse and sufficiently watertight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Where a permanent casing is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 1810.3.2.5. Horizontal joints in the casing shall be spliced in accordance with Section 1810.3.6.

### 1810.3.2 Materials

The materials used in deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1810.3.2.1 through 1810.3.2.8, as applicable.

1. **Concrete.** Where concrete is cast in a steel pipe or where an enlarged base is formed by compacting concrete, the maximum size for coarse aggregate shall be \( \frac{3}{8} \) inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

2. **ACI 318 Equation (25.7.3.3).** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the ends of hoops, spirals and ties used in concrete deep foundation elements shall be terminated with seismic hooks, as defined in ACI 318, and shall be turned into the confined concrete core.

3. **ACI 318 Equation (25.7.3.3).** Where this chapter requires detailing of concrete deep foundation elements in accordance with Section 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318, compliance with Equation (25.7.3.3) of ACI 318 shall not be required.

4. **Prestressing steel.** Prestressing steel shall conform to ASTM A416.

5. **Steel.** Structural steel H-piles and structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A6. Steel pipe piles shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A252. Fully welded steel piles shall be fabricated from plates that conform to the material requirements in ASTM A36, ASTM A283, ASTM A572, ASTM A588 or ASTM A690.

6. **Timber.** Timber deep foundation elements shall be designed as piles or poles in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS. Round timber elements shall conform to ASTM D25. Sawn timber elements shall conform to DOC PS-20.

7. **Preservative treatment.** Timber deep foundation elements used to support permanent structures shall be treated in accordance with this section unless it is established that the tops of the
untreated timber elements will be below the lowest ground water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative and minimum final retention shall be in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification E, Use Category 4C) for round timber elements and AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) for sawn timber elements. Preservative-treated timber elements shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an approved agency. Element cutoffs shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4.

1810.3.2.5 Protection of materials. Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on the materials used in deep foundation elements because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the elements shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes approved by the building official. Protective materials shall be applied to the elements so as not to be rendered ineffective by installation. The effectiveness of such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

1810.3.2.6 Allowable stresses. The allowable stresses for materials used in deep foundation elements shall not exceed those specified in Table 1810.3.2.6.  

1810.3.2.7 Increased allowable compressive stress for cased cast-in-place elements. The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall be permitted to be increased as specified in Table 1810.3.2.6 for those portions of permanently cased cast-in-place elements that satisfy all of the following conditions:

1. The design shall not use the casing to resist any portion of the axial load imposed.
2. The casing shall have a sealed tip and be mandrel driven.
3. The thickness of the casing shall not be less than manufacturer’s standard gage No.14 (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm).
4. The casing shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.
5. The ratio of steel yield strength ($F_y$) to specified compressive strength ($f'_c$) shall not be less than six.
6. The nominal diameter of the element shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

1810.3.2.8 Justification of higher allowable stresses. Use of allowable stresses greater than those specified in Section 1810.3.2.6 shall be permitted where supporting elements are fabricated under the conditions specified for increasing the allowable compressive stress for cased cast-in-place elements.  

### TABLE 1810.3.2.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL TYPE AND CONDITION</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS $^a$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Concrete or grout in compression $^b$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-place with a permanent casing in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.7</td>
<td>$0.4 f'_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-place in a pipe, tube, other permanent casing or rock</td>
<td>$0.33 f'_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-in-place without a permanent casing</td>
<td>$0.3 f'_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precast non prestressed</td>
<td>$0.33 f'_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precast prestressed</td>
<td>$0.33 f'<em>c - 0.27 f</em>{pc}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Non prestressed reinforcement in compression</td>
<td>$0.4 f_y \leq 30,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Steel in compression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cores within concrete-filled pipes or tubes</td>
<td>$0.5 F_y \leq 32,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8</td>
<td>$0.5 F_y \leq 32,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipes or tubes for micropiles</td>
<td>$0.4 F_y \leq 32,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other pipes, tubes or H-piles</td>
<td>$0.35 F_y \leq 16,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helical piles</td>
<td>$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Non prestressed reinforcement in tension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Within micropiles</td>
<td>$0.6 f_y$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other conditions</td>
<td>$0.5 f_y \leq 24,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Steel in tension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8</td>
<td>$0.5 F_y \leq 32,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other pipes, tubes or H-piles</td>
<td>$0.35 F_y \leq 16,000$ psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helical piles</td>
<td>$0.6 F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Timber</td>
<td>In accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. $f'_c$ is the specified compressive strength of the concrete or grout; $f_y$ is the compressive stress on the gross concrete section due to effective prestress forces only; $f_y$ is the specified yield strength of reinforcement; $F_y$ is the specified minimum yield stress of steel; $F_u$ is the specified minimum tensile stress of structural steel.*

*b. The stresses specified apply to the gross cross-sectional area within the concrete surface. Where a temporary or permanent casing is used, the inside face of the casing shall be considered the concrete surface.
SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the building official. Such substantiating data shall include the following:

1. A geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.
2. Load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2, regardless of the load supported by the element.

The design and installation of the deep foundation elements shall be under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations who shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements as installed satisfy the design criteria.

1810.3.3 Determination of allowable loads. The allowable axial and lateral loads on deep foundation elements shall be determined by an approved formula, load tests or method of analysis.

1810.3.3.1 Allowable axial load. The allowable axial load on a deep foundation element shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1810.3.3.1.1 through 1810.3.3.1.9.

1810.3.3.1.1 Driving criteria. The allowable compressive load on any driven deep foundation element where determined by the application of an approved driving formula shall not exceed 40 tons (356 kN). For allowable loads above 40 tons (356 kN), the wave equation method of analysis shall be used to estimate driveability for both driving stresses and net displacement per blow at the ultimate load. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven elements. The use of a follower is permitted only with the approval of the building official. The introduction of fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

1810.3.3.1.2 Load tests. Where design compressive loads are greater than those determined using the allowable stresses specified in Section 1810.3.2.6, where the design load for any deep foundation element is in doubt, or where cast-in-place deep foundation elements have an enlarged base formed either by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base, control test elements shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1143 or ASTM D4945. At least one element shall be load tested in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the building official, additional elements shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test element as assessed by one of the published methods listed in Section 1810.3.3.1.3 with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a registered design professional with consideration given to tolerable total and differential settlements at design load in accordance with Section 1810.2.3. In subsequent installation of the balance of deep foundation elements, all elements shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to that of the control element where such elements are of the same type, size and relative length as the test element; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test element; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test element; and, for driven elements, where the rate of penetration (e.g., net displacement per blow) of such elements is equal to or less than that of the test element driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance.

1810.3.3.1.3 Load test evaluation methods. It shall be permitted to evaluate load tests of deep foundation elements using any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.
2. Brinch-Hansen 90-percent Criterion.
4. Other methods approved by the building official.

1810.3.3.1.4 Allowable frictional resistance. The assumed frictional resistance developed by any uncased cast-in-place deep foundation element shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material at minimum depth as set forth in Table 1806.2, up to a maximum of 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater value is allowed by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as specified in Section 1803 or a greater value is substantiated by a load test in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. Frictional resistance and bearing resistance shall not be assumed to act simultaneously unless determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

1810.3.3.1.5 Uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element. Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element shall be determined by an approved method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 1810.3.3.1.2, using the results of load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689, divided by a factor of safety of two.

Exception: Where uplift is due to wind or seismic loading, the minimum factor of safety shall be two where capacity is determined by an analysis and one and one-half where capacity is determined by load tests.

1810.3.3.1.6 Uplift capacity of grouped deep foundation elements. For grouped deep foundation
elements subjected to uplift, the allowable working uplift load for the group shall be calculated by a generally accepted method of analysis. Where the deep foundation elements in the group are placed at a center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of the largest single element, the allowable working uplift load for the group is permitted to be calculated as the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual allowable working uplift load times the number of elements in the group.
2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the element, plus two-thirds of the ultimate shear resistance along the soil block.

1810.3.3.1.7 Load-bearing capacity. Deep foundation elements shall develop ultimate load capacities of at least twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that no soil layer underlying the designated load-bearing layers causes the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

1810.3.3.1.8 Bent deep foundation elements. The load-bearing capacity of deep foundation elements discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by load testing a representative element.

1810.3.3.1.9 Helical piles. The allowable axial design load, $P_u$, of helical piles shall be determined as follows:

$$ P_u = 0.5 P_u \quad \text{(Equation 18-4)} $$

where $P_u$ is the least value of:

1. Sum of the areas of the helical bearing plates times the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil or rock comprising the bearing stratum.
2. Ultimate capacity determined from well-documented correlations with installation torque.
3. Ultimate capacity determined from load tests.
4. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft.
5. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft couplings.
6. Sum of the ultimate axial capacity of helical bearing plates affixed to pile.

1810.3.3.2 Allowable lateral load. When required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a single deep foundation element or a group thereof shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by lateral load tests to at least twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of the load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25 mm) at the lower of the top of foundation element and the ground surface, unless it can be shown that the predicted lateral movement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

1810.3.4 Subsiding soils. Where deep foundation elements are installed through subsiding fills or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces that may be imposed on the elements by the subsiding upper strata.

Where the influence of subsiding fills is considered as imposing loads on the element, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

1810.3.5 Dimensions of deep foundation elements. The dimensions of deep foundation elements shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.3.5.1 through 1810.3.5.3, as applicable.

1810.3.5.1 Precast. The minimum lateral dimension of precast concrete deep foundation elements shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Corners of square elements shall be chamfered.

1810.3.5.2 Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place. Cast-in-place and grouted-in-place deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

1810.3.5.2.1 Cased. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a permanent casing shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

1810.3.5.2.2 Uncased. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements without a permanent casing shall have a diameter of not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The element length shall not exceed 30 times the average diameter.

Exception: The length of the element is permitted to exceed 30 times the diameter, provided the design and installation of the deep foundations are under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations. The registered design professional shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements were installed in compliance with the approved construction documents.

1810.3.5.2.3 Micropiles. Micropiles shall have an outside diameter of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. The minimum diameter set forth elsewhere in Section 1810.3.5 shall not apply to micropiles.

1810.3.5.3 Steel. Steel deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

1810.3.5.3.1 Structural steel H-piles. Sections of structural steel H-piles shall comply with the requirements for HP shapes in ASTM A6, or the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange
widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.2 Fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates. Sections of fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall not be less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall not be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.3 Structural steel sheet piling. Individual sections of structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the profile indicated by the manufacturer, and shall conform to the general requirements specified by ASTM A6.

1810.3.5.3.4 Steel pipes and tubes. Steel pipes and tubes used as deep foundation elements shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). Where steel pipes or tubes are driven open ended, they shall have a minimum of 0.34 square inch (219 mm$^2$) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer.

Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, they shall have a minimum of 0.34 square inch (219 mm$^2$) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer.

Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall have a wall thickness of not less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (5 mm). The pipe or tube casing for socketed drilled shafts shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a wall thickness of not less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) and a suitable steel driving shoe welded to the bottom; the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the casing.

Exceptions:

1. There is no minimum diameter for steel pipes or tubes used in micropiles.

2. For mandrel-driven pipes or tubes, the minimum wall thickness shall be $\frac{1}{10}$ inch (2.5 mm).

1810.3.5.3.5 Helical piles. Dimensions of the central shaft and the number, size and thickness of helical bearing plates shall be sufficient to support the design loads.

1810.3.6 Splices. Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the deep foundation element during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and for design load combinations. Where deep foundation elements of the same type are being spliced, splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the bending strength of the weaker section. Where deep foundation elements of different materials or different types are being spliced, splices shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section. Where structural steel cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

Splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of an element shall be designed to resist at allowable stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the axial load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the element shall be braced in accordance with Section 1810.2.2 to other deep foundation elements that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

1810.3.6.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F splices of deep foundation elements shall develop the lesser of the following:

1. The nominal strength of the deep foundation element.

2. The axial and shear forces and moments from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.7 Top of element detailing at cutoffs. Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of a deep foundation element, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after cutoff.

1810.3.8 Precast concrete piles. Precast concrete piles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.8.1 through 1810.3.8.3.

1810.3.8.1 Reinforcement. Longitudinal steel shall be arranged in a symmetrical pattern and be laterally tied with steel ties or wire spiral spaced center to center as follows:

1. At not more than 1 inch (25 mm) for the first five ties or spirals at each end; then

2. At not more than 4 inches (102 mm), for the remainder of the first 2 feet (610 mm) from each end; and then
3. At not more than 6 inches (152 mm) elsewhere.

The size of ties and spirals shall be as follows:

1. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 16 inches (406 mm) or less, wire shall not be smaller than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) (No. 5 gage).

2. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of more than 16 inches (406 mm) and less than 20 inches (508 mm), wire shall not be smaller than 0.238 inch (6 mm) (No. 4 gage).

3. For piles having a least horizontal dimension of 20 inches (508 mm) and larger, wire shall not be smaller than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) round or 0.259 inch (6.6 mm) (No. 3 gage).

1810.3.8.2 Precast nonprestressed piles. Precast nonprestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.2.1 through 1810.3.8.2.3.

1810.3.8.2.1 Minimum reinforcement. Longitudinal reinforcement shall consist of at least four bars with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.008.

1810.3.8.2.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories C through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, precast nonprestressed piles shall be reinforced as specified in this section. The minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio shall be 0.01 throughout the length. Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of eight times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bar or 6 inches (152 mm) within a distance of three times the least pile dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) throughout the remainder of the pile.

1810.3.8.2.3 Additional seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, transverse reinforcement shall be in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

1810.3.8.3 Precast prestressed piles. Precast prestressed concrete piles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1810.3.8.3.1 through 1810.3.8.3.3.

1810.3.8.3.1 Effective prestress. The effective prestress in the pile shall not be less than 400 psi (2.76 MPa) for piles up to 30 feet (9144 mm) in length, 550 psi (3.79 MPa) for piles up to 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length and 700 psi (4.83 MPa) for piles greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length.

Effective prestress shall be based on an assumed loss of 30,000 psi (207 MPa) in the prestressing steel. The tensile stress in the prestressing steel shall not exceed the values specified in ACI 318.

1810.3.8.3.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with this section. The volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement shall not be less than the amount required by the following formula for the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

$$ \rho_s = 0.12 \frac{f' c}{f_{sh}} $$

(Equation 18-5)

where:

- $f' c$ = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
- $f_{sh}$ = Yield strength of spiral reinforcement $\leq 85,000$ psi (586 MPa).
- $\rho_s$ = Spiral reinforcement index (vol. spiral/vol. core).

At least one-half the volumetric ratio required by Equation 18-5 shall be provided below the upper 20 feet (6096 mm) of the pile.

1810.3.8.3.3 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, precast prestressed piles shall have transverse reinforcement in accordance with the following:

1. Requirements in ACI 318, Chapter 18, need not apply, unless specifically referenced.

2. Where the total pile length in the soil is 35 feet (10 668 mm) or less, the lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall occur through the length of the pile. Where the pile length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the ductile pile region shall be taken as the greater of 35 feet (10 668 mm) or the distance from the underside of the pile cap to the point of zero curvature plus three times the least pile dimension.

3. In the ductile region, the center-to-center spacing of the spirals or hoop reinforcement shall not exceed one-fifth of the least pile dimension, six times the diameter of the longitudinal strand or 8 inches (203 mm), whichever is smallest.

4. Circular spiral reinforcement shall be spliced by lapping one full turn and bending the end of each spiral to a 90-degree hook or by use of a mechanical or welded splice complying with Section 25.5.7 of ACI 318.

5. Where the transverse reinforcement consists of circular spirals, the volumetric ratio of spi-
ral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region shall comply with the following:

\[ \rho_s = 0.25 \left( \frac{f'_c}{f_yh} \right) \left( \frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1.0 \right) \left[ 0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g) \right] \]  
(Equation 18-6)

but not less than

\[ \rho_s = 0.12 \left( \frac{f'_c}{f_yh} \right) \left[ 0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g) \right] \]  
(Equation 18-7)

and need not exceed:

\[ \rho_s = 0.021 \]  
(Equation 18-8)

where:

- \(A_g\) = Pile cross-sectional area, square inches (\(\text{mm}^2\)).
- \(A_{ch}\) = Core area defined by spiral outside diameter, square inches (\(\text{mm}^2\)).
- \(f'_c\) = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).
- \(f_yh\) = Yield strength of spiral reinforcement \(\leq 85,000\) psi (586 MPa).
- \(P\) = Axial load on pile, pounds (kN), as determined from Equations 16-5 and 16-7.
- \(\rho_s\) = Volumetric ratio (vol. spiral/vol. core).

This required amount of spiral reinforcement is permitted to be obtained by providing an inner and outer spiral.

6. Where transverse reinforcement consists of rectangular hoops and cross ties, the total cross-sectional area of lateral transverse reinforcement in the ductile region with spacing, \(s\), and perpendicular dimension, \(h_c\), shall conform to:

\[ A_{sh} = 0.3s h_c \left( \frac{f'_c}{f_{sh}} \right) \left( \frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1.0 \right) \left[ 0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g) \right] \]  
(Equation 18-9)

but not less than:

\[ A_{sh} = 0.12s h_c \left( \frac{f'_c}{f_{sh}} \right) \left[ 0.5 + 1.4P/(f'_c A_g) \right] \]  
(Equation 18-10)

where:

- \(f_{sh}\) = Yield strength of spiral reinforcement \(\leq 85,000\) psi (586 MPa).
- \(h_c\) = Cross-sectional dimension of pile core measured center to center of hoop reinforcement, inch (mm).
- \(s\) = Spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along length of pile, inch (mm).
- \(A_{sh}\) = Cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement, square inches (\(\text{mm}^2\)).

\(f'_c\) = Specified compressive strength of concrete, psi (MPa).

The hoops and cross ties shall be equivalent to deformed bars not less than No. 3 in size. Rectangular hoop ends shall terminate at a corner with seismic hooks.

Outside of the length of the pile requiring transverse confinement reinforcing, the spiral or hoop reinforcing with a volumetric ratio not less than one-half of that required for transverse confinement reinforcing shall be provided.

1810.3.9 Cast-in-place deep foundations. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.9.1 through 1810.3.9.6.

1810.3.9.1 Design cracking moment. The design cracking moment (\(\phi M_n\)) for a cast-in-place deep foundation element not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be determined using the following equation:

\[ \phi M_n = 3 \sqrt{f'_c S_n} \]  
(Equation 18-11)

For SI: \(\phi M_n = 0.25 \sqrt{f'_c S_n}\)

where:

- \(f'_c\) = Specified compressive strength of concrete or grout, psi (MPa).
- \(S_n\) = Elastic section modulus, neglecting reinforcement and casing, cubic inches (\(\text{mm}^3\)).

1810.3.9.2 Required reinforcement. Where subject to uplift or where the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2 exceeds the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1, cast-in-place deep foundations not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be reinforced.

1810.3.9.3 Placement of reinforcement. Reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the deep foundation element as a unit before the reinforced portion of the element is filled with concrete.

Exceptions:

1. Steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall be permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.

2. For deep foundation elements installed with a hollow-stem auger, tied reinforcement shall be placed after elements are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state. Longitudinal reinforcement without lateral ties shall be placed either through the hollow stem of the auger prior to concreting or after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.
3. For Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, reinforcement is permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state, and the concrete cover requirement is permitted to be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the building official.

**1810.3.9.4 Seismic reinforcement.** Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category C*, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.1. Where a structure is assigned to *Seismic Design Category D, E* or *F*, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

**Exceptions:**

1. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

2. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where the lateral load, $E$, to the top of the element does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

3. Deep foundation elements supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 12.4.3.2 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2 shall be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of deep foundation elements 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of *Seismic Design Category D*, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

**1810.3.9.4.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.** For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category C*, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.0025, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-third of the element length.
2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Three times the least element dimension.
4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of 6 inches (152 mm) or 8-longitudinal-bar diameters, within a distance of three times the least element dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 16 longitudinal bar diameters throughout the remainder of the reinforced length.

**Exceptions:**

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.
2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than the manufacturer’s standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

**1810.3.9.4.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category D, E* or *F*, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.
A minimum of four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined below starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-half of the element length.
2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Three times the least element dimension.
4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of Section 1605.2.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals no smaller than No. 3 bars for elements with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and No. 4 bars for larger elements. Throughout the remainder of the reinforced length outside the regions with transverse confinement reinforcement, as specified in Section 1810.3.9.4.2.1 or 1810.3.9.4.2.2, the spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the least of the following:

1. 12 longitudinal bar diameters;
2. One-half the least dimension of the element; and
3. 12 inches (305 mm).

Exceptions:

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.
2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than manufacturer’s standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

1810.3.9.4.2.1 Site Classes A through D. For Site Class A, B, C or D sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within seven times the least element dimension of the pile cap and within seven times the least element dimension of the interfaces of strata that are hard or stiff and strata that are liquefiable or are composed of soft-to-medium-stiff clay.

1810.3.9.5 Belled drilled shafts. Where drilled shafts are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall not be less than that required for the edge of footings. Where the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

1810.3.9.6 Socketed drilled shafts. Socketed drilled shafts shall have a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock, both filled with concrete. Socketed drilled shafts shall have reinforcement or a structural steel core for the length as indicated by an approved method of analysis.

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the element with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall not be less than the outside diameter of the pipe or tube casing. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket.

Where a structural steel core is used, the gross cross-sectional area of the core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the drilled shaft.

1810.3.10 Micropiles. Micropiles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.10.1 through 1810.3.10.4.

1810.3.10.1 Construction. Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. Micropiles shall be grouted and have either a steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement at every section along the length. It shall be permitted to transition from deformed reinforcing bars to steel pipe or tube reinforcement by extending the bars into the pipe or tube section by at least their development length in tension in accordance with ACI 318.

1810.3.10.2 Materials. Reinforcement shall consist of deformed reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM A615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A722 Grade 150.

The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum wall thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm). Splices shall comply with Section 1810.3.6. The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) and a minimum elongation of 15 percent as shown by mill certifications or two coupon test samples per 40,000 pounds (18 160 kg) of pipe or tube.

1810.3.10.3 Reinforcement. For micropiles or portions thereof grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled...
with grout, the steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry at least 40 percent of the design compression load. Micropiles or portions thereof grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe or tube is used for reinforcement, the portion of the grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included in the determination of the allowable stress in the grout.

1810.3.10.4 Seismic reinforcement. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, a permanent steel casing shall be provided from the top of the micropile down to the point of zero curvature. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the micropile shall be considered as an alternative system in accordance with Section 104.11. The alternative system design, supporting documentation and test data shall be submitted to the building official for review and approval.

1810.3.11 Pile caps. Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which vertical deep foundation elements are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load. The tops of vertical deep foundation elements shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend at least 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of the elements. The tops of elements shall be cut or chipped back to sound material before capping.

1810.3.11.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, concrete deep foundation elements shall be connected to the pile cap by embedding the element reinforcement or field-placed dowels anchored in the element into the pile cap for a distance equal to their development length in accordance with ACI 318. It shall be permitted to connect precast prestressed piles to the pile cap by developing the element prestressing strands into the pile cap provided the connection is ductile. For deformed bars, the development length is the full development length for compression, or tension in the case of uplift, without reduction for excess reinforcement in accordance with Section 25.4.10 of ACI 318. Alternative measures for laterally confining concrete and maintaining toughness and ductile-like behavior at the top of the element shall be permitted provided the design is such that any hinging occurs in the confined region.

The minimum transverse steel ratio for confinement shall not be less than one-half of that required for columns.

For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipes, tubes or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes shall have reinforcement of not less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the concrete fill developed into the cap and extending into the fill a length equal to two times the required cap embedment, but not less than the development length in tension of the reinforcement.

1810.3.11.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation element resistance to uplift forces or rotational restraint shall be provided by anchorage into the pile cap, designed considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop a minimum of 25 percent of the strength of the element in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall comply with the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the anchorage shall be capable of developing the least of the following:
   1.1. The nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete element.
   1.2. The nominal tensile strength of a steel element.
   1.3. The frictional force developed between the element and the soil multiplied by 1.3.

   Exception: The anchorage is permitted to be designed to resist the axial tension force resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the anchorage shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7 or the anchorage shall be capable of developing the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the element.

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be designed to resist forces and moments that result from the application of seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.12 Grade beams. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, grade beams shall comply with the provisions in Section 18.13.3 of ACI 318 for grade beams, except where they are designed to resist the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2 of ASCE 7.

1810.3.13 Seismic ties. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, individual deep foundations shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it can be demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade or confinement by competent rock,
hard cohesive soils or very dense granular soils, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger pile cap or column design gravity load times the seismic coefficient, $S_{ae}$, divided by 10, and 25 percent of the smaller pile or column design gravity load.

**Exception:** In Group R-3 and U occupancies of lightweight construction, deep foundation elements supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads or exterior decks and patios are not subject to interconnection where the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the building official.

**1810.4 Installation.** Deep foundations shall be installed in accordance with Section 1810.4. Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section shall satisfy the applicable conditions of installation.

**1810.4.1 Structural integrity.** Deep foundation elements shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that may adversely affect the structural integrity of adjacent structures or of foundation elements being installed or already in place and as to avoid compacting the surrounding soil to the extent that other foundation elements cannot be installed properly.

**1810.4.1.1 Compressive strength of precast concrete piles.** A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of at least 75 percent of the specified compressive strength ($f'_{c}$), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

**1810.4.1.2 Casing.** Where cast-in-place deep foundation elements are formed through unstable soils and concrete is placed in an open-drilled hole, a casing shall be inserted in the hole prior to placing the concrete. Where the casing is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the casing at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Driven casings shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil.

**1810.4.1.3 Driving near uncased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within six element diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the element length in cohesive soils of an uncased element filled with concrete less than 48 hours old unless approved by the building official. If the concrete surface in any completed element rises or drops, the element shall be replaced. Driven uncased deep foundation elements shall not be installed in soils that could cause heave.

**1810.4.1.4 Driving near cased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within four and one-half average diameters of a cased element filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless approved by the building official. Concrete shall not be placed in casings within heave range of driving.

**1810.4.1.5 Defective timber piles.** Any substantial sudden increase in rate of penetration of a timber pile shall be investigated for possible damage. If the sudden increase in rate of penetration cannot be correlated to soil strata, the pile shall be removed for inspection or rejected.

**1810.4.2 Identification.** Deep foundation materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or shall be tested by an approved agency to determine conformity to the specified grade. The approved agency shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the building official.

**1810.4.3 Location plan.** A plan showing the location and designation of deep foundation elements by an identification system shall be filed with the building official prior to installation of such elements. Detailed records for elements shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

**1810.4.4 Preexcavation.** The use of jetting, augering or other methods of preexcavation shall be subject to the approval of the building official. Where permitted, preexcavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for deep foundation elements subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the elements already in place or damage adjacent structures. Element tips shall be driven below the preexcavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

**1810.4.5 Vibratory driving.** Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install deep foundation elements where the element load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The installation of production elements shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other approved means that ensure element capacities equal or exceed those of the test elements.

**1810.4.6 Heaved elements.** Deep foundation elements that have heaved during the driving of adjacent elements shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the element shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2.

**1810.4.7 Enlarged base cast-in-place elements.** Enlarged bases for cast-in-place deep foundation elements formed by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Such elements shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test elements driven for the project. Shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where heave occurs, the element shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the element is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.
**1810.4.8 Hollow-stem augered, cast-in-place elements.** Where concrete or grout is placed by pumping through a hollow-stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. As the auger is withdrawn at a steady rate or in increments not to exceed 1 foot (305 mm), concreting or grouting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete or grout volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete or grout placed in each element is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any element is interrupted or a loss of concreting or grouting pressure occurs, the element shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete or grout pressure was lost and reformed. Augered cast-in-place elements shall not be installed within six diameters center to center of an element filled with concrete or grout less than 12 hours old, unless approved by the building official. If the concrete or grout level in any completed element drops due to installation of an adjacent element, the element shall be replaced.

**1810.4.9 Socketed drilled shafts.** The rock socket and pipe or tube casing of socketed drilled shafts shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket.

**1810.4.10 Micropiles.** Micropile deep foundation elements shall be permitted to be formed in holes advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The elements shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the element until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the element. The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For micropiles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing bars shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing. The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the element to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to verify that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed.

2. For a micropile or portion thereof grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.

3. For micropiles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.

4. Subsequent micropiles shall not be drilled near elements that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.

5. Micropiles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.

6. For micropiles designed with a full-length casing, the casing shall be pulled back to the top of the bond zone and reinserted or some other suitable means employed to assure grout coverage outside the casing.

**1810.4.11 Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be installed to specified embedment depth and torsional resistance criteria as determined by a registered design professional. The torque applied during installation shall not exceed the maximum allowable installation torque of the helical pile.

**1810.4.12 Special inspection.** Special inspections in accordance with Sections 1705.7 and 1705.8 shall be provided for driven and cast-in-place deep foundation elements, respectively. Special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.9 shall be provided for helical piles.
CHAPTER 19
CONCRETE

Italics are used for text within Sections 1903 through 1905 of this code to indicate provisions that differ from ACI 318.

SECTION 1901
GENERAL

1901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

1901.2 Plain and reinforced concrete. Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905 of this code. Except for the provisions of Sections 1904 and 1907, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this chapter unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

1901.3 Anchoring to concrete. Anchoring to concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905, and applies to cast-in (headed bolts, headed studs and hooked J- or L-bolts), post-installed expansion (torque-controlled and displacement-controlled), undercut and adhesive anchors.

1901.4 Composite structural steel and concrete structures. Systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with Section 2206 of this code.

1901.5 Construction documents. The construction documents for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.
2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.
3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement and anchors.
4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.
5. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.
6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.
7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.
8. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.
10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.
11. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm.

1901.6 Special inspections and tests. Special inspections and tests of concrete elements of buildings and structures and concreting operations shall be as required by Chapter 17.

SECTION 1902
DEFINITIONS

1902.1 General. The words and terms defined in ACI 318 shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code for concrete construction, have the meanings shown in ACI 318 as modified by Section 1905.1.1.

SECTION 1903
SPECIFICATIONS FOR TESTS AND MATERIALS

1903.1 General. Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

Exception: The following standards as referenced in Chapter 35 shall be permitted to be used.
1. ASTM C150
2. ASTM C595
3. ASTM C1157

1903.2 Special inspections. Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17.

1903.3 Glass fiber-reinforced concrete. Glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.

1903.4 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems. Insulating concrete form material used for forming flat concrete walls shall conform to ASTM E2634.

SECTION 1904
DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

1904.1 Structural concrete. Structural concrete shall conform to the durability requirements of ACI 318.

Exception: For Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies not more than three stories above grade plane, the specified compressive strength, $f'_c$, for concrete in basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical surfaces exposed to the weather shall be not less than 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa).

1904.2 Nonstructural concrete. The registered design professional shall assign nonstructural concrete a freeze-thaw exposure class, as defined in ACI 318, based on the anticipated exposure of nonstructural concrete. Nonstructural concrete
shall have a minimum specified compressive strength, $f'$, of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) for Class F0; 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for Class F1; and 3,500 psi (24.1 MPa) for Classes F2 and F3. Nonstructural concrete shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318.

SECTION 1905
MODIFICATIONS TO ACI 318

1905.1 General. The text of ACI 318 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1905.1.1 through 1905.1.8.

1905.1.1 ACI 318, Section 2.3. Modify existing definitions and add the following definitions to ACI 318, Section 2.3.

**DESIGN DISPLACEMENT.** Total lateral displacement expected for the design-basis earthquake, as specified by Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.

**DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, including 14.6.2.

**ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.** A precast wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

**ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** A cast-in-place wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

**ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.** A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, excluding 14.6.2.

**SPECIAL STRUCTURAL WALL.** A cast-in-place or precast wall complying with the requirements of 18.2.4 through 18.2.8, 18.10 and 18.11, as applicable, in addition to the requirements for ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls or ordinary precast structural walls, as applicable. Where ASCE 7 refers to a "special reinforced concrete structural wall," it shall be deemed to mean a "special structural wall."

1905.1.2 ACI 318, Section 18.2.1. Modify ACI 318 Sections 18.2.1.2 and 18.2.1.6 to read as follows:

18.2.1.2 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A shall satisfy requirements of Chapters 1 through 17 and 19 through 26; Chapter 18 does not apply. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F also shall satisfy 18.2.1.3 through 18.2.1.7, as applicable. Except for structural elements of plain concrete complying with Section 1905.1.7 of the Building Code, structural elements of plain concrete are prohibited in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

18.2.1.6 – Structural systems designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system shall be restricted to those permitted by ASCE 7. Except for Seismic Design Category A, for which Chapter 18 does not apply, the following provisions shall be satisfied for each structural system designated as part of the seismic force-resisting system, regardless of the seismic design category:

(a) Ordinary moment frames shall satisfy 18.3.

(b) Ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls and ordinary precast structural walls need not satisfy any provisions in Chapter 18.

(c) Intermediate moment frames shall satisfy 18.4.

(d) Intermediate precast structural walls shall satisfy 18.5.

(e) Special moment frames shall satisfy 18.6 through 18.9.

(f) Special structural walls shall satisfy 18.10.

(g) Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy 18.11.

All special moment frames and special structural walls shall also satisfy 18.2.4 through 18.2.8.

1905.1.3 ACI 318, Section 18.5. Modify ACI 318, Section 18.5, by adding new Section 18.5.2.2 and renumbering existing Sections 18.5.2.2 and 18.5.2.3 to become 18.5.2.3 and 18.5.2.4, respectively.

18.5.2.2 – Connections that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at the deformation induced by the design displacement or shall use Type 2 mechanical splices.

18.5.2.3 – For elements of the connection that are not designed to yield the required strength shall be based on 1.5$\times$ of the yielding portion of the connection.

18.5.2.4 – In structures assigned to SDC D, E or F, wall piers shall be designed in accordance with 18.10.8 or 18.14 in ACI 318.

1905.1.4 ACI 318, Section 18.11. Modify ACI 318, Section 18.11.2.1, to read as follows:

18.11.2.1 – Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy all the requirements of 18.10 for cast-in-place special structural walls in addition to 18.5.2.

1905.1.5 ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1. Modify ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1, to read as follows:

18.13.1.1 – Foundations resisting earthquake-induced forces or transferring earthquake-induced forces between a structure and ground shall comply with the requirements of 18.13 and other applicable provisions of ACI 318 unless modified by Chapter 18 of the Building Code.

1905.1.6 ACI 318, Section 14.6. Modify ACI 318, Section 14.6, by adding new Section 14.6.2 to read as follows:

14.6.2 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls.

14.6.2.1 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls are walls conforming to the requirements of ordinary structural plain concrete walls and 14.6.2.2.

14.6.2.2 – Reinforcement shall be provided as follows:

(a) Vertical reinforcement of at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm$^2$) in cross-sectional area shall be
provided continuously from support to support at each corner, at each side of each opening and at the ends of walls. The continuous vertical bar required beside an opening is permitted to substitute for one of the two No. 5 bars required by 14.6.1.

(b) Horizontal reinforcement at least 0.20 square inch (129 mm²) in cross-sectional area shall be provided:

1. Continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels and at the top of walls;
2. At the bottom of load-bearing walls or in the top of foundations where doweled to the wall; and
3. At a maximum spacing of 120 inches (3048 mm).

Reinforcement at the top and bottom of openings, where used in determining the maximum spacing specified in Item 3 above, shall be continuous in the wall.

1905.1.7 ACI 318, Section 14.1.4. Delete ACI 318, Section 14.1.4, and replace with the following:

14.1.4 – Plain concrete in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

14.1.4.1 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall not have elements of structural plain concrete, except as follows:

(a) Structural plain concrete basement, foundation or other walls below the base as defined in ASCE 7 are permitted in detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls. In dwellings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, the height of the wall shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm), the thickness shall be not less than 7 1/2 inches (190 mm), and the wall shall retain no more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill. Walls shall have reinforcement in accordance with 14.6.1.

(b) Isolated footings of plain concrete supporting pedestals or columns are permitted, provided the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member does not exceed the footing thickness.

Exception: In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height, the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member is permitted to exceed the footing thickness.

(c) Plain concrete footings supporting walls are permitted, provided the footings have at least two continuous longitudinal reinforcing bars. Bars shall not be smaller than No. 4 and shall have a total area of not less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the footing. For footings that exceed 8 inches (203 mm) in thickness, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top and bottom of the footing. Continuity of reinforcement shall be provided at corners and intersections.

Exceptions:

1. In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls are permitted to have plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement.

2. For foundation systems consisting of a plain concrete footing and a plain concrete stemwall, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top of the stemwall and at the bottom of the footing.

3. Where a slab on ground is cast monolithically with the footing, one No. 5 bar is permitted to be located at either the top of the slab or bottom of the footing.

1905.1.8 ACI 318, Section 17.2.3. Modify ACI 318 Sections 17.2.3.4.2, 17.2.3.4.3(d) and 17.2.3.5.2 to read as follows:

17.2.3.4.2 – Where the tensile component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor tensile force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.4.3. The anchor design tensile strength shall be determined in accordance with 17.2.3.4.4.

Exception: Anchors designed to resist wall out-of-plane forces with design strengths equal to or greater than the force determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Equation 12.11-1 or 12.14-10 shall be deemed to satisfy Section 17.2.3.4.3(d).

17.2.3.4.3(d) – The anchor or group of anchors shall be designed for the maximum tension obtained from design load combinations that include E, with E increased by \( \Omega_{E} \). The anchor design tensile strength shall be calculated from 17.2.3.4.4.

17.2.3.5.2 – Where the shear component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor shear force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.2.3.5.3. The anchor design shear strength for resisting earthquake forces shall be determined in accordance with 17.5.

Exceptions:

1. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching wood sill plates of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-
frame wood structures to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:

1.1. The allowable in-plane shear strength of the anchor is determined in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS Table 11E for lateral design values parallel to grain.

1.2. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (16 mm).

1.3. Anchor bolts are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

1.4. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the wood sill plate.

1.5. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the wood sill plate.

1.6. The sill plate is 2-inch (51 mm) or 3-inch (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching cold-formed steel track of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame construction to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.5.2 and 17.5.3 need not be computed and 17.2.3.5.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:

2.1. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (16 mm).

2.2. Anchors are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

2.3. Anchors are located a minimum of $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the track.

2.4. Anchors are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the track.

2.5. The track is 33 to 68 mil (0.84 mm to 1.73 mm) designation thickness.

Allowable in-plane shear strength of exempt anchors, parallel to the edge of concrete, shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S100 Section E3.3.1.

3. In light-frame construction bearing or non-bearing walls, shear strength of concrete anchors less than or equal to 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter attaching sill plate or track to foundation or foundation stem wall need not satisfy 17.2.3.5.3(a) through (c) when the design strength of the anchors is determined in accordance with 17.5.2.1(c).
ish in-place hardened shotcrete meeting the strength requirements of this code.

1908.3 Aggregate. Coarse aggregate, if used, shall not exceed 3/4 inch (19.1 mm).

1908.4 Reinforcement. Reinforcement used in shotcrete construction shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1908.4.1 through 1908.4.4.

1908.4.1 Size. The maximum size of reinforcement shall be No. 5 bars unless it is demonstrated by preconstruction tests that adequate encasement of larger bars will be achieved.

1908.4.2 Clearance. When No. 5 or smaller bars are used, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel reinforcement bars of 21/2 inches (64 mm). When bars larger than No. 5 are permitted, there shall be a minimum clearance between parallel bars equal to six diameters of the bars used. When two curtains of steel are provided, the curtain nearer the nozzle shall have a minimum spacing equal to 12 bar diameters and the remaining curtain shall have a minimum spacing of six bar diameters.

Exception: Subject to the approval of the building official, required clearances shall be reduced where it is demonstrated by preconstruction tests that adequate encasement of the bars used in the design will be achieved.

1908.4.3 Splices. Lap splices of reinforcing bars shall utilize the noncontact lap splice method with a minimum clearance of 2 inches (51 mm) between bars. The use of contact lap splices necessary for support of the reinforcement is permitted when approved by the building official, based on satisfactory preconstruction tests that show that adequate encasement of the bars will be achieved, and provided that the splice is oriented so that a plane through the center of the spliced bars is perpendicular to the surface of the shotcrete.

1908.4.4 Spiralearly tied columns. Shotcrete shall not be applied to spirally tied columns.

1908.5 Preconstruction tests. Where preconstruction tests are required by Section 1908.4, a test panel shall be shot, cured, cored or sawn, examined and tested prior to commencement of the project. The sample panel shall be representative of the project and simulate job conditions as closely as possible. The panel thickness and reinforcing shall reproduce the thickest and most congested area specified in the structural design. It shall be shot at the same angle, using the same nozzleman and with the same concrete mix design that will be used on the project. The equipment used in preconstruction testing shall be the same equipment used in the work requiring such testing, unless substitute equipment is approved by the building official. Reports of preconstruction tests shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

1908.6 Rebound. Any rebound or accumulated loose aggregate shall be removed from the surfaces to be covered prior to placing the initial or any succeeding layers of shotcrete. Rebound shall not be used as aggregate.

1908.7 Joints. Except where permitted herein, unfinished work shall not be allowed to stand for more than 30 minutes unless edges are sloped to a thin edge. For structural elements that will be under compression and for construction joints shown on the approved construction documents, square joints are permitted. Before placing additional material adjacent to previously applied work, sloping and square edges shall be cleaned and wetted.

1908.8 Damage. In-place shotcrete that exhibits sags, sloughs, segregation, honeycombing, sand pockets or other obvious defects shall be removed and replaced. Shotcrete above sags and sloughs shall be removed and replaced while still plastic.

1908.9 Curing. During the curing periods specified herein, shotcrete shall be maintained above 40°F (4°C) and in moist condition.

1908.9.1 Initial curing. Shotcrete shall be kept continuously moist for 24 hours after shotcreting is complete or shall be sealed with an approved curing compound.

1908.9.2 Final curing. Final curing shall continue for seven days after shotcreting, or for three days if high-early-strength cement is used, or until the specified strength is obtained. Final curing shall consist of the initial curing process or the shotcrete shall be covered with an approved moisture-retaining cover.

1908.9.3 Natural curing. Natural curing shall not be used in lieu of that specified in this section unless the relative humidity remains at or above 85 percent, and is authorized by the registered design professional and approved by the building official.

1908.10 Strength tests. Strength tests for shotcrete shall be made by an approved agency on specimens that are representative of the work and which have been water soaked for at least 24 hours prior to testing. When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than 3/4 inch (9.5 mm), specimens shall consist of not less than three 3-inch diameter (76 mm) cores or 3-inch (76 mm) cubes. When the maximum-size aggregate is 5/8 inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, specimens shall consist of not less than 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cores or 2-inch (51 mm) cubes.

1908.10.1 Sampling. Specimens shall be taken from the in-place work or from test panels, and shall be taken at least once each shift, but not less than one for each 50 cubic yards (38.2 m³) of shotcrete.

1908.10.2 Panel criteria. When the maximum-size aggregate is larger than 3/4 inch (9.5 mm), the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm). When the maximum-size aggregate is 5/8 inch (9.5 mm) or smaller, the test panels shall have minimum dimensions of 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Panels shall be shot in the same position as the work, during the course of the work and by the nozzlemen doing the work. The conditions under which the panels are cured shall be the same as the work.

1908.10.3 Acceptance criteria. The average compressive strength of three cores from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed 0.85 f', with no single core
less than 0.75 $f'_{c}$. The average compressive strength of three cubes taken from the in-place work or a single test panel shall equal or exceed $f'_{c}$ with no individual cube less than 0.88 $f'_{c}$. To check accuracy, locations represented by erratic core or cube strengths shall be retested.
CHAPTER 20
ALUMINUM

SECTION 2001
GENERAL

2001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of aluminum.

SECTION 2002
MATERIALS

2002.1 General. Aluminum used for structural purposes in buildings and structures shall comply with AA ASM 35 and AA ADM 1. The nominal loads shall be the minimum design loads required by Chapter 16.
CHAPTER 21
MASSONRY

SECTION 2101
GENERAL

2101.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of masonry.

2101.2 Design methods. Masonry shall comply with the provisions of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 or TMS 403 as well as applicable requirements of this chapter.

2101.2.1 Masonry veneer. Masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 14.

2101.3 Special inspection. The special inspection of masonry shall be as defined in Chapter 17, or an itemized testing and inspection program shall be provided that meets or exceeds the requirements of Chapter 17.

SECTION 2102
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS

2102.1 General. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AAC MASONRY.
ADOBE CONSTRUCTION.
Adobe, stabilized.
Adobe, unstabilized.
AREA.
Gross cross-sectional.
Net cross-sectional.
AUTOCLAVED AERATED CONCRETE (AAC).
BED JOINT.
BRICK.
Calcium silicate (sand lime brick).
Clay or shale.
Concrete.
CAST STONE.
CELL.
CHIMNEY.
CHIMNEY TYPES.
High-heat appliance type.
Low-heat appliance type.
Masonry type.
Medium-heat appliance type.
COLLAR JOINT.

DIMENSIONS.
Nominal.
Specified.
FIREPLACE.
FIREPLACE THROAT.
FOUNDATION PIER.
HEAD JOINT.
MASONRY.
Glass unit masonry.
Plain masonry.
Reinforced masonry.
Solid masonry.
Unreinforced (plain) masonry.
MASONRY UNIT.
Hollow.
Solid.
MORTAR.
MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING.
PRESTRESSED MASONRY.
RUNNING BOND.
SPECIFIED COMpressive STRENGTH OF MASONRY, $f_m'$.
STONE MASONRY.
STRENGTH.
Design strength.
Nominal strength.
Required strength.
TIE, WALL.
TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY.
WALL.
Cavity wall.
Dry-stacked, surface-bonded wall.
Parapet wall.
WYTIE.
NOTATIONS.
\(d_b\) = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).
\(F_s\) = Allowable tensile or compressive stress in reinforcement, psi (MPa).
\(f_r\) = Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).
\[ f_{\text{AAC}}' = \text{Specified compressive strength of AAC masonry, the minimum compressive strength for a class of AAC masonry as specified in ASTM C1386, psi (MPa).} \]

\[ f_m' = \text{Specified compressive strength of masonry at age of 28 days, psi (MPa).} \]

\[ f_{\text{mi}}' = \text{Specified compressive strength of masonry at the time of prestress transfer, psi (MPa).} \]

\[ K = \text{The lesser of the masonry cover, clear spacing between adjacent reinforcement, or five times } d_{bw}, \text{ inches (mm).} \]

\[ L_s = \text{Distance between supports, inches (mm).} \]

\[ l_d = \text{Required development length or lap length of reinforcement, inches (mm).} \]

\[ P = \text{The applied load at failure, pounds (N).} \]

\[ S_t = \text{Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).} \]

\[ S_w = \text{Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).} \]

**SECTION 2103**

**MASONRY CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS**

**2103.1 Masonry units.** Concrete masonry units, clay or shale masonry units, stone masonry units, glass unit masonry and AAC masonry units shall comply with Article 2.3 of TMS 602/ACI 503.1/ASCE 6. Architectural cast stone shall conform to ASTM C1364.

**Exception:** Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fireproofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and shall comply with the requirements of Table 602.

**2103.1.1 Second-hand units.** Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

**2103.2 Mortar.** Mortar for masonry construction shall comply with Section 2103.2.1, 2103.2.2, 2103.2.3 or 2103.2.4.

**2103.2.1 Masonry mortar.** Mortar for use in masonry construction shall conform to Articles 2.1 and 2.6 A of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

**2103.2.2 Surface-bonding mortar.** Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C946.

**2103.2.3 Mortars for ceramic wall and floor tile.** Portland cement mortars for installing ceramic wall and floor tile shall comply with ANSI A108.1A and ANSI A108.1B and be of the compositions indicated in Table 2103.2.3.

**TABLE 2103.2.3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>MORTAR</th>
<th>COMPOSITION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walls</td>
<td>Scratchcoat</td>
<td>1 cement; 1/2 hydrated lime; 4 dry or 5 damp sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Setting bed and leveling coat</td>
<td>1 cement; 1/2 hydrated lime; 5 damp sand to 1 cement 1 hydrated lime, 7 damp sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floors</td>
<td>Setting bed</td>
<td>1 cement; 1/10 hydrated lime; 5 dry or 6 damp sand; or 1 cement; 5 dry or 6 damp sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceilings</td>
<td>Scratchcoat and sand bed</td>
<td>1 cement; 1/2 hydrated lime; 2 1/2 dry sand or 3 damp sand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2103.2.3.1 Dry-set Portland cement mortars.** Premixed prepared Portland cement mortars, which require only the addition of water and are used in the installation of ceramic tile, shall comply with ANSI A118.1. The shear bond strength for tile set in such mortar shall be as required in accordance with ANSI A118.1. Tile set in dry-set Portland cement mortar shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**2103.2.3.2 Latex-modified Portland cement mortar.** Latex-modified Portland cement thin-set mortars in which latex is added to dry-set mortar as a replacement for all or part of the gauging water that are used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.4. Tile set in latex-modified Portland cement shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**2103.2.3.3 Epoxy mortar.** Ceramic tile set and grouted with chemical-resistant epoxy shall comply with ANSI A118.3. Tile set and grouted with epoxy shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.6.

**2103.2.3.4 Furan mortar and grout.** Chemical-resistant furan mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.5. Tile set and grouted with furan shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

**2103.2.3.5 Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout.** Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.8. Tile set and grouted with modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.9.

**2103.2.3.6 Organic adhesives.** Water-resistant organic adhesives used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A136.1. The shear bond strength after water immersion shall be not less than 40 psi (275 kPa) for Type I adhesive and not less than 20 psi (138 kPa) for Type II adhesive when tested in accordance with ANSI A136.1. Tile set in organic adhesives shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.4.
2103.2.3.7 Portland cement grouts. Portland cement grouts used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.6. Portland cement grouts for tile work shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

2103.2.4 Mortar for adhered masonry veneer. Mortar for use with adhered masonry veneer shall conform to ASTM C270 for Type N or S, or shall comply with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

2103.3 Grout. Grout shall comply with Article 2.2 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2103.4 Metal reinforcement and accessories. Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Article 2.4 of TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6. Where unidentified reinforcement is approved for use, not less than three tension and three bending tests shall be made on representative specimens of the reinforcement from each shipment and grade of reinforcing steel proposed for use in the work.

SECTION 2104
CONSTRUCTION

2104.1 Masonry construction. Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104.1.1 and 2104.1.2 and with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2104.1.1 Support on wood. Masonry shall not be supported on wood girders or other forms of wood construction except as permitted in Section 2304.12.

2104.1.2 Molded cornices. Unless structural support and anchorage are provided to resist the overturning moment, the center of gravity of projecting masonry or molded cornices shall lie within the middle one-third of the supporting wall. Terra cotta and metal cornices shall be provided with a structural frame of approved noncombustible material anchored in an approved manner.

SECTION 2105
QUALITY ASSURANCE

2105.1 General. A quality assurance program shall be used to ensure that the constructed masonry is in compliance with the approved construction documents.

The quality assurance program shall comply with the inspection and testing requirements of Chapter 17 and TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

SECTION 2106
SEISMIC DESIGN

2106.1 Seismic design requirements for masonry. Masonry structures and components shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 7 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 depending on the structure’s seismic design category.

SECTION 2107
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

2107.1 General. The design of masonry structures using allowable stress design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 except as modified by Sections 2107.2 through 2107.4.

2107.2 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.1.6.7.1.1, lap splices. As an alternative to Section 8.1.6.7.1.1, it shall be permitted to design lap splices in accordance with Section 2107.2.1.

2107.2.1 Lap splices. The minimum length of lap splices for reinforcing bars in tension or compression, \( l_d \), shall be

\[
 l_d = 0.002d_s f_y \quad \text{(Equation 21-1)}
\]

For SI:

\[
 l_d = 0.29d_s f_y
\]

but not less than 12 inches (305 mm). In no case shall the length of the lapped splice be less than 40 bar diameters.

where:

- \( d_s \) = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).
- \( f_y \) = Computed stress in reinforcement due to design loads, psi (MPa).

In regions of moment where the design tensile stresses in the reinforcement are greater than 80 percent of the allowable steel tension stress, \( F_s \), the lap length of splices shall be increased not less than 50 percent of the minimum required length. Other equivalent means of stress transfer to accomplish the same 50 percent increase shall be permitted. Where epoxy coated bars are used, lap length shall be increased by 50 percent.

2107.3 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.1.6.7, splices of reinforcement. Modify Section 8.1.6.7 as follows:

8.1.6.7 – Splices of reinforcement. Lap splices, welded splices or mechanical splices are permitted in accordance with the provisions of this section. All welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Reinforcement larger than No. 9 (M #29) shall be spliced using mechanical connections in accordance with Section 8.1.6.7.3.

2107.4 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 8.3.6, maximum bar size. Add the following to Chapter 8:

8.3.6 – Maximum bar size. The bar diameter shall not exceed one-eighth of the nominal wall thickness and shall not exceed one-quarter of the least dimension of the cell, course or collar joint in which it is placed.

SECTION 2108
STRENGTH DESIGN OF MASONRY

2108.1 General. The design of masonry structures using strength design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 9 of TMS
402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except as modified by Sections 2108.2 through 2108.3.

**Exception:** AAC masonry shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 11 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

2108.2 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 9.3.3.3, development. Modify the second paragraph of Section 9.3.3.3 as follows:

The required development length of reinforcement shall be determined by Equation (9-16), but shall not be less than 12 inches (305 mm) and need not be greater than 72 d_r.

2108.3 TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, Section 9.3.3.4, splices. Modify items (c) and (d) of Section 9.3.3.4 as follows:

9.3.3.4 (c) A welded splice shall have the bars butted and welded to develop at least 125 percent of the yield strength, f_y of the bar in tension or compression, as required. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Welded splices shall not be permitted in plastic hinge zones of intermediate or special reinforced walls.

9.3.3.4 (d) Mechanical splices shall be classified as Type 1 or 2 in accordance with Section 18.2.7.1 of ACI 318. Type 1 mechanical splices shall not be used within a plastic hinge zone or within a beam-column joint of intermediate or special reinforced masonry shear walls. Type 2 mechanical splices are permitted in any location within a member.

**SECTION 2109**

**EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY**

2109.1 General. Empirically designed masonry shall conform to the requirements of Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except where otherwise noted in this section.

2109.1.1 Limitations. The use of empirical design of masonry shall be limited as noted in Section A.1.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5. The use of dry-stacked, surface-bonded masonry shall be prohibited in Risk Category IV structures. In buildings that exceed one or more of the limitations of Section A.1.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, masonry shall be designed in accordance with the engineered design provisions of Section 2101.2 or the foundation wall provisions of Section 1807.1.5.

Section A.1.2.2 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 shall be modified as follows:

A.1.2.2 – Wind. Empirical requirements shall not apply to the design or construction of masonry for buildings, parts of buildings, or other structures to be located in areas where V_{Iod} as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 of the Building Code exceeds 110 mph.

2109.2 Surface-bonded walls. Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall comply with the requirements of Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, except where otherwise noted in this section.

2109.2.1 Strength. Dry-stacked, surface-bonded concrete masonry walls shall be of adequate strength and proportions to support all superimposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses listed in Table 2109.2.1. Allowable stresses not specified in Table 2109.2.1 shall comply with the requirements of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

**TABLE 2109.2.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS (psi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compression standard block</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexural tension</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal span</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical span</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.006895 MPa.

2109.2.2 Construction. Construction of dry-stacked, surface-bonded masonry walls, including stacking and leveling of units, mixing and application of mortar and curing and protection shall comply with ASTM C946.

2109.3 Adobe construction. Adobe construction shall comply with this section and shall be subject to the requirements of this code for Type V construction, Appendix A of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, and this section.

2109.3.1 Unstabilized adobe. Unstabilized adobe shall comply with Sections 2109.3.1.1 through 2109.3.1.4.

2109.3.1.1 Compressive strength. Adobe units shall have an average compressive strength of 300 psi (2068 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM C67. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit is permitted to have a compressive strength of less than 250 psi (1724 kPa).

2109.3.1.2 Modulus of rupture. Adobe units shall have an average modulus of rupture of 50 psi (345 kPa) when tested in accordance with the following procedure. Five samples shall be tested and no individual unit shall have a modulus of rupture of less than 35 psi (241 kPa).

2109.3.1.2.1 Support conditions. A cured unit shall be simply supported by 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylindrical supports located 2 inches (51 mm) in from each end and extending the full width of the unit.

2109.3.1.2.2 Loading conditions. A 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylinder shall be placed at midspan parallel to the supports.

2109.3.1.2.3 Testing procedure. A vertical load shall be applied to the cylinder at the rate of 500 pounds per minute (37 N/s) until failure occurs.

2109.3.1.2.4 Modulus of rupture determination. The modulus of rupture shall be determined by the equation:

\[
f_p = 3 \frac{PL_v}{2 Sw S_w^2}
\]  
(Equation 21-2)

where, for the purposes of this section only:

- \( S_w \) = Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).
2109.3.1.3 Moisture content requirements. Adobe units shall have a moisture content not exceeding 4 percent by weight.

2109.3.1.4 Shrinkage cracks. Adobe units shall not contain more than three shrinkage cracks and any single shrinkage crack shall not exceed 3 inches (76 mm) in length or \(1/8\) inch (3.2 mm) in width.

2109.3.2 Stabilized adobe. Stabilized adobe shall comply with Section 2109.3.1 for unstabilized adobe in addition to Sections 2109.3.2.1 and 2109.3.2.2.

2109.3.2.1 Soil requirements. Soil used for stabilized adobe shall comply with Section 2109.3.2.1 and 2109.3.2.2.

2109.3.2.2 Absorption requirements. A 4-inch (102 mm) cube, cut from a stabilized adobe unit dried to a constant weight in a ventilated oven at 212°F to 239°F (100°C to 115°C), shall not absorb more than 2 1/2 percent by weight when placed upon a constantly water-saturated, porous surface for seven days. A minimum of five specimens shall be tested and each specimen shall be cut from a separate unit.

2109.3.3 Allowable stress. The allowable compressive stress based on gross cross-sectional area of adobe shall not exceed 30 psi (207 kPa).

2109.3.3.1 Bolts. Bolt values shall not exceed those set forth in Table 2109.3.3.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIAMETER OF BOLTS (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM EMBEDMENT (inches)</th>
<th>SHEAR (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

2109.3.4 Detailed requirements. Adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.3.4.1 through 2109.3.4.9.

2109.3.4.1 Number of stories. Adobe construction shall be limited to buildings not exceeding one story, except that two-story construction is allowed when designed by a registered design professional.

2109.3.4.2 Mortar. Mortar for adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.3.4.2.1 and 2109.3.4.2.2.

2109.3.4.2.1 General. Mortar for stabilized adobe units shall comply with this chapter or adobe soil.
2109.3.4.8 Exterior finish. Exterior walls constructed of unstabilized adobe units shall have their exterior surface covered with a minimum of two coats of Portland cement plaster having a minimum thickness of 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) and conforming to ASTM C926. Lathing shall comply with ASTM C1063. Fasteners shall be spaced at 16 inches (406 mm) on center maximum. Exposed wood surfaces shall be treated with an approved wood preservative or other protective coating prior to lath application.

2109.3.4.9 Lintels. Lintels shall be considered structural members and shall be designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 16.

SECTION 2110
GLASS UNIT MASONRY

2110.1 General. Glass unit masonry construction shall comply with Chapter 13 of TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 and this section.

2110.1.1 Limitations. Solid or hollow approved glass block shall not be used in fire walls, party walls, fire barriers, fire partitions or smoke barriers, or for load-bearing construction. Such blocks shall be erected with mortar and reinforcement in metal channel-type frames, structural frames, masonry or concrete recesses, embedded panel anchors as provided for both exterior and interior walls or other approved joint materials. Wood strip framing shall not be used in walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Glass-block assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 3/4 hour shall be permitted as opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 in fire barriers, fire partitions and smoke barriers that have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less and do not enclose exit stairways and ramps or exit passageways.

2. Glass-block assemblies as permitted in Section 404.6, Exception 2.

SECTION 2111
MASONRY FIREPLACES

2111.1 General. The construction of masonry fireplaces, consisting of concrete or masonry, shall be in accordance with this section.

2111.2 Fireplace drawings. The construction documents shall describe in sufficient detail the location, size and construction of masonry fireplaces. The thickness and characteristics of materials and the clearances from walls, partitions and ceilings shall be indicated.

2111.3 Footings and foundations. Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry at least 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (153 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

2111.3.1 Ash dump cleanout. Cleanout openings, located within foundation walls below fireboxes, when provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed, except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

2111.4 Seismic reinforcement. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2111.4.1, 2111.4.2 and 2111.5. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108.

2111.4.1 Vertical reinforcing. For fireplaces with chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. For fireplaces with chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

2111.4.2 Horizontal reinforcing. Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within 1/2-inch (6.4 mm) ties or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete; or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry at a minimum of every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

2111.5 Seismic anchorage. Masonry fireplaces and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two 1/2-inch (6.4 mm) ties or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to a minimum of four floor joists with two 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

Exception: Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A.

2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely integral to the exterior masonry walls.

2111.6 Firebox walls. Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. When a lining of firebrick at least 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness or other approved lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall be not
greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). When no lining is provided, the total minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

2111.6.1 Steel fireplace units. Steel fireplace units are permitted to be installed with solid masonry to form a masonry fireplace provided they are installed according to either the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in thickness, and an air-circulating chamber which is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts employed with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

2111.7 Firebox dimensions. The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) in depth. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

Exception: Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and at least one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, and the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel, and at least 1/20 the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

2111.8 Lintel and throat. Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.

2111.8.1 Damper. Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or at the top of the flue venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace. Damper controls shall be permitted to be located in the fireplace.

2111.9 Smoke chamber walls. Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. When a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than 1/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

2111.9.1 Smoke chamber dimensions. The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall be not greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.76 rad) from vertical when prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or when the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. When the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

2111.10 Hearth and hearth extension. Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. No combustible material shall remain against the underside of hearths or hearth extensions after construction.

2111.10.1 Hearth thickness. The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

2111.10.2 Hearth extension thickness. The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

Exception: When the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than 3/8-inch-thick (9.5 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other approved noncombustible material is permitted.

2111.11 Hearth extension dimensions. Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of, and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet (0.557 m²) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of, and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening.

2111.12 Fireplace clearance. Any portion of a masonry fireplace located in the interior of a building or within the exterior wall of a building shall have a clearance to combustibles of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2111.13.

Exceptions:

1. Masonry fireplaces listed and labeled for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. When masonry fireplaces are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.

3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, flooring and dry-
wall, are permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension, in accordance with Figure 2111.12, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.

4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening, provided such combustible materials shall not be placed within 6 inches (153 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material directly above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such opening. Combustible materials located along the sides of the fireplace opening that project more than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) from the face of the fireplace shall have an additional clearance equal to the projection.

2111.13 Fireplace fireblocking. All spaces between fireplaces and floors and ceilings through which fireplaces pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

2111.14 Exterior air. Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this section shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

2111.14.1 Factory-built fireplaces. Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be listed components of the fireplace, and installed according to the fireplace manufacturer’s instructions.

2111.14.2 Masonry fireplaces. Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their listing and manufacturer’s instructions.

2111.14.3 Exterior air intake. The exterior air intake shall be capable of providing all combustion air from the exterior of the dwelling. The exterior air intake shall not be located within a garage, attic, basement or crawl space of the dwelling nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of 1/16-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

2111.14.4 Clearance. Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

2111.14.5 Passageway. The combustion air passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches (3870 mm²) and not more than 55 square inches (0.035 m²), except that combustion air systems for listed fireplaces or for fireplaces tested for emissions shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer’s instructions.

2111.14.6 Outlet. The exterior air outlet is permitted to be located in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

SECTION 2112
MASONRY HEATERS

2112.1 Definition. A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as “masonry,” which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox may include flow in a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

2112.2 Installation. Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.

2. Masonry heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

2112.3 Footings and foundation. The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section 2113.2.

2112.4 Seismic reinforcing. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section 2113.3. Seismic reinforcing shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater with a height that is equal to or less than 3.5 times its body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of
the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 2113.

2112.5 Masonry heater clearance. Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) or the distance of the allowed reduction method from the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211, Section 12.6, and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

Exceptions:

1. Where the masonry heater wall thickness is at least 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry and the wall thickness of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5 inches (127 mm) of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.

2. Masonry heaters listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

SECTION 2113 MASONRY CHIMNEYS

2113.1 General. The construction of masonry chimneys consisting of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete shall be in accordance with this section.

2113.2 Footings and foundations. Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend at least 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

2113.3 Seismic reinforcement. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2113.3.1, 2113.3.2 and 2113.4. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108 and anchored in accordance with Section 2113.4.

2113.3.1 Vertical reinforcement. For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars anchored in the foundation shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

2113.3.2 Horizontal reinforcement. Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within 1/2-inch (6.4 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

2113.4 Seismic anchorage. Masonry chimneys and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two 3/16-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not less than four floor joists with two 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

Exception: Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A.

2. Where the masonry chimney is constructed completely integral to the exterior masonry walls.

2113.5 Corbeling. Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than half of the chimney’s wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) in thickness unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second story of a two-story dwelling, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls is permitted to equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

2113.6 Changes in dimension. The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

2113.7 Offsets. Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an approved manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 2113.5.

2113.8 Additional load. Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Masonry chimneys are permitted to be constructed as part of the masonry walls or concrete walls of the building.
2113.9 Termination. Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall not be less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

2113.9.1 Chimney caps. Masonry chimneys shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, sloped to shed water, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283.

2113.9.2 Spark arrestors. Where a spark arrestor is installed on a masonry chimney, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.
2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.
3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).
4. The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

2113.9.3 Rain caps. Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a masonry chimney, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

2113.10 Wall thickness. Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of concrete, solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal thickness.

2113.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys. Where masonry is used as veneer for a framed chimney, through flashing and weep holes shall be provided as required by Chapter 14.

2113.11 Flue lining (material). Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of appliance connected, according to the terms of the appliance listing and the manufacturer’s instructions.

2113.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general). Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.
2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.
4. Other approved materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

2113.11.1.1 Flue linings for specific appliances. Flue linings other than those covered in Section 2113.11.1 intended for use with specific appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.11.1.2 through 2113.11.1.4 and Sections 2113.11.2 and 2113.11.3.

2113.11.1.2 Gas appliances. Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with the Fuel Gas Code.

2113.11.1.3 Pellet fuel-burning appliances. Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and pellet vents listed for installation within masonry chimneys (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

2113.11.1.4 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with L-vent. Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and listed chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

2113.11.1.5 Notice of usage. When a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section 2113.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a label attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The label shall include the following message or equivalent language: “This chimney is for use only with (type or category of appliance) that burns (type of fuel). Do not connect other types of appliances.”

2113.11.2 Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances.

2113.11.2.1 General. Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.1 through 2113.5.

2113.11.2.2 Construction. Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of solid masonry units or of concrete with walls not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, or with stone masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick.

2113.11.2.3 Lining. Concrete and masonry chimneys shall be lined with an approved medium-duty refractory brick not less than 4$\frac{1}{2}$ inches (114 mm) thick laid on the 4$\frac{1}{2}$-inch bed (114 mm) in an approved medium-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start 2 feet (610 mm) or more below the lowest chimney connector entrance. Chimneys terminating 25 feet (7620 mm) or less above a chimney connector entrance shall be lined to the top.

2113.11.2.4 Multiple passageway. Concrete and masonry chimneys containing more than one passageway shall have the liners separated by a minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) concrete or solid masonry wall.

2113.11.2.5 Termination height. Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm).
2113.11.2.6 Clearance. A minimum clearance of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be provided between the exterior surfaces of a concrete or masonry chimney for medium-heat appliances and combustible material.

2113.11.3 Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances.

2113.11.3.1 General. Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.1 through 2113.5.

2113.11.3.2 Construction. Chimneys for high-heat appliances shall be constructed with double walls of solid masonry units or of concrete, each wall to be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick with a minimum airspace of 2 inches (51 mm) between the walls.

2113.11.3.3 Lining. The inside of the interior wall shall be lined with an approved high-duty refractory brick, not less than 4 1/2 inches (114 mm) thick laid on the 4 1/2-inch bed (114 mm) in an approved high-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start at the base of the chimney and extend continuously to the top.

2113.11.3.4 Termination height. Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall extend not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

2113.11.3.5 Clearance. Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall have approved clearance from buildings and structures to prevent overheating combustible materials, permit inspection and maintenance operations on the chimney and prevent danger of burns to persons.

2113.12 Clay flue lining (installation). Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope no greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty nonwater-soluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue lining shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

2113.13 Additional requirements.

2113.13.1 Listed materials. Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer’s instructions.

2113.13.2 Space around lining. The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

Exception: This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

2113.14 Multiple flues. When two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

Exception: When venting only one appliance, two flues are permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

2113.15 Flue area (appliance). Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than the area of the connector from the appliance. Chimney flues connected to more than one appliance shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

Exceptions:
1. Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.
2. Chimney flues serving gas-fired appliances sized in accordance with the Fuel Gas Code.

2113.16 Flue area (masonry fireplace). Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 2113.16.1 or 2113.16.2.

2113.16.1 Minimum area. Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/12 of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/16 of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/10 of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than 1/8 of the fireplace opening.

2113.16.2 Determination of minimum area. The minimum net cross-sectional area of the flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 2113.16. A flue size providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are as provided in Tables 2113.16(1) and 2113.16(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

**FIGURE 2113.16**
FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS

**TABLE 2113.16(1)**
NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES$^a$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)</th>
<th>CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$10^{1/4}$</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm$^2$.

$^a$Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.
Inlet. Inlets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Inlets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

Masonry chimney cleanout openings. Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

Exception: Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces, where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

Chimney clearances. Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2113.20.

Exception:

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and labeled for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufac-

turer’s instructions, are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.

3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, are permitted to abut the masonry chimney sidewalls, in accordance with Figure 2113.19, provided such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and trim shall not overlap the corners of the chimney by more than 1 inch (25 mm).

### Table 2113.16(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)</th>
<th>CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.5 × 8.5</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 × 13</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 8</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 × 8</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 × 12</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 × 13</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 × 12</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 × 18</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 × 13</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 × 16</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 × 18</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 × 16</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 × 20</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 × 18</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 × 20</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 × 24</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 × 24</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm².

### Figure 2113.19

Illustration of Exception Three Chimney Clearance Provision

Chimney fireblocking. All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.
CHAPTER 22
STEEL

SECTION 2201
GENERAL
2201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of steel construction.

SECTION 2202
DEFINITIONS
2202.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:
STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED.
STEEL JOIST.
STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL.

SECTION 2203
IDENTIFICATION AND PROTECTION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES
2203.1 Identification. Identification of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Identification of cold-formed steel members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. Identification of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with the requirements contained in AISI S200 or AISI S220, as applicable. Other steel furnished for structural load-carrying purposes shall be properly identified for conformity to the ordered grade in accordance with the specified ASTM standard or other specification and the provisions of this chapter. Steel that is not readily identifiable as to grade from marking and test records shall be tested to determine conformity to such standards.

2203.2 Protection. Painting of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Painting of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with SJI CJ, SJI JG, SJI K and SJI LH/DLH. Individual structural members and assembled panels of cold-formed steel construction shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with the requirements contained in AISI S100. Protection of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be in accordance with AISI S200 or AISI S220, as applicable.

SECTION 2204
CONNECTIONS
2204.1 Welding. The details of design, workmanship and technique for welding and qualification of welding personnel shall be in accordance with the specifications listed in Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2210 and 2211. For special inspection of welding, see Section 1705.2.

2204.2 Bolting. The design, installation and inspection of bolts shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2210 and 2211. For special inspection of the installation of high-strength bolts, see Section 1705.2.

2204.3 Anchor rods. Anchor rods shall be set in accordance with the approved construction documents. The protrusion of the threaded ends through the connected material shall fully engage the threads of the nuts but shall not be greater than the length of the threads on the bolts.

SECTION 2205
STRUCTURAL STEEL
2205.1 General. The design, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with AISC 360.

2205.2 Seismic design. Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Section 2205.2.1 or 2205.2.2, as applicable.

2205.2.1 Structural steel seismic force-resisting systems. The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel seismic force-resisting systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2205.2.1.1 or 2205.2.1.2, as applicable.

2205.2.1.1 Seismic Design Category B or C. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C shall be of any construction permitted in Section 2205. Where a response modification coefficient, \( R \), in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341.

Exception: The response modification coefficient, \( R \), designated for “Steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems” in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, shall be permitted for systems designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 360, and need not be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341.

2205.2.1.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

2205.2.2 Structural steel elements. The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in seismic force-resisting systems other than those covered in Section 2205.2.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be in accordance with AISC 341 where either of the following applies:

1. The structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.
2. A response modification coefficient, $R$, greater than 3 in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of the structure assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C.

SECTION 2206
COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE STRUCTURES

2206.1 General. Systems of structural steel elements acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360 and ACI 318, excluding ACI 318 Chapter 14.

2206.2 Seismic design. Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of composite steel and concrete systems shall be in accordance with Section 2206.2.1.

2206.2.1 Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction. Where a response modification coefficient, $R$, in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341.

SECTION 2207
STEEL JOISTS

2207.1 General. The design, manufacture and use of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with one of the following Steel Joist Institute (SJI) specifications:

1. SJI CJ
2. SJI K
3. SJI LH/DLH
4. SJI JG

2207.1.1 Seismic design. Where required, the seismic design of buildings shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2205.2 or 2211.6.

2207.2 Design. The registered design professional shall indicate on the construction documents the steel joist and steel joist girder designations from the specifications listed in Section 2207.1; and shall indicate the requirements for joist and joist girder design, layout, end supports, anchorage, bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, bridging termination connections and bearing connection design to resist uplift and lateral loads. These documents shall indicate special requirements as follows:

1. Special loads including:
   1.1. Concentrated loads.
   1.2. Nonuniform loads.
   1.3. Net uplift loads.
   1.4. Axial loads.
   1.5. End moments.
   1.6. Connection forces.

2. Special considerations including:
   2.1. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
   2.2. Oversized or other nonstandard web openings.
   2.3. Extended ends.
   2.4. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

2207.3 Calculations. The steel joist and joist girder manufacturer shall design the steel joists and steel joist girders in accordance with the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1 to support the load requirements of Section 2207.2. The registered design professional shall be permitted to require submission of the steel joist and joist girder calculations as prepared by a registered design professional responsible for the product design. Where requested by the registered design professional, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit design calculations with a cover letter bearing the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer’s registered design professional. In addition to the design calculations submitted under seal and signature, the following shall be included:

1. Bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as cantilevered conditions and net uplift.
2. Connection design for:
   2.1. Connections that differ from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as flush-framed or framed connections.
   2.2. Field splices.
   2.3. Joist headers.

2207.4 Steel joist drawings. Steel joist placement plans shall be provided to show the steel joist products as specified on the approved construction documents and are to be utilized for field installation in accordance with specific project requirements as stated in Section 2207.2. Steel joist placement plans shall include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Listing of applicable loads as stated in Section 2207.2 and used in the design of the steel joists and joist girders as specified in the approved construction documents.
2. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
3. Connection requirements for:
   3.1. Joist supports.
   3.2. Joist girder supports.
   3.3. Field splices.
   3.4. Bridging attachments.
4. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
5. Size, location and connections for bridging.

Steel joist placement plans do not require the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer’s registered design professional.

**SECTION 2208**

**STEEL CABLE STRUCTURES**

**2208.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19.

**2208.2 Seismic requirements for steel cable.** The design strength of steel cables shall be determined by the provisions of ASCE 19 except as modified by these provisions.

1. A load factor of 1.1 shall be applied to the prestress force included in $T_s$ and $T_j$ as defined in Section 3.12.
2. In Section 3.2.1, Item (c) shall be replaced with “1.5 $T_j$” and Item (d) shall be replaced with “1.5 $T_j$.”

**SECTION 2209**

**STEEL STORAGE RACKS**

**2209.1 Storage racks.** The design, testing and utilization of storage racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI/ANSI MH 16.1. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of storage racks shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

**SECTION 2210**

**COLD-FORMED STEEL**

**2210.1 General.** The design of cold-formed carbon and low-alloy steel structural members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. The design of cold-formed stainless-steel structural members shall be in accordance with ASCE 8. Cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with Section 2211. Where required, the seismic design of cold-formed steel structures shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2210.2.

**2210.1.1 Steel decks.** The design and construction of cold-formed steel decks shall be in accordance with this section.

**2210.1.1.1 Noncomposite steel floor decks.** Noncomposite steel floor decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-NC1.0.

**2210.1.1.2 Steel roof deck.** Steel roof decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-RD1.0.

**2210.1.3 Composite slabs on steel decks.** Composite slabs of concrete and steel deck shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with SDI-C.

**2210.2 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structures.** Where a response modification coefficient, $R$, in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of cold-formed steel structures, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S100, ASCE 8, or, for cold-formed steel special-bolted moment frames, AISI S110.

**SECTION 2211**

**COLD-FORMED STEEL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION**

**2211.1 General.** The design and installation of structural and nonstructural members utilized in cold-formed steel light-frame construction where the specified minimum base steel thickness is not greater than 0.1180 inches (2.997 mm) shall be in accordance with AISI S200 and Sections 2211.2 through 2211.7, or AISI S220, as applicable.

**2211.2 Header design.** Headers, including box and back-to-back headers, and double and single L-headers shall be designed in accordance with AISI S212 or AISI S100.

**2211.3 Truss design.** Cold-formed steel trusses shall be designed in accordance with AISI S214, Sections 2211.3.1 through 2211.3.4 and accepted engineering practice.

**2211.3.1 Truss design drawings.** The truss design drawings shall conform to the requirements of Section B3.3 of AISI S214 and shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. The truss design drawings shall include the details of permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing in accordance with Section B6(a) or B 6(c) of AISI S214 where these methods are utilized to provide restraint/bracing.

**2211.3.2 Deferred submittals.** AISI S214 Section B4.2 shall be deleted.

**2211.3.3 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall contract with a registered design professional for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater. Special inspection of trusses over 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length shall be in accordance with Section 1705.2.

**2211.3.4 Truss quality assurance.** Trusses not part of a manufacturing process that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, shall be manufactured in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.2, as applicable.

**2211.4 Structural wall stud design.** Structural wall studs shall be designed in accordance with either AISI S211 or AISI S100.

**2211.5 Floor and roof system design.** Framing for floor and roof systems in buildings shall be designed in accordance with either AISI S210 or AISI S100.
2211.6 Lateral design. Light-frame shear walls, diagonal strap bracing that is part of a structural wall and diaphragms used to resist wind, seismic and other in-plane lateral loads shall be designed in accordance with AISI S213.

2211.7 Prescriptive framing. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, less than or equal to three stories above grade plane, shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI S230 subject to the limitations therein.
CHAPTER 23
WOOD

SECTION 2301
GENERAL

2301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of wood members and their fasteners.

2301.2 General design requirements. The design of structural elements or systems, constructed partially or wholly of wood or wood-based products, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. Allowable stress design in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2306.
2. Load and resistance factor design in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2307.
3. Conventional light-frame construction in accordance with Sections 2304 and 2308.
4. AWC WFCM in accordance with Section 2309.
5. The design and construction of log structures in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

2301.3 Nominal sizes. For the purposes of this chapter, where dimensions of lumber are specified, they shall be deemed to be nominal dimensions unless specifically designated as actual dimensions (see Section 2304.2).

SECTION 2302
DEFINITIONS

2302.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

ACCREDITATION BODY.
BRACED WALL LINE.
BRACED WALL PANEL.
COLLECTOR.
CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION.
CRIPPLE WALL.
CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER.
DIAPHRAGM, UNBLOCKED.
DRAG STRUT.
ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD.
FIBERBOARD.
GABLE.
GRADE (LUMBER).
HARDBOARD.
NAILING, BOUNDARY.
NAILING, EDGE.
NAILING, FIELD.

NOMINAL SIZE (LUMBER).
PARTICLEBOARD.

PERFORMANCE CATEGORY.

PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST.

SHEAR WALL.
Shear wall, perforated.
Shear wall segment, perforated.

STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER.
Laminated strand lumber (LSL).
Laminated veneer lumber (LVL).
Oriented strand lumber (OSL).
Parallel strand lumber (PSL).

STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER.

TIE-DOWN (HOLD-DOWN).

TREATED WOOD.
Fire-retardant-treated wood.
Preservative-treated wood.

WOOD SHEAR PANEL.

WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL.
Composite panels.
Oriented strand board (OSB).
Plywood.

SECTION 2303
MINIMUM STANDARDS AND QUALITY

2303.1 General. Structural sawn lumber; end-jointed lumber; prefabricated wood I-joists; structural glued-laminated timber; wood structural panels; fiberboard sheathing (when used structurally); hardboard siding (when used structurally); particleboard; preservative-treated wood; structural log members; structural composite lumber; round timber poles and piles; fire-retardant-treated wood; hardwood plywood; wood trusses; joist hangers; nails; and staples shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

2303.1.1 Sawn lumber. Sawn lumber used for load-supporting purposes, including end-jointed or edge-glued lumber, machine stress-rated or machine-evaluated lumber, shall be identified by the grade mark of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20 or equivalent. Grading practices and identification shall comply with rules published by an agency approved in accordance with the procedures of DOC PS 20 or equivalent procedures.
2303.1.1 Certificate of inspection. In lieu of a grade mark on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section is permitted to be accepted for precut, remanufactured or rough-sawn lumber and for sizes larger than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2303.1.2 End-jointed lumber. Approved end-jointed lumber is permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation “Heat Resistant Adhesive” or “HRA” included in its grade mark.

2303.1.3 Structural glued-laminated timber. Glued-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/AITC A 190.1 and ASTM D3737.

2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified in accordance with ANSI/APA PRG 320.

2303.1.5 Wood structural panels. Wood structural panels, when used structurally (including those used for siding, roof and wall sheathing, subflooring, diaphragms and built-up members), shall conform to the requirements for their type in DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Each panel or member shall be identified for grade, bond classification, and Performance Category by the trademarks of an approved testing and grading agency. The Performance Category value shall be used as the “nominal panel thickness” or “panel thickness” whenever referenced in this code. Wood structural panel components shall be designed and fabricated in accordance with the applicable standards listed in Section 2306.1 and identified by the trademarks of an approved testing and inspection agency indicating conformance to the applicable standard. In addition, wood structural panels when permanently exposed in outdoor applications shall be of Exterior type, except that wood structural panel roof sheathing exposed to the outdoors on the underside is permitted to be Exposure 1 type.

2303.1.6 Fiberboard. Fiberboard for its various uses shall conform to ASTM C208. Fiberboard sheathing, when used structurally, shall be identified by an approved agency as conforming to ASTM C208.

2303.1.6.1 Jointing. To ensure tight-fitting assemblies, edges shall be manufactured with square, shiplapped, beveled, tongue-and-groove or U-shaped joints.

2303.1.6.2 Roof insulation. Where used as roof insulation in all types of construction, fiberboard shall be protected with an approved roof covering.

2303.1.6.3 Wall insulation. Where installed and fire-blocked to comply with Chapter 7, fiberboards are permitted as wall insulation in all types of construction. In fire walls and fire barriers, unless treated to comply with Section 803.1 for Class A materials, the boards shall be cemented directly to the concrete, masonry or other noncombustible base and shall be protected with an approved noncombustible veneer anchored to the base without intervening airspaces.

2303.1.6.3.1 Protection. Fiberboard wall insulation applied on the exterior of foundation walls shall be protected below ground level with a bituminous coating.

2303.1.7 Hardboard. Hardboard siding used structurally shall be identified by an approved agency conforming to CPA/ANSI A135.6. Hardboard underlayment shall meet the strength requirements of 7/32-inch (5.6 mm) or 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) service class hardboard planed or sanded on one side to a uniform thickness of not less than 0.200 inch (5.1 mm). Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.5. Other basic hardboard products shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.4. Hardboard products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

2303.1.8 Particleboard. Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1. Particleboard shall be identified by the grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency. Particleboard shall not be utilized for applications other than indicated in this section unless the particleboard complies with the provisions of Section 2306.3.

2303.1.8.1 Floor underlayment. Particleboard floor underlayment shall conform to Type PBU of ANSI A208.1. Type PBU underlayment shall not be less than 1/32-inch (6.4 mm) thick and shall be installed in accordance with the instructions of the Composite Panel Association.

2303.1.9 Preservative-treated wood. Lumber, timber, plywood, piles and poles supporting permanent structures required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall conform to the requirements of the applicable AWPA Standard U1 and M4 for the species, product, preservative and end use. Preservatives shall be listed in Section 4 of AWPA U1. Lumber and plywood used in wood foundation systems shall conform to Chapter 18.

2303.1.9.1 Identification. Wood required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall bear the quality mark of an inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the preservative-treated wood. Inspection agencies for preservative-treated wood shall be listed by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standards Treated Wood Program, or equivalent. The quality mark shall be on a stamp or label affixed to the preservative-treated wood, and shall include the following information:

1. Identification of treating manufacturer.
2. Type of preservative used.
3. Minimum preservative retention (pcf).
4. End use for which the product is treated.
2303.2 Fire-retardant-treated wood. Fire-retardant-treated wood is any wood product which, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, a listed flame spread index of 25 or less and show no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is continued for an additional 20-minute period. Additionally, the flame front shall not progress more than $10^{1/2}$ feet (3200 mm) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

2303.2.1 Pressure process. For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (345 kPa).

2303.2.2 Other means during manufacture. For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product.

2303.2.3 Testing. For wood products produced by other means during manufacture, other than a pressure process, all sides of the wood product shall be tested in accordance with and produce the results required in Section 2303.2. Wood structural panels shall be permitted to test only the front and back faces.

2303.2.4 Labeling. Fire-retardant-treated lumber and wood structural panels shall be labeled. The label shall contain the following items:

1. The identification mark of an approved agency in accordance with Section 1703.5.
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread and smoke-developed index.
7. Conformance with appropriate standards in accordance with Sections 2303.2.5 through 2303.2.8.
8. For fire-retardant-treated wood exposed to weather, damp or wet locations, include the words “No increase in the listed classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test” (ASTM D2898).

2303.2.5 Strength adjustments. Design values for untreated lumber and wood structural panels, as specified in Section 2303.1, shall be adjusted for fire-retardant-treated wood. Adjustments to design values shall be based on an approved method of investigation that takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

2303.2.5.1 Wood structural panels. The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5516. The test data developed by ASTM D5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both, for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for its treatment.

2303.2.5.2 Lumber. For each species of wood that is treated, the effects of the treatment, the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5664. The test data developed by ASTM D5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

2303.2.6 Exposure to weather, damp or wet locations. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is exposed to weather, or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as “Exterior” to indicate there is no increase in the listed flame
2303.4 Trusses. Wood trusses shall comply with Sections HPVA HP-1. plywood shall be manufactured and identified as required in Sections 2303.3. Hardwood and plywood. See Section 603.1 for limitations on the use of fire-retardant-treated wood in buildings of Type I or II construction.

2303.4 Trusses. Wood trusses shall comply with Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.7.

2303.4.1 Design. Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this code and accepted engineering practice. Members are permitted to be joined by nails, glue, bolts, timber connectors, metal connector plates or other approved framing devices.

2303.4.1.1 Truss design drawings. The written, graphic and pictorial depiction of each individual truss shall be provided to the building official for approval prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall also be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the information specified below:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing;
2. Location of all joints and support locations;
3. Number of plies if greater than one;
4. Required bearing widths;
5. Design loads as applicable, including:
   5.1. Top chord live load;
   5.2. Top chord dead load;
   5.3. Bottom chord live load;
   5.4. Bottom chord dead load;
   5.5. Additional loads and locations; and
   5.6. Environmental design criteria and loads (wind, rain, snow, seismic, etc.).
6. Other lateral loads, including drag strut loads;
7. Adjustments to wood member and metal connector plate design value for conditions of use;
8. Maximum reaction force and direction, including maximum uplift reaction forces where applicable;
9. Metal-connector-plate type, size and thickness or gage, and the dimensioned location of each metal connector plate except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface;
10. Size, species and grade for each wood member;
11. Truss-to-truss connections and truss field assembly requirements;
12. Calculated span-to-deflection ratio and maximum vertical and horizontal deflection for live and total load as applicable;
13. Maximum axial tension and compression forces in the truss members;
14. Required permanent individual truss member restraint location and the method and details of restraint/bracing to be used in accordance with Section 2303.4.1.2.

2303.4.1.2 Permanent individual truss member restraint. Where permanent restraint of truss members is required on the truss design drawings, it shall be accomplished by one of the following methods:

1. Permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing shall be installed using standard industry lateral restraint/bracing details in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. Locations for lateral restraint shall be identified on the truss design drawing.
2. The trusses shall be designed so that the buckling of any individual truss member is resisted internally by the individual truss through suitable means (i.e., buckling reinforcement by T-reinforcement or L-reinforcement, proprietary reinforcement, etc.). The buckling reinforcement of individual members of the trusses shall be installed as shown on the truss design drawing or on supplemental truss member buckling reinforcement details provided by the truss designer.
3. A project-specific permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing design shall be permitted to be specified by any registered design professional.

2303.4.1.3 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall contract with any qualified registered design professional for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for all trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18288 mm) or greater.

2303.4.1.4 Truss designer. The individual or organization responsible for the design of trusses.

2303.4.1.4.1 Truss design drawings. Where required by the registered design professional, the building official or the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed, each individ-
ual truss design drawing shall bear the seal and signature of the truss designer.

Exceptions:

1. Where a cover sheet and truss index sheet are combined into a single sheet and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the single cover/truss index sheet is the only document required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.

2. When a cover sheet and a truss index sheet are separately provided and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the cover sheet and the truss index sheet are the only documents required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.

2303.4.2 Truss placement diagram. The truss manufacturer shall provide a truss placement diagram that identifies the proposed location for each individually designated truss and references the corresponding truss design drawing. The truss placement diagram shall be provided as part of the truss submittal package, and with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss placement diagrams that serve only as a guide for installation and do not deviate from the permit submittal drawings shall not be required to bear the seal or signature of the truss designer.

2303.4.3 Truss submittal package. The truss submittal package provided by the truss manufacturer shall consist of each individual truss design drawing, the truss placement diagram, the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing method and details and any other structural details germane to the trusses; and, as applicable, the cover/truss index sheet.

2303.4.4 Anchorage. The design for the transfer of loads and anchorage of each truss to the supporting structure is the responsibility of the registered design professional.

2303.4.5 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member (e.g., HVAC equipment, piping, additional roofing or insulation, etc.) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

2303.4.6 TPI 1 specifications. In addition to Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.5, the design, manufacture and quality assurance of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall be in accordance with TPI 1. Job-site inspections shall be in compliance with Section 110.4, as applicable.

2303.4.7 Truss quality assurance. Trusses not part of a manufacturing process in accordance with either Section 2303.4.6 or a referenced standard, which provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, shall be manufactured in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.5, as applicable.

2303.5 Test standard for joist hangers. Joist hangers shall be in accordance with ASTM D7147.

2303.6 Nails and staples. Nails and staples shall conform to requirements of ASTM F1667. Nails used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending yield strengths as follows: 80 kips per square inch (ksi) (551 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) but not larger than 0.254 inch (6.45 mm), 90 ksi (620 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm) but not larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) and 100 ksi (689 MPa) for shank diameters of at least 0.099 inch (2.51 mm) but not larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm).

2303.7 Shrinkage. Consideration shall be given in design to the possible effect of cross-grain dimensional changes considered vertically which may occur in lumber fabricated in a green condition.

SECTION 2304
GENERAL CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

2304.1 General. The provisions of this section apply to design methods specified in Section 2301.2.

2304.2 Size of structural members. Computations to determine the required sizes of members shall be based on the net dimensions (actual sizes) and not nominal sizes.

2304.3 Wall framing. The framing of exterior and interior walls shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

2304.3.1 Bottom plates. Studs shall have full bearing on a 2-inch-thick (actual 1 1/2-inch, 38 mm) or larger plate or sill having a width at least equal to the width of the studs.

2304.3.2 Framing over openings. Headers, double joists, trusses or other approved assemblies that are of adequate size to transfer loads to the vertical members shall be provided over window and door openings in load-bearing walls and partitions.

2304.3.3 Shrinkage. Wood walls and bearing partitions shall not support more than two floors and a roof unless an analysis satisfactory to the building official shows that shrinkage of the wood framing will not have adverse effects on the structure or any plumbing, electrical or mechanical systems or other equipment installed therein due to excessive shrinkage or differential movements caused by shrinkage. The analysis shall also show that the roof drainage system and the foregoing systems or equipment will not be adversely affected or, as an alternate, such systems shall be designed to accommodate the differential shrinkage or movements.

2304.4 Floor and roof framing. The framing of wood joisted floors and wood-framed roofs shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

2304.5 Framing around flues and chimneys. Combustible framing shall be a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm), but shall not be less than the distance specified in Sections 2111 and
2113 and the Mechanical Code, from flues, chimneys and fireplaces, and 6 inches (152 mm) away from flue openings.

**2304.6 Exterior wall sheathing.** Wall sheathing on the outside of exterior walls, including gables, and the connection of the sheathing to framing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and shall be capable of resisting wind pressures in accordance with Section 1609.

**2304.6.1 Wood structural panel sheathing.** Where wood structural panel sheathing is used as the exposed finish on the outside of exterior walls, it shall have an exterior exposure durability classification. Where wood structural panel sheathing is used elsewhere, but not as the exposed finish, it shall be of a type manufactured with exterior glue (Exposure 1 or Exterior). Wood structural panel sheathing, connections and framing spacing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.6.1 for the applicable wind speed and exposure category where used in enclosed buildings with a mean roof height not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm) and a topographic factor \((K_z, t)\) of 1.0.

**2304.7 Interior paneling.** Softwood wood structural panels used for interior paneling shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 8 and shall be installed in accordance with Table 2304.8(1). Panels shall comply with DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of CPA/ANSI A135.5. Hardwood plywood shall conform to HPVA HP-1.

**2304.8 Floor and roof sheathing.** Structural floor sheathing and structural roof sheathing shall comply with Sections 2304.8.1 and 2304.8.2, respectively.

**2304.8.1 Structural floor sheathing.** Structural floor sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and the special provisions in this section.

Floor sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(4) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section.

---

**TABLE 2304.6.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minimum Nail</th>
<th>Minimum Wood Structural Panel Span Rating</th>
<th>Minimum Nominal Panel Thickness (inches)</th>
<th>Maximum Wall Stud Spacing (inches)</th>
<th>Panel Nail Spacing</th>
<th>Maximum Nominal Design Wind Speed, (V_{adm}) (MPH)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edges (inches o.c.)</td>
<td>Field (inches o.c.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6d Common (2.0&quot; × 0.113&quot;)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>24/0</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24/16</td>
<td>7/16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8d Common (2.5&quot; × 0.131&quot;)</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>24/16</td>
<td>7/16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Panel strength axis shall be parallel or perpendicular to supports. Three-ply plywood sheathing with studs spaced more than 16 inches on center shall be applied with panel strength axis perpendicular to supports.

b. The table is based on wind pressures acting toward and away from building surfaces in accordance with Section 30.7 of ASCE 7. Lateral requirements shall be in accordance with Section 2305 or 2308.

c. Wood structural panels with span ratings of wall-16 or wall-24 shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/0 span rating. Plywood siding rated 16 on center or 24 on center shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/16 span rating. Wall-16 and plywood siding 16 on center shall be used with studs spaced a maximum of 16 inches on center.

d. \(V_{adm}\) shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

---

**TABLE 2304.8(1)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Span (inches)</th>
<th>Minimum Net Thickness (inches) of Lumber Placed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perpendicular to supports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surfaced dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floors</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roofs</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Installation details shall conform to Sections 2304.8.1 and 2304.8.2 for floor and roof sheathing, respectively.

b. Floor or roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

c. Maximum 19-percent moisture content.
### Table 2304.8(2)

**Sheathing Lumber, Minimum Grade Requirements: Board Grade**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOLID FLOOR OR ROOF SHEATHING</th>
<th>SPACED ROOF SHEATHING</th>
<th>GRADING RULES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Utility</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 common or utility</td>
<td>3 common or standard</td>
<td>NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA, NSLB or NELMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 3</td>
<td>No. 2</td>
<td>SPIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merchantable</td>
<td>Construction common</td>
<td>RIS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2304.8(3)

**Allowable Spans and Loads for Wood Structural Panel Sheathing and Single-Floor Grades Continuous over Two or More Spans with Strength Axis Perpendicular to Supports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHEATHING GRADES ROOF(a,b)</th>
<th>FLOOR(a,b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Panel span rating roof/ floor span</td>
<td>Panel thickness (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With edge support(f)</td>
<td>Without edge support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16/0</td>
<td>(\frac{3}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20/0</td>
<td>(\frac{3}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/0</td>
<td>(\frac{3}{8}, \frac{7}{16}, \frac{1}{2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24/16</td>
<td>(\frac{7}{16}, \frac{1}{2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32/16</td>
<td>(\frac{15}{32}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40/20</td>
<td>(\frac{19}{32}, \frac{3}{8}, \frac{7}{16}, \frac{1}{2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48/24</td>
<td>(\frac{23}{32}, \frac{3}{8}, \frac{7}{16})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54/32</td>
<td>(\frac{7}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60/32</td>
<td>(\frac{7}{8}, \frac{1}{2})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGLE FLOOR GRADES ROOF(a,b)</th>
<th>FLOOR(a,b)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Panel span rating</td>
<td>Panel thickness (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With edge support(f)</td>
<td>Without edge support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 o.c.</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{19}{32}, \frac{5}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 o.c.</td>
<td>(\frac{19}{32}, \frac{5}{8}, \frac{3}{4})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 o.c.</td>
<td>(\frac{23}{32}, \frac{3}{4})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 o.c.</td>
<td>(\frac{7}{8})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 o.c.</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m².

- a. Applies to panels 24 inches or wider.
- b. Floor and roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.
- c. Uniform load deflection limitations \(\frac{1}{100}\) of span under live load plus dead load, \(\frac{1}{100}\) under live load only.
- d. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking unless \(\frac{1}{4}\)-inch minimum thickness underlayment or 1/2-inch of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is \(\frac{1}{4}\)-inch wood strip. Allowable uniform load based on deflection of \(\frac{1}{100}\) of span is 100 pounds per square foot except the span rating of 48 inches on center is based on a total load of 65 pounds per square foot.
- e. Allowable load at maximum span.
- f. Tongue-and-groove edges, panel edge clips (one midway between each support, except two equally spaced between supports 48 inches on center), lumber blocking or other. Only lumber blocking shall satisfy blocked diaphragm requirements.
- g. For \(\frac{1}{2}\)-inch panel, maximum span shall be 24 inches.
- h. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center where \(\frac{1}{4}\)-inch wood strip flooring is installed at right angles to joist.
- i. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center for floors where 1/2 inches of cellular or lightweight concrete is applied over the panels.
### TABLE 2304.8(4)

**ALLOWABLE SPAN FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL COMBINATION SUBFLOOR-UNDERLAYMENT (SINGLE FLOOR)**

(Tables Continuous Over Two or More Spans and Strength Axis Perpendicular to Supports)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IDENTIFICATION</th>
<th>MAXIMUM SPACING OF JOISTS (inches)</th>
<th>Thickness (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>16 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>20 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>24 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>32 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 3</td>
<td>48 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>16 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>24 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>32 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>48 o.c.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m².

a. Spans limited to value shown because of possible effects of concentrated loads. Allowable uniform loads based on deflection of 1/360 of span is 100 pounds per square foot except allowable total uniform load for 1/18-inch wood structural panels over joists spaced 48 inches on center is 65 pounds per square foot. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking, unless 1/4-inch minimum thickness underlayment or 1 1/2 inches of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is 3/4-inch wood strip.

b. Floor panels complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

c. Applicable to all grades of sanded exterior-type plywood. See DOC PS 1 for plywood species groups.

d. Applicable to Underlayment grade, C-C (Plugged) plywood, and Single Floor grade wood structural panels.

### TABLE 2304.8(5)

**ALLOWABLE LOAD (PSF) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL ROOF SHEATHING CONTINUOUS OVER TWO OR MORE SPANS AND STRENGTH AXIS PARALLEL TO SUPPORTS**

(Plywood Structural Panels Are Five-Ply, Five-Layer Unless Otherwise Noted)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PANEL GRADE</th>
<th>THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM SPAN (inches)</th>
<th>LOAD AT MAXIMUM SPAN (psf)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural I sheathing</td>
<td>7/16</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15/32</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>35&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>40&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing, other grades covered in DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2</td>
<td>7/16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15/32</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>40&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>45&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>60&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m².

a. Roof sheathing complying with this table shall be deemed to meet the design criteria of Section 2304.8.

b. Uniform load deflection limitations 1/180 of span under live load plus dead load, 1/240 under live load only. Edges shall be blocked with lumber or other approved type of edge supports.

c. For composite and four-ply plywood structural panel, load shall be reduced by 15 pounds per square foot.

### 2304.8.2 Structural roof sheathing

Structural roof sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and the special provisions in this section.

Roof sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(5) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section. Wood structural panel roof sheathing shall be bonded by exterior glue.

### 2304.9 Lumber decking

Lumber decking shall be designed and installed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and Sections 2304.9.1 through 2304.9.5.3.

### 2304.9.1 General

Each piece of lumber decking shall be square-end trimmed. When random lengths are furnished, each piece shall be square end trimmed across the face so that at least 90 percent of the pieces are within 0.5 degrees (0.00873 rad) of square. The ends of the pieces shall be permitted to be beveled up to 2 degrees (0.0349 rad) from the vertical with the exposed face of the piece slightly longer than the opposite face of the piece. Tongue-and-groove decking shall be installed with the tongues up on sloped or pitched roofs with pattern faces down.

### 2304.9.2 Layup patterns

Lumber decking is permitted to be laid up following one of five standard patterns as...
defined in Sections 2304.9.2.1 through 2304.9.2.5. Other patterns are permitted to be used provided they are substantiated through engineering analysis.

**2304.9.2.1 Simple span pattern.** All pieces shall be supported on their ends (i.e., by two supports).

**2304.9.2.2 Two-span continuous pattern.** All pieces shall be supported by three supports, and all end joints shall occur in line on alternating supports. Supporting members shall be designed to accommodate the load redistribution caused by this pattern.

**2304.9.2.3 Combination simple and two-span continuous pattern.** Courses in end spans shall be alternating simple-span pattern and two-span continuous pattern. End joints shall be staggered in adjacent courses and shall bear on supports.

**2304.9.2.4 Cantilevered pieces intermixed pattern.** The decking shall extend across a minimum of three spans. Pieces in each starter course and every third course shall be simple span pattern. Pieces in other courses shall be cantilevered over the supports with end joints at alternating quarter or third points of the spans. Each piece shall bear on at least one support.

**2304.9.2.5 Controlled random pattern.** The decking shall extend across a minimum of three spans. End joints of pieces within 6 inches (152 mm) of the end joints of the adjacent pieces in either direction shall be separated by at least two intervening courses. In the end bays, each piece shall bear on at least one support. Where an end joint occurs in an end bay, the next piece in the same course shall continue over the first inner support for at least 24 inches (610 mm). The details of the controlled random pattern shall be as specified for each decking material in Section 2304.9.3.3, 2304.9.4.3 or 2304.9.5.3.

Decking that cantilevers beyond a support for a horizontal distance greater than 18 inches (457 mm), 24 inches (610 mm) or 36 inches (914 mm) for 2-inch (51 mm), 3-inch (76 mm) and 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness decking, respectively, shall comply with the following:

1. The maximum cantilevered length shall be 30 percent of the length of the first adjacent interior span.
2. A structural fascia shall be fastened to each decking piece to maintain a continuous, straight line.
3. There shall be no end joints in the decking between the cantilevered end of the decking and the centerline of the first adjacent interior span.

**2304.9.3 Mechanically laminated decking.** Mechanically laminated decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.3.1 through 2304.9.3.3.

**2304.9.3.1 General.** Mechanically laminated decking consists of square-edged dimension lumber laminations set on edge and nailed to the adjacent pieces and to the supports.

**2304.9.3.2 Nailing.** The length of nails connecting laminations shall be not less than two and one-half times the net thickness of each lamination. Where decking supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, side nails shall be installed not more than 30 inches (762 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges, and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, side nails shall be installed not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Two side nails shall be installed at each end of butt-jointed pieces.

Laminations shall be toenailed to supports with 20d or larger common nails. Where the supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to alternate supports; where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to every support.

**2304.9.3.3 Controlled random pattern.** There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on at least two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring on alternate supports. A maximum of seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

**2304.9.4 Two-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.** Two-inch (51 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.4.1 through 2304.9.4.3.

**2304.9.4.1 General.** Two-inch (51 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Decking shall be machined with a single tongue-and-groove pattern. Each decking piece shall be nailed to each support.

**2304.9.4.2 Nailing.** Each piece of decking shall be toenailed at each support with one 16d common nail through the tongue and face-nailed with one 16d common nail.

**2304.9.4.3 Controlled random pattern.** There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on at least two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring on alternate supports. A maximum of seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

**2304.9.5 Three- and four-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.** Three- and four-inch (76 mm and 102 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.5.1 through 2304.9.5.3.

**2304.9.5.1 General.** Three-inch (76 mm) and four-inch (102 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Decking shall be machined with a double tongue-and-groove pattern. Decking pieces shall be interconnected and nailed to the supports.
2304.9.5.2 Nailing. Each piece shall be toenailed at each support with one 40d common nail and face-nailed with one 60d common nail. Courses shall be spiked to each other with 8-inch (203 mm) spikes at maximum intervals of 30 inches (762 mm) through pre-drilled edge holes penetrating to a depth of approximately 4 inches (102 mm). One spike shall be installed at a distance not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) from the end of each piece.

2304.9.5.3 Controlled random pattern. There shall be a minimum distance of 48 inches (1219 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. Pieces not bearing on a support are permitted to be located in interior bays provided the adjacent pieces in the same course continue over the support for at least 24 inches (610 mm). This condition shall not occur more than once in every six courses in each interior bay.

2304.10 Connectors and fasteners. Connectors and fasteners shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.10.1 through 2304.10.7.

2304.10.1 Fastener requirements. Connections for wood members shall be designed in accordance with the appropriate methodology in Section 2301.2. The number and size of fasteners connecting wood members shall not be less than that set forth in Table 2304.10.1.

2304.10.2 Sheathing fasteners. Sheathing nails or other approved sheathing connectors shall be driven so that their head or crown is flush with the surface of the sheathing.

2304.10.3 Joist hangers and framing anchors. Connections depending on joist hangers or framing anchors, ties and other mechanical fastenings not otherwise covered are permitted where approved. The vertical load-bearing capacity, torsional moment capacity and deflection characteristics of joist hangers shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D7147.

2304.10.4 Other fasteners. Clips, staples, glues and other approved methods of fastening are permitted where approved.

2304.10.5 Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood shall be in accordance with Sections 2304.10.5.1 through 2304.10.5.4. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153.

2304.10.5.1 Fasteners and connectors for preservative-treated wood. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails, timber rivets, wood screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

2304.10.5.2 Fastenings for wood foundations. Fastenings, including nuts and washers, for wood foundations shall be as required in AWC PWF.

2304.10.5.3 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Fasteners other than nails, timber rivets, wood screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

2304.10.5.4 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior applications. Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior locations shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations. In the absence of the manufacturer’s recommendations, Section 2304.10.5.3 shall apply.

2304.10.6 Load path. Where wall framing members are not continuous from the foundation sill to the roof, the members shall be secured to ensure a continuous load path. Where required, sheet metal clamps, ties or clips shall be formed of galvanized steel or other approved corrosion-resistant material not less than 0.0329-inch (0.836 mm) base metal thickness.

2304.10.7 Framing requirements. Wood columns and posts shall be framed to provide full end bearing. Alternatively, column-and-post end connections shall be designed to resist the full compressive loads, neglecting end-bearing capacity. Column-and-post end connections shall be fastened to resist lateral and net induced uplift forces.

2304.11 Heavy timber construction. Where a structure, portion thereof or individual structural elements are required by provisions of this code to be of heavy timber, the building elements therein shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.11.1 through 2304.11.4. Minimum dimensions of heavy timber shall comply with the applicable requirements in Table 2304.11 based on roofs or floors supported and the configuration of each structural element, or in Sections 2304.11.2 through 2304.11.4. Lumber decking shall be in accordance with Section 2304.9.

2304.11.1 Details of heavy timber structural members. Heavy timber structural members shall be detailed and constructed in accordance with Sections 2304.11.1 through 2304.11.1.3.
### TABLE 2304.10.1
FASTENING SCHEDULE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS</th>
<th>NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER</th>
<th>SPACING AND LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Blocking between ceiling joists, rafters or trusses to top plate or other framing below</strong></td>
<td>3-8d common ((2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')); or 3-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 3-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 3-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Each end, toenail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blocking between rafters or truss not at the wall top plate, to rafter or truss</strong></td>
<td>2-8d common ((2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')) 2-3'' \times 0.131'' nails 2-16 d common ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.162'')) 3-3'' \times 0.131'' nails 3-3'' 14 gage staples</td>
<td>Each end, toenail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flat blocking to truss and web filler</strong></td>
<td>16d common ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.162'') @ 6'' o.c.) 3'' \times 0.131'' nails @ 6'' o.c. 3'' \times 14 gage staples @ 6'' o.c</td>
<td>Face nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Ceiling joists to top plate</strong></td>
<td>3-8d common ((2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')); or 3-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 3-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 3-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Each joist, toenail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. Ceiling joist not attached to parallel rafter, laps over partitions (no thrust)</strong> (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)</td>
<td>3-16d common ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.162'')); or 4-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 4-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 4-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Face nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. Ceiling joist attached to parallel rafter (heel joint)</strong> (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)</td>
<td>Per Table 2308.7.3.1</td>
<td>Face nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. Collar tie to rafter</strong></td>
<td>3-10d common ((3'' \times 0.148'')); or 4-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 4-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 4-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Face nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6. Rafter or roof truss to top plate</strong> (See Section 2308.7.5, Table 2308.7.5)</td>
<td>3-10d common ((3'' \times 0.148'')); or 3-16d box ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.135'')); or 4-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 4-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 4-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Toenail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7. Roof rafters to ridge valley or hip rafters; or roof rafter to 2-inch ridge beam</strong></td>
<td>2-16d common ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.162'')); or 3-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 3-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 3-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown; or 3-10d common ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.148'')); or 3-16d box ((3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.135'')); or 4-10d box ((3'' \times 0.128'')); or 4-3'' \times 0.131'' nails; or 4-3'' 14 gage staples, (\frac{1}{16}'') crown</td>
<td>Toenail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS</th>
<th>NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER</th>
<th>SPACING AND LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>8. Stud to stud (not at braced wall panels)</strong></td>
<td>16d common (3(1/2)&quot; × 0.162&quot;); 10d box (3(3/4)&quot; × 0.128&quot;); or 3(3/4)&quot; × 0.131&quot; nails; or 3-3(1/4) 14 gage staples, (7/16)&quot; crown</td>
<td>24&quot; o.c. face nail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **9. Stud to stud and abutting studs at intersecting wall corners (at braced wall panels)** | 16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 16d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.135"); or 3\(3/4\)" × 0.131" nails; or 3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | 16" o.c. face nail |

| **10. Built-up header (2" to 2" header)** | 16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 16d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.135"); or 3\(3/4\)" × 0.131" nails; or 3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | 16" o.c. each edge, face nail |

| **11. Continuous header to stud** | 4-8d common (2\(1/2\)" × 0.131"); 4-10d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.128") | Toenail |

| **12. Top plate to top plate** | 16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162") | 16" o.c. face nail |

| **13. Top plate to top plate, at end joints** | 8-16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 12-10d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.128"); 12-3\(3/4\) × 0.131" nails; or 12-3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown Each side of end joint, face nail (minimum 24" lap splice length each side of end joint) | 16" o.c. each edge, face nail |

| **14. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking (not at braced wall panels)** | 16d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.135"); 3\(3/4\)" × 0.131" nails; or 3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | 16" o.c. face nail |

| **15. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking at braced wall panels** | 2-16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 3-16d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.135") 4-3\(1/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | 16" o.c. face nail |

| **16. Stud to top or bottom plate** | 4-8d common (2\(1/2\)" × 0.131"); 4-10d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.128") 4-3\(1/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown; or Toenail |

| **17. Top or bottom plate to stud** | 2-16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 3-10d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.128"); 3-3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | End nail |

| **18. Top plates, laps at corners and intersections** | 2-16d common (3\(1/2\)" × 0.162"); 3-10d box (3\(3/4\)" × 0.128"); 3-3\(3/4\) 14 gage staples, \(7/16\)" crown | Face nail |

(continued)
### TABLE 2304.10.1—continued
### FASTENING SCHEDULE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS</th>
<th>NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER</th>
<th>SPACING AND LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19. 1&quot; brace to each stud and plate</td>
<td>2-8d common (2(\frac{1}{2})&quot;) (\times) 0.131&quot;); or 2-10d box (3&quot; (\times) 0.128&quot;); or 2-3&quot; (\times) 0.131&quot; nails; or 2-3&quot; 14 gage staples, 7/16&quot; crown</td>
<td>Face nail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 20. 1" \(\times\) 6" sheathing to each bearing | 2-8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128") | Face nail |

| 21. 1" \(\times\) 8" and wider sheathing to each bearing | 3-8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128") | Face nail |

### Floor

| 22. Joist to sill, top plate, or girder | 3-8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or floor 3-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 3-3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | Toenail |

| 23. Rim joist, band joist, or blocking to top plate, sill or other framing below | 8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or 10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | 6" o.c., toenail |

| 24. 1" \(\times\) 6" subfloor or less to each joist | 2-8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128") | Face nail |

| 25. 2" subfloor to joist or girder | 2-16d common (3\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.162") | Face nail |

| 26. 2" planks (plank & beam – floor & roof) | 2-16d common (3\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.162") Each bearing, face nail | |

| 27. Built-up girders and beams, 2" lumber layers | 20d common (4" \(\times\) 0.192") 10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | 32" o.c., face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides 24" o.c. face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides Ends and at each splice, face nail |

| 28. Ledger strip supporting joists or rafters | 3-16d common (3\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 4-3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | Each joist or rafter, face nail |

| 29. Joist to band joist or rim joist | 3-16d common (3\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 4-3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | End nail |

| 30. Bridging or blocking to joist, rafter or truss | 2-8d common (2\(\frac{1}{2}\)") \(\times\) 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" \(\times\) 0.128"); or 2-3" \(\times\) 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, 7/16" crown | Each end, toenail |

(continued)
### TABLE 2304.10.1—continued

**FASTENING SCHEDULE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS</th>
<th>NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER</th>
<th>SPACING AND LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wood structural panels (WSP), subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. $\frac{3}{8}'' - \frac{1}{2}''$</td>
<td>6d common or deformed $(2'' \times 0.113'')$ (subfloor and wall)</td>
<td>Edges (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8d box or deformed $(2\frac{1}{4}'' \times 0.113'')$ (roof)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ nail (subfloor and wall)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1\frac{3}{16}''$ 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown (subfloor and wall)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ nail (roof)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1\frac{3}{16}''$ 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown (roof)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. $\frac{19}{32}'' - \frac{3}{4}''$</td>
<td>8d common $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')$; or 6d deformed $(2'' \times 0.113'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ nail; or 2'' 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. $\frac{3}{4}'' - 1\frac{1}{4}''$</td>
<td>10d common $(3'' \times 0.148'')$; or 8d deformed $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other exterior wall sheathing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. $\frac{3}{8}''$ fiberboard sheathing</td>
<td>$1\frac{1}{2}''$ galvanized roofing nail $(\frac{7}{16}''$ head diameter); or $1\frac{3}{16}''$ 16 gage staple with $\frac{7}{16}''$ or 1'' crown</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. $\frac{25}{32}''$ fiberboard sheathing</td>
<td>$1\frac{1}{4}''$ galvanized roofing nail $(\frac{7}{16}''$ diameter head); or $1\frac{3}{16}''$ 16 gage staple with $\frac{7}{16}''$ or 1'' crown</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wood structural panels, combination subfloor underlayment to framing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. $\frac{3}{4}''$ and less</td>
<td>8d common $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')$; or 6d deformed $(2'' \times 0.113'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. $\frac{7}{8}'' - 1''$</td>
<td>8d common $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')$; or 8d deformed $(2\frac{1}{4}'' \times 0.131'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. $1\frac{1}{8}'' - 1\frac{1}{4}''$</td>
<td>10d common $(3'' \times 0.148'')$; or 8d deformed $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Panel siding to framing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. $\frac{1}{2}''$ or less</td>
<td>6d corrosion-resistant siding $(1\frac{1}{8}'' \times 0.106'')$; or 6d corrosion-resistant casing $(2'' \times 0.099'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. $\frac{5}{8}''$</td>
<td>8d corrosion-resistant siding $(2\frac{1}{8}'' \times 0.128'')$; or 8d corrosion-resistant casing $(2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.113'')$</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(continued)*
2304.11.1.1 Columns. Minimum dimensions of columns shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Columns shall be continuous or superimposed throughout all stories and connected in an approved manner. Girders and beams at column connections shall be closely fitted around columns and adjoining ends shall be cross tied to each other, or intertied by caps or ties, to transfer horizontal loads across joints. Wood bolsters shall not be placed on tops of columns unless the columns support roof loads only. Where traditional heavy timber detailing is used, connections shall be by means of reinforced concrete or metal caps with brackets, by properly designed steel or iron caps, with pintsles and base plates, by timber splice plates affixed to the columns by metal connectors housed within the contact faces, or by other approved methods.
2304.11.2 Floor framing. Minimum dimensions of floor framing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Approved wall plate boxes or hangers shall be provided where wood beams, girders or trusses rest on masonry or concrete walls. Where intermediate beams are used to support a floor, they shall rest on top of girders, or shall be supported by an approved metal hanger into which the ends of the beams shall be closely fitted. Where traditional heavy timber detailing is used, these connections shall be permitted to be supported by ledgers or blocks securely fastened to the sides of the girders.

2304.11.1.3 Roof framing. Minimum dimensions of roof framing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Every roof girder and not less than every alternate roof beam shall be anchored to its supporting member to resist forces as required in Chapter 16.

2304.11.2 Partitions and walls. Partitions and walls shall comply with Section 2304.11.2.1 or 2304.11.2.2.

2304.11.2.1 Exterior walls. Exterior walls shall be permitted to be cross-laminated timber meeting the requirements of Section 2303.1.4.

2304.11.2.2 Interior walls and partitions. Interior walls and partitions shall be of solid wood construction formed by not less than two layers of 1-inch (25 mm) matched boards or laminated construction 4 inches (102 mm) thick, or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

2304.11.3 Floors. Floors shall be without concealed spaces. Wood floors shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2304.11.3.1 or Section 2304.11.3.2.

2304.11.3.1 Cross-laminated timber floors. Cross-laminated timber shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in actual thickness. Cross-laminated timber shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another. Cross-laminated timber shall be permitted to be connected to walls without a shrinkage gap provided that swelling or shrinking is considered in the design. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used.

2304.11.3.2 Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors. Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued-laminated planks, splined or tongue-and-groove, of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension tongue-and-groove flooring, laid crosswise or diagonally, 1/8-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

2. Planks not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width set on edge close together and well spiked and covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension flooring or 1/8-inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

3. The lumber shall be laid so that continuous lines of joints will occur only at points of support. Floors shall not extend closer than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) to walls.

4. Such 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) space shall be covered by a molding fastened to the wall and so arranged that it will not obstruct the swelling or shrinkage movements of the floor. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used in place of molding.

2304.11.4 Roof decks. Roofs shall be without concealed spaces and roof decks shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2304.11.4.1 or 2304.11.4.2. Other types of decking shall be an alternative that provides equivalent fire resistance and structural properties. Where supported by a wall, roof decks shall be anchored to walls to resist forces determined in accordance with Chapter 16. Such anchors shall consist of steel bolts, lags, screws or approved hardware of sufficient strength to resist prescribed forces.

2304.11.4.1 Cross-laminated timber roofs. Cross-laminated timber roofs shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another.

2304.11.4.2 Sawn, wood structural panel, or glued-laminated plank roofs. Sawn, wood structural panel, or glued-laminated plank roofs shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued laminated, splined or tongue-and-groove plank, not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness.

2. 1 1/8-inch-thick (32 mm) wood structural panel (exterior glue).

3. Planks not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width, set on edge close together and laid as required for floors.

2304.11.5 Roof decks. Where supported by a wall, roof decks shall be anchored to walls to resist uplift forces determined in accordance with Chapter 16. Such anchors shall consist of steel or iron bolts of sufficient strength to resist vertical uplift of the roof.

2304.12 Protection against decay and termites. Wood shall be protected from decay and termites in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.12.1 through 2304.12.7.

2304.12.1 Locations requiring water-borne preservatives or naturally durable wood. Wood used above ground in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.1.1 through 2304.12.1.5, 2304.12.3 and 2304.12.5 shall be naturally durable wood or preservative-treated wood using water-borne preservatives, in accordance with AWPA U1 for above-ground use.

2304.12.1.1 Joists, girders and subfloor. Wood joists or wood structural floors that are closer than 18 inches (457 mm) or wood girders that are closer than 12 inches
(305 mm) to the exposed ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas located within the perimeter of the building foundation shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.1.2 Wood supported by exterior foundation walls. Wood framing members, including wood sheathing, that are in contact with exterior foundation walls and are less than 8 inches (203 mm) from exposed earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.1.3 Exterior walls below grade. Wood framing members and furring strips in direct contact with the interior of exterior masonry or concrete walls below grade shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.1.4 Sleepers and sills. Sleepers and sills on a concrete or masonry slab that is in direct contact with earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.1.5 Wood siding. Clearance between wood siding and earth on the exterior of a building shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) or less than 2 inches (51 mm) vertical from concrete steps, porch slabs, patio slabs and similar horizontal surfaces exposed to the weather except where siding, sheathing and wall framing are of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.2 Other locations. Wood used in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.2.1 through 2304.12.2.5 shall be naturally durable wood or preservative-treated wood in accordance with AWPA U1. Preservative-treated wood used in interior locations shall be protected with two coats of urethane, shellac, latex epoxy or varnish unless wood used in interior locations shall be protected with two coats of urethane, shellac, latex epoxy or varnish unless the protective finish, the wood shall be dried in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

2304.12.2.1 Girder ends. The ends of wood girders entering exterior masonry or concrete walls shall be provided with a 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) airspace on top, sides and end, unless naturally durable or preservative-treated wood is used.

2304.12.2.2 Posts or columns. Posts or columns supporting permanent structures and supported by a concrete or masonry slab or footing that is in direct contact with the earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

   Exception: Posts or columns that are not exposed to the weather, are supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projected at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the slab or deck and 8 inches (203 mm) above exposed earth and are separated by an impervious moisture barrier.

2304.12.2.3 Supporting member for permanent appurtenances. Naturally durable or preservative-treated wood shall be utilized for those portions of wood members that form the structural supports of buildings, balconies, porches or similar permanent building appurtenances where such members are exposed to the weather without adequate protection from a roof, eave, overhang or other covering to prevent moisture or water accumulation on the surface or at joints between members.

   Exception: When a building is located in a geographical region where experience has demonstrated that climatic conditions preclude the need to use durable materials where the structure is exposed to the weather.

2304.12.2.4 Laminated timbers. The portions of glued-laminated timbers that form the structural supports of a building or other structure and are exposed to the weather and not fully protected from moisture by a roof, eave or similar covering shall be pressure treated with preservative or be manufactured from naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.2.5 Supporting members for permeable floors and roofs. Wood structural members that support moisture-permeable floors or roofs that are exposed to the weather, such as concrete or masonry slabs, shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood unless separated from such floors or roofs by an impervious moisture barrier.

2304.12.3 Wood in contact with the ground or fresh water. Wood used in contact with exposed earth shall be naturally durable for both decay and termite resistance or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil or fresh water use.

   Exception: Untreated wood is permitted where such wood is continuously and entirely below the ground-water level or submerged in fresh water.

2304.12.3.1 Posts or columns. Posts and columns that are supporting permanent structures and embedded in concrete that is exposed to the weather or in direct contact with the earth shall be of preservative-treated wood.

2304.12.4 Termite protection. In geographical areas where hazard of termite damage is known to be very heavy, wood floor framing in the locations specified in Section 2304.12.2.1 and exposed framing of exterior decks or balconies shall be of naturally durable species (termite resistant) or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for the species, product preservative and end use or provided with approved methods of termite protection.

2304.12.5 Wood used in retaining walls and cribs. Wood installed in retaining or crib walls shall be preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil and fresh water use.

2304.12.6 Attic ventilation. For attic ventilation, see Section 1203.2.

2304.12.7 Under-floor ventilation (crawl space). For under-floor ventilation (crawl space), see Section 1203.4.
2304.13 Long-term loading. Wood members supporting concrete, masonry or similar materials shall be checked for the effects of long-term loading using the provisions of the ANSI/AWC NDS. The total deflection, including the effects of long-term loading, shall be limited in accordance with Section 1604.3.1 for these supported materials.

Exception: Horizontal wood members supporting masonry or concrete nonstructural floor or roof surfacing not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick need not be checked for long-term loading.

SECTION 2305
GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LATERAL FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS

2305.1 General. Structures using wood-frame shear walls or wood-frame diaphragms to resist wind, seismic or other lateral loads shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS and the applicable provisions of Sections 2305, 2306 and 2307.

2305.1.1 Openings in shear panels. Openings in shear panels that materially affect their strength shall be detailed on the plans and shall have their edges adequately reinforced to transfer all shearing stresses.

2305.2 Diaphragm deflection. The deflection of wood-frame diaphragms shall be determined in accordance with AWC SDPWS. The deflection (Δ) of a blocked wood structural panel diaphragm uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-1. If not uniformly fastened, the constant 0.188 (For SI: 1/1627) in the third term shall be modified by an approved method.

\[ \Delta = \frac{5vL^3}{8EAb} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + 0.188Le_n + \frac{\Sigma(\Delta X)}{2b} \]  

(Equation 23-1)

For SI: \[ \Delta = \frac{0.052vL^3}{EAb} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + \frac{Le_n}{1627} + \frac{\Sigma(\Delta X)}{2b} \]

where:

- \( A \) = Area of chord cross section, in square inches (mm²).
- \( b \) = Diaphragm width, in feet (mm).
- \( E \) = Elastic modulus of chords, in pounds per square inch (N/mm²).
- \( e_n \) = Staple deformation, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].
- \( Gt \) = Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch (N/mm) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].
- \( L \) = Diaphragm length, in feet (mm).
- \( v \) = Maximum shear due to design loads in the direction under consideration, in pounds per linear foot (plf) (N/mm).
- \( \Delta \) = The calculated deflection, in inches (mm).

\( \Sigma(\Delta X) \) = Sum of individual chord-splice slip values on both sides of the diaphragm, each multiplied by its distance to the nearest support.

### Table 2305.2(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOAD PER FASTENER (pounds)</th>
<th>FASTENER DESIGNATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>14-Ga staple x 2 inches long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>0.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>0.053</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

a. Increase \( e_n \) values 20 percent for plywood grades other than Structural I.

b. Load per fastener = maximum shear per foot divided by the number of fasteners per foot at interior panel edges.

c. Decrease \( e_n \) values 50 percent for seasoned lumber (moisture content < 19 percent).

2305.3 Shear wall deflection. The deflection of wood-frame shear walls shall be determined in accordance with AWC SDPWS. The deflection (Δ) of a blocked wood structural panel shear wall uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-2.

\[ \Delta = \frac{8vh^3}{3EAb} + \frac{vh}{Gt} + 0.75he_n + \frac{dvh}{b} \]

(Equation 23-2)

For SI: \[ \Delta = \frac{vh^3}{3EAb} + \frac{vh}{Gt} + \frac{he_n}{407.6} + \frac{dvh}{b} \]

where:

- \( A \) = Area of boundary element cross section in square inches (mm²) (vertical member at shear wall boundary).
- \( b \) = Wall width, in feet (mm).
- \( d_v \) = Vertical elongation of overturning anchorage (including fastener slip, device elongation, anchor rod elongation, etc.) at the design shear load (\( v \)).
- \( E \) = Elastic modulus of boundary element (vertical member at shear wall boundary), in pounds per square inch (N/mm²).
- \( e_n \) = Staple deformation, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].
- \( Gt \) = Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch (N/mm) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].
- \( h \) = Wall height, in feet (mm).
- \( v \) = Maximum shear due to design loads at the top of the wall, in pounds per linear foot (N/mm).
- \( \Delta \) = The calculated deflection, in inches (mm).
SECTION 2306
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

2306.1 Allowable stress design. The design and construction of wood elements in structures using allowable stress design shall be in accordance with the following applicable standards:

American Wood Council.
- NDS National Design Specification for Wood Construction
- SDPWS Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic

American Institute of Timber Construction.
- AITC 104 Typical Construction Details
- AITC 110 Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber
- AITC 113 Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber
- AITC 117 Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species
- AITC 119 Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species
- AITC 200 Inspection Manual

TABLE 2305.2(2)
VALUES OF Gt FOR USE IN CALCULATING DEFLECTION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS AND DIAPHRAGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PANEL TYPE</th>
<th>SPAN RATING</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
<th>Structural I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing</td>
<td>24/0</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>32,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24/16</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32/16</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40/20</td>
<td>28,500</td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48/24</td>
<td>31,000</td>
<td>40,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single Floor</td>
<td>16 o.c.</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 o.c.</td>
<td>28,000</td>
<td>36,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 o.c.</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>39,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32 o.c.</td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td>47,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48 o.c.</td>
<td>50,500</td>
<td>65,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PANEL TYPE</th>
<th>Thickness (in.)</th>
<th>A-A, A-C</th>
<th>Marine</th>
<th>All Other Grades</th>
<th>A-A, A-C</th>
<th>Marine</th>
<th>All Other Grades</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing</td>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>24,000</td>
<td>31,000</td>
<td>24,000</td>
<td>31,000</td>
<td>31,000</td>
<td>31,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/32</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>33,000</td>
<td>25,500</td>
<td>33,000</td>
<td>33,000</td>
<td>33,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/8</td>
<td>26,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>26,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
<td>34,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/32</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>49,500</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>49,500</td>
<td>49,500</td>
<td>49,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>38,500</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>38,500</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19/32</td>
<td>49,000</td>
<td>63,500</td>
<td>49,000</td>
<td>63,500</td>
<td>63,500</td>
<td>63,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>49,500</td>
<td>64,500</td>
<td>49,500</td>
<td>64,500</td>
<td>64,500</td>
<td>64,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21/32</td>
<td>50,500</td>
<td>65,500</td>
<td>50,500</td>
<td>65,500</td>
<td>65,500</td>
<td>65,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>51,000</td>
<td>66,500</td>
<td>51,000</td>
<td>66,500</td>
<td>66,500</td>
<td>66,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7/8</td>
<td>52,500</td>
<td>68,500</td>
<td>52,500</td>
<td>68,500</td>
<td>68,500</td>
<td>68,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>73,500</td>
<td>95,500</td>
<td>73,500</td>
<td>95,500</td>
<td>95,500</td>
<td>95,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/8</td>
<td>75,000</td>
<td>97,500</td>
<td>75,000</td>
<td>97,500</td>
<td>97,500</td>
<td>97,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound/inch = 0.1751 N/mm.
a. Applies to plywood with five or more layers; for five-ply/three-layer plywood, use values for four ply.
2306.1.4 Lumber decking. The capacity of lumber decking arranged according to the patterns described in Section 2304.9.2 shall be the lesser of the capacities determined for flexure and deflection according to the formulas in Table 2306.1.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PATTERN</th>
<th>ALLOWABLE AREA LOADS FOR LUMBER DECKING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple span</td>
<td>[ \sigma_b = \frac{8F_b d^2}{l^6} ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two-span continuous</td>
<td>[ \sigma_b = \frac{8F_b d^2}{l^6} ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination simple- and two-span continuous</td>
<td>[ \sigma_b = \frac{8F_b d^2}{l^6} ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantilevered pieces intermixed</td>
<td>[ \sigma_b = \frac{20F_b d^2}{3l^6} ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled random layup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2306.1.1 Joists and rafters. The design of rafter spans is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC STJR.

2306.1.2 Plank and beam flooring. The design of plank and beam flooring is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC Wood Construction Data No. 4.

2306.1.3 Treated wood stress adjustments. The allowable unit stresses for preservative-treated wood need no adjustment for treatment, but are subject to other adjustments.

The allowable unit stresses for fire-retardant-treated wood, including fastener values, shall be developed from an approved method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and the redrying process. Other adjustments are applicable except that the impact load duration shall not apply.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- \( \sigma_b \) = Allowable total uniform load limited by bending.
- \( \sigma_a \) = Allowable total uniform load limited by deflection.
- \( d \) = Actual decking thickness.
- \( l \) = Span of decking.
- \( F_b' \) = Allowable bending stress adjusted by applicable factors.
- \( E' \) = Modulus of elasticity adjusted by applicable factors.
2306.2 Wood-frame diaphragms. Wood-frame diaphragms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.2(1) or 2306.2(2) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.2(1) and 2306.2(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design.

2306.2.1 Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings. Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings shall be in accordance with Section 2508.5.

2306.3 Wood-frame shear walls. Wood-frame shear walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.3(1), 2306.3(2) or 2306.3(3) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.3(1) and 2306.3(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design. Panels complying with ANSI/APA PRP-210 shall be permitted to use design values for Plywood Siding in the AWC SDPWS.

SECTION 2307
LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN

2307.1 Load and resistance factor design. The design and construction of wood elements and structures using load and resistance factor design shall be in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS and AWC SDPWS.

SECTION 2308
CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

2308.1 General. The requirements of this section are intended for conventional light-frame construction. Other construction methods are permitted to be used, provided a satisfactory design is submitted showing compliance with other provisions of this code. Interior nonload-bearing partitions, ceilings and curtain walls of conventional light-frame construction are not subject to the limitations of Section 2308.2. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures shall comply with the Residential Code.

2308.1.1 Portions exceeding limitations of conventional light-frame construction. When portions of a building of otherwise conventional light-frame construction exceed the limits of Section 2308.2, those portions and the supporting load path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. For the purposes of this section, the term “portions” shall mean parts of buildings containing volume and area such as a room or a series of rooms. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the nonconventional light-framed elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional light-framed system.

2308.1.2 Connections and fasteners. Connectors and fasteners used in conventional construction shall comply with the requirements of Section 2304.10.

2308.2 Limitations. Buildings are permitted to be constructed in accordance with the provisions of conventional light-frame construction, subject to the limitations in Sections 2308.2.1 through 2308.2.6.

2308.2.1 Stories. Structures of conventional light-frame construction shall be limited in story height in accordance with Table 2308.2.1.

TABLE 2308.2.1
ALLOWABLE STORY HEIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY</th>
<th>ALLOWABLE STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A and B</td>
<td>Three stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Two stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D and E</td>
<td>One story</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For the purposes of this section, for buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, cripple walls shall be considered to be a story unless cripple walls are solid blocked and do not exceed 14 inches in height.

2308.2.2 Allowable floor-to-floor height. Maximum floor-to-floor height shall not exceed 11 feet, 7 inches (3531 mm). Exterior bearing wall and interior braced wall heights shall not exceed a stud height of 10 feet (3048 mm).

2308.2.3 Allowable loads. Loads shall be in accordance with Chapter 16 and shall not exceed the following:

1. Average dead loads shall not exceed 15 psf (718 N/m²) for combined roof and ceiling, exterior walls, floors and partitions.

   Exceptions:

   1. Subject to the limitations of Section 2308.6.10, stone or masonry veneer up to the lesser of 5 inches (127 mm) thick or 50 psf (2395 N/m²) and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 is permitted to a height of 30 feet (9144 mm) above a noncombustible foundation, with an additional 8 feet (2438 mm) permitted for gable ends.

   2. Concrete or masonry fireplaces, heaters and chimneys shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of this code.

2. Live loads shall not exceed 40 psf (1916 N/m²) for floors.

3. Ground snow loads shall not exceed 50 psf (2395 N/m²).

2308.2.4 Ultimate wind speed. $V_w$, shall not exceed 130 miles per hour (57 m/s) (3-second gust).

   Exceptions:

   1. $V_w$ shall not exceed 140 mph (61.6 m/s) (3-second gust) for buildings in Exposure Category B that are not located in a hurricane-prone region.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PANEL GRADE</th>
<th>STAPLE LENGTH AND GAGE</th>
<th>PANEL GRADE</th>
<th>MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBERS AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUNDARIES (inches)</th>
<th>BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS</th>
<th>UNBLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structural I grades</td>
<td>1 1/2 16 gage</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15/32</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing, single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2</td>
<td>1 1/2 16 gage</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7/16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>335</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15/32</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>19/32</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 2306.2(1)—continued

**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING STAPLES WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH, OR SOUTHERN PINE**

For wind or seismic loading

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Load</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples find shear value from table above for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.

b. Space fasteners maximum 12 inches on center along intermediate framing members (6 inches on center where supports are spaced 48 inches on center).

c. Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.

d. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $\frac{7}{16}$ inch and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.

e. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.

f. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table above shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.
TABLE 2306.2(2)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS
UTILIZING MULTIPLE ROWS OF STAPLES (HIGH-LOAD DIAPHRAGMS) WITH FRAMING OF
DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE a FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING b , g , h

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PANEL GRADE c</th>
<th>STAPLE GAGE f</th>
<th>MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBER AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUNDARIES a</th>
<th>LINES OF FASTENERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structural I grades</td>
<td>14 gage staples</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$15/32$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$19/32$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$19/32$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2</td>
<td>14 gage staples</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$15/32$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$19/32$</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$19/32$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$23/32$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, find shear value from table above for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.

b. Fastening along intermediate framing members: Space fasteners a maximum of 12 inches on center, except 6 inches on center for spans greater than 32 inches.
c. Panels conforming to PS 1 or PS 2.
d. This table gives shear values for Cases 1 and 2 as shown in Table 2306.2(1). The values shown are applicable to Cases 3, 4, 5 and 6 as shown in Table 2306.2(1), providing fasteners at all continuous panel edges are spaced in accordance with the boundary fastener spacing.
e. The minimum nominal depth of framing members shall be 3 inches nominal. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.
f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $7/16$ inch, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
g. High-load diaphragms shall be subject to special inspection in accordance with Section 1705.5.1.
h. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table above shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.

(continued)
### TABLE 2306.2(2)—continued

ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING MULTIPLE ROWS OF STAPLES (HIGH-LOAD DIAPHRAGMS) WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal</th>
<th>Panel Joint</th>
<th>Table Spacing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 1/4&quot; 1 1/2 1/2 3/8&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 1/4 1/2 1/2 3/8&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Space panel end and edge joint 1/8 inch. Reduce spacing between lines of nails as necessary to maintain minimum 3/8 inch fastener edge margins. Minimum spacing between lines is 3/8 inch.
WOOD

TABLE 2306.3(1)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS UTILIZING STAPLES WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, multiply the shear value from the table above by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- Panel edges backed with 2-inch nominal or wider framing. Install panels either horizontally or vertically. Space fasteners 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members for 3/8-inch and 7/16-inch panels installed on studs spaced 24 inches on center. For other conditions and panel thickness, space fasteners 12 inches on center on intermediate supports.
- Minimum panel thickness is the thickness of the panel measured at the point of fastening.
- Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.
- Values apply to all-veneer plywood. Thickness at point of fastening on panel edges governs shear values.
- Where panels are applied on both faces of a wall and fastener spacing is less than 6 inches on center on either side, panel joints shall be offset to fall on different framing members, or framing shall be 3 inches nominal or thicker at adjoining panel edges.
- In Seismic Design Category D, E or F, shear design values exceed 350 pounds per linear foot, all framing members receiving edge fastening from abutting panels shall be not less than a single 3-inch nominal member, or two 2-inch nominal members fastened together in accordance with Section 2306.1 to transfer the design shear value between framing members. Wood structural panel joint and sill plate nailing shall be staggered at all panel edges. See ANSI/AWC SDPWS for sill plate size and anchorage requirements.
- Staple length shall be not less than 1 1/2 inches for 25/32-inch sheathing or 1 1/4 inches for 1/2-inch sheathing.

TABLE 2306.3(2)
ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (plf) FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING ON SHEAR WALLS OF FIBERBOARD SHEATHING BOARD CONSTRUCTION UTILIZING STAPLES FOR TYPE V CONSTRUCTION

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THICKNESS AND GRADE</th>
<th>FASTENER SIZE</th>
<th>ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUE (pounds per linear foot)</th>
<th>STAPLE SPACING AT PANEL EDGES (inches)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/2&quot; or 25/32&quot; Structural</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galvanized staple, 7/16&quot; crown</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No. 16 gage galvanized staple, 1&quot; crown</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- Fiberboard sheathing shall not be used to brace concrete or masonry walls.
- Panel edges shall be backed with 2-inch or wider framing of Douglas Fir-larch or Southern Pine. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, multiply the shear value from the table above by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- Values shown are for fiberboard sheathing on one side only with long panel dimension either parallel or perpendicular to studs.
- Fastener shall be spaced 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members.
- Values are not permitted in Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
- Staple length shall be not less than 1 1/2 inches for 25/32-inch sheathing or 1 1/4 inches for 1/2-inch sheathing.
2. Where $V_{ult}$ exceeds 130 mph (3-second gust), the provisions of either AWC WFCM or ICC 600 are permitted to be used.

2308.2.5 Allowable roof span. Ceiling joist and rafter framing constructed in accordance with Section 2308.7 and trusses shall not span more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) between points of vertical support. A ridge board in accordance with Section 2308.7 or 2308.7.3.1 shall not be considered a vertical support.

2308.2.6 Risk category limitation. The use of the provisions for conventional light-frame construction in this section shall not be permitted for Risk Category IV buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D or F.

2308.3 Foundations and footings. Foundations and footings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 18. Connections to foundations and footings shall comply with this section.

2308.3.1 Foundation plates or sills. Foundation plates or sills resting on concrete or masonry foundations shall comply with Section 2304.3.1. Foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or anchored to the foundation with not less than $\frac{5}{8}$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) steel bolts or approved anchors spaced to provide equivalent anchorage as the steel bolts. Bolts shall be embedded at least 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete or masonry. Bolts shall be spaced not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and there shall be not less than two bolts or anchor straps per piece with one bolt or anchor strap located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) or less than 4 inches (102 mm) from each end of each piece. A properly sized nut and washer shall be tightened on each bolt to the plate.

Exceptions:

1. Along braced wall lines in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E, steel bolts with a minimum nominal diameter of $\frac{7}{8}$ inch (15.9 mm)

### TABLE 2306.3(3)

#### ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES FOR WIND OR SEISMIC FORCES FOR SHEAR WALLS OF LATH AND PLASTER OR GYPSUM BOARD WOOD FRAMED WALL ASSEMBLIES UTILIZING STAPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF MATERIAL</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF MATERIAL</th>
<th>WALL CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>STAPLE SPACING$^a$ MAXIMUM (inches)</th>
<th>SHEAR VALUE$^{+c}$ (plf)</th>
<th>MINIMUM STAPLE SIZE $^d$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Expanded metal or woven wire lath and Portland cement plaster</td>
<td>$\frac{7}{8}$</td>
<td>Unblocked</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{7}{8}$ legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gypsum lath, plain or perforated</td>
<td>$\frac{3}{4}$</td>
<td>Unblocked</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{11}{16}$ long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Gypsum sheathing</td>
<td>$\frac{3}{8}$ x 2' x 8'</td>
<td>Unblocked</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{11}{16}$ long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2}$ x 4'</td>
<td>Blocked$^e$ Unblocked$^e$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{11}{16}$ long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Gypsum board, gypsum veneer base or water-resistant gypsum backing board</td>
<td>$\frac{1}{2}$</td>
<td>Unblocked$^e$</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{11}{16}$ long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unblocked$^e$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unblocked</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unblocked</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unblocked$^e$</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{11}{16}$ legs, $\frac{7}{8}$ long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blocked$^e$ Two-ply Base ply: 9 Face ply: 7</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>No. 16 gage galv. staple $\frac{1}{2}$ long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. 15 gage galv. staple $\frac{1}{4}$ long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. These shear walls shall not be used to resist loads imposed by masonry or concrete walls (see AWC SDPWS). Values shown are for short-term loading due to wind or seismic loading. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7. Values shown shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Applies to fastening at studs, top and bottom plates and blocking.

c. Except as noted, shear values are based on a maximum framing spacing of 16 inches on center.

d. Maximum framing spacing of 24 inches on center.

e. All edges are blocked, and edge fastening is provided at all supports and all panel edges.

f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, measured outside the legs, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.

g. Staples for the attachment of gypsum lath and woven-wire lath shall have a minimum crown width of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch, measured outside the legs.
or approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.3 and spaced to provide equivalent anchorage shall be used.

2. Bolts in braced wall lines in structures over two stories above grade shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

2308.3.2 Braced wall line sill plate anchorage in Seismic Design Categories D and E. Sill plates along braced wall lines in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E shall be anchored with anchor bolts with steel plate washers between the foundation sill plate and the nut, or approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.3. Such washers shall be a minimum of 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.82 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to \( \frac{3}{16} \) inch (4.76 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed \( \frac{1}{3} \) inch (44 mm), provided a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

2308.4 Floor framing. Floor framing shall comply with this section.

2308.4.1 Girders. Girders for single-story construction or girders supporting loads from a single floor shall be not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) for spans 6 feet (1829 mm) or less, provided that girders are spaced not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center. Other girders shall be designed to support the loads specified in this code. Girder end joints shall occur over supports.

Where a girder is spliced over a support, an adequate tie shall be provided. The ends of beams or girders supported on masonry or concrete shall not have less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness and the full depth of the header-joist intersection.

2308.4.1.1 Allowable girder spans. The allowable spans of girders that are fabricated of dimension lumber shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

2308.4.2 Floor joists. Floor joists shall comply with this section.

2308.4.2.1 Span. Spans for floor joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.4.2.1(1) or 2308.4.2.1(2) or the AWC STJR.

2308.4.2.2 Bearing. The ends of each joist shall have not less than \( \frac{1}{2} \) inch (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry, except where supported on a 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) ribbon strip and nailed to the adjoining stud.

2308.4.2.3 Framing details. Joists shall be supported laterally at the ends and at each support by solid blocking except where the ends of the joists are nailed to a header, band or rim joist or to an adjoining stud or by other means. Solid blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and the full depth of the joist. Joist framing from opposite sides of a beam, girder or partition shall be lapped at least 3 inches (76 mm) or the opposing joists shall be tied together in an approved manner. Joists framing into the side of a wood girder shall be supported by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

2308.4.2.4 Notches and holes. Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist.

2308.4.3 Engineered wood products. Engineered wood products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members or I-joists are not permitted except where permitted by the manufacturer’s recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

2308.4.4 Framing around openings. Trimmer and header joists shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header joists more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or joist hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall. Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) in length shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

2308.4.4.1 Openings in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E. Openings in horizontal diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(1). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by \( \frac{1}{2} \) inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions but with not less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.

Openings in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories D and E shall not have any dimension exceeding 50 percent of the distance between braced wall lines or an area greater than 25 percent of the area between orthogonal pairs of braced wall lines [see Figure 2308.4.4.1(2)]; or the portion of the structure containing the opening shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist the forces specified in Chapter 16, to the extent such irregular opening affects the performance of the conventional framing system.
2308.4.4.2 Vertical offsets in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories D and E. In Seismic Design Categories D and E, portions of a floor level shall not be vertically offset such that the framing members on either side of the offset cannot be lapped or tied together in an approved manner in accordance with Figure 2308.4.4.2 unless the portion of the structure containing the irregular offset is designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: Framing supported directly by foundations need not be lapped or tied directly together.

2308.4.5 Joists supporting bearing partitions. Bearing partitions parallel to joists shall be supported on beams, girders, doubled joists, walls or other bearing partitions. Bearing partitions perpendicular to joists shall not be offset from supporting girders, walls or partitions more than the joist depth unless such joists are of sufficient size to carry the additional load.

2308.4.6 Lateral support. Floor and ceiling framing with a nominal depth-to-thickness ratio not less than 5 to 1 shall have one edge held in line for the entire span. Where the nominal depth-to-thickness ratio of the framing member exceeds 6 to 1, there shall be one line of bridging for each 8 feet (2438 mm) of span, unless both edges of the member are held in line. The bridging shall consist of not less than 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) lumber, double nailed at each end, or equivalent metal bracing of equal rigidity, full-depth solid blocking or other approved means. A line of bridging shall also be required at supports where equivalent lateral support is not otherwise provided.

2308.4.7 Structural floor sheathing. Structural floor sheathing shall comply with the provisions of Section 2304.8.1.

2308.4.8 Under-floor ventilation. For under-floor ventilation, see Section 1203.4.

2308.4.9 Floor framing supporting braced wall panels. Where braced wall panels are supported by cantilevered floors or are set back from the floor joist support, the floor framing shall comply with Section 2308.6.7.

2308.4.10 Anchorage of exterior means of egress components in Seismic Design Categories D and E. Exterior egress balconies, exterior stairways and ramps and similar means of egress components in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E shall be positively anchored to the primary structure at not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center or shall be designed for lateral forces. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal.

2308.5 Wall construction. Walls of conventional light-frame construction shall be in accordance with this section.

2308.5.1 Stud size, height and spacing. The size, height and spacing of studs shall be in accordance with Table 2308.5.1.

Studs shall be continuous from a support at the sole plate to a support at the top plate to resist loads perpendicular to the wall. The support shall be a foundation or floor, ceiling or roof diaphragm or shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: Jack studs, trimmer studs and cripple studs at openings in walls that comply with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

2308.5.2 Framing details. Studs shall be placed with their wide dimension perpendicular to the wall. Not less than three studs shall be installed at each corner of an exterior wall.

Exceptions:
1. In interior nonbearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall.
2. At corners, two studs are permitted, provided that wood spacers or backup cleats of 3/4-inch-thick (9.5 mm) wood structural panel, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) Type M “Exterior Glue” particleboard, 1-inch-thick (25 mm) lumber or other approved devices that will serve as an adequate backing for the attachment of facing materials are used. Where fire-resistance ratings or shear values are involved, wood spacers, backup cleats or other devices shall not be used unless specifically approved for such use.

2308.5.3 Plates and sills. Studs shall have plates and sills in accordance with this section.

2308.5.3.1 Bottom plate or sill. Studs shall have full bearing on a plate or sill. Plates or sills shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness and have a width not less than the width of the wall studs.

2308.5.3.2 Top plates. Bearing and exterior wall studs shall be capped with double top plates installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other partitions. End joints in double top plates shall be offset not less than 48 inches (1219 mm), and shall be nailed in accordance with Table 2304.10.1. Plates shall be a nominal 2 inches (51 mm) in depth and have a width not less than the width of the studs.

Exception: A single top plate is permitted, provided that the plate is adequately tied at corners and intersecting walls by not less than the equivalent of 3-inch by 6-inch (76 mm by 152 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by six 8d [2 1/2-inch × 0.113" (64-mm by 2.87 mm)] box nails or equivalent on each side of the joint. For the butt-joint splice between adjacent single top plates, not less than the equivalent of a 3-inch by 12-inch (76 mm by 304 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by 12 8d [2 1/2-inch × 0.113-inch (64 mm by 2.87 mm)] box nails on each side of the joint shall be required, provided that the rafters, joists or trusses are centered over the studs with a tolerance of not more than 1 inch (25 mm). The top plate shall not be required over headers that are in the same plane and in line with the upper surface of the adjacent top plates and are tied to adjacent wall sections as required for the butt joint splice between adjacent single top plates.
### TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)

**HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS**<sup>a</sup> <sup>b</sup> **FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS**

(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir<sup>b</sup> and required number of jack studs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>36</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>36</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 4</td>
<td>3-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 6</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 8</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 10</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 12</td>
<td>9-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 8</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 10</td>
<td>10-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 12</td>
<td>12-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 8</td>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 10</td>
<td>11-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 12</td>
<td>14-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 4</td>
<td>3-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 6</td>
<td>4-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4-0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 8</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 10</td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 12</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 8</td>
<td>7-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 10</td>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 12</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-02</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 8</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 10</td>
<td>10-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 12</td>
<td>11-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 4</td>
<td>2-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 6</td>
<td>3-11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 8</td>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 10</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 12</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 8</td>
<td>6-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 10</td>
<td>7-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 12</td>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 8</td>
<td>7-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 10</td>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 12</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 4</td>
<td>2-7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 6</td>
<td>3-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 8</td>
<td>4-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 10</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 12</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5-3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 8</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 10</td>
<td>7-3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3×2 12</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 8</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 10</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4×2 12</td>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 4</td>
<td>2-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1-8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 6</td>
<td>3-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2×2 8</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)—continued
HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS* b FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS
(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir b and required number of jack studs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Building width* (feet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 28 36 20 28 36 20 28 36 20 28 36 20 28 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Span</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof, ceiling, and two clear span floors</td>
<td>2-2 x 10</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 12</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 8</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 10</td>
<td>5-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 12</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 8</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 10</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 12</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir and Spruce-Pine Fir. No. 1 or better grade lumber shall be used for Southern Pine.
c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.
e. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.

TABLE 2308.4.1.1(2)
HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS* b FOR INTERIOR BEARING WALLS
(Maximum spans for Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir, Southern Pine and Spruce-Pine-Fir b and required number of jack studs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HEADERS AND GIRDER SPANNING</th>
<th>SIZE</th>
<th>BUILDING WIDTH* (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 28 36 20 28 36 20 28 36 20 28 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Span</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One floor only</td>
<td>2-2 x 4</td>
<td>3-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 6</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 8</td>
<td>5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 10</td>
<td>7-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 12</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 8</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 10</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 12</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 8</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 10</td>
<td>10-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 12</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two floors</td>
<td>2-2 x 4</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 6</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 8</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 10</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-2 x 12</td>
<td>5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 8</td>
<td>5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 10</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-2 x 12</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 8</td>
<td>6-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 10</td>
<td>7-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-2 x 12</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas Fir-Larch, Hem-Fir and Spruce-Pine Fir. No. 1 or better grade lumber shall be used for Southern Pine.
c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
d. NJ - Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
<td>2 x 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>12-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>11-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum floor joist spans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>10-8 14-1 18-0 21-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>10-4 13-7 16-9 19-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>10-1 12-10 15-8 18-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>7-8 9-9 11-10 13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>10-1 13-4 17-0 20-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-10 13-0 16-4 19-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>9-5 12-5 15-6 17-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-8 9-9 11-10 13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>10-6 13-10 17-8 21-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>10-1 13-4 16-5 19-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>9-6 12-1 14-4 16-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>7-3 9-1 11-0 13-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-10 13-0 16-7 20-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-8 12-9 15-8 18-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>9-8 12-9 15-8 18-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-8 9-9 11-10 13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>9-7 12-4 15-0 17-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>9-1 11-6 14-1 16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>6-10 8-8 10-7 12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-2 12-0 14-8 17-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-9 11-4 13-10 16-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-10 8-8 10-7 12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>9-9 12-10 16-5 19-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>9-4 12-4 14-8 17-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>8-6 10-10 12-10 15-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>6-5 8-2 9-10 11-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-2 12-1 15-5 18-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-11 11-6 14-1 16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-11 11-6 14-1 16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-10 8-8 10-7 12-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
Note: Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
### TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)
FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 6</td>
<td>2 × 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)—continued

**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/\( \Delta \) = 360)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
<td>2 x 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>7-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>5-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>8-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Note:** Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. End bearing length shall be increased to 2 inches.
OPENINGS IN FLOOR AND ROOF DIAPHRAGMS

MORE THAN \( \frac{b_1}{2} \) IS IRREGULAR

MORE THAN \( \frac{b_2}{2} \) IS IRREGULAR

PORTIONS OF FLOOR LEVEL OFFSET VERTICALLY

FLOOR JOISTS CANNOT BE TIED DIRECTLY TOGETHER
Where bearing studs are spaced at 24-inch (610 mm) intervals, top plates are less than two 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) or two 3-inch by 4-inch (76 mm by 102 mm) members and the floor joists, floor trusses or roof trusses that they support are spaced at more than 16-inch (406 mm) intervals, such joists or trusses shall bear within 5 inches (127 mm) of the studs beneath or a third plate shall be installed.

2308.5.4 Nonload-bearing walls and partitions. In non-load-bearing walls and partitions, that are not part of a braced wall panel, studs shall be spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center. In interior non-load-bearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall. Where studs are set with the long dimensions parallel to the wall, use of utility grade lumber or studs exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) is not permitted. Interior non-load-bearing partitions shall be capped with not less than a single top plate installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other walls and partitions. The plate shall be continuously tied at joints by solid blocking not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in length and equal in size to the plate or by 1/2-inch (12.7 mm by 38 mm) metal ties with spliced sections fastened with two 16d nails on each side of the joint.

2308.5.5 Openings in walls and partitions. Openings in exterior and interior walls and partitions shall comply with Sections 2308.5.5.1 through 2308.5.5.3.

2308.5.5.1 Openings in exterior bearing walls. Headers shall be provided over each opening in exterior bearing walls. The size and spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) are permitted to be used for one- and two-family dwellings. Headers for other buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 2301.2, Item 1 or 2. Headers shall be of two pieces of nominal 2-inch (51 mm) framing lumber set on edge as permitted by Table 2308.4.1.1(1) and nailed together in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 or of solid lumber of equivalent size.

Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1). Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

2308.5.5.2 Openings in interior bearing partitions. Headers shall be provided over each opening in interior bearing partitions as required in Section 2308.5.5.1. The spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(2) are permitted to be used. Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2), as applicable.

2308.5.5.3 Openings in interior nonbearing partitions. Openings in nonbearing partitions are permitted to be framed with single studs and headers. Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

2308.5.6 Cripple walls. Foundation cripple walls shall be framed of studs that are not less than the size of the stud- ing above and not less than 14 inches (356 mm) in height, or shall be framed of solid blocking. Where exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, such walls shall be framed of studs having the size required for an additional story. See Section 2308.6.6 for cripple wall bracing.

2308.5.7 Bridging. Unless covered by interior or exterior wall coverings or sheathing meeting the minimum requirements of this code, stud partitions or walls with studs having a height-to-least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 shall have bridging that is not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and of the same width as the studs fitted snugly and nailed thereto to provide adequate lateral support. Bridging shall be placed in every stud cavity and at a frequency such that no stud so braced shall have a height-to-

### Table 2308.5.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STUD SIZE (INCHES)</th>
<th>LATERALLY UNSUPPORTED STUD HEIGHT (FEET)</th>
<th>SUPPORTING ROOF AND CEILING ONLY</th>
<th>SUPPORTING ONE FLOOR, ROOF AND CEILING</th>
<th>SUPPORTING TWO FLOORS, ROOF AND CEILING</th>
<th>LATERALLY UNSUPPORTED STUD HEIGHT (FEET)</th>
<th>SPACING (INCHES)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 × 3b</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × 4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 × 4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × 5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × 6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Listed heights are distances between points of lateral support placed perpendicular to the plane of the wall. Increases in unsupported height are permitted where justified by an analysis.

b. Shall not be used in exterior walls.

c. Utility-grade studs shall not be spaced more than 16 inches on center or support more than a roof and ceiling, or exceed 8 feet in height for exterior walls and load-bearing walls or 10 feet for interior nonload-bearing walls.
least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 with the height of the stud measured between horizontal framing and bridging or between bridging, whichever is greater.

**2308.5.8 Pipes in walls.** Stud partitions containing plumbing, heating or other pipes shall be framed and the joists underneath spaced to provide proper clearance for the piping. Where a partition containing piping runs parallel to the floor joists, the joists underneath such partitions shall be doubled and spaced to permit the passage of pipes and shall be bridged. Where plumbing, heating or other pipes are placed in, or partly in, a partition, necessitating the cutting of the soles or plates, a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage) and 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in width shall be fastened to each plate across and to each side of the opening with not less than six 16d nails.

**2308.5.9 Cutting and notching.** In exterior walls and bearing partitions, wood studs are permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of the width of the stud. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than those of the partition.

**2308.5.10 Bored holes.** Bored holes not greater than 40 percent of the stud width are permitted to be bored in any wood stud. Bored holes not greater than 60 percent of the stud width are permitted to be bored in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

**2308.5.11 Exterior wall sheathing.** Except where stucco construction that complies with Section 2510 is installed, the outside of exterior walls, including gables, of enclosed buildings shall be sheathed with one of the materials of the nominal thickness specified in Table 2308.5.11 with fasteners in accordance with the requirements of Section 2304.10 or fasteners designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Alternatively, sheathing materials and fasteners complying with Section 2304.6 shall be permitted.

### Table 2308.5.11 Minimum Thickness of Wall Sheathing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sheathing Type</th>
<th>Minimum Thickness</th>
<th>Maximum Wall Stud Spacing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagonal wood boards</td>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
<td>24 inches on center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural fiberboard</td>
<td>1/2 inch</td>
<td>16 inches on center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood structural panel</td>
<td>In accordance with Tables 2308.6.3(2) and 2308.6.3(3)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-S “Exterior Glue” and M-2 “Exterior Glue” particleboard</td>
<td>In accordance with Section 2306.3 and Table 2308.6.3(4)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum sheathing</td>
<td>1/2 inch</td>
<td>16 inches on center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced cement mortar</td>
<td>1 inch</td>
<td>24 inches on center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardboard panel siding</td>
<td>In accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**2308.6 Wall bracing.** Buildings shall be provided with exterior and interior braced wall lines as described in Sections 2308.6.1 through 2308.6.10.2.

**2308.6.1 Braced wall lines.** For the purpose of determining the amount and location of bracing required along each story level of a building, braced wall lines shall be designated as straight lines through the building plan in both the longitudinal and transverse direction and placed in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1. Braced wall line spacing shall not exceed the distance specified in Table 2308.6.1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, braced wall lines shall intersect perpendicularly to each other.

**2308.6.2 Braced wall panels.** Braced wall panels shall be placed along braced wall lines in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1 and as specified in Table 2308.6.3(1). A braced wall panel shall be located at each end of the braced wall line and at the corners of intersecting braced wall lines or shall begin within the maximum distance from the end of the braced wall line in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Braced wall panels in a braced wall line shall not be offset from each other by more than 4 feet (1219 mm). Braced wall panels shall be clearly indicated on the plans.

**2308.6.3 Braced wall panel methods.** Construction of braced wall panels shall be by one or a combination of the methods in Table 2308.6.3(1). Braced wall panel length shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.4 or 2308.6.5.

**2308.6.4 Braced wall panel construction.** For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, each panel must be not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length, covering three stud spaces where studs are spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center and covering two stud spaces where studs are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Braced wall panels less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length shall not contribute toward the amount of required bracing. Braced wall panels that are longer than the required length shall be credited for their actual length. For Method GB, each panel must be not less than 96 inches (2438 mm) in length where applied to one side of the studs or 48 inches (1219 mm) in length where applied to both sides.
BRACED PANELS ALLOWED UP TO 4’ OFFSET FROM BRACED WALL LINE

MAX DISTANCE FROM END OF BWL TO BRACED PANEL PER TABLE 2308.6.1

EXAMPLES OF THE SUM OF BRACING PER BWL
BWL 1 = BWP 1A + BWP 1B + BWP 1C
BWL 3 = BWP 3A + 3B

BRACED PANELS ALLOWED UP TO 4’ OFFSET FROM BRACED WALL LINE
CONTINUOUS FOUNDATION AND BRACED CRIPPLE WALL RECOMMENDED UNDER LOWER STORY BRACED WALL PANELS

MAX DISTANCE OF BWP EXTENDING OVER OPENING BELOW IN SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORIES D AND E IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 2308.6.8.1

EXAMPLES OF THE SUM OF BRACING PER BWL
BWL 1 = BWP 1A + BWP 1B + BWP 1C

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 2308.6.1
BASIC COMPONENTS OF THE LATERAL BRACING SYSTEM
### TABLE 2308.6.1a
WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY</th>
<th>STORY CONDITION (SEE SECTION 2308.2)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM SPACING OF BRACED WALL LINES</th>
<th>BRACED PANEL LOCATION, SPACING (O.C.) AND MINIMUM PERCENTAGE (X)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF BRACED WALL PANELS FROM EACH END OF BRACED WALL LINE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bracing methoda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LIB DWB, WSP SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, GB ^e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A and B</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>35'- 0&quot;</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>12'- 6&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>35'- 0&quot;</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12'- 6&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D and E</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>25'- 0&quot;</td>
<td>NP</td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Each end and ≤ 25'- 0&quot; o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8'- 0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.

a. This table specifies minimum requirements for braced wall panels along interior or exterior braced wall lines.
b. See Section 2308.6.3 for full description of bracing methods.
c. For Method GB, gypsum wallboard applied to framing supports that are spaced at 16 inches on center.
d. The required lengths shall be doubled for gypsum board applied to only one face of a braced wall panel.
e. Percentage shown represents the minimum amount of bracing required along the building length (or wall length if the structure has an irregular shape).
Vertical joints of panel sheathing shall occur over studs and adjacent panel joints shall be nailed to common framing members. Horizontal joints shall occur over blocking or other framing equal in size to the studding except where waived by the installation requirements for the specific sheathing materials. Sole plates shall be nailed to the floor framing in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 and top plates shall be connected to the framing above in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2. Where joists are perpendicular to braced wall lines above, blocking shall be provided under and in line with the braced wall panels.

2308.6.5 Alternative bracing. An alternate braced wall (ABW) or a portal frame with hold-downs (PFH) described in this section is permitted to substitute for a 48-inch (1219 mm) braced wall panel of Method DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP or HPS. For Method GB, each 96-inch (2438 mm) section (applied to one face) or 48-inch (1219 mm) section (applied to both faces) or portion thereof required by Table 2308.6.1 is permitted to be replaced by one panel constructed in accordance with Method ABW or PFH.

2308.6.5.1. Alternate braced wall (ABW). An ABW shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.1. In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 2 feet 8 inches (813 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 and blocked by the installation requirements for the specific sheathing materials. Sole plates shall be connected to the framing above in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 and top plates shall be connected to the framing above in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2. Where joists are perpendicular to braced wall lines above, blocking shall be provided under and in line with the braced wall panels.

In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 16 inches (406 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with a single layer of 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. A built-up header consisting of at least two 2-inch by 12-inch (51 mm by 305 mm) boards, fastened in accordance with Item 24 of Table 2304.10.1 shall be permitted to be used. A spacer, if used, shall be placed on the side of the built-up beam opposite the wood structural panel sheathing. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel. The clear span of the header between the inner studs of each panel shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N) shall fasten the header to the inner studs opposite the sheathing. One anchor bolt not less than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) diameter and installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in the center of each sill plate. The studs at each end of the panel shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (15,570 N).

Where a panel is located on one side of the opening, the header shall extend between the inside face of the first full-length stud of the panel and the bearing studs at the other end of the opening. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N) shall fasten the header to the bearing studs. The bearing studs shall also have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N). The hold-down devices shall be an embedded strap type, installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations. The PFH panels shall be supported directly on a foundation or on floor framing supported directly on a foundation that is continuous across the entire length of the braced wall line. This foundation shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. Where the continuous foundation is required to have a depth greater than 12 inches (305 mm), a minimum 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) continuous footing or turned-down slab edge is permitted at door openings in the braced wall line. This continuous footing or turned-down slab edge shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. This reinforcement shall be lapped 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement required in the continuous foundation located directly under the braced wall line.

Where the ABW is installed at the first story of two-story buildings, the wood structural panel sheathing shall be provided on both faces, three anchor bolts shall be placed at one-quarter points and tie-down device uplift capacity shall be not less than 3,000 pounds (13,344 N).

2308.6.5.2 Portal frame with hold-downs (PFH). A PFH shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.2. The adjacent door or window opening shall have a full-length header.

In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 16 inches (406 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with a single layer of 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. A built-up header consisting of at least two 2-inch by 12-inch (51 mm by 305 mm) boards, fastened in accordance with Item 24 of Table 2304.10.1 shall be permitted to be used. A spacer, if used, shall be placed on the side of the built-up beam opposite the wood structural panel sheathing. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel. The clear span of the header between the inner studs of each panel shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N) shall fasten the header to the inner studs opposite the sheathing. One anchor bolt not less than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) diameter and installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in the center of each sill plate. The studs at each end of the panel shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (15,570 N).
Where a PFH is installed at the first story of two-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

**2308.6.6 Cripple wall bracing.** Cripple walls shall be braced in accordance with Section 2308.6.6.1 or 2308.6.6.2.

**2308.6.6.1 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.** For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C having a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) shall be considered a story and shall be braced in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Spacing of edge nailing for required cripple wall bracing shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) on center along the foundation plate and the top plate of the cripple wall. Nail size, nail spacing for field nailing and more restrictive boundary nailing requirements shall be as required elsewhere in the code for the specific bracing material used.

**2308.6.6.2 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories D and E.** For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in Seismic Design Categories D and E having a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) shall be considered a story and shall be braced in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Where interior braced wall lines occur without a continuous foundation below, the length of parallel exterior cripple wall bracing shall be one and one-half times the lengths required by Table 2308.6.1. Where the cripple wall sheathing type used is Method WSP or DWB and this additional length of bracing cannot be provided, the capacity of WSP or DWB sheathing shall be increased by reducing the spacing of fasteners along the perimeter of each piece of sheathing to 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**2308.6.7 Connections of braced wall panels.** Braced wall panel joints shall occur over studs or blocking. Braced wall panels shall be fastened to studs, top and bottom plates and at panel edges. Braced wall panels shall be applied to nominal 2-inch-wide [actual 1 1/2-inch (38 mm)] or larger stud framing.

**2308.6.7.1 Bottom plate connection.** Braced wall line bottom plates shall be connected to joists or full-depth blocking below in accordance with Table 2304.10.1, or to foundations in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.3.

**2308.6.7.2 Top plate connection.** Where joists or rafters are used, braced wall line top plates shall be fastened over the full length of the braced wall line to joists, rafters, rim boards or full-depth blocking above in accordance with Table 2304.10.1, as applicable.

### TABLE 2308.6.3(1) BRACING METHODS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METHODS, MATERIAL</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS</th>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>CONNECTION CRITERIA*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIBa Let-in-bracing</td>
<td>1&quot; × 4&quot; wood or approved metal straps attached at 45° to 60° angles to studs at maximum of 16&quot; o.c.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="LIBa Let-in-bracing" /></td>
<td>Table 2304.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWB Diagonal wood boards</td>
<td>3/4&quot; thick (1&quot; nominal) × 6&quot; minimum width to studs at maximum of 24&quot; o.c.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="DWB Diagonal wood boards" /></td>
<td>Table 2304.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WSP Wood structural panel</td>
<td>3/4&quot; in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(2) or 2308.6.3(3)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="WSP Wood structural panel" /></td>
<td>Table 2304.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFB Structural fiberboard sheathing</td>
<td>1/4&quot; in accordance with Table 2304.10.1 to studs at maximum 16&quot; o.c.</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="SFB Structural fiberboard sheathing" /></td>
<td>Table 2304.10.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 2308.6.3(1)—continued

#### BRACING METHODS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METHODS, MATERIAL</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS</th>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>CONNECTION CRITERIA*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GB Gypsum board (Double sided)</td>
<td>( \frac{3}{8} ) or ( \frac{5}{8} ) in by a minimum of 4' wide to studs at maximum of 24” o.c.</td>
<td>Section 2506.2 for exterior and interior sheathing: 5d annular ringed cooler nails (( 1^{1/8}) long ( \times 0.086)&quot;) or 11/4&quot; screws (Type W or S) for ( \frac{1}{16})&quot; gypsum board or 13/8&quot; screws (Type W or S) for ( \frac{1}{8})&quot; gypsum board</td>
<td>For all braced wall panel locations: 7&quot; o.c. along panel edges (including top and bottom plates) and 7&quot; o.c. in the field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS Particleboard sheathing</td>
<td>( \frac{3}{8} ) in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(4) to studs at maximum of 16” o.c.</td>
<td>6d common (2” long ( \times 0.113)” dia.) nails for ( \frac{1}{8})” thick sheathing or 8d common (2/8” long ( \times 0.131)” dia.) nails for ( \frac{1}{4})” thick sheathing</td>
<td>3” edges 6” field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCP Portland cement plaster</td>
<td>Section 2510 to studs at maximum of 16” o.c.</td>
<td>11/2” long, 11 gage, ( \frac{1}{16})” dia. head nails or ( \frac{1}{16})” long, 16 gage staples</td>
<td>6” o.c. on all framing members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPS Hardboard panel siding</td>
<td>( \frac{7}{16})” in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)</td>
<td>Table 2304.10.1</td>
<td>4” edges 8” field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABW Alternate braced wall</td>
<td>( \frac{3}{8})”</td>
<td>Figure 2308.6.5.1 and Section 2308.6.5.1</td>
<td>Figure 2308.6.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFH Portal frame with hold-downs</td>
<td>( \frac{3}{8})”</td>
<td>Figure 2308.6.5.2 and Section 2308.6.5.2</td>
<td>Figure 2308.6.5.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

**a.** Method LIB shall have gypsum board fastened to at least one side with nails or screws.

---

### TABLE 2308.6.3(2)

#### EXPOSED PLYWOOD PANEL SIDING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS* (inch)</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF PLIES</th>
<th>STUD SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{3}{8})’’</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \frac{1}{2})’’</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**a.** Thickness of grooved panels is measured at bottom of grooves.

**b.** Spans are permitted to be 24 inches if plywood siding applied with face grain perpendicular to studs or over one of the following: (1) 1-inch board sheathing, (2) \( \frac{1}{8}\)-inch wood structural panel sheathing or (3) \( \frac{1}{4}\)-inch wood structural panel sheathing with strength axis (which is the long direction of the panel unless otherwise marked) of sheathing perpendicular to studs.
### TABLE 2308.6.3(3)
WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING^b^ (Not Exposed to the Weather, Strength Axis Parallel or Perpendicular to Studs Except as Indicated Below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>PANEL SPAN RATING</th>
<th>STUD SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Siding nailed to studs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sheathing parallel to studs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/8, 15/32, 1/2</td>
<td>16/0, 20/0, 24/0, 32/16 Wall—24&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/16, 15/32, 1/2</td>
<td>24/0, 24/16, 32/16 Wall—24&quot; o.c.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

b. Blocking of horizontal joints shall not be required except as specified in Section 2308.6.4.

### TABLE 2308.6.3(4)
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR PARTICLEBOARD WALL SHEATHING (Not Exposed to the Weather, Long Dimension of the Panel Parallel or Perpendicular to Studs)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRADE</th>
<th>THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>STUD SPACING (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M-S “Exterior Glue” and M-2 “Exterior Glue”</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### TABLE 2308.6.3(5)
HARDBOARD SIDING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIDING</th>
<th>MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (inch)</th>
<th>2 x 4 FRAMING MAXIMUM SPACING</th>
<th>NAIL SIZE(^a,(^b,(^d))</th>
<th>NAIL SPACING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>General</td>
<td>Bracing panels(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Lap siding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct to studs</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16” o.c.</td>
<td>8d</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over sheathing</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16” o.c.</td>
<td>10d</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Square edge panel siding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct to studs</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>24” o.c.</td>
<td>6d</td>
<td>6” o.c. edges; 12” o.c. at intermediate supports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over sheathing</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>24” o.c.</td>
<td>8d</td>
<td>6” o.c. edges; 12” o.c. at intermediate supports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Shiplap edge panel siding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct to studs</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16” o.c.</td>
<td>6d</td>
<td>6” o.c. edges; 12” o.c. at intermediate supports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over sheathing</td>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>16” o.c.</td>
<td>8d</td>
<td>6” o.c. edges; 12” o.c. at intermediate supports</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Nails shall be corrosion resistant.

b. Minimum acceptable nail dimensions:

c. Where used to comply with Section 2308.6.

d. Nail length must accommodate the sheathing and penetrate framing 1 1/2 inches.

| Shank diameter | 0.092 | 0.099 |
| Head diameter  | 0.225 | 0.240 |
FOR PANEL SPLICE (IF NEEDED) ADJOINING PANEL EDGES SHALL MEET OVER AND BE FASTENED TO COMMON FRAMING.

MIN. 3/8" THICK WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING ON ONE FACE

MIN. 1/2" THICK WOOD SHEATHING ON ONE FACE

STUDS UNDER HEADER AS REQUIRED

HOLD-DOWN PER SECTION 2308.6.5.1

MIN. 2x4 FRAMING, MIN. DOUBLE STUDS REQUIRED

ANCHOR BOLTS PER SECTION 2308.6.5.1

MINIMUM REINFORCING OF FOUNDATION, ONE #4 BAR TOP AND BOTTOM OF FOOTING. REINFORCING SHALL BE LAPPED 15 INCHES MIN.

STUDS UNDER HEADER AS REQUIRED

MINIMUM REINFORCING OF FOUNDATION, ONE #4 BAR TOP AND BOTTOM OF FOOTING. REINFORCING SHALL BE LAPPED 15 INCHES MIN.

FIGURE 2308.6.5.1
ALTERNATE BRACED WALL PANEL (ABW)

MIN. 2x4 FRAMING

MIN. 3/8" THICK WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING

MIN. 1000 LB TIE-DOWN DEVICE

MIN. 3500 LB TIE-DOWN DEVICE (EMBEDDED INTO CONCRETE AND NAILED INTO FRAMING IN ACCORDANCE WITH MANUFACTURER’S RECOMMENDATIONS)

FIGURE 2308.6.5.2
PORTAL FRAME WITH HOLD-DOWNS (PFH)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.
based on the orientation of the joists or rafters to the braced wall line. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and shall be fastened to the braced wall line top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.1. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

At exterior gable end walls, braced wall panel sheathing in the top story shall be extended and fastened to the roof framing where the spacing between parallel exterior braced wall lines is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where roof trusses are used and are installed perpendicular to an exterior braced wall line, lateral forces shall be transferred from the roof diaphragm to the braced wall over the full length of the braced wall line by blocking of the ends of the trusses or by other approved methods providing equivalent lateral force transfer. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and equal to the depth of the truss at the wall line and shall be fastened to the braced wall line top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.1. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

Exception: Where the roof sheathing is greater than $\frac{9}{16}$ inches (235 mm) above the top plate, solid blocking is not required where the framing members are connected using one of the following methods:

1. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(1).
2. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(2).
3. Full-height engineered blocking panels designed for values listed in AWC WFCM.
4. A design in accordance with accepted engineering methods.

2308.6.7.3 Sill anchorage. Where foundations are required by Section 2308.6.8, braced wall line sills shall be anchored to concrete or masonry foundations. Such anchorage shall conform to the requirements of Section 2308.3. The anchors shall be distributed along the length of the braced wall line. Other anchorage devices having equivalent capacity are permitted.

2308.6.7.4 Anchorage to all-wood foundations. Where all-wood foundations are used, the force transfer from the braced wall lines shall be determined based on calculation and shall have a capacity that is not less than the connections required by Section 2308.3.

2308.6.8 Braced wall line and diaphragm support. Braced wall lines and floor and roof diaphragms shall be supported in accordance with this section.

2308.6.8.1 Foundation requirements. Braced wall lines shall be supported by continuous foundations.

Exception: For structures with a maximum plan dimension not more than 50 feet (15 240 mm), continuous foundations are required at exterior walls only.

For structures in Seismic Design Categories D and E, exterior braced wall panels shall be in the same plane vertically with the foundation or the portion of the structure containing the offset shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and Section 2308.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. Exterior braced wall panels shall be permitted to be located not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the foundation below where supported by a floor constructed in accordance with all of the following:

1.1. Cantilevers or setbacks shall not exceed four times the nominal depth of the floor joists.
1.2. Floor joists shall be 2 inches by 10 inches (51 mm by 254 mm) or larger and spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center.
1.3. The ratio of the back span to the cantilever shall be not less than 2 to 1.
1.4. Floor joists at ends of braced wall panels shall be doubled.
1.5. A continuous rim joist shall be connected to the ends of cantilevered joists. The rim joist is permitted to be spliced using a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage) and $\frac{9}{16}$ inches (38 mm) in width fastened with six 16d common nails on each side. The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 MPa).
1.6. Joists at setbacks or the end of cantilevered joists shall not carry gravity loads from more than a single story having uniform wall and roof loads nor carry the reactions from headers having a span of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more.

2. The end of a required braced wall panel shall be allowed to extend not more than 1 foot (305 mm) over an opening in the wall below. This requirement is applicable to braced wall panels offset in plane and braced wall panels offset out of plane as permitted by Exception 1. Braced wall panels are permitted to extend over an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in width where the header is a 4-inch by 12-inch (102 mm by 305 mm) or larger member.

2308.6.8.2 Floor and roof diaphragm support in Seismic Design Categories D and E. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D or E, floor and roof diaphragms shall be laterally supported by
braced wall lines on all edges and connected in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(1)].

Exception: Portions of roofs or floors that do not support braced wall panels above are permitted to extend up to 6 feet (1829 mm) beyond a braced wall line [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(2)] provided that the framing members are connected to the braced wall line below in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.

2308.6.8.3 Stepped footings in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E. In Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E, where the height of a required braced wall panel extending from foundation to floor above varies more than 4 feet (1219 mm), the following construction shall be used:

1. Where the bottom of the footing is stepped and the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to the footings, the sill shall be anchored as required in Section 2308.3.

2. Where the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to a footing not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length along a line of bracing, the line shall be considered to be braced. The double plate of the cripple stud wall beyond the segment of footing extending to the lowest framed floor shall be spliced to the sill plate with metal ties, one on each side of the sill and plate. The metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] by 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in width by 48 inches (1219 mm) with eight 16d common nails on each side of the splice location (see Figure 2308.6.8.3). The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (227 MPa).

3. Where cripple walls occur between the top of the footing and the lowest floor framing, the bracing requirements for a story shall apply.

2308.6.9 Attachment of sheathing. Fastening of braced wall panel sheathing shall be not less than that prescribed in Tables 2308.6.1 and 2304.10.1. Wall sheathing shall not be attached to framing members by adhesives.

2308.6.10 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer. Concrete or masonry veneer shall comply with Chapter 14 and this section.

2308.6.10.1 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer in Seismic Design Category B or C. In Seismic Design Categories B and C, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

Exceptions:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first two stories above grade plane or the first three stories above grade plane where the lowest story has concrete or masonry walls, provided that wood structural panel wall bracing is used and the length of bracing provided is one and one-half times the required length specified in Table 2308.6.1.
2. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first story above grade plane or the first two stories above grade plane where the lowest story has concrete or masonry walls.

3. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in both stories of buildings with two stories above grade plane, provided the following criteria are met:

   3.1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).

   3.2. Braced wall panels in the second story shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall panels shall be not less than 25 percent of the braced wall line length. Braced wall panels in the first story shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall panels shall be not less than 45 percent of the braced wall line length.

   3.3. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 2,000 pounds (8896 N) shall be provided at the ends of each braced wall panel for the second story to the first story connection. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 3,900 pounds (17 347 N) shall be provided at the ends of each braced wall panel for the first story to the foundation connection. In all cases, the hold-down connector force shall be transferred to the foundation.

   3.4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

2308.6.10.2 Limitations of concrete or masonry in Seismic Design Categories D and E. In Seismic Design Categories D and E, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

   Exception: In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first story above grade plane, provided the following criteria are met:

   1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).

   2. The braced wall panels in the first story shall be located at each end of the braced wall line and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall panels
shall be not less than 45 percent of the braced wall line length.

3. Hold-down connectors shall be provided at the ends of braced walls for the first floor to foundation with an allowable capacity of 2,100 pounds (9341 N).

4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

2308.7 Roof and ceiling framing. The framing details required in this section apply to roofs having a slope of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope). Where the roof slope is less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), members supporting rafters and ceiling joists such as ridge board, hips and valleys shall be designed as beams.

2308.7.1 Ceiling joist spans. Spans for ceiling joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.1(1) or 2308.7.1(2). For other grades and species, and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

2308.7.2 Rafter spans. Spans for rafters shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.2(1), 2308.7.2(2), 2308.7.2(3), 2308.7.2(4), 2308.7.2(5) or 2308.7.2(6). For other grades and species and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR. The span of each rafter shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter.

2308.7.3 Ceiling joist and rafter framing. Rafters shall be framed directly opposite each other at the ridge. There shall be a ridge board not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness at ridges and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. At valleys and hips, there shall be a sin-
ingle valley or hip rafter not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter.

2308.7.3.1 Ceiling joist and rafter connections. Ceiling joists and rafters shall be nailed to each other and the assembly shall be nailed to the top wall plate in accordance with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.5. Ceiling joists shall be continuous or securely joined where they meet over interior partitions and be fastened to adjacent rafters in accordance with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.3.1 to provide a continuous rafter tie across the building where such joists are parallel to the rafters. Ceiling joists shall have a bearing surface of not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) on the top plate at each end.

Where ceiling joists are not parallel to rafters, an equivalent rafter tie shall be installed in a manner to provide a continuous tie across the building, at a spacing of not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. The connections shall be in accordance with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.3.1 and 2304.10.1, or connections of equivalent capacities shall be provided. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are not provided at the top of the rafter support walls, the ridge formed by these rafters shall also be supported by a girder conforming to Section 2308.8. Rafter ties shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

Rafter tie connections shall be based on the equivalent rafter spacing in Table 2308.7.3.1. Rafter-to-ceiling joist connections and rafter tie connections shall be of sufficient size and number to prevent splitting from nailing.

Roof framing member connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

2308.7.4 Notches and holes. Notching at the ends of rafters or ceiling joists shall not exceed one-fourth the depth. Notches in the top or bottom of the rafter or ceiling joist shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span, except that a notch not more than one-third of the depth is permitted in the top of the rafter or ceiling joist not further from the face of the support than the depth of the member. Holes bored in rafters or ceiling joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top and bottom and their diameter shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member.

2308.7.5 Wind uplift. The roof construction shall have rafter and truss ties to the wall below. Resultant uplift loads shall be transferred to the foundation using a continuous load path. The rafter or truss to wall connection shall comply with Tables 2304.10.1 and 2308.7.5.

2308.7.6 Framing around openings. Trimmer and header rafters shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header rafters that are more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or rafter hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall.

2308.7.6.1 Openings in roof diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E. In buildings classified as Seismic Design Category B, C, D or E, openings in horizontal diaphragms with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(I). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions but with not less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.
2308.7.7 Purlins. Purlins to support roof loads are permitted to be installed to reduce the span of rafters within allowable limits and shall be supported by struts to bearing walls. The maximum span of 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) purlins shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). The maximum span of the 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) purlin shall be 6 feet (1829 mm), but in no case shall the purlin be smaller than the supported rafter. Struts shall be not less than 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) members. The unbraced length of struts shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) and the slope of the struts shall be not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

2308.7.8 Blocking. Roof rafters and ceiling joists shall be supported laterally to prevent rotation and lateral displacement in accordance with Section 2308.4.6 and connected to braced wall lines in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

2308.7.9 Engineered wood products. Prefabricated wood I-joists, structural glued-laminated timber and structural composite lumber shall not be notched or drilled except where permitted by the manufacturer’s recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

2308.7.10 Roof sheathing. Roof sheathing shall be in accordance with Tables 2304.8(3) and 2304.8(5) for wood structural panels, and Tables 2304.8(1) and 2304.8(2) for lumber and shall comply with Section 2304.8.2.

2308.7.11 Joints. Joints in lumber sheathing shall occur over supports unless approved end-matched lumber is used, in which case each piece shall bear on at least two supports.

2308.7.12 Roof planking. Planking shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code.

In lieu of such design, 2-inch (51 mm) tongue-and-groove planking is permitted in accordance with Table 2308.12. Joints in such planking are permitted to be randomly spaced, provided the system is applied to not less than three continuous spans, planks are center matched and end matched or splined, each plank bears on at least one support, and joints are separated by not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in adjacent pieces.

2308.7.13 Wood trusses. Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with Section 2303.4. Connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

2308.7.14 Attic ventilation. For attic ventilation, see Section 1203.2.

2308.8 Design of elements. Combining of engineered elements or systems and conventionally specified elements or systems shall be permitted subject to the limits of Sections 2308.8.1 and 2308.8.2.

2308.8.1 Elements exceeding limitations of conventional construction. Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements exceeding the limits of Section 2308.2, these elements and the supporting load path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code.

2308.8.2 Structural elements or systems not described herein. Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements or systems not described in Section 2308, these elements or systems shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the nonconventional elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventionally framed system.
### TABLE 2308.7.1(1)

**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**

(Uninhabitable Attics Without Storage, Live Load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 5 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum ceiling joist spans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>10-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>11-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>11-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>11-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>11-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>11-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 2308.7.1(1)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics Without Storage, Live Load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 5 psf</th>
<th>Maximum ceiling joist spans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>19.2</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-3</td>
<td>17-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-10</td>
<td>17-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>16-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>16-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>11-0</td>
<td>17-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>16-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>15-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>15-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>24</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-5</td>
<td>16-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>15-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>14-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>15-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>15-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>14-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>10-3</td>
<td>16-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>15-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-3</td>
<td>13-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-2</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
**TABLE 2308.7.1(2)**

**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**
(Uninhabitable Attics With Limited Storage, Live Load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE 2308.7.1(2)—continued
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Uninhabitable Attics With Limited Storage, Live Load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### TABLE 2308.7.2(1)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/∆ = 180)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rafter Spacing (inches)</th>
<th>Species and Grade</th>
<th>Dead Load = 10 psf</th>
<th>Dead Load = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maximum rafter spans*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>11-6</td>
<td>18-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>11-1</td>
<td>17-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>10-10</td>
<td>16-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>10-10</td>
<td>17-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>11-3</td>
<td>17-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>10-10</td>
<td>17-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>10-4</td>
<td>16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>10-5</td>
<td>16-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>15-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>15-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>14-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>14-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>10-3</td>
<td>16-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>15-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>9-0</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>15-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 2308.7.2(1)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-4</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>14-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>11-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HC/HR</th>
<th>Rafter Span Adjustment Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/7.5 or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where:

HC = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
HR = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### TABLE 2308.7.2(2)

**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**

(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 4</td>
<td>2 × 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 8</td>
<td>2 × 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 12</td>
<td>2 × 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum rafter spans*</td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 4</td>
<td>2 × 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 8</td>
<td>2 × 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 12</td>
<td>2 × 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 6</td>
<td>2 × 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 × 10</td>
<td>2 × 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 2308.7.2(2)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Roof Live Load = 20 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, $L/\Delta = 240$)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>12-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>6-4</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-3</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>12-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-9</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 24                      | Douglas Fir-Larch SS | 8-3              | 13-0              | 17-2              | 21-10             | Note b            | 8-3              | 13-0              | 16-7              | 20-3              | 23-5              |
|                         | Douglas Fir-Larch #1 | 8-0              | 12-6              | 15-10             | 19-5              | 22-6              | 7-5              | 10-10             | 13-9              | 16-9              | 19-6              |
|                         | Douglas Fir-Larch #2 | 7-10             | 11-9              | 14-10             | 18-2              | 21-0              | 6-11             | 10-2              | 12-10             | 15-8              | 18-3              |
|                         | Douglas Fir-Larch #3 | 6-1              | 8-10              | 11-3              | 13-8              | 15-11             | 5-3              | 7-8               | 9-9               | 11-10             | 13-9              |
|                         | Hem-Fir SS           | 7-10             | 12-3              | 16-2              | 20-8              | 25-1              | 7-10             | 12-3              | 16-2              | 19-10             | 23-0              |
|                         | Hem-Fir #1           | 7-8              | 12-0              | 15-6              | 18-11             | 21-11             | 7-3              | 10-7              | 13-5              | 16-4              | 19-0              |
|                         | Hem-Fir #2           | 7-3              | 11-5              | 14-8              | 17-10             | 20-9              | 6-10             | 10-0              | 12-8              | 15-6              | 17-11             |
|                         | Hem-Fir #3           | 6-1              | 8-10              | 11-3              | 13-8              | 15-11             | 5-3              | 7-8               | 9-9               | 11-10             | 13-9              |
|                         | Southern Pine SS     | 8-1              | 12-9              | 16-10             | 21-6              | Note b            | 8-1              | 12-9              | 16-10             | 20-10             | 24-8              |
|                         | Southern Pine #1     | 7-10             | 12-3              | 16-2              | 18-11             | 22-6              | 7-5              | 11-1              | 14-0              | 16-5              | 19-6              |
|                         | Southern Pine #2     | 7-4              | 11-0              | 13-11             | 16-6              | 19-6              | 6-4              | 9-6               | 12-1              | 14-4              | 16-10             |
|                         | Southern Pine #3     | 5-8              | 8-4               | 10-6              | 12-9              | 15-1              | 4-11             | 7-3               | 9-1               | 11-0              | 13-1              |
|                         | Spruce-Pine-Fir SS   | 7-8              | 12-0              | 15-10             | 20-2              | 24-7              | 7-8              | 12-0              | 15-4              | 18-9              | 21-9              |
|                         | Spruce-Pine-Fir #1   | 7-6              | 11-9              | 14-10             | 18-2              | 21-0              | 6-11             | 10-2              | 12-10             | 15-8              | 18-3              |
|                         | Spruce-Pine-Fir #2   | 7-6              | 11-9              | 14-10             | 18-2              | 21-0              | 6-11             | 10-2              | 12-10             | 15-8              | 18-3              |
|                         | Spruce-Pine-Fir #3   | 6-1              | 8-10              | 11-3              | 13-8              | 15-11             | 5-3              | 7-8               | 9-9               | 11-10             | 13-9              |

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$H_c/H_R$</th>
<th>Rafter Span Adjustment Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/7.5 or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where:
$H_c = \text{Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.}$
$H_R = \text{Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.}$
b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### TABLE 2308.7.2(3)
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**

(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, \( L/\Delta = 180 \))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>10-0</td>
<td>15-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>9-8</td>
<td>14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>9-5</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-6</td>
<td>14-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-3</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>13-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>15-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>9-6</td>
<td>14-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>12-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>9-3</td>
<td>14-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>9-1</td>
<td>14-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>11-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>12-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>14-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>13-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>7-6</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>11-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>8-2</td>
<td>11-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>9-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>8-7</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>11-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>12-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>7-9</td>
<td>11-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 2308.7.2(3)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>8-5</td>
<td>13-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>8-0</td>
<td>11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>5-3</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>12-5</td>
<td>16-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>13-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>8-3</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>7-11</td>
<td>12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-6</td>
<td>11-10</td>
<td>15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>10-2</td>
<td>12-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>9-7</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>7-10</td>
<td>12-3</td>
<td>16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>10-7</td>
<td>13-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>9-2</td>
<td>11-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>4-8</td>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>11-7</td>
<td>14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>9-9</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>9-9</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>7-4</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

\[
\frac{H_c}{H_r} \times \text{Rafter Span Adjustment Factor}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\hline
\frac{H_c}{H_r} & \text{Rafter Span Adjustment Factor} \\
\hline
1/3 & 0.67 \\
1/4 & 0.76 \\
1/5 & 0.83 \\
1/6 & 0.90 \\
1/7.5 or less & 1.00 \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

where:
\(H_c\) = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
\(H_r\) = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### Table 2308.7.2(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES

(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 180)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>2 x 4</th>
<th>2 x 6</th>
<th>2 x 8</th>
<th>2 x 10</th>
<th>2 x 12</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
<th>2 x 4</th>
<th>2 x 6</th>
<th>2 x 8</th>
<th>2 x 10</th>
<th>2 x 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>8-5 13-3 17-6 22-4 26-0</td>
<td>8-5 13-3 17-0 20-9 24-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-larch #1</td>
<td>8-2 12-0 15-3 18-7 21-7</td>
<td>7-7 11-2 14-1 17-3 20-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-larch #2</td>
<td>7-8 11-3 14-3 17-5 20-2</td>
<td>7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-larch #3</td>
<td>5-10 8-6 10-9 13-2 15-3</td>
<td>5-5 7-10 13-0 15-10 18-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>8-0 12-6 16-6 21-1 25-6</td>
<td>8-0 12-6 16-6 20-4 23-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>7-10 11-9 14-10 18-1 21-0</td>
<td>7-5 10-10 13-9 16-9 19-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-5 11-1 14-0 17-2 19-11</td>
<td>7-0 10-3 13-0 15-10 18-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-10 8-6 10-9 13-2 15-3</td>
<td>5-5 7-10 10-0 12-2 14-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>8-4 13-1 17-2 21-11 Note b</td>
<td>8-4 13-1 17-2 21-5 25-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>8-0 12-3 15-6 18-2 21-7</td>
<td>7-7 11-4 14-5 16-10 20-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>7-0 10-6 13-4 15-10 18-8</td>
<td>6-6 9-9 12-4 14-8 17-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>5-5 8-0 10-1 12-3 14-6</td>
<td>5-0 7-5 9-4 11-4 13-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-10 12-3 16-2 20-8 24-1</td>
<td>7-10 12-3 15-9 19-3 22-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>7-8 11-3 14-3 17-5 20-2</td>
<td>7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-8 11-3 14-3 17-5 20-2</td>
<td>7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-10 8-6 10-9 13-2 15-3</td>
<td>5-5 7-10 10-0 12-2 14-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>7-8 12-1 15-10 19-5 22-6</td>
<td>7-8 11-7 14-8 17-11 20-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td>6-7 9-8 12-2 14-11 17-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>6-2 9-0 11-5 13-11 16-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-8 6-10 8-10 10-6 12-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-3 11-5 15-0 19-1 22-1</td>
<td>7-3 11-5 14-5 17-8 20-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-11 10-2 12-10 15-8 18-2</td>
<td>6-5 9-5 11-11 14-6 16-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-7 9-7 12-2 14-10 17-3</td>
<td>6-1 8-11 11-3 13-9 15-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-8 6-10 8-10 10-6 12-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>7-6 11-10 15-7 19-11 23-7</td>
<td>7-6 11-10 15-7 18-6 21-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>7-1 10-7 13-5 15-9 18-8</td>
<td>6-7 9-10 12-5 14-7 17-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>6-1 9-2 11-7 13-9 16-2</td>
<td>5-8 8-5 10-9 12-9 15-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>4-8 6-11 8-9 10-7 12-6</td>
<td>4-4 6-5 8-1 9-10 11-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-1 11-2 14-8 18-0 20-11</td>
<td>7-1 10-9 13-8 15-11 19-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>6-2 9-0 11-5 13-11 16-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>6-2 9-0 11-5 13-11 16-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-8 6-10 8-10 10-6 12-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>7-3 11-4 14-6 17-8 20-6</td>
<td>7-3 10-7 13-5 16-5 19-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>6-6 9-6 12-0 14-8 17-1</td>
<td>6-0 8-10 11-2 13-7 15-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>6-1 8-11 11-3 13-9 15-11</td>
<td>5-7 8-3 10-5 12-9 14-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>4-7 6-9 8-6 10-5 12-1</td>
<td>4-3 6-3 7-11 9-7 11-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-10 10-9 14-2 17-5 20-2</td>
<td>6-10 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-4 9-3 11-9 14-4 16-7</td>
<td>5-10 8-7 10-10 13-3 15-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-0 8-9 11-1 13-7 15-9</td>
<td>5-7 8-1 10-3 12-7 14-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>4-7 6-9 8-6 10-5 12-1</td>
<td>4-3 6-3 7-11 9-7 11-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 2308.7.2(4)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Not Attached to Rafters, L/\(\Delta\) = 180)

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>7-1</td>
<td>11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>6-6</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>4-3</td>
<td>6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-4</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>5-4</td>
<td>7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>10-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>5-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.
a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(H_c/H_R)</th>
<th>Rafter Span Adjustment Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/7.5 or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where:
\(H_c\) = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
\(H_R\) = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### TABLE 2308.7.2(5)
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4 (ft. - in.)</td>
<td>2 x 6 (ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS 9-1 14-4 18-10 24-1</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1 8-9 13-9 18-2 22-9</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2 8-7 13-6 17-5 21-4</td>
<td>24-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3 7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS 8-7 13-6 17-10 22-9</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1 8-5 13-3 17-5 22-2</td>
<td>25-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2 8-0 12-7 16-7 21-0</td>
<td>24-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3 7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1</td>
<td>18-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS 8-11 14-1 18-6 23-8</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1 8-7 13-6 17-10 22-3</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2 8-3 12-11 16-4</td>
<td>19-5 22-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3 6-7 9-9 12-4 15-0</td>
<td>17-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS 8-5 13-3 17-5 22-3</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1 8-3 12-11 17-0</td>
<td>21-4 24-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2 8-3 12-11 17-0</td>
<td>21-4 24-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3 7-1 10-5 13-2 16-1</td>
<td>18-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS 8-3 13-0 17-2 21-10</td>
<td>Note b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1 8-0 12-6 16-2</td>
<td>19-9 22-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2 7-10 11-11 15-1</td>
<td>18-5 21-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3 6-2 9-0 11-5</td>
<td>13-11 16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS 7-10 12-3 16-2</td>
<td>20-8 25-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1 7-8 12-0 15-9</td>
<td>19-3 22-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2 7-3 11-5</td>
<td>14-11 18-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3 6-2 9-0 11-5</td>
<td>13-11 16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS 8-1 12-9 16-10</td>
<td>21-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1 7-10 12-3 16-2</td>
<td>19-3 22-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2 7-6 11-2</td>
<td>14-2 16-10 19-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3 5-9 8-6 10-8</td>
<td>13-0 15-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS 7-8 12-0 15-10</td>
<td>20-2 24-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1 7-6 11-9</td>
<td>15-1 18-5 21-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2 7-6 11-9</td>
<td>15-1 18-5 21-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3 6-2 9-0</td>
<td>11-5 13-11 16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS 7-9 12-3 16-1</td>
<td>20-7 25-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1 7-6 11-8</td>
<td>14-9 18-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2 7-4 10-11 13-9</td>
<td>16-10 19-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3 5-7 8-3 10-5</td>
<td>12-9 14-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS 7-4 11-7 15-3</td>
<td>19-5 23-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1 7-2 11-4</td>
<td>14-4 17-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2 6-10 10-9</td>
<td>13-7 16-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                         | Hem-Fir           | #3 5-7 8-3 | 10-5 12-9 14-9 | 5-0 7-4 9-4 | 11-5 | 13-2 | (continued)
TABLE 2308.7.2(5)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 30 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/\(\Delta\) = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4 2 x 6 2 x 8 2 x 10 2 x 12</td>
<td>2 x 4 2 x 6 2 x 8 2 x 10 2 x 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.) (ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>7-8 12-0 15-10 20-2 24-7</td>
<td>7-8 12-0 15-10 20-0 24-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>7-4 11-7 15-1 17-7 20-11</td>
<td>7-1 10-7 13-5 15-9 18-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>6-10 10-2 12-11 15-4 18-1</td>
<td>6-1 9-2 11-7 13-9 16-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>5-3 7-9 9-9 11-10 14-0</td>
<td>4-8 6-11 8-9 10-7 12-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>7-2 11-4 14-11 19-0 23-1</td>
<td>7-2 11-4 14-9 18-0 20-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>7-0 10-11 13-9 16-10 19-6</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>7-0 10-11 13-9 16-10 19-6</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-7 8-3 10-5 12-9 14-9</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch SS</td>
<td>7-3 11-4 15-0 19-1 22-6</td>
<td>7-3 11-3 14-2 17-4 20-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #1</td>
<td>7-0 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
<td>6-4 9-4 11-9 14-5 16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #2</td>
<td>6-8 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>5-11 8-8 11-0 13-6 15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-6 6-7 8-4 10-2 11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-10 10-9 14-2 18-0 21-11</td>
<td>6-10 10-9 13-11 17-0 19-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-8 10-2 12-10 15-8 18-2</td>
<td>6-2 9-1 11-6 14-0 16-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-4 9-7 12-2 14-10 17-3</td>
<td>5-10 8-7 10-10 13-3 15-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hem-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-6 6-7 8-4 10-2 11-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine SS</td>
<td>7-1 11-2 14-8 18-9 22-10</td>
<td>7-1 11-2 14-8 17-11 21-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #1</td>
<td>6-10 10-7 13-5 15-9 18-8</td>
<td>6-4 9-6 12-0 14-1 16-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #2</td>
<td>6-1 9-2 11-7 13-9 16-2</td>
<td>5-5 8-2 10-4 12-3 14-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southern Pine #3</td>
<td>4-8 6-11 8-9 10-7 12-6</td>
<td>4-2 6-2 7-10 9-6 11-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir SS</td>
<td>6-8 10-6 13-10 17-8 20-11</td>
<td>6-8 10-5 13-2 16-1 18-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #1</td>
<td>6-6 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>5-11 8-8 11-0 13-6 15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #2</td>
<td>6-6 9-9 12-4 15-1 17-6</td>
<td>5-11 8-8 11-0 13-6 15-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir #3</td>
<td>5-0 7-4 9-4 11-5 13-2</td>
<td>4-6 6-7 8-4 10-2 11-10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(\frac{H_c}{H_r})</th>
<th>Rafter Span Adjustment Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/7.5 or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where:
\(H_c\) = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
\(H_r\) = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.
### TABLE 2308.7.2(6)

**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**

*(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 8</td>
<td>2 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 12</td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
<td>2 x 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 10</td>
<td>2 x 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Maximum rafter spans**

- **Douglas Fir-Larch SS**
  - 7-8 ft:
    - 12-1 in.
    - 15-11 in.
  - 10-3 ft:
    - 12-1 in.
    - 15-11 in.

- **Douglas Fir-Larch #1**
  - 7-5 ft:
    - 11-7 in.
    - 15-3 in.
  - 10-5 ft:
    - 11-2 in.
    - 14-1 in.

- **Douglas Fir-Larch #2**
  - 7-3 ft:
    - 11-3 in.
    - 14-3 in.
  - 10-2 ft:
    - 15-3 in.
    - 17-0 in.

- **Douglas Fir-Larch #3**
  - 5-10 ft:
    - 8-6 in.
    - 10-9 in.
  - 8-10 ft:
    - 15-3 in.
    - 17-0 in.

- **Hem-Fir SS**
  - 7-3 ft:
    - 11-5 in.
    - 15-0 in.
  - 10-10 ft:
    - 15-0 in.
    - 17-0 in.

- **Hem-Fir #1**
  - 7-1 ft:
    - 11-2 in.
    - 14-8 in.
  - 10-1 ft:
    - 10-0 in.
    - 12-2 in.

- **Hem-Fir #2**
  - 6-9 ft:
    - 10-8 in.
    - 14-0 in.
  - 9-9 ft:
    - 15-0 in.
    - 17-0 in.

- **Hem-Fir #3**
  - 5-10 ft:
    - 8-6 in.
    - 10-9 in.
  - 8-10 ft:
    - 10-9 in.
    - 13-2 in.

- **Southern Pine SS**
  - 7-6 ft:
    - 11-10 in.
    - 15-7 in.
  - 10-7 ft:
    - 15-0 in.
    - 18-1 in.

- **Southern Pine #1**
  - 7-3 ft:
    - 11-5 in.
    - 15-0 in.
  - 10-3 ft:
    - 14-5 in.
    - 17-3 in.

- **Southern Pine #2**
  - 6-11 ft:
    - 10-6 in.
    - 13-4 in.
  - 9-9 ft:
    - 15-10 in.
    - 18-1 in.

- **Southern Pine #3**
  - 5-5 ft:
    - 8-0 in.
    - 10-9 in.
  - 8-10 ft:
    - 10-9 in.
    - 13-2 in.

- **Spruce-Pine-Fir SS**
  - 7-1 ft:
    - 11-2 in.
    - 14-8 in.
  - 10-5 ft:
    - 14-8 in.
    - 17-3 in.

- **Spruce-Pine-Fir #1**
  - 6-11 ft:
    - 10-11 in.
    - 14-3 in.
  - 9-11 ft:
    - 13-2 in.
    - 16-1 in.

- **Spruce-Pine-Fir #2**
  - 6-11 ft:
    - 10-11 in.
    - 14-3 in.
  - 9-11 ft:
    - 13-2 in.
    - 16-1 in.

- **Spruce-Pine-Fir #3**
  - 5-10 ft:
    - 8-6 in.
    - 10-9 in.
  - 8-10 ft:
    - 10-9 in.
    - 13-2 in.

(continued)
TABLE 2308.7.2(6)—continued
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES
(Ground Snow Load = 50 psf, Ceiling Attached to Rafters, L/Δ = 240)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>SPECIES AND GRADE</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 10 psf</th>
<th>DEAD LOAD = 20 psf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 x 4</td>
<td>2 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
<td>(ft. - in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>6-5</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>6-2</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>4-3</td>
<td>6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>6-1</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Douglas Fir-Larch</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>9-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-4</td>
<td>7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hem-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>6-0</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-0</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southern Pine</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>3-10</td>
<td>5-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#1</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#2</td>
<td>5-5</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spruce-Pine-Fir</td>
<td>#3</td>
<td>4-1</td>
<td>6-0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. When ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the factors given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HC/HR</th>
<th>Rafter Span Adjustment Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/6</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/7.5 or less</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where:
HC = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
HR = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.
**TABLE 2308.7.3.1**

RAFTER TIE CONNECTIONS[^a]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAFTER SLOPE</th>
<th>TIE SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>NO SNOW LOAD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 pounds per square foot</td>
<td>50 pounds per square foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.8 N/m².

[^a]: 40d box (5\(^{\prime}\) x 0.162\(^{\prime}\)) or 16d sinker (3\(^{\prime}/_{8}\) x 0.148\(^{\prime}\)) nails are permitted to be substituted for 16d common (3\(^{\prime}/_{2}\) x 0.16\(^{\prime}\)) nails.

[^b]: Nailing requirements are permitted to be reduced 25 percent if nails are clinched.

[^c]: Rafter tie heel joint connections are not required where the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.

[^d]: When intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a load-bearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements are permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.

[^e]: Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices.

[^f]: Connected members shall be of sufficient size to prevent splitting due to nailing.

[^g]: For snow loads less than 30 pounds per square foot, the required number of nails is permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the ratio of actual snow load plus 10 divided by 40, but not less than the number required for no snow load.
b. The uplift connection requirements are based on the framing being spaced 24 inches on center. Multiply by 0.67 for framing spaced 16 inches on center and multiply by 0.5 for framing spaced 12 inches on center.

c. The uplift connection requirements do not account for the effects of overhangs. The magnitude of the above loads shall be increased by adding the overhang loads found in the table. The overhang loads are also based on framing spaced 24 inches on center. The overhang loads given shall be multiplied by the overhang projection and added to the roof uplift value in the table.

d. The uplift connection requirements are based upon wind loading on end zones as defined in Figure 28.6.3 of ASCE 7. Connection loads for connections located a distance of 20 percent of the least horizontal dimension of the building from the corner of the building are permitted to be reduced by multiplying the table connection value by 0.7 and multiplying the overhang load by 0.8.

e. Interpolation is permitted for intermediate values of $V_{asd}$ and roof spans.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 1.61 km/hr, 1 pound = 0.454 Kg, 1 pound/foot = 14.5939 N/m.

### Table 2308.7.5

**REQUIRED RATING OF APPROVED UPLIFT CONNECTORS (pounds)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V_{asd}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOF SPAN (feet)</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>32</th>
<th>36</th>
<th>40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>1.66</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>1.78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OVERHANGS (pounds/feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-38.55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 1.61 km/hr, 1 pound = 0.454 Kg, 1 pound/foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. The uplift connection requirements are based on a 30-foot mean roof height located in Exposure B. For Exposure C or D and for other mean roof heights, multiply the above loads by the adjustment coefficients below.

b. The uplift connection requirements are based on the framing being spaced 24 inches on center. Multiply by 0.67 for framing spaced 16 inches on center and multiply by 0.5 for framing spaced 12 inches on center.

c. The uplift connection requirements include an allowance for 10 pounds of dead load.

d. The uplift connection requirements do not account for the effects of overhangs. The magnitude of the above loads shall be increased by adding the overhang loads found in the table. The overhang loads are also based on framing spaced 24 inches on center. The overhang loads given shall be multiplied by the overhang projection and added to the roof uplift value in the table.

e. The uplift connection requirements are based upon wind loading on end zones as defined in Figure 28.6.3 of ASCE 7. Connection loads for connections located a distance of 20 percent of the least horizontal dimension of the building from the corner of the building are permitted to be reduced by multiplying the table connection value by 0.7 and multiplying the overhang load by 0.8.

f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the capacity of the uplift connector is permitted to be reduced by 100 pounds for each full wall above. (For example, if a 500-pound rated connector is used on the roof framing, a 400-pound rated connector is permitted at the next floor level down).

g. Interpolation is permitted for intermediate values of $V_{asd}$ and roof spans.

h. The rated capacity of approved tie-down devices is permitted to include up to a 60-percent increase for wind effects where allowed by material specifications.

i. $V_{asd}$ shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.
### TABLE 2308.7.12
ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR 2-INCH TONGUE-AND-GROOVE DECKING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPAN (feet)</th>
<th>LIVE LOAD (pounds per square foot)</th>
<th>DEFLECTION LIMIT</th>
<th>BENDING STRESS (f) (pounds per square inch)</th>
<th>MODULUS OF ELASTICITY (E) (pounds per square inch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roofs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>170,000, 256,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>256,000, 384,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>340,000, 512,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>242,000, 305,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>363,000, 405,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>484,000, 725,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>332,000, 500,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>495,000, 742,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>660,000, 1,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>442,000, 660,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>662,000, 998,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>884,000, 1,330,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>575,000, 862,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>862,000, 1,295,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1/240, 1/360</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>1,150,000, 1,730,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
SECTION 2309
WOOD FRAME CONSTRUCTION MANUAL

2309.1 Wood Frame Construction Manual. Structural design in accordance with the AWC WFCM shall be permitted for buildings assigned to Risk Category I or II subject to the limitations of Section 1.1.3 of the AWC WFCM and the load assumptions contained therein. Structural elements beyond these limitations shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.
CHAPTER 24
GLASS AND GLAZING

SECTION 2401
GENERAL

2401.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of glass, light-transmitting ceramic and light-transmitting plastic panels for exterior and interior use in both vertical and sloped applications in buildings and structures.

2401.2 Glazing replacement. The installation of replacement glass shall be as required for new installations.

SECTION 2402
DEFINITIONS

2402.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

DALLE GLASS.
DECORATIVE GLASS.

SECTION 2403
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR GLASS

2403.1 Identification. Each pane shall bear the manufacturer’s mark designating the type and thickness of the glass or glazing material. The identification shall not be omitted unless approved and an affidavit is furnished by the glazing contractor certifying that each light is glazed in accordance with approved construction documents that comply with the provisions of this chapter. Safety glazing shall be identified in accordance with Section 2406.3.

Each pane of tempered glass, except tempered spandrel glass, shall be permanently identified by the manufacturer. The identification mark shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

Tempered spandrel glass shall be provided with a removable paper marking by the manufacturer.

2403.2 Glass supports. Where one or more sides of any pane of glass are not firmly supported, or are subjected to unusual load conditions, detailed construction documents, detailed shop drawings and analysis or test data ensuring safe performance for the specific installation shall be prepared by a registered design professional.

2403.3 Framing. To be considered firmly supported, the framing members for each individual pane of glass shall be designed so the deflection of the edge of the glass perpendicular to the glass pane shall not exceed 1/150 of the glass edge length or 1/4 inch (19.1 mm), whichever is less, when subjected to the larger of the positive or negative load where loads are combined as specified in Section 1605.

2403.4 Interior glazed areas. Where interior glazing is installed adjacent to a walking surface, the differential deflection of two adjacent unsupported edges shall be not greater than the thickness of the panels when a force of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (730 N/m) is applied horizontally to one panel at any point up to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the walking surface.

2403.5 Louvered windows or jalousies. Float, wired and patterned glass in louvered windows and jalousies shall be no thinner than nominal 1/16 inch (4.8 mm) and no longer than 48 inches (1219 mm). Exposed glass edges shall be smooth.

Wired glass with wire exposed on longitudinal edges shall not be used in louvered windows or jalousies.

Where other glass types are used, the design shall be submitted to the building official for approval.

SECTION 2404
WIND, SNOW, SEISMIC AND DEAD LOADS ON GLASS

2404.1 Vertical glass. Glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), in Section 1609 for components and cladding. Glass in glazed curtain walls, glazed storefronts and glazed partitions shall meet the seismic requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.5.9. The load resistance of glass under uniform load shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The design of vertical glazing shall be based on Equation 24-1.

\[
0.6 F_{gw} \leq F_{ga} \quad \text{(Equation 24-1)}
\]

where:

\[ F_{gw} = \text{Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, } V_{ult}, \text{ computed in accordance with Section 1609.} \]

\[ F_{ga} = \text{Short duration load on the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.} \]

2404.2 Sloped glass. Glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunrooms, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical combinations of loads determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

\[
\begin{align*}
F_{g} &= 0.6 W_{o} - D \quad \text{(Equation 24-2)} \\
F_{g} &= 0.6 W_{i} + D + 0.5 S \quad \text{(Equation 24-3)} \\
F_{g} &= 0.3 W_{i} + D + S \quad \text{(Equation 24-4)}
\end{align*}
\]

where:

\[ D = \text{Glass dead load psf (kN/m}^2\text{).} \]

For glass sloped 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from horizontal,

\[ = 13 t_{s} \text{ (For SI: 0.0245 } t_{s} \text{).} \]
For glass sloped more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from horizontal,

\[ F_g = 13 \cdot t_g \cos \theta \text{ (For SI: } 0.0245 \cdot t_g \cos \theta) \]

\( F_g \) = Total load, psf (kN/m²) on glass.

\( S \) = Snow load, psf (kN/m²) as determined in Section 1608.

\( t_g \) = Total glass thickness, inches (mm) of glass panes and plies.

\( W_i \) = Inward wind force, psf (kN/m²) due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), as calculated in Section 1609.

\( W_o \) = Outward wind force, psf (kN/m²) due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), as calculated in Section 1609.

\( \theta \) = Angle of slope from horizontal.

**Exception:** The performance grade rating of unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be determined in accordance with Section 2405.5.

The design of sloped glazing shall be based on Equation 24-5.

\[ F_g \leq F_{go} \quad \text{(Equation 24-5)} \]

where:

\( F_g \) = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

\( F_{go} \) = Short duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equations 24-2 and 24-3; or the long duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equation 24-4.

**2404.3 Wired, patterned and sandblasted glass.**

**2404.3.1 Vertical wired glass.** Wired glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to the following equation:

\[ 0.6F_{gw} < 0.5F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-6)} \]

where:

\( F_{gw} \) = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), computed in accordance with Section 1609.

\( F_{ge} \) = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

**2404.3.2 Sloped wired glass.** Wired glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

\[ F_g < 0.5F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-7)} \]

For Equation 24-4:

\[ F_g < 0.3F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-8)} \]

**2404.3.3 Vertical patterned glass.** Patterned glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-9.

\[ F_{gw} < 1.0F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-9)} \]

where:

\( F_{gw} \) = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), computed in accordance with Section 1609.

\( F_{ge} \) = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

**2404.3.4 Sloped patterned glass.** Patterned glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

\[ F_g < 1.0F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-10)} \]

For Equation 24-4:

\[ F_g < 0.6F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-11)} \]

where:

\( F_g \) = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

\( F_{ge} \) = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between the nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

**2404.3.5 Vertical sandblasted glass.** Sandblasted glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors, and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-12.

\[ 0.6F_{gw} < 0.5F_{ge} \quad \text{(Equation 24-12)} \]

where:

\( F_{gw} \) = Wind load on the glass due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{ult} \), computed in accordance with Section 1609.

\( F_{ge} \) = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for sandblasted glass is for moderate levels of sandblasting.
2404.4 Other designs. For designs outside the scope of this section, an analysis or test data for the specific installation shall be prepared by a registered design professional.

SECTION 2405
SLOPED GLAZING AND SKYLIGHTS

2405.1 Scope. This section applies to the installation of glass and other transparent, translucent or opaque glazing material installed at a slope more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from the vertical plane, including glazing materials in skylights, roofs and sloped walls.

2405.2 Allowable glazing materials and limitations. Sloped glazing shall be any of the following materials, subject to the listed limitations.

1. For monolithic glazing systems, the glazing material of the single light or layer shall be laminated glass with a minimum 30-mil (0.76 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer, wired glass, light-transmitting plastic materials meeting the requirements of Section 2607, heat-strengthened glass or fully tempered glass.

2. For multiple-layer glazing systems, each light or layer shall consist of any of the glazing materials specified in Item 1 above.

Annealed glass is permitted to be used as specified in Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 2405.3.

For additional requirements for plastic skylights, see Section 2610. Glass-block construction shall conform to the requirements of Section 2110.1.

2405.3 Screening. Where used in monolithic glazing systems, heat-strengthened and fully tempered glass shall have screens installed below the glazing material. The screens and their fastenings shall: (1) be capable of supporting twice the weight of the glazing; (2) be firmly and substantially fastened to the framing members and (3) be installed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the glass. The screens shall be constructed of a noncombustible material not thinner than No. 12 B&S gage (0.0808 inch) with mesh not larger than 1 inch by 1 inch (25 mm by 25 mm). In a corrosive atmosphere, structurally equivalent noncorrosive screen materials shall be used. Heat-strengthened glass, fully tempered glass and wired glass, when used in multiple-layer glazing systems as the bottom glass layer over the walking surface, shall be equipped with screening that conforms to the requirements for monolithic glazing systems.

Exception: In monolithic and multiple-layer sloped glazing systems, the following applies:

1. Fully tempered glass installed without protective screens where glazed between intervening floors at a slope of 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from the vertical plane shall have the highest point of the glass 10 feet (3048 mm) or less above the walking surface.

2. Screens are not required below any glazing material, including annealed glass, where the walking surface below the glazing material is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass or the area below the glazing material is not a walking surface.

3. Any glazing material, including annealed glass, is permitted to be installed without screens in the sloped glazing systems of commercial or detached noncombustible greenhouses used exclusively for growing plants and not open to the public, provided that the height of the greenhouse at the ridge does not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade.

4. Screens shall not be required in individual dwelling units in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 where fully tempered glass is used as single glazing or as both panes in an insulating glass unit, and the following conditions are met:

   4.1. Each pane of the glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m²) or less in area.

   4.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above any walking surface or other accessible area.

   4.3. The glass thickness is $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) or less.

5. Screens shall not be required for laminated glass with a 15-mil (0.38 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer used in individual dwelling units in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 within the following limits:

   5.1. Each pane of glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m²) or less in area.

   5.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above a walking surface or other accessible area.

2405.4 Framing. In Type I and II construction, sloped glazing and skylight frames shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. In structures where acid fumes deleterious to metal are incidental to the use of the buildings, approved pressure-treated wood or other approved noncorrosive materials are permitted to be used for sash and frames. Framing supporting sloped glazing and skylights shall be designed to resist the tributary roof loads in Chapter 16. Skylights set at an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal plane shall be mounted at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed as required for the frame. Skylights shall not be installed in the plane of the roof where the roof pitch is less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

Exception: Installation of a skylight without a curb shall be permitted on roofs with a minimum slope of 14 degrees (three units vertical in 12 units horizontal) in Group R-3 occupancies. All unit skylights installed in a roof with a pitch flatter than 14 degrees (0.25 rad) shall be mounted at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed as required for the frame unless otherwise specified in the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

2405.5 Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices. Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be tested and labeled as complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S./A440. The label shall state the name of the manufacturer,
2405.5.1 Skylights rated for the same performance grade for both positive and negative design pressure. The design of skylights shall be based on Equation 24-13.

\[ F_g \leq PG \]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 24-13)}

where:

- \( F_g \) = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-2 through 24-4 in Section 2404.2.
- \( PG \) = Performance grade rating of the skylight.

2405.5.2 Skylights rated for separate performance grades for positive and negative design pressure. The design of skylights rated for performance grade for both positive and negative design pressures shall be based on Equations 24-14 and 24-15.

\[ F_{gi} \leq PG_{Po} \]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 24-14)}

\[ F_{go} \leq PG_{Ne} \]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 24-15)}

where:

- \( PG_{Po} \) = Performance grade rating of the skylight under positive design pressure;
- \( PG_{Ne} \) = Performance grade rating of the skylight under negative design pressure; and
- \( F_{gi} \) and \( F_{go} \) are determined in accordance with the following:

For 0.6 \( W_o < D \),

where:

- \( W_o \) = Outward wind force, psf (kN/m²) due to ultimate design wind speed, \( V_{air} \), as calculated in Section 1609.
- \( D \) = The dead weight of the glazing, psf (kN/m²) as determined in Section 2404.2 for glass, or by the weight of the plastic for plastic glazing.
- \( F_{gi} \) = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-3 and 24-4 in Section 2404.2.
- \( F_{go} = 0 \).

SECTION 2406
SAFETY GLAZING

2406.1 Human impact loads. Individual glazed areas, including glass mirrors, in hazardous locations as defined in Section 2406.4 shall comply with Sections 2406.1.1 through 2406.1.4.

Exception: Mirrors and other glass panels mounted or hung on a surface that provides a continuous backing support.

2406.1.1 Impact test. Except as provided in Sections 2406.1.2 through 2406.1.4, all glazing shall pass the impact test requirements of Section 2406.2.

2406.1.2 Plastic glazing. Plastic glazing shall meet the weathering requirements of ANSI Z97.1.

2406.1.3 Glass block. Glass-block walls shall comply with Section 2101.2.5.

2406.1.4 Louvered windows and jalousies. Louvered windows and jalousies shall comply with Section 2403.5.

2406.2 Impact test. Where required by other sections of this code, glazing shall be tested in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Category II, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(1).

Exception: Glazing not in doors or enclosures for hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Class A, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(2).

2406.3 Identification of safety glazing. Except as indicated in Section 2406.3.1, each pane of safety glazing installed in hazardous locations shall be identified by a manufacturer’s designation specifying who applied the designation, the manufacturer or installer and the safety glazing standard with
which it complies, as well as the information specified in Section 2403.1. The designation shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed. A label meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted in lieu of the manufacturer’s designation.

Exceptions:

1. For other than tempered glass, manufacturer’s designations are not required, provided the building official approves the use of a certificate, affidavit or other evidence confirming compliance with this code.
2. Tempered spandrel glass is permitted to be identified by the manufacturer with a removable paper designation.

2406.3.1 Multipane assemblies. Multipane glazed assemblies having individual panes not exceeding 1 square foot (0.09 m²) in exposed areas shall have at least one pane in the assembly marked as indicated in Section 2406.3. Other panes in the assembly shall be marked “CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201” or “ANSI Z97.1” as appropriate.

2406.4 Hazardous locations. The locations specified in Sections 2406.4.1 through 2406.4.7 shall be considered specific hazardous locations requiring safety glazing materials.

2406.4.1 Glazing in doors. Glazing in all fixed and operable panels of swinging, sliding and bifold doors shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.
2. Decorative glazing.
3. Glazing materials used as curved glazed panels in revolving doors.

2406.4.2 Glazing adjacent to doors. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door where the nearest vertical edge of the glazing is within a 24-inch (610 mm) arc of either vertical edge of the door in a closed position and where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.
2. Where there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and glazing.
3. Where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth. Glazing in this application shall comply with Section 2406.4.3.
4. Glazing in walls on the latch side of and perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position in one- and two-family dwellings or within dwelling units in Group R-2.

2406.4.3 Glazing in windows. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions shall be considered a hazardous location:

1. The exposed area of an individual pane is greater than 9 square feet (0.84 m²).
2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
3. The top edge of the glazing is greater than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor.
4. One or more walking surface(s) are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the plane of the glazing.

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.
2. Where a horizontal rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the floor.

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

### TABLE 2406.2(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE</th>
<th>GLAZING IN STORM OR COMBINATION DOORS (Category class)</th>
<th>GLAZING IN DOORS (Category class)</th>
<th>GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)</th>
<th>GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)</th>
<th>DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5 (Category class)</th>
<th>SLIDING GLASS DOORS PATIO TYPE (Category class)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 square feet or less</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>No requirement</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 9 square feet</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

### TABLE 2406.2(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE</th>
<th>GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)</th>
<th>GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)</th>
<th>DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5* (Category class)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 square feet or less</td>
<td>No requirement</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 9 square feet</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: square foot = 0.0929 m².
a. Use is only permitted by the exception to Section 2406.2.
2406.4.4 Glazing in guards and railings. Glazing in guards and railings, including structural baluster panels and nonstructural in-fill panels, regardless of area or height above a walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location.

2406.4.5 Glazing and wet surfaces. Glazing in walls, enclosures or fences containing or facing hot tubs, spas, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs, showers and indoor or outdoor swimming pools where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically above any standing or walking surface shall be considered a hazardous location. This shall apply to single glazing and all panes in multiple glazing.

Exception: Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the water’s edge of a bathtub, hot tub, spa, whirlpool or swimming pool.

2406.4.6 Glazing adjacent to stairways and ramps. Glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface of stairways, landings between flights of stairs and ramps shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exceptions:

1. The side of a stairway, landing or ramp that has a guard complying with the provisions of Sections 1015 and 1607.8, and the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing.

2. Glazing 36 inches (914 mm) or more measured horizontally from the walking surface.

2406.4.7 Glazing adjacent to the bottom stairway landing. Glazing adjacent to the landing at the bottom of a stairway where the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the landing and within a 60-inch (1524 mm) horizontal arc that is less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) from the bottom tread nosing shall be considered a hazardous location.

Exception: Glazing that is protected by a guard complying with Sections 1015 and 1607.8 where the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the guard.

2406.5 Fire department access panels. Fire department glass access panels shall be of tempered glass. For insulating glass units, all panes shall be tempered glass.

SECTION 2407
GLASS IN HANDRAILS AND GUARDS

2407.1 Materials. Glass used in a handrail, guardrail or a guard section shall be laminated glass constructed of fully tempered or heat-strengthened glass and shall comply with Category II or CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1. Glazing in railing in-fill panels shall be of an approved safety glazing material that conforms to the provisions of Section 2406.1.1. For all glazing types, the minimum nominal thickness shall be 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).

Exception: Single fully tempered glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1 shall be permitted to be used in handrails and guardrails where there is no walking surface beneath them or the walking surface is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass.

2407.1.1 Loads. The panels and their support system shall be designed to withstand the loads specified in Section 1607.8. A design factor of four shall be used for safety.

2407.1.2 Support. Each handrail or guard section shall be supported by a minimum of three glass balusters or shall be otherwise supported to remain in place should one baluster panel fail. Glass balusters shall not be installed without an attached handrail or guard.

Exception: A top rail shall not be required where the glass balusters are laminated glass with two or more glass plies of equal thickness and the same glass type when approved by the building official. The panels shall be designed to withstand the loads specified in Section 1607.8.

2407.1.3 Parking garages. Glazing materials shall not be installed in handrails or guards in parking garages except for pedestrian areas not exposed to impact from vehicles.

2407.1.4 Glazing in wind-borne debris regions. Glazing installed in in-fill panels or balusters in wind-borne debris regions shall comply with the following:

2407.1.4.1 Balusters and in-fill panels. Glass installed in exterior railing in-fill panels or balusters shall be laminated glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1.

2407.1.4.2 Glass supporting top rail. When the top rail is supported by glass, the assembly shall be tested according to the impact requirements of Section 1609.1.2. The top rail shall remain in place after impact.

SECTION 2408
GLAZING IN ATHLETIC FACILITIES

2408.1 General. Glazing in athletic facilities and similar uses subject to impact loads, which forms whole or partial wall sections or which is used as a door or part of a door, shall comply with this section.

2408.2 Racquetball and squash courts.

2408.2.1 Testing. Test methods and loads for individual glazed areas in racquetball and squash courts subject to
impact loads shall conform to those of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or ANSI Z97.1 with impacts being applied at a height of 59 inches (1499 mm) above the playing surface to an actual or simulated glass wall installation with fixtures, fittings and methods of assembly identical to those used in practice.

Glass walls shall comply with the following conditions:

1. A glass wall in a racquetball or squash court, or similar use subject to impact loads, shall remain intact following a test impact.

2. The deflection of such walls shall be not greater than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) at the point of impact for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

Glass doors shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Glass doors shall remain intact following a test impact at the prescribed height in the center of the door.

2. The relative deflection between the edge of a glass door and the adjacent wall shall not exceed the thickness of the wall plus 1/8 inch (12.7 mm) for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

2408.3 Gymnasiums and basketball courts. Glazing in multipurpose gymnasiums, basketball courts and similar athletic facilities subject to human impact loads shall comply with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1.

2409.3 Visions panels in elevator hoistway doors. Glass in vision panels in elevator hoistway doors shall be permitted to be any transparent glazing material not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in thickness conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. The area of any single vision panel shall be not less than 24 square inches (15484 mm²) and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall be not more than 85 square inches (54839 mm²).

2409.4 Glass in elevator cars. Glass in elevator cars shall be in accordance with this section.

2409.4.1 Glass types. Glass in elevator car enclosures, glass elevator car doors and glass used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars shall be laminated glass conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

Exception: Tempered glass shall be permitted to be used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars provided:

1. The glass is bonded to a nonpolymeric coating, sheeting or film backing having a physical integrity to hold the fragments when the glass breaks.

2. The glass is not subjected to further treatment such as sandblasting, etching, heat treatment or painting that could alter the original properties of the glass.

3. The glass is tested to the acceptance criteria for laminated glass as specified for Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

2409.4.2 Surface area. The glass in glass elevator car doors shall be not less than 60 percent of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the car side of the doors.
CHAPTER 25

GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

SECTION 2501
GENERAL

2501.1 Scope. Provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products, lath, gypsum plaster, cement plaster and reinforced gypsum concrete.

2501.2 Performance. Lathing, plastering, gypsum board and gypsum panel product construction shall be done in the manner and with the materials specified in this chapter and, when required for fire protection, shall also comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

2501.3 Other materials. Other approved wall or ceiling coverings shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and the conditions of approval.

SECTION 2502
DEFINITIONS

2502.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

CEMENT PLASTER.
EXTERIOR SURFACES.
GYPSUM BOARD.
GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS.
GYPSUM PLASTER.
GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER.
INTERIOR SURFACES.
WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES.
WIRE BACKING.

SECTION 2503
INSPECTION

2503.1 Inspection. Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in accordance with Section 110.3.5.

SECTION 2504
VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES

2504.1 Scope. The following requirements shall be met where construction involves gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster in vertical and horizontal assemblies.

2504.1.1 Wood framing. Wood supports for lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel products, as well as wood stripping or furring, shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension.

Exception: The minimum nominal dimension of wood furring strips installed over solid backing shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inches (25 mm by 51 mm).

2504.1.2 Studless partitions. The minimum thickness of vertically erected studless solid plaster partitions of 3/16-inch (9.5 mm) and 3/8-inch (19.1 mm) rib metal lath, 1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

SECTION 2505
SHEAR WALL CONSTRUCTION

2505.1 Resistance to shear (wood framing). Wood-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 2306.3 and are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

2505.2 Resistance to shear (steel framing). Cold-formed steel-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board or gypsum panel products and constructed in accordance with the materials and provisions of Section 2211.6 are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

SECTION 2506
GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT MATERIALS

2506.1 General. Gypsum board, gypsum panel products and accessories shall be identified by the manufacturer’s designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards referenced in this section and stored to protect such materials from the weather.

2506.2 Standards. Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to the appropriate standards listed in Table 2506.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

2506.2.1 Other materials. Metal suspension systems for acoustical and lay-in panel ceilings shall comply with ASTM C635 listed in Chapter 35 and Section 13.5.6 of ASCE 7 for installation in high seismic areas.

SECTION 2507
LATHING AND PLASTERING

2507.1 General. Lathing and plastering materials and accessories shall be marked by the manufacturer’s designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards refer-
enced in this section and stored in such a manner to protect them from the weather.

**2507.2 Standards.** Lathing and plastering materials shall conform to the standards listed in Table 2507.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall also conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

### TABLE 2506.2

**GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessories for gypsum board</td>
<td>ASTM C1047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesives for fastening gypsum board</td>
<td>ASTM C557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural</td>
<td>AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural</td>
<td>AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elastomeric joint sealants</td>
<td>ASTM C920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber-reinforced gypsum panels</td>
<td>ASTM C1278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass mat gypsum backing panel</td>
<td>ASTM C1178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass mat gypsum panel 5</td>
<td>ASTM C1658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass mat gypsum substrate</td>
<td>ASTM C1177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint reinforcing tape and compound</td>
<td>ASTM C474; C475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nails for gypsum boards</td>
<td>ASTM C514, F547, F1667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel screws</td>
<td>ASTM C954; C1002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard specification for gypsum board</td>
<td>ASTM C1396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing gypsum and gypsum products</td>
<td>ASTM C22; C472; C473</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 2507.2

**LATH, PLASTERING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessories for gypsum veneer base</td>
<td>ASTM C1047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blended cement</td>
<td>ASTM C595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural</td>
<td>AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural</td>
<td>AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior plaster bonding compounds</td>
<td>ASTM C932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydraulic cement</td>
<td>ASTM C1157; C1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum casting and molding plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum Keene’s cement</td>
<td>ASTM C61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum veneer plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior bonding compounds, gypsum</td>
<td>ASTM C631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lime plasters</td>
<td>ASTM C5; C206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masonry cement</td>
<td>ASTM C91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal lath</td>
<td>ASTM C847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaster aggregates</td>
<td>ASTM C35; C897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>ASTM C35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perlite</td>
<td>ASTM C35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermiculite</td>
<td>ASTM C35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic cement</td>
<td>ASTM C1328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portland cement</td>
<td>ASTM C150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel screws</td>
<td>ASTM C1002; C954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welded wire lath</td>
<td>ASTM C933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woven wire plaster base</td>
<td>ASTM C1032</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2508.2 Limitations. Gypsum wallboard or gypsum plaster shall not be used in any exterior surface where such gypsum construction will be exposed directly to the weather. Gypsum wallboard shall not be used where there will be direct exposure to water or continuous high humidity conditions. Gypsum sheathing shall be installed on exterior surfaces in accordance with ASTM C1280.

2508.2.1 Weather protection. Gypsum wallboard, gypsum lath or gypsum plaster shall not be installed until weather protection for the installation is provided.

2508.3 Single-ply application. Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be in moderate contact except in concealed spaces where fire-resistance-rated construction, shear resistance or diaphragm action is not required.

2508.3.1 Floating angles. Fasteners at the top and bottom plates of vertical assemblies, or the edges and ends of horizontal assemblies perpendicular to supports, and at the wall line are permitted to be omitted except on shear resisting elements or fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Fasteners shall be applied in such a manner as not to fracture the face paper with the fastener head.

2508.4 Joint treatment. Gypsum board and gypsum panel product fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall have joints and fasteners treated.

Exception: Joint and fastener treatment need not be provided where any of the following conditions occur:
1. Where the gypsum board or the gypsum panel product is to receive a decorative finish such as wood paneling, battens, acoustical finishes or any similar application that would be equivalent to joint treatment.
2. On single-layer systems where joints occur over wood framing members.
3. Square edge or tongue-and-groove edge gypsum board (V-edge), gypsum panel products, gypsum backing board or gypsum sheathing.
4. On multilayer systems where the joints of adjacent layers are offset.
5. Assemblies tested without joint treatment.

2508.5 Horizontal gypsum board or gypsum panel product diaphragm ceilings. Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be permitted to be used on wood joists to create a horizontal diaphragm ceiling in accordance with Table 2508.5.

2508.5.1 Diaphragm proportions. The maximum allowable diaphragm proportions shall be $1\frac{1}{2}:1$ between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted.

2508.5.2 Installation. Gypsum board or gypsum panel products used in a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of gypsum board shall not occur on the same joist.

2508.5.3 Blocking of perimeter edges. Perimeter edges shall be blocked using a wood member not less than 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) nominal dimension.

---

### TABLE 2508.1
INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum board and gypsum panel products</td>
<td>GA-216; ASTM C840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum sheathing and gypsum panel products</td>
<td>ASTM C1280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum veneer base</td>
<td>ASTM C844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lathing and furring</td>
<td>ASTM C841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel framing for gypsum board and gypsum panel products</td>
<td>ASTM C754; C1007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### TABLE 2508.5
SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAME GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (MINIMUM) (inches)</th>
<th>SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches)</th>
<th>SHEAR VALUEa, b (PLF OF CEILING)</th>
<th>MINIMUM FASTENER SIZE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum board or gypsum panel product</td>
<td>$\frac{3}{4}$</td>
<td>16 o.c.</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>5d cooler or wallboard nail; $\frac{1}{8}$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $\frac{1}{16}$-inch head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum board or gypsum panel product</td>
<td>$\frac{3}{4}$</td>
<td>24 o.c.</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>5d cooler or wallboard nail; $\frac{1}{8}$-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; $\frac{1}{16}$-inch head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.59 N/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Values shall be reduced 50 percent in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F.

c. 1$\frac{1}{4}$-inch, No. 6 Type S or W screws are permitted to be substituted for the listed nails.
Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

**2508.5.4 Fasteners.** Fasteners used for the attachment of gypsum board or gypsum panel products to a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be as defined in Table 2508.5. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from the edges and ends of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

**2508.5.5 Lateral force restrictions.** Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall not be used in diaphragm ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction.

### SECTION 2509

**SHOWERS AND WATER CLOSETS**

**2509.1 Wet areas.** Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Section 1210.2.

**2509.2 Base for tile.** Materials used as a base for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall and ceiling panels in shower areas shall be of materials listed in Table 2509.2 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations. Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be used as a base for tile in water closet compartment walls when installed in accordance with GA-216 or ASTM C840 and the manufacturer’s recommendations. Regular gypsum wallboard is permitted under tile or wall panels in other wall and ceiling areas when installed in accordance with GA-216 or ASTM C840.

**2509.3 Limitations.** Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used in the following locations:

1. Over a vapor retarder in shower or bathtub compartments.
2. Where there will be direct exposure to water or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

### TABLE 2509.2

**BACKERBOARD MATERIALS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glass mat gypsum backing panel</td>
<td>ASTM C1178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonasbestos fiber-cement backer board</td>
<td>ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonasbestos fiber-mat reinforced cementitious backer unit</td>
<td>ASTM C1325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2510.3 Installation.** Installation of these materials shall be in compliance with ASTM C926 and ASTM C1063.

**2510.4 Corrosion resistance.** Metal lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant material.

**2510.5 Backing.** Backing or a lath shall provide sufficient rigidity to permit plaster applications.

**2510.5.1 Support of lath.** Where lath on vertical surfaces extends between rafters or other similar projecting members, solid backing shall be installed to provide support for lath and attachments.

**2510.5.2 Use of gypsum backing board.** Gypsum backing for cement plaster shall be in accordance with Section 2510.5.2.1 or 2510.5.2.2.

**2510.5.2.1 Gypsum board as a backing board.** Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard shall not be used as a backing for cement plaster.

**Exception:** Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard is permitted, with a water-resistive barrier, as a backing for self-furred metal lath or self-furred wire fabric lath and cement plaster where either of the following conditions occur:

1. On horizontal supports of ceilings or roof soffits.
2. On interior walls.

**2510.5.2.2 Gypsum sheathing backing.** Gypsum sheathing is permitted as a backing for metal or wire fabric lath and cement plaster on walls. A water-resistive barrier shall be provided in accordance with Section 2510.6.

**2510.5.3 Backing not required.** Wire backing is not required under expanded metal lath or paperbacked wire fabric lath.

**2510.6 Water-resistive barriers.** Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 1404.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall include a water-resistant vapor-permeable barrier with a performance at least equivalent to two layers of water-resistant barrier complying with ASTM E2556, Type I. The individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plane and any flashing (installed in accordance with Section 1405.4) intended to drain to the water-resistant barrier is directed between the layers.

**Exception:** Where the water-resistant barrier that is applied over wood-based sheathing has a water resistance equal to or greater than that of a water-resistant barrier complying with ASTM E2556, Type II and is separated from the stucco by an intervening, substantially nonwater-absorbing layer or drainage space.

**2510.7 Preparation of masonry and concrete.** Surfaces shall be clean, free from efflorescence, sufficiently damp and rough for proper bond. If the surface is insufficiently rough, approved bonding agents or a Portland cement dash bond coat mixed in proportions of not more than two parts volume of sand to one part volume of Portland cement or plastic cement shall be applied. The dash bond coat shall be left undisturbed and shall be moist cured not less than 24 hours.
SECTION 2511
INTERIOR PLASTER

2511.1 General. Plastering gypsum plaster or cement plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath or wire fabric lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this chapter.

Exception: Gypsum veneer plaster and cement plaster specifically designed and approved for one-coat applications.

2511.1.1 Installation. Installation of lathing and plaster materials shall conform to Table 2511.1.1 and Section 2507.

TABLE 2511.1.1
INSTALLATION OF PLASTER CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cement plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum veneer plaster</td>
<td>ASTM C843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lathing and furring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gypsum plaster)</td>
<td>ASTM C841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lathing and furring (cement plaster)</td>
<td>ASTM C1063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel framing</td>
<td>ASTM C754; C1007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2511.2 Limitations. Plaster shall not be applied directly to fiber insulation board. Cement plaster shall not be applied directly to gypsum lath or gypsum plaster except as specified in Sections 2510.5.1 and 2510.5.2.

2511.3 Grounds. Where installed, grounds shall ensure the minimum thickness of plaster as set forth in ASTM C842 and ASTM C926. Plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of lath and other bases.

2511.4 Interior masonry or concrete. Condition of surfaces shall be as specified in Section 2510.7. Approved specially prepared gypsum plaster designed for application to concrete surfaces or approved acoustical plaster is permitted. The total thickness of base coat plaster applied to concrete ceilings shall be as set forth in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926. Should ceiling surfaces require more than the maximum thickness permitted in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926, metal lath or wire fabric lath shall be installed on such surfaces before plastering.

2511.5 Wet areas. Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Sections 1210.2 and 1210.3. When wood frame walls and partitions are covered on the interior with cement plaster or tile of similar material and are subject to water splash, the framing shall be protected with an approved moisture barrier.

SECTION 2512
EXTERIOR PLASTER

2512.1 General. Plastering with cement plaster shall be not less than three coats when applied over metal lath or wire fabric lath or gypsum board backing as specified in Section 2510.5 and shall be not less than two coats when applied over masonry or concrete. If the plaster surface is to be completely covered by veneer or other facing material, or is completely concealed by another wall, plaster application need only be two coats, provided the total thickness is as set forth in ASTM C926.

2512.1.1 On-grade floor slab. On wood frame or steel stud construction with an on-grade concrete floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied in such a manner as to cover, but not to extend below, the lath and paper. The application of lath, paper and flashing or drip screeds shall comply with ASTM C1063.

2512.1.2 Weep screeds. A minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed with a minimum vertical attachment flange of 3 1/2 inches (89 mm) shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with ASTM C926. The weep screed shall be placed a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The water-resistive barrier shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

2512.2 Plasticity agents. Only approved plasticity agents and approved amounts thereof shall be added to Portland cement or blended cements. When plastic cement or masonry cement is used, no additional lime or plasticizers shall be added. Hydrated lime or the equivalent amount of lime putty used as a plasticizer is permitted to be added to cement plaster or cement and lime plaster in an amount not to exceed that set forth in ASTM C926.

2512.3 Limitations. Gypsum plaster shall not be used on exterior surfaces.

2512.4 Cement plaster. Plaster coats shall be protected from freezing for a period of not less than 24 hours after set has occurred. Plaster shall be applied when the ambient temperature is higher than 40°F (4°C), unless provisions are made to keep cement plaster work above 40°F (4°C) during application and 48 hours thereafter.

2512.5 Second-coat application. The second coat shall be brought out to proper thickness, rodded and floated sufficiently rough to provide adequate bond for the finish coat. The second coat shall have no variation greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in any direction under a 5-foot (1524 mm) straight edge.

2512.6 Curing and interval. First and second coats of cement plaster shall be applied and moist cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

2512.7 Application to solid backings. Where applied over gypsum backing as specified in Section 2510.5 or directly to unit masonry surfaces, the second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient hardness.

2512.8 Alternate method of application. The second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient rigidity to receive the second coat.
2512.8.1 Admixtures. When using this method of application, calcium aluminate cement up to 15 percent of the weight of the Portland cement is permitted to be added to the mix.

2512.8.2 Curing. Curing of the first coat is permitted to be omitted and the second coat shall be cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

2512.9 Finish coats. Cement plaster finish coats shall be applied over base coats that have been in place for the time periods set forth in ASTM C926. The third or finish coat shall be applied with sufficient material and pressure to bond and to cover the brown coat and shall be of sufficient thickness to conceal the brown coat.

### SECTION 2513

**EXPOSED AGGREGATE PLASTER**

2513.1 General. Exposed natural or integrally colored aggregate is permitted to be partially embedded in a natural or colored bedding coat of cement plaster or gypsum plaster, subject to the provisions of this section.

2513.2 Aggregate. The aggregate shall be applied manually or mechanically and shall consist of marble chips, pebbles or similar durable, moderately hard (three or more on the Mohs hardness scale), nonreactive materials.

2513.3 Bedding coat proportions. The bedding coat for interior or exterior surfaces shall be composed of one part Portland cement and one part Type S lime; or one part blended cement and one part Type S lime; or masonry cement; or plastic cement and a maximum of three parts of graded white or natural sand by volume. The bedding coat for interior surfaces shall be composed of 100 pounds (45.4 kg) of neat gypsum plaster and a maximum of 200 pounds (90.8 kg) of graded white sand. A factory-prepared bedding coat for interior or exterior use is permitted. The bedding coat for exterior surfaces shall have a minimum compressive strength of 1,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (6895 kPa).

2513.4 Application. The bedding coat is permitted to be applied directly over the first (scratch) coat of plaster, provided the ultimate overall thickness is a minimum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

### TABLE 2512.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COAT</th>
<th>MINIMUM PERIOD MOIST CURING</th>
<th>MINIMUM INTERVAL BETWEEN COATS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>48 hours(^a)</td>
<td>48 hours(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>48 hours(^b)</td>
<td>7 days(^c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Note c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The first two coats shall be as required for the first coats of exterior plaster, except that the moist-curing time period between the first and second coats shall be not less than 24 hours. Moist curing shall not be required where job and weather conditions are favorable to the retention of moisture in the cement plaster for the required time period.

b. Twenty-four-hour minimum interval between coats of interior cement plaster.

c. Finish coat plaster is permitted to be applied to interior cement plaster base coats after a 48-hour period.

2513.5 Bases. Exposed aggregate plaster is permitted to be applied over concrete, masonry, cement plaster base coats or gypsum plaster base coats installed in accordance with Section 2511 or 2512.

2513.6 Preparation of masonry and concrete. Masonry and concrete surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of Section 2510.7.

2513.7 Curing of base coats. Cement plaster base coats shall be cured in accordance with ASTM C926. Cement plaster bedding coats shall retain sufficient moisture for hydration (hardening) for 24 hours minimum or, where necessary, shall be kept damp for 24 hours by light water spraying.

SECTION 2514

**REINFORCED GYPSUM CONCRETE**

2514.1 General. Reinforced gypsum concrete shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C317 and ASTM C956.

2514.2 Minimum thickness. The minimum thickness of reinforced gypsum concrete shall be 2 inches (51 mm) except the minimum required thickness shall be reduced to 1 1/2 inches (38 mm), provided the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The overall thickness, including the formboard, is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).
2. The clear span of the gypsum concrete between supports does not exceed 33 inches (838 mm).
3. Diaphragm action is not required.
4. The design live load does not exceed 40 pounds per square foot (psf) (1915 Pa).
CHAPTER 26

PLASTIC

SECTION 2601
GENERAL

2601.1 Scope. These provisions shall govern the materials, design, application, construction and installation of foam plastic, foam plastic insulation, plastic veneer, interior plastic finish and trim, light-transmitting plastics and plastic composites, including plastic lumber. See Chapter 14 for requirements for exterior wall finish and trim.

SECTION 2602
DEFINITIONS

2602.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER.
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION.
LIGHT-DIFFUSING SYSTEM.
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS.
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS.
PLASTIC, APPROVED.
PLASTIC COMPOSITE.
PLASTIC GLAZING.
PLASTIC LUMBER.
THERMOPLASTIC MATERIAL.
THERMOSETTING MATERIAL.
WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE.

SECTION 2603
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION

2603.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of foam plastic insulation in buildings and structures.

2603.2 Labeling and identification. Packages and containers of foam plastic insulation and foam plastic insulation components delivered to the job site shall bear the label of an approved agency showing the manufacturer’s name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

2603.3 Surface-burning characteristics. Unless otherwise indicated in this section, foam plastic insulation and foam plastic cores of manufactured assemblies shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 where tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Loose fill-type foam plastic insulation shall be tested as board stock for the flame spread and smoke-developed indexes.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke-developed index for interior trim as provided for in Section 2604.2.

2. In cold storage buildings, ice plants, food plants, food processing rooms and similar areas, foam plastic insulation where tested in a thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be permitted in a thickness up to 10 inches (254 mm) where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in both the room and that part of the building in which the room is located.

3. Foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly provided the assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited for roof applications.

4. Foam plastic insulation greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness shall have a maximum flame spread index of 75 and a smoke-developed index of 450 where tested at a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm), provided the end use is approved in accordance with Section 2603.9 using the thickness and density intended for use.

5. Flame spread and smoke-developed indexes for foam plastic interior signs in covered and open mall buildings provided the signs comply with Section 402.6.4.

2603.4 Thermal barrier. Except as provided for in Sections 2603.4.1 and 2603.9, foam plastic shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier of 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275. Combustible concealed spaces shall comply with Section 718.

2603.4.1 Thermal barrier not required. The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required under the conditions set forth in Sections 2603.4.1.1 through 2603.4.1.14.

2603.4.1.1 Masonry or concrete construction. A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic installed in a masonry or concrete wall, floor or roof system where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.
2603.4.1.2 **Cooler and freezer walls.** Foam plastic installed in a maximum thickness of 10 inches (254 mm) in cooler and freezer walls shall:

1. Have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, where tested in a minimum 4-inch (102 mm) thickness.
2. Have flash ignition and self-ignition temperatures of not less than 600°F and 800°F (316°C and 427°C), respectively.
3. Have a covering of not less than 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.
4. Be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the cooler or freezer is within a building, both the cooler or freezer and that part of the building in which it is located shall be sprinklered.

2603.4.1.3 **Walk-in coolers.** In nonsprinklered buildings, foam plastic having a thickness that does not exceed 4 inches (102 mm) and a maximum flame spread index of 75 is permitted in walk-in coolers or freezer units where the aggregate floor area does not exceed 400 square feet (37 m²) and the foam plastic is covered by a metal facing not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). A thickness of up to 10 inches (254 mm) is permitted where protected by a thermal barrier.

2603.4.1.4 **Exterior walls-one-story buildings.** For one-story buildings, foam plastic having a flame spread index of 25 or less, and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted without thermal barriers in or on exterior walls in a thickness not more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the foam plastic is covered by a thickness of not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.0160 inch (0.41 mm) and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2603.4.1.5 **Roofing.** A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly that is installed in accordance with the code and the manufacturer’s instructions and is either constructed as described in Item 1 or tested as described in Item 2.

1. The roof assembly is separated from the interior of the building by wood structural panel sheathing not less than 0.47 inch (11.9 mm) in thickness bonded with exterior glue, with edges supported by blocking, tongue-and-groove joints, other approved type of edge support or an equivalent material.
2. The assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256.

2603.4.1.6 **Attics and crawl spaces.** Within an attic or crawl space where entry is made only for service of utilities, foam plastic insulation shall be protected against ignition by 1/4-inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation; 1/3-inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panel, particleboard or hardboard; 3/4-inch (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard, corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.4 mm); 1/4-inch-thick (38 mm) self-supported spray-applied cellulose insulation in attic spaces only or other approved material installed in such a manner that the foam plastic insulation is not exposed. The protective covering shall be consistent with the requirements for the type of construction.

2603.4.1.7 **Doors not required to have a fire protection rating.** Where pivoted or side-hinged doors are permitted without a fire protection rating, foam plastic insulation, having a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted as a core material where the door facing is of metal having a minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.

2603.4.1.8 **Exterior doors in buildings of Group R-2 or R-3.** In occupancies classified as Group R-2 or R-3, foam-filled exterior entrance doors to individual dwelling units that do not require a fire-resistance rating shall be faced with aluminum, steel, fiberglass, wood or other approved materials.

2603.4.1.9 **Garage doors.** Where garage doors are permitted without a fire-resistance rating and foam plastic is used as a core material, the door facing shall be metal having a minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or 0.010-inch (0.25 mm) steel or the facing shall be minimum 0.125-inch-thick (3.2 mm) wood. Garage doors having facings other than those described above shall be tested in accordance with, and meet the acceptance criteria of, DASMA 107.

Exception: Garage doors using foam plastic insulation complying with Section 2603.3 in detached and attached garages associated with one- and two-family dwellings need not be provided with a thermal barrier.

2603.4.1.10 **Siding backer board.** Foam plastic insulation of not more than 2,000 British thermal units per square foot (Btu/sq. ft.) (22.7 J/m²) as determined by NFPA 259 shall be permitted as a siding backer board with a maximum thickness of 1/4 inch (12.7 mm), provided it is separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of mineral fiber insulation or equivalent or where applied as insulation with re-siding over existing wall construction.

2603.4.1.11 **Interior trim.** Foam plastic used as interior trim in accordance with Section 2604 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier.
2603.4.1.12 Interior signs. Foam plastic used for interior signs in covered mall buildings in accordance with Section 402.6.4 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier. Foam plastic signs that are not affixed to interior building surfaces shall comply with Chapter 8 of the Fire Code.

2603.4.1.13 Type V construction. Foam plastic spray applied to a sill plate, joist header and rim joist in Type V construction is subject to all of the following:

1. The maximum thickness of the foam plastic shall be 3/4 inch (82.6 mm).
2. The density of the foam plastic shall be in the range of 1.5 to 2.0 pcf (24 to 32 kg/m³).
3. The foam plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and an accompanying smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

2603.4.1.14 Floors. The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required to be installed on the walking surface of a structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation when the foam plastic is covered by a minimum nominal 1/2-inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel or approved equivalent. The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is required on the underside of the structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation when the underside of the structural floor system is exposed to the interior of the building.

Exception: Foam plastic used as part of an interior floor finish.

2603.5 Exterior walls of buildings of any height. Exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction of any height shall comply with Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. Exterior walls of cold storage buildings required to be constructed of noncombustible materials, where the building is more than one story in height, shall comply with the provisions of Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. Exterior walls of buildings of Type V construction shall comply with Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4.

2603.5.1 Fire-resistance-rated walls. Where the wall is required to have a fire-resistance rating, data based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be provided to substantiate that the fire-resistance rating is maintained.

2603.5.2 Thermal barrier. Any foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the building interior by a thermal barrier meeting the provisions of Section 2603.4, unless special approval is obtained on the basis of Section 2603.9.

Exception: One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

2603.5.3 Potential heat. The potential heat of foam plastic insulation in any portion of the wall or panel shall not exceed the potential heat expressed in Btu per square feet (mJ/m²) of the foam plastic insulation contained in the wall assembly tested in accordance with Section 2603.5.5.

The potential heat of the foam plastic insulation shall be determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 259 and the results shall be expressed in Btu per square feet (mJ/m²).

Exception: One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

2603.5.4 Flame spread and smoke-developed indexes. Foam plastic insulation, exterior coatings and facings shall be tested separately in the thickness intended for use, but not to exceed 4 inches (102 mm), and shall each have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exception: Prefabricated or factory-manufactured panels having minimum 0.020-inch (0.51 mm) aluminum facings and a total thickness of 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) or less are permitted to be tested as an assembly where the foam plastic core is not exposed in the course of construction.

2603.5.5 Vertical and lateral fire propagation. The exterior wall assembly shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285.

Exceptions:

1. One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.
2. Wall assemblies where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete and meeting one of the following:
   2.1. There is no airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry.
   2.2. The insulation has a flame spread index of not more than 25 as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and the maximum airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry is not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

2603.5.6 Label required. The edge or face of each piece, package or container of foam plastic insulation shall bear the label of an approved agency. The label shall contain the manufacturer’s or distributor’s identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the product or materials’ performance characteristics and approved agency’s identification.

2603.5.7 Ignition. Exterior walls shall not exhibit sustained flaming where tested in accordance with NFPA 268. Where a material is intended to be installed in more than one thickness, tests of the minimum and maximum thickness intended for use shall be performed.

Exception: Assemblies protected on the outside with one of the following:

1. A thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4.
2. A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of concrete or masonry.
3. Glass-fiber-reinforced concrete panels of a minimum thickness of \(\frac{3}{8}\) inch (9.5 mm).

4. Metal-faced panels having minimum 0.019-inch-thick (0.48 mm) aluminum or 0.016-inch-thick (0.41 mm) corrosion-resistant steel outer facings.

5. A minimum \(\frac{3}{8}\) inch (22.2 mm) thickness of stucco complying with Section 2510.

6. A minimum \(\frac{1}{4}\) inch (6.4 mm) thickness of fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding complying with Sections 1405.16 and 1405.16.1 or 1405.16.2.

2603.6 Roofing. Foam plastic insulation meeting the requirements of Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4 shall be permitted as part of a roof-covering assembly, provided the assembly with the foam plastic insulation is a Class A, B or C roofing assembly where tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.

2603.7 Foam plastic insulation used as interior finish or interior trim in plenums. Foam plastic insulation used as interior wall or ceiling finish or as interior trim in plenums shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and shall comply with one or more of Sections 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2 and 2607.3.

2603.7.1 Separation required. The foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the plenum by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

2603.7.2 Approval. The foam plastic insulation shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with NFPA 286. The foam plastic insulation shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9.

2603.7.3 Covering. The foam plastic insulation shall be covered by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.

2603.8 Protection against termites. In areas where the probability of termite infestation is very heavy in accordance with Figure 2603.8, extruded and expanded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate and other foam plastics shall not be installed on the exterior face or under interior or exterior foundation walls or slab foundations located below grade. The clearance between foam plastics installed above grade and exposed earth shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Buildings where the structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or preservative-treated wood.

FIGURE 2603.8
TERMITE INFESTATION PROBABILITY MAP
2. An approved method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is provided.

3. On the interior side of basement walls.

2603.9 Special approval. Foam plastic shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 2603.4 or those of Section 2603.6 where specifically approved based on large-scale tests such as, but not limited to, NFPA 286 (with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1), FM 4880, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be related to the actual end-use configuration and be performed on the finished manufactured foam plastic assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish on the basis of special tests shall also conform to the flame spread and smoke-developed requirements of Chapter 8. Assemblies tested shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation of the assembly and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

2603.10 Wind resistance. Foam plastic insulation complying with ASTM C578 and ASTM C1289 and used as exterior wall sheathing on framed wall assemblies shall comply with ANSI/FS 100 for wind pressure resistance.

2603.11 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to masonry or concrete wall construction. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer’s installation instructions or an approved design. Foam sheathing shall be attached to masonry or concrete construction in accordance with the insulation manufacturer’s installation instructions or an approved design. Furring and furring attachments through foam sheathing shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16, including support of cladding weight as applicable. Fasteners used to attach cladding or furring through foam sheathing to masonry or concrete substrates shall be approved for application into masonry or concrete material and shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer’s installation instructions.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing and connection to a masonry or concrete substrate, those requirements shall apply.

2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1408.

3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1405.

2603.12 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing. Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer’s approved installation instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an approved design. Where used, furring and furring attachments shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Sections 2603.12.1 and 2603.12.2, or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.

TABLE 2603.12.1
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING INTO:</th>
<th>CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE</th>
<th>CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING</th>
<th>16°o.c. fastener horizontal spacing</th>
<th>24°o.c. fastener horizontal spacing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel framing (minimum penetration of steel thickness plus 3 threads)</td>
<td>#8 screw into 33 mil steel or thicker</td>
<td>6 3 3 1.5 3 2</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 3 2 0.5 3 1.5</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
<td>25 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 3 1.5 DR 3 0.75 DR</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
<td>25 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#10 screw into 33 mil steel</td>
<td>6 4 3 2</td>
<td>4 3 0.5</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 4 3 1</td>
<td>4 2</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 4 2 DR 3 1</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
<td>25 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>#10 screw into 43 mil steel or thicker</td>
<td>6 4 4 3</td>
<td>4 4 2</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 4 4 2</td>
<td>4 3 1.5</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
<td>25 psf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 4 3 1.5</td>
<td>DR</td>
<td>3 psf</td>
<td>11 psf</td>
<td>25 psf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.
DR = design required; o.c. = on center.

a. Steel framing shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil steel and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.
b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S200.
c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1405.

2603.12.1 Direct attachment. Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.1.

2603.12.2 Furred cladding attachment. Where steel or wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.1.9 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance Section 2304.10.5. Steel furring shall have a minimum G60 galvanized coating.

SECTION 2604 INTERIOR FINISH AND TRIM

2604.1 General. Plastic materials installed as interior finish or trim shall comply with Chapter 8. Foam plastics shall only be installed as interior finish where approved in accordance with the special provisions of Section 2603.9. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish shall also meet the flame spread and smoke-developed index requirements for interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8. Foam plastics installed as interior trim shall comply with Section 2604.2.

2604.2 Interior trim. Foam plastic used as interior trim shall comply with Sections 2604.2.1 through 2604.2.4.

2604.2.1 Density. The minimum density of the interior trim shall be 20 pcf (320 kg/m³).

2604.2.2 Thickness. The maximum thickness of the interior trim shall be 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) and the maximum width shall be 8 inches (204 mm).

2604.2.3 Area limitation. The interior trim shall not constitute more than 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling areas to which it is attached.

2604.2.4 Flame spread. The flame spread index shall not exceed 75 where tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited.

Exception: When the interior trim material has been tested as an interior finish in accordance with NFPA 286 and complies with the acceptance criteria in Section 803.1.2.1, it shall not be required to be tested for flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

### TABLE 2603.12.2
**FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Furring Material</th>
<th>Framing Member</th>
<th>Fastener Type and Minimum Size</th>
<th>Minimum Penetration into Wall Framing (inches)</th>
<th>Fastener Spacing in Furring (inches)</th>
<th>16&quot; o.c. Furring*</th>
<th>24&quot; o.c. Furring*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#8 Screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#10 Screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>#8 Screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum 33 mil</td>
<td>33 mil steel</td>
<td>#8 screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steel furring or</td>
<td>stud</td>
<td>#10 screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum 1x wood</td>
<td></td>
<td>#8 Screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furring</td>
<td></td>
<td>#10 screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 mil or</td>
<td></td>
<td>#8 Screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thicker steel</td>
<td></td>
<td>#10 screw</td>
<td>Steel thickness plus 3 threads</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stud</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

**a.** Wood furring shall be Spruce-Pine fir or any softwood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater. Steel furring shall be minimum 33 ksi steel. Steel studs shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil thickness and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.

**b.** Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S200.

**c.** Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds 3/4 inch and is not more than 1 1/2 inches, a minimum 2-inch nominal wood furring shall be used or an approved design.

**d.** Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

**e.** Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE

632
SECTION 2605
PLASTIC VENEER

2605.1 Interior use. Where used within a building, plastic veneer shall comply with the interior finish requirements of Chapter 8.

2605.2 Exterior use. Exterior plastic veneer, other than plastic siding, shall be permitted to be installed on the exterior walls of buildings of any type of construction in accordance with all of the following requirements:

1. Plastic veneer shall comply with Section 2606.4.
2. Plastic veneer shall not be attached to any exterior wall to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above grade.
3. Sections of plastic veneer shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m²) in area and shall be separated by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

Exception: The area and separation requirements and the smoke-density limitation are not applicable to plastic veneer applied to buildings constructed of Type VB construction, provided the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating.

2605.3 Plastic siding. Plastic siding shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1404 and 1405.

SECTION 2606
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTICS

2606.1 General. The provisions of this section and Sections 2607 through 2611 shall govern the quality and methods of application of light-transmitting plastics for use as light-transmitting materials in buildings and structures. Foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603. Light-transmitting plastic materials that meet the other code requirements for walls and roofs shall be permitted to be used in accordance with the other applicable chapters of the code.

2606.2 Approval for use. Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to substantiate the proposed use of any light-transmitting material, as approved by the building official and subject to the requirements of this section.

2606.3 Identification. Each unit or package of light-transmitting plastic shall be identified with a mark or decal satisfactory to the building official, which includes identification as to the material classification.

2606.4 Specifications. Light-transmitting plastics, including thermoplastic, thermostetting or reinforced thermostetting plastic material, shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater where tested in accordance with ASTM D1929; a smoke-developed index not greater than 450 where tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, or a maximum average smoke density rating not greater than 75 where tested in the thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM D2843 and shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications:

Class CC1: Plastic materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

Class CC2: Plastic materials that have a burning rate of 2 1/2 inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

2606.5 Structural requirements. Light-transmitting plastic materials in their assembly shall be of adequate strength and durability to withstand the loads indicated in Chapter 16. Technical data shall be submitted to establish stresses, maximum unsupported spans and such other information for the various thicknesses and forms used as deemed necessary by the building official.

2606.6 Fastening. Fastening shall be adequate to withstand the loads in Chapter 16. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion and contraction of light-transmitting plastic materials in accordance with accepted data on the coefficient of expansion of the material and other material in conjunction with which it is employed.

2606.7 Light-diffusing systems. Unless the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, light-diffusing systems shall not be installed in the following occupancies and locations:

1. Group A with an occupant load of 1,000 or more.
2. Theaters with a stage and proscenium opening and an occupant load of 700 or more.
5. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways.

2606.7.1 Support. Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall be supported directly or indirectly from ceiling or roof construction by use of noncombustible hangers. Hangers shall be not less than No. 12 steel-wire gage (0.106 inch) galvanized wire or equivalent.

2606.7.2 Installation. Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall comply with Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic diffusers will fall from the mountings before igniting, at an ambient temperature of not less than 200°F (111°C) below the ignition temperature of the panels. The panels shall remain in place at an ambient room temperature of 175°F (79°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

2606.7.3 Size limitations. Individual panels or units shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in length nor 30 square feet (2.79 m²) in area.

2606.7.4 Fire suppression system. In buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, plastic light-diffusing systems shall be protected both above and below unless the sprinkler system has been specifically approved for installation only above the light-diffusing system. Areas of light-diffusing systems that are protected in accordance with this section shall not be limited.
2606.7.5 Electrical luminaires. Light-transmitting plastic panels and light-diffuser panels that are installed in approved electrical luminaires shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic panels conform to the requirements of Section 2606.7.2. The area of approved light-transmitting plastic materials that is used in required exits or corridors shall not exceed 30 percent of the aggregate area of the ceiling in which such panels are installed, unless the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2606.8 Partitions. Light-transmitting plastics used in or as partitions shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 6 and 8.

2606.9 Bathroom accessories. Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted as glazing in shower stalls, shower doors, bathtub enclosures and similar accessory units. Safety glazing shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 24.

2606.10 Awnings, patio covers and similar structures. Awnings constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 3105 and Chapter 32 for projections. Patio covers constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall comply with Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastics used in canopies at motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Section 2606, except as modified by Section 406.7.2.

2606.11 Greenhouses. Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted in lieu of plain glass in greenhouses.

2606.12 Solar collectors. Light-transmitting plastic covers on solar collectors having noncombustible sides and bottoms shall be permitted on buildings not over three stories above grade plane or 9,000 square feet (836.1 m²) in total floor area, provided the light-transmitting plastic cover does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area for CC1 materials or 25 percent of the roof area for CC2 materials.

Exception: Light-transmitting plastic covers having a thickness of 0.010 inch (0.3 mm) or less shall be permitted to be of any plastic material provided the area of the solar collectors does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area.

### TABLE 2607.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)</th>
<th>CLASS OF PLASTIC</th>
<th>MAXIMUM PERCENTAGE AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL IN PLASTIC WALL PANELS</th>
<th>MAXIMUM SINGLE AREA OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (square feet)</th>
<th>MINIMUM SEPARATION OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 or more but less than 11</td>
<td>CC1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CC2</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>Not Permitted</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 or more but less than or equal to 30</td>
<td>CC1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CC2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 30</td>
<td>CC1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Not Limited</td>
<td>3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CC2</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>6b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

a. For combinations of plastic glazing and plastic wall panel areas permitted, see Section 2607.6.

b. For reductions in vertical separation allowed, see Section 2607.4.

### SECTION 2607

#### LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS

2607.1 General. Light-transmitting plastics shall not be used as wall panels in exterior walls in occupancies in Groups A-1, A-2, H, I-2 and I-3. In other groups, light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted to be used as wall panels in exterior walls, provided that the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating and the installation conforms to the requirements of this section. Such panels shall be erected and anchored on a foundation, waterproofed or otherwise protected from moisture absorption and sealed with a coat of mastic or other approved waterproof coating. Light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall comply with Section 2606.

2607.2 Installation. Exterior wall panels installed as provided for herein shall not alter the type of construction classification of the building.

2607.3 Height limitation. Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade plane, except as allowed by Section 2607.5.

2607.4 Area limitation and separation. The maximum area of a single wall panel and minimum vertical and horizontal separation requirements for exterior light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be as provided for in Table 2607.4. The maximum percentage of wall area of any story in light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed that indicated in Table 2607.4 or the percentage of unprotected openings permitted by Section 705.8, whichever is smaller.

Exceptions:

1. In structures provided with approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (760 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the plane of the floor, a vertical separation is not required at the floor except that provided by the vertical thickness of the flame barrier projection.

2. Veneers of approved weather-resistant light-transmitting plastics used as exterior siding in buildings of Type V construction in compliance with Section 1406.
3. The area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels in exterior walls of greenhouses shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2607.4 but shall be limited as required for unprotected openings in accordance with Section 704.8.

### 2607.5 Automatic sprinkler system
Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum percentage area of exterior wall in any story in light-transmitting plastic wall panels and the maximum square footage of a single area given in Table 2607.4 shall be increased 100 percent, but the area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed 50 percent of the wall area in any story, or the area permitted by Section 705.8 for unprotected openings, whichever is smaller. These installations shall be exempt from height limitations.

### 2607.6 Combinations of glazing and wall panels
Combinations of light-transmitting plastic glazing and light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be subject to the area, height and percentage limitations and the separation requirements applicable to the class of light-transmitting plastic as prescribed for light-transmitting plastic wall panel installations.

## SECTION 2608
### LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC GLAZING

### 2608.1 Buildings of Type VB construction
Openings in the exterior walls of buildings of Type VB construction, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic. Light-transmitting plastic glazing shall comply with Section 2606.

### 2608.2 Buildings of other types of construction
Openings in the exterior walls of buildings of types of construction other than Type VB, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic in accordance with Section 2606 and all of the following:

1. The aggregate area of light-transmitting plastic glazing shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of any wall face of the story in which it is installed. The area of a single pane of glazing installed above the first story above grade plane shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 m²) and the vertical dimension of a single pane shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

   **Exception:** Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the area of allowable glazing shall be increased to not more than 50 percent of the wall face of the story in which it is installed with no limit on the maximum dimension or area of a single pane of glazing.

2. Approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the plane of the floor, or vertical panels not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, shall be installed between glazed units located in adjacent stories.

   **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade level.

   **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

## SECTION 2609
### LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS

### 2609.1 General
Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with this section and Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall not be installed in Groups H, I-2 and I-3. In all other groups, light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with any one of the following conditions:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The roof construction is not required to have a fire-resistance rating by Table 601.
3. The roof panels meet the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15.

### 2609.2 Separation
Individual roof panels shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

**Exceptions:**

1. The separation between roof panels is not required in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The separation between roof panels is not required in low-hazard occupancy buildings complying with the conditions of Section 2609.4, Exception 2 or 3.

### 2609.3 Location
Where exterior wall openings are required to be protected by Section 705.8, a roof panel shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such exterior wall.

### 2609.4 Area limitations
Roof panels shall be limited in area and the aggregate area of panels shall be limited by a percentage of the floor area of the room or space sheltered in accordance with Table 2609.4.

**Exceptions:**

1. The area limitations of Table 2609.4 shall be permitted to be increased by 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Low-hazard occupancy buildings, such as swimming pool shelters, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4, provided that the buildings do not exceed 5,000 square feet (465 m²) in
PLASTIC

area and have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).

3. Greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 provided they have a minimum fire separation distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).

4. Roof coverings over terraces and patios in occupancies in Group R-3 shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 and shall be permitted with light-transmitting plastics.

TABLE 2609.4
AREA LIMITATIONS FOR LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS OF PLASTIC</th>
<th>MAXIMUM AREA OF INDIVIDUAL ROOF PANELS (square feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM AGGREGATE AREA OF ROOF PANELS (percent of floor area)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CC1</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC2</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

SECTION 2610
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC SKYLIGHT GLAZING

2610.1 Light-transmitting plastic glazing of skylight assemblies. Skylight assemblies glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall conform to the provisions of this section and Section 2606. Unit skylights glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall comply with Section 2405.5.

Exception: Skylights in which the light-transmitting plastic conforms to the required roof-covering class in accordance with Section 1505.

2610.2 Mounting. The light-transmitting plastic shall be mounted above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed in accordance with the requirements for the type of construction classification, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof. Edges of the light-transmitting plastic skylights or domes shall be protected by metal or other approved noncombustible material, or the light transmitting plastic dome or skylight shall be shown to be able to resist ignition where exposed at the edge to a flame from a Class B brand as described in ASTM E108 or UL 790. The Class B brand test shall be conducted on a skylight that is elevated to a height as specified in the manufacturer’s installation instructions, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exceptions:
1. Curbs shall not be required for skylights used on roofs having a minimum slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) in occupancies in Group R-3 and on buildings with a nonclassified roof covering.
2. The metal or noncombustible edge material is not required where nonclassified roof coverings are permitted.

2610.3 Slope. Flat or corrugated light-transmitting plastic skylights shall slope not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12). Dome-shaped skylights shall rise above the mounting flange a minimum distance equal to 10 percent of the maximum width of the dome but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

Exception: Skylights that pass the Class B Burning Brand Test specified in ASTM E108 or UL 790.

2610.4 Maximum area of skylights. Each skylight shall have a maximum area within the curb of 100 square feet (9.3 m²).

Exception: The area limitation shall not apply where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

2610.5 Aggregate area of skylights. The aggregate area of skylights shall not exceed 33⅓ percent of the floor area of the room or space sheltered by the roof in which such skylights are installed where Class CC1 materials are utilized, and 25 percent where Class CC2 materials are utilized.

Exception: The aggregate area limitations of light-transmitting plastic skylights shall be increased 100 percent beyond the limitations set forth in this section where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

2610.6 Separation. Skylights shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

Exceptions:
1. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. In Group R-3, multiple skylights located above the same room or space with a combined area not exceeding the limits set forth in Section 2610.4.

2610.7 Location. Where exterior wall openings are required to be protected in accordance with Section 705, a skylight shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such exterior wall.

2610.8 Combinations of roof panels and skylights. Combinations of light-transmitting plastic roof panels and skylights shall be subject to the area and percentage limitations and separation requirements applicable to roof panel installations.

SECTION 2611
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC INTERIOR SIGNS

2611.1 General. Light-transmitting plastic interior wall signs shall be limited as specified in Sections 2611.2 through 2611.4. Light-transmitting plastic interior wall signs in covered and open mall buildings shall comply with Section 402.6.4. Light-transmitting plastic interior signs shall also comply with Section 2606.

2611.2 Aggregate area. The sign shall not exceed 20 percent of the wall area.
2611.3 Maximum area. The sign shall not exceed 24 square feet (2.23 m²).

2611.4 Encasement. Edges and backs of the sign shall be fully encased in metal.

SECTION 2612
PLASTIC COMPOSITES

2612.1 General. Plastic composites shall consist of either wood/plastic composites or plastic lumber. Plastic composites shall comply with the provisions of this code and with the additional requirements of Section 2612.

2612.2 Labeling and identification. Packages and containers of plastic composites used in exterior applications shall bear a label showing the manufacturer’s name, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with code requirements.

2612.2.1 Performance levels. The label for plastic composites used in exterior applications as deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall indicate the required performance levels and demonstrate compliance with the provisions of ASTM D7032.

2612.2.2 Loading. The label for plastic composites used in exterior applications as deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall indicate the type and magnitude of the load determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.3 Flame spread index. Plastic composites shall exhibit a flame spread index not exceeding 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 with the test specimen remaining in place during the test.

Exception: Materials determined to be noncombustible in accordance with Section 703.5.

2612.4 Termite and decay resistance. Plastic composites containing wood, cellulosic or any other biodegradable materials shall be termite and decay resistant as determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.5 Construction requirements. Plastic composites shall be permitted to be used as exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards in buildings of Type VB construction.

2612.5.1 Span rating. Plastic composites used as exterior deck boards shall have a span rating determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

2612.6 Plastic composite decking, handrails and guards. Plastic composite decking, handrails and guards shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer’s instructions.

SECTION 2613
FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER

2613.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of fiber-reinforced polymer in and on buildings and structures.

2613.2 Labeling and identification. Packages and containers of fiber-reinforced polymer and their components delivered to the job site shall bear the label of an approved agency showing the manufacturer’s name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

2613.3 Interior finishes. Fiber-reinforced polymer used as interior finishes, decorative materials or trim shall comply with Chapter 8.

2613.3.1 Foam plastic cores. Fiber-reinforced polymer used as interior finish and which contains foam plastic cores shall comply with Chapter 8 and this chapter.

2613.4 Light-transmitting materials. Fiber-reinforced polymer used as light-transmitting materials shall comply with Sections 2606 through 2611 as required for the specific application.

2613.5 Exterior use. Fiber-reinforced polymer shall be permitted to be installed on the exterior walls of buildings of any type of construction when such polymers meet the requirements of Section 2603.5. Fireblocking shall be installed in accordance with Section 718.

Exceptions:

1. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required when all of the following conditions are met:

   1.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall not exceed an aggregate total of 20 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and no single architectural element shall exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and no contiguous set of architectural elements shall exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which they are attached.

   1.2. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less. The flame spread index requirement shall not be required for coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.

   1.3. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.

   1.4. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall be installed directly to a noncombustible substrate or be separated from the exterior wall by one of the following materials: corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) at any point, aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) or other approved noncombustible material.

2. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required when the fiber-reinforced polymer is installed on buildings that are 40 feet (12 190 mm) or less above grade when all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall meet the requirements of Section 1406.2.

   2.2. Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of the fiber-
reinforced polymer shall not exceed 10 percent of the wall area. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), there shall be no limit on the area of the exterior wall coverage using fiber-reinforced polymer.

2.3. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 200 or less. The flame spread index requirements do not apply to coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.

2.4. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.

SECTION 2614
REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION

2614.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of reflective plastic core insulation in buildings and structures. Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the requirements of Section 2614 and of one of the following: Section 2614.3 or 2614.4.

2614.2 Identification. Packages and containers of reflective plastic core insulation delivered to the job site shall show the manufacturer’s or supplier’s name, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

2614.3 Surface-burning characteristics. Reflective plastic core insulation shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The reflective plastic core insulation shall be tested at the maximum thickness intended for use. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2599.

2614.4 Room corner test heat release. Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286 or UL 1715 in the manner intended for use and at the maximum thickness intended for use.
CHAPTER 27
ELECTRICAL

SECTION 2701
GENERAL

2701.1 Scope. This chapter governs the electrical components, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. Electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 70.

SECTION 2702
EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

2702.1 Installation. Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall comply with Sections 2702.1.1 through 2702.1.7.

2702.1.1 Stationary generators. Stationary emergency and standby power generators required by this code shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200.

2702.1.2 Electrical. Emergency power systems and standby power systems required by this code or the Fire Code shall be installed in accordance with the Fire Code, NFPA 70, NFPA 110 and NFPA 111.

2702.1.3 Load transfer. Emergency power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 10 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code. Standby power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 60 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code.

2702.1.4 Load duration. Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall be designed to provide the required power for a minimum duration of 2 hours without being refueled or recharged, unless specified otherwise in this code.

2702.1.5 Uninterruptable power source. An uninterrupted source of power shall be provided for equipment required by the manufacturer’s instructions, the listing, this code or applicable referenced standards.

2702.1.6 Interchangeability. Emergency power systems shall be an acceptable alternative for installations that require standby power systems.

2702.1.7 Group I-2 occupancies. In Group I-2 occupancies, in new construction or where the building is substantially damaged, where an essential electrical system is located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, the system shall be located and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.

2702.2 Where required. Emergency and standby power systems shall be provided where required by Sections 2702.2.1 through 2702.2.16.

2702.2.1 Emergency alarm systems. Emergency power shall be provided for emergency alarm systems as required by Section 415.5.

2702.2.2 Elevators and platform lifts. Standby power shall be provided for elevators and platform lifts as required in Sections 1009.4, 1009.5, 3003.1, 3007.8 and 3008.8.

2702.2.3 Emergency responder radio coverage systems. Standby power shall be provided for emergency responder radio coverage systems required in Section 916 and the Fire Code. The standby power supply shall be capable of operating the emergency responder radio coverage system for a duration of not less than 24 hours.

2702.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems. Emergency power shall be provided for emergency voice/alarm communication systems as required in Section 907.5.2.2.5. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

2702.2.5 Exit signs. Emergency power shall be provided for exit signs as required in Section 1013.6.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

2702.2.6 Group I-2 occupancies. Essential electrical systems for Group I-2 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 407.10.

2702.2.7 Group I-3 occupancies. Emergency power shall be provided for power-operated doors and locks in Group I-3 occupancies as required in Section 408.4.2.

2702.2.8 Hazardous materials. Emergency or standby power shall be provided in occupancies with hazardous materials where required by the Fire Code.

2702.2.9 High-rise buildings. Emergency and standby power shall be provided in high-rise buildings as required in Sections 403.4.8.

2702.2.10 Horizontal sliding doors. Standby power shall be provided for horizontal sliding doors as required in Section 1010.1.4.3. The standby power supply shall have a capacity to operate not fewer than 50 closing cycles of the door.

2702.2.11 Means of egress illumination. Emergency power shall be provided for means of egress illumination as required in Section 1008.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

2702.2.12 Membrane structures. Standby power shall be provided for auxiliary inflation systems in permanent membrane structures as required in Section 3102.8.2. Standby power shall be provided for a duration of not less
than 4 hours. Auxiliary inflation systems in temporary air-supported and air-inflated membrane structures shall be provided in accordance with Section 3103.10.4 of the Fire Code.

2702.2.13 Pyrophoric materials. Emergency power shall be provided for occupancies with silane gas in accordance with the Fire Code.

2702.2.14 Semiconductor fabrication facilities. Emergency power shall be provided for semiconductor fabrication facilities as required in Section 415.11.10.

2702.2.15 Smoke control systems. Standby power shall be provided for smoke control systems as required in Sections 404.7, 909.11, 909.20.6.2 and 909.21.5.

2702.2.16 Underground buildings. Emergency and standby power shall be provided in underground buildings as required in Section 405.

2702.3 Critical circuits. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.

2702.4 Maintenance. Emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained and tested in accordance with the Fire Code.
CHAPTER 28
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

SECTION 2801
GENERAL
2801.1 Scope. Mechanical appliances, equipment and systems shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with the Mechanical Code and the Fuel Gas Code. Masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues shall comply with the Mechanical Code and Chapter 21 of this code.
CHAPTER 29
PLUMBING SYSTEMS

SECTION 2901
GENERAL

2901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter and the Plumbing Code shall govern the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing equipment and systems. Toilet and bathing rooms shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1210. Plumbing systems and equipment shall be constructed, installed and maintained in accordance with the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 2902
MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

2902.1 Minimum number of fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be provided in the minimum number as shown in Table 2902.1 based on the actual use of the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 2902.1 shall be considered individually by the code official. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.

2902.1.1 Fixture calculations. To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exception: The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where approved statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.

2902.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet and bath fixtures. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms required by Section 1109.2.1 are permitted to be included in the number of required fixtures for either the male or female occupants in assembly and mercantile occupancies.

TABLE 2902.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES
(See Sections 2902.1.1 and 2902.2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 419.2 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS/SHOWERS</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Assembly (continued)</td>
<td>Theaters and other buildings for the performing arts and motion pictures</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 65</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nightclubs, bars, taverns, dance halls and buildings for similar purposes</td>
<td>1 per 40</td>
<td>1 per 40</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Restaurants, banquet halls and food courts</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A-1d</td>
<td>Auditoriums without permanent seating, art galleries, exhibition halls, museums, lecture halls, libraries, arcades and gymnasiums</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 65</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger terminals and transportation facilities</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 per 750</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Places of worship and other religious services</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 419.2 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS/SHOWERs (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Assembly</td>
<td>A-4</td>
<td>Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities</td>
<td>1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A-5</td>
<td>Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities</td>
<td>1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, light industrial and similar uses</td>
<td>1 per 25 for the first 50 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 50</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 80 and 1 per 80 for the remainder exceeding 80</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Educational</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>Educational facilities</td>
<td>1 per 50</td>
<td>1 per 50</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Factory and industrial</td>
<td>F-1 and F-2</td>
<td>Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembling or processing of products or materials</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>See Section 411 of the Plumbing Code</td>
<td>1 per 400</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Institutional</td>
<td>I-1</td>
<td>Residential care</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-2</td>
<td>Hospitals, ambulatory nursing home care recipient</td>
<td>1 per room</td>
<td>1 per room</td>
<td>1 per 15</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Employees, other than residential care</td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
<td>1 per 35</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Visitors, other than residential care</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>Prisons</td>
<td>1 per cell</td>
<td>1 per cell</td>
<td>1 per 15</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>Reformatories, detention centers and correctional centers</td>
<td>1 per 15</td>
<td>1 per 15</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Employees</td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
<td>1 per 35</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|     |                | I-4       | Adult day care and child care | 1 per 15 | 1 per 15 | 1 per 100 | 1 service sink | (continued)
### TABLE 2902.1—continued  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES***  
*(See Sections 2902.1.1 and 2902.2)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 419.2 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS OR SHOWERS</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE PLUMBING CODE)</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Female</strong></td>
<td><strong>Male</strong></td>
<td><strong>Female</strong></td>
<td><strong>Male</strong></td>
<td><strong>Female</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Mercantile</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets and shopping centers</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 per 750</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-1</td>
<td>Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)</td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding houses (not transient)</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Residential</td>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>Apartment house</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per 20 dwelling units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-3</td>
<td>One- and two-family dwellings and lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per dwelling unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-3</td>
<td>Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-4</td>
<td>Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>S-1</td>
<td>Structures for the storage of goods, warehouses, storehouses and freight depots, low and moderate hazard</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>See Section 411 of the Plumbing Code</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

a. The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.
b. Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates or care recipients.
c. A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted, provided that each patient sleeping unit has direct access to the toilet room and provisions for privacy for the toilet room user are provided.
d. The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
e. For business and mercantile occupancies with an occupant load of 15 or fewer, service sinks shall not be required.
h. For child day care occupancies, bathtubs/showers shall not be required.
2902.2 Separate facilities. Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer.
3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or less.
4. Separate facilities shall not be required in buildings or tenant spaces where single-occupancy gender-neutral public toilet facilities are provided in accordance with Section 2902.4.

2902.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet facilities serving as separate facilities. Where a building or tenant space requires a separate toilet facility for each sex and each toilet facility is required to have only one water closet, two family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall be permitted to serve as the required separate facilities. Family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall not be required to be identified for exclusive use by either sex as required by Section 2902.4.

2902.3 Employee and public toilet facilities. Customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities in structures and tenant spaces intended for public utilization. The number of plumbing fixtures located within the required toilet facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2902.1 for all users. Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in all occupancies. Employee toilet facilities shall be either separate or combined employee and public toilet facilities.

Exception: Public toilet facilities shall not be required in:

1. Open or enclosed parking garages where there are no parking attendants.
2. Structures and tenant spaces intended for quick transactions, including takeout, pickup and drop-off, having a public access area less than or equal to 300 square feet (28 m²).

2902.3.1 Access. The route to the public toilet facilities required by Section 2902.3 shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms or closets. Access to the required facilities shall be from within the building or from the exterior of the building. Routes shall comply with the accessibility requirements of this code. The public shall have access to the required toilet facilities at all times that the building is occupied.

2902.3.2 Location of toilet facilities in occupancies other than malls. In occupancies other than covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 500 feet (152 m).

Exception: The location and maximum distances of travel to required employee facilities in factory and industrial occupancies are permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distance of travel are approved.

2902.3.3 Location of toilet facilities in malls. In covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 300 feet (91 mm). In mall buildings, the required facilities shall be based on total square footage (m²) within a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, and facilities shall be installed in each individual store or in a central toilet area located in accordance with this section. The maximum distance of travel to central toilet facilities in mall buildings shall be measured from the main entrance of any store or tenant space. In mall buildings, where employees’ toilet facilities are not provided in the individual store, the maximum distance of travel shall be measured from the employees’ work area of the store or tenant space.

2902.3.4 Pay facilities. Where pay facilities are installed, such facilities shall be in excess of the required minimum facilities. Required facilities shall be free of charge.

2902.3.5 Door locking. Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

2902.3.6 Prohibited toilet room location. Toilet rooms shall not open directly into a room used for the preparation of food for service to the public.

2902.4 Signage. Multi-occupancy public toilet facilities shall be designated by a legible sign for each sex. Single-occupancy public toilet facilities shall be designated with gender-neutral signage. Signs shall be readily visible and located near the entrance to each toilet facility. Signs for accessible toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111.

2902.4.1 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the required public toilet facilities shall be posted in a lobby, corridor, aisle or similar space, such that the sign can be readily seen from the main entrance to the building or tenant space.

2902.5 Drinking fountain location. Drinking fountains shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces provided that public drinking fountains are located within a distance of travel of 500 feet (152 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Where the tenant space is in
a covered or open mall, such distance shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm). Drinking fountains shall be located on an accessible route.

2902.5.1 Drinking fountain substitution. Drinking fountains shall not be required in restaurants that provide drinking water in a container free of charge. In establishments of occupancies B or M, with an area of 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²) or less, a water cooler or a bottled water dispenser may be substituted for the required drinking fountain. In other occupancies, including B or M occupancies with an area of more than 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²), water coolers or bottled water dispensers shall be permitted to be substituted for not more than 50 percent of the required number of drinking fountains.

2902.6 Small occupancies. Drinking fountains shall not be required for an occupant load of 15 or fewer.
CHAPTER 30

ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

SECTION 3001

GENERAL

3001.1 Scope. This chapter governs the design, construction, installation, alteration, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems, including but not limited to, escalators, platform and stairway chair lifts, dumbwaiters, and moving walks, and their components.

3001.2 Referenced standards. Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the design, construction, installation, alteration, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems and their components shall conform to ASME A17.1/CSA B44, ASME A18.1, ASME A90.1, ASME B20.1, ANSI MH29.1, ALI ALCTV, ASCE 24 for construction in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, and ICC A117.1. Alteration and repair of existing elevators and conveying systems shall comply with the Existing Building Code. Maintenance of existing elevators and conveying systems shall also comply with the requirements of the Property Maintenance Code.

3001.3 Accessibility. Passenger elevators required to be accessible or to serve as part of an accessible means of egress shall comply with Sections 1009 and 1109.7.

3001.4 Change in use. A change in use of an elevator from freight to passenger, passenger to freight, or from one freight class to another freight class shall comply with Section 8.7 of freight to passenger, passenger to freight, or from one freight class to another freight class shall comply with Section 8.7 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

SECTION 3002

HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

3002.1 Hoistway enclosure protection. Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

3002.1.1 Opening protectives. Openings in hoistway enclosures shall be protected as required in Chapter 7.

Exception: The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

3002.1.2 Hardware. Hardware on opening protectives shall be of an approved type installed as tested, except that approved interlocks, mechanical locks and electric contacts, door and gate electric contacts and door-operating mechanisms shall be exempt from the fire test requirements.

3002.2 Number of elevator cars in a hoistway. Where four or more elevator cars serve all or the same portion of a building, the elevators shall be located in not fewer than two separate hoistways. Not more than four elevator cars shall be located in any single hoistway enclosure.

3002.3 Emergency signs. An approved pictorial sign of a standardized design shall be posted adjacent to each elevator call station on all floors instructing occupants to use the exit stairways and not to use the elevators in case of fire. The sign shall read: IN CASE OF FIRE, ELEVATORS ARE OUT OF SERVICE. USE EXIT STAIRS.

Exceptions:

1. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are part of an accessible means of egress complying with Section 1009.4.

2. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

3002.4 Elevator car to accommodate ambulance stretcher. Where elevators are provided in buildings four or more stories above, or four or more stories below, grade plane, not fewer than one elevator shall be provided for fire department emergency access to all floors. The elevator car shall be of such a size and arrangement to accommodate an ambulance stretcher 24 inches by 84 inches (610 mm by 2134 mm) with not less than 5-inch (127 mm) radius corners, in the horizontal, open position and shall be identified by the international symbol for emergency medical services (star of life). The symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height and shall be placed inside on both sides of the hoistway door frame.

3002.5 Emergency doors. Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway or on the outside of a building, there shall be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway or blank face of the building, an emergency door in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3002.6 Prohibited doors. Doors, other than hoistway doors and the elevator car door, shall be prohibited at the point of access to an elevator car unless such doors are readily operable from the car side without a key, tool, special knowledge or effort.

3002.7 Common enclosure with stairway. Elevators shall not be in a common shaft enclosure with a stairway.

Exception: Elevators within open parking garages need not be separated from stairway enclosures.

3002.8 Glass in elevator enclosures. Glass in elevator enclosures shall comply with Section 2409.2.

3002.9 Plumbing and mechanical systems. Plumbing and mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator hoistway enclosure.

Exceptions:

1. Floor drains, sumps and sump pumps shall be permitted at the base of the hoistway enclosure provided that they are indirectly connected to the plumbing system.
2. Machinery and equipment serving the elevator shall be permitted in an elevator hoistway enclosure in conformance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.8.

SECTION 3003
EMERGENCY OPERATIONS

3003.1 Standby power. In buildings and structures where standby power is required or furnished to operate an elevator, the operation shall be in accordance with Sections 3003.1.1 through 3003.1.4.

3003.1.1 Manual transfer. Standby power shall be manually transferable to all elevators in each bank.

3003.1.2 One elevator. Where only one elevator is installed, the elevator shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power.

3003.1.3 Two or more elevators. Where two or more elevators are controlled by a common operating system, all elevators shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power where the standby power source is of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time. Where the standby power source is not of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time, all elevators shall transfer to standby power in sequence, return to the designated landing and disconnect from the standby power source. After all elevators have been returned to the designated level, at least one elevator shall remain operable from the standby power source.

3003.1.4 Venting. Where standby power is connected to elevators, the machine room ventilation or air conditioning shall be connected to the standby power source.

3003.2 Fire fighters’ emergency operation. Elevators shall be provided with Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3003.3 Standardized fire service elevator keys. All elevators shall be equipped to operate with a standardized fire service elevator key in accordance with the Fire Code.

SECTION 3004
CONVEYING SYSTEMS

3004.1 General. Escalators, moving walks, conveyors, personnel hoists and material hoists shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3004.2 through 3004.4.

3004.2 Escalators and moving walks. Escalators and moving walks shall be constructed of approved noncombustible and fire-retardant materials. This requirement shall not apply to electrical equipment, wiring, wheels, handrails and the use of 1/28-inch (0.9 mm) wood veneers on balustrades backed up with noncombustible materials.

3004.2.1 Enclosure. Escalator floor openings shall be enclosed with shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

3004.2.2 Escalators. Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, escalators shall have a clear width of not less than 32 inches (815 mm).

Exception: The clear width is not required in existing facilities undergoing alterations.

3004.3 Conveyors. Conveyors and conveying systems shall comply with ASME B20.1.

3004.3.1 Enclosure. Conveyors and related equipment connecting successive floors or levels shall be enclosed with shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

3004.3.2 Conveyor safeties. Power-operated conveyors, belts and other material-moving devices shall be equipped with automatic limit switches that will shut off the power in an emergency and automatically stop all operation of the device.

3004.4 Personnel and material hoists. Personnel and material hoists shall be designed utilizing an approved method that accounts for the conditions imposed during the intended operation of the hoist device. The design shall include, but is not limited to, anticipated loads, structural stability, impact, vibration, stresses and seismic restraint. The design shall account for the construction, installation, operation and inspection of the hoist tower, car, machinery and control equipment, guide members and hoisting mechanism. Additionally, the design of personnel hoists shall include provisions for field testing and maintenance that will demonstrate that the hoist device functions in accordance with the design. Field tests shall be conducted upon the completion of an installation or following a major alteration of a personnel hoist.

SECTION 3005
MACHINE ROOMS

3005.1 Access. An approved means of access shall be provided to elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces.

3005.2 Venting. Elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces that contain the driving machine, and control rooms or spaces that contain the operation or motion controller for elevator operation shall be provided with an independent ventilation or air-conditioning system to protect against the overheating of the electrical equipment. The system shall be capable of maintaining temperatures within the range established for the elevator equipment.

3005.3 Pressurization. The elevator machine room, control rooms or control space with openings into a pressurized elevator hoistway shall be pressurized upon activation of a heat or smoke detector located in the elevator machine room, control room or control space.
3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, and control spaces. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces outside of but attached to a hoistway that have openings into the hoistway shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than the required rating of the hoistway enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the fire barriers shall be protected with assemblies having a fire protection rating not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure doors.

Exceptions:

1. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, where machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted to be reduced to a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.

2. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, in buildings four stories or less above grade plane where machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces are not required to be fire-resistance rated.

3005.5 Shunt trip. Where elevator hoistways, elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces containing elevator control equipment are protected with automatic sprinklers, a means installed in accordance with Section 21.4 of NFPA 72 shall be provided to disconnect automatically the main line power supply to the affected elevator prior to the application of water. This means shall not be self-resetting. The activation of automatic sprinklers outside the hoistway, machine room, machinery space, control room or control space shall not disconnect the main line power supply.

3005.6 Plumbing systems. Plumbing systems shall not be located in elevator equipment rooms.

SECTION 3006
ELEVATOR LOBBIES AND HOISTWAY OPENING PROTECTION

3006.1 General. Elevator hoistway openings and enclosed elevator lobbies shall be provided in accordance with the following:

1. Where hoistway opening protection is required by Section 3006.2, such protection shall be in accordance with Section 3006.3.

2. Where enclosed elevator lobbies are required for underground buildings, such lobbies shall comply with Section 405.4.3.

3. Where an area of refuge is required and an enclosed elevator lobby is provided to serve as an area of refuge, the enclosed elevator lobby shall comply with Section 1009.6.

4. Where fire service access elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3007.6.

5. Where occupant evacuation elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3008.6.

6. Where an elevator hoistway serves one or more levels of an underground enclosed parking garage and also serves levels above the ground floor, an elevator lobby shall be provided at each garage level served to separate the hoistway openings from the enclosed parking garage. The enclosure of such lobby shall be of smoke-tight construction and extend from slab to slab, so as to oppose the propagation of smoke and gases, and shall not be required to be fire-resistance rated.

3006.2 Hoistway opening protection required. Elevator hoistway door openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 3006.3 where:

1. An elevator hoistway connects more than three stories,

2. Is required to be enclosed within a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 712.1.1 and

3. Any of the following conditions apply:

   3.1. The building is not protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

   3.2. The building contains a Group I-1 Condition 2 occupancy.

   3.3. The building contains a Group I-2 occupancy.

   3.4. The building contains a Group I-3 occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required where the elevator serves only open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.

2. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required at the level(s) of exit discharge, provided that the level(s) of exit discharge is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. Enclosed elevator lobbies and protection of elevator hoistway door openings are not required on levels where the elevator hoistway opens to the exterior.

3006.3 Hoistway opening protection. Where Section 3006.2 requires protection of the elevator hoistway door opening, the protection shall be provided by one of the following:

1. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by fire partitions in accordance with Section 708. In addition, doors protecting openings in the elevator lobby enclosure walls shall comply with Section 716.5.3 as required for corridor walls.
Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.

2. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710 where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. In addition, doors protecting openings in the smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.3 and 716.5.9. Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.

3. Additional doors shall be provided at each elevator hoistway door opening in accordance with Section 3002.6. Such door shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements in Section 716.5.3.1 when tested in accordance with UL 1784 without an artificial bottom seal.

4. The elevator hoistway shall be pressurized in accordance with Section 909.21.

3006.4 Means of egress. Elevator lobbies shall be provided with at least one means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and other provisions in this code. Egress through an elevator lobby shall be permitted in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

SECTION 3007
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATOR

3007.1 General. Where required by Section 403.6.1, every floor of the building shall be served by fire service access elevators complying with Sections 3007.1 through 3007.9. Except as modified in this section, fire service access elevators shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3007.2 Automatic sprinkler system. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3007.2.1.

3007.2.1 Prohibited locations. Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of fire service access elevators.

3007.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring. The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building’s fire alarm system.

3007.3 Water protection. An approved method to prevent water from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure from the operation of the automatic sprinkler system outside the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided.

3007.4 Shunt trip. Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for fire service access elevators.

3007.5 Hoistway enclosures. The fire service access elevator hoistway shall be located in a shaft enclosure complying with Section 713.

3007.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures. The fire service access elevator hoistway enclosure shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

3007.5.2 Hoistway lighting. When fire-fighters’ emergency operation is active, the entire height of the hoistway shall be illuminated at not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) as measured from the top of the car of each fire service access elevator.

3007.6 Fire service access elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator shall open into a fire service access elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3007.6.1 through 3007.6.5. Egress is permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

Exception: Where a fire service access elevator has two entrances onto a floor, the second entrance shall be permitted to open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3006.3.

3007.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp. The fire service access elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an enclosure for an interior exit stairway or ramp.

Exception: Access to an interior exit stairway or ramp shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.3.

3007.6.2 Lobby enclosure. The fire service access elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a smoke barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3007.6.3.

Exception: Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required at the levels of exit discharge.

3007.6.3 Lobby doorways. Other than doors to the hoistway, elevator control room or elevator control space, each doorway to a fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided with a 1/2-hour fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5. The fire door assembly shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.

3007.6.4 Lobby size. Regardless of the number of fire service access elevators served by the same elevator lobby, the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be not less than 150 square feet (14 m²) in an area with a dimension of not less than 8 feet (2440 mm).

3007.6.5 Fire service access elevator symbol. A pictorial symbol of a standardized design designating which elevators are fire service access elevators shall be installed on
each side of the hoistway door frame on the portion of the frame at right angles to the fire service access elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be designed as shown in Figure 3007.6.5 and shall comply with the following:

1. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height.
2. The helmet shall contrast with the background, with either a light helmet on a dark background or a dark helmet on a light background.
3. The vertical center line of the fire service access elevator symbol shall be centered on the hoistway door frame. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm), and not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the finished floor at the threshold.

![FIGURE 3007.6.5](image)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

3007.7 Elevator system monitoring. The fire service access elevator shall be continuously monitored at the fire command center by a standard emergency service interface system meeting the requirements of NFPA 72.

3007.8 Electrical power. The following features serving each fire service access elevator shall be supplied by normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:

1. Elevator equipment.
2. Elevator hoistway lighting.
3. Ventilation and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machine spaces and control spaces.
4. Elevator car lighting.
5. Lighting of elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machine spaces and control spaces.

3007.8.1 Protection of wiring or cables. Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway and machine room and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, ventilation and fire-detecting systems to fire service access elevators shall be protected by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, shall be a circuit integrity cable having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours or shall be protected by a listed electrical protective system having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

Exception: Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operations.

3007.9 Standpipe hose connection. A Class I standpipe hose connection in accordance with Section 905 shall be provided with the interior exit stairway and ramp having direct access from the fire service access elevator lobby.

3007.9.1 Access. The exit enclosure containing the standpipe shall have access to the floor without passing through the fire service access elevator lobby.

SECTION 3008

OCCUPANT EVACUATION ELEVATORS

3008.1 General. Where elevators are to be used for occupant self-evacuation during fires, all passenger elevators for general public use shall comply with Sections 3008.1 through 3008.10. Where other elevators are used for occupant self-evacuation, those elevators shall comply with these sections.

3008.1.1 Additional exit stairway. Where an additional means of egress is required in accordance with Section 403.5.2, an additional exit stairway shall not be required to be installed in buildings provided with occupant evacuation elevators complying with Section 3008.1.

3008.1.2 Fire safety and evacuation plan. The building shall have an approved fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 404 of the Fire Code. The fire safety and evacuation plan shall incorporate specific procedures for the occupants using evacuation elevators.

3008.1.3 Operation. The occupant evacuation elevators shall be used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with the occupant evacuation operation requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and the building’s fire safety and evacuation plan.

3008.2 Automatic sprinkler system. The building shall be equipped throughout with an approved, electrically supervised automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3008.2.1.

3008.2.1 Prohibited locations. Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of occupant evacuation elevators.

3008.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring. The automatic sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building’s fire alarm system.

3008.3 Water protection. An approved method to prevent water from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure from the operation of the automatic sprinkler system outside the enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be provided.
3008.4 Shunt trip. Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for occupant evacuation elevators.

3008.5 Hoistway enclosure protection. Occupant evacuation elevator hoistways shall be located in shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

3008.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures. Occupant evacuation elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.3.1 through 403.2.3.4.

3008.6 Occupant evacuation elevator lobby. Occupant evacuation elevators shall open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3008.6.1 through 3008.6.6. Egress is permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

3008.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an interior exit stairway or ramp.

   Exception: Access to an interior exit stairway or ramp shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.3.

3008.6.2 Lobby enclosure. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a smoke barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3008.6.3.

   Exception: Enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobbies are not required at the levels of exit discharge.

3008.6.3 Lobby doorways. Other than the doors to the hoistway, elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces within the lobby enclosure smoke barrier, each doorway to an occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be provided with a 1/2-hour fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5. The fire door assembly shall comply with the smoke and draft control assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.

3008.6.3.1 Vision panel. A vision panel shall be installed in each fire door assembly protecting the lobby doorway. The vision panel shall consist of fire-protection-rated glazing and shall be located to furnish clear vision of the occupant evacuation elevator lobby.

3008.6.3.2 Door closing. Each fire door assembly protecting the lobby doorway shall be automatic-closing upon receipt of any fire alarm signal from the emergency voice/alarm communication system serving the building.

3008.6.4 Lobby size. Each occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have minimum floor area as follows:

1. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate, at 3 square feet (0.28 m²) per person, not less than 25 percent of the occupant load of the floor area served by the lobby.

2. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate one wheelchair space of 30 inches by 48 inches (760 mm by 1220 mm) for each 50 persons, or portion thereof, of the occupant load of the floor area served by the lobby.

   Exception: The size of lobbies serving multiple banks of elevators shall have the minimum floor area approved on an individual basis and shall be consistent with the building’s fire safety and evacuation plan.

3008.6.5 Signage. An approved sign indicating elevators are suitable for occupant self-evacuation shall be posted on all floors adjacent to each elevator call station serving occupant evacuation elevators.

3008.6.6 Two-way communication system. A two-way communication system shall be provided in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby for the purpose of initiating communication with the fire command center or an alternate location approved by the fire department. The two-way communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2.

3008.7 Elevator system monitoring. The occupant evacuation elevators shall be continuously monitored at the fire command center or a central control point approved by the fire department and arranged to display all of the following information:

1. Floor location of each elevator car.
2. Direction of travel of each elevator car.
3. Status of each elevator car with respect to whether it is occupied.
4. Status of normal power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical apparatus cooling equipment where provided, elevator machine room, control room and control space ventilation and cooling equipment.
5. Status of standby or emergency power system that provides backup power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical cooling equipment where provided, elevator machine room, control room and control space ventilation and cooling equipment.
6. Activation of any fire alarm initiating device in any elevator lobby, elevator machine room, machine space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, control room or elevator hoistway.

3008.7.1 Elevator recall. The fire command center or an alternate location approved by the fire department shall be provided with the means to manually initiate a Phase I Emergency Recall of the occupant evacuation elevators in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

3008.8 Electrical power. The following features serving each occupant evacuation elevator shall be supplied by normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:

1. Elevator equipment.
2. Ventilation and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces.

3. Elevator car lighting.

4. Lighting of elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machine spaces and control spaces.

**3008.8.1 Protection of wiring or cables.** Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway, machine room, control room and control space and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, ventilation and fire-detecting systems to occupant evacuation elevators shall be protected by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, shall be circuit integrity cable having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours or shall be protected by a listed electrical circuit protective system having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**Exception:** Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operation.

**3008.9 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** The building shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**3008.9.1 Notification appliances.** Not fewer than one audible and one visible notification appliance shall be installed within each occupant evacuation elevator lobby.

**3008.10 Hazardous material areas.** No building areas shall contain hazardous materials exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area as addressed in Section 414.2.

---

**SECTION 3009 CERTIFICATE OF INSPECTION**

**3009.1 General.** No elevator or conveying system, including, but not limited to, escalators, dumbwaiters, wheelchair lifts, carvveyors, manlifts and moving walks, shall be operated without a valid certificate of inspection issued by the code official.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the code official authorizes limited approval of use in accordance with the provisions of Section 3009.2.
2. Elevators and conveying systems covered by the Residential Code where the equipment is serving one dwelling unit.
3. In Groups R-2 and R-3 occupancies where the equipment is serving one dwelling unit.

**3009.2 Limited approval of use.** The code official is authorized to grant limited approval of use for any equipment covered by this chapter.

**3009.2.1 Work performed under permit.** A permit issued to install, relocate, alter or repair any equipment covered by this chapter, shall serve as limited approval of use of the equipment by the permit holder during the period of such installation, relocation, alteration or repair.

**3009.2.2 Construction use.** Limited approval of use of an elevator may be granted by the code official during authorized construction or demolition to provide transportation for construction personnel, tools, and materials, provided that full compliance with ASME A17.1-5.10 has been confirmed by the testing, inspection and certification of the elevator by the code official or by an approved Third-Party Inspector. Public use of an elevator with limited approval of use in accordance with this section is prohibited. Equipment other than elevators shall be tested and protective measures shall be provided as deemed necessary by the code official to ensure safe operation for the limited service specified.

**3009.2.2.1 Time limitation.** For elevators approved for “Construction Use” in accordance with ASME A17.1-5.10, the limited approval of use shall be valid a period of time not exceeding 90 days. The code official is authorized to renew the limited approval of use, after performance of the required inspections and/or tests required by ASME A17.1-8.11.5.13, for additional periods of time not exceeding 90 days each.

**3009.3 Final inspection.** Upon installation, relocation or alteration of an elevator or conveying system for which a permit is required, a final inspection of the equipment is required to verify that all required inspections have been performed and approved. The permit holder shall apply for and obtain a valid certificate of inspection from the Department within 30 working days after completion of the final inspection.

**3009.4 Content of certificate of inspection: posting.** The certificate of inspection shall contain the following information:

1. The address of the structure.
2. The name and address of the owner.
3. A description of the vertical transportation equipment (e.g., escalator, elevator, dumbwaiter, wheelchair lift, moving walk or conveyor).
4. The rated load and speed.
5. A statement that the described equipment has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of the Construction Codes.
6. The name of the code official.
7. Any special stipulations and conditions of the permit under which the equipment was installed, relocated or altered.

**3009.4.1 Posting of certificate.** A copy of the most current certificate of inspection shall be conspicuously displayed at all times within the elevator car or attached to the conveying system unless exempted pursuant to Section 3009.6. If the building operator maintains an office in the same building, the certificate of inspection may be made
3009.5 Maintenance, testing, inspections. Periodic tests and inspections shall be made by the code official, or by an approved third-party agency, and shall be made at the expense and responsibility of the owner. Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the maintenance, inspection and testing of all elevators and conveying systems and their components, including the frequency of inspections and testing, shall conform to:

3009.5.1 Elevators, escalators and other conveyances listed in ASME A17.1, Appendix N. Inspection and tests shall be performed at not less than the periodic intervals listed in ASME A17.1, Appendix N, except where otherwise specified by the code official.

**Exception:** Units in residential use serving one family dwelling units.

3009.5.2 Platform lifts and stairway chair lifts. Inspections and testing of platform lifts and stairway chair lifts shall be performed for all units as stated in ASME A18.1, Section 10.

**Exception:** Units in residential use serving one family dwelling units.

3009.5.3 Manlifts. Inspections and testing of manlifts shall be performed for all units as stated in ASME A90.1, Safety Standard for Manlifts.

3009.5.4 Conveyors and related equipment. Inspections and testing of conveyors and related equipment shall be performed as stated in ASME B20.1, Safety Standard for Conveyors and Related Equipment.

3009.5.4.1 Cartveyors. Cartveyors shall be maintained in accordance with original equipment manufacturer’s recommendations. Inspection and testing shall be at the same frequency as escalators in ASME A17.1, Appendix N.

3009.6 Reports and certificates. Where inspections and tests are not made by the code official, the approved agency shall submit a report of the inspections and tests to the code official on approved forms not more than 30 days after completion of the inspection and tests. Upon receipt of satisfactory inspection and test reports, the code official shall authorize the issuance of a certificate of inspection, or a renewal certificate as provided in Section 3009.9, for each unit of equipment.

**Exception:** The submission of test reports to the code official and the issuance of certificates and display of certificates is not required:

1. In Groups R-2 and R-3 occupancies where the equipment is serving one dwelling unit.
2. In buildings under the jurisdiction of the Residential Code where the equipment is serving one dwelling unit.

3009.7 Out of service; temporarily dormant. A permit from the Department shall be required: to take an elevator or conveying system out of service pursuant to ASME A17.1, Section 8.11.1.4; or to place an elevator or conveying system in temporarily dormant status as set forth in Section 3009.7.1.

3009.7.1 Temporarily dormant. An elevator or conveying system shall be temporarily dormant where removed from its normal class of service for an extended period of time (not to exceed 5 years) by an owner’s decision and not due to maintenance or repair. During this period of time, the equipment shall be secured for the benefit of public safety in accordance with the following requirements:

1. The power supply shall be disconnected by removing fuses and placing a padlock on the mainline disconnect switch in the “OFF” position. The padlock shall not be removed without permission from the code official.
2. The unit shall be parked and the hoistway/runway doors securely bolted from opening in any plane. The means of securing the doors shall be exclusive of the interlocks. A wire seal shall be installed on the mainline disconnect switch by an elevator inspector accredited by a national certifying agency and approved by the code official. The wire seal shall not be removed without permission from the code official.
3. The equipment shall not be used again until it has been put in safe running order and passed an acceptance test, congruent with the installation date or the Code Data Tag posted on the equipment, as provided in ASME A17.1, Section 8.10 and the owner has obtained a valid certificate of inspection from the code official.
4. Annual inspections shall continue for the duration of the period that the elevator is temporarily dormant, and the inspector shall file an annual report with the code official, to confirm that the requirements set forth in this section are met.

3009.8 Equipment in operation. In buildings equipped with passenger elevators, at least one elevator shall be maintained in operation at all times when the building is occupied.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped with only one elevator or conveying system shall be permitted to have the elevator or conveying system temporarily out of service for testing, maintenance and/or repair.

3009.9 Renewal of certificates. The certificate of inspection, for each elevator and conveying system, must be renewed every 24 months, or at an alternate interval specified by the code official, as long as the unit is in service. Renewal of the certificate of inspection will be granted upon satisfactory demonstration to the code official that the unit of equipment has met all of the inspections and testing required by the Construction Codes and referenced standards.

3009.10 Unsafe equipment. When, in the opinion of the code official, an elevator or conveying system or its components are unsafe or unlawful, the code official is authorized and empowered to place the unit out of service, and to prohibit the operation of the equipment until the unsafe or unlawful condition is corrected. The code official shall post on the unsafe equipment a placard or notice bearing the...
words “Unsafe to Use” and may also attach a lead seal to prevent the equipment from being operated.

**3009.10.1 Notification of unsafe or unlawful condition.** When an approved Third-Party Inspection Agency inspector observes or identifies unsafe or unlawful condition(s) causing an elevator to be removed from service, the inspector shall immediately notify the code official. The inspector is authorized to place on the unit adjudged to be unsafe or unlawful an “Unsafe to Use” placard. The code official must be notified immediately of the Third-Party Inspector’s action, pursuant to the notification procedures established by the code official.

**3009.10.2. Placard removal.** The code official shall remove the “Unsafe to Use” notice whenever the defect or defects upon which the closure action was based have been eliminated. Any person who defaces or removes an “Unsafe to Use” notice or lead seal without the approval of the code official, or operates the placarded equipment, shall be subject to the penalties provided by this code.

An approved Third-Party Inspector is permitted to remove an “Unsafe to Use Notice” issued by that inspector, after abatement of the unsafe or unlawful condition and appropriate reinspection of the conveyance.

**Exception:** Placarded equipment may be operated solely as necessary to effectuate repairs.

**3009.10.3 Abatement methods.** The owner of the equipment deemed unsafe by the code official shall abate or cause to be abated or corrected such unsafe conditions either by repair, rehabilitation, replacement or other approved corrective action.

**SECTION 3010**

**REQUIRED ELEVATOR SIGNAGE**

**3010.1 Required elevator signage.** A permanent sign of durable material, with lettering no smaller than 1/4 inch (6 mm) high shall be placed in all elevator cars, with the following wording:

ALL ACCIDENTS ON OR DAMAGE TO ELEVATORS ARE TO BE REPORTED TO THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS 202 442-4400; OR AFTER WORKING HOURS BY CALLING 311.

**SECTION 3011**

**AMENDMENTS TO STANDARD ASME A17.1**

**3011.1 ASME A17.1, Section 1.2.1.**

**1.2.1 Purpose.** The purpose of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, is to provide for the safety of life and limb, and to promote the public welfare. Compliance with this Safety Code shall be achieved by either of the following:

1. Conformance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44,

2. Using alternative materials, equipment, or methods of construction and design approved in conformance with the requirements of Section 104.11, 12-A DCMR for systems, subsystems, components, or functions that do not conform with requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

**3011.2 ASME A17.1, Section 2.2.**

**2.2.2.7 The sump pump located in the elevator pit shall be connected to a non GFCI dedicated single receptacle or outlet compliant with NEMA 4 “Wet Duty.”**

**2.2.4.2.2 The ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be a minimum of 400 mm (16 in.) wide.** When obstructions are encountered, the width shall be permitted to be decreased to less than 400 mm (16 in.). The reduced width shall be as wide as the available space permits, but not less than 304.8 mm (12 in.).

**3011.3 ASME A17.1, Section 2.27.**

**2.27.1.1. A two-way communications means between the car and a location staffed by authorized personnel shall be provided and an audible signaling device shall be provided.** It shall be operable from the emergency stop switch, where required by Section 2.26.2.5, and from a switch identified as “ALARM,” which shall be provided in or adjacent to each car operating panel. The “ALARM” switch or visual identification shall illuminate when the “ALARM” switch is actuated. One audible signaling device shall be permitted to be used for a group of elevators. The audible signaling device shall:

(a) Have a rated sound pressure rating of not less than 80 dBA and no more than 90 dBA at 3 m (10 ft);

(b) Respond without delay after the switch has been activated;

(c) Be located inside the building and audible inside the car and outside the hoistway; and

(d) For elevators with a travel greater than 30 m (100 ft), be duplicated as follows:

(1) One device shall be mounted on the car; and

(2) A second device shall be placed at the designated level.

**2.27.1.1.5 If the two-way emergency communications or if the audible signaling device means are normally connected to the building power supply, they shall automatically transfer to a source of standby or emergency power as required by applicable building code, or where applicable, Standard for Health Care Facilities (ANSI/NFPA-99) after the normal power supply fails.** The power source shall be capable of providing power for illumination of the visual indication [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] within the car, and the means of emergency communications for at least 4 hours; and the audible signaling device (see 2.27.1.1.1 and 2.27.1.2) for at least 1 hour.

**3011.4 ASME A17.1, Section 3.26.**

**3.26.10 Auxiliary Power Lowering Operation.** In the absence of an emergency power supply, an auxiliary power supply shall be provided solely for the purpose of lowering the car in the case of main power failure. The
auxiliary lowering operation shall conform to 3.26.10.1 through 3.26.10.3.

3.26.10.1 Auxiliary lowering shall be permitted to be initiated, provided that all operating and control devices, including door open and close buttons function as with normal power supply, except that the following devices shall be permitted to be bypassed or made inoperative:

(a) Landing and car floor registration devices (or call buttons);
(b) Devices enabling operation by designated attendant (hospital service, attendant operation);
(c) Devices initiating emergency recall operation to the recall level, unless otherwise specified in Section 3.27; and
(d) “FIRE OPERATION” switch, unless otherwise specified in Section 3.27.

3.26.10.2 When the auxiliary lowering operation has been initiated, the car shall descend directly to the lowest landing, except that the operating system shall be permitted to allow one or more intermediate stops, and then, after a predetermined interval, the car shall proceed to the lowest landing, provided that the auxiliary power supply is of sufficient capacity to open and close doors at each intermediate stop.

3.26.10.3 If the car and landing doors are power operated, and if the auxiliary power supply is of adequate capacity, the doors shall open when the car stops at the lowest landing and shall close after a predetermined interval.

NOTE (3.26.10): For the main disconnect switch auxiliary contact, see ANSI/NFPA 70 and CSA-C22.1 requirements, where applicable (see Part 9).

3011.5 ASME A17.1, Section 8.6.

8.6.4.19.7 Standby or Emergency Power Operation. Operation of elevators equipped with standby or emergency power shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements. Automatic sequence of operation, if provided, shall be tested. Tests shall be performed with no load in the car.

8.6.5.14.3(f) Additional Tests. The following tests shall also be performed:

(f) Standby or Power Operation (8.6.4.19.7). Automatic sequence of operation, if provided, shall be tested.
CHAPTER 31
SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 3101
GENERAL

3101.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern special building construction including membrane structures, temporary structures, pedestrian walkways and tunnels, automatic vehicular gates, awnings and canopies, marquees, signs, and towers and antennas.

3101.2 Other requirements. Special construction encroaching into the public right-of-way or public space shall conform to the pertinent standards set forth in Chapter 32, and other applicable requirements, including the DC Department of Transportation (DDOT) regulations set forth in 24 DCMR, and DC Official Code, Title 10, Subtitle III.

SECTION 3102
MEMBRANE STRUCTURES

3102.1 General. The provisions of Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8 shall apply to air-supported, air-inflated, membrane-covered cable, membrane-covered frame and tensile membrane structures, collectively known as membrane structures, erected for a period of 180 days or longer. Those erected for a shorter period of time shall comply with Section 3103 as applicable, except that membrane structures erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8. Membrane structures covering water storage facilities, water clarifiers, water treatment plants, sewage treatment plants, greenhouses and similar facilities not used for human occupancy are required to meet only the requirements of Sections 3102.3.1 and 3102.7.

3102.1.1 Tensile membrane structures. Tensile membrane structures, including permanent and temporary structures, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 55. The provisions in Sections 3102.3 through 3102.6 shall apply.

3102.2 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE.

AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE.

Double skin.

Single skin.

CABLE-RESTRAINED, AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE.

MEMBRANE-COVERED CABLE STRUCTURE.

MEMBRANE-COVERED FRAME STRUCTURE.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.

TENSILE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.

3102.3 Type of construction. Noncombustible membrane structures shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Noncombustible frame or cable-supported structures covered by an approved membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Heavy timber frame-supported structures covered by an approved membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be classified as Type IV construction. Other membrane structures shall be classified as Type V construction.

Exception: Plastic less than 30 feet (9144 mm) above any floor used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

3102.3.1 Membrane and interior liner material. Membranes and interior liners shall be either noncombustible as set forth in Section 703.5 or meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 and the manufacturer’s test protocol.

Exception: Plastic less than 20 mil (0.5 mm) in thickness used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

3102.4 Allowable floor areas. The area of a membrane structure shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 506.

3102.5 Maximum height. Membrane structures shall not exceed one story nor shall such structures exceed the height limitations in feet specified in Section 504.3.

Exception: Noncombustible membrane structures serving as roofs only.

3102.6 Mixed construction. Membrane structures shall be permitted to be utilized as specified in this section as a portion of buildings of other types of construction. Height and area limits shall be as specified for the type of construction and occupancy of the building.

3102.6.1 Noncombustible membrane. A noncombustible membrane shall be permitted for use as the roof or as a skylight of any building or atrium of a building of any type of construction provided the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

3102.6.1.1 Membrane. A membrane meeting the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 shall be permitted to be used as the roof or as a skylight on buildings of Type IIB, III, IV and V construction, pro-
provided the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

3102.7 Engineering design. The structure shall be designed and constructed to sustain dead loads; loads due to tension or inflation; live loads including wind, snow or flood and seismic loads and in accordance with Chapter 16.

3102.7.1 Lateral restraint. For membrane-covered frame structures, the membrane shall not be considered to provide lateral restraint in the calculation of the capacities of the frame members.

3102.8 Inflation systems. Air-supported and air-inflated structures shall be provided with primary and auxiliary inflation systems to meet the minimum requirements of Sections 3102.8.1 through 3102.8.3.

3102.8.1 Equipment requirements. This inflation system shall consist of one or more blowers and shall include provisions for automatic control to maintain the required inflation pressures. The system shall be so designed as to prevent overpressurization of the system.

3102.8.1.1 Auxiliary inflation system. In addition to the primary inflation system, in buildings larger than 1,500 square feet (140 m²) in area, an auxiliary inflation system shall be provided with sufficient capacity to maintain the inflation of the structure in case of primary system failure. The auxiliary inflation system shall operate automatically when there is a loss of internal pressure and when the primary blower system becomes inoperative.

3102.8.1.2 Blower equipment. Blower equipment shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. Blowers shall be powered by continuous-rated motors at the maximum power required for any flow condition as required by the structural design.
2. Blowers shall be provided with inlet screens, belt guards and other protective devices as required by the building official to provide protection from injury.
3. Blowers shall be housed within a weather-protecting structure.
4. Blowers shall be equipped with backdraft check dampers to minimize air loss when inoperative.
5. Blower inlets shall be located to provide protection from air contamination. The location of inlets shall be approved.

3102.8.2 Standby power. Wherever an auxiliary inflation system is required, an approved standby power-generating system shall be provided. The system shall be equipped with a suitable means for automatically starting the generator set upon failure of the normal electrical service and for automatic transfer and operation of all of the required electrical functions at full power within 60 seconds of such service failure. Standby power shall be capable of operating independently for not less than 4 hours.

3102.8.3 Support provisions. A system capable of supporting the membrane in the event of deflation shall be provided for in air-supported and air-inflated structures having an occupant load of 50 or more or where covering a swimming pool regardless of occupant load. The support system shall be capable of maintaining membrane structures used as a roof for Type I construction not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above floor or seating areas. The support system shall be capable of maintaining other membranes not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the floor, seating area or surface of the water.

SECTION 3103
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

3103.1 General. The provisions of Sections 3103.1 through 3103.4 shall apply to structures erected for a period of less than 180 days.

Exception: Tents and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 180 days shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3103 and 3104 of the Fire Code. Those erected for a longer period of time shall comply with applicable sections of this code. Membrane structures erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8.

3103.1.1 Conformance. Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure public health, safety and general welfare.

3103.1.2 Permit required. Temporary structures that cover an area greater than 150 square feet (13.9 m²), including connecting areas or spaces with a common means of egress or entrance shall not be erected, operated or maintained for any purpose without obtaining a permit from the code official. Activities or uses regulated by Chapter 3 of the Fire Code require a separate permit issued by the fire code official.

3103.2 Construction documents. A permit application and construction documents shall be submitted for each installation of a temporary structure. The construction documents shall include a site plan indicating the location of the temporary structure and information delineating the means of egress and the occupant load.

3103.3 Location. Temporary structures shall be located in accordance with the requirements of Table 602 based on the fire-resistance rating of the exterior walls for the proposed type of construction.

3103.4 Means of egress. Temporary structures shall conform to the means of egress requirements of Chapter 10 and shall have an exit access travel distance of 100 feet (30 480 mm) or less.

SECTION 3104
PEDESTRIAN WALKWAYS AND TUNNELS

3104.1 General. This section shall apply to connections between buildings such as pedestrian walkways or tunnels, located at, above or below grade level, that are used as a
means of travel by persons. The pedestrian walkway shall not contribute to the building area or the number of stories or height of connected buildings.

3104.1.1 Application. Pedestrian walkways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 through 3104.9. Tunnels shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 and 3104.10.

3104.2 Separate structures. Buildings connected by pedestrian walkways or tunnels shall be considered to be separate structures.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.

2. For purposes of calculating the number of Type B units required by Chapter 11, structurally connected buildings and buildings with multiple wings shall be considered one structure.

3104.3 Construction. The pedestrian walkway shall be of noncombustible construction.

Exceptions:

1. Combustible construction shall be permitted where connected buildings are of combustible construction.

2. Fire-retardant-treated wood, in accordance with Section 603.1, Item 1.3, shall be permitted for the roof construction of the pedestrian walkway where connected buildings are a minimum of Type I or II construction.

3104.4 Contents. Only materials and decorations approved by the building official shall be located in the pedestrian walkway.

3104.5 Connections of pedestrian walkways to buildings. The connection of a pedestrian walkway to a building shall comply with Section 3104.5.1, 3104.5.2, 3104.5.3 or 3104.5.4.

Exception: Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.

3104.5.1 Fire barriers. Pedestrian walkways shall be separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 and Sections 3104.5.1.1 through 3104.5.1.3.

3104.5.1.1 Exterior walls. Exterior walls of buildings connected to pedestrian walkways shall be 2-hour fire-resistance rated. This protection shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in every direction surrounding the perimeter of the pedestrian walkway.

3104.5.1.2 Openings in exterior walls of connected buildings. Openings in exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 3104.5.1.1 shall be equipped with opening protectives providing a not less than 1/4-hour fire protection rating in accordance with Section 716.

3104.5.2 Alternative separation. The wall separating the pedestrian walkway and the building shall comply with Section 3104.5.2.1 or 3104.5.2.2 where:

1. The distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm).

2. The pedestrian walkway and connected buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and the roof of the walkway is not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade connecting to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane, of each building.

Exception: Open parking garages need not be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system.

3104.5.2.1 Passage of smoke. The wall shall be capable of resisting the passage of smoke.

3104.5.2.2 Glass. The wall shall be constructed of a tempered, wired or laminated glass wall and doors or glass separating the interior of the building from the pedestrian walkway. The glass shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 that, when actuated, shall completely wet the entire surface of interior sides of the wall or glass. Obstructions shall not be installed between the sprinkler heads and the wall or glass. The glass shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler operates.

3104.5.3 Open sides on walkway. Where the distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm), the walls at the intersection of the pedestrian walkway and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided both sidewalls of the pedestrian walkway are not less than 50 percent open with the open area uniformly distributed to prevent the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases. The roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 40 feet (12 160 mm) above grade plane, and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the third or lower story of each building.

Exception: Where the pedestrian walkway is protected with a sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the fifth or lower story of each building.

3104.5.4 Exterior walls greater than 2 hours. Where exterior walls of connected buildings are required by Section 705 to have a fire-resistance rating greater than 2 hours, the walls at the intersection of the pedestrian walkway and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided:

1. The pedestrian walkway is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The roof of the walkway is not located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway connects to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane of each building.

3104.6 Public way. Pedestrian walkways over a public way shall comply with Chapter 32.

3104.7 Egress. Access shall be provided at all times to a pedestrian walkway that serves as a required exit.

3104.8 Width. The unobstructed width of pedestrian walkways shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The total width shall be not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).

3104.9 Exit access travel. The length of exit access travel shall be 200 feet (60 960 mm) or less.

Exceptions:

1. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less.

2. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open shall be 300 feet (91 440 mm) or less.

3. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open, and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, shall be 400 feet (122 m) or less.

3104.10 Tunneled walkway. Separation between the tunneled walkway and the building to which it is connected shall be not less than 2-hour fire-resistant construction and openings therein shall be protected in accordance with Table 716.5.

SECTION 3105
awnings and canopies

3105.1 General. Awnings and canopies shall comply with the requirements of this section, other applicable sections of the Construction Codes, the Zoning Regulations and other applicable requirements. Awnings or canopies projecting over or into public space shall also comply with Section 3202.12.

3105.2 Definition. The following term is defined in Chapter 2:

Retractable Awning.

3105.3 Design and construction. Awnings and canopies shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind or other lateral loads and live loads as required by Chapter 16 with due allowance for shape, open construction and similar features that relieve the pressures or loads. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration. Awnings shall have frames of noncombustible material, fire-retardant-treated wood, wood of Type IV size, or 1-hour construction with combustible or noncombustible covers and shall be either fixed, retractable, folding or collapsible.

3105.4 Awnings and canopy materials. Awnings and canopies shall be provided with an approved covering that meets the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 or has a flame spread index not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exception: The fire propagation performance and flame spread index requirements shall not apply to awnings installed on detached one- and two-family dwellings.

3105.5 Fixed or permanent awnings. The clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any fixed or permanent awning shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm). Fixed or permanent awnings installed above the first story shall not project more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the face of the building.

Exception: Above doors on detached one- and two-family dwellings, and townhouses not more than three stories above grade in height with a separate means of egress, the clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of the awning shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

3105.6 Retractable awnings. The clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any retractable awning shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm). Retractable awnings shall be securely fastened to the building and, in the fully extended position, no part of the awning shall be closer than 12 inches (305 mm) to the vertical plane of the lot line. Retractable awnings shall be equipped with a mechanism or device for raising and holding the awning in a retracted or closed position against the face of the building.

Exception: Above doors on detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade in height with a separate means of egress, the clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of the awning shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

3105.7 Canopies. Canopies shall not extend closer than 2 feet (610 mm) from the lot line. The clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any canopy shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm).

3105.8 Lettering on awnings or canopies. Lettering on awnings or canopies shall comply with Appendix N or any superseding regulations adopted pursuant to the Sign Legislation.

SECTION 3106
Marquees

3106.1 General. Marquees shall comply with Sections 3106.3 through 3106.5 and other applicable sections of this code. Marquees projecting over or into public space shall also comply with Section 3202.12.3.

3106.2 [Reserved]

3106.3 Roof construction. Where the roof or any part thereof is a skylight, the skylight shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24. Every roof and skylight of a marquee shall be sloped to downspouts that shall conduct any drainage from the marquee in such a manner so as not to spill over the sidewalk.
3106.4 Location prohibited. Every marquee shall be so located as not to interfere with the operation of any exterior standpipe, and such that the marquee does not obstruct the clear passage of stairways or exit discharge from the building or the installation or maintenance of street lighting.

3106.5 Construction. A marquee shall be supported entirely from the building and constructed of noncombustible materials. Marquees shall be designed as required in Chapter 16. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration.

SECTION 3107 SIGNS

3107.1 General. Signs shall be designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with the applicable requirements of the Construction Codes, including, but not limited to, the Property Maintenance Code, and Chapters 1, 16, 24 and 26 and Appendix N of this code, except to the extent that any of the provisions of the Construction Codes are superseded by regulations adopted in the District of Columbia pursuant to the Sign Legislation.

SECTION 3108 TELECOMMUNICATION AND BROADCAST TOWERS

3108.1 General. Towers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of TIA-222. Towers shall be designed for seismic loads; exceptions related to seismic design listed in Section 2.7.3 of TIA-222 shall not apply. In Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA 222, the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2, escarpments, shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.

Exception: Single free-standing poles used to support antennas not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm), measured from the top of the pole to grade, shall not be required to be noncombustible.

3108.2 Location and access. Towers shall be located such that guy wires and other accessories shall not cross or encroach upon any street or other public space, or over above-ground electric utility lines, or encroach upon any privately owned property without the written consent of the owner of the encroached-upon property, space or above-ground electric utility lines. Towers shall be equipped with climbing and working facilities in compliance with TIA-222. Access to the tower sites shall be limited as required by applicable OSHA, FCC and EPA regulations.

SECTION 3109 SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

3109.1 General. The design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs shall comply with the Swimming Pool and Spa Code.

SECTION 3110 AUTOMATIC VEHICULAR GATES

3110.1 General. Automatic vehicular gates shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3110.2 through 3110.4 and other applicable sections of this code.

3110.2 Definition. The following term is defined in Chapter 2: VEHICULAR GATE.

3110.3 Vehicular gates intended for automation. Vehicular gates intended for automation shall be designed, constructed and installed to comply with the requirements of ASTM F2200.

3110.4 Vehicular gate openers. Vehicular gate openers, where provided, shall be listed in accordance with UL 325.

SECTION 3111 PHOTOVOLTAIC PANELS AND MODULES

3111.1 General. Photovoltaic panels and modules shall comply with the requirements of this code and the Fire Code.

3111.1.1 Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules. Photovoltaic panels and modules installed on a roof or as an integral part of a roof assembly shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15 and the Fire Code.

SECTION 3112 FENCES

3112.1 General. Fences shall comply with the requirements of this section, other applicable sections of the Construction Codes and other municipal regulations. All barbed wire and similar fences shall comply with the requirements of Section 3112.4.

Exception: Fences or portions of fences located on privately-owned land beyond a building restriction line shall comply with the requirements for fences in public space set forth in 24 DCMR § 103.

3112.1.1 Fence walls. Fence walls shall conform to the requirements for fences.

3112.1.2 Screens or trellises. Screens or trellises shall conform to the requirements for fences.

3112.1.3 Height measurement. The measurement of the height of a fence shall be made from the top of the fence to grade, on the side of the fence where grade level is higher.

3112.1.4 Permit applications. Application for permits to erect or increase the height of a fence, or change the grade adjacent to a fence, shall be accompanied by an official building plat upon which the proposed fence location is indicated. Review and approval by the Zoning Administrator shall be required before a permit shall be issued.

Exception: Review or approval by the Zoning Administrator shall not be required where: (a) an existing lawful fence is replaced; (b) the extent, location, and the height of the fence is unchanged; and (c) the adjacent grade is unchanged.
3112.2 Party line fences. Only those portions of the length of a fence, including footings, which are partly on each side of a party line shall be considered as party line fences. Permit applications for party line fences shall be signed by the owners of the adjoining properties on which the fence is to be located.

3112.2.1 Fence materials. A party line fence shall be a wood, woven wire, or iron fence of open pattern, unless otherwise agreed upon by the adjoining owners.

3112.2.2 Height agreements. Where owners propose to erect a party line fence over 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Zones or on properties with frontage on the Anacostia or Potomac Rivers, or over 10 feet (3048 mm) in Mixed Use, Special Purpose, Commercial, or PDR Zones, a written agreement as to the height of the party line fence shall be executed by the owners of the properties on which the fence is to be located and such agreement shall be filed with the code official before issuance of a permit.

3112.3 Other fences. Fences other than party line fences shall comply with Sections 3112.3.1 through 3112.3.5.

3112.3.1 Fences abutting streets. Fences abutting a street shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Zones or on properties with frontage on the Anacostia or Potomac Rivers, or over 10 feet (3048 mm) in Mixed Use, Special Purpose, Commercial, or PDR Zones.

3112.3.1.1 Special provisions applicable to historic districts and landmarks. Within a historic district or at a designated historic landmark, fences or walls between the front façade of a structure and the front lot line shall not exceed 3 feet 6 inches (1067 mm) in height. Fences between the front façade of a structure and the front lot line shall be at least 50 percent open. (The ratio shall be computed in elevation by dividing the fence elements themselves by the open space between the fence elements.) The code official is authorized to allow fences or walls covered by this section to exceed 3 feet 6 inches (1067 mm) in height upon recommendation of the Historic Preservation Office.

3112.3.2 Fences abutting alleys. Fences abutting alleys shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Zones or on properties with frontage on the Anacostia or Potomac Rivers, or over 10 feet (3048 mm) in Mixed Use, Special Purpose, Commercial, or PDR Zones.

Exception: The code official is authorized to approve a greater height where the alley is 15 feet (4572 mm) wide or more.

3112.3.3 Fences near party lines. Fences located 10 feet (3048 mm) or less from a party line shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm) in height in Residential Zones or on properties with frontage on the Anacostia or Potomac Rivers, or over 10 feet (3048 mm) in Special Purpose, Mixed Use, Commercial, or PDR Zones. Fences shall not obstruct light or ventilation for any required window.

Exception: Where the written consent of the adjoining owners is filed with the code official, the code official is authorized to approve a greater height, not to exceed 10 feet (3048 mm).

3112.3.4 Fences located in lot interior. Fences more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a lot line, including a party line; an alley; or if applicable, a building restriction line, shall not be subject to height limitations except as necessary to avoid either of the following:

1. Encroachment on a required yard or court.
2. Obstruction of the light or ventilation for any required window.

3112.3.5 Gate height. Gates shall not exceed the height of the fence.

3112.4 Barbed wire fences. Fences, barriers or obstructions, composed in whole, or in any part, of barbed wire (collectively referred to as “barbed wire fences”) are prohibited in the District of Columbia, except as expressly permitted by this section. The term barbed wire shall include any of the following:

1. Barbed, razor or electrified wire.
2. Sharp or jagged glass.
3. Metal such as, but not limited to, razor-spikes.
4. Similar materials.

3112.4.1 Barbed wire fences on private property. Barbed wire fences on private property that meet all of the following conditions are permitted:

1. The barbed wire fence is not located in a Residential Zone or along the zoning boundary lines of any Residential Zone, except where the code official determines that the condition or the nature of the improvements located upon the premises pose a significant, demonstrable hazard to members of the public.
2. The barbed wire fence is not located on the lot line, or building restriction line if one exists, and does not project beyond the lot line or building restriction line.
3. The minimum height of the lowest strand of barbed wire is 6 feet (1829 mm) above adjacent ground.
4. The barbed wire fence complies with any other applicable requirements, including, but not limited to, Sections 802.17, 804.14 and 825.13 of the Zoning Regulations.

3112.4.2 Barbed wire fences in public space. No barbed wire fence shall be erected, constructed, or maintained, along the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, or in or upon any street, or other public space, including but not limited to any sidewalk, public parking or building restriction area, in the District of Columbia.
CHAPTER 32
ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

SECTION 3201
GENERAL

3201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the encroachment of structures or any portion thereof into the public right-of-way, public space or building restriction area. Such encroachments are referred to as projections in this chapter.

3201.1.1 Other requirements. All projections shall also comply with other applicable requirements, including DC Department of Transportation (DDOT) regulations set forth in 24 DCMR, and DC Official Code, Title 10, Subtitle III, Chapter 11.

3201.2 Measurement. The projection of any structure or portion thereof shall be the distance measured horizontally from the lot line to the outermost point of the projection.

3201.3 Other laws. The provisions of this chapter shall not be construed to permit the violation of other laws or ordinances regulating the use and occupancy of public property.

3201.4 Drainage. Drainage water collected from a roof, awning, canopy or marquee, and condensate from mechanical equipment shall not flow over a public walking surface.

3201.5 Code official authority. The code official is authorized to approve the projections expressly which meet the parameters set forth in Section 3202, in acting upon permit applications required by Section 105 of this code, unless approval of the Public Space Committee and/or DDOT is expressly required. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a separate public space permit issued by DDOT shall be obtained for any excavation in public space or changes to grade of public space.

3201.6 Vaults. Construction or alteration of vaults shall also require a public space permit.

3201.7 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

- AREAWAY.
- AWNING.
- BAY WINDOW (for Chapter 32).
- BUILDING RESTRICTION LINE.
- BUILDING RESTRICTION AREA.
- CANOPY.
- COLONNADE.
- EMBELLISHMENT.
- MARQUEE.
- ORIEL WINDOW.
- PORCH (for Chapter 32).
- PORTE-COCHERE.
- PROJECTIONS (for Chapter 32).
- PUBLIC PARKING.
- PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY.
- PUBLIC SPACE.
- SHOW WINDOW (for Chapter 32).
- STORY ABOVE GRADE PLAN.
- STREET (for Chapter 32).
- TERRACE (for Chapter 32).
- TOWER (for Chapter 32).
- VAULT (for Chapter 32).
- ZONE, COMMERCIAL.
- ZONE, MIXED-USE.
- ZONE, PRODUCTION, DISTRIBUTION AND REPAIR (PDR).
- ZONE, RESIDENTIAL.
- ZONE, SPECIAL PURPOSE.

SECTION 3202
PROJECTIONS

3202.1 Character of projections. Projections are a privilege, and cannot be claimed as a right. The provisions of Chapter 32 establish limitations on the projections that the code official is authorized to approve. The code official is authorized to further restrict or refuse proposed projections if the code official considers such action best for the public interest.

3202.2 Removal of projections. Approval of projections shall be issued with the understanding and agreement by the applicant that any and all such projections shall be promptly removed upon notice from the code official.

3202.3 [Reserved]

3202.4 Modification of projection requirements. Where an owner proposes a projection, associated with a project requiring a permit pursuant to Section 105, and the projection is not authorized by the provisions of Chapter 32, the owner shall obtain a modification from the code official as authorized by Section 3202.4.1 where the modification is deemed in the general public interest; or, in the case of foregone construction, as set forth in Section 3202.4.2 obtain approval from the Public Space Committee.

3202.4.1 Modifications in the general public interest. The code official is authorized to grant modifications in
ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

the general public interest for *embellishments* or to enhance views along a *street*, subject to all of the conditions set forth:

1. The applicant shall submit a written modification request to the *code official* on an *approved* form that complies with Section 104.10, as applicable.

2. The modification request shall be referred by the *code official* to the DDOT and the Office of Planning (OP) for their review and recommendation.

3. No modification request shall be approved without a written report from the Directors of DDOT and OP, or their designees, that covers the review criteria set forth in Section 3202.4.1.1, provided that the *code official* is authorized to proceed without such a report if DDOT or OP fail to comply with the time period for review provided in Section 3202.4.1.1.

4. The *code official* determines: the primary objective of the modification is not changing of interior arrangements; the modification will not interfere with adjacent buildings; and the modification will not create an unsafe condition for occupants of the premises or any portion thereof or for occupants of adjacent premises.

3202.4.1.1 DDOT and OP review and recommendation. DDOT and OP shall have 10 *business days* from the referral date to submit a written recommendation to the *code official*, provided that the *code official* may allow for an extension of this period for good cause when requested by DDOT or OP. If DDOT or OP fail to provide the written recommendation required by this section within the specified 10 *business day* period or any extension thereto, DDOT or OP, as applicable, shall be deemed to have no objection to the modification request.

3202.4.1.1.1 Relevant criteria. In reviewing the modification request, DDOT and OP shall consider the following criteria:

1. Whether the proposed modification is inconsistent with the District of Columbia’s policies for use of public space and will negatively impact current or future use of the transportation network and infrastructure systems.

2. Whether the proposed modification is not an *embellishment*.

3. Whether the proposed modification detracts from the public parking and experience of public space.

4. Whether the primary effect of the modification is the private occupation of public space.

3202.4.1.2 Action on modification request. The *code official* shall review and approve or deny a *projection* modification request after considering timely-submitted reports provided by the Department of Transpor-

3202.4.2 Foregone construction. Foregone construction is deemed to occur when, in conformity with a plan previously approved by the National Capital Planning Commission for improvement of any street or thoroughfare, the owner will permanently forego construction on, or the use of a portion of the owner’s lot. In such cases, the *code official* is authorized to grant a *projection* modification to authorize projections which shall equitably compensate such owner, if: the *code official* determines the public interest will thereby be better served; and the *projection* modification complies with the limitations and conditions set forth in Sections 3202.4.2.1 through 3202.4.2.5.

3202.4.2.1 Width. The width of projections allowed under Section 3202.4.2 shall be limited as follows:

1. The proposed *projection* shall be authorized to be constructed to the *lot line* extended, on the side of any adjoining structure that contains *projections*, facing the same *public right-of-way*, that project into *public space* at least as much as the proposed *projection*.

2. The proposed *projection* shall not extend to within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the *lot line* extended, on the side of any adjoining structure that does not project or that only contains *projections*, facing the same *public right-of-way*, that project into *public space* less than the proposed *projection*.

Exception: A portion of the proposed *projection* shall be allowed to encroach into this 10-foot (3048 mm) restriction zone if the angle formed by the *lot line* and the face of that portion of the projection does not exceed 45 degrees.

3. *Projections* at the corner of two *streets* shall be allowed to continue around the corner if similar *projections* are approved for both *streets*.

3202.4.2.2 Height. The height above grade of *projections* approved under Section 3202.4.2 shall be limited to the height of the building. A clearance of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above the sidewalk or parking grade shall be maintained under any portion of such *projections* or supports thereof. Balconies or other *projections* which in the judgment of the *code official* will embellish the area, when *approved*, shall be allowed to be constructed with lower clearances above grade; provided that such clearances shall be at least 8 feet (2438 mm) above walkways and at least 15 feet (4572 mm) above driveways.

3202.4.2.3 Projecting distance. The footprint of *projections* approved under Section 3202.4.2 shall be entirely located between the *lot line* and the outer edge of the curb, and the outer face of all projections shall be at least 4 feet (1219 mm) from the outer edge of the curb. In addition, the projecting distance of the *projection* shall be limited as specified in Table 3202.4.2.
3202.4.2.4 Covenant for modification of projection requirements for foregone construction. Prior to the issuance of a building permit, the owner who applies for a projection modification under Section 3202.4.2 shall submit a certified copy of a written covenant, complying with Section 120.2, that establishes such limitations and conditions as shall be imposed by the code official, which shall include, but not be limited to, an agreement to hold harmless the District of Columbia, its officers and agents, from liability by virtue of the grant of authority to construct said projection, and to landscape or otherwise treat, and thereafter maintain, to the satisfaction of the code official, the area upon which the covenantor has forborne to build.

3202.4.2.5 Referral to public space committee. The code official shall refer to the Public Space Committee, for consideration and recommendation, all applications for modification of projection requirements for foregone construction proposed under Section 3202.4.2.

3202.5 Projections on streets to be widened. Except as otherwise permitted by this chapter, no projections shall be allowed on the parts of streets to be widened in conformity with adopted and recorded highway extension plans, including a building restriction area where the same exists on a lot, until such parts of streets are so widened.

3202.5.1 Existing buildings. Where existing streets are widened, new streets are laid out and opened, in conformity with the adopted and recorded highway extension plans, in subdivisions existing at the time of record of such plans, and such widening or opening shall leave buildings or parts of buildings on such streets, such buildings or parts of buildings will be allowed to remain as projections beyond the new lot line or building restriction line if one exists. Such grandfathered projections of such existing buildings shall be limited in projection distance to that allowed for porches by Section 3202.11.2.3, but no limitations shall be placed upon the kind of projection unless the façade is structurally altered. Such buildings are permitted to be moved under permit to another location on the same lot, upon compliance with applicable regulations.

3202.5.1.1 Structurally altered façades of existing buildings. Where the façade of an existing building covered by Section 3202.5.1 is structurally altered, the projections resulting from such alterations shall conform in all respects to the requirements of Chapter 32 for new projections.

3202.6 Streets on which projections are prohibited. Projections shall not be permitted on the following street segments:

1. North side of Good Hope Road SE, between Martin Luther King, Jr. Avenue SE and 18th Street SE.
2. Florida Avenue NW, from 7th Street NW to 9th Street NW.
3. Maine Avenue SW, from 7th Street SW to 14th Street SW.
4. M Street NW, from 29th Street NW to 36th Street NW.
5. K Street NW, from Rock Creek westward to Wisconsin Avenue NW.
6. Water Street NW, from Wisconsin Avenue NW westward to the termination of said street.
7. Wisconsin Avenue NW, from the angle south of N Street NW to the north roadway of Q Street NW.
8. Twelfth Street NW, from Monroe Street NW to the angle north of Otis Street NW.
9. Martin Luther King, Jr. Avenue SE from Good Hope Road SE to the northern boundary of the grounds of St. Elizabeth’s Hospital.

Exception: Projecting cornices, bases, sills, belt courses, pilasters and water tables are not restricted by this section.

3202.7 General restrictions. All projections shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3202.7.1 through 3202.7.6.

3202.7.1 Limitations based on street width and zoning zone. Except as otherwise permitted by this chapter, projections shall not be allowed on any street less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width subject to specific requirements that may be applicable to buildings and structures located in certain zoning zones as identified in Section 3202.7.

Exception: Projecting cornices, bases, water tables, pilasters or uncovered steps.

3202.7.1.1 Minimum clearance to curb line. A minimum clear space from the outer edge of the curb to the outer face of all projections and steps shall be preserved, as follows:

1. Ten feet (3048 mm) on streets 40 feet (18288 mm) to and including 80 feet (24 384 mm) wide;
2. Twelve feet (3658 mm) on streets more than 80 feet (24384 mm) to and including 90 feet (27 432 mm) wide; and
3. Fifteen feet (4572 mm) on streets more than 90 feet (27 432 mm) wide.

TABLE 3202.4.2
MAXIMUM PROJECTIONS UNDER FOREGONE CONSTRUCTION MODIFICATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF STREET</th>
<th>WIDTH OF STREET (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM PROJECTING DISTANCE (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Streets without public parking</td>
<td>40 to 45 feet</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streets without public parking</td>
<td>More than 45 feet; up to, and including, 70 feet</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streets without public parking</td>
<td>More than 70 feet; up to, and including, 80 feet</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streets without public parking</td>
<td>40 to 45 feet</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streets with public parking</td>
<td>Any width</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: foot = 304.8 mm.
For purposes of Section 3202.7.1.1, the term “street” shall include the public thoroughfare and any adjoining building restriction areas.

3202.7.1.2 Minimum sidewalk clearance. No projection shall be approved where the projection limits or encroaches upon the sidewalk width or sidewalk clearance for the specific Zoning Zone or use as specified in Chapter 31 of the DDOT Design and Engineering Manual (June 2017).

3202.7.2 Projection clearances. Clearances adjacent to projections shall comply with the following distances:

1. A clear space of at least 8 inches (203 mm) shall be preserved between party lines extended or alley lines extended and the outer walls or sides of projections.

2. A clear space equal to or greater than the distance that a projection extends over the lot line or building restriction line shall be preserved between separate bay window, tower, oriel window, balcony, and porch projections.

3. A clear space of at least 42 inches (1067 mm) shall be preserved between show windows and a clear space of at least 48 inches (1219 mm) shall be preserved between show windows and bay windows or oriel windows.

Exception: Cornices, belt courses, pilasters, bases, water tables, and walls of areaways, are permitted to extend to, but not over, party lines extended or alley lines extended. Such projections shall be constructed so that the removal of one structure or its projections will not affect or damage the adjoining structure or projections and will not interfere with the construction or reconstruction of projections or buildings on the adjoining property.

3202.7.3 Chimneys. Chimneys shall not project beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

3202.7.4 Plumbing fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall not be located in projections.

Exception: Areaway drains and roof drains.

3202.7.5 Overhead projections. The footprint of any projecting sign, awning, canopy, marquee, or porte-cochere shall not extend over public space or into the public right of way beyond a line 18 inches (457 mm) behind the curb line.

Exception: Market sheds, as provided for in Sections 3202.12.4 through 3202.12.4.3.

3202.7.6 Construction of projections. Projections shall be constructed of any materials permitted by the Construction Codes for the type of construction of the building.

Exceptions:

1. Roofing, skylights and roof domes in projecting structures are permitted to be of the same materials allowed for similar nonprojecting structures.

2. Where noncombustible materials are specifically required elsewhere in this chapter for specific projections.

3. Where combustible materials are specifically allowed elsewhere in these regulations for specific projections.

3202.8 Projections requiring special approval. Projections regulated under Sections 3202.8.1 and 3202.8.2 shall require approval by the Public Space Committee.

3202.8.1 Pedestrian walkways and tunnels. Pedestrian walkways and tunnels shall meet the requirements of Section 3104. In addition, the vertical clearance above the public right-of-way or the surface of public space to the lowest part of an elevated pedestrian walkway shall be not less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

3202.8.2 Porte-cocheres. Porte-cocheres shall be permitted one story in height. All driveways and approaches that serve a porte-cochere and cross sidewalks or parking lots shall be paved and otherwise improved to the satisfaction of DDOT.

3202.9 Subsurface projections. Areaway and vault projections shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.9.1, 3202.9.2 and 3202.9.3, respectively.

3202.9.1 Areaways. Areaway projections shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.9.1.1 through 3202.9.1.5.

3202.9.1.1 Width. The width of an areaway, measured from outside to outside of the areaway’s enclosing walls, shall not be limited if located between party lines extended.

3202.9.1.2 Enclosure height. The height of areaway enclosures shall be limited to the highest point of the surface of the adjoining pavement or grade.

Exception: Copings not over 8 inches (203 mm) high, and railings or guardrails.

3202.9.1.3 Projection. The extent of areaway projection shall be measured from the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, to the inside face of the areaway wall. Projection beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, shall be limited as follows:

1. Four feet (1219 mm) on streets in Commercial and PDR Zones.

2. Four feet (1219 mm) on streets without public parking in Residential, Mixed Use and Special Purpose Zones, more than 60 feet (18288 mm) wide.

3. Six feet (1829 mm) on streets with public parking in Residential, Mixed Use and Special Purpose Zones, 60 to 70 feet (18 288 mm to 21336 mm) wide.

4. Six and a half feet (1981 mm) on streets with public parking in Residential, Mixed Use and Special Purpose Zones, more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
3202.9.1.4 Other requirements. Areaways shall be protected by substantial metal guardrails not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) nor more than 48 inches (1219 mm) high. Proper protection by metal railings that meet the guardrail requirements of Section 1013 of this code shall be provided where steps or platforms are built over areaways, subject to the requirements of 24 DCMR § 103. Basement or cellar steps in areaways shall be protected in the same way and shall have gates at top of the steps unless otherwise protected. Steps leading to an areaway are considered part of an areaway.

3202.9.1.5 Locations prohibited. Areaways shall not be located in an alley.

3202.9.2 Vaults. Vaults shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.9.2.1 through 3202.9.2.5.

3202.9.2.1 Public space permit required. In addition to a permit issued by DCRA, construction or alteration of a vault shall require a public space permit issued by DDOT, and the owner proposing to construct or alter a vault shall be responsible for obtaining the required public space permit prior to permit issuance by DCRA. The provisions of DC Official Code, Title 10, Chapter 11 also apply to construction, maintenance and use of vaults in public space.

3202.9.2.2 Size and openings. Vault design shall comply with the following:

1. Approval of the size and extent of vaults, and of the number and size of vault openings, shall be a matter of special determination in each case by the code official and the Public Space Committee.

2. Vaults extending under alleys shall have no openings in the alley pavement, and shall not extend within 2.5 feet (762 mm) of the center of the alley.

3202.9.2.3 Use of vault space. The use of the vault space shall be subject to the following conditions:

1. The code official is authorized to approve transformer vaults exclusively to house utility equipment. Storage in such vaults shall be prohibited.

2. Vaults in Commercial, Mixed Use, Special Purpose or PDR Zones shall not be used for the following purposes: public entrances to basements; means of egress corridors; housing of boilers; housing of plumbing fixtures; housing of storage tanks for propane or other flammable gas; or the housing of mechanical appliances or any equipment not removable within 24 hours.

3. Vaults shall be allowed to be used for the following purposes: access to open areaway stairs; storage of readily movable personal property and equipment; sales or office space; housing of fuel oil storage tanks; parking of motor vehicles; installation of ducts, pipes or wiring; location of ducted air shafts; housing of fans; and housing of similar items which can be removed or relocated if vault space is removed.

4. Fuel oil filling pipes, in vaults in Commercial, Mixed Use, Special Purpose or PDR Zones, shall be extended to within 18 inches (457 mm) of the curb line when physically possible. Such pipes shall terminate in filling boxes of approved design. A separate permit shall be required for such filling pipes and filling boxes.

5. If openings in the roofs of vaults are used for sidewalk elevators or for runways, they shall be located as near to the curb as possible and shall be equipped with heavy metal safety doors and frames.

6. The code official is authorized to approve other uses not forbidden by law, code, or regulation.

3202.9.2.4 Vault cover. Coverings over vaults shall comply with the following:

1. Vaults located in the sidewalk shall have a solid cover with paving that matches the adjacent sidewalk. The paving over vaults shall be laid according to specifications of DDOT, and shall conform to established grades. All such coverings shall be so constructed as to be flush with pavement, and have a roughened surface to provide security to persons passing over them.

2. When paving over vaults is installed pursuant to a public space permit or order issued by DDOT, the paving shall be laid at the expense and risk of the person doing the work.

3. The roof of a vault located between the curb and the lot line, or in a building restriction area, shall at no place be less than 4 inches (102 mm) below the approved sidewalk grade at that point.

4. Vaults shall be roofed over within a reasonable time or within the time fixed by the public space permit.

5. Whenever the grade over the vault is changed, the vault covering shall be changed and repaved at the expense of the person doing the work, except where the grade change impacts the curb line, in which case the owner of the abutting property shall pay for that portion of the work required to conform the vault to the new grade.

Exception. Transformer vaults shall be allowed to have grated openings at the level of the sidewalk in public space.

3202.9.2.5 Interference with utilities. Construction of vaults shall be subject to the following conditions:

1. Vaults shall be constructed so as not to interfere with sewers, water mains, gas mains, electric or telephone conduits, signal conduits, manholes,
lamp posts, trees, or any other public or public utility works or improvements.

2. If construction or alteration of a vault requires the removal or relocation of utilities, and if by agreement a public utility or District utility arranges to alter its facilities, the owner of the abutting lot shall notify the appropriate utility company or utility office concerned when a permit has been issued and construction or alteration work is ready to commence.

3202.10 Balconies, windows, towers and structural trim. Balconies, windows, towers and structural trim shall conform to the provisions of Sections 3202.10.1 through 3202.10.9.

3202.10.1 Prohibition on alley location. Balconies, bay windows, oriel windows or show windows, or towers shall not project into or over an alley.

3202.10.2 Balconies. Balconies shall comply with the width and projection requirements of Sections 3202.10.2.1 and 3202.10.2.2.

3202.10.2.1 Width. Balconies shall maintain an 8-inch (203 mm) separation from party lines extended. Aggregate balcony width is otherwise unlimited. Where balconies are connected to bay windows, the width of the balconies shall be included in the width of the bay windows and the combined width shall comply with the requirements for bay windows. A balcony at the corner of two streets is permitted to be continued around the corner. The portion of such a continued balcony that is located beyond party lines extended shall not be counted in the width of projections on either front.

3202.10.2.2 Projection. Balcony projections shall be limited as follows:

1. Three feet (914 mm) beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, on streets more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) and less than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
2. Four feet (1219 mm) beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, on streets 70 feet (21 336 mm) or more in width.

For purposes of Section 3202.10.2.2, the term “street” shall include the public thoroughfare and any adjoining building restriction areas.

3202.10.2.3. Other restrictions. Balconies with railings that are more than 50 percent solid or opaque shall comply with maximum width requirements for bay windows.

3202.10.3 Bay windows. Bay window projections shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.10.3.1 through 3202.10.3.4.

3202.10.3.1 Width. The width of bay windows at each lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, shall be limited as follows:

1. A bay window projection shall not be allowed on buildings less than 16 feet (4877 mm) wide at the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

2. A single projection of up to 9 feet (2743 mm) in width shall be allowed for all buildings having a width of 16 feet (4877 mm) or more at the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

3. The allowable width of a single projection shall increase 6 inches (152 mm) for every foot (305 mm) of increase in the width of the building between 16 feet (4877 mm) and 24 feet (7315 mm) wide at the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

4. For buildings over 24 feet (7315 mm) in width the allowable width of a single projection shall increase 2 inches (51 mm) for every foot (305 mm) of increase in width of the building over 24 feet (7315 mm).

5. Multiple projections (two or more separate projections) shall not be allowed on buildings less than 34 feet (10 363 mm) wide at the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

6. The allowable aggregate width of multiple projections on buildings exceeding 34 feet (10 363 mm) in width at the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists shall be increased 6 inches (152 mm) for each foot (305 mm) of increased building width over 34 feet (10 363 mm).

7. The width of bay window projections shall be measured at a distance of 1 foot (305 mm) from the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists.

8. Bay window projections of buildings on interior lots shall not extend beyond party lines extended.

9. A bay window at the corner of two streets is permitted to be continued around the corner. The portion of such a continued bay window that is located beyond party lines extended shall not be counted in the width of projections on either front.

3202.10.3.2 Height. The height of bay windows shall not be limited.

3202.10.3.3 Projection. The projection of bay windows shall be limited as follows:

1. Three feet (914 mm) on streets 60 feet (18 288 mm) to 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
2. Four feet (1219 mm) on streets more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.

For purposes of Section 3202.10.3.3, the term “street” shall include the public thoroughfare and any adjoining building restriction areas.

3202.10.3.4 Other restrictions. Stairways shall not be permitted in bay window projections. Doors in bay windows that do not swing beyond the projection shall be permitted.
3202.10.4 Oriel and show windows.

3202.10.4.1 Oriel windows. *Oriel window* projections shall conform to all the requirements governing bay window projection.

3202.10.4.2 Show windows. *Show window* projections shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3202.10.4.2.1 through 3202.10.4.2.4.

3202.10.4.2.1 Projection. The maximum amount that a *show window* can project into *public space* shall be 3 feet (305 mm).

3202.10.4.2.2 Width. The maximum width of an individual *show window* is limited to 20 feet (6096 mm) and the total width of multiple windows is unlimited except as to leaving 8 inches (203 mm) from the *party line* extended.

3202.10.4.2.3 Height. The height of *show window projections* shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) above the sidewalk.

3202.10.4.2.4 Other requirements. Design of *show window projections* shall use a base wall of opaque material up to a maximum height of 36 inches (914 mm) from the sidewalk level and the enclosing wall shall be of a transparent material.

3202.10.5 Towers. *Tower projections* shall conform with the width and height requirements of Sections 3202.10.5.1 and 3202.10.5.2.

3202.10.5.1 Width. *Tower projections* shall conform with all width requirements governing bay window projections.

3202.10.5.2 Height. *Tower projection* heights shall extend above the roof height of the part of the building to which it is attached.

3202.10.6 Colonnades. *Colonnade projections* shall comply with the width, height and projection requirements of Sections 3202.10.6.1 through 3202.10.6.3.

3202.10.6.1 Width. *Colonnade projections* are subject to the minimum clearance of 8 inches (203 mm) from *party lines* extended and *alley lines* extended, required under Section 3202.7.2.

3202.10.6.2 Height. The height of *colonnade projections* is limited to two stories above grade.

3202.10.6.3 Projection. *Colonnade projection* is limited to 6 feet (1829 mm) where *public parking* exists and the depth of public parking is 17 feet (5182 mm) or more wide. *Colonnade projections* shall not be permitted on streets where public parking exists and the depth of public parking is less than 17 feet (5182 mm) wide.

3202.10.7 Pilasters. Pilasters not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) wide are permitted to project up to 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the *lot line or building restriction line*, if one exists. Pilaster bases are permitted to project 8 inches (203 mm) beyond the *lot line or building restriction line*, if one exists.

3202.10.8 Bases, water tables and sills. Bases, *water tables*, window and other sills are permitted to project up to 8 inches (203 mm) beyond the *lot line* or a *building restriction line*, if one exists. Projecting bases and *water tables* shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) above grade at the building wall nor above window sill level of the main story. Their length is not limited.

3202.10.9 Belt courses, cornices and roof overhangs. Belt courses are permitted to project up to 8 inches (203 mm), and cornices and roof overhangs are permitted to project up to 60 inches (1524 mm), beyond the *lot line* or *building restriction line*, if one exists. The length and height of projecting belt courses, cornices, and roof overhangs are not limited.

3202.11 Porches, steps, ramps and doors. *Porches*, step, ramp and door projections shall conform to the provisions of Sections 3202.11.1 through 3202.11.4.

3202.11.1 Restrictions by zoning zone. *Porch* and step projections shall be allowed only in Residential, Mixed Use and Special Purpose Zones.

3202.11.2 Porches. *Porch projections* shall have open balustrades or guardrails and shall be open to the roof. The floor of the *porch* shall be not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the *terrace, public parking*, adjacent grade or pavement.

3202.11.2.1 Width. Where there are no *bay window, oriel window* or *tower projections*, one-story high porches shall not be limited in width. Where there are *bay window, oriel window* or *tower projections* in the same story, the aggregate width of porch, *bay window, oriel window*, or *tower projections* shall not exceed the limits specified for multiple *bay window projections* in Section 3202.10.3.1. The width of porches of more than one story in height shall conform to the provisions for *bay window projections* in Section 3202.10.3.1.

3202.11.2.2 Height. *Porch projections* of wood frame construction shall be limited to one story. *Porch projections* of more than one story in height shall be of noncombustible construction throughout.

3202.11.2.3 Projection. *Projection* of one-story high porches shall be limited as follows:

1. Three feet (914 mm) on streets without *public parking*, 60 feet (18 288 mm) to 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
2. Four feet (1219 mm) on *streets without public parking*, more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
3. Five feet (1524 mm) on *streets with public parking*. Porches more than one story in height shall conform to the provisions for bay windows in Section 3202.10.3.3 as to the extent of projection beyond the *building line*.

For purposes of Section 3202.11.2.3, the term "street" shall include the public thoroughfare and any adjoining *building restriction areas*.

3202.11.2.4 Rear porches. *Porches* on rear of dwellings shall not project over the *lot line* or a *building restriction line*, if one exists.
3202.11.3 Steps and ramps. Projecting steps and ramps are not limited in width but shall comply with the following height and projection requirements.

3202.11.3.1 Height. Step and ramp projections shall not extend above the finished floor of the story above grade plane.

3202.11.3.2 Projection. Step and ramp projections shall be limited as follows:

1. Three feet (914 mm) on streets without public parking, 40 feet (12 192 mm) or more in width, but less than 45 feet (13 716 mm) wide.
2. Four feet (12 192 mm) on streets without public parking, 45 feet (13 716 mm) or more in width, but less than 70 feet (21 336 mm) wide.
3. Five feet (1524 mm) on streets without public parking, 70 feet (21 336 mm) or more in width, but less than 80 feet (24 384 mm) wide.
4. Six feet (1829 mm) on streets without public parking, 80 feet (24 384 mm) or more in width.
5. Ten feet (3048 mm) on streets with public parking, 80 feet (24 384 mm) or more in width.

For purposes of Section 3202.11.3.2, the term “street” shall include the public thoroughfare and any adjoining building restriction areas.

3202.11.3.3 Steps and ramps below grade. Steps and ramp projections that are below grade shall conform with the requirements for areaways.

3202.11.4 Projecting doors and windows. Door and window projections shall conform to the provisions of Sections 3202.11.4.1 through 3202.11.4.2.

3202.11.4.1 Permanent doors or windows. Permanent doors or windows shall not open outward into public space where the base of the door or window opening is less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the sidewalk grade.

Exception: Where the line of travel is protected by an adjoining porch, terrace, bay window, areaway, or similar construction, projecting not less than the outward swing of the door, permanent doors or windows are permitted to open outward.

3202.11.4.2 Restrictions by zoning zone. Permanent doors and windows in Residential, Mixed Use and Special Purpose Zones shall be allowed to open on public parking, provided they do not encroach on any sidewalk or driveway.

3202.12 Awnings, canopies, marquees, market sheds, platforms, and scales. Projecting awnings, canopies, marquees, market sheds, platforms, and scales shall conform to the applicable provisions of Section 3202.12, in addition to complying with any structural or design requirements set forth in Section 3105 or elsewhere in the Construction Codes.

3202.12.1 Projecting awnings. Folding, hinged or fixed type awnings attached only to the structure are permitted to be erected over windows, show windows and doors, and shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3202.12.1.1 through 3202.12.1.3.

Exception: The openings of projecting porches in Residential Zones are permitted to be covered with an awning.

3202.12.1.1 Clearance. Projecting awnings shall have a minimum clear height of 8 feet (2438 mm) above the sidewalk or the surface of any other adjacent public space.

3202.12.1.2 Width. The width of projecting awnings shall be limited to the width of the window, show window, door or opening and a reasonable distance each side thereof.

3202.12.1.3 Projection. Projecting awnings shall not extend over 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the vertical plane of the point of attachment into a public right-of-way.

3202.12.2 Projecting canopies. Canopies are permitted to be erected over doors, windows, show windows or other display openings and loading platforms, subject to the limitations of Sections 3202.12.2.1 through 3202.12.2.5.

3202.12.2.1 Restrictions based on zoning zone. Canopies projecting over or into a public space or public right-of-way are permitted to be erected in Commercial and PDR Zones. Canopies approved pursuant to Section 3202.12.2.5 shall not be restricted based on zoning zone.

3202.12.2.2 Width. Canopy projections are permitted to extend laterally on a building to cover the width of a show window or other display opening and a reasonable distance on each side thereof.

3202.12.2.3 Clearance. Projecting canopies shall have a minimum clear height of 8 feet (2438 mm) above the sidewalk or the surface of any other public space.

3202.12.2.4 Projection. Canopy projections shall not exceed 5 feet (1524 mm) into public space unless the plans are submitted to and approved by the code official.

3202.12.2.5 Canopies over public parking and sidewalks. The code official is authorized to approve permits for canopies with fixed iron posts and frames to be erected beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, to the inner line of the sidewalk where such canopies will be used in conjunction with any of the following:

1. A Group A occupancy having an occupant load greater than 100 persons.
2. A Group R occupancy having more than 50 dwelling units.
3. A Group M or B occupancy with a frontage of 100 feet (30 480 mm) or more on the street on which the canopy is proposed.
4. A Group M or B occupancy that contains more than 15,000 square feet (1395 m²) in area per floor.
3202.12.2.5.1 Special merit cases. In specific cases where the code official determines that such an installation would be of merit without being detrimental to the public, the code official is authorized to grant approval of canopies over sidewalks that extend as close as 18 inches (457 mm) from the curb, when the code official determines that: (a) pedestrian traffic flow will not be impeded; (b) the presence of such a canopy will not detract from the appearance of the neighborhood; and (c) such a canopy will be of convenience to the patrons of the establishment served by the awning, especially in the loading and unloading of vehicular traffic in inclement weather.

3202.12.2.5.2 Canopy design. The width of canopies over public parking or sidewalks shall be limited to the width of the door or opening and a reasonable distance each side thereof. Canopies shall be of approved fire-retardant material, preserving a minimum clearance of 8 inches (203 mm) from the party lines extended. Permit applications for these canopies shall be accompanied by drawings showing the spacing of all posts and method of anchoring. The frames shall be structurally stable and posts shall be so located as not to impede the principal flow of pedestrian traffic. Posts shall be rigidly secured at the base in sockets or by other approved means.

3202.12.2.5.3 Temporary canopies. Installation of sockets in the sidewalk for temporary covered ways across sidewalks or public parking, as provided in Section 105 of DCMR Title 24 (Public Space and Safety), Chapter 1 (Occupations and Use of Public Space) requires a public space permit issued by the Public Space Committee. Permits for sockets confer no authority to erect temporary covered ways across sidewalks or any other space used by the public. Where sockets have been regularly installed, the Metropolitan Police Department will thereafter issue temporary permits authorizing the use of the temporary covered way in inclement weather.

3202.12.3 Projecting marquees. Marquee projections shall conform to the provisions of this section, and shall also comply with the structural and design requirements set forth in Section 3106 and other applicable sections of the Construction Codes.

3202.12.3.1 Width. Projecting marquees supported directly from the building, shall not be permitted to extend laterally on a building more than a sufficient length to cover the entrance and a reasonable distance on each side thereof.

3202.12.3.2 Clearance. The clearance from the sidewalk or any other space used by the public to the lowest part of any marquee shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm).

3202.12.3.3 Projections. Marquee projections shall not exceed 5 feet (1524 mm) into public space.

3202.12.4 Market sheds. A market shed shall be permitted only on a site occupied by a market or building whose predominant purpose is to sell agricultural produce, when such site has been specifically designated as a market area.

3202.12.4.1 Design. The design of market sheds shall be approved by the code official, a permit shall be required, and all market sheds shall comply with the following provisions:

1. The shed roof is permitted over public parking and public sidewalk of a building or buildings used for market purposes, extending from the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, to the curb.

2. The line of supports for the shed roof shall be at the inner edge of the sidewalk, the overhang being supported as a cantilever, unless the location of supports is otherwise approved by DDOT. The shed is permitted to be supported by hanging from the wall of the building when approved by the code official.

3. Gutters shall be provided throughout the length of all shed roofs, with downspouts equivalent to a 2 1/2-inch (63.7 mm) pipe per 200 square feet (18.6 m²) of surface drains, the pitch of the roof to be at least 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) per foot.

4. Shed roofs shall be furnished with electric lights that provide levels of illumination in compliance with Section 1205.3.

5. Shed roofs shall comply with all structural requirements of Chapter 16 and other applicable Sections of the Construction Codes.

3202.12.4.2 Use of space. No public space beneath a shed constructed pursuant to Section 3202.12.4 shall be used for the display, sale or storage of produce or containers. This restriction shall not apply to the temporary storage of materials incident to loading and unloading.

Exception: An area specifically designated as a market area for the retail or wholesale sale of produce on the premises is permitted to be used for the display, sale or storage of produce or containers.

3202.12.4.3 Special conditions. The foregoing rules shall be observed by the code official as a guide in issuing permits for market sheds except where the conditions are so obviously at variance with these general rules as to require special consideration. Cases requiring special consideration shall be reviewed as modifications pursuant to Section 104.10.

3202.12.5 Loading platforms. The code official is authorized to approve loading platforms projecting more than 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the lot line or building restriction line, if one exists, in Commercial and PDR Zones. Canopies over such platforms shall be permitted. Special approval by the code official shall be required for such platforms and canopies.

3202.12.6 Platform scales. Platform scales projecting on public space are permitted in Commercial and PDR Zones.
ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

3202.13 Enclosed sidewalk cafés. Enclosed sidewalk cafés including enclosed cafés located wholly or partially beyond the lot line or within a building restriction area, if one exists, shall comply with Sections 3202.13.1 through 3202.13.2 and all other applicable sections of the Construction Codes.

3202.13.1 Permits. Permits for enclosed sidewalk cafés shall be issued by the code official and shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations. Each application shall be accompanied by drawings of the structure, prepared and signed by a structural engineer registered in the District of Columbia. Other enforceable laws and regulations governing sidewalk cafés include: Section 5 of the Enclosed Sidewalk Cafés Act of 1982, effective September 17, 1982 [DC Law 4-148; DC Official Code § 10-1102.02 (2012 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)]; DCMR Title 24, Chapter 2 (Rental of Public Space) and Chapter 3 (Administrative Procedures for Sidewalk Cafés); Mayor’s Order No. 77-150, dated August 31, 1977; and regulations of the Department of Public Works, 30 DCR 4346, August 26, 1983, now delegated to DDOT.

3202.13.2 Design. Enclosed sidewalk cafés shall comply with Sections 3202.13.2.1 through 3202.13.2.5.

3202.13.2.1 Walls and roofs. Enclosed sidewalk cafés shall have walls and roofs constructed of noncombustible materials.

3202.13.2.2 Flooring. Flooring shall comply with Section 804.

3202.13.2.3 Enclosure materials. Any enclosure materials, and the contents enclosed therein, must be capable of being removed within 24 hours.

3202.13.2.4 Structural requirements. Enclosed sidewalk cafés shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 16, Chapter 24 and other applicable sections of the Building Code.

3202.13.2.5 Means of egress. When the combined occupant loads of the sidewalk café and the adjacent restaurant exceed 75 persons, two means of egress shall be provided from the sidewalk café, one of which shall open directly to the sidewalk, public alley, or public space abutting the café. The second means of egress is allowed through the abutting restaurant. If two means of egress are required for the adjacent restaurant, two means of egress shall be required for the sidewalk café. If one of the means of egress of the café serves the interior of the restaurant, the width of the respective egress aisle across the café shall meet the requirement for a corridor serving the combined occupant load of the sidewalk café and the restaurant.

3202.14 Façades on existing buildings. Alteration of a façade attached to the primary structural frame of an existing building that causes the altered façade to project beyond the lot line, or building restriction line if one exists, into the public right-of-way, shall be allowed when all of the following conditions are met:

1. A permit authorizing construction of the primary structural frame of the existing building was issued by the Department prior to (the date of adoption of this provision).

2. The owner submits a report, sealed by the Structural Engineer of Record, as part of the permit application covering the proposed façade alteration that describes in detail the technical reasons why it is infeasible to alter the existing primary structural frame to accommodate the altered façade to be within the lot line, or building restriction line if applicable.

3. The depth of the altered façade shall be the minimum dimension required for structural integrity and attachment of the altered façade to the existing primary structural frame.

4. The altered façade shall not project more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the lot line, or building restriction line if one exists, into the public right-of-way.

5. All façade and window projections on the building that are beyond the lot line, or building restriction line if one exists, into the public right-of-way shall not exceed in aggregate the total square footage that would otherwise be allowed at each lot line or building restriction line in compliance with Section 3202.10.3, Bay Windows.

6. All façades on additions to existing buildings shall be within the lot line, or building restriction line if applicable.

7. Façade alterations shall not project into or over an alley.

8. All other projections shall comply with other requirements of Chapter 32, Encroachments Into The Public Right-Of-Way.

9. Projecting façades shall be constructed of fired brick, natural or manufactured stone, precast concrete, terracotta, architectural metal panels, clear/low emissivity glass or other high quality or innovative materials deemed appropriate by the code official.
CHAPTER 33
SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 3301
GENERAL

3301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern safety during construction and the protection of adjacent public and private properties.

3301.2 Storage and placement. Construction equipment and materials shall be stored and placed so as not to endanger the public, the workers or adjoining property for the duration of the construction project.

SECTION 3302
CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS

3302.1 Alterations, repairs and additions. Required exits, existing structural elements, fire protection devices and sanitary safeguards shall be maintained at all times during alterations, repairs or additions to any building or structure.

Exceptions:
1. Where such required elements or devices are being altered or repaired, adequate substitute provisions shall be made.
2. Maintenance of such elements and devices is not required when the existing building is not occupied.

3302.2 Manner of removal. Waste materials shall be removed in a manner that prevents injury or damage to persons, adjoining properties and public rights-of-way.

3302.3 Fire safety during construction. Fire safety during construction shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the Fire Code.

SECTION 3303
DEMOLITION

3303.1 Construction documents. Construction documents and a schedule for demolition shall be submitted where required by the building official. Where such information is required, no work shall be done until such construction documents or schedule, or both, are approved.

3303.2 Pedestrian protection. The work of demolishing any building shall not be commenced until pedestrian protection is in place as required by this chapter.

3303.3 Means of egress. A horizontal exit shall not be destroyed unless and until a substitute means of egress has been provided and approved.

3303.4 Vacant lot. Where a structure has been demolished or removed, the vacant lot shall be filled and maintained to the existing grade or in accordance with the ordinances of the jurisdiction having authority.

3303.5 Water accumulation. Provision shall be made to prevent the accumulation of water or damage to any foundations on the premises or the adjoining property.

3303.6 Utility connections. Service utility connections shall be discontinued and capped in accordance with the approved rules and the requirements of the applicable governing authority.

3303.7 Fire safety during demolition. Fire safety during demolition shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the Fire Code.

SECTION 3304
SITE WORK

3304.1 Excavation and fill. Excavation and fill for buildings and structures shall be constructed or protected so as not to endanger life or property. Stumps and roots shall be removed from the soil to a depth of not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the surface of the ground in the area to be occupied by the building. Wood forms that have been used in placing concrete, if within the ground or between foundation sills and the ground, shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose. Before completion, loose or casual wood shall be removed from direct contact with the ground under the building.

3304.1.1 Slope limits. Slopes for permanent fill shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Cut slopes for permanent excavations shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Deviation from the foregoing limitations for cut slopes shall be permitted only upon the presentation of a soil investigation report acceptable to the building official.

3304.1.2 Surcharge. No fill or other surcharge loads shall be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that can be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned adequately or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against lateral movement.

3304.1.3 Footings on adjacent slopes. For footings on adjacent slopes, see Chapter 18.

3304.1.4 Fill supporting foundations. Fill to be used to support the foundations of any building or structure shall comply with Section 1804.6. Special inspections of compacted fill shall be in accordance with Section 1705.6.
SECTION 3305
SANITARY

3305.1 Facilities required. Sanitary facilities shall be provided during construction, remodeling or demolition activities in accordance with the Plumbing Code.

SECTION 3306
PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

3306.1 Protection required. Pedestrians shall be protected during construction, remodeling and demolition activities as required by this chapter and Table 3306.1. Signs shall be provided to direct pedestrian traffic.

3306.2 Walkways. A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel in front of every construction and demolition site unless the applicable governing authority authorizes the sidewalk to be fenced or closed. Walkways shall be of sufficient width to accommodate the pedestrian traffic, but in no case shall they be less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Walkways shall be provided with a durable walking surface. Walkways shall be accessible in accordance with Chapter 11 and shall be designed to support all imposed loads and in no case shall the design live load be less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.2 kN/m²).

3306.3 Directional barricades. Pedestrian traffic shall be protected by a directional barricade where the walkway extends into the street. The directional barricade shall be of sufficient size and construction to direct vehicular traffic away from the pedestrian path.

3306.4 Construction railings. Construction railings shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height and shall be sufficient to direct pedestrians around construction areas.

3306.5 Barriers. Barriers shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height and shall be placed on the side of the walkway nearest the construction. Barriers shall extend the entire length of the construction site. Openings in such barriers shall be protected by doors that are normally kept closed.

3306.6 Barrier design. Barriers shall be designed to resist loads required in Chapter 16 unless constructed as follows:

1. Barriers shall be provided with 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) top and bottom plates.

2. The barrier material shall be boards not less than 3/4-inch (19.1 mm) thick or wood structural panels not less than 1/2-inch (6.4 mm) thick.

3. Wood structural use panels shall be bonded with an adhesive identical to that for exterior wood structural use panels.

4. Wood structural use panels 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) or 1/16 inch (23.8 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

5. Wood structural use panels 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) or 1/8 inch (12.7 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center provided a 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) stiffener is placed horizontally at mid-height where the stud spacing is greater than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

6. Wood structural use panels 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) or thicker shall not span over 8 feet (2438 mm).

3306.7 Covered walkways. Covered walkways shall have a clear height of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) as measured from the floor surface to the canopy overhead. Adequate lighting shall be provided at all times. Covered walkways shall be designed to support all imposed loads. In no case shall the design live load be less than 150 psf (7.2 kN/m²) for the entire structure.

Exception: Roofs and supporting structures of covered walkways for new, light-frame construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane are permitted to be designed for a live load of 75 psf (3.6kN/m²) or the loads imposed on them, whichever is greater. In lieu of such designs, the roof and supporting structure of a covered walkway are permitted to be constructed as follows:

1. Footings shall be continuous 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members.

2. Posts not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the roof and spaced not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) on center.

3. Stringers not less than 4 inches by 12 inches (102 mm by 305 mm) shall be placed on edge upon the posts.

4. Joists resting on the stringers shall be not less than 2 inches by 8 inches (51 mm by 203 mm) and shall be spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.

5. The deck shall be planks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or wood structural panels with an exterior

<p>| TABLE 3306.1 |
| PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS |
|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HEIGHT OF CONSTRUCTION</th>
<th>DISTANCE FROM CONSTRUCTION TO LOT LINE</th>
<th>TYPE OF PROTECTION REQUIRED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 feet or less</td>
<td>Less than 5 feet</td>
<td>Construction railings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 feet or more</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 8 feet</td>
<td>Less than 5 feet</td>
<td>Barrier and covered walkway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 feet or more, but not more than one-fourth the height of construction</td>
<td>Barrier and covered walkway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 feet or more, but between one-fourth and one-half the height of construction</td>
<td>Barrier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 feet or more, but exceeding one-half the height of construction</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
exposure durability classification not less than 21/32 inch (18.3 mm) thick nailed to the joists.

6. Each post shall be knee braced to joists and stringers by members not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm); 4 feet (1219 mm) in length.

7. A curb that is not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) shall be set on edge along the outside edge of the deck.

**3306.8 Repair, maintenance and removal.** Pedestrian protection required by this chapter shall be maintained in place and kept in good order for the entire length of time pedestrians are subject to being endangered. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent, upon the completion of the construction activity, shall immediately remove walkways, debris and other obstructions and leave such public property in as good a condition as it was before such work was commenced.

**3306.9 Adjacent to excavations.** Every excavation on a site located 5 feet (1524 mm) or less from the street lot line shall be enclosed with a barrier not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height. Where located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the street lot line, a barrier shall be erected where required by the building official. Barriers shall be of adequate strength to resist wind pressure as specified in Chapter 16.

**SECTION 3307 PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY**

**3307.1 Protection required.** Adjoining public and private property shall be protected from damage during construction, alteration, repair, demolition or raze of a premises at the expense of the person causing the work. Protection must be provided for lots, and for all elements of a building or other structure, including, but not limited to, footings, foundations, party walls, chimneys, vents, skylights, porches, decks, roofs, roof outlets, roof structures and flashing. Provisions shall be made to control water runoff and erosion during construction or demolition or raze activities. This section shall also apply where (1) the work will cause operable chimneys or vents on adjoining premises to become noncompliant with the Chimney Provisions (as defined in Section 3307.1.1) or (2) the work will cause the live load of the roof of an adjoining or adjacent premises to exceed the design capacity as a result of the increased snow drift load.

**3307.1.1. Definitions.** For purposes of Section 3307, the following terms shall have the meaning stated:

- **CHIMNEY PROVISIONS.** Section 2113 (Masonry Chimneys), Chapter 5 of the Fuel Gas Code (Chimneys and Vents), Chapter 8 of the Mechanical Code (Chimneys and Vents), Chapter 10 of the Residential Code (Chimneys and Fireplaces) and Section 903.1 of the Plumbing Code.

- **ORIGINAL WORK SITE.** The premises or portion thereof where the work causing the required Protective Work is performed.

**PARTY WALL.** A wall that straddles, or is in close proximity to, a lot line, which is used for structural support by two or more adjoining buildings or structures.

**PROTECTIVE WORK.** Work required by Section 3307.1.

**PROTECTIVE WORK REQUIRING ACCESS.** Protective Work that requires access to adjoining or adjacent premises to be completed.

**3307.1.2 Notice requirements for protective work.** Persons proposing work on an Original Work Site that requires or potentially requires Protective Work on an adjoining or adjacent premises shall comply with the notice requirements set forth in Section 106.2.18.3, as applicable.

**3307.1.3 Protective work requiring access.** In situations involving Protective Work Requiring Access, the person requiring access to the adjoining or adjacent premises for the purpose of performing Protective Work, or determining whether Protective Work is required, shall be responsible for obtaining a legal right of access from the owner of the adjoining or adjacent premises, as applicable, or a court order authorizing such access in accordance with the requirements of Section 106.2.18.4.

**Exceptions:**

1. A limited or temporary right of access is expressly granted in Section 3307.2.2 or 3307.4.1 for the specific Protective Work required.

2. A revised work plan is submitted to the Department that eliminates the need for Protective Work Requiring Access.

3. A written agreement signed by the person proposing work an Original Work Site that requires or potentially requires Protective Work on an adjoining or adjacent premises, and the owner of such premises that denies access and acknowledges the owner’s obligation to be responsible for any Protective Work Requiring Access.

**3307.1.3.1 Where responsibility for protective work requiring access shifts to owner of adjoining premises.** Where the owner of the premises adjoining an Original Work Site (or adjacent to the Original Work Site in the case of snow drift loads) is responsible for Protective Work on the owner’s premises, then said owner shall execute such measures to make safe the said owner’s premises, and to obtain any necessary permits for the Protective Work from the Department, without delay so as not to impede or materially delay the construction work subject to the permit application that required the Protective Work. Any permit application filed by the owner in these circumstances shall be exempted from the notification requirements in Section 106.2.18.3.

**3307.1.3.1.1 Access to Original Work Site.** Where the owner of the premises adjoining or adjacent to the Original Work Site is responsible for Protective Work on the owner’s premises, and the Protective Work requires access to the Original Work Site, the
owner of the adjoining or adjacent premises, as applicable, shall obtain written permission to gain such access from the owner of the Original Work Site. If the owner of the Original Work Site fails to grant written permission (conditional or unconditional) for entry to the owner of the adjoining or adjacent premises to undertake the Protective Work then any Protective Work requiring access to the Original Work Site shall be the responsibility of the owner of the Original Work Site, who shall execute such measures to make safe the Original Work Site.

3307.2 Party walls.

3307.2.1 Responsibility of person doing construction work. Where construction work occurs that could affect the structural integrity of a party wall, the person causing the work shall preserve the party wall from injury and ensure the structural stability of the party wall, subject to the provisions for Protective Work Requiring Access in Section 3307.1.3.

3307.2.1.1 Underpinning. Proper underpinning of existing party walls which require underpinning shall be provided in accordance with applicable sections of the Construction Codes, including Sections 1705.19 and 1804.2.

3307.2.2 Limited access authorized. Where a party wall requires underpinning as a result of the proposed work, a limited right of access to adjoining premises is authorized where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The underpinning can be provided by the owner undertaking the work from said owner's premises, even if the footing extends onto the adjoining owner's premises.
2. Extension of the footing is required to stabilize and support the adjoining owner's building or structure, and to avoid unreasonable delay in excavation and development of the permitted project.
3. The owner undertaking the work has provided notice to the owner of the adjoining premises in accordance with Section 106.2.18 where required.

Where the conditions set forth in Section 3307.2.2. are met, the person doing the work is not required to obtain a right of access to the adjoining or adjacent premises, as required by Section 3307.1.3.

3307.2.3 Demolition or raze. During a demolition or raze, the person undertaking the work must maintain fire and life safety and structural integrity of the party wall. If any party wall or portion thereof which is left standing and exposed after a building is demolished or razed is deemed unsafe or dangerous by the code official, then the owner of the building that is being demolished or razed shall either remove and reconstruct, or anchor, brace, or buttress all of those portions of the party wall deemed unsafe or danger-

3307.2.4 Party wall weatherization. The party wall shall be properly maintained and weatherized in accordance with Sections 3307.2.4.1 through 3307.2.4.3, as applicable.

3307.2.4.1 Temporary protection. If the party wall is to remain exposed for 60 days or less, the exposed portions of the wall shall be protected from weather damage by tarpaulins, waterproof paper, or other temporary means approved for use by the code official. Such temporary protection shall be maintained in a weatherproof condition.

3307.2.4.2 Intermediate protection. If the party wall is to remain exposed for more than 60 days, but less than 18 months, the exposed wall shall be restored and weatherproofed in accordance with the requirements for the particular type of construction involved. All plaster and other material not commonly used for exterior construction shall be removed; all holes shall be properly filled; and masonry party walls shall be repointed.

3307.2.4.3 Permanent protection. If the party wall is to remain exposed for 18 months or longer, the party walls shall be permanently restored and weatherproofed in accordance with the requirements for the particular type of construction involved. Party walls shall be faced with material commonly used for exterior finish, or restored as closely as practicable with the facing material and construction of the other exterior walls of the building left standing, and shall be painted or otherwise finished in a manner similar to other parts of the building.

3307.3 Chimneys and vents. Whenever a building or structure is erected, altered, or increased in height so that any portion of such building or structure causes any previously constructed chimneys or vents on an adjoining premises to become noncompliant with the Chimney Provisions (as defined in Section 3307.1.1), the owner of such new or altered building or structure shall have the responsibility of altering any such operable chimneys or vents to make them conform with the requirements of the Chimney Provisions, subject to the provisions for Protective Work Requiring Access in Section 3307.1.3. The requirements of Sections 3307.3 and 3307.3.1 shall not dispense with or modify any additional requirements that may be applicable pursuant to federal or local environmental laws or regulations.

Exceptions:

1. Where the chimney or vent is no longer connected with a fireplace or combustion or other equipment for which the chimney or vent was required, or where the chimney or vent is otherwise inoperable.
2. Any existing violations on previously constructed equipment shall be corrected by the owner of the equipment before any equipment is added or alterations made at the expense of the owner of the new or altered building.
3307.3.1 Required alterations. Protective Work required by Section 3307.3 shall be accomplished by one of the following means or a combination thereof:

1. Carry up the previously constructed chimneys or vents to the height required by the Chimney Provisions (as defined in Section 3307.1.1).

2. Offset such chimneys or vents to a distance beyond that required in the Chimney Provisions from the new or altered building provided that the new location of the outlet of the offset chimney or vent shall otherwise comply with the requirements of the Chimney Provisions.

3. Provide any alternate materials or methods of construction pursuant to Section 104.11 that satisfy the intent of the Chimney Provisions for mechanical drafting of chimney or vents.

3307.3.1.1 Approval. The plans and method of alteration shall be subject to the approval of the code official, and any approved work needed to accomplish the alteration shall be authorized pursuant to a permit application submitted by the owner of the existing adjoining premises with the previously constructed chimneys or vents.

3307.3.2 Protection of draft. Where a chimney or vent is altered pursuant to Section 3307.4 through the provision of any mechanical equipment or devices necessary to maintain the proper draft in the chimney or vent, the maintenance of such mechanical equipment or devices shall be the responsibility of the owner who is responsible for installing such equipment or devices unless otherwise agreed.

3307.3.3 Procedure for chimney or vent alterations. Where the alterations required by Section 3307.4 are the obligation of the owner of the new or altered building or structure, such owner shall be subject to the following requirements:

1. Schedule the Protective Work so as to create a minimum of disturbance to the occupants of the affected building.

2. Provide such essential services as are normally supplied by the equipment while it is out of service.

3. Where necessary, support such extended chimneys, vents and equipment from the new or altered building or structure or carry up such chimneys or vents within the new or altered building or structure.

4. Provide for the maintenance, repair, and/or replacement of such extensions and added equipment.

5. Make such alterations of the same material as the original chimney or vent so as to maintain the same quality and appearance, except where the affected owner of the chimney or vent shall give his or her consent to do otherwise. All work shall be done in such fashion as to maintain the architectural aesthetics of the existing building. Where there is practical difficulty in complying strictly with the provisions of this item, the code official may permit an equally safe alternative.

3307.4 Roofs, roof outlets, roof structures and flashing. Subject to the provisions for Protective Work Requiring Access in Section 3307.1.3, where a new building or structure is being constructed, or a demolition or raze of an existing building or structure is being conducted, the roof, roof outlets and roof structures of adjoining buildings or other structures shall be protected against damage with adequate safeguards by the person doing the work.

3307.4.1 Flashing repairs. Without excluding other repairs or protective measures that may be required pursuant to Section 3307, and subject to the provisions for Protective Work Requiring Access in Section 3307.1.3, the owner undertaking the work shall repair and restore all flashing on any adjoining building or structure which has been broken or damaged during any construction, demolition or raze operations. The owner undertaking the repairs shall also install such new flashing as may be required to protect any joints exposed or created by such owner’s operations. The owner of the adjoining premises shall be deemed to have authorized temporary access to his, her or its property to effectuate repairs to the extent that repairs are required under this section.

3307.4.2 Snow loads. Subject to the provisions for Protective Work Requiring Access in Section 3307.1.3, whenever a building or structure is erected, enlarged or increased in height so that any portion of such building or structure extends higher than the top of an adjoining or adjacent existing building or structure, it shall be the responsibility of the owner of the Original Work Site to strengthen the roof of the adjoining or adjacent existing building or structure to support any additional snow drift loads caused by the new work or to provide permanent means of removing the additional snow load such that the existing roof will comply with the snow load requirements in Section 1603.1.3 or Section R301.2.3 of the Residential Code, as applicable.

SECTION 3308
TEMPORARY USE OF STREETS, ALLEYS AND PUBLIC PROPERTY

3308.1 Storage and handling of materials. The temporary use of streets or public property for the storage or handling of materials or of equipment required for construction or demolition, and the protection provided to the public shall comply with the provisions of the applicable governing authority and this chapter.

3308.1.1 Obstructions. Construction materials and equipment shall not be placed or stored so as to obstruct access to fire hydrants, standpipes, fire or police alarm boxes, catch basins or manholes, nor shall such material or equipment be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of a street intersection, or placed so as to obstruct normal observations of traffic signals or to hinder the use of public transit loading platforms.
SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

3308.2 Utility fixtures. Building materials, fences, sheds or any obstruction of any kind shall not be placed so as to obstruct free approach to any fire hydrant, fire department connection, utility pole, manhole, fire alarm box or catch basin, or so as to interfere with the passage of water in the gutter. Protection against damage shall be provided to such utility fixtures during the progress of the work, but sight of them shall not be obstructed.

SECTION 3309
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

3309.1 Where required. Structures under construction, alteration or demolition shall be provided with no fewer than one approved portable fire extinguisher in accordance with Section 906 and sized for not less than ordinary hazard as follows:

1. At each stairway on all floor levels where combustible materials have accumulated.
2. In every storage and construction shed.
3. Additional portable fire extinguishers shall be provided where special hazards exist, such as the storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids.

3309.2 Fire hazards. The provisions of this code and the Fire Code shall be strictly observed to safeguard against all fire hazards attendant upon construction operations.

SECTION 3310
MEANS OF EGRESS

3310.1 Stairways required. Where a building has been constructed to a building height of 50 feet (15 240 mm) or four stories, or where an existing building exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm) in building height is altered, no fewer than one temporary lighted stairway shall be provided unless one or more of the permanent stairways are erected as the construction progresses.

3310.2 Maintenance of means of egress. Required means of egress shall be maintained at all times during construction, demolition, remodeling or alterations and additions to any building.

Exception: Existing means of egress need not be maintained where approved temporary means of egress systems and facilities are provided.

SECTION 3311
STANDPIPES

3311.2 Buildings being demolished. Where a building is being demolished and a standpipe exists within such a building, such standpipe shall be maintained in an operable condition so as to be available for use by the fire department. Such standpipe shall be demolished with the building but shall not be demolished more than one floor below the floor being demolished.

3311.3 Detailed requirements. Standpipes shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.

Exception: Standpipes shall be either temporary or permanent in nature, and with or without a water supply, provided that such standpipes conform to the requirements of Section 905 as to capacity, outlets and materials.

SECTION 3312
AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM

3312.1 Completion before occupancy. In buildings where an automatic sprinkler system is required by this code, it shall be unlawful to occupy any portion of a building or structure until the automatic sprinkler system installation has been tested and approved, except as provided in Section 111.3.

3312.2 Operation of valves. Operation of sprinkler control valves shall be permitted only by properly authorized personnel and shall be accompanied by notification of duly designated parties. When the sprinkler protection is being regularly turned off and on to facilitate connection of newly completed segments, the sprinkler control valves shall be checked at the end of each work period to ascertain that protection is in service.

SECTION 3313
WATER SUPPLY FOR FIRE PROTECTION

3313.1 Where required. An approved water supply for fire protection, either temporary or permanent, shall be made available as soon as combustible material arrives on the site.
CHAPTER 34
EXISTING BUILDINGS

SECTION 3401
GENERAL

3401 General. Alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures shall be governed by the Existing Building Code.
CHAPTER 35
REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASM 35—00</td>
<td>Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction (Fourth Edition)</td>
<td>2002.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1402—09</td>
<td>Standard Specifications for Aluminum Siding, Soffit and Fascia</td>
<td>1404.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101/1S.2/A440—11</td>
<td>North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights</td>
<td>1709.5.1, 2405.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216.1—14</td>
<td>Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies</td>
<td>Table 721.1(2), 722.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>318—14</td>
<td>Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>1405.6, 1405.6.1, 1405.6.2, 1405.10, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 2108.9, 2101.2, 2106.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2109.2.1, 2109.3, 2110.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530—13</td>
<td>Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2105.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530.1—13</td>
<td>Specifications for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2105.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

#### AISC
**American Institute of Steel**  
Construction One East Wacker Drive, Suite 700  
Chicago, IL 60601-18021

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>341—10</td>
<td>Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings</td>
<td>1613.4.1, 1705.12.1.1, 1705.12.1.2, 1705.13.1.1, 1705.13.1.2, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.2.2, 2206.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360—10</td>
<td>Specification for Structural Steel Buildings</td>
<td>722.5.2.2.1.1, 1604.3.3.1, 1705.2.1, 2203.1, 2203.2, 2205.1, 2205.2.1.1, 2206.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### AISI
**American Iron and Steel Institute**  
25 Massachusetts Avenue NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20001

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AISI S100—12</td>
<td>North American Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Members, 2012</td>
<td>1604.3.3, 1905.1.8, 2203.1, 2203.2, 2210.1, 2210.2, 2211.2, 2211.4, 2211.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISI S110—07/ S1-09(2012)</td>
<td>Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems—Special Moment Frames, 2007 with Supplement 1, dated 2009 (Reaffirmed 2012)</td>
<td>2210.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISI S200—12</td>
<td>North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-General Provisions, 2012</td>
<td>2203.1, 2203.2, 2211.1, Table 2603.12, Table 2603.12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISI S214—12</td>
<td>North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-Truss Design, 2012</td>
<td>2211.3, 2211.3.1, 2211.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISI S220—11</td>
<td>North American Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Nonstructural Members</td>
<td>2203.1, 2203.2, 2211.1, Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ALI
**Automotive Lift Institute**  
P.O. Box 85  
Courtland, NY 13045

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALI ALCTV—2011</td>
<td>Standard for Automotive Lifts—Safety Requirements for Construction, Testing and Validation (ANSI)</td>
<td>3001.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### AMCA
Air Movement and Control Association International  
30 West University Drive  
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>540—08</td>
<td>Test Method for Louvers Impacted by Wind Borne Debris</td>
<td>1609.1.2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ANSI
American National Standards Institute  
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor  
New York, NY 10036

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A13.1—2007</td>
<td>Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems</td>
<td>415.11.6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.1A—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar</td>
<td>2103.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.1B—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile, quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex-Portland Mortar</td>
<td>2103.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.4—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive</td>
<td>2103.2.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.5—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar</td>
<td>2103.2.3.1, 2103.2.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.6—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy</td>
<td>2103.2.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.8—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout</td>
<td>2103.2.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.9—99</td>
<td>Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout</td>
<td>2103.2.3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A108.10—99</td>
<td>Installation of Grout in Tilework</td>
<td>2103.2.3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.1—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar</td>
<td>2103.2.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.3—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive</td>
<td>2103.2.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.4—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Latex-Portland Cement Mortar</td>
<td>2103.2.3.2, 2103.2.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.5—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant Furan Mortar and Grouts for Tile Installation</td>
<td>2103.2.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.6—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Cement Grouts for Tile Installation</td>
<td>2103.2.3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A118.8—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout</td>
<td>2103.2.3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A136.1—99</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile</td>
<td>2103.2.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A137.1—12</td>
<td>American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/A 190.1—12</td>
<td>Structural Glued Laminated Timber</td>
<td>2303.1.3, 2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z 97.1—14</td>
<td>Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test</td>
<td>2406.1.2, 2406.2, Table 2406.2(2), 2406.3.1, 2407.1, 2407.1.4.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3, 2409.2, 2409.3, 2409.4.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### APA
APA - Engineered Wood Association  
7011 South 19th  
Tacoma, WA 98466

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/A 190.1—12</td>
<td>Structural Glued Laminated Timber</td>
<td>2303.1.3, 2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/APA PRP 210—08</td>
<td>Standard for Performance-Rated Engineered Wood Siding</td>
<td>2303.1.5, 2304.7, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APA PDS—12</td>
<td>Panel Design Specification</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APA PDS</td>
<td>Design and Fabrication of Plywood Curved Panels (revised 2013)</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APA PDS</td>
<td>Design and Fabrication of Plywood-lumber Beams (revised 2013)</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APA PDS</td>
<td>Design and Fabrication of Plywood Stressed-skin Panels (revised 2013)</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCED STANDARDS

APA—continued

| APA PDS | Design and Fabrication of Plywood Sandwich Panels (revised 2013) | 2306.1 |
| APA PDS | Design and Fabrication of All-plywood Beams (revised 2013) | 2306.1 |
| APA PDS | Standard for Performance-Rated Cross-Laminated Timber | 2306.1 |
| EWS R540—12 | Builders Tips: Proper Storage and Handling of Glulam Beams | 2306.1 |
| EWS S475—07 | Glued Laminated Beam Design Tables | 2306.1 |
| EWS S560—10 | Field Notching and Drilling of Glulam Laminated Timber Beams | 2306.1 |
| EWS X440—08 | Product Guide-Glulam | 2306.1 |
| EWS X450—01 | Glulam in Residential Construction-Western Edition | 2306.1 |

ASABE

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers
2950 Niles Road
St. Joseph, MI 49085

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EP 486.2 OCT 2012</td>
<td>Shallow-post and Pier Foundation Design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ASCE/SEI

American Society of Civil Engineers
Structural Engineering Institute
1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 20191-4400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5—13</td>
<td>Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—13</td>
<td>Specification for Masonry Structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7—10</td>
<td>Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures with Supplement No. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8—14</td>
<td>Standard Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Stainless Steel Structural Members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19—09</td>
<td>Structural Applications of Steel Cables for Buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—14</td>
<td>Flood Resistant Design and Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29—14</td>
<td>Standard Calculation Methods for Structural Fire Protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32—01</td>
<td>Design and Construction of Frost Protected Shallow Foundations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49—07</td>
<td>Wind Tunnel Testing for Buildings and Other Structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55—10</td>
<td>Tensile Membrane Structures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers  
Two Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016-5990

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASME/A17.1—13</td>
<td>Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators</td>
<td>907.3.3, 911.1.5, 1009.4, 1607.9.1, 3001.2, 3001.4, 3002.5, 3003.2, 3007.1, 3008.7.1, 3009.2.2.1, 3009.5.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSA B44—2013</td>
<td>Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts</td>
<td>1109.8, 3001.2, 3009.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A18.1—2014</td>
<td>Safety Standard for Belt Manlifts</td>
<td>301.2, 3009.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16.18—2012</td>
<td>Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings</td>
<td>909.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16.22—2001(R2010)</td>
<td>Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings</td>
<td>909.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B20.1—2015</td>
<td>Safety Standard for Conveyors and Related Equipment</td>
<td>3001.2, 3004.3, 3009.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B31.3—2012</td>
<td>Process Piping</td>
<td>415.11.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## ASSE

American Society of Safety Engineers  
1800 East Oakton Street  
Des Plaines, IL 60018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/ASSE Z359.1-2007</td>
<td>Safety Requirements for Personal Fall Arrest Systems, Subsystems and Components, Part of the Fall Protection Code</td>
<td>1015.6, 1015.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## ASTM

ASTM International  
100 Barr Harbor Drive  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A6/A6M—11</td>
<td>Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes and Sheet</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3, 1810.3.5.3.1, 1810.3.5.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A36/A36M—08</td>
<td>Specification for Carbon Structural Steel</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A153/A153M—09</td>
<td>Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware</td>
<td>2304.10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A240/A240M—13A</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications</td>
<td>Table 1507.4.3(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A252—10</td>
<td>Specification for Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe Piles</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A283/A283M—12A</td>
<td>Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A416/A416M—12A</td>
<td>Specification for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-wire for Prestressed Concrete</td>
<td>1810.3.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A463/A463M—10</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated, by the Hot-dip Process</td>
<td>Table 1507.4.3(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A572/A572M—12A</td>
<td>Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A588/A588M—10</td>
<td>Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Structural Steel with 50 ksi (345 MPa) Minimum Yield Point with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A615/A615M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement</td>
<td>1704.5, 1810.3.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A653/A653M—11</td>
<td>Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated Galvanized or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated Galvannealed by the Hot-dip Process</td>
<td>Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2), 2304.10.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A690/A690M—07(2012)</td>
<td>Standard Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Nickel, Copper, Phosphorus Steel H-piles and Sheet Piling with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance for Use in Marine Environments</td>
<td>1810.3.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A706/A706M—09b</td>
<td>Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement</td>
<td>1704.5, 2107.4, 2108.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A722/A722M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Uncoated High-strength Steel Bar for Prestressing Concrete</td>
<td>1810.3.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A755/A755M—2011</td>
<td>Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process and Pre Painted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products</td>
<td>Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

**ASTM—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A792/A792M—10</td>
<td>Specification for Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A875/A875M—13</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Steel Sheet Zinc-5 percent, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A924/A924M—13</td>
<td>Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B24—10</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B68—11</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed (Metric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B88—09</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B101—12</td>
<td>Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B209—10</td>
<td>Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Steel and Plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B251—10</td>
<td>Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B280—08</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B370—12</td>
<td>Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B695—04(2009)</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel Strip for Building Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5—10</td>
<td>Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C22/C22M—00(2010)</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C27—98(2008)</td>
<td>Specification for Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C28/C28M—10</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum Plasters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C31/C31M—12</td>
<td>Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C33/C33M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Concrete Aggregates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C55—2011</td>
<td>Specification for Concrete Building Brick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C59/C59M—00 (2011)</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum Casting Plaster and Molding Plaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C61/C61M—00 (2011)</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum Keene’s Cement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C62—13</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C67—13</td>
<td>Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C73—10</td>
<td>Specification for Calcium Silicate Brick (Sand-lime Brick)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C90—13</td>
<td>Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C91—12</td>
<td>Specification for Masonry Cement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C94/C94M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C140—13</td>
<td>Test Method Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C150—12</td>
<td>Specification for Portland Cement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C172/C172M—10</td>
<td>Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C199—84 (2011)</td>
<td>Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C206—13</td>
<td>Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C208—12</td>
<td>Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C216—13</td>
<td>Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C270—12a</td>
<td>Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C315—07(2011)</td>
<td>Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C317/C317M—00(2010)</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C330/C330M—2009</td>
<td>Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C331/C331M—2010</td>
<td>Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C406/C406M—2010</td>
<td>Specification for Roofing Slate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C473—12</td>
<td>Test Method for Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C474—13</td>
<td>Test Methods for Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Board Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C475/C475M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C514—04(2009)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C516—08</td>
<td>Specifications for Vermiculite Loose Fill Thermal Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C547—12</td>
<td>Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C549—06(2012)</td>
<td>Specification for Perlite Loose Fill Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C552—12b</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C557—03(2009)e01</td>
<td>Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C578—12b</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASTM—continued

C587—04(2009) Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster .................................................. Table 2507.2
C595/C595—13 Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements ............................................. 1903.1, Table 2507.2
C631—09 Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering ................. Table 2507.2
C635/C635M—13 Specification for the Manufacture, Performance and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings ......................... 808.1.1, 2506.2.1

C636/C636M—08 Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels .......................................................... 808.1.1, 2506.2.1

C645—13 Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members .................................. Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C652—13 Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale) .......................................................... 1807.1.6.3
C726—12 Standard Specification for Mineral Roof Insulation Board .................................. Table 1508.2
C728—05(2013) Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board ................. Table 1508.2
C744—11 Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units .......................... Table 722.3.2
C754—11 Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-attached Gypsum Panel Products .................................................. Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1

C836/C836M—12 Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course ......................... 1507.15.2

C840—11 Specification for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) to 0.112 inch (2.84 mm) in Thickness .................................................. Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C851—11 Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-attached Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs ........................................................................... Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

C920—11 Standard for Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants .................................... Table 2506.2
C926—13 Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Screw-attached Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs ........................................................................... Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

C926—13 Standard for Specification for Load-bearing Transverse and Axial Steel Studs, Runners Tracks, and Bracing or Bridging, for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases .................................................. Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C926—13 Specification for Welded Wire Lath ......................................................................... Table 2507.2
C946—10 Specification for Construction of Dry-stacked, Surface-bonded Walls ................... 2103.2.2, 2109.2.2
C954—11 Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) to 0.112 inch (2.84 mm) in Thickness .................................................. Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

C955—11C Standard Specification for Load-bearing Transverse and Axial Steel Studs, Runners Tracks, and Bracing or Bridging, for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases .................................................. Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C956—04(2010) Specification for Installation of Cast-in-place Reinforced Gypsum Concrete ........................................................................... Table 2511.1.1
C957—10 Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with Integral Wearing Surface .. Table 2511.1.1

C1002—07 Specification for Steel Self-piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs ........................................................................... Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C1007—11a Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories .......................................................... Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1
C1029—13 Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation .................................................. 1507.14.2
C1032—06(2011) Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base ........................................................................... Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2
C1063—12D Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster ........................................................................... 2109.3.4.8, 2510.3, Table 2511.1.1, 2511.3, 2511.4, 2512.1, 2512.1.2, 2512.2, 2512.6, 2512.8.2, 2512.9, 2513.7
C1088—13 Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale ................................................. Table 721.1(2)
C1157/C1157M—11 Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement .............................. 1903.1, Table 2507.2
C1167—11 Specification for Clay Roof Tiles ........................................................................... 1507.3.4
C1177/C1177M—08 Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing .... Table 1508.2, Table 2506.2
C1178/C1178M—11 Specification for Coated Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel ........................................................................... Table 2506.2, Table 2509.2
C1186—08(2012) Specification for Flot Fiber Cement Sheets .................................................. 1404.10, 1405.16.1, 1405.16.2
C1261—10 Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces .................................. 2111.6, 2111.9
C1278/C1278M—07a(2011) Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panels ......................... Table 2508.2, Table 2506.2
C1280—13 Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing ........................................................................... Table 2508.1, 2508.2
C1283—11 Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining .................................................................... 2113.9.1, 2113.12
C1289—13E1 Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polysiocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board ........................................................................... 2508.2

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE 689

REFERENCED STANDARDS
### ASTM—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1313/C1313M—12</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Sheet Radiant Barriers for Building Construction Applications</td>
<td>1509.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1325—08b</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Backer Units</td>
<td>Table 2509.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1328/C1328M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Plastic (Stucco Cement)</td>
<td>Table 2507.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1364—10B</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone</td>
<td>2103.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1386—07</td>
<td>Specification for Precast Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC) Wall Construction Units</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1396M/C1396M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Gypsum Board</td>
<td>Figure 722.5.1(2), Figure 722.5.1(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1492—03(2009)</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile</td>
<td>1507.3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1600/C1600M—11</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement</td>
<td>Table 2507.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1629/C1629M—06(2011)</td>
<td>Standard Classification for Abuse-resistant Nondecorated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interior Gypsum Panel Products and Fiber-reinforced Cement Panels</td>
<td>403.2.3.1, 403.2.3.2, 403.2.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1658/C1658M—12</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels</td>
<td>Table 2506.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D25—12</td>
<td>Specification for Round Timber Piles</td>
<td>1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D41—05</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D43—00 (2006)</td>
<td>Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D56—05(2010)</td>
<td>Test Method for Flash Point By Tag Closed Tester</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D86—2012</td>
<td>Test Method for Distillation of Petroleum Products at Atmospheric Pressure</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D93—2012</td>
<td>Test Method for Flash Point By Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D225—07</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Shingles (Organic Felt) Surfaceed with Mineral Granules</td>
<td>1507.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D226/D226M—09</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt-saturated Organic Felt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Used in Roofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>1404.2, 1505.2, 1507.2.3, 1507.2.8.1, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.8.3, 1507.9.3, 1507.9.5, Table 1507.10.2, 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D227/D227M—03(2011)E1</td>
<td>Specification for Coal-tar-saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D312—00 (2006)</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D422—63 (2007)</td>
<td>Test Method for Particle-size Analysis of Soils</td>
<td>1803.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D448—08</td>
<td>Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction</td>
<td>1507.12.3, 1507.13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D450—07</td>
<td>Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D635—10</td>
<td>Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position</td>
<td>2606.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1143/D1143M—07e1</td>
<td>Test Method for Piles Under Static Axial Compressive Load</td>
<td>1810.3.3.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1227—95 (2007)</td>
<td>Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing.</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2, 1507.15.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1557—12</td>
<td>Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft³ (2,700 KN m/m³)]</td>
<td>1705.6, 1804.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1863/D1863M—05(2011)E1</td>
<td>Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-up Roofs</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1929—12</td>
<td>Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics</td>
<td>402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 1407.11.2.1, 1407.11.3.3, 1407.11.4.2, 2606.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1970/D1970M—2013</td>
<td>Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roof Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection</td>
<td>1507.2.4, 1502.2.8.1, 1507.2.9.2, 1507.3.3.3, 1507.3.9, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3.1, 1507.5.7, 1507.6.3.1, 1507.7.3.1, 1507.8.3.1, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.3.1, 1507.9.5, 1507.17.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2178—04</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2487—2011</td>
<td>Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)</td>
<td>Table 1610.1, 1803.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2626/D2626M—04(2012)E1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing</td>
<td>1507.3.3, Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2822/</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2822M-05(2011)E1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2823/D2823M—05(2011)E1</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coating, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Fibered without Asbestos</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2843—10</td>
<td>Test for Density of Smoke from the Burning or Decomposition of Plastics</td>
<td>2606.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2898—10</td>
<td>Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing</td>
<td>1505.1, 2303.2.4, 2303.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3019—08</td>
<td>Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered</td>
<td>Table 1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3161/D3161M—13</td>
<td>Test Method for a Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Fan Induced Method)</td>
<td>1504.1.1, Table 1504.1.1, 1507.17.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Number</td>
<td>Standard or Practice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3462/D3462M—10A</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3679—11</td>
<td>Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3909/1507.2.5</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3909M—97b (2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3909M—97b (2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4072—09</td>
<td>Test Method for Total Energy Impact of Plastic Films by Dart Drop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4318—10</td>
<td>Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4434/D4434M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4479/D4479M—07(2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings-Asbestos-free</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4586/D4586M—07(2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement-Asbestos-free</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4601/D4601M—04(2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4637/D4637M—13</td>
<td>Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4829—11</td>
<td>Test Method for Expansion Index of Soils</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4869/D4869M—05(2011)e01</td>
<td>Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4945—12</td>
<td>Test Method for High-strain Dynamic Testing of Piles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4990—97a (2005) e01</td>
<td>Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5019—07a</td>
<td>Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5055—13</td>
<td>Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5456—12</td>
<td>Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5516—09</td>
<td>Test Method of Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to the Elevated Temperatures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5643/D5643M—06(2012)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos-free</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5664—10</td>
<td>Test Methods for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatment and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Lumber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5665—99a (2006)</td>
<td>Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5726—98 (2005)</td>
<td>Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D6083—05e01</td>
<td>Specification for Liquid Applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D6223/D6223M—02(2011)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Atactic Polypolylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber reinforcements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D6298—05e1  Specification for Fiberglass Reinforced Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface ......................... 1507.11.2
D6305—08  Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing ......................... 2303.2.5.1
D6694—08  Standard Specification for Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems ......................... Table 1507.14.3, 1507.15.2
D6754/D6745M—10  Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing ......................... 1507.13.2
D6757—2013  Standard Specification for Underlayment for Use with Steep Slope Roofing. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1507.2.3, 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1
D6841—08  Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Lumber ......................... 2303.2.5.2
D6788/D6878M—11a  Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Polyolefin Based Sheet Roofing ......................... 1507.13.2
D7032—10a  Standard Specification for Establishing Performance Ratings for Wood, Plastic Composite Deck Boards and Guardrail Systems ( Guards or Rails ) ......................... 2612.2.1, 2612.4, 2612.5.1
D7147—05  Specification for Testing and Establishing Allowable Loads of Joist Hangers ......................... 2303.5, 2304.10.3
D7254—07  Standard Specification for polypropylene (PP) siding ......................... 1404.12
D7655—12  Standard Classification for Size of Aggregate Used as Ballast for Roof Membrane Systems ......................... 1507.12.3, 1507.13.3
D7672—2012  Standard Specification for Evaluating Structural Capacities of Rim Board Products and Assemblies ......................... 2303.1.1
E84—2013A  Test Methods for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials ......................... 202, 402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 703.5.2, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1, 803.1.4, 803.10, 803.11, 806.7, 1404.12.1, 1407.9, 1407.10.1, 1409.9, 1409.10.1, 1510.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13, 2603.5.4, 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2, 2603.7.3, 2604.2.4, 2604.6, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.4
E90—09  Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements ......................... 1207.2, 1207.2.1
E108—2011  Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings ......................... 1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3
E119—2012A  Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials ......................... 703.2, 703.2.1, 703.2.3, 703.3, 703.4, 703.6, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 714.3.1, 714.4.1, 714.5.1, 716.2, Table 1613.6, 716.5.6, 716.5.8.1, Table 1616.6, 716.6.7.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.1, 716.6.2.1, Table 721.1(1), 1409.10.2, 2103.1, 2603.5.1
E1300—12  Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings ......................... 2404.1, 2404.2, 2404.3, 2404.3.2, 2404.3.3, 2404.3.4, 2404.3.5

ASTM—continued

E136—2012  Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C ......................... 703.5.1
E283—04  Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows Curtail Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Difference Across the Specimen ......................... 202
E329—14a  Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection ......................... 1704.2.1.1
E330—02  Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference ......................... 1409.10.2, 1709.5.2
E331—00 (2009)  Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference ......................... 1403.2
E339—14a  Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection ......................... 1704.2.1.1
E631—00 (2009)  Test Methods for Concentration Limits of Flammability of Chemical Vapors and Gases ......................... 202
E814—2013  Test Method of Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops ......................... 202, 714.3.1.2, 714.3.2, 714.3.4.1.1.2
E970—2010  Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source ......................... 720.3.1
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced section numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E1592—05(2012)</td>
<td>Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference</td>
<td>1504.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1886—05</td>
<td>Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Storm Shutters Impacted by Missiles and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials</td>
<td>1609.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2174—10AE1</td>
<td>Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops</td>
<td>1705.17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2393—10A</td>
<td>Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistant Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barrier</td>
<td>1705.17.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2397—11</td>
<td>Standard Practice for Determination of Dead Loads and Live Loads Associated with Green Roof Systems</td>
<td>1607.12.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2404—2013E1</td>
<td>Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Textile, Paper or Vinyl Wall or Ceiling Coverings to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics</td>
<td>803.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2556—10</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-Resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment</td>
<td>1404.2, 2510.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2568—09e1</td>
<td>Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems</td>
<td>1408.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2599—11</td>
<td>Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Reflective Insulation Materials and Vinyl Stretch Ceiling Materials for Building Applications to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics</td>
<td>2614.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2634—11</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Flat Wall Insulating Concrete Form (ICF) Systems</td>
<td>1903.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2751—11</td>
<td>Standard Practice for Design and Performance of Supported Glass Walkways</td>
<td>2409.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F547—(2012)</td>
<td>Terminology of Nails for Use with Wood and Wood-based Materials</td>
<td>Table 2506.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1667—11AE1</td>
<td>Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples</td>
<td>Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3), 1507.2.6, 1507.17.5, 2303.6, Table 2506.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2006—00 (2005) 10</td>
<td>Standard/Safety Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices for Nonemergency Escape (Egress) and Rescue (Ingress) Windows</td>
<td>1015.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2090—10</td>
<td>Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms</td>
<td>1015.8, 1015.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2200—2013</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Automated Vehicular Gate Construction</td>
<td>3110.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G152—06</td>
<td>Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials</td>
<td>1504.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G154—06</td>
<td>Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials</td>
<td>1504.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G155—05a</td>
<td>Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials</td>
<td>1504.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AWC

American Wood Council  
222 Catoctin SE, Suite 201  
Leesburg, VA 20175

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced section numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AWC WCD No. 4—2003</td>
<td>Wood Construction Data—Plank and Beam Framing for Residential Buildings</td>
<td>2306.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWC WFCM—2015</td>
<td>Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings</td>
<td>1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2301.2, 2308.2.4, 2309.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

#### AWC—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/AWC NDS—2015</td>
<td>National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction with 2015 NDS Supplement</td>
<td>Table 1604.3, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4, 1810.3.2.6, 1905.1.8, 2304.13, 2306.1, Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2), Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(2), 2307.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWC STJR—2015</td>
<td>Span Tables for Joists and Rafters</td>
<td>2306.1.1, 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1, 2308.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/AWC PWF—2015</td>
<td>Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification</td>
<td>1805.2, 1807.1.4, 2304.10.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWC SDPWS—2015</td>
<td>Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic</td>
<td>202, 2305.1, 2305.2, 2305.3, 2306.1, 2306.2, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(3), 2307.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### AWCI

Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry  
513 West Broad Street, Suite 210  
Falls Church, VA 22046

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### AWPA

American Wood Protection Association  
P.O. Box 361784  
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1—03</td>
<td>All Timber Products-Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes</td>
<td>1505.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M4—11</td>
<td>Standard for the Care of Preservative-treated Wood Products</td>
<td>1810.3.2.4.1, 2303.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U1—14</td>
<td>USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Section 6, Commodity Specification H</td>
<td>1403.6, Table 1507.9.6, 1807.1.4, 1807.3.1, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4.1, 2303.1.9, 2304.12.1, 2304.12.2, 2304.12.3, 2304.2.4, 2304.12.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### AWS

American Welding Society  
8669 NW 36 Street, #130  
Doral, FL 33166

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D1.4/D1.4M—2011</td>
<td>Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel Including Metal Inserts and Connections In Reinforced Concrete Construction</td>
<td>1704.5, 1705.3.1, Table 1705.3, 2107.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### BHMA

Builders Hardware Manufacturers’ Association  
355 Lexington Avenue, 17th Floor  
New York, NY 10017-6603

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A 156.10—2011</td>
<td>Power Operated Pedestrian Doors</td>
<td>1010.1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A 156.19—2013</td>
<td>Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Operated Doors</td>
<td>1010.1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A 156.27—11</td>
<td>Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors</td>
<td>1010.1.4.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CEN

**European Committee for Standardization (CEN)**  
**Central Secretariat**  
Rue de Stassart 36  
B-10 50 Brussels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EN 1081—98</td>
<td>Resilient Floor Coverings—Determination of the Electrical Resistance</td>
<td>406.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 15250—2007</td>
<td>Slow Heat Release Appliances Fired By Solid Fuel Requirements and Test Methods</td>
<td>2112.2, 2112.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CGSB

**Canadian General Standards Board**  
Place du Portage 111, 6B1  
11 Laurier Street  
Gatineau, Quebec, Canada K1A 1G6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAN/CGSB 37.54—95</td>
<td>Polyvinyl Chloride Roofing and Waterproofing Membrane</td>
<td>1507.13.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CPA

**Composite Panel Association**  
19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306  
Leesburg, VA 20176

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI A135.4—2012</td>
<td>Basic Hardboard</td>
<td>1404.3.1, 2303.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI A135.5—2012</td>
<td>Prefinished Hardboard Paneling</td>
<td>2303.1.7, 2304.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI A135.6—2012</td>
<td>Engineered Wood Siding</td>
<td>1404.3.2, 2303.1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A208.1—09</td>
<td>Particleboard</td>
<td>2303.1.8, 2303.1.8.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CPSC

**Consumer Product Safety Commission**  
4330 East West Highway  
Bethesda, MD 20814-4408

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16 CFR Part 1201 (2002)</td>
<td>Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Material</td>
<td>2406.2, Table 2406.2(1), 2406.3.1, 2406.7.1, 2407.1.4.1, 2408.2.1, 2409.3.1, 2409.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 CFR Part 1500 (2009)</td>
<td>Hazardous Substances and Articles; Administration and Enforcement Regulations</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### CSA
- **Canadian Standards Association**
  - 8501 East Pleasant Valley
  - Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referred in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11</td>
<td>Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights</td>
<td>1709.5.1, 2405.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CSSB
- **Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau**
  - P. O. Box 1178
  - Sumas, WA 98295-1178

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referred in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSSB—97</td>
<td>Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau</td>
<td>Table 1507.8.5, Table 1507.9.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DASMA
- **Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association International**
  - 1300 Summer Avenue
  - Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referred in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### DOC
- **U.S. Department of Commerce**
  - National Institute of Standards and Technology
  - 1401 Constitution Avenue NW
  - Washington, DC 20230

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referred in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PS—09</td>
<td>Structural Plywood</td>
<td>2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.7(4), Table 2304.7(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS—10</td>
<td>Performance Standard for Wood-based Structural-use Panels</td>
<td>2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.7(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS 20—05</td>
<td>American Softwood Lumber Standard</td>
<td>202, 1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DOE
- **U.S. Department of Energy**
  - 1000 Independence Avenue SW
  - Washington, DC 20585

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referred in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOE Zero Energy Ready Homes 2017</td>
<td>Zero Energy Ready Homes</td>
<td>101.10.7.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### DOL
U.S. Department of Labor
Frances Perkins Building
200 Constitution Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20210

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### DOTn
U.S. Department of Transportation
c/o Superintendent of Documents
East Building, 2nd floor
Washington, DC 20590

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49 CFR—1998</td>
<td>Specification of Transportation of Explosive and Other Dangerous Articles, UN 0335, UN 0336 Shipping Containers</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ENTERPRISE COMMUNITY PARTNERS
Enterprise Community Partners, Inc.
1100 Broken Land Parkway, Suite 700
Columbia, MD 21044

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E 329—14a Enterprise Green Communities Criteria 2015</td>
<td>Enterprise Green Communities Criteria</td>
<td>1704.2.1, 1101.12.5.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EPA
Environmental Protection Agency
Ariel Rios Building
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20460

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
### FEMA

Federal Emergency Management Agency  
Federal Center Plaza  
500 C Street S.W.  
Washington, DC 20472  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Reference in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FEMA-TB-11—01</td>
<td>Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Areas</td>
<td>1805.1.2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FM

Factory Mutual Global Research  
Standards Laboratories Department  
1301 Atwood Avenue, P.O. Box 7500  
Johnston, RI 02919  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Reference in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4430 (2012)</td>
<td>Approval Standard for Heat and Smoke Vents</td>
<td>910.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4474 (2011)</td>
<td>American National Standard for Evaluating the Simulated Wind Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies Using Static Positive and/or Negative Differential Pressures</td>
<td>1504.3.1, 1504.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4880-2010</td>
<td>Approval Standard for Class 1 Fire Rating of Insulated Wall or Wall and Roof/Ceiling Panels, Interior Finish Materials or Coatings and Exterior Wall Systems</td>
<td>2603.4, 2603.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GA

Gypsum Association  
6525 Belcrest Road, Suite 480  
Hyattsville, MD 20782  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Reference in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GA 216—13</td>
<td>Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products</td>
<td>Table 2508.1, 2509.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA 600—12</td>
<td>Fire-Resistance Design Manual, 20th Edition</td>
<td>Table 721.1(1), Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### HPVA

Hardwood Plywood Veneer Association  
1825 Michael Faraday Drive  
Reston, VA 20190  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Reference in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HP-1—2013</td>
<td>Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood</td>
<td>2303.3, 2304.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard reference number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Referenced in code number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC A117.1—09</td>
<td>Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC 300—12</td>
<td>ICC Standard on Bleachers, Folding and Telescopic Seating and Grandstands</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC 400—12</td>
<td>Standard on Design and Construction of Log Structures</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC 500—14</td>
<td>ICC/NSSA Standard on the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICC 600—14</td>
<td>Standard for Residential Construction in High-wind Regions</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEBC—15</td>
<td>International Existing Building Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IECC—15</td>
<td>International Energy Conservation Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFC—15</td>
<td>International Fire Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFGC—15</td>
<td>International Fuel Gas Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC—15</td>
<td>International Mechanical Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC—15</td>
<td>International Plumbing Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPMC—15</td>
<td>International Property Maintenance Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPSDC—15</td>
<td>International Private Sewage Disposal Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRC—15</td>
<td>International Residential Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IWUC—15</td>
<td>International Wildland-Urban Interface Code®</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBCCI SSTD 11—97</td>
<td>Test Standard for Determining Wind Resistance of Concrete or Clay Roof Tiles</td>
<td>202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.1.9.7, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1101.2, 1111.2, 1111.3, 1111.4, 1111.4.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# International Living Future Institute

International Living Future Institute
1501 E Madison Street
#100
Seattle, WA 98122

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| ISO | International Organization for Standardization | ISO Central Secretariat |
| ISO Central Secretariat 1 ch, de la Voie-Creuse, Case Postale 56 CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO 8115—86 Cotton Bales—Dimensions and Density</td>
<td>Table 307.1(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 8336—09 Fiber-Cement Flat Sheets - Product Specification and Test Methods</td>
<td>1404.10, 1405.16.1, 1405.16.2, Table 2509.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| MHI | Material Handling Institute | 8720 Red Oak Blvd. Suite 201 Charlotte, NC 28217 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI MH29.1—08 Safety Requirements for Industrial Scissors Lifts</td>
<td>3001.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| NAAMM | National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers | 800 Roosevelt Road, Bldg. C, Suite 312 Glen Ellyn, IL 60137 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FP 1001—07 Guide Specifications for Design of Metal Flag Poles</td>
<td>1609.1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| NCMA | National Concrete Masonry Association | 13750 Sunrise Valley Herndon, VA 22071-4662 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TEK 5—84 (1996) Details for Concrete Masonry Fire Walls</td>
<td>Table 721.1(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard reference number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Referenced in code section number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10—13</td>
<td>Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers</td>
<td>906.2, 906.3.2, 906.3.4, Table 906.3(1),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Table 906.3(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11—10</td>
<td>Standard for Low Expansion Foam</td>
<td>904.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—11</td>
<td>Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems</td>
<td>904.8, 904.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A—09</td>
<td>Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems</td>
<td>904.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13—13</td>
<td>Installation of Sprinkler Systems</td>
<td>708.2, 903.3.1.1, 903.3.2.2, 903.3.8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>904.11, 905.3.4, 907.6.4, 1019.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13D—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes</td>
<td>903.3.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13R—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Low Rise Residential Occupancies</td>
<td>.903.3.1.2, 903.3.5.2, 903.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose System</td>
<td>905.2, 905.3.4, 905.4.2, 905.6.2, 905.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16—15</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems</td>
<td>904.7, 904.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17—13</td>
<td>Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems</td>
<td>904.6, 904.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A—13</td>
<td>Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems</td>
<td>904.5, 904.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection</td>
<td>913.1, 913.2.1, 913.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30—12</td>
<td>Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code</td>
<td>.415.6, 507.8.1.1.1, 507.8.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31—11</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment</td>
<td>.2113.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32—11</td>
<td>Standard for Dry Cleaning Plants</td>
<td>.415.9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40—11</td>
<td>Standard for the Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Film</td>
<td>.409.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58—14</td>
<td>Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code</td>
<td>.415.9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Product Facilities</td>
<td>.426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70—14</td>
<td>National Electrical Code</td>
<td>.410.3.5, 509.4.2, 716.5, 716.5.7, 716.5.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>716.5.9.2, 716.6, 716.6.4, 1010.1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72—13</td>
<td>National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code</td>
<td>.407.4.4.3, 407.4.4.5, 407.4.4.5.1, 901.6, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.2, 907.2.6, 907.2.11, 907.2.13.2, 907.3, 907.3.3, 907.3.4, 907.5.2.1.2, 907.5.2.2, 907.5.2.2.5, 907.6, 907.6.1, 907.6.2, 907.6.6, 907.7, 907.7.1, 907.7.2, 907.9.3, 911.1.5, 2702.2.4, 3005.5, 3007.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80—13</td>
<td>Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives</td>
<td>.410.3.5, 509.4.2, 716.5, 716.5.7, 716.5.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>716.5.9.2, 716.6, 716.6.4, 1010.1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82—14</td>
<td>Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment</td>
<td>.713.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85—15</td>
<td>Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code</td>
<td>.415.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92—15</td>
<td>Standard for Smoke Control Systems</td>
<td>.909.7, 909.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99—15</td>
<td>Health Care Facilities Code</td>
<td>.407.10, 425.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101—15</td>
<td>Life Safety Code</td>
<td>.1029.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105—13</td>
<td>Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives</td>
<td>.405.4.2, 710.5.2.2, 716.5.3.1, 909.20.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>716.5.9.2, 716.6, 716.6.4, 1010.1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110—13</td>
<td>Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems</td>
<td>.2702.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111—13</td>
<td>Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems</td>
<td>.2702.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120—15</td>
<td>Standard for Fire Prevention and Control in Coal Mines</td>
<td>.426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211—13</td>
<td>Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances</td>
<td>.2112.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221—15</td>
<td>Standard for High Challenge Fire Walls, Fire Walls, and Fire Barrier Walls</td>
<td>.706.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252—12</td>
<td>Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies</td>
<td>.715.4.2, 715.4.3, 715.4.7.3.1, 716.3, 716.3.1, 716.4, 716.5.1, 716.5.3, 716.5.8, 716.5.8.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257—12</td>
<td>Standard for Fire Test for Window and Glass Block Assemblies</td>
<td>Table 716.3, 716.4, 716.5.3.2, 716.6, 716.6.1, 716.6.2, 716.6.7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259—13</td>
<td>Standard Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials</td>
<td>.2603.4.1.10, 2603.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265—11</td>
<td>Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth</td>
<td>.803.1.3, 803.1.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268—12</td>
<td>Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source</td>
<td>.1406.2.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.2, 2603.5.7, D105.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275—13</td>
<td>Standard Method of Fire Tests for the Evaluation of Thermal Barriers</td>
<td>.1407.10.2, 2603.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# REFERENCED STANDARDS

## NFPA—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Code Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>276—11</td>
<td>Standard Method of Fire Tests for Determining the Heat Release Rate of</td>
<td>1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>285—12</td>
<td>Standard Fire Test Method for the Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components</td>
<td>718.2.6, 1403.5, 1407.10.4, 1409.10.4, 1510.6.2, 2603.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>286—15</td>
<td>Standard Methods of Fire Test for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth</td>
<td>402.6.4.4, 803.1.2, 803.12.1, 803.11, 2603.4, 2603.7.2, 2603.9, 2604.2.4, 2614.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>288—12</td>
<td>Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Horizontal Fire Door Assemblies Installed in Horizontal in Fire-resistance-rated Floor Systems</td>
<td>712.1.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289—13</td>
<td>Standard Method of Fire Test for Individual Fuel Packages</td>
<td>402.6.2, 424.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>409—11</td>
<td>Standard for Aircraft Hangars</td>
<td>412.4.6, Table 412.4.6, 412.4.6.1, 412.6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>418—11</td>
<td>Standard for Heliports</td>
<td>412.8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>484—15</td>
<td>Standard for Combustible Metals</td>
<td>426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>654—13</td>
<td>Standard for the Prevention of Fire &amp; Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids</td>
<td>426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>655—12</td>
<td>Standard for the Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions</td>
<td>426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>664—12</td>
<td>Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities</td>
<td>426.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701—10</td>
<td>Standard Method of Fire Tests for Flame-Propagation of Textiles and Films</td>
<td>410.3.6, 424.2, 801.4, 806.1, 806.3, 806.4, 3102.3, 3102.3.1, 3102.6.1.1, 3105.4, D102.2.8, H106.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>704—12</td>
<td>Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response</td>
<td>202, 415.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720—15</td>
<td>Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment</td>
<td>9151.6.1, 915.1.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750—14</td>
<td>Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems</td>
<td>904.12.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1124—06</td>
<td>Code for the Manufacture, Transportation and Storage of Fireworks and Pyrotechnic Articles</td>
<td>415.6.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001—15</td>
<td>Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems</td>
<td>904.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Passive House Institute

Passive House Institute
Rheinstraße 44/46
64283 Darmstadt, Germany

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
### Passive House Institute US

Passive House Institute US (PHIUS)  
116 West Illinois Street  
Suite 5E  
Chicago, IL 60654, USA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHIUS+ 2018</td>
<td>PHIUS+ 2018 Passive House Building Standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PCI

Precast Prestressed Concrete Institute  
200 West Adams Street, Suite 2100  
Chicago, IL 60606-6938

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MNL 124—11</td>
<td>Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MNL 128—01</td>
<td>Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PTI

Post-Tensioning Institute  
38800 Country Club Drive  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PTI DC—10.5-12</td>
<td>Standard Requirements for Design and Analysis of Shallow Concrete Foundations on Expansive Soils</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RMI

Rack Manufacturers Institute  
8720 Red Oak Boulevard, Suite 201  
Charlotte, NC 28217

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/MH16.1—12</td>
<td>Specification for Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Storage Racks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SBCA

Structural Building Components Association  
6300 Enterprise Lane  
Madison, WI 53719

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/FS 100-12</td>
<td>Standard Requirements for Wind Pressure Resistance of Foam Plastic Insulating Sheathing Used in Exterior Wall Covering Assemblies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

#### SDI
Steel Deck Institute  
P. O. Box 426  
Glenshaw, PA 15116

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/NCI.0—10</td>
<td>Standard for Noncomposite Steel Floor Deck</td>
<td>2210.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/RD1.0—10</td>
<td>Standard for Steel Roof Deck</td>
<td>2210.1.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDI-C—2011</td>
<td>Standard for Composite Steel Floor Deck Slabs.</td>
<td>2210.1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDI-QA/QC—2011</td>
<td>Standard for Quality Control and Quality Assurance for Installation of Steel Deck</td>
<td>1705.2.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SJI
Steel Joist Institute  
1173B London Links Drive  
Forest, VA 24551

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CJ—10</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Composite Steel Joists, CJ-series</td>
<td>1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JG—10</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Joist Girders</td>
<td>1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K—10</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-series</td>
<td>1604.3.3, 2203.2, 2207.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SPRI
Single-Ply Roofing Institute  
411 Waverly Oaks Road, Suite 331B  
Waltham, MA 02452

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/SPRI/ FM4435-ES-1—11</td>
<td>Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems</td>
<td>1504.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/SPRI VF1—10</td>
<td>External Fire Design Standard for Vegetative Roofs</td>
<td>1505.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TIA
Telecommunications Industry Association  
1320 N. Courthouse Road  
Arlington, VA 22201-3834

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>222-G—05</td>
<td>Structural Standards for Antenna Supporting Structures and Antennas, including—Addendum 1, 222-G-1, Dated 2007, Addendum 2, 222-G-2 Dated 2009 Addendum 3, 222-3 dated 2013 and Addendum 4, 222-G-4 dated 2014</td>
<td>1609.1.1, 3108.1, 3108.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TMS
The Masonry Society  
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q  
Longmont, CO 80501

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>216—2013</td>
<td>Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies.</td>
<td>Table 721.1(2), 722.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

**TMS—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Reference Number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>302—2012</td>
<td>Standard Method for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls</td>
<td>1207.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402—2013</td>
<td>Building Code for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>1405.6.1, 1405.6.2, 1405.10, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 1807.1.6.3.2, 1808.9, 2101.2, 2106.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2109.2.1, 2109.3, 2110.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403—2013</td>
<td>Direct Design Handbook for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>2101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>602—2013</td>
<td>Specification for Masonry Structures</td>
<td>1405.6.1, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3, 2103.4, 2104.1, 2105.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TPI**

Truss Plate Institute  
218 N. Lee Street, Suite 312  
Alexandria, VA 22314

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Reference Number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TPI 1—2014</td>
<td>National Design Standard for Metal-plate-connected Wood Truss Construction</td>
<td>2303.4.6, 2306.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UL**

UL LLC  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Reference Number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9—2009</td>
<td>Fire Tests of Window Assemblies</td>
<td>715.5.2, 716.3.2, 716.4, 716.5.3.2, 716.6, 716.6.1, 716.6.2, 716.6.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A—2009</td>
<td>Tin Clad Fire Doors</td>
<td>716.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B—2008</td>
<td>Fire Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through April 2009</td>
<td>716.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10C—2009</td>
<td>Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies</td>
<td>716.5.1, 716.5.3, 1010.1.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14C—06</td>
<td>Swinging Hardware for Standard Tin Clad Fire Doors Mounted Singly and in Pairs—with Revisions through May 2013</td>
<td>716.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55A—04</td>
<td>Materials for Built-Up Roof Coverings</td>
<td>1507.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103—2010</td>
<td>Factory-built Chimneys, for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with Revisions through July 2012</td>
<td>718.2.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127—2011</td>
<td>Factory-built Fireplaces</td>
<td>718.2.5.1, 2111.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199E—04</td>
<td>Outline of Investigation for Fire Testing of Sprinklers and Water Spray Nozzles for Protection of Deep Fat Fryers</td>
<td>904.11.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217—06</td>
<td>Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with Revisions through April 2012</td>
<td>907.2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263—11</td>
<td>Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials</td>
<td>703.2, 703.2.1, 703.2.3, 703.3, 703.4, 703.6, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 707.7, 711.3.2, 714.3.1, 714.4.1.1, 715.1, 716.2, Table 716.3, 716.5.6, 716.5.8.1.1, 716.7.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.2.1, Table 721.1(1), 1407.10.2, 2103.1, 2603.4, 2603.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268—09</td>
<td>Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems</td>
<td>407.8, 907.2.6.2, 907.2.11.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294—1999</td>
<td>Access Control System Units—with Revisions through September 2010</td>
<td>1010.1.9.6, 1010.1.9.8, 1010.1.9.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300—05(R2010)</td>
<td>Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through July 16, 2010</td>
<td>904.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300A—06</td>
<td>Outline of Investigation for Extinguishing System Units for Residential Range Top Cooking Surfaces</td>
<td>407.2.6, 904.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305—2012</td>
<td>Panic Hardware</td>
<td>1010.1.10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325—02</td>
<td>Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems—with Revisions through June 2013</td>
<td>406.3.6, 3110.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555—2006</td>
<td>Fire Dampers—with Revisions through May 2012</td>
<td>717.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555C—2006</td>
<td>Ceiling Dampers—with Revisions through May 2010</td>
<td>717.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555S—99</td>
<td>Smoke Dampers—with Revisions through May 2012</td>
<td>717.3, 717.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>598—2006</td>
<td>Test for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies—with Revisions through July 2009</td>
<td>1504.3.1, 1504.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>641—2010</td>
<td>Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through May 2013</td>
<td>2113.11.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710B—2011</td>
<td>Recirculating Systems</td>
<td>904.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE 705
### REFERENCED STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>723—2008</td>
<td>Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials—with Revisions through September 2010</td>
<td>706.2, 703.5.2, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1.1, 803.1.4, 803.10, 803.11, 806.7, 1404.12.1, 1407.9, 1407.10.1, 1409.9, 1409.10.1, 1510.6.2, 1510.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13, 2606.3.5.4, 2603.7.1, 2603.7.2, 2603.7.3, 2604.2.4, 2606.4, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>790—04</td>
<td>Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with Revisions through October 2008</td>
<td>1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>793—08</td>
<td>Standards for Automatically Operated Roof Vents for Smoke and Heat—with Revisions through September 2011</td>
<td>406.8.5.1.1, 910.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>864—03</td>
<td>Standards for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems—with Revisions through August 2012</td>
<td>421.6.2, 909.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>924—06</td>
<td>Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment—with Revisions through February 2011</td>
<td>1013.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1040—96</td>
<td>Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction—with Revisions through October 2012</td>
<td>1407.10.3, 1409.10.3, 2603.4, 2603.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1256—02</td>
<td>Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction—with Revisions through January 2007</td>
<td>1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1479—03</td>
<td>Fire Tests of Through-penetration Firestops—with Revisions through October 2012</td>
<td>202, 714.3.1.2, 714.4.1.2, 714.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1482—2011</td>
<td>Solid-Fuel-type Room Heaters</td>
<td>2112.2, 2112.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1703—02</td>
<td>Flat-Plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with Revisions through November 2014</td>
<td>1505.9, 1507.17.1, 1507.17.6, 1509.7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1715—97</td>
<td>Fire Test of Interior Finish Material—with Revisions through January 2013</td>
<td>1407.10.3, 1409.10.2, 1409.10.3, 2603.4, 2603.9, 2614.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1777—2007</td>
<td>Chimney Liners—with Revisions through July 2009</td>
<td>2113.11.1, 2113.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1784—01</td>
<td>Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through July 2009</td>
<td>710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.2.1, 716.5.3.1, 716.5.7.1, 716.5.7.3, 3006.3, 3007.6.3, 3008.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1897—12</td>
<td>Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems</td>
<td>1504.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975—06</td>
<td>Fire Test of Foamed Plastics Used for Decorative Purposes</td>
<td>402.6.2, 402.6.4.5, 424.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1994—04</td>
<td>Luminous Egress Path Marking Systems—with Revisions through November 2010</td>
<td>411.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017—2008</td>
<td>Standards for General-purpose Signaling Devices and Systems—with Revisions through May 2011</td>
<td>406.8.5.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2034—2008</td>
<td>Standard for Single- and Multiple-Station Carbon Monoxide Alarm—with Revisions through February 2009</td>
<td>915.4.2, 915.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2075—2013</td>
<td>Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors</td>
<td>421.6.2, 406.8.5.1.1, 915.5.1, 915.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2196—2001</td>
<td>Tests for Fire Resistive Cables—with Revisions through March 2012</td>
<td>913.2.2, 2702.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200—2012</td>
<td>Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through June 2013</td>
<td>2702.1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ULC

Underwriters Laboratories of Canada
7 Underwriters Road
Toronto, Ontario, Canada M1R3B4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAN/ULC S 102.2—2010</td>
<td>Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Coverings and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies—with 2000 Revisions</td>
<td>720.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### USC
**United States Code**  
c/o Superintendent of Documents  
U.S. Government Printing Office  
732 North Capitol Street NW  
Washington, DC 20401

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18 USC Part 1, Ch.40</td>
<td>Importation, Manufacture, Distribution and Storage of Explosive Materials</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### USGBC
**U.S. Green Building Council**  
2101 L Street NW, Suite 500  
Washington, DC 20037

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LEED BD+C v.4</td>
<td>New Construction and Major Renovations, Core and Shell, Healthcare, Retail, Schools, Homes and Multifamily Lowrise, Homes Multifamily Midrise</td>
<td>101.10.6.6, 101.10.6.7, 101.10.7.8, 101.10.7.9, 101.12.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEED ID+C v.4</td>
<td>Commercial Interiors</td>
<td>101.10.6.6, 101.10.6.7, 101.10.7.8, 101.10.7.9, 101.12.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEED Zero Carbon v.1</td>
<td>LEED Zero Carbon</td>
<td>101.10.6.6, 101.10.7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEED Zero Energy v.1</td>
<td>LEED Zero Energy</td>
<td>101.10.6.7, 101.10.7.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WCLIB
**West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau**  
P. O. Box 23145  
Portland, OR 97281

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AITC Technical Note 7—96</td>
<td>Calculation of Fire Resistance of Glued Laminated Timbers</td>
<td>722.6.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 104—03</td>
<td>Typical Construction Details</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 110—01</td>
<td>Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 113—10</td>
<td>Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 117—10</td>
<td>Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 119—96</td>
<td>Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AITC 200—09</td>
<td>Manufacturing Quality Control Systems Manual for Structural Glued Laminated Timber</td>
<td>2306.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### WDMA
**Window and Door Manufacturers Association**  
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20036-3309

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/1.S.2/A440—11</td>
<td>Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights</td>
<td>1709.5.1, 2405.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard reference number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Referenced in code section number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRI/CRSI—81</td>
<td>Design of Slab-on-ground Foundations—with 1996 Update</td>
<td>1808.6.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX A
EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION A101
BUILDING OFFICIAL QUALIFICATIONS

A101.1 Building official. The building official shall have at least 10 years’ experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been supervisory experience. The building official should be certified as a building official through a recognized certification program. The building official shall be appointed or hired by the applicable governing authority.

A101.2 Chief inspector. The building official can designate supervisors to administer the provisions of this code and the Mechanical, Plumbing and Fuel Gas Codes. Each supervisor shall have at least 10 years’ experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been in a supervisory capacity. They shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

A101.3 Inspector and plans examiner. The building official shall appoint or hire such number of officers, inspectors, assistants and other employees as shall be authorized by the jurisdiction. A person shall not be appointed or hired as inspector of construction or plans examiner who has not had at least 5 years’ experience as a contractor, engineer, architect, or as a superintendent, foreman or competent mechanic in charge of construction. The inspector or plans examiner shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

A101.4 Termination of employment. Employees in the position of building official, chief inspector or inspector shall not be removed from office except for cause after full opportunity has been given to be heard on specific charges before such applicable governing authority.

SECTION A102
REFERENCED STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IBC—15</td>
<td>International Building Code</td>
<td>A101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMC—15</td>
<td>International Mechanical Code</td>
<td>A101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC—15</td>
<td>International Plumbing Code</td>
<td>A101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFGC—15</td>
<td>International Fuel Gas Code</td>
<td>A101.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX B
BOARD OF APPEALS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION B101
GENERAL

B101.1 Application. The application for appeal shall be filed on a form obtained from the building official within 20 days after the notice was served.

B101.2 Membership of board. The board of appeals shall consist of persons appointed by the chief appointing authority as follows:

1. One for 5 years; one for 4 years; one for 3 years; one for 2 years; and one for 1 year.
2. Thereafter, each new member shall serve for 5 years or until a successor has been appointed.

The building official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall have no vote on any matter before the board.

B101.2.1 Alternate members. The chief appointing authority shall appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership and shall be appointed for 5 years, or until a successor has been appointed.

B101.2.2 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of five individuals, one from each of the following professions or disciplines:

1. Registered design professional with architectural experience or a builder or superintendent of building construction with at least 10 years’ experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.
2. Registered design professional with structural engineering experience.
3. Registered design professional with mechanical and plumbing engineering experience or a mechanical contractor with at least 10 years’ experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.
4. Registered design professional with electrical engineering experience or an electrical contractor with at least 10 years’ experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.
5. Registered design professional with fire protection engineering experience or a fire protection contractor with at least 10 years’ experience, 5 of which shall have been in responsible charge of work.

B101.2.3 Rules and procedures. The board is authorized to establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties.

B101.2.4 Chairperson. The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

B101.2.5 Disqualification of member. A member shall not hear an appeal in which that member has a personal, professional or financial interest.

B101.2.6 Secretary. The chief administrative officer shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings in the office of the chief administrative officer.

B101.2.7 Compensation of members. Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

B101.3 Notice of meeting. The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson, within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic meetings.

B101.3.1 Open hearing. All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant’s representative, the building official and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

B101.3.2 Procedure. The board shall adopt and make available to the public through the secretary procedures under which a hearing will be conducted. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be received.

B101.3.3 Postponed hearing. When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant’s representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

B101.4 Board decision. The board shall modify or reverse the decision of the building official by a concurring vote of two-thirds of its members.

B101.4.1 Resolution. The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Certified copies shall be furnished to the appellant and to the building official.

B101.4.2 Administration. The building official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.
APPENDIX C
GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION C101
GENERAL

C101.1 Scope. The provisions of this appendix shall apply exclusively to agricultural buildings. Such buildings shall be classified as Group U and shall include the following uses:

1. Livestock shelters or buildings, including shade structures and milking barns.
2. Poultry buildings or shelters.
4. Storage of equipment and machinery used exclusively in agriculture.
5. Horticultural structures, including detached production greenhouses and crop protection shelters.
7. Grain silos.
8. Stables.

SECTION C102
ALLOWABLE HEIGHT AND AREA

C102.1 General. Buildings classified as Group U Agricultural shall not exceed the area or height limits specified in Table C102.1.

C102.2 One-story unlimited area. The area of a one-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

C102.3 Two-story unlimited area. The area of a two-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width and is provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

SECTION C103
MIXED OCCUPANCIES

C103.1 Mixed occupancies. Mixed occupancies shall be protected in accordance with Section 508.

SECTION C104
EXITS

C104.1 Exit facilities. Exits shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 10 and 11.

Exceptions:

1. The maximum travel distance from any point in the building to an approved exit shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm).
2. One exit is required for each 15,000 square feet (1393.5 m²) of area or fraction thereof.

| BASIC ALLOWABLE AREA FOR A GROUP U, ONE STORY IN HEIGHT AND MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF SUCH OCCUPANCY |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| | I                | II               | III and IV        | V                 |
| A | 60,000           | 27,100           | 18,000            | 21,100            |
| B | 27,100           | 18,000            | 21,100            | 12,000            |

ALLOWABLE AREA (square feet)*

MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN STORIES

| Unlimited | 12 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 2 |

MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN FEET

| Unlimited | 160 | 65 | 55 | 50 | 40 |

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

a. See Section C102 for unlimited area under certain conditions.
APPENDIX D
FIRE DISTRICTS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION D101
GENERAL

D101.1 Scope. The fire district shall include such territory or portion as outlined in an ordinance or law entitled “An Ordinance (Resolution) Creating and Establishing a Fire District.” Wherever, in such ordinance creating and establishing a fire district, reference is made to the fire district, it shall be construed to mean the fire district designated and referred to in this appendix.

D101.1.1 Mapping. The fire district complying with the provisions of Section D101.1 shall be shown on a map that shall be available to the public.

D101.2 Establishment of area. For the purpose of this code, the fire district shall include that territory or area as described in Sections D101.2.1 through D101.2.3.

D101.2.1 Adjoining blocks. Two or more adjoining blocks, exclusive of intervening streets, where at least 50 percent of the ground area is built upon and more than 50 percent of the built-on area is devoted to hotels and motels of Group R-1; Group B occupancies; theaters, nightclubs, restaurants of Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies; garages, express and freight depots, warehouses and storage buildings used for the storage of finished products (not located with and forming a part of a manufactured or industrial plant); or Group S occupancy. Where the average height of a building is two and one-half stories or more, a block should be considered if the ground area built upon is at least 40 percent.

D101.2.2 Buffer zone. Where four contiguous blocks or more comprise a fire district, there shall be a buffer zone of 200 feet (60 960 mm) around the perimeter of such district. Streets, rights-of-way and other open spaces not subject to building construction can be included in the 200-foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone.

D101.2.3 Developed blocks. Where blocks adjacent to the fire district have developed to the extent that at least 25 percent of the ground area is built upon and 40 percent or more of the built-on area is devoted to the occupancies specified in Section D101.2.1, they can be considered for inclusion in the fire district, and can form all or a portion of the 200-foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone required in Section D101.2.2.

SECTION D102
BUILDING RESTRICTIONS

D102.2 Other specific requirements.

D102.2.1 Exterior walls. Exterior walls of buildings located in the fire district shall comply with the requirements in Table 601 except as required in Section D102.2.6.

D102.2.2 Group H prohibited. Group H occupancies shall be prohibited from location within the fire district.

D102.2.3 Construction type. Every building shall be constructed as required based on the type of construction indicated in Chapter 6.

D102.2.4 Roof covering. Roof covering in the fire district shall conform to the requirements of Class A or B roof coverings as defined in Section 1505.

D102.2.5 Structural fire rating. Walls, floors, roofs and their supporting structural members shall be a minimum of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Type IV construction.
2. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. Automobile parking structures.
4. Buildings surrounded on all sides by a permanently open space of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm).
5. Partitions complying with Section 603.1, Item 11.

D102.2.6 Exterior walls. Exterior load-bearing walls of Type II buildings shall have a fire-resistance rating of 2 hours or more where such walls are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line. Exterior nonload-bearing walls of Type II buildings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line shall have fire-resistance ratings as required by Table 601, but not less than 1 hour. Exterior walls located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line shall comply with Table 601.

Exception: In the case of one-story buildings that are 2,000 square feet (186 m²) or less in area, exterior walls located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line need only comply with Table 601.

D102.2.7 Architectural trim. Architectural trim on buildings located in the fire district shall be constructed of approved noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood.
D102.2.8 Permanent canopies. Permanent canopies are permitted to extend over adjacent open spaces provided all of the following are met:

1. The canopy and its supports shall be of noncombustible material, fire-retardant-treated wood, Type IV construction or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

   Exception: Any textile covering for the canopy shall be flame resistant as determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 701 after both accelerated water leaching and accelerated weathering.

2. Any canopy covering, other than textiles, shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 in the form intended for use.

3. The canopy shall have at least one long side open.

4. The maximum horizontal width of the canopy shall not exceed 15 feet (4572 mm).

5. The fire resistance of exterior walls shall not be reduced.

D102.2.9 Roof structures. Structures, except aerial supports 12 feet (3658 mm) high or less, flagpoles, water tanks and cooling towers, placed above the roof of any building within the fire district shall be of noncombustible material and shall be supported by construction of noncombustible material.

D102.2.10 Plastic signs. The use of plastics complying with Section 2611 for signs is permitted provided the structure of the sign in which the plastic is mounted or installed is noncombustible.

D102.2.11 Plastic veneer. Exterior plastic veneer is not permitted in the fire district.

SECTION D103
CHANGES TO BUILDINGS

D103.1 Existing buildings within the fire district. An existing building shall not hereafter be increased in height or area unless it is of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district or is altered to comply with the requirements for such type of construction. Nor shall any existing building be hereafter extended on any side, nor square footage or floors added within the existing building unless such modifications are of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district.

D103.2 Other alterations. Nothing in Section D103.1 shall prohibit other alterations within the fire district provided there is no change of occupancy that is otherwise prohibited and the fire hazard is not increased by such alteration.

D103.3 Moving buildings. Buildings shall not hereafter be moved into the fire district or to another lot in the fire district unless the building is of a type of construction permitted in the fire district.

SECTION D104
BUILDINGS LOCATED PARTIALLY IN THE FIRE DISTRICT

D104.1 General. Any building located partially in the fire district shall be of a type of construction required for the fire district, unless the major portion of such building lies outside of the fire district and no part is more than 10 feet (3048 mm) inside the boundaries of the fire district.

SECTION D105
EXCEPTIONS TO RESTRICTIONS IN FIRE DISTRICT

D105.1 General. The preceding provisions of this appendix shall not apply in the following instances:

1. Temporary buildings used in connection with duly authorized construction.

2. A private garage used exclusively as such, not more than one story in height, nor more than 650 square feet (60 m²) in area, located on the same lot with a dwelling.

3. Fences not over 8 feet (2438 mm) high.

4. Coal tipples, material bins and trestles of Type IV construction.

5. Water tanks and cooling towers conforming to Sections 1509.3 and 1509.4.

6. Greenhouses less than 15 feet (4572 mm) high.

7. Porches on dwellings not over one story in height, and not over 10 feet (3048 mm) wide from the face of the building, provided such porch does not come within 5 feet (1524 mm) of any property line.

8. Sheds open on a long side not over 15 feet (4572 mm) high and 500 square feet (46 m²) in area.

9. One- and two-family dwellings where of a type of construction not permitted in the fire district can be extended 25 percent of the floor area existing at the time of inclusion in the fire district by any type of construction permitted by this code.

10. Wood decks less than 600 square feet (56 m²) where constructed of 2-inch (51 mm) nominal wood, pressure treated for exterior use.

11. Wood veneers on exterior walls conforming to Section 1405.5.

12. Exterior plastic veneer complying with Section 2605.2 where installed on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating not less than 1 hour, provided the exterior plastic veneer does not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.
# SECTION D106
## REFERENCED STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E84—2013A</td>
<td>Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials</td>
<td>D102.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 268—12</td>
<td>Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source</td>
<td>D105.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA 701—10</td>
<td>Methods of Fire Tests for Flame-Propagation of Textiles and Films</td>
<td>D102.2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UL 723—08</td>
<td>Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, with Revisions through September 2010</td>
<td>D102.2.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX E
SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION E101
GENERAL

E101.1 Scope. The provisions of this appendix shall control the supplementary requirements for the design and construction of facilities for accessibility for individuals with disabilities.

E101.2 Design. Technical requirements for items herein shall comply with this code and ICC A117.1.

SECTION E102
DEFINITIONS

E102.1 General. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE. A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entrance to a facility.

MAILBOXES. Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages or other deliverable matter. Mailboxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment houses and schools.

TRANSIENT LODGING. A building, facility or portion thereof, excluding inpatient medical care facilities and long-term care facilities, that contains one or more dwelling units or sleeping units. Examples of transient lodging include, but are not limited to, resorts, group homes, hotels, motels, dormitories, homeless shelters, halfway houses and social service lodging.

TTY. An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYs may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons), or computers with special modems. TTYs are also called text telephones.

SECTION E103
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE

E103.1 Raised platforms. In banquet rooms or spaces where a head table or speaker’s lectern is located on a raised platform, an accessible route shall be provided to the platform.

SECTION E104
SPECIAL OCCUPANCIES

E104.1 General. Transient lodging facilities shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Sections E104.2 and E104.3. Group I-3 occupancies shall be provided with accessible features in accordance with Section E104.2.

E104.2 Communication features. Accessible communication features shall be provided in accordance with Sections E104.2.1 through E104.2.4.

E104.2.1 Transient lodging. In transient lodging facilities, sleeping units with accessible communication features shall be provided in accordance with Table E104.2.1. Units required to comply with Table E104.2.1 shall be dispersed among the various classes of units.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOTAL NUMBER OF DWELLING OR SLEEPING UNITS PROVIDED</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF DWELLING OR SLEEPING UNITS WITH ACCESSIBLE COMMUNICATION FEATURES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 to 25</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 to 50</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 75</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 to 100</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 200</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 1,000</td>
<td>5% of total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,001 and over</td>
<td>50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
E104.2.2 Group I-3. In Group I-3 occupancies at least 2 percent, but no fewer than one of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell, shall comply with Section E104.2.4.

E104.2.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units. Where dwelling units and sleeping units are altered or added, the requirements of Section E104.2 shall apply only to the units being altered or added until the number of units with accessible communication features complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

E104.2.4 Notification devices. Visual notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visual alarm signal appliances. Permanently installed telephones shall have volume controls and an electrical outlet complying with ICC A117.1 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

E104.3 Vanity countertop space. In transient lodging facilities, if vanity countertop space is provided in toilet or bathing rooms serving sleeping units that are not required to be accessible, accessible vanity countertop space, comparable in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in toilet rooms or bathrooms serving accessible units.

SECTION E105
OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES

E105.1 Portable toilets and bathing rooms. Where multiple single-user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one toilet unit or bathing unit at each cluster, shall be accessible. Signs containing the International Symbol of Accessibility shall identify accessible portable toilets and bathing units.

Exception: Portable toilet units provided for use exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site.

E105.2 Laundry equipment. Where provided in spaces required to be accessible, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with this section.

E105.2.1 Washing machines. Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall be accessible. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall be accessible.

E105.2.2 Clothes dryers. Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall be accessible. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall be accessible.

E105.3 Gaming machines, depositories, vending machines, change machines and similar equipment. At least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine and similar equipment shall be accessible. Two percent of gaming machines shall be accessible and provided with a front approach. Accessible gaming machines shall be distributed throughout the different types of gaming machines provided.

Exception: Drive-up-only depositories are not required to comply with this section.

E105.4 Mailboxes. Where mailboxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but not less than one, of each type shall be accessible. In residential and institutional facilities, where mailboxes are provided for each dwelling unit or sleeping unit, accessible mailboxes shall be provided for each unit required to be an Accessible unit.

E105.5 Automatic teller machines and fare machines. Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided, at least one machine of each type at each location where such machines are provided shall be accessible. Where bins are provided for envelopes, wastepaper or other purposes, at least one of each type shall be accessible.

E105.6 Two-way communication systems. Where two-way communication systems are provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall be accessible.

SECTION E106
TELEPHONES

E106.1 General. Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, courtesy phones or other types of public telephones are provided, accessible public telephones shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.2 through E106.5 for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered two or more adjacent telephones.

E106.2 Wheelchair-accessible telephones. Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair-accessible telephones shall be provided in accordance with Table E106.2.

Exception: Drive-up-only public telephones are not required to be accessible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF TELEPHONES PROVIDED ON A FLOOR, LEVEL OR EXTERIOR SITE</th>
<th>MINIMUM REQUIRED NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR-ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 or more single unit</td>
<td>1 per floor, level and exterior site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 bank</td>
<td>1 per floor, level and exterior site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or more banks</td>
<td>1 per bank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E106.3 Volume controls. All public telephones provided shall have accessible volume control.

E106.4 TTYs. TTYs shall be provided in accordance with Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.9.
E106.4.1 Bank requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY shall be provided at that bank.

Exception: TTYs are not required at banks of telephones located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of, and on the same floor as, a bank containing a public TTY.

E106.4.2 Floor requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

E106.4.3 Building requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a privately owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a publicly owned building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.

E106.4.4 Site requirement. Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that site.

E106.4.5 Rest stops, emergency road stops and service plazas. Where a public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency road stop or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

E106.4.6 Hospitals. Where a public pay telephone is provided in or adjacent to a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each such location.

E106.4.7 Transportation facilities. Transportation facilities shall be provided with TTYs in accordance with Sections E109.2.5 and E110.2 in addition to the TTYs required by Sections E106.4.1 through E106.4.4.

E106.4.8 Detention and correctional facilities. In detention and correctional facilities, where a public pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, then at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

E106.4.9 Signs. Public TTYs shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with ICC A117.1. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. Additionally, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYs. Such signs shall comply with visual signage requirements in ICC A117.1 and shall include the International Symbol of TTY.

E106.5 Shelves for portable TTYs. Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet.

Exceptions:

1. In secured areas of detention and correctional facilities, if shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shelves and outlets for TTYs are not required to be provided.

2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.

SECTION E107
SIGNAGE

E107.1 Signs. Required accessible portable toilets and bathing facilities shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility.

E107.2 Designations. Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall be visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with ICC A117.1. Where pictograms are provided as designations of interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall have visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with ICC A117.1.

Exceptions:

1. Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve are not required to comply.

2. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses and company names and logos are not required to comply.

3. Signs in parking facilities are not required to comply.

4. Temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply.

5. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public areas are not required to comply.

E107.3 Directional and informational signs. Signs that provide direction to, or information about, permanent interior spaces of the site and facilities shall contain visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.

Exception: Building directories, personnel names, company or occupant names and logos, menus and temporary (seven days or less) signs are not required to comply with ICC A117.1.

E107.4 Other signs. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as follows:

1. At bus stops and terminals, signage must be provided in accordance with Section E108.4.

2. At fixed facilities and stations, signage must be provided in accordance with Sections E109.2.2 through E109.2.2.3.

3. At airports, terminal information systems must be provided in accordance with Section E110.3.

SECTION E108
BUS STOPS

E108.1 General. Bus stops shall comply with Sections E108.2 through E108.5.
E108.2 Bus boarding and alighting areas. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with Sections E108.2.1 through E108.2.4.

E108.2.1 Surface. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.

E108.2.2 Dimensions. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall have a clear length of 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

E108.2.3 Connection. Bus boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 1104.

E108.2.4 Slope. Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:48 perpendicular to the roadway is allowed.

E108.3 Bus shelters. Where provided, new or replaced bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with ICC A117.1, Section 305, entirely within the shelter. Such shelters shall be connected by an accessible route to the boarding area required by Section E108.2.

E108.4 Signs. New bus route identification signs shall have finish and contrast complying with ICC A117.1. Additionally, to the maximum extent practicable, new bus route identification signs shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1.

Exception: Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay are not required to meet this requirement.

E108.5 Bus stop siting. Bus stop sites shall be chosen such that, to the maximum extent practicable, the areas where lifts or ramps are to be deployed comply with Sections E108.2 and E108.3.

SECTION E109
TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS

E109.1 General. Fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section E109.2.

E109.2 New construction. New stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with Sections E109.2.1 through E109.2.8.

E109.2.1 Station entrances. Where different entrances to a station serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, at least one entrance serving each group or route shall comply with Section 1104.

E109.2.2 Signs. Signage in fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with Sections E109.2.2.1 through E109.2.2.3.

E109.2.2.1 Raised character and braille signs. Where signs are provided at entrances to stations identifying the station or the entrance, or both, at least one sign at each entrance shall be raised characters and braille. A minimum of one raised character and braille sign identifying the specific station shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Such signs shall be placed in uniform locations at entrances and on platforms or boarding areas within the transit system to the maximum extent practicable.

Exceptions:

1. Where the station has no defined entrance but signs are provided, the raised characters and braille signs shall be placed in a central location.

2. Signs are not required to be raised characters and braille where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers, or are user or proximity actuated.

E109.2.2.2 Identification signs. Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs containing visual characters complying with ICC A117.1. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sightlines of a standing or sitting passenger from within the train on both sides when not obstructed by another train.

E109.2.2.3 Informational signs. Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station that are located on boarding areas, platforms or mezzanines shall provide visual characters complying with ICC A117.1. Signs covered by this provision shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the transit system.

E109.2.3 Fare machines. Self-service fare vending, collection and adjustment machines shall comply with ICC A117.1, Section 707. Where self-service fare vending, collection or adjustment machines are provided for the use of the general public, at least one accessible machine of each type provided shall be provided at each accessible point of entry and exit.

E109.2.4 Rail-to-platform height. Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable provisions of 36 CFR, Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (250 mm) minimum above top of rail.

Exception: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (250 mm).

E109.2.5 TTYs. Where a public pay telephone is provided in a transit facility (as defined by the Department of Transportation), at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided in the station. In addition, where one or more public pay telephones serve a particular entrance to a transportation facility, at least one TTY telephone complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall be provided to serve that entrance.
E109.2.6 Track crossings. Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, an accessible route shall be provided.

Exception: Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches (64 mm) maximum.

E109.2.7 Public address systems. Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

E109.2.8 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with visual character requirements.

SECTION E110
AIRPORTS

E110.1 New construction. New construction of airports shall comply with Sections E110.2 through E110.4.

E110.2 TTYs. Where public pay telephones are provided, at least one TTY shall be provided in compliance with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4. Additionally, if four or more public pay telephones are located in a main terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY complying with ICC A117.1, Section 704.4, shall also be provided in each such location.

E110.3 Terminal information systems. Where terminal information systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

E110.4 Clocks. Where clocks are provided for use by the general public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are mounted overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with visual character requirements.

SECTION E111
REFERENCED STANDARDS

DOJ 36 CFR Part 1192
Americans with Disabilities Act
(ADA) Accessibility Guidelines
for Transportation Vehicles
(ADAAG), Washington, DC:
Department of Justice, 1991

IBC-15
International Building Code

ICC Accessible and Usable
Buildings and Facilities

E101.2, E104.2.4,
E106.4.9,
E107.2, E107.3,
E108.3, E108.4,
E109.2.2.2, E109.2.2.3,
E109.2.3, E109.2.5, E110.2
APPENDIX F

RODENTPROOFING

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION F101

GENERAL

F101.1 General. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

F101.2 Foundation wall ventilation openings. Foundation wall ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with perforated sheet metal plates no less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick, expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick, cast-iron grills or grating, extruded aluminum load-bearing vents or with hardware cloth of 0.035 inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier. The openings therein shall not exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm).

F101.3 Foundation and exterior wall sealing. Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such openings with cement mortar, concrete masonry or noncorrosive metal.

F101.4 Doors. Doors on which metal protection has been applied shall be hinged so as to be free swinging. When closed, the maximum clearance between any door, door jambs and sills shall be not greater than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm).

F101.5 Windows and other openings. Windows and other openings for the purpose of light or ventilation located in exterior walls within 2 feet (610 mm) above the existing ground level immediately below such opening shall be covered for their entire height and width, including frame, with hardware cloth of at least 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.

F101.5.1 Rodent-accessible openings. Windows and other openings for the purpose of light and ventilation in the exterior walls not covered in this chapter, accessible to rodents by way of exposed pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances, shall be covered with wire cloth of at least 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire. In lieu of wire cloth covering, said pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances shall be blocked from rodent usage by installing solid sheet metal guards 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick. Guards shall be fitted around pipes, wires, conduits or other appurtenances. In addition, they shall be fastened securely to and shall extend perpendicularly from the exterior wall for a minimum distance of 12 inches (305 mm) beyond and on either side of pipes, wires, conduits or appurtenances.

F101.6 Pier and wood construction.

F101.6.1 Sill less than 12 inches above ground. Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation shall be provided with protection against rodents at grade by providing either an apron in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1 or a floor slab in accordance with Section F101.6.1.2.

F101.6.1.1 Apron. Where an apron is provided, the apron shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above, nor less than 24 inches (610 mm) below, grade. The apron shall not terminate below the lower edge of the siding material. The apron shall be constructed of an approved nondecayable, water-resistant rodentproofing material of required strength and shall be installed around the entire perimeter of the building. Where constructed of masonry or concrete materials, the apron shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness.

F101.6.1.2 Grade floors. Where continuous concrete-grade floor slabs are provided, open spaces shall not be left between the slab and walls, and openings in the slab shall be protected.

F101.6.2 Sill at or above 12 inches above ground. Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation and that have sills 12 inches (305 mm) or more above ground level shall be provided with protection against rodents at grade in accordance with any of the following:

1. Section F101.6.1.1 or F101.6.1.2.
2. By installing solid sheet metal collars at least 0.024 inch (0.6 mm) thick at the top of each pier or pile and around each pipe, cable, conduit, wire or other item that provides a continuous pathway from the ground to the floor.
3. By encasing the pipes, cables, conduits or wires in an enclosure constructed in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1.
APPENDIX G
FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION G101
ADMINISTRATION

G101.1 Purpose. The purpose of this appendix is to promote the public health, safety and general welfare and to minimize public and private losses due to flood conditions in specific flood hazard areas through the establishment of comprehensive regulations in the Construction Codes for management of construction activities in flood hazard areas that meet the requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program for District of Columbia participation as set forth in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 44, Section 59.22.

G101.2 Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia. The flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes, including this appendix, in combination with the Department of Energy and Environment (DOEE)'s flood resilience rules, set forth in Title 20, Chapter 31 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations (DCMR) (DOEE Flood Resilience Rules), and Section 6-502 of the DC Official Code (2018 Repl.), comprise the Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia. The Floodplain Administrator retains all floodplain management responsibilities that are not assigned to the code official.

G101.2.1 Conflict between DOEE Flood Resilience Rules and Flood-Resistant Construction Provisions of the Construction Codes. The flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes, including but not limited to those set forth in Chapter 1 and Appendix G of the Building Code, are intended to meet requirements necessary for the District of Columbia to participate in the National Flood Insurance Program, and shall take precedence over any provisions in Title 20, Chapter 31 of the DCMR that apply to proposed development of a development site located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area that is within the scope of Appendix G, except to the extent that Appendix G requires the code official to seek review, approval and/or involvement by the Floodplain Administrator. Floodplain management responsibilities delegated by Appendix G to the building code official, include, but are not limited to, permitting of work in flood hazard areas and inspection of work in flood hazard areas for which permits have been issued.

G101.3 Objectives. The objectives of this appendix, in combination with the flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes, are to protect human life, minimize the expenditure of public money for flood control projects, minimize the need for rescue and relief efforts associated with flooding, minimize prolonged business interruption, minimize damage to public facilities and utilities, help maintain a stable tax base by providing for the sound use and development of flood-prone areas, contribute to improved construction techniques in the floodplain and ensure that potential owners and occupants are notified that property is within flood hazard areas.

G101.4 Scope. The provisions of this appendix, in combination with the flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes, shall apply to all proposed development on a development site that is wholly or partially within a flood hazard area established in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31, including certain work exempt from permit under Section 105.2 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR.

G101.5 Administration and enforcement. The administrative and enforcement provisions of Chapter 1 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR, shall apply to any development within the scope of this appendix, and to any permits and inspections relating thereto.

G101.6 Violations. Any violation of a provision of this appendix, or failure to comply with a permit or code modification associated with a permit issued pursuant to this appendix or any requirement of this appendix, shall be handled in accordance with the administration and enforcement provisions set forth in Chapter 1 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR.

G101.7 Warning. The degree of flood protection required by the Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia is considered the minimum reasonable degree of protection for regulatory purposes and is based on scientific and engineering considerations. Larger floods can and will occur. Flood heights may be increased by man-made or natural causes. This appendix does not imply that land outside of mapped flood hazard areas, or that uses permitted within such flood hazard areas, will be free from flooding or flood damage. No guarantee of vested use, existing use, or future use is implied or expressed by compliance with the Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia.

G101.8 Disclaimer of liability. The Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia shall not create liability on the part of the District of Columbia or by any official or employee thereof for any flood damage that results from reliance on the Floodplain Management Regulations of the District of Columbia or any administrative decision lawfully made thereunder.
**SECTION G102
APPLICABILITY**

G102.1 General. This appendix, in conjunction with the Construction Codes, provides minimum requirements for development on a development site located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area.

G102.2 Establishment of flood hazard areas. Flood hazard areas are established in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

**SECTION G103
POWERS AND DUTIES**

G103.1 Permit applications. The code official shall review all permit applications to determine whether the proposed development is located on a development site that is wholly or partially within flood hazard areas established in Section G102.2. Where a proposed development site is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, all development to which this appendix is applicable as specified in Section G102.1 shall be designed and constructed with methods, practices and materials that minimize flood damage and that are in accordance with the Construction Codes and ASCE 24.

G103.1.1 Determinations of substantial improvement and substantial damage. For applications for reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, alteration, addition or other improvement of existing buildings or structures located in flood hazard areas, the code official, in coordination with the Floodplain Administrator, shall determine if the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage. Where the code official determines that the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage, and where required by the Construction Codes, the code official shall require the building or structure to meet the flood-resistant construction requirements of the Construction Codes, as applicable. The code official’s determinations of substantial damage and substantial improvement shall be subject to review by the Floodplain Administrator, and receipt of recommendations and comments from the Floodplain Administrator regarding disposition of the application by the code official.

G103.1.1.1 Authority to request data. The code official shall have authority to request submission by a permit applicant of any information or documentation that the code official deems necessary to make a determination of substantial improvement and substantial damage, including but not limited to estimates of the improvement or repair costs pursuant to the methodology set forth in the Substantial Improvement/Substantial Damage Desk Reference.

G103.2 Determination of design flood elevations. Design flood elevations shall be reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator in accordance with 20 DCMR. If design flood elevations are not specified on the FIRM, the code official is authorized to require the applicant to do either of the following:

1. Obtain, review and reasonably utilize data available from a federal, state or other source.
2. Determine the design flood elevation in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering techniques. Such analyses shall be performed and sealed by a registered design professional. Studies, analyses and computations shall be submitted in sufficient detail to allow review and approval by the code official. The accuracy of data submitted for such determination shall be the responsibility of the applicant.

G103.3 Activities in riverine flood hazard areas. In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the code official shall not permit any new construction, substantial improvement or other development, including fill, on a development site, unless the applicant submits an engineering analysis prepared by a registered design professional in accordance with Section 1612.3.2; and such analysis is reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator pursuant to 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

G103.4 Floodway encroachment. Prior to issuing a permit for any floodway encroachment, including fill, new construction, substantial improvements and other development or land-disturbing activity, the applicant shall submit a “no-rise” certification, prepared by a registered design professional, along with supporting technical data, demonstrating that such development will not cause any increase of the base flood level. The code official shall refer the certification to the Floodplain Administrator for review and approval before issuing a permit for any floodway encroachment.

G103.5 Watercourse alteration. Authorization to alter or relocate any watercourse shall be obtained from the Floodplain Administrator pursuant to 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

G103.6 Review and consultation by Floodplain Administrator. No permit application within the scope of this appendix and the flood-resistant construction provisions of the Construction Codes shall be granted without review by the Floodplain Administrator. The Floodplain Administrator shall review applications and make recommendations to the code official pursuant to his or her responsibilities as set forth in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

G103.7 Coordination of duties. The code official and the Floodplain Administrator shall coordinate duties and responsibilities relating to development on a development site located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area as necessary to achieve compliance with the requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program for District of Columbia participation (Title 44 CFR, Section 59.22), and to streamline the permitting and inspection process for such development, consistent with this appendix.

G103.8 Records. The code official shall comply with the record retention requirements applicable to permits and associated documentation related to development on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, as set forth in 12-A DCMR, Section 104.7.
SECTION G104
PERMITS

G104.1 Required. Any person, owner or owner’s authorized agent who intends to conduct any development of a development site located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall first make application to the code official and shall obtain the required permit in accordance with the administrative procedures set forth in Chapter 1 of the Building Code and this appendix.

G104.2 Application for permit. All applications proposing development of a development site located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area that is within the scope of this appendix shall comply with the requirements of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR, Sections 105 and 106, and this appendix.

G104.2.1 Additional information and data required. Permit applications within the scope of this appendix shall, in addition to the information and data required by Sections 105 and 106 of the Building Code, include the following additional information and data, as applicable:

1. A site plan showing the delineation of flood hazard areas, floodway boundaries, base flood elevation(s), flood zones, design flood elevations, ground elevations, proposed fill and excavation and drainage patterns and facilities. Where not included on the Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) or in the Flood Insurance Study, base flood elevations or floodway data shall be established in accordance with Section G103.2 of this appendix.

2. For proposed developments with more than 50 tax lots or record lots or larger than 5 acres (20 234 m²), base flood elevation data in accordance with Section G103.2 if such data are not identified for the flood hazard areas established in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31. Where the base flood elevations are not included on the FIRM or in the Flood Insurance Study, such elevations shall be established in accordance with Section G103.3.

3. Location of the proposed work and proposed structures, and locations of existing buildings and structures.

4. Location, extent, amount, and proposed final grades of any filling, grading, or excavation.

5. Where the placement of fill is proposed, the amount, type, and source of fill material; compaction specifications; a description of the intended purpose of the fill areas; and evidence that the proposed fill areas are the minimum necessary to achieve the intended purpose.

6. Existing watercourse[s] and approval by the Floodplain Administrator for any proposed alignment or proposed alteration thereof in accordance with Section G103.5.

7. Information or data deemed necessary by the code official to make determinations of substantial improvement or substantial damage.

8. “No-rise” certification for floodway encroachments in accordance with Section G103.4.

9. A floodway analysis for riverine flood hazard areas in accordance with G103.3.

10. Elevation Certificate(s) as required by Sections 105.3.2 and 1612.5.

11. Floodproofing Certificate(s) as required by Sections 105.3.2 and 1612.5.

12. Letter of Map Change, if applicable.

13. An approved code modification in accordance with Section G105 for mixed-use projects with Residential Group R occupancies proposing underground garages located in basements for flood loads.

14. Such other data and information as required by the code official.

G104.3 Validity of permit. The issuance of a permit under this appendix shall not be construed to be a permit for, or approval of, any violation of this appendix or any other District of Columbia law or regulation. The issuance of a permit based on submitted documents and information shall not prevent the code official from requiring the correction of errors. The code official is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure or site that is in violation of this appendix or other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

G104.4 Expiration. Expiration and extensions of permits issued under this appendix shall be governed by Sections 105.5 and 105.5.1 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR.

G104.5 Suspension or revocation. Suspension or revocation of a permit issued under this appendix shall be governed by Section 111 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR.

SECTION G105
CODE MODIFICATIONS

G105.1 General. The code official shall not grant modifications to any provision in the Construction Codes required in flood hazard areas, including but not limited to provisions of this appendix, unless the code modification complies with the procedures set forth in Section 104.10 of this code; the code modification request has been referred to the Floodplain Administrator for review and recommendation pursuant to 20 DCMR; and after the Floodplain Administrator’s review and recommendation, a determination has been made by the code official that all of the following criteria are met:

1. A technical showing of good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site render the elevation standards inappropriate.

2. Failure to grant the code modification would result in exceptional hardship by rendering the lot undevelopable.

3. Granting of a code modification will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety, extraordinary public expense, cause fraud on or victimization of the public, or conflict with existing laws or ordinances.
4. The code modification is the minimum necessary to afford relief, considering the flood hazard.

5. The applicant has been provided with written notice by the code official specifying the difference between the design flood elevation and the elevation to which the building is to be built, stating that the cost of flood insurance will be commensurate with the increased risk resulting from the reduced floor elevation, and stating that construction below the design flood elevation increases risks to life and property.

Exceptions:

1. No code modifications shall be issued for any proposed development in a floodway if any increase in flood levels would result during the base flood discharge.

2. The code official shall not issue a code modification that affects the base flood elevation without approval of the Floodplain Administrator pursuant to 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

G105.2 Historic structures. Subject to review and approval by the Floodplain Administrator, the code official shall have authority to issue a code modification for proposed development of a historic structure on a development site located wholly or partially in a flood hazard area, upon the certification of the state historic preservation officer that: the proposed development will not preclude the structure’s continued designation as a historic structure, and the code modification is the minimum necessary to preserve the historic character and design of the structure.

G105.3 Functionally dependent facilities. A code modification is authorized to be issued for the construction or substantial improvement of a functionally dependent facility provided that the criteria in Section 1612.1 are met and the code modification is the minimum necessary to allow the construction or substantial improvement, and that all due consideration has been given to methods and materials that minimize flood damages during the design flood and create no additional threats to public safety.

SECTION G106 INSPECTIONS

G106.1 General. Work under a permit within the scope of this appendix shall be subject to inspection by the code official in accordance with Section 109 of this code.

G106.2 Elevation Certificate. An elevation certificate in accordance with Section 1612.5 shall be submitted to the code official and reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator in accordance with the following:

1. Upon placement of the lowest floor and prior to further vertical construction, as specified in Section 109.3.1.5.

2. Prior to the final inspection or prior to the issuance of a conditional certificate of occupancy for core and shell, whichever is earlier as specified in Section 109.3.1.11.1.

G106.3 Floodproofing Certificate. A floodproofing certificate in accordance with Section 1612.5 shall be submitted to the code official and reviewed and approved by the Floodplain Administrator prior to: (a) the final inspection, or (b) the issuance of a certificate of completion or the issuance of the first certificate of occupancy for a occupied space at grade or above, whichever of (a) or (b) is earlier, to certify a floodproofing design for a nonresidential building that is permitted as an alternative to elevating to or above the base flood elevation as specified in Section 109.3.1.11.1.

SECTION G107 VIOLATIONS

G107.1 General. The administrative and enforcement provisions of Chapter 1, 12-A DCMR are applicable to any violations of this appendix.

G107.1.1 Presumptive violation. A building or structure located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, that is constructed or substantially improved pursuant to a permit issued by the code official after the effective date of the Construction Codes, but without the documentation of elevation of the lowest floor, other required design certifications, or other evidence of compliance required by the Construction Codes, shall be deemed to be in violation of the Construction Codes until such time as the requisite documentation is provided.

SECTION G201 DEFINITIONS

G201.1 General. The following words and terms are defined in Chapter 2 of the Building Code.

ACCESSORY (for Appendix G)
ALTERATION OF A WATERCOURSE.
BASE FLOOD.
BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.
BASEMENT (for flood loads).
DESIGN FLOOD.
DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.
DEVELOPMENT.
DEVELOPMENT SITE.
ELEVATION CERTIFICATE.
ENCROACHMENT (for Appendix G).
FLOOD HAZARD AREA.
FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM).
FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY (FIS).
FLOODPROOFING CERTIFICATE.
FLOODWAY.
FUNCTIONALLY DEPENDENT FACILITY.
HISTORIC STRUCTURE (for Appendix G).
LETTER OF MAP CHANGE.
LOWEST FLOOR.
MANUFACTURED HOME (for Appendix G).
MANUFACTURED HOME PARK OR SUBDIVISION
(for Appendix G).

MARKET VALUE.

RECREATIONAL VEHICLE (for Appendix G).

SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE.

SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT.

SECTION G301
SUBDIVISIONS

G301.1 General. Each application for subdivision of land in the District of Columbia sought pursuant to the provisions of the Subdivision Regulations of the District of Columbia (10-B DCMR §§ 2700 et seq.) shall be referred to the Floodplain Administrator for a determination as to whether the proposed development site that is the subject of the application is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area.

G301.2 Subdivision requirements. The following requirements shall apply in the case of any proposed subdivision, including proposals for manufactured home parks and subdivisions, any portion of which lies within a flood hazard area:

1. The flood hazard area, including floodways, coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, as appropriate, shall be delineated on tentative and final subdivision plats.
2. Design flood elevations shall be shown on tentative and final subdivision plats.
3. Residential building lots shall be provided with adequate buildable area outside the floodway.
4. The design criteria for utilities and facilities set forth in this appendix and appropriate International Codes shall be met.

SECTION G401
SITE IMPROVEMENT

G401.1 Compliance with DOEE’s Resilience Rules. Any site improvements in a flood hazard area shall comply with requirements in 20 DCMR, Chapter 31.

G401.2 Approval of Site Improvements. The owner shall obtain code official approval of civil drawings for site work/groundwork pursuant to an application for a civil site work (BCIV) permit, as part of a building permit application, or as otherwise directed by the code official for any proposed development on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area.

G401.3 Sewer facilities. All new or replaced sanitary sewer facilities, private sewage treatment plants (including all pumping stations and collector systems) and on-site waste disposal systems for any proposed development on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the facilities and discharge from the facilities into floodwaters, or impairment of the facilities and systems.

G401.4 Water facilities. All new or replacement water facilities for any proposed development on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the systems.

SECTION G501
MANUFACTURED HOMES

G501.1 Elevation. All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be elevated such that the lowest floor of the manufactured home is elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

G501.2 Foundations. All new and replacement manufactured homes, including substantial improvement of existing manufactured homes, shall be placed on a permanent, reinforced foundation on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area that is designed in accordance with Section R322 of the Residential Code.

G501.3 Anchoring. All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be installed using methods and practices that minimize flood damage. Manufactured homes shall be securely anchored to an adequately anchored foundation system to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement. Methods of anchoring are authorized to include, but are not limited to, use of over-the-top or frame ties to ground anchors. This requirement is in addition to applicable state and local anchoring requirements for resisting wind forces.

G501.4 Protection of mechanical equipment and outside appliances. Mechanical equipment and outside appliances for any proposed development on a development site that is located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

Exception: Where such equipment and appliances are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to the elevation required by Section R322 of the Residential Code, the systems and equipment shall be permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section R322 of the Residential Code. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted below the design flood elevation provided that they conform to the provisions of NFPA 70.

G501.5 Enclosures. Fully enclosed areas below elevated manufactured homes that are located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall comply with the requirements of Section R322 of the Residential Code.
APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

SECTION G601
RECREATIONAL VEHICLES

G601.1 Placement prohibited. The placement of recreational vehicles wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall not be authorized in coastal high-hazard areas and in floodways.

G601.2 Temporary placement. Recreational vehicles located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be fully licensed and ready for highway use, and shall be placed on a site for not more than 180 consecutive days.

G601.3 Permanent placement. Recreational vehicles located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area that are not fully licensed and ready for highway use, or that are to be placed on a site for more than 180 consecutive days, shall meet the requirements of Section G501 for manufactured homes.

SECTION G701
TANKS

G701.1 Tanks. Underground and above-ground tanks located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall be designed, constructed, installed and anchored in accordance with ASCE 24.

SECTION G801
OTHER BUILDING WORK

G801.1 Garages and accessory structures. Garages and accessory structures located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24 and comply with the following conditions as applicable.

G801.1.1 DOEE covenant required. A permit to construct or to make substantial improvement in an accessory structure located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area will not be issued by the Department without evidence of DOEE’s approval of a nonconversion agreement not to convert the accessory structure to a residential use.

G801.1.2 Size limitation. Code modifications or variances will not be granted to allow an accessory structure located wholly or partially within a flood hazard area to exceed 600 square feet (55.74 m²).

G801.1.3 Exception to Chapter 16 requirements for certain accessory structures. Accessory structures that are less than 600 square feet (55.74 m²) in area and are not elevated or dry floodproofed in accordance with Chapter 16 are allowed where the accessory structure meets all of the following conditions:

1. Constructed with flood damage-resistant materials below the design flood elevation.
2. Constructed and placed to offer the minimum resistance to the flow of floodwaters.
3. Anchored to prevent flotation.
4. Electrical service and mechanical equipment elevated to or above the design flood elevation.
5. Provided with flood openings that meet the following criteria:
   a. There shall be a minimum of two flood openings on different sides of each enclosed area; if an accessory structure has more than one enclosure below the lowest floor, each such enclosure shall have flood openings on exterior walls;
   b. The total net area of all flood openings shall be at least 1 square inch (6.45 mm²) for each 1 square foot (0.093 m²) of enclosed area (non-engineered flood openings), or the flood openings shall be engineered flood openings that are designed and certified by a licensed professional engineer to automatically allow entry and exit of floodwaters; the certification requirement is allowed to be met by the professional engineer’s certification or by submission of an Evaluation Report issued by the ICC Evaluation Service or another approved entity;
   c. The bottom of each flood opening shall be 1 foot (305 mm) or less above the higher of either the interior floor or grade or the exterior grade immediately below the opening; and
   d. Any louvers, screens, or other covers for the flood openings shall allow the automatic flow of floodwaters into and out of the enclosed area.

G801.1.4 Underground garages in basements. Underground garages located in basements (for flood loads) of an existing or proposed building or structure that is located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area, and is used or will be used partially for Residential Group R occupancies, will not be approved in permit applications for new construction or substantial improvement, without a code modification granted pursuant to Section G105.

G801.2 Fences. Fences in floodways that may block the passage of floodwaters, such as stockade fences and wire mesh fences, shall meet the requirement of Section G103.4.

G801.3 Oil derricks. Oil derricks located wholly or partially in flood hazard areas shall be designed in conformance with the flood loads in Sections 1603.1.7 and 1612.

G801.4 Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways. Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall meet the requirements of Section 1804.5.

G801.5 Swimming pools. Swimming pools located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24. Above-ground swimming pools, on-ground swimming pools and in-ground swimming pools that involve placement of fill in floodways shall also meet the requirements of Section G103.4.

G801.6 Decks, porches, and patios. Decks, porches and patios located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.
SECION G802
MIXED-USE BUILDINGS

G802.1 Lowest floor. The lowest floor (including basement or underground parking garage) of any new construction of, or substantial improvement to, a mixed-used building located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall either be at or above the design flood elevation, or be designed and constructed to be dry floodproofed during any flood up to the design flood elevation.

G802.2 Residential portion. The lowest floor of the residential portion of any new construction of, or substantial improvement to, a mixed-use building located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be at or above the design flood elevation.

G802.3 Nonresidential portion. The lowest floor of the nonresidential portion of any new construction of, or substantial improvement to, a mixed-use building located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall either be at or above the design flood elevation, or be designed and constructed to be dry floodproofed during any flood up to the design flood elevation.

G802.4 Ancillary residential use portion. The lowest floor of the ancillary residential use portion of any new construction of, or substantial improvement to, a mixed-use building located on a development site wholly or partially within a flood hazard area shall be at or above the design flood elevation.

SECTION G901
TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND TEMPORARY STORAGE

G901.1 Temporary structures. Temporary structures located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall comply with Section 119 of the Building Code, 12-A DCMR, and with the following conditions:

1. Temporary structures shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from hydrostatic loads, including the effects of buoyancy, during conditions of the design flood.

2. Fully enclosed temporary structures shall have flood openings that are in accordance with ASCE 24 to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters.

G901.2 Floodway encroachment. Temporary structures and temporary storage in floodways shall meet the requirements of Section G103.4.

SECTION G1001
UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

G1001.1 Utility and miscellaneous Group U. Utility and miscellaneous Group U includes buildings that are accessory in character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy in this code, including, but not limited to, agricultural buildings, aircraft hangars (accessory to a one- or two-family residence), barns, carports, fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) high, grain silos (accessory to a residential occupancy), greenhouses, livestock shelters, private garages, retaining walls, sheds, stables and towers.

G1001.2 Flood loads. Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be elevated such that the lowest floor, including basement, is elevated to or above the design flood elevation in accordance with Section 1612 of this code.

G1001.3 Elevation. Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be elevated such that the lowest floor, including basement, is elevated to or above the design flood elevation in accordance with Section 1612 of this code.

G1001.4 Enclosures below design flood elevation. Fully enclosed areas located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas below the design flood elevation shall be constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

G1001.5 Flood damage-resistant materials. Flood damage-resistant materials shall be used below the design flood elevation.

G1001.6 Protection of mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems. Mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems, including plumbing fixtures, located wholly or partially within flood hazard areas shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

Exception: Electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning and plumbing appliances; plumbing fixtures, duct systems and other service equipment shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation in compliance with the flood-resistant construction requirements of this code. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that they conform to the provisions of NFPA 70.
SECTION G1101
REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASCE 24—14 Flood Resistant Design G103.1, G401.3, G401.4, G701.1, G801.1, G801.5, G801.6, G801.7, G901.1, G1001.4
and Construction

HUD 24 CFR Manufactured Home G201
Part 3280 Construction and Safety Standards
(2008)

NFPA 70—14 National Electrical Code G501.4, G1001.6
FEMA P-758 Substantial Improvement/ G103.1.1
(May 2010) Substantial Damage Desk Reference

Desk Reference
APPENDIX H
SIGNS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION H101
GENERAL

H101.1 General. A sign shall not be erected in a manner that would confuse or obstruct the view of or interfere with exit signs required by Chapter 10 or with official traffic signs, signals or devices. Signs and sign support structures, together with their supports, braces, guys and anchors, shall be kept in repair and in proper state of preservation. The display surfaces of signs shall be kept neatly painted or posted at all times.

H101.2 Signs exempt from permits. The following signs are exempt from the requirements to obtain a permit before erection:

1. Painted nonilluminated signs.
2. Temporary signs announcing the sale or rent of property.
3. Signs erected by transportation authorities.
4. Projecting signs not exceeding 2.5 square feet (0.23 m²).
5. The changing of moveable parts of an approved sign that is designed for such changes, or the repainting or repositioning of display matter shall not be deemed an alteration.

SECTION H102
DEFINITIONS

H102.1 General. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

COMBINATION SIGN. A sign incorporating any combination of the features of pole, projecting and roof signs.
DISPLAY SIGN. The area made available by the sign structure for the purpose of displaying the advertising message.
ELECTRIC SIGN. A sign containing electrical wiring, but not including signs illuminated by an exterior light source.
GROUND SIGN. A billboard or similar type of sign that is supported by one or more uprights, poles or braces in or upon the ground other than a combination sign or pole sign, as defined by this code.
POLE SIGN. A sign wholly supported by a sign structure in the ground.
PORTABLE DISPLAY SURFACE. A display surface temporarily fixed to a standardized advertising structure that is regularly moved from structure to structure at periodic intervals.
PROJECTING SIGN. A sign other than a wall sign that projects from and is supported by a wall of a building or structure.
ROOF SIGN. A sign erected on or above a roof or parapet of a building or structure.
SIGN. Any letter, figure, character, mark, plane, point, marquee sign, design, poster, pictorial, picture, stroke, stripe, line, trademark, reading matter or illuminated service, which shall be constructed, placed, attached, painted, erected, fastened or manufactured in any manner whatsoever, so that the same shall be used for the attraction of the public to any place, subject, person, firm, corporation, public performance, article, machine or merchandise, whatsoever, which is displayed in any manner outdoors. Every sign shall be classified and conform to the requirements of that classification as set forth in this chapter.
SIGN STRUCTURE. Any structure that supports or is capable of supporting a sign as defined in this code. A sign structure is permitted to be a single pole and is not required to be an integral part of the building.
WALL SIGN. Any sign attached to or erected against the wall of a building or structure, with the exposed face of the sign in a plane parallel to the plane of said wall.

SECTION H103
LOCATION

H103.1 Location restrictions. Signs shall not be erected, constructed or maintained so as to obstruct any fire escape or any window or door or opening used as a means of egress or so as to prevent free passage from one part of a roof to any other part thereof. A sign shall not be attached in any form, shape or manner to a fire escape, nor be placed in such manner as to interfere with any opening required for ventilation.

SECTION H104
IDENTIFICATION

H104.1 Identification. Every outdoor advertising display sign hereafter erected, constructed or maintained, for which a permit is required, shall be plainly marked with the name of the person, firm or corporation erecting and maintaining such sign and shall have affixed on the front thereof the permit number issued for said sign or other method of identification approved by the building official.
SECTION H105
DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

H105.1 General requirements. Signs shall be designed and constructed to comply with the provisions of this code for use of materials, loads and stresses.

H105.2 Permits, drawings and specifications. Where a permit is required, as provided in Chapter 1, construction documents shall be required. These documents shall show the dimensions, material and required details of construction, including loads, stresses and anchors.

H105.3 Wind load. Signs shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind pressure as provided for in Chapter 16.

H105.4 Seismic load. Signs designed to withstand wind pressures shall be considered capable of withstanding earthquake loads, except as provided for in Chapter 16.

H105.5 Working stresses. In outdoor advertising display signs, the allowable working stresses shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 16. The working stresses of wire rope and its fastenings shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate strength of the rope or fasteners.

Exceptions:

1. The allowable working stresses for steel and wood shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapters 22 and 23.

2. The working strength of chains, cables, guys or steel rods shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of such chains, cables, guys or steel.

H105.6 Attachment. Signs attached to masonry, concrete or steel shall be safely and securely fastened by means of metal anchors, bolts or approved expansion screws of sufficient size and anchorage to safely support the loads applied.

SECTION H106
ELECTRICAL

H106.1 Illumination. A sign shall not be illuminated by other than electrical means, and electrical devices and wiring shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70. Any open spark or flame shall not be used for display purposes unless specifically approved.

H106.1.1 Internally illuminated signs. Except as provided for in Sections 402.16 and 2611, where internally illuminated signs have facings of wood or approved plastic, the area of such facing section shall be not more than 120 square feet (11.16 m²) and the wiring for electric lighting shall be entirely enclosed in the sign cabinet with a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the facing material. The dimensional limitation of 120 square feet (11.16 m²) shall not apply to sign facing sections made from flame-resistant-coated fabric (ordinarily known as “flexible sign face plastic”) that weighs less than 20 ounces per square yard (678 g/m²) and that, when tested in accordance with NFPA 701, meets the fire propagation performance requirements of both Test 1 and Test 2 or that, when tested in accordance with an approved test method, exhibits an average burn time of 2 seconds or less and a burning extent of 5.9 inches (150 mm) or less for 10 specimens.

H106.2 Electrical service. Signs that require electrical service shall comply with NFPA 70.

SECTION H107
COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS

H107.1 Use of combustibles. Wood, approved plastic or plastic veneer panels as provided for in Chapter 26, or other materials of combustible characteristics similar to wood, used for moldings, cappings, nailing blocks, letters and latticing, shall comply with Section H109.1 and shall not be used for other ornamental features of signs, unless approved.

H107.1.1 Plastic materials. Notwithstanding any other provisions of this code, plastic materials that burn at a rate no faster than 2.5 inches per minute (64 mm/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM D635 shall be deemed approved plastics and can be used as the display surface material and for the letters, decorations and facings on signs and outdoor display structures.

H107.1.2 Electric sign faces. Individual plastic facings of electric signs shall not exceed 200 square feet (18.6 m²) in area.

H107.1.3 Area limitation. If the area of a display surface exceeds 200 square feet (18.6 m²), the area occupied or covered by approved plastics shall be limited to 200 square feet (18.6 m²) plus 50 percent of the difference between 200 square feet (18.6 m²) and the area of display surface. The area of plastic on a display surface shall not in any case exceed 1,100 square feet (102 m²).

H107.1.4 Plastic appurtenances. Letters and decorations mounted on an approved plastic facing or display surface can be made of approved plastics.

SECTION H108
ANIMATED DEVICES

H108.1 Fail-safe device. Signs that contain moving sections or ornaments shall have fail-safe provisions to prevent the section or ornament from releasing and falling or shifting its center of gravity more than 15 inches (381 mm). The fail-safe device shall be in addition to the mechanism and the mechanism’s housing that operate the movable section or ornament. The fail-safe device shall be capable of supporting the full dead weight of the section or ornament when the moving mechanism releases.

SECTION H109
GROUND SIGNS

H109.1 Height restrictions. The structural frame of ground signs shall not be erected of combustible materials to a height of more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the ground. Ground signs constructed entirely of noncombustible material shall not be erected to a height of greater than 100 feet (30 480...
SECTION H110  
ROOF SIGNS  

H110.1 General. Roof signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1. Provisions shall be made for electric grounding of metallic parts. Where combustible materials are permitted in letters or other ornamental features, wiring and tubing shall be kept free and insulated therefrom. Roof signs shall be so constructed as to leave a clear space of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) between the roof level and the lowest part of the sign and shall have at least 5 feet (1524 mm) clearance between the vertical supports thereof. No portion of any roof sign structure shall project beyond an exterior wall.  

Exception: Signs on flat roofs with every part of the roof accessible.  

H110.2 Bearing plates. The bearing plates of roof signs shall distribute the load directly to or upon masonry walls, steel roof girders, columns or beams. The building shall be designed to avoid overstress of these members.  

H110.3 Height of solid signs. A roof sign having a solid surface shall not exceed, at any point, a height of 24 feet (7315 mm) measured from the roof surface.  

H110.4 Height of open signs. Open roof signs in which the uniform open area is not less than 40 percent of total gross area shall not exceed a height of 75 feet (22 860 mm) on buildings of Type 1 or Type 2 construction. On buildings of other construction types, the height shall not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm). Such signs shall be thoroughly secured to the building upon which they are installed, erected or constructed by iron, metal anchors, bolts, supports, chains, stranded cables, steel rods or braces and they shall be maintained in good condition.  

H110.5 Height of closed signs. A closed roof sign shall not be erected to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 1 or Type 2 construction or more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 3, 4 or 5 construction.  

SECTION H111  
WALL SIGNS  

H111.1 Materials. Wall signs that have an area exceeding 40 square feet (3.72 m²) shall be constructed of metal or other approved noncombustible material, except for nailing rails and as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.  

H111.2 Exterior wall mounting details. Wall signs attached to exterior walls of solid masonry, concrete or stone shall be safely and securely attached by means of metal anchors, bolts or expansion screws of not less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) diameter and shall be embedded at least 5 inches (127 mm). Wood blocks shall not be used for anchorage, except in the case of wall signs attached to buildings with walls of wood. A wall sign shall not be supported by anchorages secured to an unbraced parapet wall.  

H111.3 Extension. Wall signs shall not extend above the top of the wall or beyond the ends of the wall to which the signs are attached unless such signs conform to the requirements for roof signs, projecting signs or ground signs.  

SECTION H112  
PROJECTING SIGNS  

H112.1 General. Projecting signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other noncombustible material and securely attached to a building or structure by metal supports such as bolts, anchors, supports, chains, guys or steel rods. Staples or nails shall not be used to secure any projecting sign to any building or structure. The dead load of projecting signs not parallel to the building or structure and the load due to wind pressure shall be supported with chains, guys or steel rods having net cross-sectional dimension of not less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Such supports shall be erected or maintained at an angle of at least 45 percent (0.78 rad) with the horizontal to resist the dead load and at angle of 45 percent (0.78 rad) or more with the face of the sign to resist the specified wind pressure. If such projecting sign exceeds 30 square feet (2.8 m²) in one facial area, there shall be provided at least two such supports on each side not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) apart to resist the wind pressure.  

H112.2 Attachment of supports. Supports shall be secured to a bolt or expansion screw that will develop the strength of the supporting chains, guys or steel rods, with a minimum 3/8-inch (15.9 mm) bolt or lag screw, by an expansion shield. Turnbuckles shall be placed in chains, guys or steel rods supporting projecting signs.  

H112.3 Wall mounting details. Chains, cables, guys or steel rods used to support the live or dead load of projecting signs are permitted to be fastened to solid masonry walls with expansion bolts or by machine screws in iron supports, but such supports shall not be attached to an unbraced parapet wall. Where the supports must be fastened to walls made of wood, the supporting anchor bolts must go through the wall and be plated or fastened on the inside in a secure manner.  

H112.4 Height limitation. A projecting sign shall not be erected on the wall of any building so as to project above the roof or cornice wall or above the roof level where there is no cornice wall; except that a sign erected at a right angle to the building, the horizontal width of which sign is perpendicular to such a wall and does not exceed 18 inches (457 mm), is permitted to be erected to a height not exceeding 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof or cornice wall or above the roof level.
where there is no cornice wall. A sign attached to a corner of a building and parallel to the vertical line of such corner shall be deemed to be erected at a right angle to the building wall.

**H112.5 Additional loads.** Projecting sign structures that will be used to support an individual on a ladder or other servicing device, whether or not specifically designed for the servicing device, shall be capable of supporting the anticipated additional load, but not less than a 100-pound (445 N) concentrated horizontal load and a 300-pound (1334 N) concentrated vertical load applied at the point of assumed or most eccentric loading. The building component to which the projecting sign is attached shall also be designed to support the additional loads.

**SECTION H113 MARQUEE SIGNS**

**H113.1 Materials.** Marquee signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.

**H113.2 Attachment.** Marquee signs shall be attached to approved marquees that are constructed in accordance with Section 3106.

**H113.3 Dimensions.** Marquee signs, whether on the front or side, shall not project beyond the perimeter of the marquee.

**H113.4 Height limitation.** Marquee signs shall not extend more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above, nor 1 foot (305 mm) below such marquee, but under no circumstances shall the sign or signs have a vertical dimension greater than 8 feet (2438 mm).

**SECTION H114 PORTABLE SIGNS**

**H114.1 General.** Portable signs shall conform to requirements for ground, roof, projecting, flat and temporary signs where such signs are used in a similar capacity. The requirements of this section shall not be construed to require portable signs to have connections to surfaces, tie-downs or foundations where provisions are made by temporary means or configuration of the structure to provide stability for the expected duration of the installation.

**TABLE 4-A SIZE, THICKNESS AND TYPE OF GLASS PANELS IN SIGNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM SIZE OF EXPOSED PANEL</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF GLASS PANEL (inches)</th>
<th>TYPE OF GLASS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any dimension (inches)</td>
<td>Area (square inches)</td>
<td>TYPE OF GLASS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>1/8 Plain, plate or wired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>3/16 Plain, plate or wired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>3,600</td>
<td>1/4 Plain, plate or wired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 144</td>
<td>&gt; 3,600</td>
<td>1/8 Wired glass</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm².

**TABLE 4-B THICKNESS OF PROJECTION SIGN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROJECTION (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM THICKNESS (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**SECTION H115 REFERENCED STANDARDS**

- ASTM D635—10 Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position
- NFPA 70—11 National Electrical Code
- NFPA 701—10 Methods of Fire Test for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

**TABLE 4-B THICKNESS OF PROJECTION SIGN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROJECTION (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM THICKNESS (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
APPENDIX I

PATIO COVERS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION I101
GENERAL

I101.1 General. Patio covers shall be permitted to be detached from or attached to dwelling units. Patio covers shall be used only for recreational, outdoor living purposes and not as carports, garages, storage rooms or habitable rooms.

SECTION I102
DEFINITION

I102.1 General. The following term shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meaning shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

PATIO COVER. A structure with open or glazed walls that is used for recreational, outdoor living purposes associated with a dwelling unit.

SECTION I103
EXTERIOR WALLS AND OPENINGS

I103.1 Enclosure walls. Enclosure walls shall be permitted to be of any configuration, provided the open or glazed area of the longer wall and one additional wall is equal to at least 65 percent of the area below a minimum of 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) of each wall, measured from the floor. Openings shall be permitted to be enclosed with insect screening, approved translucent or transparent plastic not more than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) in thickness, glass conforming to the provisions of Chapter 24 or any combination of the foregoing.

I103.2 Light, ventilation and emergency egress. Exterior openings of the dwelling unit required for light and ventilation shall be permitted to open into a patio structure. However, the patio structure shall be unenclosed if such openings are serving as emergency egress or rescue openings from sleeping rooms. Where such exterior openings serve as an exit from the dwelling unit, the patio structure, unless unenclosed, shall be provided with exits conforming to the provision of Chapter 10.

SECTION I104
HEIGHT

I104.1 Height. Patio covers shall be limited to one-story structures not more than 12 feet (3657 mm) in height.

SECTION I105
STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

I105.1 Design loads. Patio covers shall be designed and constructed to sustain, within the stress limits of this code, all dead loads plus a minimum vertical live load of 10 pounds per square foot (0.48 kN/m²) except that snow loads shall be used where such snow loads exceed this minimum. Such patio covers shall be designed to resist the minimum wind and seismic loads set forth in this code.

I105.2 Footings. In areas with a frost depth of zero, a patio cover shall be permitted to be supported on a concrete slab on grade without footings, provided the slab conforms to the provisions of Chapter 19 of this code, is not less than 3 1/2 inches (89 mm) thick and further provided that the columns do not support loads in excess of 750 pounds (3.36 kN) per column.
APPENDIX J

GRADING

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION J101
GENERAL

J101.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter apply to grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments. Where conflicts occur between the technical requirements of this chapter and the geotechnical report, the geotechnical report shall govern.

J101.2 Flood hazard areas. Unless the applicant has submitted an engineering analysis, prepared in accordance with standard engineering practice by a registered design professional, that demonstrates the proposed work will not result in any increase in the level of the base flood, grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments, shall not be permitted in floodways that are in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 or in flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated.

SECTION J102
DEFINITIONS

J102.1 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

BENCH. A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

COMPACTION. The densification of a fill by mechanical means.

CUT. See “Excavation.”

DOWN DRAIN. A device for collecting water from a swale or ditch located on or above a slope, and safely delivering it to an approved drainage facility.

EROSION. The wearing away of the ground surface as a result of the movement of wind, water or ice.

EXCAVATION. The removal of earth material by artificial means, also referred to as a cut.

FILL. Deposition of earth materials by artificial means.

GRADE. The vertical location of the ground surface.

GRADE, EXISTING. The grade prior to grading.

GRADE, FINISHED. The grade of the site at the conclusion of all grading efforts.

GRADING. An excavation or fill or combination thereof.

KEY. A compacted fill placed in a trench excavated in earth material beneath the toe of a slope.

SLOPE. An inclined surface, the inclination of which is expressed as a ratio of horizontal distance to vertical distance.

TERRACE. A relatively level step constructed in the face of a graded slope for drainage and maintenance purposes.

SECTION J103
PERMITS REQUIRED

J103.1 Permits required. Except as exempted in Section J103.2, no grading shall be performed without first having obtained a permit therefor from the building official. A grading permit does not include the construction of retaining walls or other structures.

J103.2 Exemptions. A grading permit shall not be required for the following:

1. Grading in an isolated, self-contained area, provided there is no danger to the public and that such grading will not adversely affect adjoining properties.

2. Excavation for construction of a structure permitted under this code.

3. Cemetery graves.

4. Refuse disposal sites controlled by other regulations.

5. Excavations for wells, or trenches for utilities.

6. Mining, quarrying, excavating, processing or stockpiling rock, sand, gravel, aggregate or clay controlled by other regulations, provided such operations do not affect the lateral support of, or significantly increase stresses in, soil on adjoining properties.

7. Exploratory excavations performed under the direction of a registered design professional.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this appendix shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

SECTION J104
PERMIT APPLICATION AND SUBMITTALS

J104.1 Submittal requirements. In addition to the provisions of Section 105.3, the applicant shall state the estimated quantities of excavation and fill.

J104.2 Site plan requirements. In addition to the provisions of Section 107, a grading plan shall show the existing grade and finished grade in contour intervals of sufficient clarity to indicate the nature and extent of the work and show in detail that it complies with the requirements of this code. The plans shall show the existing grade on adjoining properties in suffi-
cient detail to identify how grade changes will conform to the requirements of this code.

**J104.3 Geotechnical report.** A geotechnical report prepared by a registered design professional shall be provided. The report shall contain at least the following:

1. The nature and distribution of existing soils.
2. Conclusions and recommendations for grading procedures.
3. Soil design criteria for any structures or embankments required to accomplish the proposed grading.
4. Where necessary, slope stability studies, and recommendations and conclusions regarding site geology.

**Exception:** A geotechnical report is not required where the building official determines that the nature of the work applied for is such that a report is not necessary.

**J104.4 Liquefaction study.** For sites with mapped maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations at short periods ($S_s$) greater than 0.5g as determined by Section 1613, a study of the liquefaction potential of the site shall be provided and the recommendations incorporated in the plans.

**Exception:** A liquefaction study is not required where the building official determines from established local data that the liquefaction potential is low.

**SECTION J105 INSPECTIONS**

**J105.1 General.** Inspections shall be governed by Section 110 of this code.

**J105.2 Special inspections.** The special inspection requirements of Section 1705.6 shall apply to work performed under a grading permit where required by the building official.

**SECTION J106 EXCAVATIONS**

**J106.1 Maximum slope.** The slope of cut surfaces shall be no steeper than is safe for the intended use, and shall be not more than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) unless the owner or the owner’s authorized agent furnishes a geotechnical report justifying a steeper slope.

**Exceptions:**

1. A cut surface shall be permitted to be at a slope of 1.5 units horizontal to one unit vertical (67-percent slope) provided that all of the following are met:
   1.1. It is not intended to support structures or surcharges.
   1.2. It is adequately protected against erosion.
   1.3. It is no more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height.
   1.4. It is approved by the building code official.
   1.5. Ground water is not encountered.

2. A cut surface in bedrock shall be permitted to be at a slope of one unit horizontal to one unit vertical (100-percent slope).

**SECTION J107 FILLS**

**J107.1 General.** Unless otherwise recommended in the geotechnical report, fills shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**J107.2 Surface preparation.** The ground surface shall be prepared to receive fill by removing vegetation, topsoil and other unsuitable materials, and scarifying the ground to provide a bond with the fill material.

**J107.3 Benching.** Where existing grade is at a slope steeper than one unit vertical in five units horizontal (20-percent slope) and the depth of the fill exceeds 5 feet (1524 mm) benching shall be provided in accordance with Figure J107.3. A key shall be provided that is at least 10 feet (3048 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in depth.

**J107.4 Fill material.** Fill material shall not include organic, frozen or other deleterious materials. No rock or similar irreducible material greater than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall be included in fills.

**J107.5 Compaction.** All fill material shall be compacted to 90 percent of maximum density as determined by ASTM D1557, Modified Proctor, in lifts not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in depth.

**J107.6 Maximum slope.** The slope of fill surfaces shall be no steeper than is safe for the intended use. Fill slopes steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) shall be justified by a geotechnical report or engineering data.

**SECTION J108 SETBACKS**

**J108.1 General.** Cut and fill slopes shall be set back from the property lines in accordance with this section. Setback dimensions shall be measured perpendicular to the property line and shall be as shown in Figure J108.1, unless substantiating data is submitted justifying reduced setbacks.

**J108.2 Top of slope.** The setback at the top of a cut slope shall be not less than that shown in Figure J108.1, or than is required to accommodate any required interceptor drains, whichever is greater.

**J108.3 Slope protection.** Where required to protect adjacent properties at the toe of a slope from adverse effects of the grading, additional protection, approved by the building official, shall be included. Such protection may include but shall not be limited to:

1. Setbacks greater than those required by Figure J108.1.
2. Provisions for retaining walls or similar construction.
3. Erosion protection of the fill slopes.
4. Provision for the control of surface waters.
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE J107.3
BENCHING DETAILS

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE J108.1
DRAINAGE DIMENSIONS
APPENDIX J—GRADING

SECTION J109
DRAINAGE AND TERRACING

J109.1 General. Unless otherwise recommended by a registered design professional, drainage facilities and terracing shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of this section.

Exception: Drainage facilities and terracing need not be provided where the ground slope is not steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33-percent slope).

J109.2 Terraces. Terraces at least 6 feet (1829 mm) in width shall be established at not more than 30-foot (9144 mm) vertical intervals on all cut or fill slopes to control surface drainage and debris. Suitable access shall be provided to allow for cleaning and maintenance.

Where more than two terraces are required, one terrace, located at approximately mid-height, shall be at least 12 feet (3658 mm) in width.

Swales or ditches shall be provided on terraces. They shall have a minimum gradient of one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) and shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or with other materials suitable to the application. They shall have a depth not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and a width not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

A single run of swale or ditch shall not collect runoff from a tributary area exceeding 13,500 square feet (1256 m²) (projected) without discharging into a down drain.

J109.3 Interceptor drains. Interceptor drains shall be installed along the top of cut slopes receiving drainage from a tributary width greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm), measured horizontally. They shall have a minimum depth of 1 foot (305 mm) and a minimum width of 3 feet (915 mm). The slope shall be approved by the building official, but shall be not less than one unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2-percent slope). The drain shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or by other materials suitable to the application. Discharge from the drain shall be accomplished in a manner to prevent erosion and shall be approved by the building official.

J109.4 Drainage across property lines. Drainage across property lines shall not exceed that which existed prior to grading. Excess or concentrated drainage shall be contained on site or directed to an approved drainage facility. Erosion of the ground in the area of discharge shall be prevented by installation of nonerosive down drains or other devices.

SECTION J110
EROSION CONTROL

J110.1 General. The faces of cut and fill slopes shall be prepared and maintained to control erosion. This control shall be permitted to consist of effective planting.

Exception: Erosion control measures need not be provided on cut slopes not subject to erosion due to the erosion-resistant character of the materials.

Erosion control for the slopes shall be installed as soon as practicable and prior to calling for final inspection.

J110.2 Other devices. Where necessary, check dams, cribbing, riprap or other devices or methods shall be employed to control erosion and provide safety.

SECTION J111
REFERENCED STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASTM D1557-12</td>
<td>Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft³ (2,700 kN-m/m³)].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX K

ADMINISTRATIVE PROVISIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

With the exception of Section K111, this appendix contains only administrative provisions that are intended to be used by a jurisdiction to implement and enforce NFPA 70, the National Electrical Code. Annex H of NFPA 70 also contains administrative and enforcement provisions, and these provisions may or may not be completely compatible with or consistent with Chapter 1 of the IBC, whereas the provisions in IBC Appendix K are compatible and consistent with Chapter 1 of the IBC and other ICC codes. Section K111 contains technical provisions that are unique to this appendix and are in addition to those of NFPA 70.

The provisions of Appendix K are specific to what might be designated as an Electrical Department of Inspection and Code Enforcement and could be implemented where other such provisions are not adopted.

SECTION K101

GENERAL

K101.1 Purpose. A purpose of this code is to establish minimum requirements to safeguard public health, safety and general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of electrical systems and equipment.

K101.2 Scope. This code applies to the design, construction, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of electrical systems and equipment.

SECTION K102

APPLICABILITY

K102.1 General. The provisions of this code apply to all matters affecting or relating to structures and premises, as set forth in Section K101.

K102.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, alteration or abandonment of, or prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, existing electrical systems and equipment lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

K102.3 Maintenance. Electrical systems, equipment, materials and appurtenances, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe, hazard-free condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of the electrical systems and equipment. To determine compliance with this provision, the building official shall have the authority to require that the electrical systems and equipment be reinspected.

K102.4 Additions, alterations and repairs. Additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to electrical systems and equipment shall conform to that required for new electrical systems and equipment without requiring that the existing electrical systems or equipment comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, alterations and repairs shall not cause existing electrical systems or equipment to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded.

Minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing electrical systems and equipment shall meet the provisions for new construction, except where such work is performed in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is approved.

K102.5 Subjects not regulated by this code. Where no applicable standards or requirements are set forth in this code, or are contained within other laws, codes, regulations, ordinances or bylaws adopted by the jurisdiction, compliance with applicable standards of nationally recognized standards as are approved shall be deemed as prima facie evidence of compliance with the intent of this code. Nothing herein shall derogate from the authority of the building official to determine compliance with codes or standards for those activities or installations within the building official’s jurisdiction or responsibility.

SECTION K103

PERMITS

K103.1 Types of permits. An owner, authorized agent or contractor who desires to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, demolish or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace electrical systems or equipment, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause such work to be done, shall first make application to the building official and obtain the required permit for the work.

Exception: Where repair or replacement of electrical systems or equipment must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day of the department of electrical inspection.

K103.2 Work exempt from permit. The following work shall be exempt from the requirement for a permit:

1. Listed cord- and plug-connected temporary decorative lighting.

2. Reinstallation of attachment plug receptacles, but not the outlets therefor.
3. Replacement of branch circuit overcurrent devices of the required capacity in the same location.
4. Temporary wiring for experimental purposes in suitable experimental laboratories.
5. Electrical wiring, devices, appliances, apparatus or equipment operating at less than 25 volts and not capable of supplying more than 50 watts of energy.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for work to be done in violation of the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

SECTION K104
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

K104.1 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale upon suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where approved by the building official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that such work will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the building official.

K104.2 Penetrations. Construction documents shall indicate where penetrations will be made for electrical systems and shall indicate the materials and methods for maintaining required structural safety, fire-resistance rating and fire-blocking.

K104.3 Load calculations. Where an addition or alteration is made to an existing electrical system, an electrical load calculation shall be prepared to determine if the existing electrical service has the capacity to serve the added load.

SECTION K105
ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN

K105.1 General. The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an alternative engineered design electrical system shall comply with this section.

K105.2 Design criteria. An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Materials, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

K105.3 Submittal. The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the electrical system is an alternative engineered design. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an alternative engineered design was part of the approved installation.

K105.4 Technical data. The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

K105.5 Construction documents. The registered design professional shall submit to the building official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the alternative engineered design. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a diagram of the work.

K105.6 Design approval. Where the building official determines that the alternative engineered design conforms to the intent of this code, the electrical system shall be approved. If the alternative engineered design is not approved, the building official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons therefor.

K105.7 Inspection and testing. The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of this code.

SECTION K106
REQUIRED INSPECTIONS

K106.1 General. The building official, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in this section.

K106.2 Underground. Underground inspection shall be made after trenches or ditches are excavated and bedded, piping and conductors installed, and before backfill is put in place. Where excavated soil contains rocks, broken concrete, frozen chunks and other rubble that would damage or break the raceway, cable or conductors, or where corrosive action will occur, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, approved running boards, sleeves or other means.

K106.3 Rough-in. Rough-in inspection shall be made after the roof, framing, fireblocking and bracing are in place and all wiring and other components to be concealed are complete, and prior to the installation of wall or ceiling membranes.

K106.4 Contractors’ responsibilities. It shall be the responsibility of every contractor who enters into contracts for the installation or repair of electrical systems for which a permit is required to comply with adopted state and local rules and regulations concerning licensing.

SECTION K107
PREFABRICATED CONSTRUCTION

K107.1 Prefabricated construction. Prefabricated construction is subject to Sections K107.2 through K107.5.

K107.2 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services. Prior to the approval of a prefabricated construction assembly having concealed electrical work and the issuance of an electrical permit, the building official shall require the submittal of an evaluation report on each prefabricated construction assembly, indicating the complete details of the electrical system, including a description of the system and its components, the basis upon which the system is being evaluated, test results and similar information, and other data as necessary for the building official to determine conformance to this code.
K107.3 Evaluation service. The building official shall designate the evaluation service of an approved agency as the evaluation agency and review such agency’s evaluation report for adequacy and conformance to this code.

K107.4 Follow-up inspection. Except where ready access is provided to electrical systems, service equipment and accessories for complete inspection at the site without disassembly or dismantling, the building official shall conduct the in-plant inspections as frequently as necessary to ensure conformance to the approved evaluation report or shall designate an independent, approved inspection agency to conduct such inspections. The inspection agency shall furnish the building official with the follow-up inspection manual and a report of inspections upon request, and the electrical system shall have an identifying label permanently affixed to the system indicating that factory inspections have been performed.

K107.5 Test and inspection records. Required test and inspection records shall be available to the building official at all times during the fabrication of the electrical system and the erection of the building; or such records as the building official designates shall be filed.

SECTION K108 TESTING

K108.1 Testing. Electrical work shall be tested as required in this code. Tests shall be performed by the permit holder and observed by the building official.

K108.1.1 Apparatus, material and labor for tests. Apparatus, material and labor required for testing an electrical system or part thereof shall be furnished by the permit holder.

K108.1.2 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made so as to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the building official for inspection and testing.

SECTION K109 RECONNECTION

K109.1 Connection after order to disconnect. A person shall not make utility service or energy source connections to systems regulated by this code, which have been disconnected or ordered to be disconnected by the building official, or the use of which has been ordered to be disconnected by the building official until the building official authorizes the reconnection and use of such systems.

SECTION K110 CONDEMNING ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

K110.1 Authority to condemn electrical systems. Whenever the building official determines that any electrical system, or portion thereof, regulated by this code has become hazardous to life, health or property, the building official shall order in writing that such electrical systems either be removed or restored to a safe condition. A time limit for compliance with such order shall be specified in the written notice. A person shall not use or maintain a defective electrical system or equipment after receiving such notice.

Where such electrical system is to be disconnected, written notice as prescribed in this code shall be given. In cases of immediate danger to life or property, such disconnection shall be made immediately without such notice.

SECTION K111 ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS

K111.1 Adoption. Electrical systems and equipment shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the Residential Code or NFPA 70 as applicable, except as otherwise provided in this code.

K111.2 Abatement of electrical hazards. All identified electrical hazards shall be abated. All identified hazardous electrical conditions in permanent wiring shall be brought to the attention of the building official responsible for enforcement of this code. Electrical wiring, devices, appliances and other equipment that is modified or damaged and constitutes an electrical shock or fire hazard shall not be used.

K111.3 Appliance and fixture listing. Electrical appliances and fixtures shall be listed and tested in published reports of inspected electrical equipment by an approved agency and installed in accordance with all instructions included as part of such listing.

K111.4 Nonmetallic-sheathed cable. The use of Type NM, NMC and NMS (nonmetallic sheathed) cable wiring methods shall not be limited based on height, number of stories or construction type of the building or structure.

K111.5 Cutting, notching and boring. The cutting, notching and boring of wood and steel framing members, structural members and engineered wood products shall be in accordance with this code.

K111.6 Smoke alarm circuits. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by this code and installed within dwelling units shall not be connected as the only load on a branch circuit. Such alarms shall be supplied by branch circuits having lighting loads consisting of lighting outlets in habitable spaces.

K111.7 Equipment and door labeling. Doors into electrical control panel rooms shall be marked with a plainly visible and legible sign stating ELECTRICAL ROOM or similar approved wording. The disconnecting means for each service, feeder or branch circuit originating on a switchboard or panelboard shall be legibly and durably marked to indicate its purpose unless such purpose is clearly evident.
APPENDIX L

EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION L101

GENERAL

L101.1 General. Every structure located where the 1-second spectral response acceleration, $S_1$, in accordance with Section 1613.3 is greater than 0.40 that either 1 exceeds six stories in height with an aggregate floor area of 60,000 square feet (5574 m²) or more, or 2 exceeds 10 stories in height regardless of floor area, shall be equipped with not less than three approved recording accelerographs. The accelerographs shall be interconnected for common start and common timing.

L101.2 Location. As a minimum, instruments shall be located at the lowest level, mid-height, and near the top of the structure. Each instrument shall be located so that access is maintained at all times and is unobstructed by room contents. A sign stating “MAINTAIN CLEAR ACCESS TO THIS INSTRUMENT” in 1-inch (25 mm) block letters shall be posted in a conspicuous location.

L101.3 Maintenance. Maintenance and service of the instrumentation shall be provided by the owner of the structure. Data produced by the instrument shall be made available to the building official on request.

Maintenance and service of the instruments shall be performed annually by an approved testing agency. The owner shall file with the building official a written report from an approved testing agency certifying that each instrument has been serviced and is in proper working condition. This report shall be submitted when the instruments are installed and annually thereafter. Each instrument shall have affixed to it an externally visible tag specifying the date of the last maintenance or service and the printed name and address of the testing agency.
Appendix M

Tsunami-Generated Flood Hazard

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

Section M101

Tsunami-Generated Flood Hazard

M101.1 General. The purpose of this appendix is to provide tsunami regulatory criteria for those communities that have a tsunami hazard and have elected to develop and adopt a map of their tsunami hazard inundation zone.

M101.2 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

Tsunami Hazard Zone. The area vulnerable to being flooded or inundated by a design event tsunami as identified on a community’s Tsunami Hazard Zone Map.

Tsunami Hazard Zone Map. A map adopted by the community that designates the extent of inundation by a design event tsunami. This map shall be based on the tsunami inundation map that is developed and provided to a community by either the applicable state agency or the National Atmospheric and Oceanic Administration (NOAA) under the National Tsunami Hazard Mitigation Program, but shall be permitted to utilize a different probability or hazard level.

M101.3 Establishment of tsunami hazard zone. Where applicable, if a community has adopted a Tsunami Hazard Zone Map, that map shall be used to establish a community’s tsunami hazard zone.

M101.4 Construction within the tsunami hazard zone. Construction of structures designated Risk Categories III and IV as specified under Section 1604.5 shall be prohibited within a tsunami hazard zone.

Exceptions:

1. A vertical evacuation tsunami refuge shall be permitted to be located in a tsunami hazard zone provided it is constructed in accordance with FEMA P646.

2. Community critical facilities shall be permitted to be located within the tsunami hazard zone when such a location is necessary to fulfill their function, providing suitable structural and emergency evacuation measures have been incorporated.

Section M102

Referenced Standards

FEMA P646—12 Guidelines for Design of Structures for Vertical Evacuation from Tsunamis
APPENDIX N

SIGNS

SECTION N101

GENERAL

N101.1 General. This section shall govern the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display, and maintenance of outdoor display signs and other forms of exterior advertising. Except as otherwise specifically provided, signs bearing non-commercial statements of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion posted on private property are not subject to the provisions of this section.

N101.2 Definition. The following word and term shall, for the purposes of this section and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meaning shown herein.

BILLBOARD. This term includes billboards and poster panels.

N101.3 Permits. No sign subject to the provisions of Section 101 that exceeds 1 square foot (0.093 m²) in area, unless exempted by Section 101.3.5, shall be erected, made a part of a building, painted, repainted, placed, replaced, hung, rehung, altered, repaired structurally, changed in color, made to flash, or maintained, without a permit issued in accordance with this section by the code official.

N101.3.1 Application for permit. Application for sign permit shall be made upon a form provided by the code official. Application for a permit to install a sign shall be accompanied by drawings in triplicate, drawn to scale showing details of construction dimensions, lettering, and method of attachment of the sign.

N101.3.2 Dimensions of the premises. The application shall contain a statement of width of premises or width and height of the building, or any other dimensions deemed necessary by the code official to determine the allowable area of the sign.

N101.3.3 Materials specifications. The applicant shall furnish specifications or other information covering type and thickness of materials for the sign and its support.

N101.3.4 Permits for electrical signs. Any sign on or in which lighting of any type is to be used, or which will be illuminated by artificial means, or which will contain other electrical features, shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 27 of this code and require the issuance of a separate electrical installation permit.

N101.3.5 Exemptions from permit. The types of signs and advertising specified in Sections N101.3.5.1 through N101.3.5.7 do not require permits unless located within areas requiring review by the Commission of Fine Arts.

N101.3.5.1 Theater bills and changeable copy signs. The changing of bills of acts and features of theaters on established frames at such theaters, and the changing of the copy of any authorized changeable copy sign, the wording of which does not conflict with the provisions of this section.

N101.3.5.2 Billboard advertising. Changing of matter advertised on authorized billboards and poster panels included in the official list of billboards.

N101.3.5.3 Signs within a building. Any sign located entirely inside a building, unless the sign is attached directly or painted on a window; is located within 18 inches (457 mm) of a window or entrance; or contains writing that is legible, or an image that is clearly discernible, from property other than the property on which the sign is located. A sign inside a building that is attached directly or painted on a window; is located within 18 inches (457 mm) of a window or entrance; or contains writing that is legible, or an image that is clearly discernible, from property other than the property on which the sign is located shall require a permit and shall be regulated as a sign under this appendix.

N101.3.5.4 Signs on windows. Signs upon a show window, or upon any other window abutting on, or overlooking a street or public way, within the Commercial and PDR Districts as fixed by the Zoning Regulations, which signs advertise only the name of the occupant of the building, office, or store, the business conducted or products sold therein, when the aggregate area of those signs does not exceed 20 percent of the area of the window upon which they are displayed.

N101.3.5.5 Small unilluminated signs. Unilluminated signs located outside of and unattached to buildings in areas zoned Commercial or PDR, otherwise complying with Section N101.6, when such signs do not exceed three per record lot, when each such sign does not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in its maximum dimension and 4 square feet (0.371 m²) in area, and when each of such signs is located more than 20 feet (6096 mm) back of the building line or of the building restriction line. Such signs shall be allowed in addition to those for which a permit is required under this section.

N101.3.5.6 Real estate signs. Real estate signs not exceeding 6 square feet (0.557 m²) in area.

N101.3.5.7 Vacated property. One sign not to exceed 6 square feet (0.557 m²) in area, giving the name, business, and new address of the former occupant, is permitted to be displayed for not more than 60 days.

N101.3a Notwithstanding the limitations and exemptions stated in Section N101.1 and N101.3.5, a permit is required for the erection, painting, repainting, placement, replacement, hanging, rehanging, alteration, repair, or change of a sign larger than 1 square foot (0.093 m²) in size on the outside of a building on historic property or located within the first 18 inches (457 mm) inside a glazed opening of a building on historic property.

N101.3a.1 Permits shall be issued or denied for signs on historic property bearing noncommercial statements of
fact, belief, or personal or political opinion that would otherwise be excluded from regulation under this section pursuant to Section N101.1, and for signs on historic property that would otherwise be exempt from the permit requirement pursuant to Section 3103.5, based solely on their compliance with the requirements of 10-A DCMR, Chapter 25.

N101.3b Notwithstanding the limitations stated in Section N101.1, a permit is required for the erection, painting, repainting, placement, replacement, hanging, rehanging, alteration, repair, or change of a sign bearing a noncommercial statement of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion that would otherwise be excluded from regulation under this section pursuant to Section N101.1, if the sign is subject to review by the Commission of Fine Arts under Section N101.4. Permits shall be issued or denied for these signs based solely on their compliance with Section N101.4 and applicable Commission of Fine Arts requirements.

N101.4 Commission of Fine Arts submission. The provisions of Sections N101.4.1 through N101.4.2.9 shall govern applications for review of signs to be made to the Commission of Fine Arts.

N101.4.1 Shipstead-Luce Act area submissions. All applications to erect signs on buildings or land within the area controlled by An Act To regulate, the height, exterior design, and construction of private and semipublic buildings in certain areas of the National Capital (“Shipstead-Luce Act”), approved May 16, 1930 [46 Stat. 366; DC Official Code § 6-611.01 et seq. (2018 Repl.)], shall be submitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review before a permit is issued. In addition to compliance with all other applicable provisions of this section, signs within the meaning of the Shipstead-Luce Act shall comply with the requirements of Sections N101.4.1.1 through N101.4.1.9.

N101.4.1.1 Billboards, roof signs, projecting and revolving signs. Billboards as described in Section N101.7.6, roof signs as described in Section N101.7.2, projecting signs as described in Section N101.7.1, and revolving signs as described in Section N101.7.11, shall not be permitted.

N101.4.1.2 Permissible signs. Single-faced signs, only, shall be permitted upon the exterior walls of buildings, and all signs shall be stationary. The maximum sign projection allowed shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the building or building restriction lines.

N101.4.1.3 Illuminated signs. Illuminated signs shall consist of freestanding, back-lighted, opaque letters, illuminated by steady light. Exposed sources of sign illumination shall be prohibited.

N101.4.1.4 Sign dimensions. The aggregate area of all signs advertising any one business on a building or premises shall be limited to 25 square feet (2.322 m²) per street frontage.

N101.4.1.5 Sign copy. Copy on signs shall be limited to the address or name of the establishment, or both, and the type of business conducted, as indicated by the Certificate of Occupancy issued for the premises involved.

N101.4.1.6 Number of colors on sign. No more than two colors, nor more than one color in addition to black or white, shall be used for any sign, including the illumination of such sign.

N101.4.1.7 Signs on awnings. Signs on awnings shall be limited to the valance and shall otherwise comply with other applicable requirements of this section.

N101.4.1.8 Show window lettering. Lettering of signs limited to a show window, or any other window, abutting on or overlooking a street or public way, shall cover an aggregate area of not more than 25 square feet (2.322 m²), per business, nor more than 20 percent of the area of the window, whichever is less.

N101.4.1.9 Nonconforming signs. Despite the limitations imposed by the requirements above, when the Commission of Fine Arts finds that the sign or the conditions surrounding it justify granting a variance from or exception to any of the requirements of Sections N101.4.1.1 through N101.4.1.8 and the Commission finds that granting such a variance or exception will not impair the intent and purpose of this section or of the Shipstead-Luce Act, the code official is authorized to approve an application to erect a sign not conforming to the said requirements.

N101.4.2 Old Georgetown Act area submissions. All applications to erect signs on buildings or land within the area controlled by An Act To regulate the height, exterior design, and construction of private and semipublic buildings in the Georgetown area of the National Capital (“Old Georgetown Act”), approved September 22, 1950 [64 Stat. 903; DC Official Code §§ 6-1201 et seq. (2018 Repl.)], shall be submitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review before a permit is issued. In addition to compliance with all other applicable provisions of this section, signs within the meaning of the Old Georgetown Act shall comply with the requirements of Sections N101.4.2.1 through N101.4.2.9.

N101.4.2.1 Billboards, roof signs, projecting and revolving signs. Billboards as described in Section N101.7.6, roof signs as described in Section N101.7.2, and revolving signs as described in Section N101.7.11, shall not be permitted. Projecting signs as described in Section N101.7.1, shall be allowed upon favorable recommendation by the Commission of Fine Arts, which shall include the maximum allowable projection of the sign.

N101.4.2.2 General restriction. All signs shall be stationary.

N101.4.2.3 Illuminated signs. Illuminated signs shall consist of freestanding, back-lighted, opaque letters, illuminated by steady light. Exposed sources of sign illumination shall be prohibited.
illumination shall be prohibited.

**N101.4.2.4 Sign dimensions.** The aggregate area of all signs advertising any one business on a building or premises shall be limited to 25 square feet (2.322 m²) per street frontage.

**N101.4.2.5 Sign copy.** Copy on signs shall be limited to the address or name of the establishment, or both, and the type of business conducted, as indicated by the Certificate of Occupancy issued for the premises involved.

**N101.4.2.6 Number of colors on sign.** No more than two colors, nor more than one color in addition to black or white, shall be used for any sign, including the illumination of such sign.

**N101.4.2.7 Signs on awnings.** Signs on awnings shall be limited to the valance and shall otherwise comply with other applicable requirements of this section.

**N101.4.2.8 Show window lettering.** Lettering of signs limited to a show window, or any other window, abutting on or overlooking a street or public way, shall cover an aggregate area or not more than 25 square feet (2.322 m²), per business, nor more than 20 percent of the area of the window, whichever is less.

**N101.4.2.9 Nonconforming signs.** Despite the limitations imposed by the requirements above, when the Commission of Fine Arts finds that the sign or the conditions surrounding it justifying a variance from or exception to any of the requirements of Sections N101.4.2.1 through N101.4.2.8 and the Commission finds that granting such a variance or exception will not impair the intent and purpose of this section or of the Old Georgetown Act, the code official is authorized to approve an application to erect a sign not conforming to the said requirements.

**N101.5 Marking of signs.** Every sign for which a permit is required shall be marked with letters not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in height, giving the permit number and date of permit issuance.

**N101.5a Signs on historic property.** Signs on historic property shall comply with the requirements of 10-C DCMR, Chapter 25.

**N101.6 Character of advertising.** No sign subject to the provisions of Section N101 shall be erected, hung, rehung, placed, replaced, painted, repainted, repaired, or maintained upon any structure or upon any wall or roof, or upon any premises, unless such sign advertises a bona fide business conducted on the premises, and for which business a Certificate of Occupancy has been issued. The change of sign copy on any sign other than an authorized “Changeable Copy Sign” shall require issuance of a new sign permit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Signs covered by Sections N101.3.5.1 through N101.3.5.3, N101.3.5.5 through N101.3.5.8, billboards as described in Sections N101.7.6 through N101.7.6.7.15, and temporary signs as described in Section N101.8.

2. When buildings are under construction or alteration for a specific use, the code official is authorized to issue a permit for the construction or erection of a sign complying with these regulations, if such building or alteration has progressed to the satisfaction of the code official for its projected use, and application for Certificate of Occupancy has been filed.

**N101.6.1 Area use restriction.** Not more than 50 percent of the area of any sign shall be used to advertise products or commodities actually sold on the premises.

**Exception:** Devices indicating only time, temperature, or both, shall not be required to comply with this restriction.

**N101.6.2 Removal of signs.** Any sign subject to the provisions of Section N101 that was erected, hung, rehung, placed, replaced, painted, repainted, or maintained and which no longer advertises a bona fide business conducted upon the premises as specified in Section N101.6, is not permitted pursuant to Section N101.6a, or is not an authorized billboard or poster panel, shall be taken down, removed, or obliterated within 5 days upon notification by the code official or such longer time as may be designated by the code official, and failure to so comply on the part of the owner, occupant, agent, or person having beneficial use of any building or premises upon which such sign may be found, shall subject the owner to the fines provided for in Section 4 of An Act To regulate the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display and maintenance of outdoor signs and other forms of exterior advertising within the District of Columbia, approved March 3, 1931 [46 Stat. 1486; DC Official Code § 1-303.23 (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)], or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, effective October 5, 1985 [DC Law 6-42; DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

**N101.6.3 Street clocks.** No lettering or advertising matter shall be placed on any street clock or part thereof, except that the name of the manufacturer of the clock is permitted to be displayed on the dial in small letters not to exceed one-twentieth of the height of the dial.

**N101.6.4 Signs on vacant property.** Display of any sign, poster, or other advertising medium on or in any part of a vacant building, store, or premises, visible from the street or public way, other than real estate signs, complying with Section N101.16 and authorized billboards or poster panels, is prohibited.

**Exception:** One sign not more than 6 square feet (0.557 m²) in area giving the name, business, and new address of the former occupant is permitted to be displayed for not more than 60 days on the vacated premises.

**N101.6.5 Directional signs.** Directional signs shall not be allowed except as permitted under Section N101.7.6 for billboards or poster panels, under Section N101.6.4 on vacated property, and their temporary display for the pur-
pose of indicating the availability of real estate for sale or lease and the holding of an open house at a particular property.

Exception: Signs not more than 6 square feet (.557 m²) in area indicating the location of parking facilities for patrons shall be allowed under permit.

N101.6.6 Special permits. The code official is authorized to issue a permit to erect and maintain a sign not conforming with this section if the code official finds that such sign or conditions surrounding such sign are unusual in character, of a type infrequently encountered, and that approval of the permit will provide an equitable application of this section basically in keeping with its purpose and intent. The code official in each such special permit is authorized to impose such terms and conditions as he or she may deem necessary. Any sign erected pursuant to a special permit shall be removed at or prior to the time specified in the permit for the removal of such sign. If no time is specified, then such sign shall be removed not later than 10 days after notice from the code official to do so.

N101.6.6.1 Temporary decorations for buildings. The code official is authorized to approve permits for temporary decorations on the fronts of buildings or on legal projections from buildings in the spirit of a holiday period, inauguration, or similar occasion. Temporary decorations are permitted to include greetings, symbols, pictures, and other markings appropriate to the occasion. Any structures, framework, and fastenings shall be subject to the usual requirements. Authority is not granted in this section to approve applications for decorations on, over, along, or across any street or highway, except as provided for in Section N101.6.6.2. Permits for temporary decorations shall be issued for periods not exceeding 40 days.

N101.6.6.2 Temporary decorations for streets. Temporary street decorations shall not be installed on, over, along or across any street or highway until a special permit has been issued by the Director of the Department of Transportation. Street decorations are a privilege, not a right, and the Director of the Department of Transportation is authorized to deny the corresponding permit or impose such conditions as may be deemed necessary, in the interest of public safety or welfare. Street decorations shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Street decorations shall not contain any advertising or any form of explicit or implicit reference to commercial businesses or products.
2. Street decorations shall be substantially related to an event or seasonal festivity of a civic or religious nature, not occurring more frequently than once a year.
3. Street decorations shall be stationary and shall be substantially supported structurally.
4. Street decorations containing electrical wiring or systems shall comply with Chapter 27.

N101.6a Substitution of Content. Any noncommercial message may be substituted for the content of any commercial sign allowed under this section.

N101.7 Types of signs. The provisions of this section shall apply to types of signs and requirements for all signs subject to the provisions of Section N101.

N101.7.1 Projecting signs. Signs projecting from or beyond a building line or building restriction line shall be allowed in Commercial and PDR Districts, as defined in the Zoning Regulations, when supported on iron or steel brackets and stayed securely, or affixed in an approved equivalent manner, subject to the limitations imposed by Sections N101.7.1.1 through N101.7.1.3.

N101.7.1.1 Sign projection restrictions. No sign shall project more than 42 inches (1067 mm) beyond the building line or building restriction line, on the street frontage of a building. Hooded lights are permitted to be placed on projecting signs solely to illuminate such signs, but the hoods of such lights shall not project more than an additional 6 inches (152 mm). No part of projecting signs shall have less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the surface of a sidewalk or any other space used by the public, nor less than 15 feet (4572 mm) clearance above the surface of any driveway in public space. No portion of a sign shall extend over public space closer than 18 inches (457 mm) from the curb lane. No sign, including illumination, shall project more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the building line, in alleys.

N101.7.1.2 Double-faced projecting signs. Double-faced projecting signs on the front of buildings shall not extend above the roof or parapet a distance of more than one-third of the height of the sign nor more than 4 feet (1219 mm). Such signs are permitted to return over the roof or parapet not over 18 inches (457 mm) back of the face of the wall.

N101.7.1.3 Rigid attachment of signs. No sign projecting over public space shall be so erected or hung as to swing, sway, or revolve in any manner, except banners or flags. The supports for banners and flags shall also be installed so as to be rigid.

N101.7.2 Roof signs. Roof signs shall not be erected above the height limit established by the Zoning Regulations. The base of a roof sign shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof parapet wall on which it is erected or affixed. The height of a roof sign shall not exceed half of the width of its base. In no case shall such sign exceed the maximum area fixed by Section N101.10.

N101.7.2.1 Attachments. All roof signs shall be securely braced and fastened with lag screw expansion bolts, anchor plates, or by another approved structurally sound method, to prevent accidents in high winds. Roof signs shall not be erected or hung so as to swing, sway, or revolve in any manner. Complete structural plans indicating roof construction, method of attachment, and sign framing shall be provided with all applications for roof sign permits.
N101.7.2.2 Height limit. Lettering, advertising, or display of any character, other than religious symbols, is prohibited above the limit of height established by the Zoning Regulations on spires, towers, domes, minarets, pinnacles, penthouses, ventilation shafts, chimneys, smokestacks, water storage tanks, cooling towers, or on any other support media extending above said height limit.

N101.7.3 Signs supported by projecting construction. Signs are permitted to be supported by canopies, marquees, porticos, and roofs of show windows constructed so as to safely support the weight of the sign or signs, in addition to the required snow and wind loads. Such signs shall not extend more than 42 inches (1067 mm) beyond the building line, except as provided for in Section N101.7.1.

N101.7.4 Signs on awnings or similar projections. One horizontal line of letters, each letter not more than 12 inches (305 mm) in height, is permitted to be placed or painted on the vertical faces of valances, or on top of or hung from a canopy, marquee, portico, or awning. Where the line of letters is placed on top or hung from a marquee, canopy, portico, or awning, it shall be constructed in the so-called “skeleton” design, composed of separate letters without background or border. The line of letters shall designate only the street number of the premises and the name of the occupant or building or trade name. Such signs shall also be permitted in Residential Districts and Special Purpose Districts for apartment houses and hotels only. Signs on awnings, marquees, and canopies located on historic property shall comply with the requirements of 10A DCMR, Chapter 25.

N101.7.5 Banner signs and flags. No banner, sign or flag used for advertising purposes shall be erected, hung, attached, or affixed to any pole, staff, or other appurtenance, unless a permit for it has been issued, nor shall such banner, sign, or flag extend over public space more than 42 inches (1067 mm), or be hung or maintained less than 14 feet (4267 mm) above a public parking space, sidewalk or roadway.

N101.7.5.1 Barber poles. Barber poles on public space attached to a building shall not project more than 42 inches (1067 mm) from the building line and provide not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the sidewalk or existing ground level.

N101.7.6 Billboards. The provisions of this section shall govern billboards in the District of Columbia.

N101.7.6.1 Authorized list. Only those billboards which were in existence as of January 1, 1972, that are contained in the “Authorized List of Billboards, Threesheet Poster Boards, and Wall Signs,” dated November 30, 1931, as amended through December 31, 1971, are authorized to remain in place, subject to the conditions in Sections N101.7.6.1 through N101.7.6.15.

N101.7.6.2 Existing authorized billboards. Any existing billboard contained in the authorized list referenced in Section N101.7.6.1 shall be permitted to be maintained, repaired, altered, or rebuilt under authority of permits issued by the code official. Change in size or location is not authorized and the maintenance and repair requirements of Section N101.7.6.5 shall be met.

N101.7.6.3 Unauthorized billboards. Billboards which were not included in the authorized list referenced in Section N101.7.6.1 are without authority, unless erected in accordance with Sections N101.7.6.6 and N101.7.6.7. All unauthorized billboards shall be removed by the owner. No such billboard shall be replaced in any form or in any location, unless a new permit is issued in accordance with Sections N101.7.6.6 and N101.7.6.7.

N101.7.6.4 Razed billboards. Any billboard which is included in the authorized list referenced in Section N101.7.6.1 and which is razed, demolished, or obliterated, shall be stricken from the authorized list. Such billboard shall not be replaced in any form or in any location, unless a new permit is issued in accordance with Sections N101.7.6.6 and N101.7.6.7.

N101.7.6.5 Maintenance and repair. Whenever the code official finds that any billboard on the authorized list referred to in Section N101.7.6.1, or erected under a permit issued in accordance with Sections N101.7.6.6 and N101.7.6.7, is not maintained in good repair and has not deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, the code official shall notify the owner thereof and order him to repair the billboard within a specified time but not less than 10 calendar days. If the code official finds that the billboard has deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, or is not repaired within the time specified in the repair notice, the code official shall notify the owner of the billboard and the owner of the real property on which said billboard is located to remove the billboard from the property within a specified time. All billboards ordered to be removed shall be stricken from the authorized list when the time limit set in the removal notice ends. Failure to comply shall subject said owners, upon conviction or adjudication, to the fines provided for in Section 4 of An Act To regulate the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display and maintenance of outdoor signs and other forms of exterior advertising within the District of Columbia, approved March 3, 1931 (46 Stat. 1486; DC Official Code § 1-303.23), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, effective October 5, 1985 (DC Law 6-42; DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq.).

N101.7.6.6 Permit required. No billboards shall be erected, placed, maintained or relocated within the District of Columbia unless an application for permit is approved by the code official.

1. Permit applications. Permit applications shall be made upon forms provided by the code official. Permit applications shall be accompanied by four sets of drawings showing details of construc-
tion, foundations, lighting, location of the billboard in relation to property lines, and relation to any other billboards located within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of the billboard for which the application is submitted. A separate electrical permit is required for billboards containing any electrical features.

2. Permit fee. The permit application must be accompanied by a fee pursuant to Section 108.

3. Zoning compliance. Billboard permit applications shall comply with the Zoning Regulations. However, where a billboard is to be located in an area, which, in the judgment of the Zoning Administrator is not permitted, the Zoning Administrator shall notify the applicant in writing that the application for permit is denied for failure to conform to the Zoning Regulations, indicating the applicable provisions of the Zoning Regulations. The Zoning Administrator’s decision may be appealed to the Board of Zoning Adjustment as prescribed by its rules.

4. Shipstead-Luce Act and Old Georgetown Act areas. Where a billboard is to be located in an area covered either by the Shipstead-Luce Act or the Old Georgetown Act, the application and supporting material shall be transmitted to the Commission of Fine Arts for review under Sections 6-611.01 and 6-1202 of the DC Official Code (2018 Repl.).

5. Permit denial. If the code official denies a billboard permit, the basis for the denial shall be stated in writing, including references to the statutory or regulatory provisions that would be violated if the permit were granted. The code official shall notify the applicant in writing with the reasons for denial of the permit.

N101.7.6.7 Design standards. Billboard permit applications shall comply with Items 1 through 15, before a permit shall be issued:

1. The billboard shall not contain any moving parts, except where such moving parts are used to convey public service information such as time, temperature, date, weather, or similar information.

2. The billboard shall not contain flashing, intermittent, moving, or neon lights; the billboard shall not be lighted so as to permit beams of light to be directed at any portion of a public right-of-way, which beams of light are of such intensity or brilliance as to cause glare or impair the vision of any driver, or otherwise interfere with the driver’s operation of a motor vehicle; the billboard shall not obstruct or undermine the traffic information systems of signs and lights.

3. The billboard shall not be located on lots of less than 50 feet (15240 mm) of street frontage, nor shall billboard length be more than half the street frontage of the lot where it is proposed to be erected.

4. The billboard shall not be located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of an existing billboard.

5. When located along an Interstate Highway or a controlled Access Primary Roadway within the Federal Aid Primary Urban Extension System as designated by the DC Department of Transportation, the billboard shall not be located less than 500 feet (152 400 mm) from an existing billboard.

6. The billboard shall not be located on lots within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of any Residential District, as defined by the Zoning Regulations.

7. The billboard shall not be located within 200 feet (60 960 mm) of any park or building owned or under the control of the government of the District of Columbia or of the Federal Government.

8. The billboard shall not be located within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of any Historic Landmark or in or within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of any Historic District as listed in the District of Columbia Inventory of Historic Sites.

9. The billboard shall not be visible from the nearest right-of-way line of any Interstate Highway or Federal Aid Primary Urban Extension System route, as designated by the DC Department of Transportation, or on any surface or elevated right-of-way of the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority (WMATA) system, except as authorized in accordance with Item 10 of this section.

10. Where permitted by the Zoning Regulations, billboards shall be permitted that do not comply with Item 9 of this section, provided that such billboards are located more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from any of the right-of-ways mentioned therein.

11. The billboards shall be set back from each property line of the lot where it is proposed to be erected, a distance of at least 1 foot (305 mm) for each foot (305 mm) of overall billboard height.

12. The billboard shall not have a net advertising area in excess of 300 square feet (27.9 m²) for each sign face. For the purpose of this section, net area shall be considered exclusive of any border, trim, ornamental base, apron supports or other structural members.

13. The billboard shall be designed and installed so as to maintain a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) from the ground, as measured from the adjacent grade.

14. The billboard shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm) in overall height as measured from grade.
N101.7.7 Signs on side walls. Where no sign or signs exist on the side wall of any building or structure, no permit shall be issued for the erection, hanging or painting of a sign or signs on such side wall, except as provided in Sections N101.7.7.1 and N101.7.7.2.

N101.7.7.1 Corner buildings and alleys entrances. The code official shall be authorized to issue permits to erect, hang, or paint a sign or signs on those side walls of a corner building which abut a public street, or on those side walls of buildings which have a public entrance opening for business purposes upon an alley, when such signs comply with the provisions of this section.

N101.7.7.2 Walls facing parking lots. A building with adjoining parking lots used in connection with such building shall be permitted to have side wall signs facing over such parking lots toward a street or alley fronting on such lots.

N101.7.8 Signs on public space. No structure or standard used as a sign, bulletin, or advertisement of any sort shall be built, placed, erected, hung, maintained, or left in or upon any street, avenue, alley, highway, footway, sidewalk, parking or other public space in the District of Columbia, unless specifically approved by the code official, including the use of directional signs as described in Section N101.6.5, in accordance with provisions of this section.

N101.7.9 Transported signs or banners. No advertising sign or banner shall be carried or transported on or over any public space. The provisions of this section shall not apply to signs displayed on vehicles and advertising the bona-fide business of the owner. This section shall not be construed to apply to banners or signs carried by members of any labor organization or similar body, whether employers or employees, publicizing the existence of or facts about any labor dispute or to any other sign bearing noncommercial statements of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion.

N101.7.10 Commercial advertising on WMATA vehicles. Despite the provisions of Section N101.7.9, or any other law, the sale and use of commercial revenue advertising space on the rear and side exteriors, or entire exterior surfaces of Metrobus public transit vehicles under the control and operation of the Washington Metropolitan Area Transit Authority (WMATA) shall be permitted for such vehicles operating on public space within the District of Columbia, subject to the conditions of Sections N101.7.10.1 and N101.7.10.2.

N101.7.10.1 Observance of the law. No advertisement shall be accepted by WMATA which violates this code or any other District of Columbia or federal law.

N101.7.10.2 Public service announcements. The rear and side exterior advertising space on at least 10 percent of the total number of Metrobus vehicles available for public transit operations shall be reserved for free public service announcements and advertisements regarding community, art, cultural, educational, and similar events.

N101.7.11 Revolving signs. Revolving signs shall be permitted in Commercial and PDR Districts as defined in the Zoning Regulations, when located entirely upon the land of the owner and not projecting beyond the building line, subject to the conditions of Sections N101.7.11.1 and N101.7.11.7. As used in this section, “revolving sign” includes a sign that displays 3-D, moving, animated, or periodically-changing images or text.

N101.7.11.1 Location restriction. Revolving signs shall not be permitted on the roofs of buildings or structures.

N101.7.11.2 Application requirement. Complete details of erection and operation of revolving signs shall be submitted with the sign permit application.

N101.7.11.3 Color and electrical features. The color and electrical features of revolving signs shall be approved by the Department of Transportation before issuance of a revolving sign permit.

N101.7.11.4 Revolving speed. Revolving signs shall not revolve faster than 5 revolutions per minute.

N101.7.11.5 Dimensions. The area of revolving signs shall not exceed 40 square feet (3.72 m²) per face, and the maximum dimension shall not exceed 3 feet (914 mm).

N101.7.11.6 Clearance and height. Revolving signs shall have not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above the adjacent ground level, and the total height of the sign above grade shall not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm).

N101.7.11.7 Illumination. Exposed lights or tubing shall be prohibited on revolving signs, and illumination shall be from indirect or internal sources.

N101.7.11.8 Vehicular traffic safety. No revolving sign may be installed or maintained if the Department of Transportation has determined that the sign location, size, or height above grade is objectionable with regard to vehicular traffic safety.

N101.7.12 Commercial advertising on Taxicabs. Despite the provisions of Section N101.7.9, or any other law, the sale and use of commercial revenue advertising space on the exterior rooftops of taxicabs shall be permitted, subject to the conditions of Sections N101.7.12.1 through N101.7.12.4.

N101.7.12.1 Advertising dimensions. Exterior rooftop advertising on taxicabs shall not exceed a size of 18 inches (457 mm) in width, 17 inches (431.8 mm) in height or 56 inches (1422 mm) in length.

N101.7.12.2 Illuminated signs. Exterior rooftop advertising signs on taxicabs may be equipped with fluorescent illumination. However, flashing, intermittent, moving, or neon lights or parts are prohibited.
N101.7.12.3 Signs violating law. No advertisement shall be permitted that violates any District or federal law, including, but not limited to, Sections 28-3901 through 28-3908 of the DC Official Code.

N101.7.12.4 Public service announcements. Those taxicabs carrying exterior rooftop advertising pursuant to this section shall devote 10 percent of their yearly rooftop advertising to free public service announcements and advertisements regarding health, safety community, art, cultural, educational, or similar subjects or events.

N101.8 Temporary signs during construction. The code official is authorized to issue permits for the erection, painting, or affixing of signs on premises where building operations are being conducted, giving the name and address of the engineers, architects, contractors, financing institutions, and identifying the project or purpose of the building. Such signs shall comply with all requirements of this section, and any sign so erected, painted, or affixed shall be removed upon completion of the building operations, or at any time before completion of building operations, when ordered by the code official in the interest of public safety, health and welfare.

N101.8.1 Signs in public space. Permits shall be issued for temporary construction signs, as described in Section N101.8 to be erected on temporary barricades, covered walkways, construction offices or public space between the building line and such structures, subject to the conditions of Section N101.8.

N101.8.2 Dimensions. The total area of signs erected on public space pursuant to Sections N101.8 through N101.8.2 shall be limited to 2 square feet (0.186 m²) for each foot of street frontage of the lot, with a maximum sign area of 40 square feet (3.72 m²) for residentially zoned property, and 200 square feet (18.58 m²) for commercially zoned property. An additional 5 square feet (0.465 m²) of sign area shall be permitted on barricades to identify each adjoining premises or business.

N101.9 Residential or Special Purpose District limitations. This section shall govern signs subject to the provisions of Section N101 posted in residential or special purpose districts.

N101.9.1 General Residential District limitation. Signs shall not be permitted in any Residential District, as fixed by the Zoning Regulations unless a permit is issued by the code official in accordance with the provisions of this section. The exemptions from the permit requirement stated in Section N101.3.5 shall not apply to signs in Residential Districts. Signs posted in Residential Districts that bear noncommercial statements of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion are not subject to the provisions of this section and shall not require a permit unless the sign is posted on historic property or is subject to review by the Commission of Fine Arts and a permit is required pursuant to Section N101.3a or N101.3b.

Exception: A permit shall not be required for a nameplate not exceeding 1 square foot (0.093 m²) in area, to advertise a home occupation, and bearing only the name and occupation of the occupant of the building.

N101.9.2 Zoning restrictions. Nothing within this section shall be construed to grant any greater area nor any greater illumination than limited by specific order of the Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission. If such a specific order prohibits any signs or illumination, such specific order shall take precedence over the provisions of this section.

N101.9.3 Location restrictions. Residential district signs subject to the provisions of Section N101 shall be located entirely on private property and shall be located on the portions of the building or premises occupied by the use for which the signs are authorized.

N101.9.4 Illumination. Residential District signs shall be allowed to be illuminated by steady white lighting only. Fluctuating, pulsating, or moving lights or lighting designed to change appearance in any manner shall not be permitted in any Residential District. Where illumination of signs located in any Residential District is by gas tubes, these tubes shall not be visible but shall be allowed to be so arranged as to provide indirect light.

N101.9.5 Authorized signs. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for signs complying with any of Sections N101.9.1 through N101.9.7.

N101.9.5.1 Temporary automobile parking lots. On temporary automobile parking lots approved by the code official for such use, the total area of signs shall not be greater than 20 square feet (1.86 m²) facing each street upon which the lot has a vehicular entrance, in addition to separate signs authorized under Section N101.9.5.7.

N101.9.5.2 Nonconforming uses. Signs advertising a nonconforming use, as defined in the Zoning Regulations, shall be limited to a total area not to exceed, for each use, the limits permitted by Section N101.10 or 40 square feet (3.72 m²), whichever is less. Separate signs authorized under Section N101.9.5.7 shall be counted towards the limits of this section.

N101.9.5.3 Church bulletins. Church bulletins shall not exceed 20 square feet (1.86 m²) in area for each church. When approved by the code official, church bulletins shall be allowed to be placed on public parking upon recommendation of the Public Space Committee.

N101.9.5.4 Nonprofit organization. Signs for each school, college, hotel, philanthropic institution, nonprofit organization, hospital, residential care facility or church, shall be limited to a total area not to exceed 40 square feet (3.73 m²).

1. Nonprofit organization nameplates. When approved by the code official, a nameplate or nameplates, each such plate not more than 6 square feet (0.56 m²) in area, shall be allowed to be placed on the public parking at entrance driveways, upon recommendation of the Public Space Committee. The area of such nameplates shall not be counted towards the limits on total sign area specified in Section N101.9.5.4.
2. **Sign supports.** Signs pursuant to Section N101.9.5.4 shall be allowed to be supported on posts or pilasters where permits have been secured for posts or pilasters, but shall not be so placed as to extend over any walkway or roadway unless there is at least 8 feet (2438 mm) clearance above such walkway or 15 feet (4572 mm) clearance above such roadway.

**N101.9.5.5 Apartment house signs.** For apartment houses, signs shall be limited to the name and house number of the building. Such signs shall only be permitted when facing the street or streets upon which entrances to the building are located. Such signs shall not exceed for each building frontage, the limits set forth in Table N101.9.5.5. Signs placed on a marquee, canopy, or awning, as permitted under Section N101.7.4, shall not be counted towards the area limitation given in Table N101.9.5.5. For purposes of this section, a group building erected under a covenant shall be considered as a single building.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STREET FRONTAGE (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SIZE OF SIGN ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 45</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 to 50</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 to 55</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 to 60</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 to 65</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 to 70</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 to 75</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 to 80</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 to 85</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85 to 90</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 to 95</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95 to 100</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 to 105</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105 to 110</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 to 115</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115 to 120</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 and above</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

**N101.9.5.6 Office buildings, commercial or industrial uses.** For buildings or premises approved by the Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission for office buildings and commercial or industrial uses, the total area of signs, for each such building or premises, shall not exceed the limit prescribed in Section N101.10, or 40 square feet, (3.73 m²), or such other limitation as may have been imposed by the Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission, whichever is less. Such signs shall be attached flat against the wall of the building, unless they conform to Section N101.9.5.6.1.

**N101.9.5.6.1 Signs beyond the wall.** Signs pursuant to Section N101.9.5.6 shall be permitted on canopies, marqueses, porticos, and awnings located entirely on private property, where placed or painted in the manner and with the limitations described in Section N101.7.4. Signs so placed shall be counted towards the maximum allowable area of signs.

**N101.9.5.7 Parking rate signs.** Where Section 612 of 24 DCMR (Public Space and Safety) requires that a schedule of auto parking charge rates be posted, a separate sign setting forth such schedule, not more than 20 square feet (1.86 m²) in area, shall be allowed in addition to the areas otherwise permitted in Sections N101.9.5.1 and N101.9.5.2.

**N101.9.6 Signs in Special Purpose Districts.** For buildings or premises located in a Special Purpose District, as defined in the Zoning Regulations, the total area of signs subject to the provisions of Section N101 shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table N101.9.6, nor those imposed by any specific order of the Board of Zoning Adjustment or Zoning Commission.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STREET FRONTAGE (feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SIZE OF SIGN ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 40</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 to 100</td>
<td>1 per foot of frontage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 100</td>
<td>100 plus 0.5 per foot of frontage over 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

**N101.10 Maximum size of signs.** In any district other than Residential or Special Purpose Districts, the total area of sign or signs subject to the provisions of Section N101 and attached to, displayed from, or erected upon any building, lot, or parcel of land, shall not exceed the limits prescribed in Sections N101.10.1 through N101.10.7.

**N101.10.1 One story buildings.** Two square feet (0.19 m²) for each foot of width of front of building occupied by the business or profession to be advertised, such signs or signs to be placed on the front under consideration within the limits of the portion of the front in which the business advertised is located. Roof signs shall not exceed 100 square feet (9.29 m²) facing any one street frontage.
N101.10.2 First floor stores or businesses in multistory buildings. The provisions of Section N101.10.1 shall apply, except that such signs shall be kept within a height of 20 feet (6096 mm) above the sidewalk.

N101.10.3 Upper stories of multistory buildings. The total area of all signs above the 20-foot height specified in Section N101.10.2 shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table N101.10.3, for each street frontage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREA OF WALL ABOVE 20 FEET ABOVE THE SIDEWALK, ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE AREA OF SIGNS ABOVE 20 FEET ABOVE SIDEWALK ON STREET FRONTAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 1600</td>
<td>40 ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600 to 4000</td>
<td>1/40 of area of wall above 20 ft height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 4000</td>
<td>100 ft² roof signs, or 1/40 of area of wall above 20 ft height for signs below roof</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

N101.10.4 Single occupancy buildings. Where an entire building over one story in height is occupied by one business, store or occupant, the total area of all signs on each street frontage shall not exceed the limits set forth in Table N101.10.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AREA OF WALL ON STREET FRONTAGE (square feet)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE AREA OF SIGNS ON STREET FRONTAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 4000</td>
<td>100 ft²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 4000</td>
<td>1/40 of area of wall, of which not more than 100 ft² above the roof</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.093 m².

N101.10.5 Unimproved lots or lots with a small office. Where a business is conducted on an unimproved lot or a lot with a small office, 2 square feet (0.19 m²) of sign area for each foot of street frontage shall be allowed, but not more than 150 square feet (13.95 m²) per frontage under consideration. The area of the signs of such buildings shall not exceed that permitted under Section N101.10.1.

N101.10.6 Parking rate signs. Where Section 612 of DCMR 24, “Public Space and Safety” requires that a schedule of auto parking charge rates be posted, a sign setting forth such schedule, not more than 20 square feet (1.86 m²) in area shall be allowed in addition to the areas otherwise permitted in Sections N101.10.1 through N101.10.5.

N101.10.7 Exemptions. Signs exempted from permit pursuant to Sections N101.3.5 through N101.3.5.8 and signs not subject to the provisions of Section N101 shall not be counted towards the total sign area permitted under Sections N101.10.1 through N101.10.5.

N101.11 Structural and materials requirements. All signs subject to the provisions of Section N101 and their supports, including signs exempted from permit, shall comply with all structural and materials requirements of this section and other applicable sections of this code.

N101.11.1 Wind load. Signs shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind pressure as provided for in Chapter 16.

N101.11.2 Seismic load. Signs designed to withstand wind pressures shall be considered capable of withstanding earthquake loads, except as provided for in Chapter 16.

N101.11.3 Working stresses. The allowable working stresses shall conform with the requirements of Chapter 16. The working stresses of wire rope and its fastenings shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate strength of the rope or fasteners.

Exceptions:

1. The allowable working stresses for steel and wood shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapters 22 and 23.
2. The working strength of chains, cables, guys or steel rods shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of such chains, cables, guys or steel.

N101.11.4 Attachment. Signs attached to all structures shall be safely and securely fastened by means of metal anchors, bolts or approved expansion screws of sufficient size and anchorage to safely support the loads applied. The structure to which signs are attached shall be designed to support the loads applied. Signs shall not be attached to or supported by unbraced parapet walls.

N101.11.5 Lateral bracing assumptions. For design of lateral bracing in the direction of the length of the sign, the wind shall be assumed at an angle of 45 degrees with the front or back of the sign, and the bracing designed for the force on the projected area perpendicular to the wind.

N101.11.6 Ground supports. Ground supports for signs shall comply with Sections N101.11.6.1 and N101.11.6.2.

N101.11.6.1 Wood materials. Where wood is embedded in the soil, the wood shall be pressure treated with an approved preservative.

N101.11.6.2 Metal materials. Metal materials shall be protected from corrosion.

N101.11.7 Combustible materials. Plastic materials shall burn at a rate no faster than 2.5 inches per minute (64 mm/ min) when tested in accordance with ASTM D635.

N101.11.8 Incombustible materials. Signs as specified in Sections N101.11.8.1 through N101.11.8.5 shall be of incombustible material except that sign cappings, decorations, lettering, and moldings may be of combustible materials.
N101.11.8.1 **Wall signs.** Wall signs exceeding 40 square feet (3.72 m²) in area, flat against, or supported not more than 15 inches (381 mm) away from the wall.

N101.11.8.2 **Projecting signs.** Projecting signs exceeding 2.5 square feet (0.23 m²) in area.

N101.11.8.3 **Ground-supported signs.** Ground-supported signs greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) in height or located 6 feet (1828 mm) or less from any building.

N101.11.8.4 **Roof signs.** Roof signs, irrespective of height or area.

N101.11.8.5 **Electrical signs.** Signs using electricity.

N101.11.9 **Use of glass.** Glass in signs shall be double-strength plain glass, plate glass, or wired glass. Glass shall be designed in accordance with Table N101.11.9, except that no panel of more than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) of glass other than wired glass shall be used in signs projecting over public space.

N101.12 **Alteration or relocation of signs.** No sign erected before the adoption of these regulations shall be altered structurally or relocated, unless it is brought into compliance with the requirements of all applicable regulations for new signs.

N101.13 **Dangerous signs.** When any sign, including signs bearing noncommercial statements of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion posted on private property, now or hereafter erected, hung, attached, or maintained becomes structurally unsafe or otherwise dangerous to the safety of any building or premises, or to the public, the *code official* shall order the same to be taken down, removed, or made safe, and such order shall be complied with by the owner, occupant, agent, or person having the beneficial use of any building or premises upon which said dangerous sign may be erected, hung, attached, or maintained. Any such person failing to comply with the orders issued pursuant to this section shall, upon conviction or adjudication, be subject to the fines provided for in the Act of March 3, 1931 [46 Stat. 1486, as amended; DC Official Code Section 1-303.23 (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)], or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985 (DC Law 6-42, Section 457).

N101.14 **Obstructive signs.** No sign, including signs bearing noncommercial statements of fact, belief, or personal or political opinion posted on private property, shall be so erected, hung, or attached as to obstruct any window, door, fire escape, balcony, platform, stairway, ladder, stack, vent pipe, or egress from any building.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM SIZE OF EXPOSED PANEL (square feet)</th>
<th>MINIMUM THICKNESS OF GLASS (inches)</th>
<th>TYPE OF GLASS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any dimension (inches)</td>
<td>Area (square inches)</td>
<td>1/8, 3/32, 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>1/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>3/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>3,600</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 144</td>
<td>&gt; 3,600</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm².
tion N101.16.4. The area of any such sign shall not exceed 40 square feet (3.716 m²) if located within a Residential district, or 60 square feet (5.58 m²) if located within an unsubdivided outlying section of the District of Columbia. This section shall not apply to the temporary placement of directional signs relating to the sale or lease of real estate which indicate the holding of an open house, or a sign attached to the one painted or printed sign allowed by Section N101.3.5.6 which indicates that the premises have been sold, leased, or placed under contract.

N101.16.3 Additional restrictions. Real estate signs shall be located on the premises advertised. Directional signs shall not be permitted.

N101.16.4 Permit for real estate signs. Under the provisions of the Act of March 4, 1913 (37 Stat. 974), a permit shall be issued to erect, hang, place, paint, or display any sign advertising the sale, rent or lease of real estate, or which in any manner pertains to land or buildings, unless exempted by Section N101.3.5.6. No permit shall be required for the temporary placement of directional signs which indicate the holding of an open house at a particular property.

N101.16.5 Penalties. The code official is authorized to require the removal of any sign or advertisement in violation of this section and to institute proceedings against persons violating this section, and upon conviction or adjudication, such persons shall be subject to the fines provided for in DC Official Code § 1-303.23 (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.), or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985 [DC Official Code §§ 2-1801 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

N101.17 Rules for Special Signs. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for a “Special Sign,” as defined in Section N101.17.1. Special Signs shall be subject to the rules of this section and not to the rules in this chapter pertaining to billboards, poster panels, wall signs, and other specific types of signs. The rules of this section shall apply only to Special Signs.

N101.17.1 Definitions. As used in this section, the following definitions apply:

Special Sign. A sign which meets the standards listed in Section N101.17.5, that is erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed or maintained on an outdoor or exterior wall or surface of a building pursuant to a Special Sign Permit issued by the Director of the Department. A Special Sign shall only include signs that are erected, hung, placed, painted, displayed or maintained on an outdoor or exterior wall or surface that is not self-standing, except as provided in this section. A Special Sign shall be one of the thirty-two special signs approved by the Director pursuant to the Rules for Special Signs adopted September 22, 2000 (47 DCR 7695 - 7700).

Exception: The 12 self-standing special signs approvals, existing as of January 1, 2004, shall be allowed to remain and/or be transferred within the area specified in Section N101.17.7(b); provided that transfers of existing self-standing signs to a new self-standing location are subject to the following additional conditions: that transferred self-standing signs are permitted only as temporary signs for a 2 year time period beginning on the latter of the dates of issuance of the transfer permit or the date of issuance of the associated building permit for the special sign structure; and that the location to which the self-standing sign is transferred is a future construction site to be developed in the foreseeable future, as demonstrated by development plans, marketing materials, or ongoing administrative processes to develop the site. Sign support structures that are either attached to an adjacent building wall or within 12 inches (308 mm) of an adjacent building wall (to ensure that the wall is not damaged) are not considered “self-standing” for the purposes of the special sign regulations.

Call to Action. An explicit, specific or blatant message to consumers from the sponsor that asks consumers to take action by purchasing, using, utilizing or considering the use of a sponsor’s product and/or service, including without limitation providing price or value information (for example, “affordable” or “5% interest rate available”) and inducements to act (such as, “one month’s free service when you buy”).

Logo. The symbol, emblem, typeface, or other visual device used by the sponsor to identify itself and to distinguish itself from others in the marketplace.

Permit Holder. The individual or entity who or which holds a Special Sign Permit validly issued and in good standing in accordance with the requirements of this section and with all other applicable terms and conditions of Chapter 31, and who or which makes such Special Sign available for sponsorship or community service as provided herein.

Sponsor. The entity that contracts with the Permit Holder for the use of a Special Sign to display the Sponsor’s artwork that meets the visual and text standards of Section 3115.4.2.5.

N101.17.2 Special Sign Permit. No Special Sign may be erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, or maintained in the District of Columbia without the owner of such Special Sign first obtaining a Special Sign Permit from the Department in accordance with Section N101.17.3 and approval of the artwork in accordance with Section N101.17.5. A Special Sign Permit authorizes the sign’s location and particular artwork.

N101.17.3 Special Sign Permit application. An application for a Special Sign Permit shall be submitted by the owner to the Director of the Department, or his designee, on a form provided by the Department, and shall include the following:

1. Identification of:
   a. The applicant.
   b. The proposed location of the Special Sign, by the street address of the building or premises and the face direction of the wall or surface (for example, “northern-facing”).

APPENDIX N—SIGNS
c. The proposed linear dimensions of the Special Sign.

d. A list of all existing Special Signs, identified by the address of the premises, located within a radius of 1,000 feet (304.8 m) of the center of the proposed Special Sign.

2. An affidavit signed by the applicant or his duly authorized representative, certifying that the applicant is in compliance with the Clean Hands Before Receiving a License or Permit Act of 1996 (“Clean Hands Act”), effective May 11, 1996 [DC Law 11-118; DC Official Code §§ 47-2861 et seq. (2015 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)].

3. A permit fee in the amount of one dollar ($1) per square foot of the Special Sign. The permit fee may be paid by check made payable to the order of the “DC Treasurer.” The permit fee may be refunded to the applicant if the permit is not issued, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1 for the refund of unused permit fees.

N101.17.3.1 Applicant qualifications. The applicant who or which submits an application for a Special Permit shall be licensed to do business in the District of Columbia as a business engaged in outdoor advertising, shall be a business in good standing at the time the application is submitted and for the duration of the permit, as evidenced in the Department’s records. The applicant shall not owe more than one hundred dollars ($100) in taxes or delinquent fines to the District of Columbia at the time the application is submitted, as evidenced in the records of the District of Columbia Office of Tax and Revenue, and shall be in compliance with the Clean Hands Act.

N101.17.4 Review, approval and denial of Permit Applications. The Director of the Department, or his or her designee, shall review and approve or deny a Special Sign Permit application within 20 days of its submission. Special Sign Permits shall be issued in the name of the applicant and shall pertain solely to the Special Sign location identified on the permit, subject to the transferability provisions of Section N101.17.7.

N101.17.4.1 Denial of Application. If the Director denies a Special Sign Permit, the denial shall be in writing to the applicant and shall state the statutory or regulatory basis for the denial. The applicant shall have 10 business days from receipt of the denial to correct any defect in the application.

N101.17.5 Approval of Special Sign Artwork. Prior to the erection, hanging, placement, posting, painting, or displaying of any Special Sign artwork, the applicant shall obtain approval of such Special Sign artwork from the Department. The applicant shall submit the Special Sign artwork for approval with the original permit application or obtain approval for the Special Sign artwork subsequent to the issuance of the Special Sign Permit. Special Sign artwork shall be submitted to the Director of the Department or his or her designee, who shall review and act on the Special Sign artwork submission within 10 days of the submission. Special Sign artwork shall not be accepted by the Department when it violates the DC Official Code or any other District of Columbia law or municipal regulation, or federal law. Special Sign artwork shall not be approved by the Department unless:

1. Identification of the Sponsor of the Special Sign, when provided, is limited to the bottom center, bottom right or bottom left corner of the Special Sign artwork, and shall be limited to the words “Sponsored by [Name and/or Logo of Sponsor].” This Sponsor identification shall be no higher than one-tenth of the maximum vertical dimension of the face of the sign, and no wider than one-third of the maximum horizontal width of the face of the sign.

2. The copy of the Special Sign shall be predominantly pictorial and nonverbal, with textual matter on not more than 25 percent of the display area of the sign. The space occupied by any sponsor identification shall not be counted against the 25 percent limitation. Any textual matter or words contained in the pictures of products on the signs, such as the labeling on soft drink cans, and the like, shall be considered pictorial and shall not count in the calculation of the percentage of textual matter.

3. Any words included in the body of the Special Sign artwork shall not directly or indirectly identify the Sponsor or any of the Sponsor’s recognizable campaign slogans, or serve as a direct “Call to Action” on behalf of the Sponsor.

4. The Department of Transportation determines that the sign location, size, and height above grade is not objectionable with regard to vehicular traffic safety.

5. The Department determines that the sign location is compatible with any existing park or building under the control of either the District of Columbia or the Federal government, pursuant to applicable laws and regulations.

6. The distance between horizontal projection of the center of the new proposed sign and the horizontal projection of the center of any other existing Special Sign within a 1,000 feet (304.8 m) radius is at least five times the sum of the diagonals of the two signs. This provision shall not affect existing Special Signs but shall apply to all new Special Signs and to the proposed relocation of any existing Special Sign.

7. Subject to the limitations placed on the permitted transfer of self-standing signs in Section N101.17.1, the height of special signs installed as self-standing signs shall be not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm) and shall provide 8 feet (2438 mm) of clearance from the ground, as measured from the adjacent grade.

N101.17.5.1 Submission of color copies. Color copies of the proposed Special Sign artwork shall be submitted to the Department for approval, in duplicate. The color copies shall be legible. Once Special Sign artwork is approved, the two copies shall be stamped “approved” by the Department; one copy shall be placed in the
applicant’s permit file with the Department and be made available for inspection by the Department, for as long as the sign shall remain on display, and one copy shall be returned to the applicant reflecting the approval of the Department.

N101.17.6 Changing Special Sign copy. A Special Sign permit holder may change the Special Sign artwork at the permit location by submitting the new artwork for approval in accordance with the provisions of Section N101.17.5. A “change copy” fee in the amount of five hundred dollars ($500) must be paid before each new Special Sign artwork can be approved and changed. The $500 change copy fee in this section is refundable if the request to change the Special Sign artwork by the permit holder is not approved by the Director. Changing the copy of a permitted Special Sign shall not entail an increase of any of the linear dimensions of the sign.

N101.17.7 Transferability of Special Sign Locations. A Special Sign Permit shall be transferable to a new location only under the following conditions:

1. Except for transfers from locations presently lying outside the area defined in Item 2 of this section, the transfer is for cause, which only means that: (a) the lease for the location of the Special Sign is canceled, terminated, or otherwise invalid; (b) the Special Sign is partially or totally obstructed; or (c) the location of the Special Sign is or would be no longer feasible because of construction or development.

2. The new location is within the Central Business District (C-4), as defined by Title 11 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations; the commercial or industrial portions of the New York Avenue corridor, areas zoned industrial (M, C-M), as defined in Chapter 8 of Title 11 of the District of Columbia Municipal Regulations (11 DCMR §§ 800 et seq.); facilities within the jurisdiction of the District of Columbia Sports Commission as of November 1, 2001; or the following areas within the Central Employment Area which are bounded as follows:

2.1. Beginning at the corner of F Street NW and 17th Street NW; west along F Street NW to 20th Street NW; north along 20th Street NW to Pennsylvania Avenue NW; west along Pennsylvania Avenue NW to 21st Street NW; north along 21st Street N to M Street NW; east along M Street NW to 20th Street NW; north along 20th Street NW to N Street NW; east along N Street NW to 19th Street NW; south along 19th Street NW to G Street NW; east along G Street NW to 17th Street NW; south along 17th Street NW to F Street NW.

2.2. Beginning at the corner of Rhode Island Avenue NW and M Street NW; northeast along Rhode Island Avenue NW to Massachusetts Avenue NW; east along Massachusetts Avenue NW to 15th Street NW; south along 15th Street NW to M Street NW; west along M Street NW to 16th Street NW; south along the east side of 16th Street NW to Eye Street NW; north along the west side of 16th Street NW to M Street NW; west along M Street NW to Rhode Island Avenue NW.

2.3. Beginning at the intersection of Massachusetts Avenue NW and 14th Street NW; east along Massachusetts Avenue NW to 9th Street NW; north along 9th Street NW to N Street NW; east along N Street NW to 7th Street NW; south along 7th Street NW to K Street NW; east along K Street NW to 3rd Street NW; south along 3rd Street NW to Massachusetts Avenue NW; west along Massachusetts Avenue NW to Eye Street NW; west along Eye Street NW to 9th Street NW; south along 9th Street NW to H Street NW; west along H Street NW to 11th Street NW; north along H Street NW to Eye Street NW; west along Eye Street NW to 12th Street NW; north along 12th Street NW to L Street NW; west along L Street NW to 14th Street NW; north along 14th Street NW to Massachusetts Avenue NW.

2.4. Beginning at the intersection of Massachusetts Avenue NW and H Street NW; east along H Street NW to the closed alley (formerly Smith Court) in the mid-block between 1st Street NW and North Capitol Street; south along that closed alley line to G Street NW; east along G Street NW to North Capitol Street; south along North Capitol Street NW to Massachusetts Avenue NW; northwest on Massachusetts Avenue NW to H Street NW.

2.5. Beginning at the intersection of Florida Avenue NE and North Capitol Street; southeast along Florida Avenue NE to 4th Street NE; south along 4th Street NE to M Street NE; west along M Street NE to 3rd Street NE; south along 3rd Street NE to K Street NE; west along K Street NE to 1st Street NE; south along 1st Street NE to G Place NE; west along G Place NE to North Capitol Street; north along North Capitol Street to Florida Avenue NE.

2.6. Beginning at the corner of M Street SE and South Capitol Street; east along M Street SE to 1st Street SE; south along 1st Street SE to Potomac Avenue SE; west along Potomac Avenue SE to South Capitol Street; north along South Capitol Street to M Street SE.

2.7. Beginning at the intersection of Maryland Avenue SW and Maine Avenue SW; east along Maryland Avenue SW to 9th Street SW; south along 9th Street SW to Interstate 395; west along Interstate 395 to Maine Avenue SW.
3. The Special Sign in its new location is approved by the Department in accordance with all other applicable provisions of Section N101.17.

4. The permit holder pays a “change location” fee in the amount of $500. The $500 change location fee shall be refundable if the transfer of the Special Sign permit to a new location is not approved. If the relocation of the Special Sign is made at the request of the Department, a change location fee shall not be required.

5. If the Special Sign is painted or drawn onto an existing structure, the method of removal shall be that the existing structure where the Special Sign has been placed shall be made neutral prior to the relocation.

6. If a current Special Sign permit for a location that is not in the zone of transferability, as defined in Paragraph (b) of this section, is transferred to another location under this section, the Department shall ensure that the current Special Sign has been removed prior to the relocation and no subsequent Special Sign shall be permitted to be erected in the former location or area outside the zone of transferability.

7. No Special Sign shall be installed so as to extend above the lowest portion of the roofline of an existing building's dimensions.

**N101.17.8 Installation of Special Signs.** The installation of a Special Sign shall be done in a workmanlike manner and in accordance with the standards of the industry. Special Signs shall be subject to the structural provisions of Section N101.11. Special signs shall not be installed upon building walls so as to cover any existing windows. A Special Sign shall only be installed upon a building and no part of either it or its supporting structure may protrude above the wall upon which it is installed. The topmost point of a Special Sign or of its supporting structure shall not be higher than the allowable height for a new building at the premises, under the Zoning Regulations.

**N101.17.9 Illumination of Special Signs.** Special Signs within 500 feet (152 400 mm) of a residential zone, as established in the Zoning Regulations, shall not be illuminated. Other Special Signs may be indirectly illuminated by projecting artificial light on the surface of the sign, but shall not be internally illuminated nor be constructed of or incorporate neon, or any other type of gas or vapor lights. Special Signs shall not contain movable parts, or highly reflective or fluorescent materials, nor shall they contain 3-D, moving, animated, or periodically-changing images or text.

**N101.17.10 Limitations on Special Sign Permits.** The Department shall not issue any new permit, whether as an initial permit, for changes to artwork pursuant to Section N101.17.5, or for transfer to a new location pursuant to Section N101.17.7, for any Special Sign to be displayed upon buildings or land located in any of the following areas:

1. In or within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of a Residential District, as defined in the Zoning Regulations, or within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of a school or church with a valid certificate of occupancy for such use, or within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of a federal or District of Columbia park or monument.

2. Between 100 to 200 feet (30 480 mm to 60 960 mm) of a Residential District, as defined in the Zoning Regulations, unless the sign faces away from the Residential District and is placed at an angle of 45 degrees or less with the closest residential zoning district boundary line.

3. In or within 60 feet (18 288 mm) of any Historic District or Historic Landmark or site listed on the most current edition of the “District of Columbia Inventory of Historic Sites” as amended from time to time, unless the Special Sign is located outside a Residential District, on a side-wall or back-wall of the building or site and historic preservation approval is granted if necessary. Special signs in any Historic District or on a Historic Landmark or site shall be removed within 6 months of its erection, hanging, placement or display.

4. In or within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of premises within the area controlled by the Shipstead-Luce Act [DC Official Code § 6-1201.01 (2018 Repl.)].

5. In or within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of premises within the area controlled by the Old Georgetown Act [DC Official Code §§ 6-1201 et seq. (2018 Repl.)].

6. In a waterfront district (W) and pursuant to specific prohibitions as may be contained in the Zoning Regulations, as amended from time to time.

**N101.17.11 Enforcement of regulations and removal of Special Signs.** Any unauthorized Special Sign (including a Special Sign without a permit, or a permitted Special Sign with unauthorized artwork) shall be taken down, removed, or obliterated within 10 days after receipt of written notification of violation from the Department. The code official is authorized to bring enforcement actions on behalf of the Department, which may include the authorization to use the police or other governmental authority to order removal of, or to remove, the unauthorized Special Sign and the imposition of civil fines of no more than three dollars ($3) per square foot of sign, per day that the unauthorized Special Sign fails to be taken down, removed or obliterated. Both the owner of the premises upon which the Special Sign is displayed and the permit holder are responsible for taking down, removing or obliterating the sign upon notification by the Department to do so, and both may be held responsible for any penalties or fines imposed for the violation. Additional enforcement mea-
APPENDIX N—SIGNS

asures may be taken pursuant to, and consistent with, the provisions of Section 113, “Violations and Infractions.”

N101.17.12 Moratorium on issuance of Special Signs. Other than for changes in artwork pursuant to Section N101.17.5, or for transfers of location pursuant to Section N101.17.7, new Special Sign Permits shall not be issued after November 9, 2000.

N101.18 Rules for Gallery Place Project Graphics. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for Gallery Place Project Graphics, as defined in Section N101.18.1. Gallery Place Project Graphics shall be subject to the rules of this section and not to the rules in this chapter pertaining to billboards, poster panels, wall signs, Special Signs, and other specific types of signs, except those specific types of signs indicated below. Gallery Place Project Graphics shall not be subject to Section N101.10 or other similar provisions of this chapter that limit the maximum size or height of signs, other than the limitations stated or incorporated into this section. All other provisions of this chapter shall apply, including, but not limited to, Sections N101.3.4 (Permits for electrical signs), N101.7.1 (Projecting signs), N101.7.2 (Roof signs), N101.7.3 (Signs supported by projecting construction), N101.7.4 (Signs on awnings or similar projections), N101.7.8 (Signs on public space), N101.11 (Structural and materials requirements), N101.13 (Dangerous signs), and N101.14 (Obstructive signs).

N101.18.1 Definitions. As used in this section, the following definitions apply:

GALLERY PLACE PROJECT.
1. The project described in DC Official Code § 47-2005(30)(B) except that the lots comprising the project have been combined and are now known as Lot 50 in Square 454.
2. The private alley located between the project and the property known as the Verizon Center, Square 455, Lot 47.
3. The northern façade of the Verizon Center.

GALLERY PLACE PROJECT GRAPHICS. The outdoor graphics and visuals for the Gallery Place Project and the private alley located between the Gallery Place Project and the property known as the Verizon Center, including, but not limited to, banners, digital screens, digital video monitors, theater marquees, fixed and animated signs for commercial establishments located within the project, projectors for projecting static and moving images onto the Gallery Place Project, interactive kiosks, and images projected onto the façade of the Gallery Place Project.

N101.18.2 Additional requirements and restrictions. In addition to all other applicable provisions of this chapter not exempted by Section N101.18, Gallery Place Project Graphics and those graphics and visuals located in the public space immediately adjacent to the Gallery Place Project shall be designed, located, erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, and maintained in compliance with the specifications, drawings, limitations, and requirements set forth in Illustrations 1 through 6 (“Illustrations”), which are incorporated by reference into this section and are available in the office of the code official.

N101.18.2.1 Flexibility on Character of Advertisement. Notwithstanding Section N101.6, Gallery Place Project Graphics located in those areas identified in the Illustrations as the “Corner Heroic Sign Area” or the “Additional Signage Area” may advertise businesses not located on the premises, including the goods and services sold at such business, provided that the businesses so advertised are located within the Gallery Place Project.

N101.18.2.2 Displays of video, flashing, or animation. Only that portion of a graphic or visual which is permitted by Section N101.6.1 to advertise products or commodities may display video, flashing, or animation.

N101.18.2.3 Intensity or brilliance of signs. No Gallery Place Project Graphic shall have such intensity or brilliance as to cause glare or impair the vision of any driver, otherwise interfere with the driver’s operation of a motor vehicle, or adversely impact an owner’s enjoyment of residential property located within the Gallery Place Project.

N101.18.2.4 Projection at certain locations. Notwithstanding Section N101.7.1.1, the following specific rules apply to projecting Gallery Place Project Graphics.

N101.18.2.4.1 No Gallery Place Project Graphic located in any area shown as crosshatched in the Illustrations shall project more than 8 inches (203.2 mm) beyond the façade of the structure.

N101.18.2.4.2 Gallery Place Project Graphics located in the “Storefront Signage Areas” depicted on the Illustrations may project no more than 48 inches (1219.20 mm) beyond the building line or building restriction line, on the street frontage of a building.

N101.18.2.5 Revolving Signs. Notwithstanding Section N101.7.11, revolving signs shall be permitted in the private alley located between the project and the property known as the Verizon Center, Square 455, Lot 47, subject to the conditions of Sections N101.7.11.1 through N101.7.11.7.

N101.18.2a Gallery Place Project Graphics displays in private alley. A single, stationary Gallery Place Project Graphic may be erected and maintained in the private alley located between the Gallery Place Project and the property known as the Verizon Center; provided that it complies with the following specific requirements, in addition to the provisions in Sections N101.18.2 (Additional Requirements and Restrictions) and N101.18.2.3 (Intensity or Brilliance of Signs):

N101.18.2a.1 The Gallery Place Project Graphic in the private alley shall consist of one stationary stanchion to support two digital displays, each measuring not greater than 285 square feet (26.48 m²) and neither of which shall have any audio or sound, other than de minimis sounds caused by general operation. The lowest portion...
of the digital displays shall have not less than 9 feet 7 inches (2921 mm) of clearance from the sidewalk, and the highest point of the digital displays shall not be greater than 29 feet 10 inches (9093 mm) in height as measured from the sidewalk. The width of the digital displays shall not be greater than 14 feet (4267 mm). No portion of the Gallery Place Project Graphic may project more than 42 inches (1067 mm) beyond the building restriction line. The distance between the faces of the portions of the two digital displays that are located in public space shall not exceed 42 inches (1067 mm). There shall be 10 feet (3048 mm) of clearance in every direction around the stanchion in order to allow for unobstructed pedestrian movement. The sign and stanchion of the Gallery Place Project Graphic shall be innovative and sculptural with regard to its overall shape and structural design.

N101.18.2a.2 In addition to other reviews authorized by this section, after installation of the displays, the brilliance, illumination, and use of full-motion video, if any, shall be subject to review by the District Department of Transportation to determine whether the Gallery Place Project Graphic in the private alley creates a risk for vehicular traffic safety.

N101.18.2a.3 Any commercial advertising messages on the Gallery Place Project Graphic digital displays in the private alley shall be for businesses, goods, or services located within the Gallery Place Project.

N101.18.2a.4 Each Gallery Place Project Graphic digital display in the private alley shall operate only between the hours of 6:00 a.m. and midnight or no more than 30 minutes after the end of an event at the Verizon Center, whichever is later, and shall show a minimum of 6 minutes per hour of public service content.

N101.18.2a.5 The permittee shall act promptly to make any necessary changes to the displays to ensure compliance with federal law or the Federal-District Agreement to control outdoor advertising on federal-aid routes, in the event there is a representation by the federal government that the Gallery Place Project Graphic digital displays are not in compliance with such law or agreement.

N101.18.2a.6 The Gallery Place Project Graphic in the private alley shall be subject to the permit requirements of Sections N101.18.4 through N101.18.8, provided that the permit fee for the Gallery Place Project Graphic digital displays shall be three dollars ($3) per square foot of each of the digital displays; provided further that the reviews for the initial permit by the District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning under Section N101.18.5 (Permit Application Referrals) shall be conducted within 14 days of the referral date; and provided further that the initial permit shall be valid for 3 years from date of issuance and shall be renewable annually thereafter. Each application for renewal shall be submitted on or before the anniversary of the permit’s original issuance and shall be subject to review for compliance with Sections N101.18.4 (Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit Application), N101.18.5 (Permit Applications Referrals), N101.18.6 (Effect of Adverse Report), N101.18.7 (Review, Approval, and Denial of Permit Applications), and other applicable laws or regulations.

N101.18.3 Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit. Gallery Place Project Graphics may not be erected, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, or maintained without the owner of such Gallery Place Project Graphic first obtaining a Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit from the Department in accordance with Section N101.18.4. A Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit authorizes the location, size, and design of the graphic or visual.

N101.18.4 Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit Application. An application for a Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit shall be submitted by the owner to the Director of the Department, or his or her designee, on a form provided by the Department, and shall include the following:

1. Identification of:
   a. The applicant;
   b. The proposed location of the Gallery Place Project Graphics by the street address of the building or premises and the face direction of the wall or surface (for example, northern-facing);
   c. The proposed linear dimensions of the Gallery Place Project Graphics; and
   d. Such other information as the Director may require.

2. An affidavit signed by the applicant or his or her duly authorized representative, certifying that the applicant is in compliance with Subchapter II of Chapter 28 of Title 47 of the District of Columbia Official Code.

3. A permit fee in the amount of one dollar ($1) per square foot of the Gallery Place Project Graphics. The permit fee may be paid by check made payable to the order of the “DC Treasurer.” The permit fee may be refunded to the applicant if the permit is not issued, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1 for the refund of unused permit fees.

N101.18.5 Permit Applications Referrals. The Director of the Department, or his or her designee, shall refer all permit applications to the District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning. The agencies shall have 60 days from the referral date to submit a written report to the Director of the Department, except that the Director may allow for an extension of this period of up to 30 days for good cause.

N101.18.6 Effect of adverse report. A permit shall not be granted if, within the time period provided in Section N101.18.5:

1. The Director of the Department of Transportation reports in writing that the location, size, or height above grade of the visual or graphic is objectionable with regard to vehicular traffic safety; or
N101.18.7 Review, approval, and denial of Permit Applications. The Director of the Department, or his or her designee, shall review and approve or deny a Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit application within 20 days after the expiration of the time period provided in Section N101.18.5. Gallery Place Project Graphics Permits shall be issued in the name of the applicant and shall pertain solely to the Gallery Place Project Graphics location identified on the permit.

N101.18.7.1 Denial of Application. If the Director denies a Gallery Place Project Graphics Permit, the denial shall be in writing to the applicant and shall state the statutory or regulatory basis for the denial. The applicant shall have 10 business days from receipt of the denial to correct any defect in the application.

N101.18.8 Applicability of other laws and regulations unaffected. Other than the exempted provisions of this chapter, the Gallery Place Project shall continue to be subject to all applicable rules and regulations, including, but not limited to, Chapter 24 of Title 10-B (Chinatown Design Review Procedures).

N101.18.9 Enforcement of regulations and removal of Gallery Place Project Graphics. Any unauthorized Gallery Place Project Graphic (including Gallery Place Project Graphics without a permit) shall be taken down or removed within 10 days after receipt of written notification of violation from the Department. Following the expiration of this time period, the code official is authorized, through personnel of the Department or the Metropolitan Police Department, to remove or take down the unauthorized Gallery Place Project Graphic and to impose civil fines of not more than three dollars ($3) per square foot of sign, per day that the unauthorized Gallery Place Project Graphic fails to be taken down or removed. Both the owner of the premises upon which the Gallery Place Project Graphic is displayed and the permit holder are responsible for taking down or removing the graphic or visual upon notification by the Department to do so, and both may be held responsible for any penalties or fines imposed for the violation. Additional enforcement measures may be taken pursuant to, and consistent with, the provisions of Section 113, “Violations and Infractions.”

N101.18.10 Maintenance and repair. Whenever the code official finds that any Gallery Place Project Graphic is not maintained in good repair and has not deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, or is not repaired within the time specified in the repair notice, the code official shall notify the owner of the Gallery Place Project Graphic and the owner of the real property on which said Gallery Place Project Graphic is located to remove the Gallery Place Project Graphic from the property within a specified time. Failure to comply shall subject said owners, upon conviction or adjudication, to the fines provided for in Section 4 of An Act To regulate the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display, and maintenance of outdoor signs and other forms of exterior advertising within the District of Columbia, approved March 31, 1931 [46 Stat. 1486; DC Official Code § 1-303.23 (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)], or to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, effective October 5, 1985 [DC Law 6-42; DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)]. The code official may extend the time periods stated in this section upon the owner’s written showing of good cause.


N101.19 Rules for Verizon Center Graphics. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for each of up to nine “Verizon Center Graphics” as defined in Section N101.19.1. The Verizon Center Graphics shall be subject to the provisions of Sections N101.19 through N101.19.16 and the following provisions, as applicable: Sections N101.3.4 (Permits for electrical signs), N101.7.1 (Projecting signs), N101.7.2 (Roof signs), N101.7.3 (Signs supported by projecting construction), N101.7.4 (Signs on awnings or similar projections), N101.7.8.1 (Signs on public space), N101.11 (Structural and materials requirements), N101.13 (Dangerous signs), and N101.14 (Obstructive signs) except as applied to windows. The Verizon Center Graphics shall not be subject to any other provision of this chapter or any provision of Titles 10 or 12 pertaining to the permitting, approval, erection, placing, painting, display, or maintenance of billboards, poster panels, wall signs, special signs, and any other types of outdoor signs, including, without limitation, Section N101.10 (Maximum size of street signs) or any other provision of this chapter that limits the maximum size or height of signs, other than the limitations stated or incorporated into this section. Nothing in this section shall prevent the operation of Sections N101.3.5 (Exemptions from permit) or N101.6.6.1 (Temporary decorations for buildings) with respect to the Verizon Center.
N101.19.1 Definitions. As used in Sections N101.19 through N101.19.16, the following definitions apply:

“Department” means the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

“Director” means the Director of the Department or his or her designee.

“Verizon Center” means the property and structure currently known as the Verizon Center, located at Square 455, Lot 47, including, without limitation, the Gallery Place Metro entrance on the corner of 7th and F Streets, NW.

“Verizon Center Graphics” means outdoor signs, visuals, digital displays, and static canvas displays placed on the Verizon Center, which were not existing on the Verizon Center as of June 11, 2012, consisting of:

1. Two separate digital displays on the western side of Verizon Center, each measuring not greater than 1,200 square feet (111.48 m²), which would replace two static canvas displays on the western side of Verizon Center as they existed on June 11, 2012;

2. One digital display that forms a right angle around the southwest corner of the Verizon Center with each display panel of the digital display forming a right angle measuring not greater than 24 feet (7315 mm) in height and not greater than 43 feet (13 106 mm) in width with the top of each panel of the digital display starting at the top of the glass windows on the Verizon Center as they existed on June 11, 2012;

3. Two separate digital displays, each measuring not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) in height and not greater than 18 feet (5486 mm) in width, mounted on the exterior of the top of the western and southern entrances to the Gallery Place Metro stat on at the corner of 7 and F Streets NW;

   a. Up to two digital displays or static canvas displays in the interior space above and around the escalators in the Metro station identified in Item 3 of this section.

   b. One static canvas display that forms a right angle around the southeast corner of the Verizon Center with each panel forming a right angle measuring not greater than 24 feet (7315 mm) in height and not greater than 43 feet (13 106 mm) in width, with the top of each such panel starting at the top of the glass windows on the Verizon Center as they existed on June 11, 2012; and

   c. Up to two separate static canvas displays on the eastern side of the Verizon Center, each measuring not greater than 1200 square feet (111.48 m²).

N101.19.2 Intensity or brilliance of Graphics. None of the Verizon Center Graphics shall have such intensity or brilliance as to create an unreasonable risk for vehicular traffic safety as determined by the Director of the District Department of Transportation pursuant to Section N101.19.8.

N101.19.3 No sound. The Verizon Center Graphics shall not have an audio or sound other than any de minimis sounds caused by general operation.

N101.19.4 Digital Displays. No digital display shall be placed on the exterior of the Verizon Center that is parallel to any residential building existing as of June 11, 2012.

N101.19.5 Verizon Center Graphics Permit. Verizon Center Graphics may not be erected, installed, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, or maintained without the owner of Verizon Center or the owner’s designee first obtaining a Verizon Center Graphics permit from the Department in accordance with this chapter. A Verizon Center Graphics Permit authorizes the location, size, and structural design of the Verizon Center Graphics and shall be valid for 3 years with no limitation on the number of renewals of the permit. Each renewal of the Verizon Center Graphics permit shall require a review under Section N101.19.10 if substantive changes to the permit application merit such review and payment under Section N101.19.6.

N101.19.6 Verizon Center Graphics Permit Application. An application for a Verizon Center Graphics Permit shall be submitted by the owner, or the owner’s designee, of the Verizon Center to the Director and shall include the following:

1. Identification of:

   a. The applicant with contact information including the applicant’s telephone number, e-mail address, and mailing address;

   b. The proposed type and location of the Verizon Center Graphics and the face direction of the wall or surface;

   c. The proposed linear dimensions of the Verizon Center Graphics and its projection from the Verizon Center façade;

   d. The proposed structural design of the Verizon Center Graphics;

   e. The proposed intensity or brilliance of the Verizon Center Graphics;

   f. The potentially affected Advisory Neighborhood Commissions; and

   g. Any use on the digital displays constituting Verizon Center Graphics that the applicant may provide for public service announcements and advertisements regarding community, art, cultural, educational and similar events, including public services notices that the District of Columbia government may want to post.

2. An affidavit signed by the applicant, or his or her duly authorized representative, certifying that the applicant is in compliance with Subchapter II of Chapter 28 of Title 47 of the District of Columbia.
APPENDIX N—SIGNS

Official Code, and has consulted with or attempted in good faith to consult with the potentially affected Advisory Neighborhood Commissions about the permit application.

3. A permit fee in the amount of three dollars ($3) per square foot of the Verizon Center Graphics; provided that this permit fee may be amended by rulemaking or act consistent with permit fees for similar signs. The permit fee may be paid by check made payable to the order of the “DC Treasurer.”

4. Five copies of the application and all illustrations; and

5. Any other information required by the Director to assist in reviewing the permit application.

N101.19.7 Permit Application referrals. The Director shall refer all Verizon Center Graphics permit applications to the District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning within 10 days of receipt of the permit application by the Department. The District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning shall have 70 days from the date the Department receives the permit application to submit a written report to the Director, except that the Director may allow for an extension of this period of up to 30 days for good cause.

N101.19.8 Effect of Adverse Report. No Verizon Center Graphics permit shall be approved by the Department if:

1. The Director of the Department of Transportation reports in writing with a detailed statement of reasons that the location, size, height above grade, brilliance, or illumination of the Verizon Center Graphics would create an unreasonable risk for vehicular traffic safety;

2. The proposed Verizon Center Graphics would violate applicable federal or District of Columbia laws or regulations; or

3. The Director of the Office of Planning reports in writing with a detailed statement of reasons that the proposed Verizon Center Graphics would adversely impact the character and integrity of the Verizon Center as a sports and entertainment arena or the character and integrity of the surrounding neighborhood as a whole for residential, business, and recreation uses.

N101.19.9 Advisory Neighborhood Commission notification. The Director shall notify in writing potentially affected Advisory Neighborhood Commissions of the submission of an application for Verizon Center Graphics within 10 days of receipt of such application and invite the submission of any written comments within 45 days of the date of such notice.

N101.19.10 Review, approval, or denial of Verizon Center Graphics Permit Applications. The Director shall review and either approve or deny a Verizon Center Graphics permit application within 21 days after the expiration of the time period provided in Section N101.19.7.

The approval or denial of the permit application shall be based on both of the following:

1. Whether the permit application meets the requirements set forth in this chapter.

2. Whether an adverse report has been issued by either the District Department of Transportation or the Office of Planning pursuant to Section N101.19.8.

A Verizon Center Graphics permit shall be issued in the name of the applicant and shall pertain solely to the specific Verizon Center Graphic and specific location identified in the permit.

N101.19.11 Denial of Application. If the Director denies a Verizon Center Graphics permit application, the denial shall be issued in writing to the applicant and shall explain in detail the basis for the denial. The applicant shall have 30 days from receipt of the denial to complete either of the following:

1. Correct any defect in the application identified by the Director and submit a corrected Verizon Center Graphics application to the Department.

2. Seek review of the permit denial at the Office of Administrative Hearings.

If the applicant timely submits a corrected Verizon Center Graphics application to the Department, the Director, within 5 days of receipt of the permit application, shall refer the permit application to the District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning and each agency shall provide a report required under Section N101.19.7 within 14 days. The Director shall review and either approve or deny the corrected permit application within 30 days of receipt of the corrected permit application. If the Director denies the corrected permit application, the applicant shall have 30 days from receipt of the denial to file a notice with the Office of Administrative Hearings for adjudication.

N101.19.12 Static Canvas Display changes. As part of a Verizon Center Graphics permit application, the owner of the Verizon Center or the owner’s designee may apply to the Director for a change in the number, location, and size of the static canvas displays as defined in the definition of Verizon Center Graphics in Section 3107.19.1, but shall not do so for digital displays. The Director shall grant such application if:

1. The total number of permits for Verizon Center Graphics does not exceed nine;

2. The display size of any one static canvas display is not greater than 1,200 square feet (111.48 m²);

3. The Verizon Center Graphics are deemed to be in compliance with applicable federal or District of Columbia laws or regulations; and

4. All other requirements applicable to the Verizon Center Graphics as set forth in Appendix N are met.

N101.19.13 Enforcement of regulations and removal of Verizon Center Graphics. Any unauthorized Verizon Center Graphics, including Verizon Center Graphics with-
out a permit or Verizon Center Graphics that are not in full compliance with provisions of the District of Columbia Official Code, District of Columbia Municipal Regulations, or federal law, including DC Official Code §§ 1-303.21 et seq. and this chapter, that become effective within 1 year of the issuance of the permit authorizing the Verizon Center Graphics permitted in accordance with this chapter, shall be taken down or removed within 14 days after receipt of written notification of violation from the Mayor directing that the Verizon Center Graphics be removed or taken down. Further, the Mayor shall impose civil fines of not more than $5 per square foot of sign, per day, if the unauthorized Verizon Center Graphics are not taken down or removed after the specified 14-day period. The permit holder, at its sole cost and expense, shall be responsible for taking down or removing unauthorized Verizon Center Graphics upon notification by the Mayor to do so and shall be solely and exclusively responsible for any expense incurred by the District of Columbia if the Mayor removes the unauthorized Verizon Center Graphics as described herein. The permit holder shall also be held solely and exclusively responsible for any penalties or fines imposed by this violation. Any changes made to sign and advertising requirements under District of Columbia law after the issuance of a Verizon Center Graphics permit shall not apply to the Verizon Center Graphics for the life of the permit or 3 years from the issuance of the permit, whichever is shorter.

N101.19.14 Maintenance and repair. Whenever the code official finds that any of the Verizon Center Graphics are not maintained in good repair and have not deteriorated more than 50 percent of their replacement value, the code official shall notify the Verizon Center owner and permit holder and order the repair of the Verizon Center Graphics within a specified time, but not less than 10 days. If the code official finds that any of the Verizon Center Graphics are not maintained in good repair and have deteriorated more than 50 percent of their replacement value, or are not repaired within the time specified in the repair notice, the code official shall order the Verizon Center owner and permit holder to remove such Verizon Center Graphics within a specified period of time, but not less than 5 days. Failure to comply with such order shall subject the Verizon Center owner and the permit holder to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, effective October 5, 1985 [DC Law 6-42; DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq. (2016 Repl. & 2018 Supp.)]. The code official may extend the time periods stated in this section upon written showing of good cause by the Verizon Center owner and permit holder.

N101.19.15 Existing Verizon Center Signs. Any outdoor graphics, signs, visuals, digital displays, and static canvas displays existing on the Verizon Center as of June 11, 2012 shall be deemed to be approved under District of Columbia law and a permit shall be issued by the Department for each sign after the applicable permit fee is paid by the owner of the Verizon Center.


N101.20 Designated Entertainment Areas. The following areas are Designated Entertainment Areas for Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permits under Section N101.20.1:

1. Nationals Park Entertainment Area. The Nationals Park Entertainment Area is the property and structure known as Nationals Park, located at squares 702 through 706 and Reservation 247, bounded by N Street SE, Potomac Avenue SE, South Capitol Street SE and First Street SE. No more than five Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permits shall be allowed in the Nationals Park Designated Entertainment Area subject to the requirements of this section as follows:

1.1. One Designated Entertainment Area Sign, measuring not greater than 38 feet (11582 mm) in height and not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm) in width, mounted on the exterior panel of Nationals Park at the southwestern corner of Nationals Park grounds near the intersection of Potomac Avenue SE and South Capitol Street SE; provided that the Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not face within 15 degrees of parallel or perpendicular to South Capitol Street.

1.2. One digital display, measuring not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm) feet in height and not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width, angled interior to Nationals Park and mounted on the exterior recessed southwest panel, of Nationals Park on South Capitol Street SE; provided that the Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not face within 15 degrees of facing South Capitol Street.

1.3. One Designated Entertainment Area Sign, measuring not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm) in height and not greater than 17 feet (5182 mm) in width, angled interior to Nationals Park and mounted on the exterior panel of Nationals Park on South Capitol Street SE; provided that the Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not face South Capitol Street or be visible travelling northbound on South Capitol Street.

1.4. One Designated Entertainment Area Sign, measuring not greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) in height and not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm) in width, mounted on the exterior panel of the east parking structure adjacent to Nationals Park at the north-eastern corner of Nationals Park grounds near the intersection of N Street SE and First Street SE facing N Street SE.
1.5. One Designated Entertainment Area Sign, measuring not greater than 28 feet (8534 mm) in height and not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm) in width, mounted on the exterior panel of the east parking structure adjacent to Nationals Park at the northeastern corner of Nationals Park grounds near the intersection of N Street SE and First Street SE facing First Street SE.

2. The signs identified in 12-A DCMR §§ N101.20(a)(1)–(5) shall not be subject to 12-A DCMR § N101.20.4(b).

3. Ballpark District Entertainment Area. The Ballpark District Entertainment Area, located in Squares 700 and 70L, is the area bounded by South Capitol Street SE; First Street SE; M Street SE; and N Street SE. Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permits shall be allowed in the Ballpark District Designated Entertainment Area subject to the requirements of this section; provided that no Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall be allowed on any façade located at any of the following locations:

3.1. On South Capitol Street SE.
3.2. On M Street SE, provided that one sign may be allowed at the southwest corner of M Street SE and Half Street SE, with the sign facing within 15 degrees of parallel or perpendicular to M Street SE.
3.3. On First Street SE; between M Street SE, and N Street SE; provided that one sign may be allowed at the northwest corner of First Street SE and N Street SE; provided that the sign shall not face within 15 degrees of parallel or perpendicular to First Street.
3.4. Within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of the southeast corner of South Capitol Street SE and N Street SE.

4. To designate, modify, or remove a Designated Entertainment Area, the Mayor shall submit a proposed change pursuant to these rules for approval by the Council by act.

5. The Mayor shall issue and transmit to the Council a report no less than once every 10 years on the advisability of maintaining each Designated Entertainment Area established pursuant to this section. The report should be issued in consultation with the Office of Planning, the District Department of Transportation, the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs, and the appropriate Advisory Neighborhood Commissions.

6. If an existing Designated Entertainment Area Sign is no longer in a Designated Entertainment Area due to a modification or removal pursuant to Item 4 of this section, the Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit for that Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall remain valid until it expires; provided that the Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall not be renewed.

N101.20.1 Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permits. The code official is authorized to issue a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit in one or more of the areas designated in Section N101.20, subject to the limitations of this section and the following:

1. No signage shall be erected, installed, hung, placed, posted, painted, displayed, or maintained before the site property owner or the owner’s designee has first obtained a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit from the Department in accordance with this section.

2. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall authorize the location, size, and structural design of the Designated Entertainment Area Sign and shall be valid for 3 years, with the option to renew pursuant to the process set forth in Item 3.

3. Each renewal of a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall require a review in accordance with Sections N101.20.12, N101.20.13, and N101.20.14 and upon approval shall be valid for 3 years. In reviewing the renewal of a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit, the Department shall balance any impacts on residential units or properties with the fact that it is the renewal of an existing Designated Entertainment Area Sign.

N101.20.2 Applicability. Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall not be subject to any provision of this appendix or any provision of Titles 10 or 12 with regard to the permitting, approval, erection, placing, painting, display, or maintenance of billboards, poster panels, wall signs, special signs, or any other types of outdoor signs, including, without limitation, Section N101.10 (Maximum size of street signs) or any other provision of this appendix that limits the maximum size or height of signs, other than the limitations stated or incorporated into this section.

N101.20.3 Compliance requirements. Designated Entertainment Area Sign permits shall comply with Sections N101.3.4 (Permits for electrical signs), N101.7.1 (Projecting signs), N101.7.2 (Roof signs), N101.7.3 (Signs supported by projecting construction), N101.7.4 (Signs on awnings or similar projections), N101.7.8.1 (Signs on public space), N101.11 (Structural and materials requirements), N101.13 (Dangerous signs), and N101.14 (Obstructive signs) except as applied to windows.

N101.20.4 Maximum size of Designated Entertainment Area Signs.

1. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not exceed a maximum area greater than 1,200 square feet (111.48 m²).

2. The aggregate maximum allowable Designated Entertainment Area Sign area shall not exceed 20 percent of a building wall or surface.

3. A sign shall not have a width or height greater than 52 feet (15 850 mm).
N101.20.5 Spacing and location of Designated Entertainment Area Signs. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not:

1. Have less than 2 feet (610 mm) of spacing between it and another Designated Entertainment Area Sign on the same wall face or surface; or
2. Cover any operable window.

N101.20.6 Digital displays; restriction on full motion video. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit may authorize a digital display, subject to the following restrictions:

1. A digital display shall not be placed on the exterior or the exterior grounds of a property in a Designated Entertainment Area parallel to any residential building across the street from the property, or otherwise in the direct line-of-sight of the sign, that exists as of the effective date of the Nationals Park and Ballpark District Designated Entertainment Area. Signage Regulations Amendment Act of 2016, passed on 2nd reading on December 20, 2016 (Enrolled version of Bill 21-919).
2. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign with digital display shall ensure that the duration of each display shall be not less than 8 seconds and the transition time between messages shall be not greater than 2 seconds.
3. Except as provided in Item 4, digital display Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall operate only between the hours of 7:00 a.m. and 11:00 p.m. or no longer than 30 minutes after the end of an event held at Nationals Park as applicable to the Designated Entertainment Areas listed in Section N101.20, whichever is later, or until such time as may be established by a special event permit for a specific event.
4. Full motion video Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall operate only between 1 hour preceding and 30 minutes after the end of an event held in Nationals park, as applicable to the Designated Entertainment Areas listed in Section N101.20, or until such time as may be established by a special event permit for a specific event.

N101.20.7 Luminance.

1. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall not exceed a maximum allowable luminance of:
   1.1. Three hundred fifty (350) nits between sunset and sunrise; or
   1.2. Three thousand (3000) nits between sunrise and sunset.
2. Lighting for an illuminated Designated Entertainment Area Sign installed or modified on or after the effective date of the Nationals Park and Ballpark District Designated Entertainment Area Signage Regulations Amendment Act of 2016, passed on 2nd reading on December 20, 2016 (Enrolled version of Bill 21-919), shall have a lighting control system that:
   2.1. Includes an ambient light monitor;
   2.2. Allows for automatic adjustment of the brightness of the sign based on ambient light conditions and adjustments that reduces light levels at night and under cloudy or darkened conditions; and
   2.3. Provides an accessible dimming controller to allow immediate corrections where maximum luminance levels are exceeded.
3. All Designated Entertainment Area Sign lighting shall be controlled with a photocontrol switch and an automatic time-switch control or an astronomical time-switch control.
   3.1. The photocontrol switch shall:
      a. Be capable of reducing the power consumption in response to measured daylight either directly or by sending and receiving signals;
      b. Automatically return to its most recent time delay settings within 60 minutes when put in calibration mode;
      c. Have a set point control that easily distinguishes settings to within 10 percent of full-scale adjustment;
      d. Have a light sensor that has a linear response within 5-percent accuracy over the range of illuminance measured by the light sensor; and
      e. Have a light sensor that is physically separated from where the calibration adjustments are made, or is capable of being calibrated in a manner that the person initiating the calibration is remote from the sensor during calibration to avoid influencing calibration accuracy.
   3.2. A lighting control system with automatic time-switch controls shall:
      a. Have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of the sign’s schedule for not fewer than 7 days, and the sign’s date and time for not fewer than 72 hours if power is interrupted; and
      b. Be capable of providing manual override to each connected sign and shall resume normally scheduled operation after manual override is initiated within 2 hours for each connected sign.
   3.3. A lighting system with astronomical time-switch controls shall:
      a. Meet the requirements of an automatic time-switch control;
      b. Have sunrise and sunset prediction accuracy within plus-or-minus 15 minutes and
timekeeping accuracy within 5 minutes per year;

c. Be capable of displaying date, current time, sunrise time, sunset time, and switching times for each step during programming;

d. Have an automatic daylight savings time adjustment; and

e. Have the ability to independently offset the on and off for each channel by at least 99 minutes before and after sunrise or sunset.

3.4. Sign lighting that is on both day and night shall also include a dimmer control that shall:

a. Be capable of reducing power consumption and luminance by a minimum of 65 percent when the dimmer is at its lowest level;

b. Include an off position that produces a zero lumen output; and

c. Not consume more than 1 watt per lighting dimmer switch leg when in the off position.

4. The sign’s operation shall be controlled by a central management system that is:

4.1. Capable of storing data associated with the sign’s operation for not less than 30 days.

4.2. Accessible via an Internet browser.

4.3. Capable of generating reports that include, at a minimum, the data elements listed in Item 5 of this section. The permittee is responsible for maintaining these records for 3 years and shall provide records of signs operational data to the code official upon request.

5. The operational data recorded and maintained for each sign shall include:

5.1. Location.

5.2. Status (on/off).

5.3. Energy consumption.

5.4. Luminance levels during operation measured in nits.

5.5. Schedule of dimming luminance levels and luminance levels established for hours with reduced luminance requirements.

5.6. Instances when luminance levels exceed limitations imposed by this section.

6. Externally-illuminated Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall be illuminated only with steady, stationary, fully-shielded light sources directed solely onto the sign without causing glare.

N101.20.8 Intensity or brilliance of Graphics. No Designated Entertainment Area Sign shall have such intensity or brilliance as to create an unreasonable risk for vehicular traffic safety as determined by the Director of the District Department of Transportation pursuant to Section N101.20.14.

N101.20.9 Sound. No Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall have audio or sound other than de minimis sounds caused by general operation.

N101.20.10 Permit Application Process. An application for a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall be submitted by the owner, or the owner’s designee, and shall include:

1. Identification of:

   1.1. The applicant with contact information including the applicant’s telephone number, e-mail address, and mailing address.

   1.2. The proposed type and location of the sign and the face direction of the wall or surface.

   1.3. The proposed linear dimensions of the sign and its projection from the building’s façade.

   1.4. The proposed structural design of the sign.

   1.5. The luminance and lighting controls of the sign.

   1.6. The proposed intensity or brilliance of the sign.

   1.7. The potentially affected Advisory Neighborhood Commissions (ANCs).

   1.8. The amount of time that the applicant shall provide per year on digital displays for public service announcements and announcements regarding community, art, cultural, educational, and similar events, along with the display of relevant and useful public information such as news, real-time transit schedules, and weather, provided, that the minimum time provided shall be 10 percent of annual display time.

2. A three-dimensional rendering of the design and placement of the sign.

3. An affidavit signed by the applicant, or his or her duly authorized representative, certifying that the applicant is in compliance with Subchapter II of Chapter 28 of Title 47 of the District of Columbia Official Code, and has consulted with or attempted in good faith to consult with the potentially affected ANC(s) about the permit application.

4. A permit fee in the amount of ten dollars ($10) per square foot of sign area, which may be paid by check made payable to the order of the DC Treasurer; provided, that this permit fee may be amended by rulemaking or act consistent with permit fees for similar signs.

5. Five copies of the application and all illustrations.

6. Any other information required by the Director to assist in reviewing the permit application.

N101.20.11 Permit Application Referrals.

1. The Director shall refer all Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit applications to the District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning within 10 days of receipt of the permit application by the Department.
2. The District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning shall have 70 days from the date the Department receives the permit application to submit a written report to the Director; except, that the Director may allow for an extension of this period of up to 30 days for good cause.

3. The Director of the District Department of Transportation and the Director of the Office of Planning shall not submit the written report required by this section until after the affected ANC(s) have submitted comments or the 45 day period required by Section N101.20.12 has expired without submission of comments by the affected ANC(s).

N101.20.12 Advisory Neighborhood Commission Notification.

1. The Director shall notify in writing potentially affected ANC(s) of the submission of an application for a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit within 10 days of receipt of such application and invite the submission of any written comments within 45 days of the date of such notice.

2. The ANC(s) shall submit one set of comments to the Director; electronic or paper copies of the written comments should be simultaneously submitted to the Director of the District Department of Transportation and the Director of the Office of Planning.

3. The District Department of Transportation and the Office of Planning shall address any comments or recommendations from an affected ANC submitted within the 45-day period set forth in this section in the written report submitted to the Director pursuant to Section N101.20.11.

4. The Director shall give great weight to any comments or recommendations from an affected ANC submitted within the 45-day period set forth in this section in the written report.

5. When a Designated Entertainment Facility Sign Permit is resubmitted for consideration, the comments submitted by the ANC on the original application shall be considered with the resubmitted application.

N101.20.13 Permit Review Processes; Operation. All permits shall comply with all permit review processes required by District or federal law. The operation of all Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall comply with all applicable District and federal laws and regulations, including the Highway Beautification Act of 1965, approved October 22, 1965 (79 Stat. 1028; 23 U.S.C. § 131), and other laws and regulations not directly referenced in this section.

N101.20.14 Effect of Adverse Report. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit application shall not be approved by the Department if:

1. The Director of the District Department of Transportation reports in a written statement the reasons that the location, size, spacing, height above grade, brilliance, or illumination of the sign would create an unreasonable risk for vehicular traffic safety;

2. The sign would violate applicable federal laws or regulations or the ruling or order of a commission or court of competent jurisdiction; or

3. The Director of the Office of Planning reports in a written statement the reasons that the operation of the proposed sign is determined to adversely impact the character and integrity of the surrounding neighborhood as a whole for residential, business, and recreation uses. In making this determination, the Director shall consider the following criteria and shall ensure that the sign:

   a. Protects and does not detract from views along prominent corridors and the Anacostia riverfront;

   b. Creates vibrant public space through creative and artistic signs and the integration of new technologies into the built environment and prioritizing the pedestrian experience;

   c. Minimizes its impact on the use and enjoyment of a residential unit or residential property, office property, or hotel property. Such impact may include light or glare being cast directly or indirectly into a residential unit or interference with the restful use of a residential unit at night; and

   d. Complements the architecture of the Designated Entertainment Area and surrounding buildings, and complements public spaces through location, size, and design.

N101.20.15 Review, approval or denial of Designated Entertainment Sign Permit Applications.

1. The Director shall review and either approve or deny a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit application within 21 days after the expiration of the time period provided in Section N101.20.11. The approval or denial of the permit application shall be based on whether the permit application meets the requirements set forth in this section.

2. A Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit shall be issued in the name of the applicant and shall pertain solely to the specific Designated Entertainment Area Sign permit and specific location identified in the permit.

N101.20.16 Denial of Application.

1. If the Director denies a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit application, the denial shall be issued in writing to the applicant and shall explain in detail the basis for the denial. The applicant shall have 30 days from receipt of the denial to:

   a. Correct any defect in the application identified by the Director and submit a corrected permit application to the Department; or

   b. Seek review of the permit denial at the Office of Administrative Hearings.

2. If the applicant timely submits a corrected permit application to the Department, the Director, within 5 days of receipt of the permit application, shall refer the permit application to the District Department of
Transportation and the Office of Planning and each agency shall provide a report required under Section N101.20.11, within 14 days. The Director shall review and either approve or deny the corrected permit application within 30 days of receipt of the corrected permit application. If the Director denies the corrected permit application, the applicant shall have 30 days from receipt of the denial to file a notice with the office of Administrative Hearings for adjudication.

**N101.20.17 Display changes.** As part of a Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit application, the sign owner or owner’s designee may apply to the Director for a change in the number, location, and size of any of the Designated Entertainment Area Sign display with the site property owner or the owner’s designee’s approval. The Director shall review such application as if it were a new application, unless the proposed change reduces the size, number, or brightness of any previously approved sign plan without changing any location of any sign that continues in operation.

**N101.20.18 Energy Consumption Regulation Compliance.** In the event any regulation to reduce energy consumption requires a permit holder to upgrade sign material or operation systems, the permit holder shall submit a certification from the Department of Energy and Environment that states the regulation requires upgrades and the chosen materials satisfy the regulatory requirements.

**N101.20.19 Enforcement of Regulations and removal of Designated Entertainment Area Signs.**

1. Any unauthorized Designated Entertainment Area Signs, including signs without a permit, or permitted Designated Entertainment Area Signs that are not in full compliance with provisions of the District of Columbia Official Code, District of Columbia Municipal Regulations, or federal law, including An Act To regulate the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display, and maintenance of outdoor signs and other forms of exterior advertising within the District of Columbia, approved March 3, 1931 (46 Stat. 1486; DC Official Code §§ 1-303.21 et seq.), and this section, that are or become effective within 1 year of the issuance of the Designated Entertainment Facility Sign Permit shall be notified in writing of the suspected violation with request for operational data. The permit holder shall provide requested operational data to the Department within 7 days to verify or rebuke the suspected violation. Failure to provide operational data within 7 days shall be a Class 2 infraction and the Department shall impose civil fines as described in 16 DCMR § 3201.1(b). Further, individual or intermittent violations of the provisions of this section shall be considered a Class 2 violation and the Department shall impose civil fines for intermittent sign permit violations as described in 16 DCMR § 3201.1(b). The owner of an unauthorized sign or the permit holder of an authorized sign not in compliance shall also be held solely and exclusively responsible for any penalties or fines imposed by this violation.

2. The Mayor shall determine whether a violation is persistent, continuous, or egregious, or whether the violation is individual and intermittent in nature. An individual, intermittent violation shall be addressed pursuant to Section N101.20.20.

3. If the signs are not taken down or removed within the specified 14-day period, the Mayor shall impose civil fines of not more than ten dollars (US$10) per square foot of sign, per day.

4. The permit holder, at its sole cost and expense, shall be responsible for taking down or removing unauthorized signs upon notification by the Mayor to do so and shall be solely and exclusively responsible for any expense incurred by the District of Columbia if the Mayor removes the unauthorized signs. The Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit holder shall also be held solely and exclusively responsible for any penalties or fines imposed by this violation.

5. Any changes made to sign and advertising requirements under District of Columbia law after the issuance of a permit pursuant to this section shall not apply to the Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit for the life of the permit or 3 years from the issuance of the permit, whichever is shorter.

**N101.20.20 Enforcement of Individual and Intermittent Permit Violations.** Any owner of a Designated Entertainment Area Sign whose sign, on an intermittent and individual basis, violates Designated Entertainment Area Sign Permit conditions, provisions of the District of Columbia Official Code, District of Columbia Municipal Regulations, or federal law, including An Act To regulate the erection, hanging, placing, painting, display, and maintenance of outdoor signs and other forms of exterior advertising within the District of Columbia, approved March 3, 1931 (46 Stat. 1486; DC Official Code §§ 1-303.21 et seq.), and this section, that are or become effective within 1 year of the issuance of the Designated Entertainment Facility Sign Permit shall be notified in writing of the suspected violation with request for operational data. The permit holder shall provide requested operational data to the Department within 7 days to verify or rebuke the suspected violation. Failure to provide operational data within 7 days shall be a Class 2 infraction and the Department shall impose civil fines as described in 16 DCMR § 3201.1(b). Further, individual or intermittent violations of the provisions of this section shall be considered a Class 2 violation and the Department shall impose civil fines for intermittent sign permit violations as described in 16 DCMR § 3201.1(b). The owner of an unauthorized sign or the permit holder of an authorized sign not in compliance shall also be held solely and exclusively responsible for any penalties or fines imposed by this violation.

**N101.20.21 Maintenance and repair.**

1. Whenever the code official finds that any Designated Entertainment Area Sign is not maintained in good ordinary repair and has not deteriorated more than 50 percent of its replacement value, the code official shall notify the property owner or designee and the permit holder, or designee, and order the repair of the sign within a specified time, but not fewer than 21 days. If the value of a sign cannot be determined, the code official may request an appraisal from the sign’s owner within a specified time period that shall be not fewer than 5 business days. If the owner fails to provide an appraisal within that time period, the signs shall be deemed to
have deteriorated to less than 50 percent of the value of a replacement sign.

2. If the code official finds that any of the Designated Entertainment Area Signs are not maintained in good ordinary repair and have deteriorated more than 50 percent of their replacement value, or are not repaired within the time specified in the repair notice, the code official shall order the property owner or his designee and the permit holder, or designee, to remove such signs within a specified period of time, but not fewer than 5 days.

3. Failure to comply with such order shall subject the property owner and the permit holder, upon adjudication, to civil fines, penalties, and fees pursuant to Titles I through III of the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs Civil Infractions Act of 1985, effective October 5, L985 (DC Law 6-42; DC Official Code §§ 2-1801.01 et seq.). The code official may extend the time periods stated in this section upon a written showing of good cause by the property owner and the permit holder.

N101.20.22 Other Signs. Designated Entertainment Area Signs shall not affect signs authorized or prohibited elsewhere in this appendix or otherwise authorized or prohibited by law.

N1101.20.23 Rulemaking Authority. Notwithstanding Section 10 of the Construction Codes Approval and Amendments Act of 1986, effective March 21, 1987 (DC Law 6-216; DC Official Code § 6-1409), the Director may amend the provisions of Sections N101.20 et seq. by rulemaking pursuant to section 6 of the District of Columbia Administrative Procedure Act, approved October 21,1968 (82 Stat. 1206; DC Official Code § 2-505). Proposed rules shall be submitted to the Council for a 45-day review period. If the Council does not approve or disapprove the proposed rules, by resolution, within the 45-day period, the rules shall be deemed approved.

N101.20.99 Definitions. For the purposes of this section the term:

“**Astronomical time-switch control**” means an electric programming clock designed to control sign luminance levels automatically according to actual sunrise and sunset.

“**Department**” means the Department of Consumer and Regulatory Affairs.

“**Designated Entertainment Area**” means the property area defined in Section N101.20.

“**Designated Entertainment Area Sign**” means an outdoor visual, digital, or static canvas display placed in a Designated Entertainment Area and authorized for permit under Section N101.20.1.

“**Digital display**” means a sign that is internally illuminated and displays static images or variable messages on an alternating basis. Digital displays do not include full motion video, except as provided in Item 4 of Section N101.20.6.

“**Director**” means the Director of the Department or his or her designee.

“**Full motion video**” means images presented on an internally illuminated device, including a television or video monitor, which change at a rate that makes objects appear to move smoothly and continuously.

“**Nit**” means a unit of measurement of luminance, or the intensity of visible light, where one nit is equal to one candela per square meter.

“**Ordinary repairs**” means those that are customary to keep a sign in good operating order, or refurbishing. Ordinary repairs do not include, for example, enlargement, extension, adding illumination to an unilluminated sign, or those repairs requiring a permit in accordance with DC Building Code Supplement, 12-A DCMR § 105.2.2.

“**Photocontrol switch**” means a light responsive switch that provides automatic luminance levels that are responsive to the ambient light changes.
INDEX

A

ACCESS OPENINGS
Attic .................................................. 1209.2
Crawl space ........................................ 1209.1
Doors .................................................. 712.3.2
Fire damper .......................................... 716.4
Fire department .................................... 402.7.5
Mechanical appliances ......................... 1209.3
Refuse/laundry chutes ......................... 708.13.3

ACCESSIBILITY .................................. 1009, Chapter 11, Appendix E
Airports ............................................ 412.3.5, E110
Assembly ........................................... 1009.1, 1108.2, 1109.11, 1110
Bus stops ........................................... E108
Construction sites ......................... 1103.2.5
Controls .............................................. 1109.13
Detectable warnings ......................... 1109.10
Detention and correctional facilities .... 1103.2.13, 1107.5.5, 1108.4.2, E104.1
Dining areas ...................................... 1108.2.9, 1109.11
Dressing rooms .................................. 1109.12.1
Drinking fountains ............................... 1109.5
Dwelling units ................................... 1103.2.3, 1105.1.6, 1107
Egress (see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS) . 1009
Elevators ............................................ 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1103.2.3, 1107.5.5, 1108.4.2, E104.1
Employee work areas 907.5.2.31, 1103.2.2, 1104.3.1
Exceptions .......................................... 1103.2, 1104.4, 1107.7
Existing buildings .............................. 1009.1
Fuel dispensing ................................... 1109.14
Gaming tables and machines .............. 1109.15, E105.3
Institutional ..................................... 1103.2.12, 1103.2.13, 1107, 1110, 1109.11.2
Judicial facilities ......................... 1108.4, 1109.11.2
Kitchens ............................................. 1109.4
Laundry .............................................. E105.2
Lifts .................................................. 1009.5, 1109.8
Live/work unit ..................................... 419.7, 1107.6.2.1
Parking and passenger loading facilities . 1106
Performance areas ......................... 1108.2.8
Platform ............................................. 1108.2.8, E103.1
Press box ........................................... 1104.3.2
Ramps ............................................... 1012
Recreational facilities (see RECREATION FACILITIES) . 1104.2, 1110
Religious worship, places of ............. 1103.2.8
Residential ......................................... 1103.2.3, 1103.2.11, 1107
Route ............................................... 1003.3.4, 1104, 1107.4
Saunas and steam rooms .................... 1109.6
Scoping ............................................. 1101, 1103.1, E101.1
Seating ............................................. 1108.2, 1109.11
Service facility ................................ 1109.12
Signage ............................................ 1009.8 through 1009.11, 1110, E107
Sleeping units ................................... 1107, 1105.1.6
Storage .............................................. 1108.3, 1109.9
Telephone ........................................ E106
Toilet and bathing facilities ............ 1107.6.1.1, 1109.2, 1109.3E105.1
Train and light-rail stations ............ E109
Transient lodging .................. 1103.2.11, 1107.6.1E104.2
Utility ............................................. 1103.2.4

ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS .............. 1009
Areas of refuge (see AREA OF REFUGE) ....
Assembly ........................................... 1009.1, 1029.8
Elevators .......................................... 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.8
Existing building ............................... 1009.1
Exterior area for assisted rescue (see EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)
Horizontal exit (see HORIZONTAL EXIT)
Mezzanine ......................................... 1009.1
Platform lift ...................................... 1009.5
Required ........................................... 1009.1
Stairways .......................................... 1009.3
Signage ............................................ 1009.8 through 1009.11, 3002.3

ACCESSORY OCCUPANCIES ..................... 303.1.2, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 312.1, 419.1, 508.2

ADDITION ......................................... 101.4.8, D103.1
Means of egress .................................. 3302.1, 3310

ADMINISTRATION ................................ Chapter 1

ADOBE CONSTRUCTION .......................... 202, 2109.3

AEROSOLS ......................................... 202, 307.1, 311.2, 414.1.2.1, 414.2.5, 907.2.16

AGGREGATE ....................................... 202
Ballast ............................................. 1504.8

AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS (see GROUP U) .......... 312.1, 1103.2.4, Appendix C

AIR CONDITIONING (see MECHANICAL) ............ 2801.1, 3005.2

AIR INTAKES (see YARDS OR COURTS) .......... 1206.3.2

AIRCRAFT HANGARS ................................ 412.4
Aircraft paint hangars ..................... 412.6, 507.10
Basements ........................................ 412.4.2
Construction ..................................... 412.4.1, 412.4.5, 412.6.2
Fire area ......................................... 412.4.6, 412.6.2
Fire suppression system .................... 412.4.6, 412.6.5

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE 781
INDEX

Heliports and helistops 412.5, 905.3.6, 906.1, 1605.4
Residential 412.5, 907.2.21
Unlimited height and area 504.1, 507.10
AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING FACILITIES 412.7
AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES 412, E110
Airport traffic control towers 412.3, 907.2.22
Traffic control towers 412.3
Alarms and detection 412.3.4, 412.3.5, 907.2.22
Construction type 412.3.1, 412.3.2
Egress 412.3.2, 412.3.3, 412.3.4
AILSE 1018, 1029.9, 1029.13
Aisle accessways 1018.4, 1029.12
Assembly seating 1018.2, 1029.6
Bleachers 1029.1.1
Business 1018.3
Check-out 1109.12.2
Construction 1029.11
Converging 1029.9.3
Egress 1018, 1029
Folding and telescopic seating 1029.11
Grandstands 1029.11
Mercantile 1018.3, 1018.4
Obstructions 1029.9.6
Tables 1029.12.1
Tents 3103.4
Transitions 1029.10
Width 1029.9
ALARM SYSTEMS, EMERGENCY 908
ALARMS, FIRE
(see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)
ALARMS, VISIBLE 907.5.2.3
Common areas 907.5.2.3.1
Employee work areas 907.5.2.3.1
Group I-1 907.5.2.3.2
Group R-1 907.5.2.3.2
Group R-2 907.5.2.3.3
Public areas 907.5.2.3.1
ALARMS, VOICE 907.5.2.2
Amusement buildings, special 411.6, 907.2.12.3
Covered and open mall buildings 402.7.4, 907.2.20
Emergency power 2702.2.4
High-rise buildings 403.4.4, 907.2.13
Occupant evacuation elevators 3008.9
Underground buildings 405.8.2, 907.2.19
ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN 202
Load combinations 1605.3
Masonry design 2107
Wood design 2301.2, 2306
ALTERATIONS 101.4.8, D103.1
Means of egress 3302.1, 3310.2
ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES 1011.14
Construction 1011.14.2
Equipment platform 505.5
Heliports 412.8.3
Technical production areas 410.6.3.4
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS 104.11
ALUMINUM 1404.5.1, 1604.3.5, Chapter 20
AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES 422
Alarm and detection 907.2.2.1
Smoke compartment 422.2, 422.3
AMUSEMENT BUILDING, SPECIAL 411
Alarm and detection 411.3, 411.5, 907.2.12
Classification 411.1
Emergency voice/alarm
communications system 411.6, 907.2.12.3
Exit marking 411.7, 411.7.1
Interior finish 411.8
Sprinklers protection 411.4
AMUSEMENT PARK STRUCTURES 303
Accessibility 1110.4.8
ANCHOR STORE (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS) 402
Construction type 402.4.12
Means of egress 402.8.4.1
Occupant load 402.8.2.3
Separation 402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3
Sprinkler protection 402.5
ANCHORAGE 1604.8
Braced wall line sills 2308.6.7.3
Concrete 1901.3
Conventional light-frame construction 2308.3.1, 2308.3.2, 2308.4.10
Decks 1604.8.3
Seismic anchorage for masonry chimneys 2113.4
Seismic anchorage for masonry fireplaces 2111.5
Walls 1604.8.2
Wood sill plates 2308.3
APARTMENT HOUSES 310.4
APPEALS 113
APPROVED AGENCY 202, 1703.1
ARCHITECT (see definition for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL) 603.1
ARCHITECTURAL TRIM 1406.2.2, D102.2.7
AREA, BUILDING 506
Accessory uses 508.2.3
Aircraft hangars, residential 412.5.5
Covered and open mall building 402.4.1
Enclosed parking garage 406.6.1, 510.3
Equipment platforms ........................................ 506.3.1
Incidental uses ........................................... 509.3
Limitations .................................................. 503, 506
Membrane structures ....................................... 3102.4
Mezzanines .................................................. 505.2.1
Mixed construction types ................................. 3102.6
Mixed occupancy .......................................... 508.2.3, 508.3.2, 508.4.2
Modifications ............................................... 506, 510
Open mall building ........................................ 402.4.1
Open parking garage ....................................... 406.5.4, 406.5.4.1, 406.5.5, 510.2, 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Private garages and carports ........................... 406.3.1
Unlimited area .............................................. 503.1.1, 503.1.3, 506.1.1, 506.2, 507

AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE, EXTERIOR
(see EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)

AREA OF REFUGE
(see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS)
Requirements ............................................... 1009.6
Signage ...................................................... 1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11
Two-way communication ................................... 1009.6.5
Where required ............................................ 1009.2, 1009.3, 1009.4

ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A) .......................... 303, 1029
Accessibility ............................................... 1108.2, 1108.4, 1109.2.1, 1110
Alarms and detection ....................................... 907.2.1
Area .......................................................... 503, 506, 507, 508
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)
Folding and telescopic seating (see BLEACHERS)
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)
Group-specific provisions
A-1 .......................................................... 303.2
A-2 .......................................................... 303.3
A-3 .......................................................... 303.4
A-4 .......................................................... 303.5
A-5 .......................................................... 303.6
Motion picture theater ..................................... 409, 507.12
Special amusement buildings ............................ 411
Stages and platforms ....................................... 410
Height ......................................................... 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses ............................................. 509
Interior finishes .......................................... Table 803.11, 804
Live load ...................................................... Table 1607.1, 1607.12.3
Means of egress
Aisles ......................................................... 1018.2, 1029.9, 1029.10
Assembly spaces .......................................... 1029
Exit signs ................................................... 1013.1
Guards ......................................................... 1015.2, 1029.16
Main exit .................................................... 1029.3
Outdoors ...................................................... 1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1029.6.2
Panic hardware ............................................. 1010.1.10, 1010.2.1

Stairway, exit access ....................................... 1019
Travel distance ............................................ 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.1, 1006.3.2, 1029.7
Mixed occupancies ......................................... 508.3, 508.4
Accessory .................................................... 508.2
Education .................................................... 303.1.3
Live/work units ............................................ 419
Mall buildings ............................................. 402
Other occupancies ......................................... 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3
Parking below/above ...................................... 510.7, 510.9
Religious facilities ........................................ 303.1.4
Special mixed ............................................... 510.2
Motion picture theaters ................................... 409, 507.11
Occupancy exceptions ..................................... 303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3, 305.1.1, 305.2.1
Plumbing fixtures ......................................... 2902
Risk category .............................................. Table 1604.5
Seating, fixed (see SEATING, FIXED)
Seating, smoke-protected ................................ 1029.6.2
Sprinkler protection ....................................... 410, 504.3, 506.2, 507.3, 507.4, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12, 903.2.1
Stages and platforms ....................................... 410, 507.3.4
Standpipes .................................................. 905.3.2, 905.3.4, 905.5.1
Unlimited area .............................................. 507.4, 507.4.1, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12

ASSISTED LIVING (see GROUP I-1) ....................... 308.3, 310.6
Sixteen or fewer residents (see Group R-4) ........... 308.3.1, 308.3.2, 310.5.1

ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS .................................. 1614

ATRIUM ........................................................ 404
Alarms and detection ....................................... 404.4, 907.2.14
Enclosure .................................................... 404.6, 707.3.5
Interior finish ............................................... 404.8
Smoke control ............................................. 404.5, 909
Sprinkler protection ....................................... 404.3
Standby power .............................................. 404.7
Travel distance ............................................ 404.9, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Use .......................................................... 404.2

ATTIC ........................................................ 413
Access ......................................................... 1209.2
Combustible storage ....................................... 413.2
Draftstopping ............................................... 718.4
Insulation .................................................... 719.3.1
Live load ...................................................... Table 1607.1
Unusable space fire protection ......................... 711.3.3
Ventilation ................................................... 1203.2

AUDITORIUM ............................................... 303, 305.1.1
Accessibility ............................................... 1108.2
Foyers and lobbies ......................................... 1029.4
Interior balconies ......................................... 1029.5
INDEX

B

BALCONIES
Accessibility ........................................ 1108.2.4
Assembly ............................................. 1029.5
Construction, exterior ............................. 1406.3
Guards .............................................. 1015.2
Live load .......................................... Table 1607.1
Means of egress ................................ 1021, 1029.5
Open mall building ............................... 402.4.3, 402.5
Projection ........................................ 705.2, 1406.3
Travel distance .................................. 1017.2.1

BARBECUES ........................................ 2801

BARRIERS
Fire (see FIRE BARRIER) .......................... 3306
Pedestrian protection ............................ 3306
Smoke (see SMOKE BARRIER) ................. 3306
Vehicle ........................................... 406.4.3, 1602.1, 1607.8.3

BASEMENT
Aircraft hangars .................................. 412.4.2
Area modification ................................. 506.1.3
Considered a story ................................ 202
Emergency escape ................................. 1030.1
Exits .............................................. 106.3.2.2
Flood loads ....................................... 1612.2, 1612.5
Height modifications for ....................... 510.5
Prohibited ....................................... 415.6, 415.7, 415.11.5.2, 418.1
Rodentproofing ................................ Appendix F
Sprinkler protection ............................. 903.2.11.1
Waterproofing and dampproofing ............ 1805

BASEMENT WALLS
Soil loads ........................................ 1610.1
Waterproofing and dampproofing ............ 1805

BATH AND BATHING ROOMS
(see TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS) ........ 101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29

BAY AND ORIEL WINDOWS .......................... 1406.4

BLEACHERS .......................................... 303.6, 1029.1.1
Accessibility ....................................... 1108.2
Egress ............................................. 1029.1.1
Live load ......................................... Table 1607.1
Occupant load ................................... 1004.7
Separation ....................................... 1029.1.1.1

BLOCK (see CONCRETE BLOCK AND GLASS UNIT MASONRY)

BOARD OF APPEALS .............................. 113, Appendix B
Alternate members ................................ B101.2.1
Application for appeal .......................... B101.1
Board decision ................................... B101.4
Limitations on authority ........................ 113.2
Membership of board ............................ B101.2
Notice of meeting ............................... B101.3
Qualifications ................................... 113.3, B101.2.2

BOILER ROOM
Exits ............................................. 1006.2.2.1

BOLTS ............................................. 2204.2
Anchor rods ...................................... 1908, 1909, 2204.2.1

BONDING, MASONRY .............................. 2204.3, 2109.2

BRACED WALL LINE ................................ 202
Bracing ........................................... 2308.6
Seismic requirements ......................... 2308.6.10.2, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.6.8
Sill anchorage .................................. 2308.6.7.3
Spacing .......................................... 2308.6.1
Support ........................................ 2308.6.8

BRACED WALL PANEL ............................ 202
Alternative bracing ............................. 2308.6.5.1, 2308.6.5.2
Connections .................................... 2308.6.7
Length .......................................... 2308.6.4
Location ........................................ 2308.6.2
Method .......................................... 2308.6.3

BRICK (see MASONRY)

BUILDING
Area (see AREA, BUILDING) .................... 502.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508, 510
Demolition ....................................... 3303
Existing ........................................ 101.4.8
Fire walls ....................................... 706.1
Height (see HEIGHT, BUILDING) ............. 502.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Occupancy classification ........................ Chapter 3
Party walls ....................................... 706.1.1

BUILDING DEPARTMENT .......................... 103
BUILDING OFFICIAL ..............................

Approval .......................................... 202
Duties and powers ................................ 103
Qualifications .................................... A101.1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BUILT-UP ROOFS</td>
<td>1507.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUSINESS OCCUPANCY (GROUP B)</td>
<td>303.1.1, 303.1.2, 304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarms and detection</td>
<td>907.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambulatory care facilities</td>
<td>304, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>503, 505, 506, 507, 508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>503, 504, 505, 508, 510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidental uses</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior finishes</td>
<td>Table 803.11, 804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live load</td>
<td>Table 1607.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means of egress</td>
<td>410.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing fixtures</td>
<td>2902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk category</td>
<td>Table 1604.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinkler protection</td>
<td>903.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlimited area</td>
<td>507.4, 507.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care Suites</td>
<td>202, 407.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpet</td>
<td>804.2, 803.6, 803.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catwalks (see Technical Production Areas)</td>
<td>410.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceiling</td>
<td>808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children’s Play Structures</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chimneys</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Churches (see Religious Worship, Places Of)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circular Stairways (see Curved Stairways)</td>
<td>1507.3, 1504.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clay Roof Tile</td>
<td>718.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinic</td>
<td>308.3, 304.1, 422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coal Pockets</td>
<td>426.1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codes</td>
<td>101.2, 101.4, 102.2, 102.4, 102.6, Chapter 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold Storage (see Foam Plastic Insulation)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

COLD-FORMED STEEL .......................... 202, 2210
Light-frame construction 1111
Special inspection 1105.22, 1105.24, 1105.11.2, 1105.12.3

COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS 307.4, 414.5.1, 426.1
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS 307.1, 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2, 415.10.1, 418.6

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL
Concealed spaces 413.2, 718.5
Exterior side of exterior wall 1406
High-pile stock or rack storage 413.1, 910.2.1
Type I and Type II 603, 805

COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS 705.2, 1406.3
COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE 413, 910.2.3

COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL 1006.2.1

COMPARTMENTATION
Ambulatory care facilities 422.2, 422.3
Group I-2 407.5, 407.6
Group I-3 408.6
Underground buildings 405.4, 405.5.2

COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES 101.4.8

COMPRESSED GAS 307.2, 415.11.7

CONCEALED SPACES 413.2, 718

CONCRETE
ACI 318 modifications 1901.2, 1903.1, 1905
Anchorage 1901.3
Calculated fire resistance 721.2
Construction documents 1901.5
Durability 1904
Footings 1809
Foundation walls 1807.1.5, 1808.8
Materials 1705.3.2, 1903
Plain, structural 1906
Reinforced gypsum concrete 2514
Rodentproofing Appendix F
Roof tile 1507.3, 1504.2
Shotcrete 1908
Slab, minimum 1907
Special inspections 1705.3, Table 1705.3
Specifications 1903
Strength testing 1705.3.2
Wood support 2304.13

CONCRETE MASONRY
Calculated fire resistance 721.3
Construction 2104
Design 2101.2, 2108, 2109
Materials 2103.1
Surface bonding 2109.2
Wood support 2304.13

CONCRETE ROOF TILE 1507.3

CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

CONSTRUCTION TYPES

CONTRIBUTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES 901.5, 1704.4

CONTROL AREA 414.2, 707.3.7
Fire-resistance rating 414.2.4
Maximum allowed quantities .................. 414.2.2
Number ........................................ 414.2.3

CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION .......................... 202, 2301.2, 2308
Additional seismic requirements .................. 2308.6.6,
                                                  2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
Braced wall lines ................................ 2308.6
Connections and fasteners ......................... 2308.1.2
Design of elements ................................ 2308.8
Floor joists ...................................... 2308.4.2
Foundation plates or sills ......................... 2308.3
Girders .......................................... 2308.7
Limitations ...................................... 2308.2
Roof and ceiling framing ......................... 2308.7
Wall framing .................................... 2308.5

CONVEYING SYSTEMS .................................. 3004

CORNICES
Definition ........................................ 202
Draftstopping .................................... 718.2.6
Live load ......................................... Table 1607.1
Masonry .......................................... 2104.1.2
Projection .................................... 705.2, 1406.3

CORRIDOR
(see CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS, FIRE PARTITIONS and SERVICE CORRIDORS) .......... 1020
Air movement .................................... 1020.5
Continuity ....................................... 1020.6
Covered and open mall buildings ................. 402.8.1, 402.8.6
Dead end ........................................ 1020.4
Encroachment .................................... 1020.3
Elevation change ................................ 1003.5
Group I-2 ........................................ 407.2, 407.3, 407.4.1, 407.4.3
Hazardous ........................................ 415.11
Headroom ........................................ 1003.2, 1003.3
HPM service ..................................... 903.2.5.2
Live load ......................................... Table 1607.1
Walls ............................................. 709.1, 1020.1
Width/capacity .................................. 1003.3.4, 1003.6,
                                                  1005.2, 1005.7, 1020.2, 1020.3

CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS
Construction, fire protection .................... 709.1,
                                                  Table 1020.1, 1020.6
Doors ............................................ 715.4
Glazing .......................................... 715.5
Group I-2 ....................................... 407.3
Interior finish .................................. Table 803.11, 804.4
Opening protection ................................ 715, 716.5.4.1
Ventilation ..................................... 1020.5, 1020.5.1

CORROSIVES ....................................... 307.2, 307.6,
                                                  Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
                                                  415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1

COURTS (see YARDS OR COURTS) ..................... 1206

COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS .......... 402
Alarms and detection ........................... 402.7.4, 907.2.20,
                                                  2702.2.14
Children’s play structures ....................... 402.6.3, 424
Construction type ................................ 402.4
Fire department ................................ 402.3, 402.7.5
Interior finish .................................. 402.6.1
Kiosk ............................................ 402.6.2
Means of egress ................................ 402.8
Occupant load ................................... 402.8.3
Open mall construction ........................... 402.4.3
Perimeter line .................................. 402.1.2
Separation ....................................... 402.4.2
Signs ............................................. 402.6.4
Smoke control ................................... 402.7.2
Sprinkler protection ............................. 402.5
Standby power ................................... 402.7.3, 2702.2.14
Standpipe system ................................ 402.7.1, 905.3.3
Travel distance ................................ 402.8.5, 1016.2.1,
                                                  1017.2, 1006.3.2

COVERED WALKWAY
(see PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY) ................... 3104, 3306.7

CRAWL SPACE
Access ........................................... 1209.1
Drainage ......................................... 1805.1.2
Unusable space fire protection .................. 711.3.3
Ventilation ...................................... 1203.4

CRIPPLE WALL .................................. 202, 2308.6.6.2, 2308.9.4

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER ......................... 602.4.2

CRYOGENIC ..................................... Table 307.1,
                                                  Table 414.5.1, Table 415.11.1.1

D

DAMPERS (see FIRE DAMPERS AND SMOKE DAMPERS) .................. 716.2 through 716.5

DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING ........ 1805
Required ........................................ 1805.2, 1805.3
Subsoil drainage system ......................... 1805.4

DAY CARE ....................................... 305.2, 308.6, 310.5
Accessibility .................................... 1103.2.12
Adult care ....................................... 308.6
Child care ....................................... 308.6, 310.5
Egress ........................................... 308.6, Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4

DAY SURGERY CENTER
(see AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES)

DEAD END ....................................... 1020.4

DEAD LOAD ...................................... 202, 1606
Foundation design load ......................... 1808.3

DECK
Anchorage ........................................ 1604.8.3
INDEX

Live loads ........................................ Table 1607.1
DEFLECTIONS ........................................ 1604.3.1
Framing supporting glass ...................... 2403.3
Preconstruction load tests ...................... 1709.3.1
Wood diaphragms .................................. 2305
Wood shear walls .................................. 2305
DEMOLITION .......................................... 3303
DESIGN STRENGTH .................................. 202
Conformance to standards ...................... 1706.1
New materials ..................................... 1706.2
DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM ................. 202
Seismic certification .............................. 1705.13.3
Special inspection ................................ 1705.12.4
DIAPHRAGMS ........................................ 202
Analysis ............................................. 1604.4
Ceilings ............................................. 2508.5
Special inspection ................................ 1705.5.1,
1705.11.1, 1705.12.2
Wood .................................................. 2305, 2306.2
DOORS ................................................ 1010
Access-controlled .................................. 1010.1.9.8
Atrium enclosures ................................. 404.6
Configuration ....................................... 1007
Dwelling unit separations ...................... 406.3.4, 412.5.1
Emergency escape .................................. 1030.1
Fabrication (HPM) areas ......................... 415.11.1.2
Fire (see OPENING PROTECTIVES) .............. 715.4, 1023.4
Glazing ............................................... 715.4.7, 715.5, 1405.13
Hazardous storage ................................. 415.11.5.7
Hardware (see LOCKS AND LATCHES) .......... 1005.7.1,
1010.1.9.8, 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Horizontal sliding ................................ 1010.1.4.3
I-2 occupancies ..................................... 407.3.1
I-3 occupancies ..................................... 408.3, 408.4, 408.8.4
Landings ............................................. 1010.1.5, 1010.1.6
Operation ........................................... 1010.1.3, 1010.1.9, 1010.1.10
Panic and fire exit hardware .................... 1010.1.10
Power-operated .................................... 1010.1.4.2
Revolving ........................................... 1010.1.4.1
Security grilles ................................... 402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4
Side swinging ...................................... 1010.1.2
Smoke ................................................ 710.5
Stairways ............................................ 1010.1.9.11
Stairways, high-rise ............................... 403.5.3
Structural testing, exterior ..................... 1709.5
Thresholds .......................................... 1003.5, 1010.1.5, 1010.1.7
Vestibule ............................................ 1010.1.8
Width ................................................. 1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1
DRAFTSTOPPING
Attics ................................................. 718.4
Floor-ceiling assemblies ....................... 718.3
DRINKING FOUNTAINS ................................ 1109.5, 2902.5, 2902.6
DRY CLEANING PLANTS ............................ 415.9.3
DRYING ROOMS ..................................... 417
DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS (see MECHANICAL) .... 708.14
DUMBWAITERS ....................................... 202
Dwelling units
Accessibility ........................................ 1103.2.3, 1103.2.12,
1105.1.6, 1106.2, 1107
Alarms and detection ............................. 420.6, 907.2.8,
907.2.9, 907.2.11
Area ................................................. 1208.3, 1208.4
Group R ............................................... 310
Live/work units (see LIVE/WORK UNITS)
Scoping ............................................. 101.2
Separation .......................................... 420.2, 420.3
Sound transmission ............................... 1207
Sprinkler protection .............................. 420.5, 903.2.8

E
EARTHQUAKE LOADS (see SEISMIC) ............ 1613
EARTHQUAKE RECORDING EQUIPMENT ........... Appendix L
EAVES (see COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS AND CORNICES) .... 305
EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E) ........ 305
Accessibility ....................................... 1108.2, 1109.5.1, 1109.5.2
Alarms and detection ............................. 907.2.3
Area ................................................. 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Height ................................................ 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses ..................................... 509
Interior finishes ................................. Table 803.11, 804
Live load ............................................. Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Aisles .............................................. 1018.5
Corridors .......................................... 1020.1, 1020.2
Panic hardware .................................... 1010.1.10
Stairway, exit access ............................. 1019
Travel distance ................................. 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies .............................. 508.3, 508.4
Accessory .......................................... 303.1.3, 508.2
Assembly .......................................... 303.1.3
Day care ........................................... 305.2, 308.5, 310.1
Education for students above the 12th grade .... 304
Gyms (see GYMNASIUMS) ....................... 303.1.3
Libraries (see LIBRARIES) ..................... 303.4

788  2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE
# INDEX

## FACTORY OCCUPANCY (GROUP F)
- Alarm and detection .......................................................... 907.2.4
- Area ................................................................ 503, 503.1.1, 505, 506, 507, 508
- Equipment platforms ......................................................... 505.2
- Groups
  - Low-hazard occupancy .................................................. 306.3
  - Moderate-hazard occupancy ........................................... 306.2
- Height ........................................................................ 503, 504, 505, 508
- Incidental uses ................................................................. 509
- Interior finishes ................................................................. Table 803.11, 804
- Live load ........................................................................ Table 1607.1
  
## Means of Egress
- Aisles ........................................................................ 1018.5
- Dead end corridor ............................................................ 1020.4
- Stairway, exit access ......................................................... 1019
- Travel distance ................................................................. 1006.2, 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2
- Mixed occupancies ......................................................... 508.2, 508.3, 508.4
- Plumbing fixtures ............................................................ 2902
- Risk category .................................................................. Table 1604.5
- Sprinkler protection ......................................................... 903.2.4
- Unlimited area .................................................................. 507.3, 507.4, 507.5

## FARM BUILDINGS
- Appendix C ........................................................................ 202, 2907

## FEES, PERMIT
- Refunds ........................................................................... 109.6
- Related fees .................................................................... 109.5
- Work commencing before issuance .................................... 109.4

## FENCES
- 105.2, 312.1 ........................................................................ 109

## FIBERBOARD
- 202, 2303.1.6 .................................................................. Table 2306.3(2)
- Shear wall ......................................................................... Table 2306.3(2)

## FILL MATERIAL
- 1804, 3304 ........................................................................ 109

## FINGER-JOINTED LUMBER
- (see END-JOINTED LUMBER)

## FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS
- Aerosol storage ............................................................... 907.2.16
- Aircraft hangars, residential ........................................... 412.5.3, 907.2.21
- Airport traffic control towers ........................................ 412.3.5, 907.2.22
- Ambulatory care facilities ............................................. 422.5, 907.2.2.1
- Assembly ........................................................................ 907.2.1
- Atriums ........................................................................... 404.4, 907.2.14
- Audible alarm ................................................................. 907.5.2.1
- Battery room ................................................................... 907.2.23
- Children’s play structure ............................................... 424.3
- Construction documents ............................................... 907.1.1
- Covered and open mall building .................................. 402.6.2, 402.7, 907.2.20
- Education ......................................................................... 907.2.3
- Emergency alarm system .............................................. 908
- Factory ............................................................................. 907.2.4
- Group H .......................................................................... 907.2.5

## FIRE BARRIERS
- Continuity ......................................................................... 707.5, 713.5
- Exterior walls ................................................................. Table 602, 707.4, 713.6
- Fire-resistance rating of walls ....................................... 603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 707.3, 713.4

## FIRE AREA
- Glazing, rated ................................................................. 716.6
- Incidental .......................................................................... 509.4
- Inspection ......................................................................... 110.3.6
- Joints ................................................................................. 707.8, 713.9, 715, 2508.4
- Marking ........................................................................... 703.7
- Materials .......................................................................... 707.2, 713.3
- Opening protection ......................................................... 707.6, 707.10, 713.7, 713.10, 714.3
- Penetrations ..................................................................... 716, 717.5.2
- Shaft enclosure ............................................................... 713.1

## Special provisions
- Aircraft hangars .............................................................. 412.4.4
- Atriums ........................................................................... 404.3, 404.6
- Covered and open mall buildings .................................. 402.4.2
- Fire pumps .............................................................. 403.3.4, 901.8, 913.2.1
- Flammable finishes ....................................................... 416.2
- Group H-2 .............................................................. 415.9.1.2, 426.1.2
- Group H-3 and H-4 .................................................. 415.10
- Group H-5 ............................................................. 415.11.1.2, 415.11.1.5, 415.11.5.1, 415.11.6.4

# 2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE

791
INDEX

Group I-3 .................. 408.5, 408.7
Hazardous materials ............... 414.2
High-rise .................. 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3, 403.4.8.1
Organic coating ................ 418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms .......... 410.5.1, 410.5.2
FIRE COMMAND CENTER .......... 403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
FIRE DAMPERS .................. 717.2 through 717.5
FIRE DEPARTMENT
(see EMERGENCY RESPONDERS)
FIRE DETECTION SYSTEM (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)
FIRE DISTRICT .................. Appendix D
FIRE DOOR
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) ............ 716, 1023.4
FIRE ESCAPE .................. 412.8.3
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, PORTABLE .......... 906, 3309
FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS .......... 416.5, 417.4, 903, 904
FIRE PARTITION .................. 202, 709
Continuity .................. 708.4
Elevator lobby .................. 3006.3
Exterior walls .................. Table 602, 709.5
Fire-resistance rating .............. 603.1(1), 603.1(22), 603.1(23), 703, 708.3
Glazing, rated .................. 716.6
Inspection .................. 110.3.6
Joint treatment gypsum ........... 2508.4
Joints .................. 708.8, 715
Marking .................. 703.6
Materials .................. 708.2
Opening protection .............. 709.6, 714.3, 716, 717.5.4
Penetrations .............. 708.7, 708.9, 714, 717
Special provisions
Covered and open mall buildings .... 402.4.2.1
Group I-3 .................. 408.7
Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 .............. 420.2
FIRE PREVENTION .................. 101.4.5
FIRE PROTECTION
Explosion control .............. 414.5.1, 415.6, 421.7, 426.1.4
Fire extinguishers, portable .... 906
Glazing, rated .................. 716.2
Smoke and heat removal .......... 910
Smoke control systems .......... 909
Sprinkler systems, automatic ..... 903
FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS ........ Chapter 9
FIRE PUMPS .............. 403.3.4, 901.8, 913, 914.2
FIRE RESISTANCE
Calculated .................. 722
Conditions of restraint .......... 703.2.3
Ducts and air transfer openings .... 717
Exterior walls .............. Table 602, 705.5, 708.5
Fire district .................. D102.2.5
High-rise .................. 403.2
Joint systems .................. 715
Multiple use fire assemblies ...... 701.2
Prescriptive .................. 721
Ratings .................. Chapter 6, 703, 705.5, 707.3.10
Roof assemblies .............. 1505
Structural members .............. 704
Tests .................. 703
Thermal and sound insulating materials .... 720.1
FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED .... 722
Clay brick and tile masonry .... 722.4
Concrete assemblies .............. 722.2
Concrete masonry .............. 722.3
Steel assemblies .............. 722.5
Wood assemblies .............. 722.6
FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD .... 202, 2303.2
Awnings .................. 3105.3
Balconies .............. 1406.3
Canopies .............. 3105.3
Concealed spaces .............. 718.5
Fastening .............. 2304.10.5
Fire wall vertical continuity .... 706.6
Partitions .............. 603.1(1)
Platforms .............. 410.4
Projections .............. 705.2.3
Roof construction .............. Table 601, 705.11, 706.6, 1505
Shakes and shingles .............. 1505.6
Type I and II construction .... 603.1(1), 603.1(11)
Type III construction .......... 602.3
Type IV construction .............. 602.4
Veneer .............. 1405.5
FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE ........... 202, 702
Exterior walls .............. 1406.2.1.1.1, 1406.2.1.1.2
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATORS ........ 403.6.1, 3007
FIRE SHUTTER
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) ........ 716.5, 716.5.10, 716.5.11
FIRE WALLS .............. 706
Aircraft .............. 412.4.6.2
Combustible framing .............. 706.7
Continuity .............. 706.5, 706.6
Exterior walls .............. Table 602, 706.5.1
Fire-resistance rating .............. 703, 706.4
Glazing, rated .............. 716.6
Inspection .............. 110.3.6
Joints .............. 706.10, 715
Marking .............. 703.6
INDEX

Termites, protection from ........................................ 2603.9
Thermal barrier requirements .................................... 2603.5.2
Trim .............................................................. 806.5, 2604.2
Type I and II construction .................................. 603.1(2), 603.1(3)
Walk-in coolers ................................................... 2603.4.1.3
Wind resistance .................................................... 2603.10
FOUNDATION, DEEP ............................................. 202, 1809
Pier and curtain wall ........................................... 1809.10
Slab-on-grade ................................................... 1808.6.2
Strip footing ..................................................... 1808.8, 1809
FOYERS
Assembly occupancy ........................................... 1029.4, 1029.9.5
Corridors ........................................................ 1020.6
Covered and open mall building .................................. 402.1
FRAME INSPECTION ................................................ 110.3.4
FRATERNITIES ..................................................... 310.4
FROST PROTECTION ................................................ 1809.5
FURNACE ROOMS .................................................. 1006.2.2.1

G

GALLERIES
(see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)

GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING
(see PARKING GARAGES)

GARAGE, REPAIR .................................................. 406.8
Floor surface ..................................................... 406.8.3
Gas detection system ......................................... 406.8.5, 908.5
Sprinkler protection .......................................... 406.8.6, 903.2.9.1
Ventilation ....................................................... 406.8.2

GARAGES, TRUCK AND BUS
Live load .......................................................... 1607.7
Sprinkler protection ............................................ 903.2.10.1

GARAGES AND CARPORTS, PRIVATE
Area limitations .................................................. 406.3.1
Classification ................................................... 406.3.1
Parking surfaces ............................................... 406.3.3, 406.3.5
Separation ......................................................... 406.3.4, 406.3.5.1

GAS ................................................................. 101.4.1, 105.2, 112
Accessibility ..................................................... 1109.14
Gas detection system ......................................... 406.6.6, 406.8.5, 415.8.7, 415.11.7, 421.6, 908
Hydrogen cutoff room ......................................... 421.6
Motor fuel-dispensing .......................................... 406.7

GATES ............................................................... 1010.2
Vehicular ........................................................ 3110

GIFT SHOPS ........................................................ 407.2.4

GIRDERS
Fire resistance .................................................. Table 601
Materials ........................................................ Chapter 6
Wood construction ........................................... 2304.12.1.1, 2304.4.1

GLASS (see GLAZING)

GLASS BLOCK (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY)

GLASS UNIT MASONRY .......................................... 202, 2110
Atrium enclosure ................................................ 404.6
Fire resistance ................................................... 2110.1.1
Hazardous locations ............................................ 2406.1.3
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GLAZING</td>
<td>2408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athletic facilities</td>
<td>2408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrium enclosure</td>
<td>404.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors</td>
<td>705.8, 709.5, 710.5, 716.4.3.2, 1405.13, 1709.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevator hoistway and car</td>
<td>2409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistant walls</td>
<td>716.5.5.1, 716.5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire windows</td>
<td>703.5, 716.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group E-3</td>
<td>408.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards</td>
<td>1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handrail</td>
<td>1011.11, 2407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>2403.1, 2406.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact loads</td>
<td>2406.1, 2407.1.4.2, 2408.2.1, 2408.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact resistant</td>
<td>1609.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jalousies</td>
<td>2403.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label/identification</td>
<td>716.3.1, 716.3.2, 716.5.7.1, 716.5.8.3, 716.6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loads</td>
<td>2404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louvered windows</td>
<td>2403.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening protection</td>
<td>716.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacement</td>
<td>2401.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>716.5.8.4, 716.6.3, 2406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td>408.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skylights</td>
<td>2405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sloped</td>
<td>2404.2, 2405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supports</td>
<td>2403.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming pools</td>
<td>2406.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testing</td>
<td>1709.5, 2406.1.1, 2408.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veneer</td>
<td>1405.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>2404.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walkways</td>
<td>2409.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE, LUMBER (see LUMBER).</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE PLANE</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAIN ELEVATORS</td>
<td>426.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANDSTANDS ELEVATORS</td>
<td>303.1, 1029.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1108.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egress</td>
<td>1029.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit sign</td>
<td>1013.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live load</td>
<td>Table 1607.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant load</td>
<td>1004.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separation</td>
<td>1029.1.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREENHOUSES</td>
<td>312.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>503, 506, 507, 508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflections</td>
<td>Table 1604.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live load</td>
<td>1607.12.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane structure</td>
<td>3102.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic</td>
<td>2606.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sloped glazing</td>
<td>2405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind load</td>
<td>1609.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRIDIRON (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</td>
<td>426.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRINDING ROOMS</td>
<td>426.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROSS LEASABLE AREA</td>
<td>202, 402.3, 402.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)</td>
<td>202, 402.3, 402.8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROUT</td>
<td>714.3.1.1, 714.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUARDS</td>
<td>1015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly seating</td>
<td>1029.1.1, 1029.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment platform</td>
<td>505.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceptions</td>
<td>1015.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing</td>
<td>1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>1015.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loads</td>
<td>1607.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical equipment</td>
<td>1015.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening limitations</td>
<td>1015.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garage</td>
<td>406.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramps</td>
<td>1012.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential</td>
<td>1015.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof access</td>
<td>1015.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen porches</td>
<td>1015.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stairs</td>
<td>1015.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle barrier</td>
<td>406.4.3, 1607.8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>1015.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUTTERS</td>
<td>1503.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GYMNASIUMS</td>
<td>303.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group E</td>
<td>303.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live load</td>
<td>Table 1607.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant load</td>
<td>1004.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GYPSUM</td>
<td>Chapter 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate, exposed</td>
<td>2513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board</td>
<td>202, Chapter 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceiling diaphragms</td>
<td>2508.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete, reinforced</td>
<td>2514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>2508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draftstopping</td>
<td>718.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior soffit</td>
<td>Table 2506.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening</td>
<td>Table 2306.3(3), 2508.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire resistance</td>
<td>719, 722.2.1.4, 722.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistant joint treatment</td>
<td>2508.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspection</td>
<td>2503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lath</td>
<td>2507, 2510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lathing and furring for cement plaster</td>
<td>719, 2510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lathing and plastering</td>
<td>2507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materials</td>
<td>2506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panel products</td>
<td>202, Chapter 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaster, exterior</td>
<td>2512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaster, interior</td>
<td>2511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear wall construction</td>
<td>Table 2308.6.3(1), 2505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheathing</td>
<td>Table 2308.5.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showers and water closets</td>
<td>2509</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2017 DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA BUILDING CODE 795
INDEX

Stucco .......................... 2510
Veneer base ........................ 2507.2
Veneer plaster ....................... 2507.2
Vertical and horizontal assemblies ... 2504
Wallboard .......................... 2506.2
Water-resistant backing board ....... 2506.2, 2509.2

H

HANDRAILS .......................... 1014
Alternating tread devices ............. 1011.14
Assembly aisles ...................... 1029.15
Construction ......................... 1014.4, 1014.5, 1014.6
Extensions .......................... 1014.6
Glazing ................................ 2407
Graspability .......................... 1014.3
Guards ................................ 1015.3
Height .................................. 1014.2
Loads .................................. 1607.8
Location .............................. 1014.1, 1014.7, 1014.8, 1014.9
Ramps .................................. 1012.8
Stairs .................................. 1011.11
HANDBOARD .......................... 202, 1404.3.2, 2303.1.7

HARDWARE
(see DOORS and LOCKS AND LATCHES)

HARDWOOD
Fastening ............................. 2304.10
Quality ............................... 2303.3
Veneer ................................. 1404.3.2

HAZARDOUS MATERIALS ......... 307, 414, 415
Control areas .......................... 414.2
Explosion control ..................... 414.5.1, Table 414.5.1,
415.8, 415.11.5.5, 426.1.4
Special provisions .................... 415.7
Sprinkler protection ................. Table 414.2.5(1),
415.4, 415.11.11, 903.2.5
Ventilation ............................ 414.3, 414.5.4, 415.8.11.3,
415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6,
415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2,
415.11.5.8, 415.11.6.4,
415.11.7, 415.11.10, 1203.6
Weather protection ..................... 414.6.1

HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP H)
(see HAZARDOUS MATERIALS) .... 307, 414, 415
Alarm and detection ................. 415.3, 415.5, 415.11.2,
415.11.3.5, 415.11.5.9,
415.11.8, 901.6.3,
907.2.5, 908.1.908.2
Area ................................. 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Dispensing ............................ 414.5, 414.6, 414.7.2, 415.6
Gas detection systems .............. 415.11.7
Group provisions

H-1 (detonation) .................... 307.3, 415.6.1.1,
415.6.2, 415.7.1, 415.7.7
H-2 (deflagration) ................. 307.4, 415.8, 415.9
H-3 (physical hazard) ............ 307.5, 415.8, 415.10
H-4 (health hazard) ............... 307.6, 415.10
H-5 (semiconductor) ................ 307.7, 415.11
Height .................................. 415.7, 415.8.1, 415.9.1.1,
415.8.1.6, 426.1.1,
503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses .......................... 509
Interior finishes .................... 416.2.1, 416.3.1,
Table 803.11, 804
Live load ............................... Table 1006.2.1, Table
1006.3.2
Location on property .................. 414.6.1.2, 415.6
Low hazard (See Factory – Group F-2 and
Storage – Group S-2)
Means of egress
Aisles .................................. 107.5
Corridors ............................... 415.11.2
One means of egress ............... Table 1006.2.1, Table
1006.3.2
Panic hardware ....................... 1010.1.10
Stairway, exit access ............... 1019
Travel distance ....................... Table 1017.2, 1016.2.1, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies ................... 508.3, 508.4
Accessory ............................ 508.2
Moderate hazard (See Factory – Group F-1 and
Storage – Group S-1)
Multiple hazards ...................... 307.8
Occupancy exceptions ............... 307.1
Plumbing fixtures .................... Chapter 29
Prohibited locations ............... 419.2
Risk category ......................... Table 1604.5
Smoke and heat removal ........... 910.2
Special provisions—General
Detached buildings .................. 415.6.2, 415.8
Dry cleaning (see DRY CLEANING PLANTS)
Equipment platforms ............... 505.3
Fire district .......................... D102.2.2
Fire separation distance ........... 415.6
Grain elevators ....................... 426.1, 426.1.5
Grinding rooms ........................ 426.1.2
Separation from other occupancies .... 415.6.1,
508.2.4, 508.3.3, 508.4
Special provisions based on materials
Combustible liquids ................. Table 307.1(1),
307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5,
414.5.3, 415.9.2
Corrosives ................... .307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3,
415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1
Cryogenic .......................... Table 307.1(1), Table 414.5.1,
Table 415.11.1.1
INDEX

HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS .................................................. 714.4, 716, 717.6
HYPERBARIC FACILITIES ...................................................... 713.1
HURRICANE SHUTTERS .......................................................... 713.1
HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER) .................. 713.1
HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS ................................................. 713.1
IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR ......................... 713.1

Special provisions
Aircraft hangars .............................................................. 414.2.4
Atrium ............................................................................. 404.3, 404.6
Covered and open mall buildings .................................. 402.4.2.3, 402.8.7
Fire pumps ......................................................................... 913.2.1
Flammable finishes .......................................................... 416.2
Group H-2 .......................................................................... 415.9.1.1, 415.9.1.2
Group H-3 and H-4 ............................................................ 415.10.2
Group H-5 .......................................................................... 415.11.1.2, 415.11.5.1
Group I-2 ............................................................................. 407.5.3
Groups I-1, R-1, R-2 and R-3 .......................................... 420.3
Dangerous materials .......................................................... 414.2
High-rise ........................................................................... 403.2.1, 403.3, 403.4.7.1
Hydrogen fuel gas ............................................................. 421.4
Organic coating ................................................................. 418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms ....................................................... 410.4, 410.5.1

HORIZONTAL EXIT ............................................................... 1026
Accessible means of egress ............................................. 1009.2, 1009.2.1, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1009.6, 1009.6.2
Doors .................................................................................... 1026.3
Exit discharge ..................................................................... 1028.1
Fire resistance .................................................................... 1026.2
Institutional I-2 occupancy ............................................. 407.4, 1026.1
Institutional I-3 occupancy ............................................. 408.2, 1026.1
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREAS) .................................... 1026

HORIZONTAL FIRE SEPARATION (see HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY)
HOSE CONNECTIONS (see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED)

HOSPITAL (see INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I-2) ...................... 308.4, 407
HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS (see WIND LOADS) ............ 202
HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER) ............ 202
HURRICANE SHUTTERS ....................................................... 1609.1.2
HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS .................................. 421, Table 509
HYPERBARIC FACILITIES .................................................. 425

ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE
Atmospheric ice loads ..................................................... 1614.1
Definition ........................................................................... 202
IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR .................. 703.6

Fire barriers ........................................................................ 703.6
Fire partitions ..................................................................... 703.6
Fire wall ............................................................................. 703.6

Glazing .............................................................................. 2403.1, 2406.3
Inspection certificate ......................................................... 1702.1
Labeling ........................................................................... 1703.5
Preservative-treated wood ................................................. 2303.1.9.1
Smoke barrier ..................................................................... 703.6
Smoke partition ................................................................... 703.6
Steel ..................................................................................... 2203.1

IMPACT LOAD ..................................................................... 202, 1603.1.1, 1607.9

INCIDENTAL USES
Area ..................................................................................... 509.3
Occupy classification ......................................................... 509.2
Separation and protection ................................................ 509.4

INCINERATOR ROOMS .......................................................... Table 509, 1006.2.2.2

INDUSTRIAL (see FACTORY OCCUPANCY)

INSPECTIONS .................................................................... 110, 1704, 1705
Alternative methods and materials .................................. 1705.1.1
Approval required .............................................................. 110.6
Concrete construction ....................................................... 110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.9, 1705.3
Concrete slab ....................................................................... 110.3.2
EIFS ....................................................................................... 1705.16
Energy efficiency ............................................................... 110.3.7
Fabricators ........................................................................ 1704.2.5
Final ..................................................................................... 110.3.10
Fire-extinguishing systems ............................................ 904.4
Fire-resistant materials ..................................................... 110.3.9, 1705.14, 1705.15
Fire-resistant penetrations ............................................. 110.3.6, 1705.17
Footing or foundation ....................................................... 110.3.1, 110.3.9, 1705.3, 1705.4, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Flood hazard ....................................................................... 110.3.3, 110.3.10.1
Frame ............................................................................... 110.3.4
Lath or gypsum board ...................................................... 110.3.5, 2503
Liability ............................................................................. 104.8
Masonry ............................................................................. 110.3.9, 1705.4
Preliminary ......................................................................... 110.2
Required ............................................................................. 110.3
Right of entry ..................................................................... 104.6
Seismic .............................................................................. 1705.12
Smoke control .................................................................... 104.16, 909.18.8, 1705.18
Soils ..................................................................................... 110.3.9, 1705.6
Special (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS) ............. 110.3.9, 1704, 1705
Sprayed fire-resistant materials ...................................... 1705.14
Sprinkler protection .......................................................... 903.5
Steel ..................................................................................... 110.3.4, 110.3.9, 1705.2
Third party ......................................................................... 110.4
Welding ............................................................................. 110.3.9, 1705.2, 2204.1
Wind .................................................................................... 110.3.9, 1705.11
Wood ................................................................................ 110.3.9, 1705.5
### INSTITUTIONAL I-1
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I) and RESIDENTIAL (GROUP R-4)]... 308.3, 420
- Accessibility............. 1106.2, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.1
- Alarm and detection........ 420.6, 907.2.6.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.11.2, 907.5.2.3.2
- Combustible decorations. 806.1
- Emergency escape and rescue. 1030
- Means of egress
  - Aisles.......................... 1018.5
  - Corridors........................ 1020.1
  - Stairway, exit access........... 1019
  - Travel distance................. 1017.2, 1006.3.2
- Occupancy exceptions....... 308.3.1 through 308.3.4
- Separation, unit............. 420.2, 420.3
- Sprinkler protection......... 420.4, 903.2.6, 903.3.2

### INSTITUTIONAL I-2
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]........ 308.4, 407
- Accessibility............. 1106.3, 1106.4, 1106.7.2, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.2, 1107.5.3, 1107.5.4, 1109.2, E106.4.6
- Alarms and detection........ 407.7, 407.8, 907.2.6.2
- Care suites.................. 407.4.4
- Combustible decorations..... 806.1
- Electrical systems........... 407.10, 2702.1.7, 2702.2.6
- Hyperbaric facilities...... 425
- Means of egress............. 407.4
  - Aisles.......................... 1018.5
  - Corridors....................... 407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1020.2
  - Doors.......................... 407.3.1, 1010.1.9.6, 1010.1.9.8
  - Exterior exit stairway....... 1027.2
  - Hardware....................... 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.6
  - Stairway, exit access........ 1019.3
  - Travel distance............... 407.4
- Occupancy exceptions....... 308.4.1 through 308.4.4
- Separation................... 410
- Smoke barriers.............. 407.5
- Smoke compartment........... 407.2.1, 407.2.3, 407.5
- Smoke partitions............... 407.3
- Sprinkler protection........ 407.6, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
- Yards.......................... 407.9

### INSTITUTIONAL I-3
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]......... 308.5, 408
- Accessibility............. 1103.2.13, 1105.4, 1107.2, 1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.5.5, 1108.4.2, 1109.11.2, E104.2.2, E106.4.8
- Alarm and detection........ 408.10, 907.2.6.3
- Combustible decorations. 806.1
- Means of egress........... 408.2, 408.3, 408.4
  - Aisles.......................... 1018.5
  - Doors.......................... 408.4, 1010.1.1, 1010.1.2
  - Exit discharge................. 408.3.6
  - Exit sign exemption........... 1013.1
  - Hardware....................... 408.4, 1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8
  - Stairway, exit access........ 1019.3
  - Travel distance............... 408.6.1, 408.8.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
- Security glazing........... 408.7
- Separation.................. 408.5, 408.8
- Smoke barrier.............. 408.6
- Smoke compartment........... 408.4.1, 408.6, 408.9
- Sprinkler protection........ 408.11, 903.2.6
- Standby/emergency power.... 2702.2.7

### INSTITUTIONAL I-4
[see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]......... 308.6
- Accessibility............. 1103.2.12
- Alarms and detection....... 907.2.6
- Corridor rating............ 1020.1
- Educational.................. 303.1.3, 305.1
- Means of egress
  - Day care....................... 1006.2.2.4
  - Stairway, exit access........ 1019
  - Travel distance............... 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
- Occupancy exceptions....... 308.6.1, 308.6.2, 308.6.3, 308.6.4
- Sprinkler protection........ 903.2.6

### INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)........ 308
- Accessory.................. 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
- Child care.................. 303.1.3, 308.6.4, 308.11, 310.1
- Group specific provisions
  - Group I-1 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1)...... 308.2
  - Group I-2 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)...... 308.3, 407
  - Group I-3 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3)...... 308.4, 408
  - Group I-4 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-4)...... 308.1, 310.5.1
- Height.......................... 503, 504, 505, 508
- Incidental uses............... 509
- Interior uses................ Table 803.11, 804
- Live load..................... Table 1607.1
- Means of egress
  - Corridors....................... 1020.2
  - Stairway, exit access........ 1019
  - Travel distance............... 407, 1006.3.2, 1016.2.1, 1017.2
- Mixed occupancies........... 508.3, 508.4
INDEX

Fire resistance, calculated .......................... 722.3.2, 722.3.4
Fireplaces .............................................. 2111
Floor anchorage ........................................ 1604.8.2
Foundation walls ...................................... 1807.1.5
Foundations, adobe ................................... 2109.3.4.5
Glass unit ................................................ 2110
Grouted .................................................... 202
Headers (see BONDING, MASONRY) .................. 2109.2
Heaters .................................................... 2112
Inspection, special ..................................... 1705.4
Joint reinforcement ..................................... 2103.4
Materials ................................................ 2103
Penetrations ............................................ 2112
Quality assurance ...................................... 2105
Rodentproofing ........................................ Appendix F
Roof anchorage ......................................... 1604.8.1
Rubble stone ........................................... 202
Seismic provisions ..................................... 2106
Serviceability ......................................... 1604.3.4
Stone ..................................................... 2109.2
Support .................................................. 2304.13
Surface bonding ....................................... 2103.2.2
Veneer ................................................... 1405.6, 1405.10, 2101.2.1, 2308.6.10
Wall, composite ....................................... 202
Wall, hollow ............................................ 202
Wall anchorage ......................................... 1604.8.2
Waterproofing ......................................... 1805.3.2
Wythe ..................................................... 202

MATERIALS
Alternates ................................................ 104.11
Aluminum ............................................... Chapter 20
Concrete ............................................... Chapter 19
Glass and glazing ..................................... Chapter 24
Gypsum ................................................... Chapter 25
Masonry .................................................. Chapter 21
Noncombustible ....................................... 703.4
Plastic ................................................... Chapter 26
Steel ...................................................... Chapter 22
Testing (see TESTING) ................................ 1707
Wood ...................................................... Chapter 23

MEANS OF EGRESS
Accessible ................................................. 1009, 2702.2.2
Aircraft related ........................................ 412.3.2, 412.3.3, 412.3.4, 412.5.2, 412.7.1
Alternating tread device ............................ 412.7.3, 505.3, 1006.2.2.1, 1006.2.2.2, 1011.14
Ambulatory care facilities ......................... 422.3.1, 422.3.3
Assembly ................................................ 1009.1, 1029
Atrium ................................................... 404.9, 404.10, 707.3.6
Capacity ............................................... 1005.3
Ceiling height ......................................... 1003.2
Child care facilities (see Day care facilities)
Construction drawings ............................. 107.2.3
Configuration .......................................... 1007
Convergence .......................................... 1005.6
Covered and open mall buildings .................. 402.8
Day care facilities ................................... 308.6, 310.5.1, Table 1004.1.1, 1006.2.2.4
Distribution .......................................... 1005.5
Doors .................................................... 1005.7, 1006.2, 1010, 1022.2, 2702.2.10
During construction .................................. 3303.3, 3310
Elevation change ....................................... 1003.5
Elevators ............................................... 403.5.2, 403.6.1, 1003.7, 1009, 3008
Emergency escape and rescue ..................... 1030
Encroachment ......................................... 1005.7
Equipment platform .................................. 505.3
Escalators .............................................. 1003.7
Existing buildings .................................... 1009.1, 3310
Exit (see EXIT) ........................................ 1022 through 1027
Exit access ............................................ (see EXIT ACCESS) 1016 through 1021
Exit discharge (see EXIT DISCHARGE) ........... 1028
Exit enclosures ....................................... 1023.2
Exit signs .............................................. 1013, 2702.2.5
Fire escapes ........................................... 412.8.3
Floor surface .......................................... 804, 1003.4
Gates ..................................................... 1010.2
Group I-2 ............................................... 407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1019.3
Group I-3 ............................................... 408.2, 408.3, 408.4, 408.6, 408.8, 1019.3
Guards ................................................... 1015
Handrails .............................................. 1014
Hazardous materials .................................. 414.6.1.2, 415.11.2, 415.11.5.6
Headroom ............................................... 1003.2, 1003.3
Heliports ............................................... 412.8.3
High-hazard Group H. ................................. 415.11.2
High-rise ............................................... 403.5, 403.6
Illumination ........................................... 1008, 2702.2.4
Interior finish ......................................... 803.11, 804
Ladders (see LADDERS)
Live loads ............................................... Table 1607.1
Live/work units ....................................... 419.3
Mezzanines ............................................. 505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.1.1.2, 1009.1
Moving walk .......................................... 1003.7
Number ................................................... 1006
Occupant load ......................................... 1004.1, 1004.1.2, 1004.2
Parking .................................................. 406.5.7
Protruding objects .................................... 1003.3, 1005.7
Ramps .................................................... 1012, 1027
Scoping .................. 101.3, 105.2.2, 108.2, 1001.1
Seating, fixed ................. 1009.1, 1029
Special amusement .............. 411.7
Stages ...................... 410.3.3, 410.6
Stairways .................. 403.5, 404.6, 1005.3.1,
1011, 1023.2, 1027
Temporary structures .......... 3103.4
Travel distance 
(see TRAVEL DISTANCE) ...... 1016.2.1, 1017
Turnstiles ................... 1010.3
Underground buildings ........ 405.5.1, 405.7
Width ..................... 1005.1, 1005.2, 1005.4,
1011.2, 1012.5.1, 1020.2, 1029.6, 1029.8
MECHANICAL (see AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING,
REFRIGERATION, AND VENTILATION) ... 101.4.2
Access ........................ 1011.12, 1209.3
Air transfer openings ........ 705.10, 706.11,
707.10, 708.9, 709.8,
711.7, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Chimneys (see CHIMNEYS)
Code ................................ Chapter 28
Disconnected .................. 3303.6
Ducts .......................... 704.8, 705.10, 706.11,
707.10, 712.1.6, 712.1.10.3,
713.10, 708.9, 709.8, 710.8,
711.7, 714.1.1, 717
Equipment on roof ............ 1510, 1511.2
Equipment platforms .......... 505.3
Factory-built fireplace ........ 2111.14.1
Fireplaces ................. Table 2111
Incidental use room .......... Table 509
Motion picture projection room . 409.3
Permit required .............. 105.1, 105.2
Roof access .................. 1011.12
Seismic inspection and testing . 1705.12.6,
1705.13.2
Smoke control systems ......... 909
Systems ..................... 202, Chapter 28
MECHANICALLY 
LAMINATED DECKING .......... 2304.9.3
MEMBRANE ROOF COVERINGS ... 1507.11,
1507.12, 1507.13
MEMBRANE STRUCTURES ....... 2702.2.12, 3102
MENTAL HOSPITALS (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)
MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY (GROUP M) .. 309
Accessibility ................ 1109.12
Alarm and detection .......... 907.2.7
Area .......................... 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Covered and open mall buildings . 402
Hazardous material display and storage . 414.2.5
Height ....................... 503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses ................ 509
Interior finishes .............. Table 803.11, 804
Live load ..................... Table 1607.1
Means of egress
Aisles ........................ 1018.3, 1018.4
Stairway, exit access ........ 1019
Travel distance .............. 402.8, 1016.2.1,
1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies .......... 508.3, 508.4
Accessory ..................... 508.2
Live/work units .............. 419
Mall buildings ............... 402
Parking below/above .......... 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed ................ 510.2
Occupancy exceptions .......... 307.1.1
Plumbing fixtures ............ 2902
Sprinkler protection ........ 903.2.7
Standpipes ................... 905.3.3
Unlimited area ................ 507.5, 507.4, 507.13
METAL
Aluminum ........................ Chapter 20
Roof coverings .............. 1504.3.2, 1507.5
Steel ........................ Chapter 22
Veneer ........................ 1404.5
MEZZANINES ................. 505
Accessibility .................. 1104.4, 1108.2.4, 1108.2.9
Area limitations ............. 505.2.1, 505.3.1
Egress ........................ 505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.6, 1009.1
Equipment platforms ........ 505.3
Guards ........................ 505.3.3, 1015.1
Height ........................ 505.2.2, 1003.2
Occupant load ................ 1004.1.1.2
Stairways .................... 712.1.11, 1011.14, 1023.2
MIRRORS .................... 1010.1, 2406.1
MIXED OCCUPANCY 
(see OCCUPANCY SEPARATION)
MODIFICATIONS .............. 104.4, 104.10
MOISTURE PROTECTION ........ 1210, 1403.2, 1503
MONASTERIES ................ 310.4
MORTAR ........................ 202
Ceramic tile .................. 2103.2.3
Dampproofing ................. 1805.2.2
Fire resistance ............... 714.3.1, 714.4.1
Glass unit masonry ......... 2110.1.1
Masonry ...................... 2103.2
Rodentproofing ................ Appendix F
MOTELS ..................... 310.3, 310.4
MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS ... 409
Construction .................. 409.2
Exhaust air ................... 409.3.2, 409.3.3
Lighting control ........... 409.4
### INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underground</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical openings</td>
<td>712.1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARKING GARAGES, ENCLOSED</strong></td>
<td>406.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)]</td>
<td>406.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means of egress</td>
<td>1003.2, 1006.3.2, 1012.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>406.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARKING GARAGES, OPEN</strong></td>
<td>202, 406.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)]</td>
<td>406.5, 406.5.1, Table 406.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction type</td>
<td>406.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means of egress</td>
<td>1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1012.1, 1017.3, 1019, 1020.1, 1028.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed occupancy</td>
<td>406.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standpipes</td>
<td>406.5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation</td>
<td>406.5.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICLEBOARD</strong></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draftstopping</td>
<td>718.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture protection</td>
<td>1403.2, 1405.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td>2303.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veneer</td>
<td>1405.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall bracing</td>
<td>2308.6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTITIONS</strong></td>
<td>202, 1607.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fabric partition</td>
<td>202, 1607.14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire (see FIRE PARTITION)</td>
<td>1607.5, 1607.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live loads</td>
<td>603.1(1), 603.1(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materials</td>
<td>603.1(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupancy, specific</td>
<td>708.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke (see SMOKE PARTITION)</td>
<td>1210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilets</td>
<td>1210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTY WALLS</strong> (see FIRE WALLS)</td>
<td>706.1.1, Table 716.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PASSENGER STATIONS</strong></td>
<td>303.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PATIO COVERS</strong></td>
<td>2606.10, Appendix I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PEDESTRIAN</strong></td>
<td>3303.2, 3306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection at construction site</td>
<td>3104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walkways and tunnels</td>
<td>3104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PENALTIES</strong></td>
<td>114.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PENETRATION-FIRESTOP SYSTEM</strong></td>
<td>714.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-rated walls</td>
<td>714.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-rated horizontal assemblies</td>
<td>714.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PENETRATIONS</strong></td>
<td>714, 717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistant assemblies</td>
<td>714, 717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior wall</td>
<td>705.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire barrier</td>
<td>707.7, 707.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire partition</td>
<td>708.7, 708.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire wall</td>
<td>706.9, 706.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal assemblies</td>
<td>714.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft enclosures</td>
<td>712.1, 713.1, 713.8, 713.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke barriers</td>
<td>709.6, 709.8, 714.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke partitions</td>
<td>710.6, 710.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special inspection</td>
<td>1705.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls</td>
<td>714.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-fire-resistant assemblies</td>
<td>714.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFORMANCE CATEGORY</strong></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood structural panels</td>
<td>2302.1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERMITS</strong></td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application for</td>
<td>104.2, 105.1, 105.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawings and specifications</td>
<td>107.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expiration</td>
<td>105.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fees</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liability for issuing</td>
<td>104.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placement of permit</td>
<td>105.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan review</td>
<td>104.2, 107.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension or revocation</td>
<td>105.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time limitations</td>
<td>105.3.2, 105.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS</strong></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire classification</td>
<td>1505.8, 1505.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panels/modules</td>
<td>1512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photovoltaic module</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photovoltaic panel</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof live loads</td>
<td>1607.12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooftop mounted</td>
<td>1510.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PIER FOUNDATIONS</strong> (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)**</td>
<td>1906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PILE FOUNDATIONS</strong> (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)**</td>
<td>2606.10, Appendix I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLAN REVIEW</strong></td>
<td>107.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLASTER</strong></td>
<td>719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistance requirements</td>
<td>719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum</td>
<td>719.1, 719.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspection</td>
<td>110.3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portland cement</td>
<td>719.5, Table 2507.2, Table 2511.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLASTIC</strong></td>
<td>Chapter 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval for use</td>
<td>2606.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composites</td>
<td>2612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core insulation, reflective plastic</td>
<td>2614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decking</td>
<td>1410, 2612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber-reinforced polymer</td>
<td>2613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finish and trim, interior</td>
<td>2604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light-transmitting panels</td>
<td>2401.1, 2607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof panels</td>
<td>2609</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signs</td>
<td>202, 2605, D102.2.10, H107.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal barrier</td>
<td>2603.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veneer</td>
<td>1404.8, 2605, D102.2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls, exterior</td>
<td>2603.4.1.4, 2603.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLASTIC, FOAM</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children’s play structures</td>
<td>424.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulation (see FOAM PLASTICS)</td>
<td>2603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior finish</td>
<td>803.4, 2603.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malls</td>
<td>402.6.2, 402.6.4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages and platforms</td>
<td>410.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLASTIC, LIGHT-TRANSMITTING</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awnings and patio covers</td>
<td>2606.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom accessories</td>
<td>2606.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior wall panels</td>
<td>2607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber-reinforced polymer</td>
<td>2613.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiberglass-reinforced polymer</td>
<td>2613.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing</td>
<td>2608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenhouses</td>
<td>2606.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light-diffusing systems</td>
<td>2606.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof panels</td>
<td>2609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signs, interior</td>
<td>2611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skylight</td>
<td>2610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar collectors</td>
<td>2606.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural requirements</td>
<td>2606.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unprotected openings</td>
<td>2608.1, 2608.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veneer, exterior</td>
<td>2605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall panels</td>
<td>2607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLATFORM</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see STAGES AND PLATFORMS)</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>410.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary</td>
<td>410.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLATFORM, EQUIPMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see EQUIPMENT PLATFORM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLATFORM LIFTS, WHEELCHAIR</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessible means of egress</td>
<td>1009.2, 1009.5, 1109.4, 2702.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1109.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUMBING</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see TOILET AND TOILET ROOMS)</td>
<td>101.4.3, 105.2, Chapter 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aircraft hangars, residential</td>
<td>412.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facilities, minimum</td>
<td>2902, 3305.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixtures</td>
<td>Table 2902.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room requirements</td>
<td>1210, 2606.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLYWOOD</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservative-treated</td>
<td>2303.1.9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE</strong></td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD</strong></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastenings</td>
<td>2304.10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td>2303.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required</td>
<td>1403.6, 2304.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shakes, roof covering</td>
<td>1507.9.6, 1507.9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROJECTION ROOMS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion picture</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROJECTIONS, COMBUSTIBLE</strong></td>
<td>705.2.3, 1406.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROPERTY LINE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE)</td>
<td>705.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROPERTY MAINTENANCE</strong></td>
<td>101.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROSCENIUM</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening protection</td>
<td>410.3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td>410.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see INSTITUTIONAL I-2)</td>
<td>308.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covered and open mall buildings</td>
<td>402.7, 907.2.20, 2702.2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special amusement buildings</td>
<td>411.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PUBLIC PROPERTY</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 32, Chapter 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PYROPHORIC MATERIALS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 32, Chapter 33, Table 307.1(1), 307.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### R

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAILING (see GUARDS AND HANDRAILS)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAMPS</strong></td>
<td>1012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly occupancy</td>
<td>1029.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>1012.2 through 1012.5.3, 1012.7, 1012.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>1023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit access</td>
<td>1019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior</td>
<td>1027</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards</td>
<td>1012.9, 1015, 1607.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handrails</td>
<td>1012.8, 1014, 1607.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior</td>
<td>1012.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landings</td>
<td>1012.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garage</td>
<td>406.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope</td>
<td>1012.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RECREATIONAL FACILITIES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amusement rides</td>
<td>1110.4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal containment areas</td>
<td>1110.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas of sports activity</td>
<td>202, 1110.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boat slips</td>
<td>1110.4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boxing rings</td>
<td>1110.4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowling lanes</td>
<td>1110.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court sports</td>
<td>1110.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise equipment</td>
<td>1110.4.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishing piers</td>
<td>1110.4.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot tubs</td>
<td>1110.4.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature golf</td>
<td>1110.4.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referee stands</td>
<td>1110.4.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Shooting facilities .................. 1110.4.14
Swimming pools ..................... 1110.4.13
Team or player seating .................. 1110.4.2
Children’s play structure .............. 402.6.3, 424
Special amusement buildings
(see AMUSEMENT BUILDINGS, SPECIAL)
REFERENCED STANDARDS ............... Chapter 35
Applicability ........................ 102.3, 102.4
Fire resistance ......................... 703.2
List ....................................... Chapter 35
Organizations ......................... Chapter 35
REFORMATORIES .......................... 308.4
REFRIGERATION (see MECHANICAL) ..... 101.4.2
Machinery room ......................... 1006.2.2.2
REFUGEE AREAS (see HORIZONTAL EXIT,
SMOKE COMPARTMENTS,
STORM SHELTERS) .................. 407.5.1, 408.6.2,
420.4.1, 422.3.2, 423.1.1,
423.3, 423.4, 1026.4
REFUSE CHUTE ............................. 713.13
REINFORCED CONCRETE (see CONCRETE)
General ............................... 1901.2
Inspections ............................ 1705.3
REINFORCEMENT
Concrete ............................... 1908.4
Masonry ............................... 2103.4
RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF
Accessibility ........................... 1103.2.8, 1108.2.4
Alarms and detection .................. 907.2.1
Balcony .............................. 1029.5, 1108.2.4
Classification ......................... 303.1.4, 303.4, 305.1.1,
305.2.1, 308.6.2
Door operations ....................... 1010.1.9.3
Egress ................................ 1029
Interior finishes ...................... Table 803.11, 804
Unlimited area ....................... 507.6, 507.7
RELOCATING, BUILDING ................. 101.4.8, D103.3
REPAIRS, BUILDING ..................... 101.4.8, 202
Flood ..................................... 1612.1, 1612.2
Minor .................................... 105.2.2
Permit required ....................... 105.1
RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP R) .... 310
Accessibility .......................... 1103.2.3, 1103.2.11,
1105.1.7, 1106.2, 1107.2,
1107.3, 1107.4, 1107.6, E104.2
Alarm and detection .................. 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3,
907.2.8, 907.2.9,
907.2.10, 907.2.11
Area ................................... 503, 505, 506, 508, 510
Draftstopping .......................... 718.3.2, 718.4.2
Group provisions
Group R-1 (transient) .................. 310.3
Group R-2 (apartment) .................. 310.4
Group R-3 (two dwellings per building) .... 310.5
Group R-4 (group homes) ............... 310.6, 1010.1.9.5.1
Height ................................. 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses ....................... 509
Interior finishes ...................... Table 803.11, 804
Live load ............................... Table 1607.1
Live/work units ...................... 419
Means of egress
Aisles ................................ 1018.5
Corridors .............................. 1020.1, 1020.2
Doors ................................. 1010.1.1, 1010.1.9.5.1
Emergency escape and rescue .......... 1030.1
Exit signs ............................ 1013.1, 1013.2
Single exits ........................ 1006.3.2
Stairway, exit access .................. 1019
Travel distance ..................... 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies .................. 508.3, 508.4
Accessory .............................. 508.2, G801.1
Live/work units ...................... 419
Parking, private ...................... 406.3
Parking below/above .................. 510.4, 510.7, 510.9
Special mixed ......................... 510.2
Plumbing fixtures ..................... 2902
Risk category ......................... Table 1604.5.1
Special provisions .................. 510.2, 510.5, 510.6
Separation .................... 419, 420, 508.2.4, 508.3.3
Sprinkler protection .................. 903.2.8, 903.3.2
RETAINING WALLS .................. 1807.2, 2304.12.5
Flood provisions ....................... G801.4
Seismic ................................. 1803.5.12
REVIEWING STANDS
(see BLEACHERS AND GRANDSTANDS)
RISERS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)
Alternating tread device .............. 1011.14
Assembly ............................. 1011.5.2, 1029.6, 1029.7,
1029.9, 1029.13
Closed ............................... 1011.5.5.3
General .............................. 1011.5
Spiral ................................. 1011.10
Uniformity .......................... 1011.5.4
RISK CATEGORY (Structural Design) .... 202, 1604.5
Multiple occupancies ................ 1604.5.1
RODENTPROOFING .................. Appendix F
ROLL ROOFING ......................... 1507.6
ROOF ACCESS ........................... 1011.12
ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND
ROOFTOP STRUCTURES .... 202
Cooling towers ....................... 1510.4
Drainage ............................. 1503.4, 3201.4
Fire classification ................... 1505
INDEX

Fire district .............................................. D102.2.9
Height modifications ................................. 504.3
Impact resistance ..................................... 1504.7
Insulation .................................................. 1508
Materials .................................................. 1506
Mechanical equipment screen ....................... 1510.6
Parapet walls ............................................ 1503.3, 1503.6
Penthouses ............................................... 1510.2
Photovoltaic panels and modules ................... 1510.7, 1512.1
Radiant barrier ......................................... 202, 1509
Roof ventilation ....................................... 202
Tanks ....................................................... 1510.3
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas ................. 1510.5
Weather protection .................................... 1503
Wind resistance ......................................... 1504.1, 1609.5

ROOF CONSTRUCTION

Construction walkways ............................... 3306.7
Coverings (see ROOF COVERINGS) ................ 1609.5.2
Deck ....................................................... 1609.5.1
Draftstopping ........................................... 718.4
Fire resistance ......................................... Table 601
Fireblocking ............................................. 718.2
Live loads ............................................... Table 1607.1, 1607.12
Materials .................................................... Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies .......... 714
Protection from adjacent construction ............ 3307.1
Rain loads ............................................... 1611
Roof structures ......................................... 504.3, 1509, D102.2.9
Signs, roof mounted .................................. H110
Slope, minimum ......................................... Chapter 15
Snow load ............................................... 1608
Trusses .................................................... 2211.3, 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Wood (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)

ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD

Anchorage to walls .................................... 1604.8.2
Attic access ............................................. 1209.2
Ceiling joists ........................................... 2308.7.1
Diaphragms .............................................. 2305.1, 2306.2
Fastening requirements ............................. 2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated ................................ Table 601, 603.1(1)
Framing ..................................................... 2304.11.3, 2308.7
Rafters ..................................................... 2306.1.1
Sheathing ............................................... 2304.7, 2308.7.10
Trusses ..................................................... 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation, attic ..................................... 1203.2
Wind uplift .............................................. 2308.7.5

ROOF COVERINGS

Asphalt shingles ....................................... 1507.2
Built up ................................................... 1507.10
Clay tile .................................................. 1507.3
Concrete tile ............................................. 1507.3

SAFEGUARDS

DURING CONSTRUCTION ................................ Chapter 33
Accessibility ........................................... 1103.2.5
Adjoining property protection ....................... 3307
Construction ............................................. 3302
Demolition .............................................. 3303
Excavations ............................................. 1804.1
Fire extinguishers ..................................... 3309
Means of egress ....................................... 3310
Protection of pedestrians ............................ 3306
Sanitary facilities ..................................... 3305
Site work ............................................... 3304
Sprinkler protection ................................... 3312
Standpipes ............................................... 3308.1.1, 3311
Temporary use of streets, alleys and public property ........ 3308

S
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAFETY GLAZING</td>
<td>716.5.8.4, 2406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHOOLS (see EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEATING</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1108.2, 1109.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables</td>
<td>1029.9, 1029.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEATING, FIXED</td>
<td>1029.14, 1029.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1108.2, 1109.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aisles</td>
<td>1029.9, 1029.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards</td>
<td>1029.16, 1029.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live load</td>
<td>Table 1607.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant load</td>
<td>1004.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability</td>
<td>1029.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECURITY GLAZING</td>
<td>408.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECURITY GRILLES</td>
<td>402.8.8, 1010.1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEISMIC</td>
<td>1613.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction documents</td>
<td>107, 1603.1.5, 1603.1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earthquake recording equipment</td>
<td>Appendix L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire resistance</td>
<td>704.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geotechnical investigation</td>
<td>1803.5.11, 1803.5.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing</td>
<td>2404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loads</td>
<td>1613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mapped acceleration parameters</td>
<td>1613.3.1, 1613.3.1(1) through 1613.3.1(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masonry</td>
<td>2106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane structure</td>
<td>3102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seismic design category</td>
<td>202, 1613.5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seismic detailing</td>
<td>1604.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site class</td>
<td>202, 1613.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site coefficients</td>
<td>202, 1613.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special inspection</td>
<td>1705.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement of special inspections</td>
<td>1704.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>2205, 2206.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural observations</td>
<td>1704.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural testing</td>
<td>1705.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>2305, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVICE SINKS</td>
<td>1109.3, Table 2902.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVICE STATION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAFT (see SHAFT ENCLOSURE)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAFT ENCLOSURE</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuity</td>
<td>713.5, 713.11, 713.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevators</td>
<td>713.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceptions</td>
<td>713.2, 1019, 1023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior walls</td>
<td>713.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistance rating</td>
<td>707.3.1, 713.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I-3</td>
<td>408.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-rise buildings</td>
<td>403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.3.1.1, 403.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joints</td>
<td>713.9, 715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materials</td>
<td>713.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening protection</td>
<td>713.8, 713.10, 714, 717.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetrations</td>
<td>713.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refuse and laundry chutes</td>
<td>713.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required</td>
<td>713.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHEAR WALL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum board and plaster</td>
<td>2505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masonry</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>202, 2305.1, 2306.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHEATHING</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearance from earth</td>
<td>2304.12.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening</td>
<td>2304.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiberboard</td>
<td>Table 2306.3(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>2304.8, 2308.4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum</td>
<td>Table 2506.2, 2508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture protection</td>
<td>2304.12.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td>2304.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof sheathing</td>
<td>2308.7.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td>2304.6, 2308.5.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood structural panels</td>
<td>2303.1.5, 2211.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHOPPING CENTERS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHOTCRETE</td>
<td>1908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTERS, FIRE</td>
<td>716.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see OPENING PROTECTIVES)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIDEWALKS</td>
<td>105.2(6), G801.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live loads</td>
<td>Table 1607.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGNS</td>
<td>3107, Appendix H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility</td>
<td>1013.4, 1110, E106.4.9, E107, E109.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessible means of egress</td>
<td>1009.8.2, 1009.9 through 1009.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animated devices</td>
<td>H108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>H105, H107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covered and open mall building</td>
<td>402.6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors</td>
<td>1010.1.9.3, 1010.1.9.7, 1010.1.9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical</td>
<td>H106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevators</td>
<td>1109.7, 1111.2, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>1013, 2702.2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor loads</td>
<td>106.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td>H109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height limitation</td>
<td>H109.1, H112.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illumination</td>
<td>H106.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminous</td>
<td>403.5.5, 1013.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marquee</td>
<td>H113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstruction</td>
<td>1003.3.2, 1003.3.3, H103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant load, assembly</td>
<td>1004.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking spaces</td>
<td>1111.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Plastic ........................................ 2611, D102.2.10
Portable ...................................... H114
Projecting ..................................... H112
Protruding objects ......................... 1003.3
Roof ........................................... H110
Standpipe control valve .................... 905.7.1
Toilet room ................................. 1111.1, 1111.2, 2902.4, 2902.4.1
Variable message ........................... 1111.4
Walls .......................................... 703.6, H111
SITE DRAWINGS .............................. 107.2.5
SITE WORK ................................... 3304
SKYLIGHTS .................................. 2405, 3106.3
Light, required .............................. 1205.2
Loads ........................................... 2404
Plastic ......................................... 2610
Protection from adjacent construction .... 3307.1
Vertical opening protective .............. 712.1.15
SLAB ON GROUND, CONCRETE ........ 1907, 2304.12.1.4
SLATE SHINGLES ............................. 1507.7
SLEEPING UNITS ......................... 202
Accessibility ............................... 1103.2.11, 1105.1.6, 1106.2, 1106.7.2, 1107
Group I ........................................ 308
Group R ....................................... 310
Scoping ....................................... 101.2
Separation .................................... 420.2, 420.3
SMOKE ALARMS
Bathrooms ..................................... 907.2.11.4
Cooking appliances ........................ 907.2.11.3
Live/work unit ............................... 419.5, 907.2.11.2
Multiple-station ............................. 907.2.11
Residential aircraft hangars ............. 412.5.3, 412.5.4, 907.2.21
Residential occupancies ................... 420.5, 907.2.11.1, 907.2.11.2
Single-station ................................ 907.2.11
SMOKE BARRIERS
Construction .................................. 407.4.3, 709.4, 909.5
Doors ......................................... 709.5, 716.5.3, 909.5.3
Fire-resistance rating ..................... 703, 709.3
Glazing, rated ............................... 716.6
Inspection .................................... 110.3.6
Joints ......................................... 709.7, 715
Marking ....................................... 703.6
Materials ..................................... 709.2
Opening protection ......................... 709.5, 714.3, 714.4.4, 716, 717.5.5, 909.5.3
Penetrations ................................ 709.6, 714
Smoke control .............................. 909.5
Special provisions
Ambulatory care facilities ................. 422.2, 422.3, 709.5.1
Group I-1 ..................................... 420.4, 709.5.1
Group I-2 ..................................... 407.5
Group I-3 ..................................... 408.6, 408.7
Group I-3 ..................................... 408.6, 408.7
Underground .................................. 405.4.2, 405.4.3
SMOKE COMPARTMENT ................. 407, 408, 422
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)
SMOKE CONTROL ......................... 909
Amusement buildings, special .......... 411.1
Atrium buildings ............................ 404.5
Covered and open mall building .......... 402.7.2
Group I-3 ..................................... 408.9
High-rise (smoke removal) ............... 403.4.7, 1023.11
Special inspections ......................... 1705.18
Stages ......................................... 410.3.7.2
Standby power systems ................. 909.11, 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15
Underground buildings .................... 405.5
SMOKE DAMPERS .......................... 717.2 through 717.5
SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM
(see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS) .......... 907
SMOKE DETECTORS
Covered and open mall building .......... 402.8.6.1, 907.2.20
High-rise buildings ........................ 403.4.1, 907.2.13
HPM ......................................... 415.11.9.3
Institutional I-2 ............................. 407.8
Smoke-activated doors .................... 716.5.9.3
Special amusement buildings .......... 411.5
Underground buildings .................... 907.2.18
SMOKE DEVELOPMENT ................ 802, 803.1.1,
Table 803.11
SMOKE EXHAUST SYSTEMS
Underground buildings .................... 405.5, 907.2.18, 909.2
SMOKE PARTITIONS ...................... 202, 710
Continuity .................................... 710.4
Doors ......................................... 710.5
Ducts and air transfer openings ........ 710.8
Fire-resistance rating ..................... 710.3
Inspection .................................... 110.3.6
Joints ......................................... 710.7
Marking ....................................... 703.6
Materials ..................................... 710.2
Opening protection ........................ 710.5, 717.5.7
Penetrations ................................ 710.6
Special provisions
Atriums ...................................... 404.6
Group I-2 .................................... 407.3
SMOKE REMOVAL (High rise) .......... 403.4.7
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Institutional . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry chutes, refuse chutes,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termination rooms and incinerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooms . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live/work units . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercantile . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mezzanines . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multistory buildings . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garages . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special amusement buildings . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spray finishing booth . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supervision (see SPRINKLER SYSTEM,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPERVISION) . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground buildings . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlimited area . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground buildings . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAGES AND PLATFORMS . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dressing rooms . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire barrier wall . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor finish and floor covering .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal assembly . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Means of egress . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform, temporary . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform construction . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proscenium curtain . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proscenium wall . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof vents . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scenery . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoke control . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinkler protection . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage construction . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standpipes . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical production areas . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAIRWAY (see ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES, SPIRAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAIRWAYS, STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternating tread . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circular (see Curved) . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curved . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge barrier . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During construction . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevators . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enclosure under . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit access . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior exit . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fireblocking . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handrails . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headroom . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior exit . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illumination . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladders . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stepped aisles . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transitions . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel distance . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treads and risers . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width/capacity . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winders . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessibility . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doors . . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevators within . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit access . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior walls . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resistant construction . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I-2 . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group I-3 . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-rise . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetrations . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressurization . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smokeproof . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space below, use . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STANDARDS (see REFERENCED STANDARDS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STANDBY POWER . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atriums . . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covered and open mall buildings .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevators . . . . . . . . . . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hazardous occupancy .................. 414.5.2, 415.11.10, 421.8, 2702.2.8, 2702.2.13,
High-rise ................................ 403.4.5, 2702.2.9
Horizontal sliding doors ...... 1010.1.4.3, 2702.2.10
Membrane structures .......... 2702.2.12, 3102.8.2
Platform lifts ................. 1009.5, 2702.2.2
Smoke control ..................... 909.11, 2702.2.15
Smokeproof enclosure .......... 909.20.6.2, 2702.2.15
Special inspection .............. 1705.12.6
Underground buildings ...... 405.8, 2702.2.16
STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS (see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED) ...... 905, 3106.4, 3308.1.1, 3311
Cabinet locks ...................... 905.7.2
Dry .................................. 905.8
Hose connection location .... 905.1, 905.4 through 905.6, 912
STANDPIPES, REQUIRED
Assembly ......................... 905.3.1, 905.3.2, 905.3.4
Covered and open mall buildings........ 402.7.1, 905.3.3
During construction .......... 905.10, 3311
Elevators, fire service access .. 3007.9
Helistops ......................... 905.3.6
Marinas ................................ 905.3.7
Parking garages .................. 406.5.8
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs .. 905.3.8
Stages .......................... 410.8, 905.3.4
Underground buildings .... 405.9, 905.3.5
STATE LAW ......................... 102.2
STEEL ................................ Chapter 22
Bolting ................................ 2204.2
Cable structures ............... 2208
Calculated fire resistance .... 722.5
Cold-formed ...................... 202, 2210, 2211
Composite structural steel and concrete .. 2206
Conditions of restraint .......... 703.2.3
Decks .................................. 2210.1.1
Identification and protection .... 2203
Joists .............................. 202, 2207
Open web joist ................. 2207
Parapet walls ................. 1503.3, 1503.6
Seismic provisions ........... 2205.2, 2206.2, 2207.1.1, 2210.2
Special inspections .......... 1705.3
Storage racks .................. 2209
Structural steel ............... 2205
Welding .......................... 2204.1
STONE VENEER ..................... 1405.7
Slab-type ......................... 1405.8
STOP WORK ORDERS ............. 115
STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S) ............. 311
Accessibility ..................... 1108.3
Area ................................ 406.5.4, 406.5.5, 406.6.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Equipment platforms .......... 505.2
Group provisions
   Hazard storage, low, Group S-2 .. 311.3
   Hazard storage, moderate, Group S-1 . 311.2
Hazardous material display and storage . 414.2.5
Height .......................... 406.5.4, 406.6.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses .................. . 509
Interior finishes .......... Table 803.11, 804
Live loads .................. Table 1607.1
Means of egress
   Aisles ................................ 1018.5
   Stairway, exit access ........ 1019
Travel distance ................. 1016.2.1, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.3.2
Mixed occupancies .............. 508.3, 508.4
   Accessory .......................... 508.2
   Parking above/below .......... 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
   Special mixed .................. 510.2
   Plumbing fixtures ........ 2902
   Special provisions
      Aircraft related occupancies ...... 412
      High-piled combustible ........ 413
      Parking garages ............. 406
Sprinkler protection .......... 903.2.10
Unlimited area .................. 507.3, 507.4, 507.5
STORM SHELTER ................ 423
Emergency operation facilities . 423.3
Education .......................... 423.4
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)
STRENGTH
   Design requirements ........ 1604.2
   Masonry .......................... 202
   Nominal .......................... 202
   Required ......................... 202
STRENGTH DESIGN ............... 202, 1604.1
   Factored load ................ 202
   Limit state .................... 202
   Load combinations .......... 1605.2
   Load factor ................... 202
   Masonry ......................... 2108
STRUCTURAL DESIGN ............... Chapter 16
   Aluminum .......................... Chapter 20
   Concrete ......................... Chapter 19
   Foundations ..................... Chapter 18
   Masonry ......................... Chapter 21
INDEX

Steel ................................................. Chapter 22
Wood .............................................. Chapter 23
STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION ........... 202, 1704.6
STUCCO ........................................... 2512

SUSCEPTIBLE BAY
Definition ........................................ 202
Ponding instability .............................. 1611.2

SWIMMING POOL ................................. 3109
Accessibility ............................. 1110.2, 1110.3, 1110.4.13
Flood provisions .......................... G801.5
Glass ............................................. 2406.4

TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS ........... 410.3.2, 410.6.3

TELEPHONE EXCHANGES .................... 304

TELESCOPIC SEATING
(see FOLDING AND TElescopic Seating)

TEMPORARY STRUCTURES ................. 3103
Certificate of occupancy ............... 108.3
Conformance .................................. 108.2, 3103.1.1
Construction documents ............... 3103.2
Flood provisions ........................ G901
Means of egress ............................ 3103.4
Permit ........................................ 108.1, 3103.1.2
Power, temporary ......................... 108.3
Termination of approval ............... 108.4

TENANT SEPARATION
Covered and open mall building ......... 402.4.2.1, 708.1

TENTS (see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES)

TERMITES, PROTECTION FROM ........ 2304.12

TERRA COTTA ................................ 1405.9

TESTING
Automatic fire-extinguishing systems ... 904.4
Automatic water mist systems ......... 904.11.3
Building official required .......... 104.11.1
Carbon dioxide systems ............... 904.8
Clean agent system ...................... 904.10
Dry chemical systems ................. 904.6
Emergency and standby power ....... 2702.4
Fire-resistant materials ............... 703.2
Fire alarm systems ....................... 907.7, 907.8
Fire pumps .................................. 913.5
Foam systems ............................... 904.7
Glazing ...................................... 2406, 2408.2.1
Halon systems ............................... 904.9
Personnel and material hoists ...... 3004.4
Roof tile ..................................... 1711.2
Seismic ...................................... 1705.13
Sound transmission ....................... 1207

Smoke control ............................. 909.3, 909.5.2, 909.10.2,
909.12.1, 909.13.3, 909.18,
909.20.6.3, 909.21.7 1705.18

Soils ............................................. 1803
Sprinkler protection ...................... 903.5
Structural ................................. 903.5
(see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS)
Wet chemical systems ................. 904.5

THEATERS
[see ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A,
PROJECTION ROOMS and STAGES AND
PLATFORMS)] .................................. 303.2

THERMAL BARRIER,
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION ............. 2603.4, 2603.5.2

THERMAL-INSULATING MATERIALS
(see INSULATION) ......................... 719

TILE ............................................ 202
Ceramic (see CERAMIC TILE)
Fire resistance, clay or shale .......... 721.1

TOILETS and TOILET ROOMS ............. Chapter 29, 3305
Accessible ................................. 1109.2, 1109.3, 1607.8.2
Construction/finish materials ...... 1210
Door locking ............................. 1010.1.9.5.1, 1109.2.1.7, 2902.3.5
Family or assisted-use ................. 1109.2.1,
2902.1.2, 2902.2.1

Grab bar live loads ...................... 1607.8.2
Location .................................. 2902.3.1, 2902.3.2,
2902.3.3, 2903.3.6

Partitions .................................. 1210.3
Privacy ....................................... 1210.3
Public facilities ......................... 2902.3
Signs ........................................ 1111.1, 1111.2, 2902.4, 2902.4.1

Ventilation ................................. 1203.5.2.1

TOURNOADO SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)

TOWERS
Airport traffic control .................. 412.3
Cooling ..................................... 1510.4
Location and access .................... 3108.2
Radio ........................................ 3108
Television ................................... 3108

TOXIC MATERIALS
[see HIGH-HAZARD OCCUPANCY (GROUP H)]
Classification .......................... 307.6, 414, 415
Gas detection system ................. 415.11.7, 421.6, 908.3

TRAVEL DISTANCE
Area of refuge .............................. 1009.6.1
Assembly seating ......................... 1029.7
Atrium ..................................... 404.9
Balcony, exterior ......................... 1017.2.1
Care suites (Group I-2) ............... 407.4.2, 407.4.4
Common path of travel ............... 1016.2.1
VEHICULAR REPAIR ........................................ 406.8

VEENEER
Cement plaster ........................................ 1405.15
Fastening ........................................ 1405.17
Fiber-cement siding ................................ 1405.16
Glazing ........................................ 1405.12
Masonry, adhered .................................. 1405.10, 2101.2.1, 2103.2.4
Masonry, anchored ................................ 1405.6, 2101.2.1
Metal ........................................ 1405.11
Plastic ........................................ 2605
Slab-type ........................................ 1405.8
Stone ........................................ 1405.7
Terra cotta ........................................ 1405.9
Vinyl ........................................ 1405.14
Wood ........................................ 1405.5

VENEER (see VENETES) .......................... 101.4.2
Attic ........................................ 1203.2, 1503.5
Air mass paint hangars .......................... 412.6.6
Bathrooms ...................................... 1203.4.2.1
Crawl space ................................... 1203.3
Exhaust, hazardous ................................ 1203.6
Exhaust, HPM .................................. 415.11.10.2
Exit enclosure .................................. 1023.6
Fabrication areas, HPM ........................ 415.11.1.6
Hazardous ...................................... 414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.5.8, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.7, 415.11.9.3
High-rise stairways .............................. 1022.10
HPM service corridors .......................... 415.11.3.2
Live/work unit .................................. 419.8
Mechanical ..................................... 1203.1
Natural ......................................... 1203.5
Parking .......................................... 406.5.2, 406.5.5, 406.5.10, 406.6.2
Projection rooms ................................ 409.3
Repair garages .................................. 406.8.2
Roof ............................................. 1203.2
Smoke exhaust .................................. 910
Smoke removal, high-rise buildings ......... 403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosures ......................... 909.20.3, 909.20.4, 909.20.6, 1023.11
Spray rooms and spaces ......................... 416.2.2, 416.3
Stages .......................................... 410.3.5, 410.3.7
Under-floor ventilation ......................... 1203.4

VENTS, PIPING PROTECTION ..................... 714
VERMICULITE, FIRE RESISTANT ......... 721

VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION
Atriums ........................................ 404.6
Duct penetrations .............................. 717.1
Elevators ......................................... 713.14, 3007.6.1, 3008.6.1
Exceptions ..................................... 1022.1
Group I-3 ........................................ 408.5
High-rise ......................................... 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3, 403.5.1
Live/work units ................................. 419.4
Open parking garages ......................... 406.5.9
Permitted vertical openings ................. 712
Shaft enclosure ................................ 713, 1019, 1023.2

VESTIBULES, EXIT DISCHARGE ............ 1028.1

VINYL
Expanded ......................................... 802, 803.7, 803.8
Rigid ........................................ 1405.14

VIOLATIONS ........................................... 114

VOICE ALARM (see ALARMS, VOICE)

W

WALKWAY ............................................. 3104
During construction ......................... 3306
Fire resistance ................................ Table 601
Fire district .................................. D102.1, D102.2.6
Fire-resistance ratings ....................... Table 602, 703, 705.5, 706.5.1, 707.4, 1403.4
Flashing, veneered walls ...................... 1405.4, 1405.10.1
Foam plastic insulation ....................... 2603.4.1.4, 2603.5
Glazing, rated .................................. 715.5
Joints ............................................ 705.9, 714
Light-transmitting plastic panels ........... 2607
Materials ........................................ 705.4, 1406
Metal Composite Materials (MCM) ........ 1407
Nonbearing ...................................... Chapter 6
Opening protection ........................... 705.8, 705.10, 716.5.6
Parapets ........................................ 705.11
Projections ....................................... 705.2
Structural stability ................................ 705.6
Vapor retarders ................................ 1405.3
Veneer (see VENETES) ......................... 1403.2, 1405.2, 1407.6, 1408.4
Weather resistance ........................... 1403.2, 1405.2, 1407.6, 1408.4
Weather-resistant barriers .................... 1405.2

WALL, FIRE (see FIRE WALLS)

WALL, FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATION)

WALL, INTERIOR
Finishes ........................................ 803, 1210.2
Opening protection ........................... 716, 717

WALL, INTERIOR NONBEARING (see PARTITIONS)

WALL, MASONRY ................................. 202
INDEX

Veneer ........................................... Chapter 14
Wall framing
(see WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION) ................... 2304.3
Wall sheathing, exterior ......................... 2304.6
WOOD SHINGLES AND SHAKES ........... 1507.8, 1507.9
WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS
(see WOOD) ........................................... 202, 2303.1.5
Bracing .................................................. 2308.6
Decorative .................................... 2303.3
Diaphragms .................................. 2305.2, 2306.2
Fastening ........................................ 2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated ......................... 2303.2
Performance category ....................... 202
Quality ........................................... 2303.1.5
Roof sheathing .................................. 2304.8, 2308.7.10
Seismic shear panels ......................... 2305.1, 2308.6.6.2
Shear walls .................................. 2306.3
Sheathing ........................................ 2304.6.1
Standards ................................... 2306.1
Subfloors ...................................... 804.4
Veneer ........................................... 1405.5

Y

YARDS OR COURTS ......................... 1206
Exit discharge ..................................... 1028.4
Group I-2 .......................................... 407.9
Group I-3 .................................. 408.3.6, 408.6.2
Light, natural .................................. 1205
Motor fuel-dispensing facilities .......... 406.7.2
Occupant load ................................ 1004.5
Parking garage, open ...................... 406.5.5
Unlimited area building ................ 507.2, 507.2.1